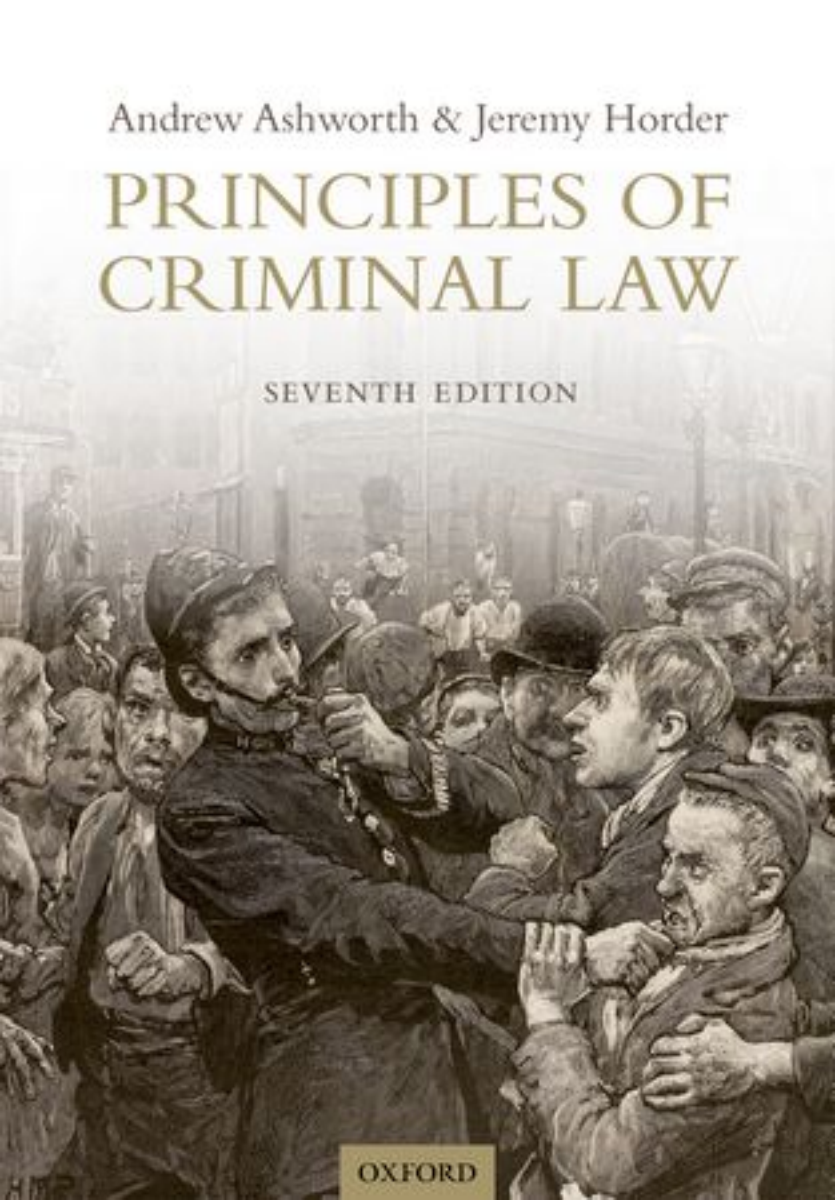
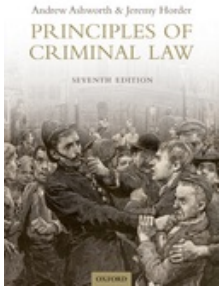
Andrew Ashworth & Jeremy Horder

PRINCIPLES OF CRIMINAL LAW

SEVENTH EDITION



OXFORD



Principles of Criminal Law (7th edn)

Andrew Ashworth and Jeremy Horder

Publisher: Oxford University Press
Print ISBN-13: 9780199672684
DOI: 10.1093/he/9780199672684.001.0001

Print Publication Date: May 2013
Published online: Sep 2013

Preface

For this seventh edition I am delighted to be joined by Professor Jeremy Horder. He has undertaken most of the revisions for this edition, and I am grateful to him for bringing his deep knowledge and understanding of the criminal law to bear on the text. There have been considerable developments both in the law and in scholarship in the four years since the last edition. Thus, for example, the homicide provisions of the Coroners and Justice Act 2009 have begun to be interpreted by the courts, and there have been substantial developments in the law on complicity. These and other changes have been taken into account, and it is hoped that statements of the law were correct at 1 December 2012.

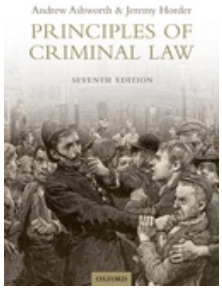
The general layout and order of chapters remain unchanged for this edition. The context and functions of the criminal law are outlined in Chapter 1, and Chapter 2 on criminalization examines reasons for creating or for not creating criminal laws. Chapter 3 then discusses key principles and policies relevant to the criminal law. In Chapters 4, 5, and 6, the 'general part' elements of culpability, justification, and excuse are analysed: Chapter 4 deals generally with *actus reus* questions, Chapter 5 is devoted to criminal capacity (insanity, infancy, and corporate liability) as well as to *mens rea* issues, and Chapter 6 deals with excusatory defences. Three areas of the special part of the criminal law are then selected for examination: Chapter 7 deals with homicide, Chapter 8 with non-fatal physical violations

(including sexual offences), and Chapter 9 with offences of dishonesty. The book concludes with Chapter 10 on complicity and Chapter 11 on inchoate offences.

As in previous editions, the focus of the book is upon the identification and discussion of issues of principle and policy raised by the statements of the courts, Parliament, the law reform bodies, and academic commentators. The judgments of the courts provide much material for discussion, and the resurgence of criminal law scholarship has continued, with the publication of important new monographs, articles, and essays. The contention is not that English criminal law is grounded in a stable set of established doctrines: on the contrary, there is ample evidence that the arguments and assumptions that influence the development of the law form a disparate group, sometimes conflicting and sometimes invoked selectively. Often there are political factors influencing the shape of legislation or the activities of law enforcement officers, and reference is made to these below. But the aim of the book is to focus on principles, some of which are immanent in existing legal rules and practices, some of which are not recognized (or not fully recognized) and which are commended here on normative grounds. To conduct a full normative argument on many of these points would require greater detail, in discussing elements of moral and political philosophy or of criminology, than is possible within the confines of this book. The same applies to **(p. vi)** comparative legal material: some references are made, particularly to the American Law Institute's Model Penal Code, but it is not possible to go much further here.

The processes of Oxford University Press have been splendidly efficient, and we are grateful to John Carroll and Natasha Flemming for their support. We have retained the gender specific ‘he’ in most parts of the book when referring to defendants and offenders, on the ground that the vast majority of them are male.

A.J.A.



Principles of Criminal Law (7th edn)

Andrew Ashworth and Jeremy Horder

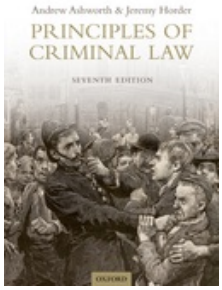
Publisher: Oxford University Press
Print ISBN-13: 9780199672684
DOI: 10.1093/he/9780199672684.001.0001

Print Publication Date: May 2013
Published online: Sep 2013

New to this Edition

- Increased coverage of key cases for undergraduates.
- Takes full account of the effect of the Coroners and Justice Act 2009 on the law of homicide.
- Provides discussion of key new cases including:
    - *R* v *Clinton, Parker and Evans* [2012] EWCA Crim 2 (loss of self-control), and
    - *R* v *Dowds* [2012] EWCA Crim 281 (diminished responsibility).
- The chapter on Complicity has also been substantially revised, in part to take account of recent cases such as *R* v *ABCD* [2010] EWCA Crim 1622.

(p. viii)



Principles of Criminal Law (7th edn)

Andrew Ashworth and Jeremy Horder

Publisher: Oxford University Press
Print ISBN-13: 9780199672684
DOI: 10.1093/he/9780199672684.001.0001

Print Publication Date: May 2013
Published online: Sep 2013

Table of cases

A (Conjoined Twins: Surgical Separation), Re [2000] 4 All ER 961 101, 107, 119, 133, 134, 239
A *v* Home Secretary [2004] UKHL 56 50, 51, 81
A *v* UK 118
ABCD [2010] EWCA Crim 1622 437
Abbott *v* R [1977] AC 755 212
Abdul-Hussain et al [1999] Crim LR 570 208
Acott [1997] 2 Cr App R 94 253, 255
Adams [1957] Crim LR 365 132, 281, 282
Adomako [1995] 1 AC 171 290, 293, 294, 299, 301
ADT *v* United Kingdom (2000) 31 EHRR 33 338, 340
Ahluwalia [1992] 4 All ER 889 (CA) 254, 255
Airedale NHS Trust *v* Bland [1993] AC 789 100, 101, 133, 239, 282
Aitken (1992) 95 Cr App R 304 196, 324
Albert *v* Lavin (1981) 72 Cr App R 178 216
Aldo Bordessa (C–358/93 & C–416/93) [1995] ECR I–361 61
Allan [1965] 1 QB 130 426

Allen [1988] Crim LR 698 200
Allen *v* Whitehead [1930] 1 KB 211 149
Alphacell Ltd *v* Woodward [1972] AC 824 105, 152, 164
Anderson [1986] AC 27 476
Anderton *v* Ryan [1985] AC 560 466
Andrews *v* DPP [1937] AC 576 176, 287, 289, 290
Andronicou and Constantinou *v* Cyprus (1998) 25 EHRR 491 121, 126–8
Arnold [1997] Crim LR 833 385
Arrowsmith [1975] QB 678 222
Associated Octel [1996] 1 WLR 1543 148, 164
Atakpu and Abrahams (1994) 98 Cr App R 254 376
Attorney-General *v* Able [1984] 1 QB 795 433
Attorney-General for Hong Kong *v* Reid [1994] 1 AC 324 385
Attorney-General for Jersey *v* Holley [2005] 2 AC 580 258, 266
Attorney-General for Northern Ireland *v* Gallagher [1963] AC 349 159, 194
Attorney-General for Northern Ireland's Reference [1977] AC 105 123, 129
Attorney-General's Reference (No. 1 of 1974) [1974] QB 744 403
Attorney-General's Reference (No. 1 of 1975) [1975] QB 773 422, 430, 433, 447, 448
Attorney-General's References (Nos 1 and 2 of 1979) [1980] QB 180 387
Attorney General's Reference (No. 1 of 1980) [1981] QB 715 322
Attorney-General's Reference (No. 4 of 1980) [1981] 1 WLR 705; (1981) 73 Cr App R 40 104, 159
Attorney-General's Reference (No. 6 of 1980) [1981] QB 715 323
Attorney-General's Reference (No. 2 of 1982) [1984] QB 624 383
Attorney-General's Reference (No. 1 of 1983) [1985] QB 182 385
Attorney-General's Reference (No. 2 of 1983) 123
Attorney-General's Reference (No. 1 of 1985) (1986) 83 Cr App R 70 385
Attorney-General's Reference (No. 1 of 1988) (1989) 89 Cr App R 60 68
Attorney-General's Reference (No. 1 of 1992) (1993) 96 Cr App R 298 463, 475
Attorney General's Reference (No. 2 of 1992) (1993) 97 Cr App R 429 89
Attorney-General's Reference (No. 3 of 1992) (1994) 98 Cr App R 383 460
Attorney-General's Reference (No. 3 of 1994) [1998] AC 245 190, 238, 246
Attorney-General's Reference (No. 1 of 1995) [1996] 2 Cr App R 320 222
Attorney-General's Reference (No. 2 of 1999) [2000] 2 Cr App R 207 60, 151
Attorney General's Reference (No. 4 of 2000) [2001] Crim LR 578 87
Attorney-General's Reference No. 4 of 2002 [2004] UKHL 43 72
Attorney-General's Reference No. 3 of 2003 [2004] EWCA Crim 868 332
Attorney General's Reference (No. 3 of 2004) [2005] EWCA Crim 1882 440
Attorney General's Reference (No. 79 of 2006) (Whitta) [2007] 1 Cr App R (S) 752 355
B (Refusal of treatment), Re [2002] 2 All ER 449 277, 278
B *v* DPP [2000] 2 AC 428 99, 166, 167, 218, 231, 357, 366
B *v* K [2002] 1 AC 462 99
(p. xx) Badza [2010] EWCA Crim 1363 444
Bagshaw [1988] Crim LR 321 388
Bailey (1983) 77 Cr App R 76 93, 199, 201
Baillie [1995] Crim LR 739 254, 255
Bainbridge [1960] 1 QB 219 435

Baker [1994] Crim LR 444 449
Baker and Ward [1999] 2 Cr App R 335 211
Ball [1989] Crim LR 579 121, 289
Barnes [2005] 1 WLR 910 323
Basherdost [2008] EWCA Crim 2883 346
Bateman (1925) 94 LJKB 791 289
Battams (1979) 1 Cr App R (S) 15 402
Baugh *v* Crago [1976] Crim LR 72 186
Beasley et al (1987) 9 Cr App R (S) 504 329
Beatty *v* Gillbanks (1882) 9 QBD 308 125
Becerra and Cooper (1975) 62 Cr App R 212 449
Beckford *v* R [1988] 1 AC 130 116, 125, 216, 217
Bedder *v* DPP [1954] 2 All ER 201 259, 260
Benham *v* United Kingdom (1996) 22 EHRR 293 3
Billam (1986) 82 Cr App R 347 336
Bilton, *Daily Telegraph*, 20 July 2005 91, 143
Bingham [1991] Crim LR 433 91
Bird [1985] 1 WLR 816 124
Birmingham and Gloucester Railway Co (1842) 3 QB 223 147, 149, 152
Black-Clawson International *v* Papierwerke Waldhof-Aschaffenber AG [1975] AC 591 68
Blakely and Sutton *v* Chief Constable of West Mercia [1991] Crim LR 763 201, 432, 434
Bland [1988] Crim LR 41 425
Blaue (1975) 61 Cr App R 271 113
Bloxham [1983] 1 AC 109 403
Bollom [2004] 2 Cr App R 6 245, 311
Bonner (1970) 54 Cr App R 257 383
Bonollo [1981] VR 633 393
Booth *v* CPS (2006) 170 JP 305 178
Bourne (1952) 36 Cr App R 125 109, 132, 133, 430, 445, 446
Bowen [1996] 2 Cr App R 157 206, 212, 229
Bradbury [1996] Crim LR 808 425
Bratty *v* Attorney-General for Northern Ireland [1963] AC 386 90
Breaks and Huggan [1998] Crim LR 349 385
Bree [2007] EWCA Crim 804 351
Briggs [2004] 1 Cr App R 34 377
British Steel plc [1995] 1 WLR 1356 148, 164
Broad [1997] Crim LR 666 472
Brook [1993] Crim LR 455 403
Broome *v* Perkins (1987) 85 Cr App R 321 88, 89
Brown [1985] Crim LR 611 364, 399
Brown [1994] 1 AC 212 318, 320, 322, 324, 326, 327
Brown *v* United States (1921) 256 US 335 129, 132
Bryce [2004] 2 Cr App R 35 431, 433, 436, 451
Bubbins *v* UK (2005) 41 EHRR 458 127, 128
Burgess [1991] 2 QB 92 91, 143
Byrne [1960] 2 QB 396 269
C *The Times*, 9 June 2008 363

C *v* DPP 60
C *v* Eisenhower [1984] QB 331 311
CR and SW *v* United Kingdom (1996) 21 EHRR 363 81
Caldwell [1982] AC 341 176, 179–83, 195, 232, 290
Calhaem [1985] QB 808 115, 430, 431
Cambridgeshire and Isle of Ely CC *v* Rust [1972] 1 QB 426 222
Campbell (1991) 93 Cr App R 350 463, 464
Cantoni *v* France (1997) VIII HRCD 130 220
Carey [2006] Crim LR 842 289
Carter *v* Richardson [1974] RTR 314 432
Cartledge *v* Allen [1973] Crim LR 530 312
Cato [1976] 1 WLR 110; (1976) 62 Cr App R 41 105–107, 296
Celaire and Poulton [2003] 1 Cr App R (S) 610 333
Chambers [2008] EWCA Crim 2467 219
Chan Chi-hung *v* R [1996] AC 442 61
Chan Man-Sin *v* Attorney-General for Hong Kong (1988) 86 Cr App R 303 377
Chan Wing-Siu [1985] AC 168 438
Chandler *v* DPP [1964] AC 763 174, 175
Chan-Fook (1994) 99 Cr App R 147 311
Charles (1976) 63 Cr App R 252 70
Charlson [1955] 1 WLR 317 89
Chase Manhattan Bank NA *v* Israel-British Bank [1981] Ch 105 385
Cheshire [1991] 1 WLR 844 106, 111
Chisam (1963) 47 Cr App R 130 123, 216
Chiu-cheung [1995] 1 AC 111 476
Christian *v* R [2006] 2 AC 400 219
Church [1966] 1 QB 59 158, 159, 288
Churchill *v* Walton [1967] 2 AC 224 473
Clarence (1888) 22 QBD 23 311, 312, 317, 321
Clark [2003] 2 Cr App R 363 64
Clarke (1972) 56 Cr App R 225 142
Clarke (1982) 75 Cr App R 119 70
Clarke (1984) 80 Cr App R 344 434, 450
Clarkson [1971] 1 WLR 1402 425, 426
Clegg [1996] 1 AC 482 (HL) 265
Clingham *v* Royal Borough of Kensington and Chelsea [2003] 1 AC 787 43, 53
(p. xxi) Clinton, Parker and Evans [2012] EWCA Crim 2 262
Clouden [1987] Crim LR 56 396, 397
Cockburn (1968) 52 Cr App R 134 386
Cocker [1989] Crim LR 740 (CA) 270, 281
Cogan and Leak [1976] 1 QB 217 109, 346, 354, 445, 447
Collins [1973] QB 100 399, 400
Collins *v* Willcock (1984) 79 Cr App R 229 317, 318
Conally *v* General Construction Co (1926) 269 US 385 65
Concannon [2002] Crim LR 215 421
Coney (1882) 8 QBD 534 424, 425
Constanza [1997] 2 Cr App R 492 318, 319

Conway [1989] 3 All ER 1025; (1988) 88 Cr App R 159 205, 206
Cook *v* Atchison [1968] Crim LR 266 87
Cooper *v* Simmons (1862) 7 H and N 707 222
Coppen *v* Moore (No. 2) [1898] 2 QB 306 149
Corbett [1996] Crim LR 594 112
Corcoran *v* Whent [1977] Crim LR 52 376
Cotter [2002] Crim LR 824 64
Court [1989] AC 28 344
Courtie [1984] AC 463 398
Cousins [1982] QB 526 123
Craig [2007] EWCA Crim 2913 404
Crossman (1986) 82 Cr App R 333 301
Cumming [2007] 2 Cr App R (S) 20 277
Cunningham [1957] 2 QB 396 176, 186
Cunningham [1982] AC 566 245, 246
Dadson (1850) 4 Cox CC 358 122
Dagnall [2003] EWCA Crim 2441 350
Davies [2004] 1 Cr App R (S) 209 398
Dawson (1985) 81 Cr App R 150 289
Dawson and James (1976) 64 Cr App R 150 396
Dear [1996] Crim LR 595 113
Densu [1998] 1 Cr App R 400 333
Devonald [2008] EWCA Crim 527 346, 347
Deyemi and Edwards [2008] 1 Cr App R 25 99, 167, 168
Dhaliwal [2006] 2 Cr App R 348 287, 311, 314
Dica [2004] QB 1257 321
Dietschmann [2003] 1 AC 1209 271, 321
Donnelly *v* Jackman (1969) 54 Cr App R 229 318
Donovan [1934] 2 KB 498 322
Doughty (1986) 83 Cr App R 319 256, 257
Dowds [2012] EWCA Crim 281 271, 272
DPP *v* Camplin [1978] AC 705 (HL) 259, 260
DPP *v* Collins [2007] 1 Cr App R 5 32
DPP *v* Dunn [2001] 1 Cr App R 352 328
DPP *v* H [1997] 1 WLR 1406 143, 161
DPP *v* Hammond [2004] Crim LR 851 32
DPP *v* K (1990) 91 Cr App R 23 317
DPP *v* K and B [1997] 1 Cr App R 36 445, 446
DPP *v* Kent and Sussex Contractors Ltd [1944] KB 146 150
DPP *v* Lavender [1994] Crim LR 297 388
DPP *v* Little (1992) 95 Cr App R 28 316
DPP *v* Lynch [1977] AC 653 212
DPP *v* Majewski [1977] AC 443 92, 195, 197, 198
DPP *v* Morgan [1976] 1 AC 182 195, 215, 342, 354
DPP *v* Newbury and Jones [1977] AC 500 288
DPP *v* Redmond-Bate [1999] Crim LR 998 32
DPP *v* Rogers [1998] Crim LR 202 208

DPP *v* Santana-Bermudez [2004] Crim LR 471 317
DPP *v* Smith [1961] AC 290 311
DPP *v* Withers [1975] AC 842 468
DPP for Northern Ireland *v* Lynch [1975] AC 653 206
DPP for Northern Ireland *v* Maxwell [1978] 3 All ER 1140 471
Du Cros *v* Lambourne [1907] 1 KB 40 427
Dudgeon *v* United Kingdom (1982) 4 EHRR 149 326, 338
Dudley and Stephens (1884) 14 QBD 273 131–3, 212, 213
Duffy [1949] 1 All ER 932 253
Durante [1972] 3 All ER 962 195
Dyke and Munro [2002] 1 Cr App R 30; [2002] Crim LR 153 382, 384
Dytham [1979] QB 722, 332
E.B. [2006] EWCA Crim 2945 351
Easom [1971] 2 QB 315 387
Edwards *v* Ddin (1976) 63 Cr App R 218 376
Edwards *v* R [1973] AC 648 159
Elbekkay [1995] Crim LR 163 61, 348
El-Kurd [2001] Crim LR 234 473
Elliott *v* C (1983) 77 Cr App R 103 180
Emery (1993) 14 Cr App R (S) 394 102, 422
Emmett (1999) *The Times* 15 October. 326
Engel *v* Netherlands (1976) 1 EHRR 647 3
English [1999] AC 1 440, 443, 444
Environment Agency *v* Empress Car Co (Abertillery) [1999] 2 AC 22 110, 149
Evans [2009] EWCA Crim 650 292, 293
Evans *v* Hughes [1972] 3 All ER 412 123, 333
F, Re [1990] 2 AC 1 133
Fagan *v* Metropolitan Police Commissioner [1969] 1 QB 439 157, 158
Fallon [1994] Crim LR 519 310, 312
Feely [1973] QB 530 390, 393
(p. xxii) Fennell [1971] 1 QB 428 121
Ferguson *v* Weaving [1951] 1 KB 814 423
Fernandes [1996] 1 Cr App R 175 387
Field [1972] Crim LR 435 124
Finau *v* Department of Labour [1984] 2 NZLR 396 96
Finney (1874) 12 Cox CC 625 289
Flattery (1877) 2 QBD 410 347
Floyd *v* DPP [2000] Crim LR 411 385
Forbes and Webb (1865) 10 Cox CC 362 315
Forrester [1992] Crim LR 792 396
Fotheringham (1989) 88 Cr App R 206 196
Fowler *v* Padget (1798) 7 Term Rep 509 157
G [2004] 1 AC 1034 176, 179–81, 188
G [2008] UKHL 37 73, 167, 357
Gallasso (1994) 98 Cr App R 284 375
Gammon *v* Attorney-General for Hong Kong [1985] AC 1 166
Gateway Foodmarkets Ltd [1997] Crim LR 512 148, 164

Geddes [1996] Crim LR 894 463, 464
George [1956] Crim LR 52 345
Ghosh [1982] QB 1053 391, 393, 394, 407
Giannetto [1997] 1 Cr App R 1 421, 423, 451
Gibbins and Proctor (1918) 13 Cr App R 134 332
Gibson [1990] 2 QB 619 469
Gilks (1972) 56 Cr App R 734 385
Gillick *v* West Norfolk and Wisbech Area Health Authority [1986] AC 112 133, 174–6, 428, 434
Gilmartin (1983) 76 Cr App R 238 406
Gilmour [2000] 2 Cr App R 407 440
Giorgianni *v* R (1985) 156 CLR 473 432
Gladstone Williams (1984) 78 Cr App R 276 216
Gnango [2011] 1 All ER 153 443
Gnosil (1824) 1 C & P 304 397
Gold and Schifreen [1988] AC 1063 70, 381
Goldstein and Rimmington [2005] UKHL 63 51, 81
Gomez [1993] AC 442 64, 68, 374–9, 383, 384, 393, 413
Goodyear [2005] 3 All ER 117 14
Gotts [1992] 2 AC 412 212
Graham (1982) 74 Cr App R 235 206, 208, 214, 218
Grant *v* Borg [1982] 1 WLR 638 219, 222
Great North of England Railway Co (1846) 9 QB 315 147
Grenwal [2010] EWCA Crim 2448 356
Gül *v* Turkey (2002) 34 EHRR 719 121
Gullefer [1987] Crim LR 195 463
H [2005] Crim LR 734 316, 344, 345
Hale (1978) 68 Cr App R 415 158, 376, 396
Hall [1973] QB 126 385
Hancock and Shankland [1986] AC 455 172, 244
Hardie (1985) 80 Cr App R 157 200, 201
Harman's Case (1620) 2 Roll Rep 154 397
Harrow LBC *v* Shah [2000] 1 WLR 83 166
Hasan [2005] 2 AC 467; [2005] UKHL 22 61, 160, 208, 209, 213, 218, 229, 230, 355
Hashman and Harrup *v* UK (2000) 30 EHRR 241 63–5, 393
Hatton [2006] 1 Cr App R 16 196
Heard [2007] EWCA Crim 125; [2008] QB 43 195, 204, 356
Hennessy (1989) 89 Cr App R 10 91, 143, 161
Hill (1986) 83 Cr App R 386 331
Hill [1997] Crim LR 459 163
Hilton [1997] 2 Cr App R 445 383
Hinks [2000] 4 All ER 833; [2001] 2 AC 241 64, 68, 321, 375, 380, 393, 413
Hobson [1998] 1 Cr App R 31 270
Horncastle [2006] EWCA Crim 1736 399
Howe [1987] AC 417 61, 130, 212, 226, 233, 423, 444
Hudson and Taylor [1971] 2 QB 202 205, 207, 208, 210
Hughes *v* Holley (1988) 86 Cr App R 130 64

Hyam *v* DPP [1975] AC 55 175, 247
Hysa [2007] EWCA Crim 2056 352
ICR Haulage Ltd [1944] KB 551 150
Ibrams (1981) 74 Cr App R 154 255
Idress [2011] EWHC 624 (Admin) 406
Impress (Worcester) Ltd *v* Rees [1971] 2 All ER 357 110
Ireland and Burstow [1998] AC 147 311, 312, 317–19, 328, 335
Isaveya *v* Russia (2005) 41 EHRR 791 127
Isitt (1978) 67 Cr App R 44 88
Ismail [2005] EWCA Crim 397 342
JF Alford (Transport) Ltd [1997] 2 Cr App R 326 151, 427, 432
Janjua [1999] 1 Cr App R 91 311
Jackson [1985] Crim LR 442 474
Jacobson *v* US (1992) 112 S Ct 1535 224
James [2006] QB 588 258
James & Son *v* Smee [1955] 1 QB 78 150, 186
Janjua [1999] 1 Cr App R 91 245, 311
Jefferson et al (1994) 99 Cr App R 13 330, 420, 421, 425
Jheeta [2007] EWCA Crim 1699 347, 348
Jobidon [1991] 2 SCR 714 323
Johnson (1989) 89 Cr App 148 159
Johnson [2008] Crim LR 132 143
Johnson *v* Youden [1950] 1 KB 544 432, 435
(p. xxiii) Jones (1986) 83 Cr App R 375 324
Jones (1990) 91 Cr App R 351 463, 464
Jones, *The Times*, 19 August 1994 219
Jones et al. (1974) 59 Cr App R 120 470
Jones *v* Bedford and Mid-Befordshire Magistrates' Court [2010] EWHC 523 315
Jones, Milling et al [2007] 1 AC 136 60, 120, 123, 125, 131, 134
Jordan (1956) 40 Cr App R 152 111
Julien [1969] 1 WLR 839 124
Juozaitiene *v* Lithuania (2008) 47 EHRR 1194 127
K [2002] 2 AC 462; [2002] 1 Cr App R 121 167, 218, 231, 357, 366
K.A. and A.D. *v* Belgium (judgment of 17 February 2005, App No. 42758/98) 327
Kaitamaki *v* R [1985] 1 AC 147 158
Kamara *v* DPP [1973] 2 All ER 1242 468, 469
Kamipeli [1975] 2 NZLR 610 198
Kaur *v* Chief Constable of Hampshire [1981] 1 WLR 578 378
Kay *v* Butterworth (1945) 173 LT 191 93
Kelly (1992) 97 Cr App R 245 401
Kelly *v* UK (1993) 74 DR 139 124
Kelly and Donnelly [2001] 1 Cr App R (S) 341 315, 328
Kemp and Else [1964] 2 QB 341 447
Kendrick and Hopkins [1997] 2 Cr App R 524 375
Kennedy [1999] Crim LR 65 110
Kennedy (No 2) [2005] 2 Cr App R 23; [2007] UKHL 38; [2008] 1 AC 269 103, 104, 110, 288, 293, 296, 331

Keys and Sween (1986) 8 Cr App R (S) 444 329
Khaliq *v* H M Advocate 1983 SCCR 483 58
Khan (1990) 91 Cr App R 29 459, 475
Khan and Khan [1998] Crim LR 830 288, 289
Kimber [1983] 1 WLR 1118; (1983) 77 Cr App R 225 176, 216
Kingston [1995] 2 AC 355 97, 201, 223, 234
Klineberg and Marsden [1999] 1 Cr App R 427 385
Knuller *v* DPP [1973] AC 435 58, 59, 62, 468, 469
Kohn [1997] 2 Cr App R 445 381
Kokkinakis *v* Greece (1994) 17 EHRR 397 61, 63, 68
Kolender *v* Lawson (1983) 103 S Ct 1855 62
Kong Cheuk Kwan (1986) 82 Cr App R 18 290
Konzani [2005] 2 Cr App R 13 321
Korbeley *v* Hungary (2010) 50 EHRR 1192 62
Lamb [1967] 2 QB 981 286, 290, 319
Lambert [2001] 3 WLR 206; [2002] 2 AC 545 50, 71
Lambert *v* California (1957) 355 US 225 221
Lane and Lane (1986) 82 Cr App R 5 422
Lankford [1959] Crim LR 209, 484
Larsonneur (1933) 149 LT 542 96
Laskey *v* UK (1997) 24 EHRR 39 327, 364
Latimer (1886) 17 QBD 359 190
Lawrence [1972] AC 626 373, 374, 379
Lawrence [1982] AC 510 176
Le Brun [1992] QB 61 158, 159
Le Compte, Van Leuven and De Meyere *v* Belgium (1981) 4 EHRR 1 4
Lester (1976) 63 Cr App R 144 163
Letenock (1917) 12 Cr App R 221 216, 257
Lewis (1988) 87 Cr App R 270 98
Lidar [2000] 4 Archbold News 3 294
Liggins et al. [1995] Crim LR 45 469, 470
Lim Chin Aik *v* R [1963] AC 160 166, 219
Linekar [1995] 2 Cr App R 49; [1995] QB 250 347, 353
Lipman [1970] 1 QB 152 92, 196, 287
Lloyd [1985] QB 928 388
Logdon *v* DPP [1976] Crim LR 121 319
Lomas (1913) 9 Cr App R 220 429
Looseley; Attorney-General's Reference No. 3 of 1999 [2002] 1 Cr App R 29 224, 228
Lowe [1973] QB 702 287
Luc Thiet-Thuan *v* R [1997] AC 131 266
Lynch *v* DPP [2002] Crim LR 320 488
MC *v* Bulgaria (2005) 40 EHRR 459 338
McCann and others *v* UK (1996) 21 EHRR 97 126, 127, 217, 231
McCoy [1953] 2 SA 4 354
McDermott [2007] 1 Cr App R (S) 145 200
M'Naghten's Case (1843) 10 Cl & Fin 200 142, 143
McNamara (1988) 87 Cr App R 246 98

McShane (1978) 66 Cr App R 97 277
Milberry [2003] 2 Cr App R (S) 142 336
Miller [1983] 2 AC 161 290, 291
Morrison (1989) 89 Cr App R 17 312
Moses [1991] Crim LR 617 411
Mahroof [1989] Crim LR 72 329
Majewski *See* DPP *v* Majewski
Malcherek and Steel (1981) 73 Cr App R 173 111, 239
Mandair [1995] 1 AC 208 312
Marcus (1981) 73 Cr App R 49 331
Marshall [1998] 2 Cr App R 282 384, 388
Marshall [2009] EWCA Crim 2076 408
Martin (1881) 8 QBD 54 312
Martin (1989) 88 Cr App R 343 205
(p. xxiv) Martin [2002] 1 Cr App R 27 127
Matthews and Alleyne [2003] 2 Cr App R 30 172, 245
Matudi [2003] EWCA Crim 697 167
Mavji (1987) 84 Cr App R 34 405
Mawgridge (1707) 1 Kel 119 258
Maxwell *v* DPP for Northern Ireland [1978] 3 All ER 1140; [1979] 1 WLR 1350 421, 435, 436, 439, 451, 483
Mazo [1997] 2 Cr App R 518 375
Meachen [2006] EWCA Crim 2414 322
Meade and Belt (1823) 1 Lew CC 184 318
Melliti [2001] EWCA Crim 1563 348
Mendez [2010] EWCA Crim 516 444
Mercer [2001] All ER (D) 187 421
Meridian Global Funds Management Asia Ltd *v* Securities Commission [1995] 2 AC 500 151
Metropolitan Police Commissioner *v* Charles [1977] AC 177 353
Michael (1840) 9 C and P 356 109, 447
Miller [1954] 2 QB 282 314
Miller [1983] 2 AC 161 100, 158, 317
Millward [1994] Crim LR 527 446
Misra [2005] 1 Cr App R 21 293
Mitchell [2008] EWCA Crim 850 386, 387, 395
Mohan [1976] 1 QB 1 169, 170, 458
Moloney [1985] AC 905 172, 180, 244, 252
Moore *v* I Bresler Ltd [1944] 2 All ER 515 150
Morgan *See* DPP *v* Morgan
Morhall (1994) 98 Cr App R 108; [1996] 1 AC 90 260
Morris [1984] AC 320 374, 377, 379, 412
Morris [1998] 1 Cr App R 386 328
Mousell Bros *v* London and North-Western Railway Co [1917] 2 KB 836 147
Mowatt [1968] 1 QB 421 312, 313
Muhamad [2003] QB 1031 166, 167
Mulcahy (1868) LR 3 HL 306 472
NW et al. [2008] 3 All ER 533 404

Nachova *v* Bulgaria (2006) 42 EHRR 933 56, 120–2
Nash [1999] Crim LR 308 463
National Coal Board *v* Gamble [1959] 1 QB 11 428, 429, 433, 434
National Rivers Authority *v* Yorkshire Water Services [1995] 1 AC 444 105
Naylor (1987) 84 Crim App R 302 256
Nedrick (1986) 83 Cr App R 267 172, 244
Newbury and Jones [1977] AC 500 286
Newington [1990] Crim LR 593 332
Nicol and Selvanayagam *v* DPP [1996] Crim LR 318 125
Norris *v* United States of America [2008] UKHL 16 66, 411
Nunn [1996] 2 Cr App R (S) 136 3
O'Connor (1980) 146 CLR 64 198
O'Connor [1991] Crim LR 135 196
O'Driscoll (1977) 65 Cr App R 50 287
O'Grady (1987) 85 Cr App R 315 196
Osborne [2010] EWCA 547 269
Owino [1996] 2 Cr App R 128 120
Oxford *v* Moss (1979) 68 Cr App R 183 70, 381
Pagett (1983) 76 Cr App R 279 109
Palmer [1971] AC 814, 128, 129
Parker [1977] 1 WLR 600 178
Pattni et al [2001] Crim LR 570 64
Pearman (1985) 80 Cr App R 259 458
Pembliton (1874) 12 Cox CC 607 190
People *v* Goetz (1986) 68 NY 2d 96 120
Pepper *v* Hart [1993] AC 593 68
Percy *v* DPP [2002] Crim LR 835 51
Perka *v* R (1984) 13 DLR (4th) 1 210
Philippou (1989) 89 Cr App R 290 383
Piper [2007] EWCA Crim 2131 347, 348
Pitham and Hehl (1977) 65 Cr App R 45 377
Postermobile *v* Brent LBC [1998] Crim LR 435 223, 228
Powell and Daniels [1999] AC 1 439, 451, 452
Powell *v* Texas 392 US 514 (1968) 97
Practice Direction [1977] 2 All ER 540 470
Practice Direction (Crime: Mandatory Life Sentences) (No. 2) [2004] 1 WLR 2551 241
Practice Direction: Crown Court (Trial of Children and Young Persons) [2000] 1 Cr App R 483 140
Preddy [1996] AC 815 70, 385
Prentice [1994] QB 302 290, 293
Price (1990) 90 Cr App R 409 391
Quick [1973] QB 910 89, 91–4
R [2008] EWCA Crim 619 489
RJ and M-J D *v* France [2005] Crim LR 307 118
R *v* ABCD [2010] EWCA Crim 1622 437
R *v* DPP, ex parte Jones [2000] Crim LR 858 291
R *v* R [1992] 1 AC 599 58

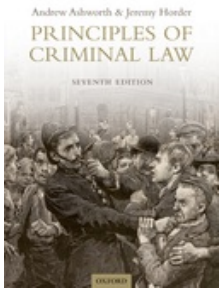
R *v* S &H [2011] EWCA Crim 2872 481
R *v* Wells Street Magistrates' Court and Martin, ex p Westminster City Council [1986] Crim LR 695 166
R *v* West London Coroner, ex p Gray [1988] QB 467 290
(p. xxv) R (Bennett) *v* HM Coroner for Inner London [2006] EWHC Admin 196 127
R (McCann) *v* Manchester Crown Court; Clingham *v* Kensington and Chelsea LBC [2003] 1 AC 787 4
R (on application of W) *v* DPP [2005] EWHC Admin 1333 221
R (on the application of Anderson) *v* Secretary of State for the Home Department [2003] 1 AC 837 240
R (on the Application of Purdy) *v* DPP [2009] UKHL 45 278, 281
R (on the application of T) *v* DPP [2003] Crim LR 622 314
Rabey (1978) 79 DLR (3d) 414 92
Rahman [2008] UKHL 45 442–4
Raphael [2008] Crim LR 995 387
Rashford [2006] Crim LR 546 121
Redford (1989) 89 Cr App R 1 405
Redmond-Bate *v* DPP [1999] Crim LR 998 125, 330
Reed [1982] Crim LR 819 474
References re Section 94(2) of the Motor Vehicles Act (1986) 48 CR (3d) 289 165
Richards [1974] QB 776 423, 430, 444
Richardson [1998] 2 Cr App R 200 321, 323, 353
Richardson and Irwin [1999] 1 Cr App R 392 196, 324
Rimmington and Goldstein [2005] UKHL 63; [2006] 1 AC 459 58, 60, 64, 221
Rivas *v* France [2005] Crim LR 305 50
Roberts (1972) 56 Cr App R 95 112, 113
Roberts (1987) 84 Cr App R 117 391
Roberts and George [1997] Crim LR 209 432
Robinson [1977] Crim LR 173 396
Robinson *v* California 370 US 660 (1962) 97
Rodger and Rose [1998] 1 Cr App R 143 205, 207
Rook [1993] 2 All ER 955 424
Roper *v* Taylor's Garages Ltd [1951] 2 TLR 284 180
Rose (1884) 15 Cox CC 540 216
Royle [2005] 2 Cr App R (S) 480 363
Rushworth (1992) 95 Cr App R 252 314
Russell and Russell (1987) 85 Cr App R 388 422
S C *v* United Kingdom (2005) 40 EHRR 226 140
SW and CR *v* United Kingdom (1995) 21 EHRR 363 59
S *v* Robinson 1968 (1) SA 666 443
Saik [2007] 1 AC 18 474, 475
Salabiaku *v* France (1988) 13 EHRR 379 71
Salisbury [1976] VR 452 312
Salomon *v* Salomon [1897] AC 22 147
Salvo [1980] VR 401 391
Sandhu [1997] Crim LR 288 163
Sandie Smith [1982] Crim LR 531 229

Santana-Bermudez [2004] Crim LR 471 321
Satnam S and Kewal S (1984) 78 Cr App R 149 176
Saunders and Archer (1573) 2 Plowd 473 441, 448
Savage and Parmenter [1992] 1 AC 699 70, 186, 312–14, 317, 319
Scarlett (1994) 98 Cr App R 290 120, 287
Schwartz (1979) 29 CCC (2d) 1 143
Scott *v* Metropolitan Police Commissioner [1975] AC 819 410, 469
Seaboard Off shore Ltd *v* Secretary of State for Transport [1994] 1 WLR 541 148, 164
Secretary of State for Trade and Industry *v* Hart [1982] 1 WLR 481 222
Senior [1899] 1 QB 283 287
Seymour [1983] 1 AC 624 290
Shannon [2000] 1 Cr App R 168 225
Shannon *v* UK [2005] Crim LR 133 225
Sharp [1987] QB 853 208, 209
Shaw *v* DPP [1962] AC 220 57–60, 62, 468, 469
Shaw *v* R [2002] 1 Cr App R 10 127
Shayler [2001] 1 WLR 2206 134, 207
Sheehan and O'Mahoney [2007] 1 Cr App R (S) 149 200
Sheldrake *v* DPP; Attorney General's Reference No. 4 of 2002 [2004] UKHL 43 50, 72, 73
Shepherd (1988) 86 Cr App R 47 209
Sheppard [1981] AC 394 186
Shivpuri [1987] AC 1 466
Silverman (1988) 86 Cr App R 213 408
Siracusa (1990) 90 Cr App R 340 473, 476
Smith (Morgan) [2001] 1 AC 146 229
Smith [1960] 2 QB 423 111, 174, 175, 450
Smith [2011] EWCA Crim 66 382
Smith and Jones (1976) 63 Cr App R 47 399, 400
Smith and Smith [1986] Crim LR 166 387
Smith *v* Chief Superintendent of Woking Police Station (1983) 76 Cr App R 234 318
Smith *v* Reynolds et al. [1986] Crim LR 559 425
Speck (1977) 65 Cr App R 161 100
Stafford *v* United Kingdom (2002) 35 EHRR 1121 240
Stallard *v* HM Advocate 1989 SCCR 248 58
Stapleton *v* R (1952) 86 CLR 358 143
State *v* Bristol (1938) 53 Wyo 304 124
State *v* Frazer (1936) 98 SW (2d) 707 112
(p. xxvi) State *v* Tally (1894) 15 So 722 424
Steane [1947] KB 997 174–6, 206
Steel *v* UK (1999) 28 EHRR 603 64
Stephenson [1979] QB 695 177, 178
Stewart and Schofield [1995] 1 Cr App R 441 440
Stone and Dobinson [1977] QB 354 290, 291
Stripp (1979) 69 Cr App R 318 93
Sullivan [1984] AC 156 91, 142, 143
Sullivan [2005] 1 Cr App R (S) 308 241
Sullivan and Ballion [2002] Crim LR 758 382

Sunday Times *v* UK (1979) 2 EHRR 245 63
Sutherland *v* UK (1997) 24 EHRR CD22 338, 340, 358
Sweet *v* Parsley [1970] AC 132 161, 164–6, 215
T [1990] Crim LR 256 92
T.S. [2008] CLW 08/07/1 355
Taaffe [1984] AC 539 466
Tabassum [2000] 2 Cr App R 238 321, 347, 353
Tan [1983] QB 1053 59, 62
Tandy [1989] 1 All ER 267 270
Taylor [1950] 2 KB 368 67
Taylor, Harrison and Taylor [1998] Crim LR 582 (CA) 421
Teixeira de Castro *v* Portugal (1999) 28 EHRR 101 224, 225
Tesco Supermarkets *v* Nattrass [1972] AC 153 150–2
Thabo Meli *v* R [1954] 1 WLR 228 158, 159
Thain [1985] NI 457 122
Thatcher *v* R (1987) 39 DLR (3d) 275 421
Thomas (1985) 81 Cr App R 331 316
Thomas [2006] Crim LR 71 221
Thomson (1965) 50 Cr App R 1 472
Thorne *v* Motor Trade Association [1937] AC 797 397
Thornton [1992] 1 All ER 306 254
Thornton *v* Mitchell [1940] 1 All ER 339 446
Tifaga *v* Department of Labour [1980] 2 NZLR 235 96
Tosti [1997] Crim LR 746 463, 464
Tuck *v* Robson [1970] 1 WLR 741 427
Tudor [1999] 1 Cr App R (S) 197 120
Turner (No. 2) (1971) 55 Cr App R 336 382
Tyrell [1894] 1 QB 710 449
Uddin *The Times*, 14 September 1929 263
United States *v* Holmes (1842) 26 Fed Cas 360 131
V and T *v* United Kingdom (1999) 30 EHRR 121 140
Valderrama-Vega [1985] Crim LR 220 206, 207
Vane *v* Yiannopoullos [1965] AC 486 149
Velumyl [1989] Crim LR 299 386
Venna [1976] QB 421 319
Vo *v* France (2005) 40 EHRR 259 238
Wacker [2003] QB 1203 291
Wai Yu-tsang [1992] 1 AC 269 411
Walkington (1979) 68 Cr App R 427 399
Wardrope [1960] Crim LR 770 216
Warner *v* Metropolitan Police Commissioner [1969] 2 AC 256 98, 99
Watson [1989] 1 WLR 684 289
Webbe [2002] 1 Cr App R (S) 82 402
Webster [2006] 2 Cr App R 6 433
Weller [2003] Crim LR 724 (CA) 266
Westminster City Council *v* Croyalgrange Ltd (1986) 83 Cr App R 155 180
Wheatley *v* Commissioner of Police of the British Virgin Islands [2006] 1 WLR 1683 375

White [2010] EWCA Crim 1929 349
Whitefield (1984) 79 Cr App R 36 448
Whitehouse [1977] QB 868 449
Whybrow (1951) 35 Cr App R 141 458, 459
Wilcox *v* Jeffery [1951] 1 All ER 464 423, 425
Willer (1986) 83 Cr App R 225 61, 205
Williams [1923] 1 KB 340 347
Willoughby [2005] Crim LR 389 291
Wilson [1984] AC 242 317, 318
Wilson [1996] 2 Cr App R 241 326, 327
Wilson [2007] QB 960 214
Wilson, Jenkins [1984] AC 242 312
Windle [1952] 2 QB 826 143
Winship, Re (1970) 397 US 358 71
Winterwerp *v* Netherlands (1979) 2 EHRR 387 144
Winzar *v* Chief Constable of Kent *The Times*, 28 March 1983 96
Wood [2002] EWCA Crim 832 382
Wood [2008] 2 Cr App R 34 271
Woods (1981) 74 Cr App Rep 312 198
Woollin [1999] 1 AC 82 172, 175, 180, 244, 245, 458
Woolmington *v* DPP [1935] AC 462 71
X and Y *v* Netherlands (1986) 8 EHRR 235 338
Yip Chiu-Cheung [1995] 1 AC 111 174, 450
Zecevic *v* R (1987) 162 CLR 645 217

Subscriber: Oxford University Press - Master Gratis Access; date: 17 January 2015



Principles of Criminal Law (7th edn)

Andrew Ashworth and Jeremy Horder

Publisher: Oxford University Press
Print ISBN-13: 9780199672684
DOI: 10.1093/he/9780199672684.001.0001

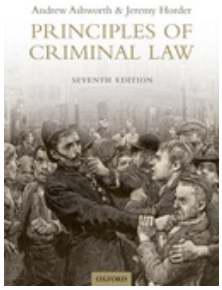
Print Publication Date: May 2013
Published online: Sep 2013

Table of Treaties and Conventions

Amsterdam Treaty 1999 48
European Convention on Human Rights 1950 8, 17, 27
Art 2 31, 48, 50, 55, 56, 109, 117, 118, 121, 126, 127, 129, 130, 136, 238
Art 3 31, 48, 50, 118, 136, 140, 278, 309
Art 4 48, 51
Art 4(1) 50
Art 5 49, 51, 63, 118, 125, 145, 309
Art 5(1)(e) 144
Art 6 43, 51, 140, 224, 240
Art 6(2) 49, 50, 71, 73, 142, 167, 488
Art 6(3) 52, 357
Art 6(3)(a) 421
Art 7 49–51, 57, 59–65, 68, 81, 220, 293, 412, 481
Art 7(1) 59
Art 8 31, 49, 51, 167, 278, 309, 326, 327, 357, 362, 365, 471
Art 8(1) 326
Art 8(2) 278

Arts 8–11 63
Art 9 49, 51, 81
Art 10 49, 51, 81, 125, 471
Art 11 49, 51, 331, 425, 471
Art 14 51
Art 15 51, 62
Protocol 1 51
Protocol 6 117, 240

EU Constitutional Treaty 48
Maastricht Treaty 1992 48



Principles of Criminal Law (7th edn)

Andrew Ashworth and Jeremy Horder

Publisher: Oxford University Press
Print ISBN-13: 9780199672684
DOI: 10.1093/he/9780199672684.001.0001

Print Publication Date: May 2013
Published online: Sep 2013

Table of legislation

United Kingdom

Abortion Act 1967 132
Accessories and Abettors Act 1861 419–21
Aggravated Vehicle-Taking Act 1992 394
s 1 300

Anti-Terrorism, Crime and Security Act 2001
s 39 315, 328
s 50 451

Banking Act 1987 405
s 35 370

Bribery Act 2010
s 1(2) 409

Children Act 1989 295
Children and Young Persons Act 1933
s 1 54, 332
Companies Act 1985
s 458 405
Companies Act 1989
s 41 383
Companies Acts 1985–1989 146
Computer Misuse Act 1990 381
Conspiracy and Protection of Property Act 1875 468
Consumer Protection Act 1987
s 12 333
Control of Pollution Act 1974
s 3(4)(a) 222
Coroners and Justice Act 2009 207, 252
s 52 268, 272
s 52(1)(a) 270
s 54 253
s 54(1) 253, 264
s 54(1)(c) 266, 267
s 54(2) 254, 264
s 54(3) 265, 266
s 54(4) 254, 255
s 55 253
s 55(3) 213, 254
s 54(6) 256, 263
s 54(6)(a) 254
s 54(6)(b) 254
s 55(2) 257
s 55(3) 262, 263
s 55(4) 258, 259, 262
s 55(4)(a) 259–61, 263
s 55(4)(b) 257
s 55(6)(c) 261, 262
s 56(6) 159
s 59 277
Corporate Manslaughter and Corporate Homicide Act 2007 47, 153, 155, 294, 483
s 1 154
s 1(2) 295
s 1(4) 154, 296
s 2(2) 295

ss 3–7 295
s 8 154, 304
Sch 1 295

Crime and Disorder Act 1998 11

s 1 5, 43, 53
s 28 315
s 28(1)(a) 315
s 28(1)(b) 315
s 29 315
ss 29–32 30
s 32 328
s 34 140
s 36 240

Criminal Attempts Act 1981 458

s 1 459
s 1(1) 170, 458, 462
s 1(2) 466
s 1(3) 466
s 4(3) 462
s 5 469, 474

Criminal Damage Act 1971 79, 181, 188, 190, 320, 458

s 1(2) 333, 460, 461
s 5(2) 120, 218

Criminal Justice Act 1967

s 8 198

Criminal Justice Act 1988

s 36 284
s 39 316, 317
s 93(2) 475
s 134 332
ss 139–141 333

Criminal Justice Act 1991 398

s 26(1) 370

Criminal Justice Act 2003 12, 301

s 142(1) 19
s 143(1) 20
s 144 14
(p. xxix) s 152(2) 18
s 153(2) 18
s 269 240, 241, 275

s 269(3) 241
Sch 3 14
Sch 21 241, 242, 275, 440

Criminal Justice and Immigration Act 2008 128

s 73 360, 362
s 76 49, 119, 120, 123, 130, 136, 196, 197
s 76(2) 119
s 76(3) 218
s 76(4) 196, 257
s 76(5) 196
s 76(7) 217
s 76(9) 119
Sch 15 360, 362

Criminal Justice and Public Order Act 1994 17, 329, 465

Pt I (ss 1–24) 469
Pt II (ss 25–30) 401
ss 34–37 11
Pt V (ss 61–80) 41
s 68 469
s 70 469
s 77 469
s 142 61, 340

Criminal Law Act 1967

s 3 119
s 4 95, 486

Criminal Law Act 1977

Pt I (ss 1–5) 469
s 1(1) 473, 474, 476
s 1(2) 475
s 2(2)(a) 472
s 2(2)(b) 472
s 2(2)(c) 473
s 4(1) 473
s 5 469
Pt II (ss 6–13) 401
s 7 402

Criminal Procedure (Insanity) Act 1964

s 6 142

Criminal Procedure (Insanity and Unfitness to Plead) Act 1991 90, 91, 94, 141, 143, 144

s 5 145

Domestic Violence, Crime and Victims Act 2004 54, 422
s 5 237, 300, 425
s 24 145, 267

Education Act 2005 34
Energy Act 2011 34
Enterprise Act 2002 405
Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 146, 405
s 397 370

Firearms Act 1968 332, 333
s 5 167

Forgery and Counterfeiting Act 1981 405
Fraud Act 2006 64, 80, 108, 368–70, 392, 454, 486, 489
s 1 405
s 1(2)(b) 407
s 1(2)(c) 407, 409
s 2 405, 407, 408, 410
s 2(1) 405
s 2(2)(b) 407
s 2(2)–(5) 406
s 3 407, 408
s 4(2) 409
s 5 407
s 11 410

Health and Safety at Work Act 1974 153, 294, 297, 333
s 2(1) 148
s 3 148, 149
s 3(1) 148
s 5(2)(a) 406

Health and Safety (Offences) Act 2008 333
Homicide Act 1957
s 2 145, 268
s 3 252, 253, 255, 258, 264
s 4 274–6

Human Rights Act 1998 3, 27, 48, 117
s 2 8, 49
s 3 8, 50, 68, 71
s 4 50
s 6 8, 59
s 10 50
s 12 51
s 13 51

s 19 49

Incitement to Disaffection Act 1934 222
Indecent Displays (Control) Act 1981 38
Infant Life Preservation Act 1929
s 1 239

Knives Act 1997 333
Law Reform (Year and a Day Rule) Act 1996
s 2 239

Legal Aid, Sentencing and Punishment Act 2012 469
s 144 401
s 148 119

Licensing Act 2003 168
s 136 149

(p. xxx) Magistrates' Courts Act 1980 32
s 20 14
s 101 72

Mental Capacity Act 2005
s 4 101

Mental Health Act 1983 141, 332
s 37 145

Mental Health Act 2007 141
Misuse of Drugs Act 1971 134
s 5(3) 97
s 5(4) 97
s 5(4)(b) 488

Obscene Publications Act 1959 72
Offences Against the Person Act 1861 67, 186, 309, 330, 334
s 16 486
s 18 168, 310–13, 332
s 20 169, 311–13, 315, 324
s 22 331
s 23 288, 331
s 24 331
s 27 332
s 32 333
s 33 333
s 38 314
s 47 138, 314, 315, 317

Offensive Weapons Act 1996 333
Police Act 1996
s 89 315

Police and Criminal Evidence Act 1984 10, 12
s 24(3)(b) 462
s 24(4)(b) 462
s 24(7)(b) 462
s 80 425, 472
Codes of Practice 10, 12

Powers of Criminal Courts (Sentencing) Act 2000
s 128 18

Prevention of Crime Act 1953 97, 333
s 1 488

Prevention of Terrorism Act 2005 17, 51
Proceeds of Crime Act 2002 475
ss 327–329 404

Prosecution of Offences Act 1985 2
Protection from Eviction Act 1977 401
Protection from Harassment Act 1997 335
s 1 134, 328
s 2 328
s 4 134, 328

Protection of Children Act 1978 53
Protection of Freedoms Act 2012
s 111 53

Public Order Act 1986 329–31, 335, 425
ss 1–4 329
s 4 330, 487
s 4(1) 187
s 4A 329
s 5 32, 41, 44, 49, 51, 329, 487
s 6(5) 195, 200, 201
s 8 329
s 19(1) 187
s 29 32

Racial and Religious Hatred Act 2006 32
Road Safety Act 2006 237
s 19 134
s 30 301

Road Traffic Act 1988 305
s 1 300
s 2(3) 301
s 2A(1) 300
s 2A(2) 300
s 2B 300
s 3ZA 301
s 3ZB 300

Road Traffic Regulation Act
s 87 134

Serious Crime Act 2007 17, 277, 426
Pt 2 (ss 44–67) 41, 47, 444, 471, 477, 483
s 44 424, 477, 478–80, 486, 490
ss 44–46 419
s 45 479, 480, 490
s 46 480, 481, 490
s 47(2)–(4) 483
s 47(4) 481
s 47(5)(a) 479
s 47(5)(b) 479
s 47(7)(b) 483
s 49(7) 480
s 50 135, 429, 434, 450
s 50(3) 483
s 50(3)(b) 135
s 51 483
s 59 119
s 65 487
s 65(1) 478
s 65(3) 479
Sch 3 480

Sexual Offences Act 1956 57
s 2 350
s 3 348

Sexual Offences Act 1967 38
Sexual Offences Act 2003 47, 49, 72, 80, 166, 170, 185, 188, 217, 221, 307, 335–66, 450, 479
s 1 341
s 1(1)(c) 231
ss 1–4 339, 346, 354
(p. xxxi) s 2 343, 344
s 3 344
s 4 344, 346, 359

s 5 167, 358
ss 5–8 231, 339, 356–8, 364
s 6 356
s 7 356
s 8 357, 359
s 9 358, 359, 459, 460, 483
s 9(1) 359
s 9(1)(c) 231
s 9(2) 359
ss 9–12 358, 361, 363
ss 9–13 360, 489
ss 9–15 339, 358
s 11 359, 365
s 12 365, 490
s 13 138, 358, 359, 490
s 14 135, 365, 489
s 14(3) 360
s 15 360
ss 16–19 138, 360, 361
ss 16–24 339
s 18 138, 365
s 19 365
s 21 360, 408
s 22 408
s 25 361
ss 25–29 339
s 26 362
s 28 362
s 30(2) 351, 363
ss 30–33 363
ss 30–44 339, 350
ss 34–37 363
ss 38–44 363
ss 45–50 53, 363
ss 52–60 339, 363
ss 61–63 339
s 62 363
s 63 363, 401
s 64 339, 362
s 65 339, 362
s 66 363
ss 66–71 339
s 67 363
s 67(1) 319
s 69 363
s 70 364
s 71 38, 364

s 73 134, 365
s 74 348, 349, 351, 352, 355, 360, 364
s 75 352, 354, 364
s 75(2) 349, 354
s 75(2)(d) 355
s 75(2)(f) 355
s 76 348, 352, 354, 364
s 76(2) 347
s 76(2)(a) 348
s 78 344, 345
s 79(2) 158, 342, 376
s 79(3) 342
s 79(8) 343, 344

Sexual Offences Act 2009
s 37 365

Sexual Offences (Amendment) Act 2000 360
Statutory Instruments Act 1946
s 3(2) 219

Street Offences Act 1959 58
Suicide Act 1961
s 2 277, 279
s 2(1) 276–8
s 2A 277

Terrorism Act 2000
s 57 236

Terrorism Act 2006
s 1 477
s 1(1) 42
s 1(2) 41
s 1(3)(b) 42
s 1(5)(b) 41
s 5 42, 454
s 20(2) 42

Theft Act 1968 70, 79, 368–70
s 1 372, 410
s 2 390, 391, 407, 412
s 2(1) 393
s 2(1)(a) 218, 390, 396
s 2(1)(b) 390
s 2(2) 390
s 3(1) 373, 377, 403

s 3(2) 378, 393, 403
s 4 382
s 4(1) 381
s 4(3) 382, 393
s 4(4) 382
s 5 382–4
s 5(1) 382, 383
s 5(2) 384
s 5(3) 384, 385
s 5(4) 380, 385
s 6 387, 389
s 6(1) 388
s 6(2) 388
s 8 395, 397
s 8(2) 313
s 9 363, 398, 399, 417
s 9(1)(a) 400, 401, 412
s 9(1)(b) 400, 401
(p. xxxii) s 10 400
s 12 386, 389, 394
s 13 381, 402
s 15 405
s 16 405
s 17 405
s 19 405
s 21 397
s 21(1) 85, 220
s 22 402
s 25 97
s 34(2) 397

Theft Act 1978
ss 1, 2 405

Theft (Amendment) Act 1996 70, 71
Trade Descriptions Act 1968 150
Trade Disputes Act 1906 468
Water Resources Act 1991 110
s 85 149

France

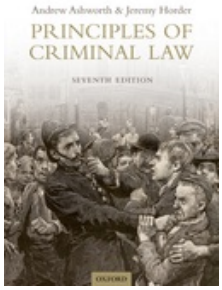
Code Penale
Art 121–3 292
Art 221 282
Art 221–4-8 471

Art 221–6 286, 292
Art 222–7 286, 289
Art 222–17 487
Art 223 425
Art 223–15–2 376
Art 311–1 389
Art 345 284

USA

California Penal Code
s 484–502–9 379

Model Penal Code 138, 160, 175
s 2.01(1) 88
s 2.02(s)(c) 176
s 2.03 108
s 2.04(3) 223
s 2.5.01 462
s 2.06(3) 428, 433
s 2.13 224
s 3.02 131
s 3.04 121
s 3.04(2)(a)(i) 121
s 4.01 145
s 6.02(4) 165
s 210.3.1(b) 283



Principles of Criminal Law (7th edn)

Andrew Ashworth and Jeremy Horder

Publisher: Oxford University Press
Print ISBN-13: 9780199672684
DOI: 10.1093/he/9780199672684.001.0001

Print Publication Date: May 2013
Published online: Sep 2013

1. Criminal Justice and the Criminal Law

Chapter: (p. 1) 1. Criminal Justice and the Criminal Law
Author(s): Andrew Ashworth and Jeremy Horder
DOI: 10.1093/he/9780199672684.003.0001

1.1 The contours of criminal liability
1.2 The machinery of English criminal law
1.3 The sources of English criminal law
1.4 The criminal law in action
1.5 Outline of the aims and functions of the criminal law
1.6 The criminal law and sentencing
Further reading

The operation of the criminal law requires little explanation in clear cases. Someone who deliberately kills or rapes another is liable to be prosecuted, convicted, and sentenced. Criminal liability is the strongest formal censure that society can inflict, and it may also result in a sentence which amounts to a severe deprivation of the ordinary liberties of the offender. Of course, there are other official deprivations of our liberties: taxation is one, depriving citizens of a proportion of their income, or adding a compulsory levy to commercial transactions (for

example, Value Added Tax). And taxation, no less than the criminal law, may be seen as justified by the mutual obligations necessary for worthwhile community living. But the taxing of an activity does not carry any implication of 'ought not to do', whereas criminal liability carries the strong implication of 'ought not to do'. It is the censure conveyed by criminal liability which marks out its special social significance, and it is the imposition of this official censure, and the ensuing liability to state punishment ordered by the court, that requires a clear social justification.

The chief concern of the criminal law is to prohibit behaviour that represents a serious wrong against an individual or against some fundamental social value or institution.[1] This suggests, perhaps, that there are some wrongs that are not serious enough (or appropriate for) any legal liability, such as breaking a promise to a friend without good reason, or divulging information given in confidence by a friend, and there are some **(p. 2)** wrongs that are serious enough for civil liability—such as breach of contract—but not for criminal liability. But the notion that English criminal law is *only* concerned with serious wrongs must be abandoned as one considers the broader canvas of criminal liability. There are many offences for which any element of stigma is diluted almost to vanishing point, as with illegal parking, riding a bicycle without lights, or dropping litter. This is not to suggest that all such offences are equally unimportant; there are some situations in which illegal parking can cause danger to others, for example. Yet it remains true that there are many offences for which criminal liability is merely imposed by Parliament as a practical means of regulating an activity, without implying the element of social censure which is characteristic of the major or traditional crimes. There is thus no general dividing line between criminal and non-criminal conduct which corresponds to a distinction between immoral and moral conduct, or between seriously wrongful and other conduct. The boundaries of the criminal law are explicable largely as the result of exercises of political power at particular points in history.

The idea of a crime is that it is something that rightly concerns the State, and not just the person(s) affected by the wrongdoing. Many crimes are civil wrongs as well (torts or breaches of contract, for example), and it is for the injured party to decide whether or not to sue for damages. But the decision to make conduct into a crime implies that there is a public interest in ensuring that such conduct does not happen and that, when it does, there is the possibility of State punishment. The police and the Crown Prosecution Service take decisions on whether to prosecute someone who is reasonably suspected of committing an offence: although they should 'take into account any views expressed by the victim regarding the impact that the offence has had', 'prosecutors should take an overall view of the public interest'.[2] Moreover, even if an individual citizen is wronged behind closed doors, as in cases of 'domestic violence', the State has an interest:

> But whatever else is unclear about the rights and wrongs of a domestic dispute … such violence should surely not be seen as a matter for negotiation or compromise. It should be condemned by the whole community as an unqualified wrong; and this is done by defining and prosecuting it as a crime.[3]

This view is sometimes phrased in terms of crimes as 'attacks on the community as a whole', but, as Grant Lamond argues,[4] a more convincing way of understanding crimes as public wrongs is to regard them not as wrongs *to* the community but as wrongs that the community is appropriately *responsible* for punishing. That, in philosophical terms, is what is characteristic

of crimes, at least of fault-based crimes. Thus it is in the public interest to provide for the punishment of the serious wrongs involved in violent (p. 3) acts, wherever they occur and whoever inflicts them. But in practice matters are not so clear-cut: some crimes simply cannot be prosecuted without the victim's testimony, and so the victim's refusal to co-operate with the prosecution may be determinative.[5] Victims of crime now have the right to make a Victim Personal Statement about the effects of the offence on them, although the courts should decline to take the further step of taking account of the views of a victim or victim's family on the question of sentence.[6] Various pro-victim initiatives, and the advent of forms of restorative justice, have raised further questions about the interface between crimes as 'offences against the State' and the involvement of victims in decision-making in criminal justice.[7]

Given the variety of forms of behaviour that have been criminalized, it is no surprise that Glanville Williams ended his search for a definition of crime without identifying any criterion based on subject-matter. He concluded that only a formal definition is sustainable: 'in short, a crime is an act capable of being followed by criminal proceedings having a criminal outcome'.[8] But one consequence of the Human Rights Act 1998 is that it is no longer for Parliament to stipulate that proceedings should be regarded as civil only. Article 6 of the European Convention on Human Rights confers extra procedural rights on any person 'charged with a criminal offence'—the presumption of innocence, a right to legal aid, a right to confront witnesses, a right to an interpreter, and so forth. The European Court of Human Rights in Strasbourg has insisted that the question whether a person is 'charged with a criminal offence' is for the court to determine by looking at the substance of the situation. This amounts to what one might term an 'anti-subversion device', created by the Strasbourg Court to prevent governments from manipulating the criminal/civil boundary and thereby avoiding those extra procedural rights. The leading decisions establish that if (a) the proceedings are brought by a public authority, and (b) there is a culpability requirement, or (c) there are potentially severe consequences (such as imprisonment or a significant financial penalty), the person will be deemed to be 'charged with a criminal offence' and will be granted the full Art. 6 protections.[9] The effect of deciding that particular proceedings are essentially criminal is not to alter the court in which the case should be heard, but to require the court to ensure that the defendant is accorded the full rights conferred by Art. 6 on any person 'charged with a criminal offence'.[10] This is a development of particular significance, not least because it is the magnitude of the penalty (the possibility of imprisonment or a sizeable fine) that is a major factor inclining the court to declare the proceedings criminal. In this way, the idea of criminal law is firmly linked with the possibility of a significant sentence, which in turn calls for extra procedural protections for defendants.[11]

(p. 4) Why might governments wish to avoid allowing defendants to have the full protections appropriate to criminal proceedings? One reason is that they may wish to use the criminal law to deal with relatively minor infractions, in a kind of streamlined procedure. Some European countries have instituted a separate system of administrative offences, with low penalties, as a way of dealing swiftly, inexpensively, effectively, and not unfairly with non-serious wrongdoing.[12] English law does not have a general separate system dealing with minor 'infringements' rather than with serious wrongs, but in many individual areas of activity—such as environmental control, animal welfare, and some aspects of financial service provision—it does permit regulators to impose civil or administrative penalties rather than using criminal prosecution against violators. What has, though, been particularly noteable, as a development in England and Wales, has been the creation of more serious forms of hybrid measure to

regulate and deter behaviour that is considered 'anti-social' or that is thought to present an unacceptable risk to others. Examples include anti-social behaviour orders, risk of sexual harm orders, foreign travel restriction orders, and violent offender orders. These new measures, often referred to as civil preventive orders, consist of two stages. The first is the imposition, by a court in civil proceedings, of an order prohibiting D from doing certain things or going to certain places. The second is a criminal offence of failing without reasonable excuse to comply with that order, usually carrying a maximum sentence of five years' imprisonment. The only element of the civil preventive order that falls within the criminal law, according to the government and the judiciary, is the offence of failure to comply. Even though the contents of that offence (i.e. the prohibitions imposed on D) are determined in civil proceedings without the protections of criminal procedure, the courts have not used their power to declare that the two stages of proceedings taken together are criminal in substance.[13] They have accepted the government's device of de-coupling the two stages: the House of Lords recognized the potentially severe consequences for D of a breach of the prohibition(s), but its only concession was the compromise of requiring the criminal (rather than the civil) standard of proof in the civil proceedings.[14] The upshot is that a court sitting in civil proceedings can create a kind of personal criminal code for D, breach of which renders him liable to a maximum punishment higher than that for many ordinary criminal offences.

The best known example of this is the anti-social behaviour order, or ASBO. It was conceived as a means for tackling social problems that are undeniable in their effect (p. 5) on the quality of others' lives, and it became the talisman of civil preventive orders because the problem of witness intimidation and the focus of criminal proceedings on a particular event (rather than on aggregate nuisance) was thought to render the criminal law insufficiently effective. A court can only make an ASBO if satisfied that D has acted in a manner likely to cause harassment, alarm, or distress, and if the prohibitions in the order are 'necessary' for the purpose of protecting persons from further anti-social acts by D (Crime and Disorder Act 1998, s. 1, as amended). However, the prohibitions may include non-criminal or criminal conduct, they must last for at least two years, and about half of breach prosecutions result in imprisonment. This raises serious questions about whether civil preventive orders, and the way in which they use the criminal law so as to avoid or minimize its procedural protections, constitute a lawful, fair, or proportionate response to the risks concerned.[15] More broadly, these orders may be regarded as one manifestation of a more general movement away from the paradigms of the criminal law, and the consequent side-lining of the protections of criminal procedure. Thus the greater use of diversion from the criminal process, of fixed penalties, of summary trials, of hybrid civil–criminal processes, of strict liability offences, of incentives to plead guilty, and of preventive orders—all of these challenge the paradigm of the criminal law, and challenge the way it is traditionally presented.[16]

1.1 The contours of criminal liability

When we refer to criminal liability, what sort of conduct are we talking about? The answer may differ not only from one country to another, but also from one era to another in the same country. Thus in the last fifty years there have been several changes in the boundaries of the law of sexual offences, and (for example) most homosexual encounters which were criminal in England before 1967 are not criminal now, whereas some forms of insider trading on the stock market and of the possession of indecent photographs have become criminal. There are

certain serious wrongs which are criminal in most jurisdictions, but in general there is no straightforward moral or social test of whether conduct is criminal. The most reliable test is the formal one: is the conduct prohibited, on pain of conviction and sentence?

The contours of criminal liability may be considered under three headings: the range of offences; the scope of criminal liability; and the conditions of criminal liability. The *range* of criminal offences in England and Wales is enormous. There are violations of the person, including offences of causing death and wounding, sexual offences, (p. 6) certain public order offences, offences relating to safety standards at work and in sports stadiums, offences relating to firearms and other weapons, and serious road traffic offences. Then there are violations of general public interests, including offences against state security, offences against public decency, offences against the administration of justice, and various offences connected with public obligations such as the payment of taxes. A third major sphere of liability comprises violations of the environment and the proper conditions of communal living, including the various pollution offences, offences connected with health and purity standards, and minor offences of public order and public nuisance. Fourthly, there are violations of property interests, from crimes of damage and offences of theft and fraud, to offences of harassment of tenants and crimes of entering residential premises. And then there is a mass of financial, business, and industrial offences, often created in order to enforce a regulatory scheme, but many having maximum penalties as high as seven years' imprisonment. More will be said about these five major fields of criminal liability in Chapter 2. As in many other legal systems, there is a whole host of miscellaneous criminal prohibitions as well.

When we turn to the *scope* of criminal liability, we raise the question of the circumstances in which a person who does not actually cause one of the above harms may, nevertheless, be held criminally liable. In legal terms, the question has two dimensions: inchoate liability and criminal complicity. A crime is described as inchoate when the prohibited harm has not yet occurred. Several of the offences mentioned in the last paragraph are defined in terms of 'doing an act with intent to cause *X*', and they do not therefore require proof that the prohibited harm actually occurred. Additionally, there are the general inchoate offences of attempting to commit a crime (e.g. attempted murder), conspiring with one or more other people to commit a crime (e.g. conspiracy to rob), and encouraging or assisting crime. These offences broaden the scope of criminal liability considerably, by providing for the conviction of persons who merely try or plan to cause harm. Turning to criminal complicity, this doctrine is designed to ensure the conviction of a person who, without actually committing the full offence, plays a significant part in an offence committed by another. Thus a person may be convicted for aiding and abetting, counselling or procuring another to commit a crime, or for participating in a joint criminal venture during which another participant commits a more serious offence than planned.

The *conditions* to be fulfilled before an individual is convicted of an offence vary from one crime to another. There are many crimes which require only minimal fault or no personal fault at all. These are usually termed offences of 'strict liability': some of them are aimed at companies, but others (including many road traffic offences) are aimed at individuals. More of the traditional offences, which have been penalized by the common law of England for centuries, are said to require '*mens rea*'. This Latin term indicates, generally, that a person should not be convicted unless it is proved that he intended to cause the harm, or knowingly risked the occurrence of the harm. The emphasis of these requirements has been upon the

defendant's personal awareness of what was being done or omitted. However, neither the legislature nor the courts subscribe to a firm rule that any serious offence should require proof of *mens rea*: not only (p. 7) are most of the offences tried in magistrates' courts strict liability offences, but half of the offences triable in the Crown Court have at least one strict liability element.[17]

Beyond the *mens rea* or fault requirement, which may differ in its precise form from crime to crime, there is a range of possible defences to criminal liability, so that even people who intentionally inflict harms may be acquitted if they acted in self-defence, whilst insane, whilst under duress, and so on.

The contours of the criminal law are thus determined by the interplay between the *range* of offences, the *scope* of liability, and the *conditions* of liability. Inevitably there are times when the discussion focuses on only one of the elements, but the relevance of the other two must always be kept in view if the discussion is not to lose perspective.

1.2 The machinery of english criminal law

The criminal courts in England and Wales are the magistrates' courts and the Crown Court. Those offences considered least serious are summary offences, triable only in the magistrates' courts. Those offences considered most serious are triable only on indictment, in the Crown Court. A large number of offences, such as theft and most burglaries, are 'triable either way', in a magistrates' court or the Crown Court. If a defendant decides to plead guilty to an 'either way' offence, the magistrates can proceed to sentence (or commit to the Crown Court for sentence) without further ado. If the defendant signifies an intention to plead not guilty, proceedings to determine the mode of trial are held before magistrates. The magistrates may decide (having heard representations from the prosecutor) that the case is so serious that it should be committed to the Crown Court for trial. If they decide not to commit it to the Crown Court, the defendant still has an absolute right to elect trial by jury. In practice a majority of 'either way' offences are dealt with in magistrates' courts, since neither the defendant nor the magistrates think Crown Court trial necessary. However, the question of a defendant's 'right' to trial by jury is a perennial subject of debate, as we will see in section 1.4. Finally, it should be added that the great majority of prosecutions of persons under 18 are brought in Youth Courts, where hearings are less formal and take place before specially trained magistrates.

1.3 The sources of English criminal law

The main source of English criminal law has been the common law, as developed through decisions of the courts and the works of such institutional writers as Coke and (p. 8) Hale in the seventeenth century, and Hawkins, Foster, and Blackstone in the eighteenth century. The bulk of English criminal law is now to be found in scattered statutes. There was a major consolidation of criminal legislation in 1861, and the Offences Against the Person Act of that year remains the principal statute on that subject. In recent years Parliament has created a range of new crimes, from keeping a dangerous dog to stalking, from failing to comply with an anti-social behaviour order to intimidating witnesses. However, some offences are still governed by the common law and lack a statutory definition—most notably, murder, manslaughter, assault, and conspiracy to defraud. Many of the doctrines that determine the

conditions of criminal liability are also still governed by the common law—not merely defences such as duress, intoxication, insanity, and automatism, but also basic concepts such as intention and recklessness.

The judges therefore retain a central place in the development of the criminal law. They seem to bear the major responsibility for developing the conditions and the scope of criminal liability, and also exert considerable influence on the shape of the criminal law through their interpretation of statutory offences. Moreover, the Human Rights Act 1998 bestowed on the judges further powers and duties. Section 6 requires them always to act compatibly with Convention rights; s. 3 requires them to interpret statutory provisions, so far as is possible, in such a way as is compatible with Convention rights; and s. 2 obliges them to take account of the jurisprudence of the European Court of Human Rights. The higher courts do have the power to make a 'declaration of incompatibility' if they cannot otherwise bring a statute into conformity with the Convention, but that power is exercised sparingly. Cases in which the courts have used their interpretive powers under the Human Rights Act will be signalled throughout the book.[18] The Convention has not had as large an effect on the criminal law as upon criminal procedure and evidence, but there are already several judicial decisions in which the Human Rights Act has made a difference.

Also of significance is European Community law, not least because it has direct effect in this country and thus (unlike the Convention) automatically takes precedence over domestic laws. Where a rule of English criminal law unjustifiably curtails a right conferred by Community law (such as the free movement of goods), the domestic law is disapplied and the defendant should not be convicted. European Community law has not yet had great effects on English criminal law, particularly the more serious offences which occupy much of the discussion in this book, but its potential as a source of liability and of defences should not be overlooked.[19]

One obvious difference between English criminal law and that of most other European jurisdictions is the absence of a criminal code. The somewhat faltering steps taken towards the enactment of an English criminal code are described at Chapter 3.2. (p. 9) For the present, we must record that the absence of a criminal code reduces the internal consistency of English criminal law (because it has to be gathered from judicial decisions, scattered statutes, and occasionally from the old institutional writers) and also makes it harder to locate the applicable law. The attraction of these practical arguments in favour of a code is powerful, but, as we shall see, there has been controversy about which parts of the criminal law should be codified and in what way.

1.4 The criminal law in action

It would be unwise to assume that the criminal law as stated in the statutes and the textbooks reflects the way in which it is enforced in actual social situations. The key to answering the question of how the criminal law is likely to impinge on a person's activities lies in the discretion of the police and other law enforcement agents: they are not obliged to go out and look for offenders wherever they suspect that crimes are being committed; they are not obliged to prosecute every person against whom they have sufficient evidence. On the other hand, they cannot prosecute unless the offence charged is actually laid down by statute or at common law. So we must consider the interaction between the law itself and the practical operation of the criminal process if we are to understand the social reality of the criminal law.

Even before the discretion of law enforcement officers comes into play, there is often a decision to be taken by a member of the public as to whether to report a suspected offence. The Crime Survey England and Wales (formerly the British Crime Survey) suggests that at least a half of all offences are not reported to the police,[20] often because they are thought to be too trivial, or because it is thought that the police would be unable to do anything constructive, or because it is thought that the police 'would not be interested'. Even where an assault results in hospital treatment, a significant proportion of victims fail to report the offence or at least to make a formal complaint.[21] Thus, if an offence is to have any chance of being recorded, either the victim or a witness must take the decision to report the offence to the authorities. About four-fifths of the offences which come to police attention are reported by the public. This means that people's (sometimes stereotyped) views on what forms of behaviour amount to criminal offences, and also on whether the police should be called, exert considerable influence on the cases entering the criminal justice system. For this and various other reasons, many offences committed at work or in the home remain concealed from official eyes. As for the one-fifth of offences that come to light in other ways, most of (p. 10) these are observed or discovered by the police themselves. There are some crimes, such as drug dealing and other so-called 'crimes without victims', which are unlikely to be reported and which the police have to go looking for. And there are other crimes, such as obstructing a police officer and some of the public order offences, which the police may use as a means of controlling situations—charging people who disobey police instructions about moving on, keeping quiet, etc.[22] In these contexts the police use the criminal law as a resource to reinforce their authority.

It will thus be seen that most police investigations of offences are 'reactive', that is, reacting to information from the public about possible offences. Only in a minority of cases do the police operate 'proactively'. Other law enforcement officials may have a larger proactive role. Her Majesty's Revenue and Customs (HMRC) investigate offences relating to taxation and smuggling. Various inspectorates are required to oversee the observance of legal standards in industry and commerce—the Health and Safety Executive (which includes seven inspectorates: Factory, Agriculture, Nuclear, Offshore, Mines, Railway, and Quarries), the Environment Agency, the Environmental Health Departments of local authorities, and so on. Although these agencies often react to specific complaints or accidents, much of their work involves visits to premises or building sites to check on compliance with the law. It is therefore proactive work: the number of offences coming to an inspectorate's attention is largely a reflection of the number of visits and inspections carried out, and the response depends on the general policies and specific working practices of that inspectorate.[23]

What happens when an offence has been reported to the police? In most cases the offence is recorded and the police may investigate it. However, the Crime Survey England and Wales suggests that about one-half of all incidents reported to the police as crimes are not recorded as such: sometimes the evidence is thought unconvincing, or the offence too minor, or the incident redefined as lost property rather than theft of property. Of those that are recorded as crimes, the police trace around 28 per cent to an offender or suspected offender. The proportion of offences thus detected is much higher for offences of violence (around one-half) —where the victim often sees and knows the offender—than for the offences where the perpetrator's identity will often be unknown (such as burglary, 13 per cent, and robbery, 20 per cent) and for offences that may be thought not to justify a great investment of police time

and resources (e.g. criminal damage, 14 per cent).[24]

When the police find a suspect, they will invariably try to question this person. The Police and Criminal Evidence Act 1984 and its Codes of Practice require investigators to follow certain procedures before and during any interrogation, including notifying suspects of the right to a free and private consultation with a lawyer. The tape recording (p. 11) of suspects' statements is a routine feature at police stations, although statements (allegedly) made elsewhere remain admissible in evidence. Many of the miscarriages of justice uncovered in the late 1980s and early 1990s, after wrongly convicted people had spent many years in prison, stemmed from misconduct by the police at this stage of the investigation, including the falsification of notes of interviews. Following the quashing of convictions in the cases of the Guildford Four and the Birmingham Six, the Royal Commission on Criminal Justice was appointed in 1991 to examine the effectiveness of the criminal justice system. In its report the Royal Commission recognized that 'confessions which are later found to be false have led or contributed to serious miscarriages of justice',[25] but one of its key proposals, on preserving the right of silence, was rejected by the then government in favour of introducing a law that permits adverse inferences from failure to answer police questions.[26]

When the police have completed their questioning, they should release the suspect if they have insufficient evidence. If they believe they have sufficient evidence, or if the suspect has admitted guilt, there are choices to be made between prosecution, one of the forms of 'caution', and no further action. In recent years young offenders have usually received a caution, in the form of either a reprimand or a final warning under the Crime and Disorder Act 1998. For some years the policy had been to delay the entry of young people into the formal criminal justice system, in the belief that cautions were no less likely to be effective in preventing further offences, and that labelling a youth as a delinquent through formal court proceedings could reinforce that person's tendency to behave like a delinquent. The system of reprimands and warnings introduced by the 1998 Act was intended to be more rigorous and more demanding of young offenders (a warning also involves referring the young offender to a youth offending team, who may require the offender to participate in a scheme designed to prevent re-offending).[27] Thus, although the emphasis remains on the prevention of future offending, the rhetoric and the method have changed to confronting offenders with their behaviour and helping them to take more responsibility for their actions.[28] The emphasis of the Youth Justice Board remains on diverting most young offenders away from court, and making use of alternative approaches such as restorative conferences that may bring the offender face-to-face with the victim.[29] The proportion of young offenders receiving reprimands or warnings rather than prosecution is around two-thirds for boys and four-fifths for girls in the 12–14 age group, while in the 15–17 age group the proportions are about 45 per cent for boys and some two-thirds for girls. For adults the police may also decide to caution an offender, but again the use of cautions has declined somewhat from its peak (p. 12) in the early 1990s, so that around 20 per cent of adult male offenders and one-third of adult female offenders receive a caution. National Standards encourage the police to prefer a formal caution to prosecution where the offence is relatively minor, where the offender is old, infirm, or suffering from mental disturbance, and in other situations where there is little blame. Since 2003, the Crown Prosecution Service (CPS) has had the power to offer an offender a conditional caution, in cases where there is both an admission by the offender and objectively sufficient evidence. The conditions specified may include the making of reparation or participation in a restorative justice process. The offender is required to sign a document that spells out the conditions and

records his admission of the offence.[30] There are also various out-of-court disposals, such as cannabis warnings, Penalty Notices for Disorder, and fixed penalties.[31]

Standing in contrast to the preferred use of prosecutions for suspected adult offenders (as distinct from juveniles) is the long-standing preference for alternatives to prosecution among the various inspectorates and other public authorities, such as HMRC. Many of these agencies regard their main aim as securing compliance rather than convictions. The Environment Agency, for example, states: 'We regard prevention as better than cure. Our general approach is to engage with business to educate and enable compliance.'[32] Such agencies therefore tend to rely on informal and formal warnings as a means of putting pressure on companies, employers, taxpayers, and the like to conform to the law. Most of these agencies regard prosecution as a last resort: the criminal law remains as a background source of the pressure towards compliance which the agencies are able to exert. Thus, for example, the HMRC Prosecutions Office typically responds to tax evasion through civil procedures and rarely resorts to prosecution.[33] In these contexts, then, the criminal law is very much in the background, and the criminal process is experienced by relatively few of those caught breaking the law.[34]

Where the police are involved, however, prosecution remains the normal response for persons aged 18 and over. The initial decision whether or not to charge is taken under the 'statutory charging scheme' introduced by the Criminal Justice Act 2003. This means that police and prosecutors work together at this stage, but it is the CPS that takes the decision whether to charge and, if so, with what offence to charge the suspect. One of the aspects to be considered is evidential sufficiency: is there enough evidence on each of the elements required to prove the offence, so that it can be said that there is a realistic prospect of conviction? This requires the prosecutor to consider both the amount of evidence available and its admissibility in court (e.g. whether there has been a breach of the Police and Criminal Evidence Act 1984 and its Codes of Practice). The (p. 13) second, related, factor is whether a prosecution would be in the public interest. There is a Code for Crown Prosecutors (latest version, 2010) to provide general guidance on this and other decisions which prosecutors must take, and there is detailed guidance on prosecution policy for particular types of offence.[35]

It will be apparent from the preceding paragraphs that the defendants and offences brought to court form a highly selective sample of all detected crimes. Those convicted in court are certainly a small sample of the whole: the Home Office has estimated that if one takes account of those offences not reported, not recorded, not cleared up, and cautioned rather than prosecuted, only some 2 or 3 per cent of crimes result in a conviction.[36] Although this rises to 10 per cent for crimes such as wounding, it would not be accurate to say that the cases brought to court involve the most serious offences and offenders, because:

(1) there are crimes for which a person under 18 would not be prosecuted, whereas a person of 18 or over would be;
(2) fairly serious crimes committed in the home or in certain workplaces may sometimes not be reported or prosecuted,[37] whereas prosecution is often the normal response to less serious offences in the street; and
(3) some of the crimes of petty theft which are prosecuted are, by almost any measure, less serious than many crimes which HMRC or other regulatory agencies deal with by

warnings, civil penalties, or other alternative methods.

What emerges from this is that adults suspected of committing 'traditional' offences outside their own home are much more likely to appear in court than adults known to have committed more regulatory kinds of offence, such as tax evasion, pollution, having an unsafe workplace, and so on. Even leaving young people aside, then, court proceedings are a poor representation of the reality of crime in our society.

It will be evident, too, that it is not rules but discretionary decisions which characterize these early stages in the criminal process. Police decision-making is largely discretionary, structured only by the cautioning guidelines, local arrangements for dealing with young defendants, police force orders, and internal police supervision. As research into public order policing confirms, there are considerable variations in policy and practice, not just between police force areas but also among police divisions in the same force,[38] and this determines the nature and volume of cases placed before the CPS for consideration for prosecution. The same is largely true of the regulatory and other agencies which have the power to prosecute. Moreover, the elements of discretion do (p. 14) not stop with the decision whether or not to prosecute. A question of particular importance for our present purposes is that of deciding what offence to charge. In some cases there is little choice, but there are other cases where the prosecutor can choose between a more serious and a less serious offence. If there is a prosecution for the higher offence, it is usually possible for a court to convict of a lesser offence if it does not find the higher offence proved. But this does not mean that prosecutors routinely try for the higher offence. If, for example, the lower offence is triable only summarily (i.e. in a magistrates' court), whereas the higher offence is 'triable either way' (i.e. in a magistrates' court or at the Crown Court), the prosecutor may prefer the lesser charge so as to keep the case in a magistrates' court—for various reasons, one of which may be the belief that a conviction is more likely if the case is tried by magistrates rather than by a jury.[39]

Whether the case is set down for trial in a magistrates' court or the Crown Court, the prosecution may reach an agreement with the defence to accept a plea of not guilty to the offence charged but guilty to a lesser offence, or not guilty to some offences charged and guilty to others. We have also noted that, where a defendant on an indictable charge signifies an intention to plead guilty, the magistrates' court may proceed to pass sentence (or may commit to the Crown Court for sentence). A guilty plea, even to a lesser offence, is often advantageous to the prosecutor because a conviction is assured and the hazards of a trial (with the possibility that a key witness will not give evidence convincingly) are avoided. A guilty plea may also appear advantageous to the defendant, since the conviction may be for a lesser offence (or for fewer offences). The sentence should also be lower because of the guilty plea, as s. 144 of the Criminal Justice Act 2003 requires. Guidelines issued by the Sentencing Guidelines Council establish a sliding scale of sentence reductions, running from a one-third discount for indicating a guilty plea at the earliest opportunity down to a one-tenth reduction for a guilty plea 'at the door of the court'.[40] These incentives could generate considerable pressure on a defendant to plead guilty even where innocence is maintained, if defence lawyers emphasize the strength of the evidence for the prosecution, etc., and there are clearly some cases in which innocent persons feel driven to plead guilty.[41] Average prison sentences for those pleading guilty are around a third below those convicted after a trial—a striking difference. Moreover, there are other procedural incentives to plead guilty, such as the right to ask the court for an indication of whether the sentence will be custodial or non-

custodial (the court is not obliged to give the indication).[42]

Not only, then, are the cases prosecuted a selective sample of all crimes committed, but the offences for which convictions are recorded may sometimes underestimate (p. 15) the true seriousness of the crimes brought to court. It may be in the apparent best interests of both prosecution and defence to settle for conviction of a less serious offence. The way in which offences are defined may facilitate or constrain many of these decisions, and so the structure of the criminal law may have a greater direct influence at this point than at some earlier stages in the criminal process. However, the predominance of official discretion opens the way for other motivations, including bias and prejudice, to enter in. Although the ratio of male to female known offenders is around five to one, we have already seen that females are cautioned (rather than prosecuted) at a higher rate than men. The picture at the sentencing stage is rather complex, with some women receiving less severe sentences than comparable men, but some receiving disposals which may turn out to be more intrusive and therefore more severe.[43] There is also some evidence of racial discrimination in the pre-trial system,[44] although some of this is a form of structural bias stemming from the way in which the system imposes disincentives on those who elect Crown Court trial and who maintain a plea of not guilty.

This brief outline has, it is hoped, demonstrated some of the ways in which the criminal law in action differs from the law as declared in the statutes and in court decisions. Little has been said about the ways in which defence lawyers may sometimes construct the defence around their own working priorities as well as around reconstructed versions of the defendant's narrative,[45] but that, too, is a factor in the presentation and the outcome of cases. So far as official agencies are concerned, each case brought to court is the product of a system which is heavily reliant on victims and other members of the public for the detection of offenders and the provision of evidence,[46] and which leaves considerable discretion in the hands of the police, other law enforcement agencies, and the CPS. We have seen that that discretion is exercised unevenly, in the sense that those who commit crimes on the streets and in other public places are likely to be prosecuted, even for relatively minor incidents, whereas offenders of certain kinds (‘white-collar’) are rarely brought to court. This not only emphasizes that the law in practice is different from the law in the books. It also raises questions about priorities and social justice: should we not have a ranking of crimes that makes it clear which are the most serious and which are the least serious, with the greatest efforts directed at enforcement against those who perpetrate the most serious offences, and the strongest measures taken against those offenders?[47]

(p. 16) 1.5 Outline of the aims and functions of the criminal law

Is the criminal law necessary at all? It has been suggested from time to time that law in general and criminal laws in particular are needed only in conflict-ridden societies, and that the establishment of a political system based on consensus would remove the sources of crime and, therefore, the phenomenon itself.[48] This view may be attacked for its simplistic assessment of the causes of crime, but it is sufficient for present purposes to state that no modern industrially developed country seems able to dispense with criminal law, and, indeed, that occasional instances of the breakdown of policing have led to increases in certain forms of criminal behaviour.[49] This suggests that one fundamental reason for having a criminal law

backed by sanctions is deterrent or preventive: so long as its provisions are enforced with some regularity, it constitutes a standing disincentive to crime and reinforces those social conventions and other inhibitions which are already in place. Fundamental though this proposition is, it should not obscure the importance of two related propositions. One is that criminal prosecutions should not be regarded as a primary means of protecting individual and social interests. In terms of prevention, more can probably be achieved through various techniques of situational crime prevention,[50] social crime prevention, and general social and educational policies[51]—not least because relatively few offences lead to a court appearance and conviction. The other proposition is that the underlying deterrent rationale of the criminal law does not support the notion that changes in particular laws, or changes in sentencing levels, ought to be pursued for their deterrent effects. The evidence on what is called 'marginal deterrence' is generally equivocal, and it cannot be assumed that creating a new crime or increasing the maximum punishment will lead—in a kind of hydraulic relationship—to a reduction in the incidence of that conduct.[52]

A primary justification for criminal law and sentencing is that offenders deserve punishment for their offences, and that it is therefore just (and not merely expedient) to provide that serious wrongs culpably inflicted should lead to censure and sanctions by the State. The justice of punishment for culpable public wrongs may be said to stem (p. 17) from the wrongdoer's disrespect for the value enshrined in the law, in the sense of a 'demonstrated unwillingness to be guided by that value in acting'.[53] But to speak of justice in this context raises wider questions of justification. It assumes that the applicable criminal law has an acceptable moral content and is the product of a sufficiently democratic political process. It also raises questions about the justice of punishing the types of people who tend to be convicted and sentenced—the unemployed and the otherwise disadvantaged. This is often seen as a particular drawback of sentencing systems that aspire to proportionality or 'just deserts'. Since 'proportionate' sentences are merely reinforcing existing social inequalities, this does not achieve justice so much as confirm injustice. The point is an important one, but it is an argument against most other rationales for sentencing, too. A deterrent theory seeks to reinforce the value structure inherent in the criminal law. A rehabilitative theory would attempt to mould offenders' behaviour towards compliance with the norms of the criminal law. A restorative theory might be concerned to achieve compensation or a reconciliation that restores the *status quo ante*. Moreover, a system based on desert and proportionality can be operated humanely, without escalation of penalties.[54]

The justification for criminal law and punishment should therefore be sought in two dimensions—as a deserved response to culpable wrongdoing, and as a necessary institution to deter such wrongdoing. The former suggests that the criminal law, being society's strongest form of official censure and punishment, should be concerned only with major wrongs, affecting central values and causing significant harms. We have already noted that this is not the case in practice: the criminal law is sometimes used against relatively minor kinds of harm, often as a long-stop for regulatory systems. Thus, a perusal of the statute book would reveal that criminal offences are by no means limited to serious wrongs: the quasi-moral content of the criminal law is joined, indeed outnumbered, by the regulatory criminal law. In practice, therefore, the reach of the criminal sanction is determined by a number of conflicting social, political, and historical factors.[55] This applies chiefly to the *range* of offences, enlarged on occasion in response to a wave of political concern and without overall consideration of the proper limits of the criminal sanction (or of the European Convention on Human Rights):

prominent examples are the Criminal Justice and Public Order Act 1994, the Prevention of Terrorism Act 2005, and the Serious Crime Act 2007. The *scope* of criminal liability also bears witness to similar conflicts (e.g. over the extent of the offence of conspiracy); the *conditions* of criminal liability barely conceal the conflicts of principle and policy which have shaped them throughout their years of development, with recurrent debate over the merits of fault requirements necessitating subjective awareness by the defendant, as against the justifications for objective standards of liability, based on what the reasonable person should have appreciated in the defendant's position.

(p. 18) 1.6 The criminal law and sentencing

A person who has been found guilty of a criminal offence is liable to be sentenced by the court. A conviction may be bad enough in itself: it is a form of public censure, and many convictions (at least for non-motoring offences) make it difficult or impossible to obtain certain jobs or enter a profession. For most of the offences covered in this book, the sentence is likely to involve considerable deprivation, either of money or of liberty or both. The criminal law may therefore be said to open the way for coercive official sanctions against an offender. Indeed, we will see below that sentencing has considerable significance for the contours of criminal liability: when Parliament creates a crime it authorizes not merely the affixing of a label of censure on the perpetrator, but also the imposition of certain deprivations by means of sentence.

The range of sentences available to English courts, and the actual exercise of judicial discretion in imposing sentences, can be outlined only briefly here.[56] The law of sentencing was consolidated in the Powers of Criminal Courts (Sentencing) Act 2000, but has since been altered in major ways by the Criminal Justice Act 2003 and other legislation. In brief, an absolute or conditional discharge may be thought sufficient for the least serious crimes or where the defendant has very strong mitigation. For many offences a fine will be the normal punishment: the size of the fine should reflect the seriousness of the offence, adjusted in accordance with the means of the offender.[57] If the offence is serious enough to warrant it, the court may consider imposing a community sentence: that sentence may contain one or more of twelve separate requirements, including a requirement to do unpaid work, a requirement to undergo drug treatment, and a curfew reinforced by electronic monitoring.

The most severe sentence is a custodial one, and a custodial sentence should be imposed only where the offence or offences are so serious that neither a fine alone nor a community sentence can be justified.[58] The length of any custodial sentence 'must be for the shortest term … that in the opinion of the court is commensurate with the seriousness of the offence'.[59] If the sentence is for up to two years, the court may suspend it and may require the offender to comply with certain requirements during the supervision period. Sentencing guidelines have been handed down in Court of Appeal judgments since the 1980s, but the main source of English guidelines is now the Sentencing Council (replacing the Sentencing Guidelines Council and Sentencing Advisory Panel), and guidelines have recently been issued on drug offences and burglary.[60] These are intended to guide the courts in setting the length of sentence for different types of offence. The high use of imprisonment continues to be a contentious (p. 19) issue: England and Wales have one of the highest rates of imprisonment in Europe, and in autumn 2012 the prison population stood at just over 86,000 (compared with 42,000 in early

1993).

How necessary is an understanding of sentencing law and practice to a study of the criminal law? Ideally the criminal law would be studied in conjunction with the other elements of criminal justice with which it is so intimately linked in practice and in theory—prosecution policy and other aspects of pre-trial criminal process, the laws of evidence, and sentencing too.[61] This makes the case for two years of teaching in this field, or for four one-semester modules, to cover the ground. Given that this would be difficult to achieve in many institutions, because of other pressures on the curriculum, many criminal law teachers are left with a decision about the amount of sentencing or other matters to put into criminal law modules. At a minimum, the interactions between sentencing and criminal law must be kept in view. It is sentencing, largely, that gives the criminal law its bite, and so decisions on criminal liability should be viewed as decisions about the application of censure and coercion. An example of the impact of sentencing on the criminal law is that, as we shall see in Chapter 7, the shape of the law on murder and manslaughter has been influenced by the existence of the mandatory penalty for murder. Another area of interaction between criminal law and sentencing is where the courts or Parliament have taken a restrictive approach in defining defences to criminal liability, in the belief that circumstances which 'almost' amount to a defence might result in significant mitigation of sentence (e.g. some cases of duress and entrapment). On the other hand, courts have tended to adopt a much looser notion of responsibility at the sentencing stage than at the liability stage. Thus the criminal law itself proclaims individual responsibility for actions, maintaining strict standards of conduct and setting its face publicly against the idea that social or other circumstances can excuse behaviour, whilst at the sentencing stage courts do recognize from time to time the exculpatory force of preceding or surrounding circumstances.[62]

The aims of sentencing are not simply part of the background of the criminal law: they have implications for the shape of the criminal law itself. Thus proportionality should be a key element in the structure of the criminal law. It is a major function of the criminal law not only to divide the criminal from the non-criminal, but also to grade offences and to label them proportionately. As Nils Jareborg expresses it, 'the threat of punishment is not only a conditional threat of a painful sanction. It is also an official expression of how negatively different kinds of action or omission are judged'.[63] At the level of judicial sentencing, the Criminal Justice Act 2003 requires courts to 'have regard to' some five different purposes of sentencing—punishment, deterrence, rehabilitation, public protection, and reparation.[64] Not only do these conflict among (p. 20) themselves, but government-sponsored research demonstrates, for example, that the evidence for the effectiveness of deterrent sentences is unpromising.[65] The sentencing guidelines endeavour to save sentencing practice from the inconsistency that a 'pick-and-mix' approach to the purposes of sentencing might produce by emphasizing that s. 143(1) of the Act insists upon proportionality of sentencing.[66] Thus proportionality should have a central role, not only at the legislative stage of grading offences in the criminal law, but also at the judicial stage of passing sentence in individual cases. Within 'desert' theory there is a distinction between two kinds of proportionality.[67] One is cardinal proportionality, which requires that the severity of the punishment be in proportion to the seriousness of the offence. Exactly what the level of sentences should be remains a matter for debate, taking account of criminological research and, it is submitted, of the principle of restraint in the use of custody. The second kind of proportionality, more important for our present purposes, is ordinal proportionality. This requires an assessment of the seriousness of

the crime in relation to other forms of offending, so as to establish acceptable relativities. The precise meaning of 'seriousness' here will be explored in Chapters 3 and 5, for it represents a combination of the wrong or harm done or risked and of the culpability of the offender.

This book is intended as an exploration of principles of the criminal law. It does not purport to be a textbook, and does not treat all the parts of the criminal law. Nor does it attempt to convey a general description of the criminal law in action. There are perhaps over ten thousand offences in English criminal law, the bulk of them being 'regulatory' offences of strict liability with relatively low penalties. Although strict liability offences are discussed in Chapter 5.5(a) and in other places, the focus of the book is upon offences with substantial penalties. In this book it is principles for offences and for defences that provide the vehicle of study. In Chapter 3, many of the principles which do or should inform the criminal law are drawn together for discussion: this is largely a normative exercise, raising questions about what principles should or should not determine the boundaries of criminal liability. It does not purport to be descriptive or historical, although it gives considerable prominence to the European Convention on Human Rights as a source. On the other hand, any meaningful discussion of principles must be connected to the kinds of laws that have been and are introduced, and the book's approach of examining the law through principles begins in Chapter 2, where the approach to creating new crimes is discussed. The idea is to analyse essentially political decisions to create new crimes, in terms of a more principled approach to the reach of the criminal sanction. Principles which have a particular bearing on culpability and the conditions of liability are discussed in Chapters 4 to 6. They are kept in mind when analysing three different groups of offences in Chapters 7 to 9. They are also related to questions about the scope of criminal liability in Chapters 10 and 11.

(p. 21) There are also frequent references to research that has a bearing on criminal justice, to give some indication of the social context in which the criminal law operates. Much more coverage could be given to these contextual issues, such as enforcement policy, police powers, the pre-trial construction of cases, and sentencing, but the primary focus of this work is upon the consideration of doctrine. This means that the discussion of the criminal law is largely centred on appellate courts, as opposed to concentrating on the law as it is enforced by the police and others. There is an endeavour to recognize the constitutional responsibilities of the courts in developing the law and interpreting legislation. There is also an endeavour to remain alert to the implications for law enforcement of leaving areas of discretion when formulating laws: we saw in section 1.4 how wide this discretion often is, and how the selective policies of various enforcement agencies lead to a rather skewed sample of defendants appearing before the courts. But the centrepiece of this book is the doctrine of the criminal law, by which is meant the policies and social values which underlie decisions to increase or decrease the *range* of the criminal law, the principles and values which bear upon decisions about the *scope* of criminal liability, and the principles, policies, and values which relate to the *conditions* of criminal liability.

Further reading

N. LACEY AND L. ZEDNER , 'Legal Constructions of Crime', in M. MAGUIRE , R. MORGAN , AND R. REINER (eds), *Oxford Handbook of Criminology* (5th edn., 2012), ch 6.

A. ASHWORTH and L. ZEDNER , 'Defending the Criminal Law: Reflections on the Changing Character of Crime, Procedure and Sanctions', (2008) 2 *Criminal Law and Philosophy* 21.

G. LAMOND , 'What is a Crime?', (2007) 27 OJLS 609.

N. LACEY , C. WELLS, AND O. QUICK , *Reconstructing Criminal Law* (4th edn., 2010 by C. WELLS and O. QUICK), chs 1–3.

Notes:

[1] The *form* of English criminal laws is not usually that of a prohibition, however. Laws are usually written as if addressed to police, prosecutors, and courts: 'a person is guilty of x if …', or 'any person who does x, y, z shall be liable to imprisonment for a term not exceeding …'

[2] Crown Prosecution Service, *Code for Crown Prosecutors* (6th edn., 2010), paras. 4.18–19; a victim does have the right to bring a private prosecution, but under the Prosecution of Offences Act 1985 the Director of Public Prosecutions has the power to take it over and, if appropriate, to drop it.

[3] R. A. Duff, *Punishment, Communication and Community* (2001), 62.

[4] G. Lamond, 'What is a Crime?' (2007) 27 OJLS 609, at 615–20.

[5] But see n 22.

[6] *Consolidated Criminal Practice Direction* (Ministry of Justice, 2011), part III.28; the leading case is *Nunn* [1996] 2 Cr App R (S) 136.

[7] See further A. Ashworth, 'Rights, Responsibilities and Restorative Justice' (2002) 40 B J Crim 578.

[8] G. Williams, 'The Definition of a Crime' [1955] CLP 107, at 130.

[9] See e.g. *Engel* v *Netherlands* (1976) 1 EHRR 647.

[10] For an English example, see *Benham* v *United Kingdom* (1996) 22 EHRR 293.

[11] See further A. Ashworth, 'Is the Criminal Law a Lost Cause?' (2000) 116 LQR 225.

[12] Where there are separate procedures for administrative offences, fixed penalties, etc., it must be open to the defendant to have the case heard in a criminal court (with all the safeguards) if desired: *Le Compte, Van Leuven and De Meyere* v *Belgium* (1981) 4 EHRR 1.

[13] This is the power, exercised by the European Court of Human Rights, to treat the term 'criminal charge' as having an 'autonomous meaning', i.e. the court looks at the substance of the proceedings and not at the label placed upon it by the domestic legislature. See n 9.

[14] *R (McCann* v *Manchester Crown Court; Clingham* v *Kensington and Chelsea London Borough Council* [2003] 1 AC 787.

[15] See further E. Burney, *Making People Behave: Anti-Social Behaviour, Politics and Policy*

(2nd edn., 2009); P. Ramsay, *The Insecurity State* (2012); A. von Hirsch and A. P. Simester (eds), *Incivilities* (2007).

[16] See further A. Ashworth and L. Zedner, 'Defending the Criminal Law: Reflections on the Changing Character of Crime, Procedure and Sanctions' (2008) 2 *Criminal Law and Philosophy* 21.

[17] A. Ashworth and M. Blake, 'The Presumption of Innocence in English Criminal Law' [1996] Crim LR 306.

[18] For more detailed treatment, see B. Emmerson, A. Ashworth, and A. Macdonald (eds), *Human Rights and Criminal Justice* (3rd edn., 2012), particularly chs 16, 17, and 18.

[19] See further E. Baker, 'Taking European Criminal Law Seriously' [1998] Crim LR 361, and S. Peers, EU Justice and Home Affairs Law (3rd edn., 2010), ch 8.

[20] C. Kershaw et al., *Crime in England and Wales 2007–08* (Home Office Statistical Bulletin 07/08), 39, estimating that 42 per cent of crimes are reported to the police. The overall figure masks considerable variation: thefts of vehicles are the most likely to be reported (93 per cent), and theft from the person, vandalism, and assault with no injury least likely (32 per cent, 35 per cent, and 34 per cent in 2003–4). See now *Crime in England and Wales, year ending June 2012* (Office of National Statistics).

[21] See the research by C. Clarkson et al., 'Assaults: the Relationship between Seriousness, Criminalisation and Punishment' [1994] Crim LR 4.

[22] See the findings of D. Brown and T. Ellis, *Policing Low-Level Disorder: Police Use of section 5 of the Public Order* Act 1986 (Home Office Research Study No. 135, 1994).

[23] See K. Hawkins, *Law as Last Resort* (2002); B. Hutter, *Compliance: Regulation and Environment* (1997); and B. Hutter, *Regulation and Risk: Occupational Health and Safety on the Railways* (2001).

[24] Kershaw et al, 169 (reference at n 20).

[25] Royal Commission on Criminal Justice, *Report* (Cm 2263 (1993)), 57.

[26] Sections 34–7 of the Criminal Justice and Public Order Act 1994, the impact of which is discussed in A. Ashworth and M. Redmayne, *The Criminal Process* (4th edn., 2010), ch 4.

[27] For discussion, see C. Ball, 'Youth Justice? Half a Century of Responses to Youth Offending' [2004] Crim LR 167.

[28] Home Office, *No More Excuses: a New Approach to Tackling Youth Crime in England and Wales* (Cm 3809 (1997)), 1.

[29] See further ⟨www.justice.gov.uk/youth-justice⟩.

[30] For fuller discussion, see A. Ashworth and M. Redmayne, ch 6 (reference at n 26).

[31] M. Maguire, R. Morgan, and R. Reiner (eds), *Oxford Handbook of Criminology* (5th edn., 2012), ch 32.

[32] Environment Agency, *Enforcement and Prosecution Policy* (issued 4 January 2011), 2, at ⟨www.environment-agency.gov.uk⟩.

[33] See ⟨www.hmrc.gov.uk/prosecutions/crim-inv-policy.htm⟩.

[34] See further Ashworth and Redmayne, 160–3 (reference at n 26).

[35] This may be found at ⟨www.cps.gov.uk⟩.

[36] Home Office, *Digest 4: Information on the Criminal Justice System in England and Wales* (1999), 29.

[37] See Ashworth and Redmayne, 187–90 (reference at n 26).

[38] T. Bucke and Z. James, *Trespass and Protest: Policing under the Criminal Justice and Public Order Act 1994* (Home Office Research Study No. 190, 1998).

[39] Ashworth and Redmayne, at 298 (reference at n 26); cf. Code for Crown Prosecutors, para. 7.

[40] Sentencing Guidelines Council, *Reduction in Sentence for a Guilty Plea: Revised Guideline* (2007).

[41] For fuller discussion and references, see Ashworth and Redmayne, ch 10 (reference at n 26).

[42] See Criminal Justice Act 2003, Sch 3, amending s. 20 of the Magistrates' Courts Act 1980; and *Goodyear* [2005] 3 All ER 117.

[43] The complexities are explored in C. Hedderman and L. Gelsthorpe (eds), *Understanding the Sentencing of Women* (Home Office Research Study No. 170, 1997).

[44] C. Phillips and B. Bowling, 'Ethnicities, Racism, Crime and Criminal Justice', in M. Maguire, R. Morgan, and R. Reiner (eds), *Oxford Handbook of Criminology* (5th edn., 2012).

[45] See generally, M. McConville et al., *Standing Accused* (1994).

[46] See the fascinating study by P. Rock, *The Social World of an English Crown Court* (1993).

[47] See further A. Ashworth, 'Is the Criminal Law a Lost Cause?' (2000) 116 LQR 225.

[48] Anarchist theorists such as Godwin held a version of this view (see G. Woodcock, *Anarchism* (1962)), and according to Marxist theory the law would wither away on the attainment of perfect communism (see H. Collins, *Marxism and Law* (1982)).

[49] Usually cited in this connection are the police strikes in Liverpool in 1919, and Melbourne in 1918, and the incarceration of the Danish police force by the Nazis in 1944. Broadly speaking, property crimes (looting) tend to increase whereas sexual and violent crimes do not.

[50] See R. V. G. Clarke, *Situational Crime Prevention: Successful Case Studies* (2nd edn., 1997).

[51] See generally A. Crawford and K. Evans, 'Crime Prevention and Community Safety', in M. Maguire, R. Morgan, and R. Reiner (eds), *The Oxford Handbook of Criminology* (5th edn., 2012), ch 26.

[52] See e.g. A. von Hirsch et al., *Criminal Deterrence and Sentence Severity: an Analysis of Recent Research* (1999), and P. Robinson and J. Darley, 'Does Criminal Law Deter? A Behavioural Science Investigation' (2004) 24 OJLS 173.

[53] G. Lamond, 'What is a Crime?' (2007) 27 OJLS 609, at 622.

[54] See A. von Hirsch and A. Ashworth, *Proportionate Sentencing* (2005), chs 5 and 6.

[55] N. Lacey and L. Zedner, 'Legal Constructions of Crime', in M. Maguire, R. Morgan, and R. Reiner (eds), *Oxford Handbook of Criminology* (5th edn., 2012), ch 6.

[56] For fuller discussion, see A. Ashworth, *Sentencing and Criminal Justice* (5th edn., 2010).

[57] Powers of Criminal Courts (Sentencing) Act 2000, s. 128.

[58] Criminal Justice Act 2003, s. 152(2).

[59] Criminal Justice Act 2003, s. 153(2).

[60] See ⟨www.sentencing-council.org.uk⟩.

[61] Cf. P. Alldridge, 'What's Wrong with the Traditional Criminal Law Course?' (1990) 10 *Legal Studies* 38.

[62] See Chapter 6.8, and A. Norrie, *Crime, Reason and History* (2nd edn., 2001), ch 10.

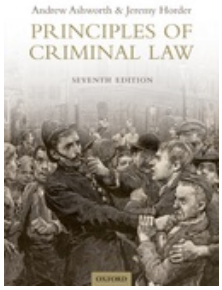
[63] N. Jareborg, 'The Coherence of the Penal System', in his *Essays in Criminal Law* (1988).

[64] Criminal Justice Act 2003, s. 142(1).

[65] See references in n 52.

[66] Sentencing Guidelines Council, *Overarching Principles* (2004).

[67] See further A. von Hirsch and A. Ashworth, *Proportionate Sentencing* (2005), ch 9.



Principles of Criminal Law (7th edn)

Andrew Ashworth and Jeremy Horder

Publisher: Oxford University Press
Print ISBN-13: 9780199672684
DOI: 10.1093/he/9780199672684.001.0001

Print Publication Date: May 2013
Published online: Sep 2013

2. Criminalization

Chapter: (p. 22) 2. Criminalization
Author(s): Andrew Ashworth and Jeremy Horder
DOI: 10.1093/he/9780199672684.003.0002

2.1 The principle of individual autonomy
2.2 The principle of welfare
2.3 The harm principle and public wrongs
2.4 The minimalist approach
2.5 Morally wrong behaviour
2.6 Remote harms
2.7 Conclusions and applications
Further reading

We have seen (in Chapter 1.5) that a system of criminal law may be justified as a mechanism for the preservation of social order. As a type of law, its technique is censuring: it requires a procedure that provides the defendant with certain safeguards, it may result in a conviction that gives D a criminal record, and, if so, it authorizes the infliction of State punishment. To criminalize a certain kind of conduct is to declare that it is a public wrong that should not be

done, to institute a threat of punishment in order to supply a pragmatic reason for not doing it, and to censure those who nevertheless do it. This use of State power calls for justification—justification by reference to democratic principles, and justification in terms of sufficient reasons for invoking this coercive and censuring machinery against individuals and organizations. So serious are the potential consequences, and so significant the public censure, that the decision to criminalize conduct should not simply be made 'on balance'. It will be argued here, following Doug Husak,[1] that in a liberal State there is something equivalent to a right not to be punished, which should place the burden of proof firmly on those who would wish to turn non-criminal activity into an offence.

However, it is not argued or assumed here that there exists some objective benchmark of criminality, or some general theory which will enable us to tell whether or not certain conduct ought to be criminalized. The range of actual and potential crimes is so wide and varied that this seems unattainable. We should abandon:

> 'attempts to derive the content of the criminal law from a single master principle … [and] accept that debates about its scope will be more piecemeal, gradual affairs, more focused on particular offences (actual or suggested), and informed by a range of values, presumptions and considerations …'[2]

(p. 23) The chapter's purpose is to identify some general principles and values that, it is submitted, ought to be considered when deciding whether or not to make conduct criminal. Although it is true that the frontiers of criminal liability are not given but are historically and politically contingent, it remains important to strive to identify those interests that warrant the use of the criminal law and to refine notions such as harm and wrongdoing which play so prominent a part even in political discussions of these questions.

This chapter will focus on legislative decisions to extend or curtail the criminal law. Yet we must recall, as argued in Chapter 1, that the practical impact of the criminal law on citizens is determined not so much by the legislature as by the workings of the various law enforcement agents—chiefly police officers, but also officials from HMRC, the various statutory inspectorates, and so on. Thus the legislature may be said to provide the tools, resources, or authority for law enforcement agents when it creates a criminal offence, but decisions about when to invoke and when not to invoke the available powers are taken by enforcement officers. The exercise of discretionary power therefore provides the key to practical instances of criminalization.

The chapter begins with a discussion of the two fundamental principles of autonomy and of welfare. It then develops the principle of minimalism, centred on the right not be subjected to punishment and also including consequentialist considerations such as not using the criminal law when it would be ineffective or counter productive. Then follows a discussion of the harm principle and the principle of publicly wrongful conduct, leading to an assessment of the arguments for and against punishing 'immoral' behaviour, for including paternalistic laws, and for criminalization based on remote harms.

2.1 The principle of individual autonomy

One of the fundamental concepts in the justification of criminal laws is the principle of

individual autonomy—that each individual should be treated as responsible for his or her own behaviour. This principle has factual and normative elements that must be explored, briefly, in turn.

The factual element in autonomy is that individuals in general have the capacity and sufficient free will to make meaningful choices. Whether this is true cannot be demonstrated conclusively. Over the centuries the 'free will' argument has been contradicted by the 'determinist' claim that all human behaviour is determined by causes that ultimately each individual cannot control. There is an immense literature on these issues, which cannot be examined here.[3] Most philosophers arrive at compromise positions which enable them to accept the fundamental proposition that behaviour is not so determined that blame is generally unfair and inappropriate, and yet to accept that, in (p. 24) certain circumstances, behaviour may be so strongly determined (e.g. by threats from another) that the normal presumption of free will may be displaced. Similar in many ways is the 'principle of alternative possibilities', according to which an individual may properly be held responsible for conduct only if he or she could have done otherwise.[4] In support of these approaches is the fact that most of everyday life is conducted on the basis of such beliefs in individual responsibility, and that in the absence of proof of determinism we should not abandon those assumptions of free will that pervade so many of our social practices. However, as Barbara Hudson has warned:

> the notion of free will that is assumed in ideas of culpability … is a much stronger notion than that usually experienced by the poor and powerless. That individuals have choices is a basic legal assumption: that circumstances constrain choices is not. Legal reasoning seems unable to appreciate that the existential view of the world as an arena for acting out free choices is a perspective of the privileged, and that potential for self-actualization is far from apparent to those whose lives are constricted by material or ideological handicaps.[5]

This point may be conceded without gainsaying the fundamental assumption of free will, so long as the possibility of qualifications is recognized. Thus, for example, the capacities assumed by the law may not be present in those who are too young or who are mentally disordered. These capacities relate to what R. A. Duff terms the 'preconditions of criminal liability', preconditions that he goes on to connect with the ability to participate in a trial as a communicative enterprise.[6] The general assumption is thus that sane adults may properly be held liable for their conduct and for matters within their control, except in so far as they can point to some excuse for their conduct—for example, duress, mistake, or even social deprivation, as discussed in Chapter 6.

No less important a part of the principle of autonomy is its normative element: that individuals should be respected and treated as agents capable of choosing their acts and omissions, and that without recognizing individuals as capable of independent agency they could hardly be regarded as moral persons.[7] Some such principles lie at the centre of most liberal political theory, and can be found, for example, in Ronald Dworkin's principle that each individual is entitled to equal concern and respect.[8] The principle of autonomy assigns great importance to liberty and individual rights in any discussion of what the State ought to do in a given situation. Indeed, a major part of its thrust is that individuals should be protected from official censure, through the criminal law, unless they can be shown to have chosen the conduct for which they (p. 25) are being held liable.[9] This, as we shall see in section 2.4, is a central element in

the ‘defensive’ approach to criminalization advanced by Nils Jareborg and others, insisting on the importance of protecting individuals from undue State power. We will also see that H. L. A. Hart's famous principle, that an individual should not be held criminally liable unless he had the capacity and a fair opportunity to do otherwise, is grounded in the primary importance of individual autonomy.[10] On the other hand, returning to the scope of criminalization, this emphasis on individual choice militates against creating offences based on paternalistic grounds, as argued in section 2.5. If autonomy is to be respected, the State should leave individuals to decide for themselves and should not take decisions ‘in their best interests’.

In liberal theory, the principle of autonomy goes much further than this. Thus Joel Feinberg, towards the end of his discussion of autonomy, states that:

> the most basic autonomy-right is the right to decide how one is to live one's life, in particular how to make the critical life-decisions—what courses of study to take, what skills and virtues to cultivate, what career to enter, whom or whether to marry, which church if any to join, whether to have children, and so on.[11]

The difficulty is to decide how far this is to be taken. Whilst the principle of autonomy gives welcome strength to the protection of individual interests against collective and State interests, it seems less convincing in other respects. The question ‘whose autonomy?’ must always be asked: the criminal law is often claimed to be neutral, and yet certain forms of bias—such as gender bias[12]—may be evident in the law's assumptions and reasoning. In some of its formulations the principle of autonomy pays little or no attention to the social context in which all of us are brought up (which may both restrict and facilitate the pursuit of certain desired ends) and the context of powerlessness in which many have to live.[13] The idea that individuals should be free to choose what to do cannot be sustained without wide-ranging qualifications. A developed autonomy-based theory should find a central place for certain collective goals, seen as creating the necessary conditions for maximum autonomy. Thus Joseph Raz argues that:

> Three main features characterize the autonomy-based doctrine of freedom. *First*, its primary concern is the promotion and protection of positive freedom which is understood as the capacity for autonomy, consisting of the availability of an adequate range of options, and of the mental abilities necessary for an autonomous life. *Second*, the State has the duty not merely to prevent the denial of freedom, but also to promote it by creating the conditions of **(p. 26)** autonomy. *Third*, one may not pursue any goal by means which infringe people's autonomy unless such action is justified by the need to protect or promote the autonomy of those people or of others.[14]

This third feature proposes a minimalist approach to the use of the criminal law, and all three features reappear when we consider the principle of welfare.

2.2 The principle of welfare

We have seen that an individualist principle of autonomy is too limited, and that Raz and others have therefore developed an approach which emphasizes the State's obligation to create the social conditions necessary for the exercise of full autonomy by individual citizens.[15] Modern communitarian theorists have gone further, often emphasizing the centrality

of collective goals. Thus Nicola Lacey describes the principle of welfare as including 'the fulfilment of certain basic interests such as maintaining one's personal safety, health and capacity to pursue one's chosen life plan'.[16] The specification of the interests to be thus protected should be a matter for democratic (participatory) decision-making: this means both that the interests will be objectively determined, not just according to the preference of each individual, and also that individuals whose preferences are at odds with those of the majority will lose out. Both of these are familiar features of social life. But much depends on how the notion of 'community' is developed. It ought to respond to the problems of differential power and privilege raised by Hudson.[17] The danger is that the notion of 'community' may sometimes be invoked in support of policies emphasizing public safety and the need for greater measures to ensure security: much as it is important to pursue collective goals such as environmental protection, public safety, and so on, the result may be to promote an idea of community without any special weighting of individual rights. This may produce harsh and intrusive policies—a tendency against which Lacey, in her development of communitarian perspectives, issues a strong warning.[18]

Whereas the principle of autonomy seems to suggest that individual rights should be given high priority in the legal structure, the principle of welfare recognizes the social context in which the law must operate and gives weight to collective goals.[19] Clearly there are conflicts between the two principles, but that may not always be the case. If the principle of autonomy is taken to require a form of positive liberty (freedom to pursue one's goals, etc.) rather than merely negative liberty (freedom from attack, etc.), then the principle of welfare may work towards the same end by ensuring that citizens (p. 27) benefit from the existence of facilities and structures which are protected, albeit in the last resort, by the criminal law. Some criminalization may therefore be accepted as the only justifiable means of upholding certain social practices as 'necessary for the general good'. Matters such as the obligation to state one's income accurately for the purpose of taxation or for the receipt of benefits can hardly be analysed convincingly in terms of individual autonomy: once a public decision has been made about the system to be adopted, it may be justifiable for at least egregious departures from these rules to be criminalized. The same may be said of laws relating to industrial safety, food safety, environmental protection, and so on. Although it remains to be decided whether violations of these norms should be criminalized or dealt with in some other way, the legitimacy of some criminalization on the basis of welfare as well as on the basis of autonomy cannot be put in doubt.[20] Those versions of the principle of autonomy which suggest that individuals should remain free to decide these matters according to their own preferences are not sustainable.

Yet the value of individual autonomy as a restraint upon collective and State action should not be overlooked. Decisions by the wider community may threaten basic interests of individuals, unless there is recognition of a set of protected rights. The significance of the Human Rights Act 1998 is that it imported into English law a set of protected rights—those declared in the European Convention. As we will see in Chapter 3.3, the Convention rights are weighted differently: some are almost absolute, some are strong rights (from which derogation may be permitted in defined circumstances), and others are qualified rights, defined in a way that allows certain restrictions on them where this is adjudged 'necessary in a democratic society'. In a sense, the group of qualified rights (and, to some extent, the interpretation of the other rights) demonstrates both the inevitability of conflicts between autonomy and welfare and the possibility of devising a procedure for 'resolving' those conflicts—although the satisfactoriness

of the Convention approach will be considered in Chapter 3.3 and at appropriate points in later chapters. On any realistic view, the principles of autonomy and welfare have a degree of mutual interdependence, which should be recognized and structured.[21] However, that should not lead to a vague notion of 'balancing' the two principles. Rather, it should lead to the development of ways of prioritizing some rights, and of the structuring of public interest arguments so as to ensure that they meet criteria such as urgency, unavoidability, effectiveness, and so forth.[22]

(p. 28) 2.3 The harm principle and public wrongs

The traditional starting point of any discussion of criminalization is the 'harm principle'. Its essence is that the State is justified in criminalizing any conduct that causes harm to others or creates an unacceptable risk of harm to others. John Stuart Mill's statement of the principle was that 'the only purpose for which power can be rightfully exercised over any member of a civilized community, against his will, is to prevent harm to others'. Its main thrust is as a negative or limiting principle, having the objective of restricting the criminal law from penalizing conduct that is regarded as immoral or otherwise unacceptable but which is not harmful to others.[23] It is developed by Joel Feinberg in his detailed rejection of 'legal paternalism' and 'legal moralism' as sufficient reasons for criminalization.[24] However, one cannot proceed far without adopting a definition of harm: can a satisfactory line be drawn through such things as physical harm, harm to property, harm to feelings, and indirect harm? The question is both fundamental and somewhat intractable. As Neil MacCormick argues:

> 'harm' is itself a morally loaded (and essentially contested) concept … . Nothing … could be more obviously a moral question than the question whether individual interests in private property are always, sometimes, or never legitimate. The issue of the justice of systems of private property is a central one in the great clash of ideologies in the contemporary world.[25]

Thus if we wish to define harm in terms of violations of people's legitimate interests, we must remain conscious of the moral, cultural, and political nature of the interests recognized in a particular system. Feinberg's definition of harm as 'those states of set-back interest that are the consequence of wrongful acts or omissions of others'[26] does not conclude these wider issues.[27]

If the harm principle is primarily negative in its impact, by what route can we move forward to consider some positive principles for criminalization? Feinberg's definition includes both harm and wrongfulness, and it is necessary to attend to both of these elements. When it comes to stating a positive version of the harm principle, Feinberg proposes the following definition:

> It is always a good reason in support of penal legislation that it would probably be effective in preventing (eliminating, reducing) harm to persons other than the actor *and* there is probably no other means that is equally effective at no greater cost to other values.[28]

(p. 29) This formulation is an important step away from the apparently exclusionary phraseology used by Mill ('the only purpose …')[29] and towards the identification of a range of relevant reasons for and against criminalization. For Feinberg, other relevant matters are the

gravity of the possible harm, its degree of probability, and the social value of the (otherwise dangerous) conduct.[30] His definition of the harm principle also incorporates, through its references to effectiveness and cost, some of the limiting principles encompassed by the minimalist approach described at section 2.4.

The other important element, in addition to harm, is wrongfulness. It is not the causing of harm that alone justifies criminalization, but the wrongful causing of harm—wrongful in the sense of culpably assailing a person's interests, or abusing them by using them as a means to another's satisfaction. Thus Feinberg's elaboration of the concept of harm requires, and extends only to, 'setbacks of interests that are wrongs, and wrongs that are setbacks to interest'.[31] Similarly, Andrew Simester and Andreas von Hirsch develop the argument that one necessary prerequisite of criminalization is that the conduct amounts to a moral wrong.[32] This does not imply that this is a sufficient condition, merely that it is a prerequisite, since there may be morally wrong conduct (e.g. forms of lying or sexual infidelity) which, for other reasons, should not be criminalized. Nor does this rule out the criminalization of what might be termed co-ordination offences, i.e. those offences necessary to regulate an activity such as driving, where the law must make certain determinations (e.g. that drivers should drive on the left) which then, through their instrumental value, impart moral force to related requirements.[33] However, before criminalization is justified, not only must the conduct be morally wrong, but there must also be no strong countervailing considerations, such as the absence of harm, the creation of unwelcome social consequences, the curtailment of important rights, and so forth.[34] Indeed, given the content and consequences of public censure and punishment—in terms of restrictions on, and even deprivations of, basic liberties—there is a strong case for restricting the criminalization of non-serious moral wrongs. That is straightforward in a system that has a lesser category of 'administrative offences' with low penalties, which can be used to penalize public wrongs that do not attain the appropriate level of seriousness to be criminalized.

A third aspect, in addition to harmfulness and wrongfulness, is the public element in wrongs. One manifestation of this consists of those general obligations of citizens that are so important that the criminal sanction may be justified to reinforce them. A core of offences against State security may be justified on these grounds, as may some offences against the taxation and benefits system, so long as the limiting effect of the **(p. 30)** minimalist principle (see 2.4) is kept in view. These are public wrongs, inasmuch as the victim is not an individual but the community as a whole, and it is right that the more serious among them are considered suitable for criminalization—not least where the gain or advantage obtained is as great as, or greater than, that obtained in the typical offence with an individual victim. But it is to the latter kind of offence that we must now turn, and this is where the public element becomes problematic. How can we tell which wrongs done to individuals are sufficiently 'public' to warrant the condemnation of the criminal law? As Antony Duff argues, the answer lies not in an aspect of the wrong itself, but in the public valuation of the wrong:

> We should interpret a 'public' wrong, not as a wrong that injures the public, but as one that properly concerns the public, ie the polity as a whole … A public wrong is thus a wrong against the polity as a whole, not just against the individual victim: given our identification with the victim as a fellow citizen, and our shared commitment to the values that the rapist violates, we must see the victim's wrong as also being our wrong.[35]

The public element does not have anything to do with location: unkind remarks made to a friend in public would not 'concern the public' unless they tended to provoke a breach of the peace, and a very public breaking of a promise to attend a certain event may not be regarded as sufficiently important for the polity as a whole to be required to take action. Contrast those instances with domestic violence (e.g. a substantial beating) which, even if it occurs entirely in the private realm of a home, is a moral and social wrong that the community should regard as a wrong that ought to be pursued through the public channels of prosecution and trial.[36] Thus, as Grant Lamond has argued, the question is whether the community is appropriately responsible for punishing these wrongs.[37] The supporting argument here is presumably that the State should protect and promote the basic value of security and freedom from physical attack by prosecuting assaults wherever they occur (leaving aside questions of consent and its proper limits),[38] and that the fact that an assault occurs in a domestic context should make no difference to this. It does not follow from this that adultery is a good candidate for criminalization, harmful and wrongful though it may be in many instances, since the question is whether the value of marriage as an institution is so central and fundamental to the political community that the State is expected to prosecute through the criminal law those whose conduct threatens it.

One example of the public element of a wrong is the creation of racially and religiously aggravated offences of assault, harassment, and so forth.[39] Calling someone insulting names is not usually a criminal offence, but the rationale for these crimes (which provide for greater punishment when, *inter alia*, the offence is accompanied by **(p. 31)** racist or religious insults) is clearly connected with a belief that it is proper for the State to promote the basic value of racial tolerance and that this value is so significant as to justify criminalization. Thus these offences can be regarded as harmful public wrongs. However, the argument in this section does not suggest that there are sharp dividing lines that tell us whether or not certain conduct is sufficiently harmful, or sufficiently wrong, or has a sufficiently public element, to justify criminalization. Rather, the point is that these should be recognized as the appropriate kinds of argument in support of a decision to criminalize. It is submitted in the next section that those arguing in favour of criminalization should bear the burden of proof, so the contention here is that the three elements identified above—harm, wrongdoing, and the public element—are what should be proved.

Finally, there is one respect in which the notion of criminalizing harmful public wrongs is less indeterminate, and that is where the State has a positive obligation to protect certain fundamental rights. In the English context this means positive obligations under the European Convention on Human Rights. Thus the right to life is guaranteed by Art. 2, and states must ensure that they protect this by having, for example, appropriately restricted rules of self-defence.[40] Article 3 declares that no one shall be subjected to torture or to inhuman or degrading treatment, and this requires states to ensure that their laws give adequate protection, for example, to children from physical beatings (of a certain magnitude) by their parents.[41] Article 8 declares the right to respect for private life, which includes sexuality and sexual relations, and this means that the criminal law ought not to discriminate against different forms of sexual orientation and that it should provide protection from sexual molestation, particularly for the young and mentally impaired.[42]

2.4 The minimalist approach

The minimalist approach is based on a particular conception of the criminal law and its relationship to the principles of autonomy and welfare and to other forms of social control. Its four main components are a) the principle of respect for human rights, b) the right not to be subjected to State punishment, c) the principle that the criminal law should not be invoked unless other techniques are inappropriate, and d) the principle that conduct should not be criminalized if the effects of doing so would be as bad as, or worse than, not doing so. Each of these is now discussed in turn.

(p. 32) **(a) The principle of respect for human rights**

The first point is that a minimalist approach to criminalization should respect human rights protections. Thus, for example, any criminal laws should respect freedom of expression, freedom of assembly and association, freedom of thought and religion, the right of privacy, and the right not to be discriminated against in any of those four rights. Under the Convention this does not mean that no criminal law may curtail or abridge one of those rights: the first four rights (not the right against discrimination) are all qualified rights, which means that interference with them is permissible if it is 'necessary in a democratic society' for one of the stated purposes. Thus freedom of expression may be curtailed by an offence of sending a grossly offensive message through a public communication system,[43] by offences of speech likely to stir up racial or religious hatred,[44] or by offences of inciting violence. There are bound to be difficult borderline decisions to be taken, as where an evangelical Christian was convicted under s. 5 of the Public Order Act 1986 for displaying a sign saying 'Stop Immorality, Stop Homosexuality, Stop Lesbianism', the court concluding that the interference with his rights to freedom of religion and freedom of expression was justified by the disorder and violence it provoked.[45]

(b) The right not to be punished

Husak argues that we should recognize a right not to be subjected to State punishment, and that this flows from the social significance of the public censure involved in conviction and from the sacrifice of human rights usually entailed by the imposition of punishment.[46] What this means in practice is that the decision to criminalize, and therefore to authorize punishment, should be recognized as being of a different order from many other legislative decisions. It is different from taxation, or from the creation of a regime of administrative regulation over a certain activity, important as those kinds of decision are. The element of public censure and the overriding of other rights means that strong justifications for criminalizing conduct are called for, and that the burden of proof should lie on those who would impose criminal liability. Moreover, this is not simply a threshold decision, of whether or not to criminalize. Much stronger justifications should be required where the offence is to be punishable with imprisonment,[47] in view of the potential deprivation of the right to liberty, and even stronger justifications where the maximum sentence of imprisonment is substantial. A particular concern (p. 33) in this regard is the maximum sentence of five years' imprisonment typically assigned to offences of breaching the terms of a civil preventive order, such as the anti-social behaviour order.[48]

(c) Criminalization as a last resort

The criminal law is a censuring and preventive mechanism, but there are others. Morality, social convention, and peer pressure are three informal sources of control, and in many

spheres it seems preferable to leave the regulation of certain unwelcome behaviour to those forces. Within the law itself, there are at least two other major techniques in addition to criminalization: there is civil liability, best exemplified by the laws of tort and contract, and also there is administrative regulation, which includes such measures as licensing and franchising. What considerations should determine the choice of technique? The minimalist's answer, drawing on the considerations in (b), would be that the law's most coercive and censuring technique (criminalization) should be reserved for the most serious invasions of interests.[49] Less serious misconduct is more appropriately dealt with by the civil law, by administrative regulation, or even by introducing a new category of non-criminal financial levies. This approach has a straightforward utilitarian foundation, traceable back to Jeremy Bentham's injunction not to punish 'where it must be inefficacious: where it cannot act so as to prevent the mischief', and 'where the mischief may be prevented … without it: that is, at a cheaper rate'.[50] The proper approach is therefore to assess whether a particular kind of misconduct is more appropriately dealt with through a regulatory framework, or by civil liability, or by a civil preventive order. The key question of appropriateness will depend on other factors such as the public element in the wrongdoing and the magnitude of the harm or wrong involved. But the thrust of the principle—known sometimes as the principle of subsidiarity, and applied so as to ensure that a right is not infringed where the objective of the interference could be secured in some other (lesser) way—is that the criminal law should be reserved as a legislative technique of last resort, used only for seriously wrongful or harmful conduct.

(d) The principle of not criminalizing where this would be counter productive

The fourth component of the minimalist approach is the principle of not creating a criminal offence, or set of offences, where this might cause greater social harm than leaving the conduct outside the criminal law, or where the prohibition is unlikely to be effective.[51] This view may be challenged on the ground that, if conduct is serious (p. 34) or harmful enough to justify criminalization, there is at least an important symbolic reason for declaring it to be criminal. It was suggested in section 2.1 that the purposes of the criminal law are threefold—declaratory, preventive, and censuring. The declaratory purpose may reassure some and deter others. But even if the preventive purpose is largely unfulfilled (as, perhaps, with the 70 mph speed limit on British motorways), it may achieve *some* degree of prevention or reduction of the unwanted behaviour. Thus limited efficacy is not necessarily an argument against criminalization, although it provides a good reason to search for supplementary ways of controlling the unwanted conduct. Perhaps the restrictive policy against 'ineffective' laws is a version of the argument that the inclusion of unenforceable offences may bring the criminal law into disrepute: if so, it must be established that the patchy enforcement of speed limits, for example, really does diminish people's respect for other parts of the criminal law.[52] The other thrust of this restrictive principle is more powerful: if the criminalization of certain conduct, such as the possession of 'soft' drugs or various 'vice' offences, gives rise to social consequences that are hardly better than the mischief at which the laws aim, this militates strongly in favour of decriminalization. Thus drugs and vice laws may (i) produce active 'black markets', (ii) lead the police to adopt intrusive means of enforcement, (iii) allow the police to be selective in their enforcement, and (iv) lead to a degree of police corruption.[53] Prohibitions that have these consequences ought to be reconsidered: there is an ongoing debate about the propriety and wisdom of penalizing drug offences at all, and certainly so severely, when it appears that the law has little effect on the scale of drug use, importation, and supply.[54] There are other objections against criminalizing drug use, although some may still argue (notably in

relation to ‘hard’ drugs) that the case for criminalization outweighs the other social consequences.[55] This leads on to a more general argument for restraint in criminalization: that, since the enforcement of the criminal law is selective and tends to bear down most heavily on the least advantaged (the enforcement of drug laws is one reason for the disproportionately high number of non-white offenders in prison in Britain and the USA), these injustices should be kept to a minimum.

The effectiveness principle has sometimes been turned on its head, so as to produce the argument that where criminalization would be productive and cost-efficient it should be used. This has been an integral element in English criminal legislation for many years: it is rarely spelt out, but underlies the creation and re-enactment every year of scores of offences with low penalties, attached to statutes on sundry matters such as the Education Act 2005 and the Energy Act 2011. There are two arguments (p. 35) of principle against this approach, however. One is that culpability is central to the notion of wrongdoing, and most of these offences contain little or no culpability requirement. The other is the minimalist principle, also expressed in the *de minimis* limitation, that the criminal law should not be used for minor wrongs. Whilst some of these ‘regulatory’ offences are clearly not minor, others are. As noted in Chapter 1.5, English law lacks a general sanctioning system which does not involve the censure of the criminal law—a system of civil violations, infractions, or administrative wrongs. This makes it even more unlikely that decisions to criminalize are preceded by a vigorous examination of whether some non-criminal sanction would be sufficient. Small wonder that this inverted form of the effectiveness principle tends to lead to over criminalization.

2.5 Morally wrong behaviour

If certain behaviour is regarded as morally wrong, is this a sufficient element of wrongfulness to come within the principles set out in section 2.3? This question has been the subject of vigorous debates about the proper ambit of the criminal law in the realms of sexual morality. In the notable exchanges between Lord Devlin and Professor Hart,[56] Devlin's argument was that a society is entitled to use the criminal law against behaviour which may threaten its existence; that there is a common morality which ensures the cohesion of society; that any deviation from this common morality is capable of affecting society injuriously; and that therefore it may be justifiable and necessary to penalize immoral behaviour.[57] In response, Devlin's opponents have broadly followed the approach of John Stuart Mill[58] in proclaiming that the main or only acceptable reason for criminalizing behaviour is that it causes harm to others, and that supposed ‘immorality’ is not a sufficient reason.

Lord Devlin's argument relies on an unacceptably loose concept of morality. He assumes that immorality is to be defined and measured according to the strength of feelings of ordinary people. If certain behaviour evokes feelings of intolerance, indignation, and disgust among ordinary members of society, that is a sufficient indication that the behaviour threatens the common morality and is therefore a proper object of the criminal law. The difficulty is that these feelings of ordinary people may be more the expression of prejudice than of moral judgment. If a person's reaction to certain behaviour is to be termed ‘moral’, it ought to be grounded in reasons as well as in feelings, and those reasons ought to be consistent with other standards used by that individual to judge personal behaviour. A theory about morality and the criminal law (p. 36) must be based on a defensible definition of morality, not one which confuses it

with mere feelings of distaste and disgust.[59]

Is there, then, such a thing as a common morality? On core matters such as the use of force, fear, and fraud there may well be widely shared moral views, but on sexual matters the divergences may be great. Whose morals are to be a guide? Although Devlin maintained that morals and religion are inextricably joined, he did not argue that the teachings of the established church constitute the common morality. In this he was realistic: British society contains adherents of several religions, with diverse views on abortion, prostitution, euthanasia, and so forth, and there is a large proportion of the population which professes no religion (though its moral codes may bear some traces of religious teachings). Devlin proposed that the common morality could be discovered by assembling a group of ordinary citizens, in the form of a jury, and asking them to reach decisions on certain types of behaviour. However, not only would this method confound prejudices with moral judgments, but it might also fail to elicit agreement on some subjects such as homosexual behaviour and abortion.

Devlin's opponents have tended to be in the individualistic liberal tradition, linking Mill's harm principle with Kantian ethics. According to this view, the law should respect the autonomy of each individual above all; it should treat persons as individuals and allow each to pursue his or her own conception of the good life subject only to the minimum number of constraints necessary to secure the same freedom to other individuals.[60] This is prominent in the minimalist approach to criminalization, and in a 'defensive' criminal law policy that treats the protection of individuals from State power as one of its principal objectives.

Similarly, Feinberg argues that 'paternalistic interference is offensive morally because it invades the realm of personal autonomy where each competent, responsible adult should reign supreme'.[61] Some liberals, when discussing whether or not to criminalize the non-wearing of seat-belts and crash-helmets, for example, might have recourse to the idea of 'harm to others': they might use Mill's principle to argue that the failure to wear seat-belts may result in harm to others, in the sense that the individuals involved may become a burden to others, creating human misery and public expenditure that are easily avoidable. It is doubtful whether this style of argument succeeds. Once the concept of harm is extended to cover indirect hardship to other individuals or to the State, Mill's principle is blunted and the possibilities for criminalization are enormous. Either one must qualify Mill by adopting the strong version of paternalism criticized by Feinberg, or one must recognize frankly that there is a competing principle at work here, such as the welfare principle described earlier. The welfare argument may be that it is strongly in the interests of the community, at a time when resources are limited, **(p. 37)** to avoid unnecessary expenditure on attending to the injuries of citizens who could protect themselves with little inconvenience. But does even that consideration argue for criminalization, as distinct from requiring them to pay for any medical treatment necessitated by their voluntary assumption of risk?

It is widely recognized that some paternalism is appropriate so as to ensure the protection of the young and the mentally disordered. The value of autonomy applies primarily to adults, and there are dangers in persons below the designated age of majority participating in heterosexual or homosexual activities, in drinking alcohol, in betting and gaming, etc. (In Britain this age varies according to the activity, and questions may be raised about the justification for this.) This principle of paternalism towards the vulnerable does not imply that all these activities are 'harmful': rather, it implies that they may have potentially far-reaching

consequences for the individual concerned, and that only persons who have sufficient capacity should be allowed to take their own decisions about the potential risks.

An example of the adjustment of conflicting policies and principles is provided by the report of the Wolfenden Committee on Homosexual Offences and Prostitution in 1957.[62] The Committee followed Mill's approach in asserting that 'there must remain a realm of private morality and immorality which is, in brief and crude terms, not the law's business', but it maintained also that this principle must interact with the need to protect the vulnerable against exploitation and corruption, and with the policy of protecting the citizen 'from what is offensive and injurious'. The protection of the vulnerable may be a justifiable form of paternalism, but what about protecting all citizens (adults and the young) from 'offence'?

This goes beyond protection from harm on Feinberg's definition, since individuals can hardly be said to have a stake in not being shocked or offended.[63] The idea of offensive behaviour draws a public–private distinction in respect of decency and shock to feelings; what adults do in private is not the law's business, so long as harm is not inflicted non-consensually, but what they do in the public domain may be the law's business if it is likely to give serious offence to the feelings of ordinary members of the public. Feinberg's 'offence principle' is that:

> It is always a good reason in support of a proposed criminal prohibition that it is probably necessary to prevent serious offence to persons other than the actor and would probably be an effective means to that end if enacted.[64]

This is not just a traditional utilitarian balancing exercise. Feinberg limits his principle to 'serious offence', but both of these words suffer from considerable indeterminacy. Andrew von Hirsch and Andrew Simester argue that the Feinberg approach is over-inclusive (many things may cause serious offence), subjective, and not clearly connected with wrongdoing. They argue for a more objective benchmark, and suggest that the essence of the wrong involved in offensiveness lies in treating others **(p. 38)** with a gross lack of respect or consideration.[65] As with other principles, this one must be mediated by allowing other values to restrain criminalization. There should be a margin of social tolerance (being called a rude name should not be sufficient); conduct that is readily avoidable should be excluded (as where an area for nude bathing is indicated or well known); and the conduct should be immediately offensive, and not simply create a risk of subsequent offence.[66] How do these criteria apply? Homosexual acts between adult men in private have not been criminal since the Sexual Offences Act 1967, but homosexual acts in public places (e.g. public lavatories) remain criminal[67] on a public-decency or 'offensiveness' rationale, although it is not clear whether the 'ready avoidability' principle is properly applied here. Another example of the public-decency and offensiveness rationale may be found in the Indecent Displays (Control) Act 1981, which criminalizes the display of any indecent matter which is visible from a public place: here, the questions concern the grossness of the lack of consideration, the margin of social tolerance, and of course the possibility that vulnerable people (particularly the young) will be exposed to the display.

2.6 Remote harms

One kind of justification offered for criminalization is that certain conduct may create an opportunity for serious harm to be caused subsequently. The preventive function of the

criminal law may be interpreted as licensing the State to criminalize conduct that creates the risk of a certain harm: the conduct may not be wrongful or harmful in itself, but it is criminalized because of the consequences that may flow from it. The nature of the risk is explicit when the offence is dangerous driving or careless driving. It is implicit, and more remote, in an offence such as speeding—the prohibition on driving a motor vehicle above the applicable speed limit, a law that aims to reduce the risk of death, injury, and damage to property. Another example is a prohibition of conduct based on what the individual may do subsequently, e.g. criminalizing the possession of knives or firearms on the basis that they may be used to kill, injure, or threaten unlawfully. A further example is a prohibition of conduct based on what others may be led to do subsequently, e.g. criminalizing certain processions or public demonstrations because of what others might be tempted to do in response.

Two objections to criminalizing remote harms stand out. One is that normal causal principles appear not to support liability: if conduct is criminalized on account of what it might lead another person to do, such an intervening voluntary act should relieve the original actor of criminal liability, and so it is the person who does that voluntary act who should be penalized. The other objection is that conduct that is not harmful in **(p. 39)** itself should not attract liability, or (as with the inchoate offences) at least not unless it is accompanied by an intention to encourage, assist, or commit a substantive offence.[68] This would rule out most offences of possession, which do not require evidence of any further intent. In particular, cases in which the occurrence of harm depends on a further decision by the actor or by another (e.g. to fire the gun unlawfully) are unsuitable for criminalization.[69]

In the context of many modern societies, however, it would seem foolish to have no offences of unregistered possession of a firearm or of explosives. The social context could be used as a basis for arguing that abstaining from possession of certain dangerous articles like guns and explosives ought to be recognized as a duty of citizenship. It is, of course, a curtailment of liberty. So are all other criminal prohibitions. The question is whether it is *justified* as a curtailment of liberty to have a registration system reinforced by some criminal offences, and in answering this question one should have regard to the magnitude of the harm as well as the likelihood of its occurrence. It is considerations of that nature which tend to support offences of speeding and of drunk driving. Of course it would be possible to have only advisory speed limits, or advisory limits of consumption of alcohol or drugs, and to reserve criminal prosecution for cases where damage, injury, or death is negligently caused. But in terms of prevention that may be regarded as disastrous, on the ground that far more people would be likely to exceed the relevant limits and far more preventable victimization would probably occur. Thus the concern for people's welfare, in the context of the great harm that may result if no criminal laws are in place, tells in favour of criminalization.

2.7 Conclusions and applications

The main determinants of criminalization continue to be political opportunism and power, both linked to the prevailing political culture of the country. Though an attempt has been made in this chapter to identify some general principles, it remains true that key concepts such as harm, wrongdoing, and offensiveness may tend to melt into the political ideologies of the time, as MacCormick argues:

> resort to the criminal law is always parasitic on or ancillary to an established legal order

> of rights and duties in the spheres of private law and public law. Such an order of rights and duties (et cetera) has to be founded on some (however muddled and patchwork) conception of a just ordering of society. The interests protected from invasion by criminal laws are interests legitimated by a given conception of a just social order. And the harm principle would be vacuous without some such conception of legitimate interests. Hence, naturally, the laws which are justified by the harm principle on a given interpretation of 'harm' do indeed (p. 40) coincide with widely held precepts against 'harmful' behaviour. But they do not merely coincide; the criminal law in so far as it is concerned with fending off harmful behaviour is necessarily geared to protection of what are legitimate interests according to a certain dominant political morality.[70]

Without overlooking the politically contingent nature of much criminal legislation, it is still appropriate to discuss the values and principles that ought to be relevant to criminalization decisions, since such considerations rightly play some part at various stages in the generation and refinement of reform proposals. In these concluding remarks, the approach of the chapter will be summarized, and then the possible application of the approach to certain public order offences, terrorism offences, and to the enforcement of civil preventive orders will be discussed.

The approach here has been developed for a broadly liberal democratic society, and for that reason the principles of autonomy and welfare were identified as the leading considerations. No attempt was made to conceal the fact that they may conflict in many situations, and that a key issue will always be the relative weighting of those two principles. Nonetheless, the chapter went on to set out a number of other principles and values, some of them flowing from the nature of criminal law and punishment, some having social derivations. It was argued that the building blocks of criminalization decisions are that the conduct in question must be harmful, wrongful, and of public concern—three key elements which are contestable in their application to given facts, but which are crucial dimensions. Given the censuring purpose of conviction and the probability of punishment, it was argued that the approach to criminalization ought to be minimalist. This means:

- respecting human rights when enacting criminal laws;
- recognizing a right not to be subjected to State punishment and the rights-deprivations it often involves;
- regarding the criminal law as a technique of last resort, after less invasive and stigmatic measures have been dismissed as palpably inappropriate; and
- stepping back from criminalization if its effects are likely to be worse, or no better, than adopting some other approach.

There may be a limited role for paternalistic offences, to protect the vulnerable. There may also be a limited (preventive) role for the criminalization of conduct that is more or less remotely connected with the occurrence of harmful consequences. Lastly, whenever conduct is held to be a sufficiently harmful public wrong to justify criminalization, the maximum penalty to which it exposes an offender must be proportionate to culpability and to the seriousness of the interests violated.

Fundamental to many arguments about criminalization and decriminalization are evidential

issues, some of which are empirical, others predictive. Thus, for example, the principled arguments in the debate about drugs and the criminal sanction must be related (p. 41) to empirical evidence of the effects of drug-taking compared with the effects of alcohol, tobacco, and similar substances, and empirical evidence about the nature and volume of drug-related crimes; the debate must also be related to properly founded predictions of the effects of changing the law. This is only one example: the evidential foundations of arguments for criminalization and decriminalization should always be addressed.

No less necessary is a properly based prediction of the practical effect of introducing new offences, particularly in terms of selective enforcement and creative adaptation. Selective enforcement may mean that the impact falls disproportionately on certain sections of society: traditional patterns of policing may suggest this, and there is some evidence that s. 5 of the Public Order Act 1986 (which criminalizes disorderly, threatening, abusive, or insulting behaviour likely to cause harassment, alarm, or distress) has been invoked disproportionately against members of racial minorities.[71] Creative adaptation has also been apparent as the police have reinterpreted s. 5 in a way not anticipated by the legislators, using it to penalize those who swear at them, and occasions of similar adaptation were discovered in the research into the use of the public order offences introduced by Part V of the Criminal Justice and Public Order Act 1994.[72] It may be replied that these are problems for the control of discretion among police and prosecutors, not for the legislature at the stage of criminalization.

However, even if the objectionable vagueness of offences such as s. 5 is left aside, the question of enforcement cannot be dismissed too readily. Unless there is a prospect of rapid and significant change in on-the-ground policing, the theoretical possibility of greater control of police discretion cannot be a telling counter-argument to over-broad offences.

The Terrorism Act 2006 contains offences that extended the ambit of the criminal law.[73] How would the principles set out in this chapter apply to them? Let us first focus on the offence in s. 1(2) of publishing a statement that is likely to be understood as glorifying acts of terrorism, intending to encourage others or reckless as to whether others are encouraged to commit or prepare for such acts. Several features of this offence give grounds for concern, despite the seriousness of the harm against which it is designed to protect. First, it is an inchoate offence aimed at preventing a remote harm. The offence consists of publishing a statement in the knowledge that others may be encouraged: there is no requirement that anyone is encouraged, let alone that anyone actually carries out any of the preparatory acts mentioned (s. 1(5)(b)). Those acts would, on traditional principles, be the responsibility of the person carrying them out (although the encourager would also be liable).[74] Secondly, the offence does not require proof of an intention to encourage the commission of these further acts: recklessness (knowing (p. 42) that there is a risk of encouraging) is sufficient. That ties in with the provisions making it clear that it is enough if the statement is 'likely to be understood by some members of the public' as an encouragement (s. 1(1)) and that it is enough if members of the public 'could reasonably be expected to infer that what is being glorified is being glorified as conduct that should be emulated by them in existing circumstances' (s. 1(3)(b)). In other words, unlike almost all other offences in the inchoate mode, proof of intent is not required, and there are objective elements in the definition.

Two other concerns are that the key term 'glorifies' remains vague, despite the explanation in s. 20(2) that it 'includes any form of praise or celebration'; and that the significance of this

vagueness is enhanced by the maximum penalty for this inchoate and remote offence, which stands at seven years' imprisonment. The harm against which the offence is designed to guard is a major harm, which could be a terrorist attack causing death; the key question is how much the penalty should be discounted in view of the considerable distance between this offence and the actual taking of steps to cause such a harm. The analysis of this offence also demonstrates how the justifications for criminalization ought to be stronger as the maximum penalty increases. It is one thing to take the decision to criminalize, and quite another to authorize imprisonment, especially for a substantial period.

Also introduced by the Terrorism Act 2006 was the offence of preparation of terrorist acts. Section 5 makes engaging in any conduct in preparation for committing acts or terrorism, or assisting another to commit such acts, with intent to commit or assist such acts, punishable with life imprisonment. The effect of this offence is to extend the ambit of attempts liability much further: whereas a criminal attempt requires conduct that is 'more than merely preparatory' to the commission of the substantive offence, this offence is committed if any conduct that can be viewed as preparatory is engaged in. The offence does require intention, and neither recklessness nor any other objective element is part of the definition. But, despite the enormous distance between the preparatory act and the causing of any harm, the maximum penalty is the highest in English law, life imprisonment.[75]

Lastly, we saw that the minimalist approach includes principle (c), which regards the criminal law as a technique of last resort, after less invasive and stigmatic measures have been dismissed as inappropriate. Discussions of this in England and Wales are blunted by the absence of any established alternative form of regulating unwanted conduct. Although a few particular agencies have alternative methods at their disposal, English law knows no general category of 'infractions', 'violations', 'civil offences', or 'administrative offences'. There is also no unitary machinery for enforcing or adjudicating upon such a category of wrongs. In theory, the criminal law ought to be divided from civil sanctions and administrative regulation by reference to its censuring function, and by the minimalist principle. An important aspect **(p. 43)** of this is that, if a criminal offence is to be created, then the concomitants are proper safeguards for the defendant, at least those that Art. 6 of the Convention treats as the minimum. If it is decided to control certain conduct by way of either regulatory or civil mechanisms, then the penalties ought to be kept very low; otherwise, the mechanism will rightly be held to be 'criminal' in substance, and all the Art. 6 safeguards will have to be respected. However, by enacting more and more 'civil preventive orders', the government has exploited a gap in the system of protections: the anti-social behaviour order, introduced by s. 1 of the Crime and Disorder Act 1998, may be made in civil proceedings, on the application of the local authority, a social landlord, or the police, and has been held not to be a 'criminal charge'.[76] Yet breach of the order (whose conditions were set in civil proceedings) is not just a criminal offence, but an offence thought serious enough to warrant a maximum penalty of five years' imprisonment—an ingenious scheme for imposing harsh punishments yet by-passing the appropriate protections at the crucial stage of the proceedings. There is a criminal offence involved here, that of breaching a civil preventive order (notably, an anti-social behaviour order), and that offence must be justified. The question here is whether this is a sufficiently serious harm and wrong to justify criminalization: one view is that, where the prohibited conduct is not a criminal offence, its inclusion in an ASBO should not be a good enough reason to open the way to a prison sentence, let alone a substantial one. The contrasting view is that, if the court is satisfied that D's conduct was likely to cause

harassment, alarm, or distress to others, that is enough to carry it across the threshold of harmfulness, particularly where it was persistent conduct. Even those who accept this, however, must be prepared to defend a maximum sentence of five years—longer than for many offences—as proportionate.

Further reading

D. HUSAK, *Overcriminalization* (2008).

A. P. SIMESTER and A. VON HIRSCH, *Crimes, Harms and Wrongs* (2011).

R. A.DUFF, *Answering for Crime* (2007), chs 4 and 6.

N. JAREBORG, 'What Kind of Criminal Law do we Want?', in A. SNARE (ed.), *Beware of Punishment: On the Utility and Futility of Criminal Law* (1995).

A. ASHWORTH, *Positive Obligations in Criminal Law* (2013).

Notes:

[1] D. Husak, *Overcriminalization* (2008).

[2] R. A. Duff, *Answering for Crime* (2007), 142–3.

[3] For an accessible discussion see A. Kenny, *Freewill and Responsibility* (1978).

[4] For critical discussion see e.g. J. Fischer, 'Responsibility and Control' (1982) 79 *Journal of Philosophy* 24.

[5] B. Hudson, 'Punishing the Poor: a Critique of the Dominance of Legal Reasoning in Penal Policy and Practice', in A. Duff et al. (eds), *Penal Theory and Practice* (1994), 302.

[6] R. A. Duff, 'Law, Language and Community: Some Preconditions of Criminal Liability' (1998) 18 OJLS 189; see also the concept of 'moral autonomy', developed by J. Gardner, 'On the General Part of Criminal Law', in R. A. Duff (ed.), *Philosophy and the Criminal Law* (1998), 239–44.

[7] See D. N. MacCormick, *Legal Right and Social Democracy* (1982), 23–4.

[8] R. Dworkin, *Taking Rights Seriously* (1977), 180.

[9] For the argument that this aspect of autonomy (which he terms 'personal autonomy') does not presuppose what I term the factual element in autonomy see Gardner, 'On the General Part', 241.

[10] H. L. A. Hart, *Punishment and Responsibility* (2nd edn., 2008), discussed in Chapter 6.

[11] J. Feinberg, *Harm to Self* (1986), 54; cf. his extensive discussion of autonomy in chs 17, 18, and 19 of that work.

[12] N. Lacey, *Unspeakable Subjects* (1998), 4–14; for an example, see the partial defence of loss of control discussed in Chapter 7.4(b).

[13] See the quotation from Hudson, n 5.

[14] J. Raz, *The Morality of Freedom* (1986), 425.

[15] Raz, *The Morality of Freedom*, *passim*.

[16] N. Lacey, *State Punishment* (1988), 104.

[17] See n 5.

[18] E.g. N. Lacey, 'Community in Legal Theory: Idea, Ideal or Ideology?' (1996) 15 *Studies in Law, Politics and Society* 105.

[19] See Feinberg, *Harm to Self*, 37–47 for discussion.

[20] A. Brudner, 'Agency and Welfare in the Penal Law', in S. Shute, J. Gardner, and J. Horder (eds), *Action and Value in Criminal Law* (1993).

[21] A. Brudner, 'Agency and Welfare in the Penal Law', in S. Shute, J. Gardner, and J. Horder (eds), *Action and Value in Criminal Law* (1993).

[22] For further development in the context of criminal procedure, see A. Ashworth and M. Redmayne, *The Criminal Process* (4th edn., 2010), ch 2.4.

[23] J. Raz, 'Autonomy, Toleration and the Harm Principle', in R. Gavison (ed.), *Issues in Contemporary Legal Philosophy* (1987).

[24] Feinberg, *Harm to Self*, and J. Feinberg, *Harmless Wrongdoing* (1988).

[25] D. N. MacCormick, *Legal Right and Social Democracy* (1982), 29; B. Harcourt, 'The Collapse of the Harm Principle' (1999) 90 J Cr L and Crim 109.

[26] J. Feinberg, *Harm to Others* (1984), 215.

[27] Feinberg, *Harm to Others*, 31–6.

[28] Feinberg, *Harm to Others*, 26.

[29] See Duff, *Answering for Crime* (2007), 123.

[30] Feinberg, *Harm to Others*, ch 5.

[31] Feinberg, *Harm to Others*, 36.

[32] Simester and von Hirsch, *Crimes, Harms and Wrongs*, 22 and ch 2, *passim*.

[33] Simester and von Hirsch, *Crimes, Harms and Wrongs*, 27.

[34] For fuller exploration, see Simester and von Hirsch, *Crimes, Harms and Wrongs*, ch 11, and D. Husak, *Overcriminalization* (2008), chs 2 and 3.

[35] R. A.DUFF , *Answering for Crime* (2007), 141–2.

[36] Duff, *Answering for Crime*, 141. See also V. Tadros, 'The Distinctiveness of Domestic Abuse', in R. A. Duff and S. P. Green (eds), *Defining Crimes* (2005).

[37] G. Lamond, 'What is a Crime?' (2007) 27 OJLS 609.

[38] See Chapter 8.3(f).

[39] Crime and Disorder Act 1998, ss. 29–32.

[40] See Chapter 4.6 for the argument that English law fails in this respect.

[41] See Chapter 4.7.

[42] See Chapters 8.5, 8.6, and 8.7, and L. Lazarus, 'Positive Obligations and Criminal Justice', in L. Zedner and J. Roberts (eds), *Principles and Values in Criminal Law and Criminal Justice* (2012).

[43] *DPP* v *Collins* [2007] 1 Cr App R 5.

[44] But note s. 29J of the Public Order Act 1986 (inserted by the Racial and Religious Hatred Act 2006), re-stating freedom of expression as a value.

[45] *DPP* v *Hammond* [2004] Crim LR 851; cf. *DPP* v *Redmond-Bate* [1999] Crim LR 998, where the Divisional Court held that the interference with rights was not justified.

[46] Husak, *Overcriminalization*, 95–101.

[47] A. Ashworth, 'Should Strict Criminal Liability be Removed from All Imprisonable Offences?' (2010) 45 *Irish Jurist* 1; A. Ashworth, *Positive Obligations in Criminal Law* (2013), ch 4.

[48] Discussed in Chapter 1.1.

[49] A. Ashworth, 'Is the Criminal Law a Lost Cause?' (2000) 116 LQR 225.

[50] J. Bentham, *Introduction to the Principles of Morals and Legislation* (1789), ch 13.

[51] See Husak, *Overcriminalization*, ch 3, and J. Schonsheck, *On Criminalization* (1994), ch 3.

[52] Cf. the assertions in S. Kadish, *Blame and Punishment* (1987), 23, 57.

[53] See Kadish, *Blame and Punishment*, 22–8, for elaboration of this argument.

[54] See e.g. D. Husak, *Drugs and Rights* (1992), Schonsheck, *On Criminalisation*, ch 6, and UK Drug Policy Commission, Final Report, *A Fresh Approach to Drugs* (2012).

[55] Cf. the argument of Peter Alldridge, in ch 7 of his *Relocating Criminal Law* (2000), to the effect that dealers who supply drugs to addicts are committing the wrong of exploitation. His conclusion, however, is that there are powerful counter-arguments to continued criminalization.

[56] The principal essays written by the protagonists are collected in H. L. A. Hart, *Law, Liberty,*

and Morality (1963), and P. Devlin, *The Enforcement of Morals* (1965).

[57] See ch 1 of his *The Enforcement of Morals*.

[58] J. S. Mill, *On Liberty* (1859), *passim*.

[59] Dworkin, *Taking Rights Seriously*, ch 10.

[60] See the discussion in section 2.1, and also W. Wilson, *Central Issues in Criminal Theory* (2002), ch 1.

[61] Feinberg, *Harmless Wrongdoing*, p. xvii, summarizing the argument developed in Feinberg, *Harm to Self*, chs 18 and 19. For a stimulating discussion in relation to the place of consent in criminal law see P. Roberts, 'Consent in the Criminal Law' (1997) 17 OJLS 389; see also Chapter 8.3(g) .

[62] Cmnd. 257 (1957).

[63] See n 28.

[64] J. Feinberg, *Offense to Others* (1985), ch 7.

[65] A. von Hirsch and A. P. Simester, 'Penalising Offensive Behaviour', in A. von Hirsch and A. P. Simester (eds), *Incivilities: Regulating Offensive Behaviour* (2006), 120.

[66] von Hirsch and Simester, 'Penalising Offensive Behaviour', 124–30.

[67] Sexual Offences Act 2003, s. 71.

[68] On the new inchoate offences of encouraging and assisting crime, see Chapter 11.7.

[69] For further discussion, see A. Ashworth, 'The Unfairness of Risk-Based Possession Offences' (2011) 5 Criminal Law & Philosophy 237; A. Ashworth, *Positive Obligations in Criminal Law* (2013), ch 6.

[70] MacCormick, *Legal Right and Social Democracy*, 30.

[71] D. Brown and T. Ellis, *Policing Low-Level Disorder: Police Use of Section 5 of the Public Order Act 1986* (1994), 28–34.

[72] T. Bucke and Z. James, *Trespass and Protest: Policing under the Criminal Justice and Public Order Act 1994* (1998).

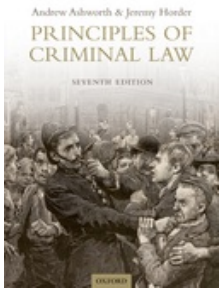
[73] See the analysis by V. Tadros, 'Justice and Terrorism' (2007) 11 New Crim LR 658.

[74] See the offences of 'encouraging and assisting crime' introduced by Part 2 of the Serious Crime Act 2007, and discussed in Chapter 11.7.

[75] C. P. Walker, *Blackstone's Guide to the Anti-Terrorism Legislation* (2nd edn., 2009), 197, notes that other criminal offences were available in all the s. 5 cases he discusses.

[76] *Clingham* v *Royal Borough of Kensington and Chelsea* [2003] 1 AC 787, and the criticism in A. Ashworth, 'Social Control and "Anti-Social Behaviour": the Subversion of Human Rights?'

(2004) 120 LQR 263.



Principles of Criminal Law (7th edn)

Andrew Ashworth and Jeremy Horder

Publisher: Oxford University Press
Print ISBN-13: 9780199672684
DOI: 10.1093/he/9780199672684.001.0001

Print Publication Date: May 2013
Published online: Sep 2013

3. Principles and Policies

Chapter: (p. 44) 3. Principles and Policies
Author(s): Andrew Ashworth and Jeremy Horder
DOI: 10.1093/he/9780199672684.003.0003

3.1 Rules and principles
3.2 Constitutionality and codification
3.3 Human rights and criminal law
3.4 The range of the criminal law
3.5 The rule of law and fair procedures
3.6 Principles relating to the conditions of liability
3.7 Conclusions
Further reading

3.1 Rules and principles

The criminal law is sometimes presented and discussed as if it were a system of rules. It will already have become apparent from Chapters 1 and 2 that this is not true. Although there are

rules, and although Parliament often goes through lengthy debates before enacting rules, there is also a great deal of discretion which often enables the police, prosecutors, magistrates, judges, and juries to adopt approaches that cannot be said to have been 'dictated' by the law. Even if it is pointed out that over 90 per cent of cases in the magistrates' courts and some two-thirds in the Crown Court involve a plea of guilty and therefore no trial, it remains the case that some of those guilty pleas will have involved negotiation between prosecution and defence; and, more especially, it must be recalled that the police exercise considerable discretion in their daily encounters with citizens.[1]

There is another sense in which study of the rules is unsatisfactory as the sole or primary approach to understanding the criminal law. English criminal law both is shaped and ought to be shaped by a number of principles, policies, and other standards and doctrines. One of the purposes of this chapter is to draw together and to discuss critically some of the foremost principles that ought to exert an influence on the substance of English criminal law. Examples will be given to show when certain principles have been officially recognized and may therefore have played a part in the development of case law or legislation, but the emphasis is on the normative **(p. 45)** justifications for upholding each principle. The principle is then followed by a policy or other instrumental goal that may often run counter to the principle in practice. It is not maintained that the principles and policies discussed in this chapter exhaust the range of standards, doctrines, and other arguments that may be relevant to the shaping of English criminal law: indeed, particular considerations relevant to specific offences are discussed in relation to those offences in the remainder of the book. Here, the focus is on a group of defensible principles that are consistent with the principle of autonomy outlined in Chapter 2.1, as modified by a minimal commitment to the principle of welfare in order to ensure that the social arrangements necessary to enable citizens to exercise their autonomy are also supported by the criminal law where necessary.[2] For ease of exposition, the discussion is divided into three parts: section 3.4 deals with the range of offences, recalling Chapter 2; section 3.6 deals with principles bearing on the conditions of liability, to some extent anticipating Chapters 4, 5, and 6; and section 3.5 states some procedural principles. Questions of priority will then be discussed in section 3.7.

3.2 Constitutionality and codification

We noted in Chapter 1.3 that many offences and defences in English criminal law are still governed by the common law, giving a significant role to the courts. In constitutional theory, decisions about what conduct should be criminal should be taken by the legislature, and these decisions should then be implemented by the executive and applied by the courts. This has led to a movement not only for legislative reform of the criminal law, but also for codification. Thus the Law Commission gave its general support, when putting forward its Draft Criminal Code in 1989, to the following proposition:

> because a criminal code makes a symbolic statement about the constitutional relationship of Parliament and the courts, it requires a judicial deference to the legislative will greater than that which the courts have often shown to isolated and sporadic pieces of legislation. Far from it being a possible disadvantage of codification that it places limitations upon the ability of the courts to develop the law in directions which might be considered desirable, we believe that for the criminal law this is one of its greatest

merits.[3]

Thus the enterprise of codifying English criminal law has been seen partly as an exercise in constitutional propriety, subjecting the contours of the criminal law to the democratic process of Parliament rather than leaving them largely to the common (p. 46) law and the judges. One might argue that this change would be more symbolic than practical: the parliamentary process may be democratic merely in theory, since a powerful government may push through measures not directly related to its political mandate, and the judiciary is bound to retain considerable powers through its interpretive role. Indeed, the Law Commission's draft code deliberately left a number of points open for judicial development (e.g. liability for omissions, the recognition and scope of defences), although the significance of these areas is small compared with the bulk of the code.

Constitutional propriety apart, the chief aims of codifying the criminal law would be to improve its accessibility (having a large number of offences 'set out in one well-drafted enactment in place of the present fluctuating mix of statute and case law'[4]), its comprehensibility (adopting a simpler drafting style), its consistency (in the sense of greater uniformity of reasoning and of terminology), and its certainty (settling many issues in advance, rather than leaving judicial decisions to do so after the event).[5] The twentieth century codification project was commenced and shaped by a small team of academic lawyers, who produced a draft code for the Law Commission in 1985,[6] and the Law Commission, after consultation, published its own Draft Criminal Code in 1989.[7] Influential opinion suggested that it would not be practical to try to put the whole code through Parliament as a single Bill, since it was too large for the legislative system to cope with satisfactorily,[8] and so the Commission began to come forward with some shorter Bills. The first of these dealt with non-fatal offences against the person,[9] and an amended version of it was put out for consultation by the government in 1998.[10] Another short Bill was put forward by the Law Commission on manslaughter,[11] and that too was followed by a government paper.[12] Absolutely nothing happened as a result of either declaration of government intent. The Law Commission's 2008 programme announced the abandonment of the codification project, citing factors such as increased complexity and rapid changes in legislation.[13] Since then there has been sporadic legislation based on specific reports of the Law Commission on matters such as partial defences to homicide and bribery, and in the coming years reports on the insanity defence, contempt of court, and non-fatal offences against the person (again) are anticipated.[14]

(p. 47) Despite leading judges adding their voices to the call for a criminal code,[15] it seems that the emphasis now is on accomplishing reforms of particular parts of the criminal law rather than enacting a code and amending it subsequently. This means that the criminal law will continue to be scattered and difficult to find: as Toulson LJ stated, 'to a worryingly large extent, statutory law is not practically accessible today, even to the courts whose constitutional duty it is to interpret and enforce it'.[16] The piecemeal approach to criminal law reform has signally lost some of the key objectives of codification—the largely *formal* virtues of clarity, certainty, and consistency. Reforming legislation such as the Corporate Manslaughter and Corporate Homicide Act 2007 and Part 2 of the Serious Crime Act 2007 (not to mention the Sexual Offences Act 2003, although that was not a Law Commission product) has become so technical and complex in its style as to make the original draft code proposed by the Law Commission in 1989 read like a Beatrix Potter story. However, although the style of drafting in the 1989 code has much to commend it, its approach to the proper contents of a criminal code

was more controversial.[17] There ought to be reconsideration of the decision to confine the code to 'traditional' crimes. In so far as the process of codification is intended to make the law more accessible and understandable to the public, is there not an argument for trying to deal with the most serious offences, rather than simply the traditional ones?[18] To exclude from the code serious offences carrying maximum penalties of seven, ten, or fourteen years, such as causing death by dangerous driving, while including offences such as kerb-crawling and wearing a military uniform when not entitled, seems questionable on grounds of social symbolism, to say the least.

The Scots tradition in criminal law has also placed reliance on common law development. Scottish courts, it has been said, have an inherent power to punish conduct that is grossly immoral or mischievous, or is obviously of a criminal nature.[19] This, as we will see below,[20] has led to the judicial creation of new crimes even in modern times. The justification often advanced is one of keeping the criminal law in touch with the community, but this begs questions about the judges' ability to represent or distil community values. On this view, as Lindsay Farmer argues, 'the community is idealized and free of conflicts and, of course, is not represented by the legislature'.[21] However, the Scottish Law Commission has published a Draft Criminal Code, prepared by a group **(p. 48)** of academic lawyers.[22] Its relative brevity is to be commended, but it is open to similar social criticisms as its English counterpart.

3.3 Human rights and criminal law

If one constitutional principle is that the reach of the criminal law should be declared by the legislature, leaving the courts to apply and to interpret the legislation, another is that the criminal law should respect fundamental rights and freedoms. There are two sources of fundamental rights relevant to English criminal law—European Community law, and the European Convention on Human Rights. European Community law is potentially more powerful, since it takes priority over domestic law. However, its impact on English criminal law remains somewhat scattered, even if frequently underestimated.[23] The 'third pillar' of the European Union, as established by the Maastricht Treaty of 1992, relates to co-operation in the fields of justice and home affairs. The Amsterdam Treaty of 1999 defined the objective of the 'third pillar' as the creation of an 'area of freedom, security and justice'. The EU Constitutional Treaty anticipates its further development, and the provisions in Art. III-270 envisage harmonization of criminal laws as well as harmonized procedures, to go with mutual assistance and other co-operation (such as the European arrest warrant) already in place.[24]

More important in practice has been the change wrought by the Human Rights Act 1998, which may be loosely described as having incorporated into English law the European Convention on Human Rights. Reference has already been made to some Convention rights in Chapter 2.3 and 2.4. For present purposes, it is sufficient to make a broad sketch of the substantive rights guaranteed by the Convention, with some indication of their relevance to English criminal law:[25]

- Article 2 (right to life): self-defence and permissible force as exceptions; abortion; the surgical separation of conjoined twins; the right to self-determination, and assisting suicide.
- Article 3 (right not to be subjected to torture or inhuman or degrading treatment): protection through laws against sexual and physical violation; extent of defence of parental

chastisement.

• Article 4 (right not to be held in slavery or servitude): protection through laws against forced labour and human trafficking.

(p. 49) • Article 5 (right to liberty and security of person): the defence of insanity; arrest for breach of the peace; and the 'quality of law' test.

• Article 6.2 (presumption of innocence): the burden of proof, and (possibly) offences of strict liability.

• Article 7 (prohibition on retroactive criminal laws): judicial lawmaking, and certainty in the definition of criminal offences.

• Article 8 (right to respect for private life): sexual offences; consent to physical harm; child abduction.

• Article 9 (freedom of religion): blasphemy (also Art. 10).

• Article 10 (freedom of expression): obscenity; racial hatred offences; contempt of court; incitement to disaffection; official secrets legislation; breach of the peace, and s. 5 of the Public Order Act 1986.

• Article 11 (freedom of assembly): breach of the peace, and various offences under the Public Order Act 1986 and the Criminal Justice and Public Order Act 1994 concerned with processions and demonstrations.

This list does not go into detail, but there will be references to the Convention and its jurisprudence at appropriate points in the later chapters. Nor is the list an exhaustive one. What is significant is that the Convention rights operate as a source of 'higher law' that can be used as a benchmark of the constitutionality of criminal legislation. Where a court finds that the definition of an offence interferes with one of the defendant's Convention rights and (if it is a right protected by Arts. 8–11) does so either without it being 'necessary in a democratic society' or proportionate to such a necessity, it may recognize this as the basis for a defence to liability.[26]

What has been the impact of the Human Rights Act on the criminal law? The reports and consultation papers issued by the Law Commission have taken considerable care to deal with possible Convention issues. The compatibility of legislation with the Convention should be assured by the procedure whereby the Minister sponsoring a Bill certifies that it is compatible with Convention rights,[27] but in fact certificates have been issued for some Bills whose compatibility has been much contested.[28] Section 6 of the Human Rights Act requires all public authorities (including the courts) to act in compliance with the Convention: this means that courts are bound to overrule judicial precedents which they find to be inconsistent with the Convention. Courts also have a duty under s. 2 of the Human Rights Act to 'take into account' decisions of the European Court of Human Rights. The wording of s. 2 makes it clear that the Strasbourg decisions are not binding: English courts have to interpret the Convention in the light of the Strasbourg jurisprudence, and may also consider other relevant decisions which may be drawn to their attention (e.g. decisions of the Privy Council, or constitutional cases (p. 50) from Canada, New Zealand, the USA, or South Africa). If the English courts were to decide not to follow a decision of the European Court of Human Rights, the right of an individual to petition to Strasbourg is available. In some spheres, where the Convention jurisprudence is weak (such as the burden of proof and Art. 6(2)), the English courts have gone further than the Strasbourg decisions and have followed the lead of other Commonwealth countries.[29]

Most powerful of all is s. 3 of the Act, which requires courts to construe legislation so as to comply with the Convention, 'so far as it is possible to do so'. This confers on courts a rather different interpretative role from that assumed at common law. Judicial discussions about 'the intention of Parliament' should be less frequent in cases where a Convention right is engaged, since the primary task is to reach an interpretation which protects the rights of individuals under the Convention—which may be the rights of defendants or of (potential) victims, for example. However, in some cases the courts have used this interpretative power extravagantly, so as to hold that a legislative provision bears a meaning that seems difficult to reconcile with its wording.[30] The courts do have an alternative approach in such situations: if a court is unable to read a statutory provision compatibly with the Convention, it will have to proceed as normal and the defendant will then appeal. An appellate court (Court of Appeal, Divisional Court, House of Lords) has the power under s. 4 to make a 'declaration of incompatibility' if it is satisfied that a statutory provision is incompatible with the Convention.[31] This may lead the government to take remedial action (s. 10), but the issue of a declaration of incompatibility itself has no effect on the continuing validity of the law or on the outcome of the proceedings in the case.

In coming to grips with the Convention and its jurisprudence, it is important to note the difference in patterns of reasoning that it requires. The rights declared in the Convention have different strengths and, where they have exceptions, the structure of the exceptions may differ markedly. One pointer to this is Art. 15, which permits States to derogate from certain rights under the Convention 'in time of war or other emergency threatening the life of the nation', 'to the extent strictly required by the exigencies of the situation',[32] but specifically excludes from derogation the rights in Arts. 2, 3, 4(1), and 7. One might therefore construct the following hierarchy of rights:

- *Non-derogable rights*: the right to life (Art. 2), the right not to be subjected to torture, inhuman, or degrading treatment (Art. 3), the prohibition on slavery and forced labour (Art. 4(1)), and the right not to be convicted of a crime that was not in force at the time of the conduct (Art. 7). Article 2 does provide for certain exceptions, and the same exceptions should apply in some Art. 3 cases.[33] But those exceptions, discussed in Chapter 4.6, are narrowly circumscribed.

(p. 51) - *Strong rights*: the right to liberty and security of person (Art. 5), the right to a fair trial (Art. 6), and the right to enjoy Convention rights without discrimination on any ground (Art. 14). A State is permitted to derogate from these rights under the strict terms of Art. 15,[34] and the Strasbourg court has in some cases been content to afford States some margin of appreciation in respect of these rights.

- *Qualified rights*: the right to a private life (Art. 8), the right to freedom of thought and religion (Art. 9), the right to freedom of expression (Art. 10), the right to freedom of assembly (Art. 11). These are qualified or *prima facie* rights, their common feature being that the first paragraph of the Article declares the right, and the second paragraph sets out the circumstances in which the right may justifiably be interfered with. This affords considerable scope for argument, using the Strasbourg jurisprudence and other sources.[35] The right to peaceful enjoyment of possessions, declared by Protocol 1, is also subject to a 'public interest' exception which places it within this broad category.

The grounds for justifying exceptions to the qualified rights under the second paragraphs of Arts. 8 to 11 are fairly broad and wide-ranging, and turn on the two requirements of 'necessary in a democratic society' and 'proportionality'. Although the Strasbourg Court does not have an entirely consistent approach to the question of proportionality, its approach is more rigorous than that of the English courts to their preferred and looser concept of 'balancing'.[36] In summary, the rights declared in the Convention are not extensive and were never intended as a complete statement of the limits of the criminal sanction. As expected, the impact of the Human Rights Act on the substantive criminal law (as distinct from criminal procedure and evidence) has been rather small: the issues surrounding the compatibility of the rules on self-defence and insanity have not yet come up for decision, and few of the reported cases have necessitated a re-writing of English criminal law.[37] However, there remains scope for critical discussion of the certainty of some aspects of English criminal law, as we shall see in paras. 3.5(g) to (j).

(p. 52) 3.4 The range of the criminal law

The preceding chapter illustrated the difficulties involved in deciding which interests the criminal law should protect (to which the Convention has some relevance), and in ranking harms so as to achieve some kind of proportionality. Clearly a primary aim of the criminal law ought to be to provide for the conviction of those who culpably cause major harms to other citizens or to the community, but it has already been noted that in practice the criminal law contains a myriad of less serious or more controversial offences. What principles and policies are relevant to the decisions to expand or contract the criminal law in these spheres? The enquiry begins by summarizing four principles and policies already discussed in Chapter 2, and then moves on to consider two other relevant principles.

(a) The principle of minimum criminalization

This principle, which was discussed in Chapter 2.4, is that the ambit of the criminal law should be kept to a minimum. It flows from the principle of autonomy and the minimalist notion of welfare already developed in Chapter 2. As we saw, the point is not so much to reduce criminal law to its absolute minimum as to ensure that resort is had to criminalization only in order to protect individual autonomy or to protect those social arrangements necessary to ensure that individuals have the capacity and facilities to exercise their autonomy. The principle is supported by various evidential and pragmatic conditions, so that even if it appears to be justifiable in theory to criminalize certain conduct, the decision should not be taken without an assessment of the probable impact of criminalization, its efficacy, its side-effects, and the possibility of tackling the problem by other forms of regulation and control. Creation of a criminal offence has the consequence that a defendant accused of that crime has the minimum rights guaranteed by Art. 6(3) of the Convention.

(b) The policy of social defence

Perhaps the strongest arguments against minimum criminalization are thought to derive from the policy of social defence. According to this view, the criminal law may properly be used against any form of activity which threatens good order or is thought reprehensible. There are, on this view, no limits to the use of the criminal sanction apart from financial ones. It was argued in Chapter 2 that many extensions of the criminal law are examples of political

posturing, a government response to a matter of social concern about which 'something must be done'. For this reason a sceptical stance should be adopted towards claims of 'social defence', which are easy to advance. If it is claimed that the new crime is needed to protect people from certain harms, it must be asked whether the wrong involved is so serious as to justify criminalization, and (p. 53) whether protection cannot be supplied more effectively by other means outside the criminal law. Creating a new crime may have a welcome symbolic effect, in condemning certain activity, but criminalization may still be neither appropriate nor effective in terms of protecting people from harm.

One difficulty with the principle of minimum criminalization is, however, that it could be taken to freeze the contours of the criminal law. If it were interpreted as a barrier against further extensions of criminal law, this would be unsatisfactory, as it would take scant account of the many anomalies accumulated in English law, as in other systems, over the years. Rectification of an anomaly (for example, the old rule that a husband could not be convicted of the rape of his wife[38]) may well lead to a new sphere of criminalization; so may the extension of the criminal law to cover a newly arising mischief, such as Internet pornography,[39] or a newly publicized mischief, such as stalking, that may cause significant harm.[40] The extension of the criminal law into areas such as these may be justified on the ground that the wrongs involved in such conduct are no less significant than those involved in many serious crimes already established. These examples are important as a corrective to extreme libertarian arguments deriving from the policy of minimum criminalization. One might well agree that we all prefer our behaviour to be subject to as few constraints as possible, but that preference must be placed in the context of our membership of a community. Certain constraints may be reasonable in the interests of the community at large, even though they restrict particular individuals, as we saw when elaborating the principle of welfare in Chapter 2.2.

However, the interaction between the principle of minimum criminalization and the policy of social defence may operate in undesirable ways. It may be decided to deal with significantly anti-social behaviour through the civil law, thereby avoiding the extra protections conferred by English law and by Art. 6 on persons 'charged with a criminal offence'. This was the strategy behind the creation of the anti-social behaviour order: the House of Lords has confirmed, taking a narrow view of s. 1 of the Crime and Disorder Act 1998, that proceedings for the imposition of an anti-social behaviour order are civil (although holding that a standard of proof indistinguishable from the criminal standard should be applied),[41] even though the consequence of a breach of such an order is the commission of a strict liability offence with a maximum penalty of five years' imprisonment. Such orders operate like a Trojan horse. They pay lip-service to the principle of minimum criminalization, whilst enabling severe punishment with no more than a token gesture towards the normal rights of the defendant.[42]

(p. 54) (c) The principle of liability for acts not omissions

This principle has often been cited, in the courts and elsewhere, as a reason for restricting the ambit of the criminal sanction.[43] In fact, Parliament has applied the policy of social defence to produce a great increase in the number of offences which penalize persons for 'failing to' fulfil certain requirements, usually concerned with motoring, business, and finance. It now seems to be accepted that there are justifications for imposing positive duties at least on those who engage in potentially dangerous activities, such as handling radioactive substances, selling food, or driving on the roads. There is a long-standing and fundamental duty on a parent to

ensure the health or welfare of her or his child,[44] and that has now been extended to a duty to protect members of one's household who are children or vulnerable adults.[45] The courts have tended to regard omissions liability as exceptional and in need of special justification. The main reason is that positive duties to act are regarded as an incursion on individual liberty: the principle of autonomy militates against omissions liability, on the ground that public duties restrict one's liberty to pursue one's own ends by requiring one to respond to events whenever they occur (e.g. by throwing a lifebelt, or assisting injured people). The courts have, however, held that familial ties and voluntarily assumed obligations may be acceptable as bases for criminalizing omissions, but there has been no legislative or judicial enthusiasm for a general duty to assist strangers or to take steps towards enforcing the law. As we will see in Chapter 4.4, this viewpoint is grounded in a highly individualistic version of the autonomy principle.

(d) The principle of social responsibility

This countervailing principle adopts the welfare-based proposition that society requires a certain level of co-operation and mutual assistance between citizens. There are powerful arguments of welfare which support certain duties to act to protect others in dire situations. Many other European countries criminalize the failure to render assistance to another citizen who is in peril, so long as that assistance can be given without danger to oneself.[46] Three arguments are often raised against such 'extensions' of the criminal law. First, it is objected that it will inevitably be unclear what is expected of the citizen: such laws often use the word 'reasonable', and this fails to give fair warning of what should be done and when.[47] A second and consequential objection is that the exercise of prosecutorial discretion then becomes a major determinant of criminal liability. This may be criticized as weakening the rule of law, by **(p. 55)** transferring effective power to officials.[48] Thirdly, it is argued that omissions liability calls for much greater justification than the imposition of liability for acts. It is said that this reflects a widely felt moral distinction: 'we do much more wrong when we kill than when we fail to save, even when such a failure violates a positive duty to prevent death.'[49] But even if there is such a distinction, it would only establish that omissions are viewed less seriously than acts, not that they are unsuitable for criminalization—and research into public attitudes suggests otherwise.[50] So long as proper attention is paid to 'rule of law' protections such as the principle of fair warning, there may be good arguments for criminal liability for omissions, but the requirements and the boundaries of omissions liability need further debate and elucidation.[51] The recognition of some social duties is therefore essential if all individuals are to have a proper capacity for autonomy, and further the imposition of duties backed by the criminal sanction may be justifiable to safeguard vital interests (such as life and physical integrity), if this can be done without risk or hardship to the citizen. This principle of social responsibility would therefore support, for example, an offence of failing to render assistance to a citizen in peril, where that assistance can be accomplished without danger to the rescuer. The critical element here is the danger to human life and the (qualified) duty to take certain action: it is not a prescription for making all citizens into their fellow citizens' keepers, nor need it render D liable for all the consequences.[52] These arguments on social responsibility and omissions liability are developed further in Chapter 4.4(c).

(e) Conflicting rights and the principle of necessity

There may be circumstances in which it is a person's right to use force on another, even to

take another's life, as is evident from the exceptions to the right to life declared in Art. 2 of the Convention. In principle this applies only where it is necessary for the defender to use force in order to prevent the infringement of the right to life or the right to security of person. Similarly, where it is absolutely necessary for the apprehension of a suspected offender, prevention of the escape of a person lawfully detained, or for the protection of an individual from attack, it may be justifiable for one individual to infringe the normal rights of the other (the aggressor). The ambit of the principle is examined more fully in Chapter 4.6.

(p. 56) **(f) The principle of proportionality**

This principle operates so as to place limitations on the amount of force that may properly be used in conditions of necessity. No individual, even an offender, should have his or her interests sacrificed except to the extent that it is both absolutely necessary and reasonably proportionate to the harm committed or threatened. This should apply equally to law enforcement officers and to ordinary citizens. A sharper formulation of this principle would be that the principle of necessity, in cases of conflicting rights, grants the authority to inflict only the minimum harm—a version of the view that one is permitted to use force only if it is a lesser evil than allowing events to take their course.[53] As we will see in Chapter 4.6, the Strasbourg Court has read a requirement of 'strict proportionality' into Art. 2.[54] There may also be arguments for differentiating between sudden and instinctive responses and those cases where there is ample time for reflection. Further, the assumption that the user of force is innocent and the other party is the wrongdoer does not apply in all cases, as we will see in Chapter 6.4.

3.5 The rule of law and fair procedures

In this section we deal, at greater length, with those principles and policies relating to the function of the criminal law as a means of guiding the conduct of members of society and the conduct of courts and law enforcement officers. In relation to each pair of contrasting precepts, the first-mentioned principle will have the support of the European Convention of Human Rights, whereas the second is usually based on pragmatic and political considerations of the time. Three pairs deal with aspects of the principle of legality, sometimes expressed by the maxim *nullum crimen sine lege*. This fundamental principle is more frequently rendered in England in terms of 'the rule of law':

> According to the ideal of the rule of law, the law must be such that those subject to it can reliably be guided by it, either to avoid violating it or to build the legal consequences of having violated it into their thinking about what future actions may be open to them. People must be able to find out what the law is and to factor it into their practical deliberations. The law must avoid taking people by surprise, ambushing them, putting them into conflict with its requirements in such a way as to defeat their expectations and to frustrate their plans.[55]

This is a fundamental principle, with both procedural and substantive implications. It expresses an incontrovertible minimum of respect for the principle of autonomy: citizens must be informed of the law before it can be fair to convict them of an offence (many of the *mens rea* and culpability doctrines discussed in Chapter 5 are connected (p. 57) to this), and both legislatures and courts must apply the rule of law by not criminalizing conduct that was lawful

when done.

(g) The non-retroactivity principle

In many other jurisdictions, especially within Europe, it is usual to begin a discussion of general principles of the criminal law by stating the maxim *nullum crimen sine lege*, sometimes known as the principle of legality. However, the connotations of the principle of legality are so wide-ranging that it is preferable to divide it into three distinct principles—the principle of non-retroactivity, the principle of maximum certainty, and the principle of strict construction of penal statutes.

The essence of the non-retroactivity principle is that a person should never be convicted or punished except in accordance with a previously declared offence governing the conduct in question. The principle is to be found in the European Convention on Human Rights, Art. 7: 'no one shall be held guilty of any offence on account of any act or omission which did not constitute a criminal offence under national or international law at the time when it was committed.' The rationale links back to the autonomy principle and to the concept of reliance inherent in the 'rule of law' ideal: 'respect for autonomy involves respect for the ability to plan, which requires respect for the ability to rely on the law', which in turn generates the principle of non-retroactivity.[56] How does it apply to the courts? It may seem obvious to state that they should not invent crimes and then punish people for conduct which falls within the new definition. But how would the common law have developed if such a power had not been exercised? The courts have developed and extended English criminal law over the years, untrammelled by the non-retroactivity principle. To 'adapt' the law is a great temptation for a court confronted with a defendant whose conduct it regards as plainly wicked but for which existing offences do not provide.

The conflict between the non-retroactivity principle and the functioning of the criminal law as a means of social defence reached its modern apotheosis in *Shaw* v *DPP* (1962).[57] The prosecution had indicted Shaw with conspiracy to corrupt public morals, in addition to two charges under the Sexual Offences Act 1956 and the Obscene Publications Act 1959. The House of Lords upheld the validity of the indictment, despite the absence of any clear precedents, on the broad ground that conduct intended and calculated to corrupt public morals is indictable at common law. The decision led to an outcry from lawyers and others. One objection to *Shaw* is that it fails to respect citizens as rational, autonomous individuals: a citizen cannot be sure of avoiding the criminal sanction by refraining from prohibited conduct if it is open to the courts to invent new crimes without warning. What happened in *Shaw* was that a majority of the House of Lords felt a strong pull towards criminalization because they were convinced of the immoral and anti-social nature of the conduct—thus regarding (p. 58) their particular conceptions of social defence[58] as more powerful than the liberty of citizens to plan their lives under the rule of law.

But there are two more, interconnected, objections to this decision. First, the new crime was even less defensible, since it concerned a socially controversial realm of conduct (prostitution) rather than behaviour widely accepted as an evil warranting the criminal sanction: if the courts are to legislate, they should at least confine themselves to relatively uncontroversial cases. Secondly, this realm of conduct had only recently been considered by Parliament, which had introduced limited reforms in the Street Offences Act 1959; thus it could

be argued that since Parliament did not then extend the law to penalize conduct such as Shaw's, the courts were usurping the legislative function when they did so. This constitutional dimension of the decision should not be underestimated. The proper procedure is for a democratically elected legislature to create new offences. What *Shaw* seems to admit is that the police and prosecution may prefer to press a hitherto unknown charge, and the courts may uphold its validity at common law. This accords great power to the executive and the judiciary, and since an offence thus created operates retrospectively on the defendant, it fails to respect the citizen's basic right that the law be knowable in advance. The criminal law embodies the height of social censure, and its extent should be determined in advance by accountable democratic processes rather than *ex post facto* by judicial pronouncement.[59]

It appears that the English courts no longer claim the power to create new criminal offences,[60] apparently accepting the force of the principle of non-retroactivity. The Scottish judiciary does still claim this power, as part of a dynamic system of common law which must be adapted to deal with changing social circumstances. In 1983 the Scottish courts in effect created a criminal offence of selling glue-sniffing equipment,[61] and in 1989 they reached their famous decision to extend the crime of rape to husbands, overturning a long-standing exception.[62] Yet the English courts, which (since *Knuller*) ostensibly adhere to the principle of non-retroactivity, took the same decision in relation to marital rape: in *R* v *R* [63] the House of Lords abolished the husband's immunity from liability for rape of his wife. There are many convincing reasons why the old rule should have been abolished,[64] but the relevant question here is whether the law should have been changed by a judicial decision which operated retrospectively on the defendant, rather than prospectively by the legislature.

(p. 59) That question was taken to Strasbourg, alleging that the House of Lords violated Art. 7 (non-retroactivity) in this case, now referred to as *SW and CR* v *United Kingdom*.[65] The Strasbourg Court held that the removal of the marital rape exemption by the House of Lords[66] did not amount to a retrospective change in the elements of the offence. As the European Commission put it:

> Article 7(1) excludes that any acts not previously punishable should be held by the courts to entail criminal liability or that existing offences should be extended to cover facts which previously did not clearly constitute a criminal offence. It is, however, compatible with the requirements of Article 7(1) for the existing elements of an offence to be clarified or adapted to new circumstances or developments in society in so far as this can reasonably be brought under the original concept of the offence. The constituent elements of an offence may not however be essentially changed to the detriment of an accused and any progressive development by way of interpretation must be reasonably foreseeable to him with the assistance of appropriate legal advice if necessary.[67]

The majority of the Court went on to hold that the development of the law by the English courts ‘did not go beyond the legitimate adaptation of the ingredients of a criminal offence to reflect the social conditions of the time’, whereas a strong dissenting opinion argued that the abolition of the marital immunity from rape prosecution was not ‘mere clarification’ and could not be brought under the original concept of the offence. The Court's decision was clearly affected by the subject-matter, since it purported to justify its narrow reading of Art. 7 by reference to the incompatibility between ‘the unacceptable idea of a husband being immune against

prosecution for rape of his wife' and the 'respect for human dignity' that is a fundamental objective of the Convention.[68] This decision implants a degree of flexibility into what ought to be a fundamental rule-of-law protection for individuals: it is not that the law ought to exist before the conduct took place, but that it ought to have been foreseeable (if necessary, with legal advice) that the law would be changed in a particular direction.

Some may argue that, as a result of this decision, the ordinary development of the common law by the courts is unlikely to be held to breach Art. 7. However, it is arguable that Art. 7 ought to be interpreted as placing some outer limits on judicial creativity. In the light of s. 6 of the Human Rights Act it is no longer lawful for the courts to reach decisions such as those in *Shaw* v *DPP* [69] and *Knuller* v *DPP*.[70] Where, as in *Tan*,[71] the prosecution is described as 'novel', there may be good reason for mounting an Art. 7 challenge.

It may be expected that questions of retroactivity will arise more frequently in the context of statutory interpretation, since there are few common law crimes remaining.

(p. 60) However, the judicial creation of new defences is a possibility, although the courts have sometimes deferred to the legislature on this matter.[72] The principle of non-retroactivity did not feature prominently in Lord Lowry's reasoning in *C* v *DPP*,[73] when he articulated five criteria for judicial lawmaking:

> **(1)** if the solution is doubtful, the judges should beware of imposing their own remedy;
> **(2)** caution should prevail if Parliament has rejected opportunities for clearing up a known difficulty, or has legislated leaving the difficulty untouched;
> **(3)** disputed matters of social policy are less suitable areas for judicial intervention than purely legal problems;
> **(4)** fundamental legal doctrines should not lightly be set aside;
> **(5)** judges should not make a change unless they can achieve finality and certainty.

These are important principles, focusing on the constitutional aspects of judicial lawmaking that had been neglected in *Shaw* v *DPP* (which would fall foul of (2) and (3), at least). Lord Lowry's criteria were cited when the Court of Appeal declined to change and to broaden the basis of corporate criminal liability.[74] However, the criteria fail to give explicit recognition to the significance for individuals of the principle of non-retroactivity, and Art. 7 should now be given greater weight in this context. As Lord Bingham put it in *Jones* (2007), 'it is for those representing the people of the country in Parliament, and not the executive and not the judges, to decide what conduct should be treated as lying so far outside the bounds of what is acceptable in our society as to attract criminal penalties'.[75]

Even if English law were codified, it seems likely that courts would retain some power to develop defences to liability by creating new rules and extending old ones. Mental states such as insanity and intoxication are inconsistent with the kind of reliance presupposed by the idea of fair warning. These excusatory elements in the criminal law constitute rules of adjudication for the courts rather than rules of conduct to guide citizens, in contrast to the definitions of offences and of the permissive defences (e.g. self-defence, prevention of crime), which may be relied on by citizens in planning their behaviour. It therefore follows that the usual 'reliance' arguments against judicial creativity do not apply in the sphere of excusatory defences.[76] It may be thought, too, that the constitutional arguments are less troublesome when the courts are dealing with excusatory defences: even if it is not proper for the courts to pursue their own

conception of social defence, it may be proper for them to exercise creative power in (p. 61) giving effect to considerations of individual culpability.[77] An example of this was the judicial creation of a defence of 'duress of circumstances' in the late 1980s,[78] although some years later the House of Lords declined to approve the creation of a defence of involuntary intoxication on the ground that the task was one for Parliament.[79]

If courts are granted wider powers in relation to excusatory defences, should they be permitted to create and extend them but not to abolish or restrict them at a later stage? One of the criticisms of the decision of the House of Lords in *Howe* (1987),[80] which reversed a previous authority and held that duress could not be a defence to murder either as a principal or as a secondary party, was that it effectively breached Art. 7: what D did was not an offence when he did it, since at that stage duress was a defence and he would have been acquitted. On this view, once a court has created a defence it cannot abrogate it without falling foul of the principle of non-retroactivity.[81] The argument is even stronger in relation to *Elbekkay*,[82] where the Court of Appeal held that it was no defence for a man to argue that his impersonation of the victim's boyfriend was insufficient to negate the woman's apparent consent. This decision was all the more remarkable because s. 142 of the Criminal Justice and Public Order Act 1994 had recently redefined rape but had repeated the reference to rape by impersonating a husband (without extending the reference to a partner, etc.), and because the Court commented that no previous decision or statute required it to hold otherwise.[83] It can be argued that this development of the law by the courts (as distinct from the legislature) was not reasonably foreseeable: whereas in the case of marital rape there had been a series of lesser decisions suggesting that the courts were moving in the direction of criminalizing all rapes of wives by husbands, there was nothing in the law prior to *Elbekkay* to suggest that a change might be imminent. It is therefore suggested that this is the type of case in which it can be argued that the contraction of a defence would be contrary to Art. 7.[84] The question may occasionally arise whether a purportedly retrospective provision that is favourable to the defendant should be upheld, and both the Strasbourg Court and the Privy Council have held that a defendant should have the benefit of such a law.[85]

(p. 62) (h) The 'thin ice' principle

A counterpoint to the non-retroactivity principle is provided by what may be called the 'thin ice' principle, following Lord Morris's observation in *Knuller* v *DPP* (1973) that 'those who skate on thin ice can hardly expect to find a sign which will denote the precise spot where he [*sic*] will fall in'.[86] The essence of this principle seems to be that citizens who know that their conduct is on the borderline of illegality take the risk that their behaviour will be held to be criminal. Another popular phrase for this would be 'sailing close to the wind'. On occasions the courts have applied this principle both to the creation of a new offence and to the extension of an existing offence.[87] The arguments in favour of it seem to combine moral/social and political elements. The social element may be that courts should be able to penalize conduct which is widely regarded as, and which D ought to be aware is, on the boundaries of illegality; the political element may be that when citizens indulge in anti-social conduct that lies close to an existing offence, they ought also to know that there is a risk of criminal liability being extended to cover activities on the fringe of illegality. There are obvious counter-arguments. The principle appears to assume that it may be right for courts to extend the criminal law by analogy, whereas that has frequently been held to be contrary to Art. 7 of the Convention.[88] Extension (as opposed to interpretation) should constitutionally be the province of the

legislature. The ‘thin ice’ principle also neglects the role of the criminal law as a censuring institution whose convictions may result in both punishment and considerable stigma and social disadvantage, and overlooks the violation of the principle of autonomy caused when a citizen is convicted on the basis of a law that did not clearly cover the conduct at the time it took place.

It is unacceptable for Art. 7 to be trumped by the ‘thin ice’ principle: Art. 7 is an absolute right under the Convention, from which (according to Art. 15) no derogation is possible. The days of new crimes created at common law ought to be long gone. However, the elasticity of the Strasbourg Court's decision in *CR and SW* v *United Kingdom*,[89] with its notion of the ‘reasonable foreseeability’ of the law continuing its development in a particular direction, leaves some leeway for the ‘thin ice’ principle to exert an influence.

(i) The principle of maximum certainty

The next principle—maximum certainty in defining offences—embodies what are termed the ‘fair warning’ and ‘void for vagueness’ principles in US law.[90] All these **(p. 63)** principles may be seen as constituents of the principle of legality, and there is a close relationship between the principle of maximum certainty and the non-retroactivity principle. A vague law may in practice operate retroactively, since no one is quite sure whether given conduct is within or outside the rule. Thus Art. 7 of the Convention is relevant here, since it is:

> not confined to prohibiting the retrospective application of the criminal law to an accused's disadvantage. It also embodies, more generally, the principle that only the law can define a crime and prescribe a penalty (*nullum crimen, nulla poena sine lege*) and the principle that the criminal law must not be extensively construed to an accused's detriment, for instance by analogy: it follows from this that an offence must be clearly defined in law. This condition is satisfied where the individual can know from the wording of the relevant provision and, if need be, with the assistance of the courts’ interpretation of it, what acts and omissions will make him liable.[91]

However, the Strasbourg Court has also recognized that some vagueness is inevitable in order ‘to avoid excessive rigidity and to keep pace with changing circumstances’, and that a reasonable settled body of case law may suffice to reduce the degree of vagueness to acceptable proportions.[92] It is for this reason that the court refers to access to legal advice in order to determine the precise ambit of a law.

The test applied under Art. 7 is the same as that applied as the ‘quality of law’ standard elsewhere in the Convention. Whenever a member state seeks to rely on a provision in the Convention in order to justify its actions—whether the arrest or detention of a citizen (Art. 5), or interference with one of the qualified rights in Arts. 8–11—it must establish that its officials acted ‘in accordance with the law’. This means a valid law, and this requires the State to show that the relevant rule satisfies the ‘quality of law’ standard. As the Court stated in the *Sunday Times* case:

> Firstly, the law must be adequately accessible: the citizen must be able to have an indication that is adequate in the circumstances of the legal rules applicable to a given case. Secondly, a norm cannot be regarded as a ‘law’ unless it is formulated with sufficient precision to enable the citizen to regulate his conduct: he must be able—if

> need be with appropriate advice—to foresee, to a degree that is reasonable in the circumstances, the consequences which a given action may entail.[93]

The standard has been applied in a number of subsequent decisions. In *Hashman and Harrup* v *UK* (2000)[94] the applicants had been bound over to keep the peace and be of good behaviour after disturbing a fox-hunt by blowing horns. The Strasbourg Court held that their Art. 10 right to freedom of expression had been breached by the binding over, since the interference with their right was not 'prescribed by law' inasmuch as **(p. 64)** the relevant law did not meet the 'quality of law' standard. The applicants had been bound over after a finding that they acted *contra bonos mores*, which was defined as behaviour that is 'wrong rather than right in the judgment of the majority of contemporary citizens'.[95] The Court held that this did not meet the standard because it failed to describe the impugned behaviour at all, whereas other provisions (such as conduct likely to provoke a breach of the peace) are acceptable because they describe behaviour 'by reference to its effects'.[96]

It remains unclear how far the 'quality of law' standard may be used to challenge various offences under English law. Many offences in the Theft Acts include a requirement that the defendant acted dishonestly, a concept that plainly does not 'describe behaviour by reference to its effects'. The Court in *Hashman and Harrup* stated that the offences turning on dishonesty were different because dishonesty 'is but one element of a more comprehensive definition of the proscribed behaviour'.[97] Even if that is true following recent House of Lords decisions,[98] it would hardly apply to a new general offence of dishonesty or of deception, as the Law Commission concluded.[99] There is considerable uncertainty of definition in common law offences such as cheating[100] and perverting the course of justice (although the conduct is defined by reference to its effects),[101] and they should be scrutinized urgently in the light of Art. 7's requirements. When the House of Lords examined the offence of public nuisance in *Rimmington and Goldstein* (2006),[102] it narrowed the definition of the offence in order to avoid uncertainty, and Lord Bingham approved the statement (in a case of perverting the course of justice) that, if the ambit of a common law offence is to be enlarged, it 'must be done step by step on a case by case basis and not with one large leap'.[103] This is consistent with the Strasbourg position outlined in paragraph (g).

Why should such emphasis be placed on certainty, predictability, and 'fair warning'? As with the principle of non-retroactivity, a person's ability to know of the existence and extent of a rule is fundamental: respect for the citizen as a rational, autonomous individual and as a person with social and political duties requires fair warning of the criminal law's provisions and no undue difficulty in ascertaining them. The criminal law will also achieve this respect more fully if its provisions keep close to moral distinctions that are both theoretically defensible and widely felt:[104] this suggests a **(p. 65)** connection between fair warning and fair labelling (on which see 3.6(s)). A connected reason in favour of the principle of maximum certainty is that, if rules are vaguely drafted, they bestow considerable power on the agents of law enforcement:[105] the police or other agencies might use a widely framed offence to criminalize behaviour not envisaged by the legislature, creating the very kind of arbitrariness that rule-of-law values should guard against. Similarly, when the law gives the court power to make an anti-social behaviour order in response to conduct 'likely to cause harassment, alarm or distress', this gives little warning to citizens about the type of conduct that may be prohibited with the threat of criminal conviction for repetition.[106] It will be noticed, however, that the principle is stated in a circumscribed form—the principle of *maximum* certainty, not *absolute*

certainty—which indicates the compromise already inherent in the principle. In its pure form, the 'rule of law' would insist on complete certainty and predictability, but this is unattainable —'vagueness is ineliminable from a legal system, if a legal system must do such things as to regulate the use of violence …'[107] Unless the criminal law occasionally resorts to such open-ended terms as 'reasonable' and 'dishonest', it would have to rely on immensely detailed and lengthy definitions which might be so complicated as to restrict the intelligibility of the law. As Timothy Endicott argues, neither vagueness nor discretion is necessarily a deficit in the rule of law, so long as the law can perform its function of guiding behaviour.[108] Thus those who adhere to the principle of maximum certainty would insist that the use of such vague terms should be reinforced by other definitional elements, guidelines, or illustrative examples which inform the citizen and structure the court's discretion.[109]

Any claim that a derogation from maximum certainty is necessary for the practical administration of the law must be scrutinized carefully. As the US Supreme Court put it in *Conally* v *General Construction Co* (1926): 'a statute which either forbids or requires the doing of an act in terms so vague that men of common intelligence must necessarily guess at its meaning and differ as to its application, violates the first essential of due process of law'.[110] Whether the Strasbourg Court's interpretation of the non-retrospectivity principle in Art. 7 or the more general 'quality of law' requirement has been overly conservative is open to debate, but the decision in *Hashman and Harrup* demonstrates that the principle can bite, and it will do so in this country if the courts take it as seriously as the Law Commission appears to have done.

(p. 66) (j) The policy of social defence

The policy of social defence runs counter to the principle of maximum certainty. It maintains that some vagueness in criminal laws is socially beneficial because it enables the police and the courts to deal flexibly with new variations in misconduct without having to await the lumbering response of the legislature. The policy of social defence thus supports the same aims as the 'thin ice' principle. It also suffers from similar defects, such as differing opinions of the social interests to be defended by means of the criminal law. The interests of the powerful are thus likely to prevail.

The policy of social defence would support the enactment of laws vague enough to leave room for the law enforcement agents to apply them to new forms of anti-social action—for example, the public order offences in the Acts of 1986 and 1994,[111] the power to make an anti-social behaviour order, and the common law offence of conspiracy to defraud.[112] To the objection that such crimes delegate far too much *de facto* power over citizens' lives to law enforcement agents, proponents of social defence would reply that this should be tackled by means of internal guidelines and police disciplinary procedures rather than by depriving the police and courts of the means of invoking the criminal sanction against conduct which arouses social concern. The offences themselves appear to be worded objectively and neutrally—although they suffer from what the Americans call over-breadth—but their use may be selective.[113] The policy of social defence therefore favours considerable low-level discretion, conferred (in effect) by broadly phrased offences, and often supported by the use by politicians and journalists of imagery that depicts certain groups as the enemies of society against whom new powers are 'necessary' for 'public safety'.[114]

Social defence arguments are sometimes used to support the argument that ignorance of the criminal law should be no excuse. Thus English law authorizes the conviction of persons who were unaware of the existence of a crime, even in circumstances where it would have been difficult for them to find out that they were committing it.[115] This derogation from the notions of maximum certainty and fair warning is usually supported in terms of social defence by suggesting that, if the defence were allowed, everyone would claim it and there would be large-scale acquittals. Such arguments are unpersuasive in theory and in practice.[116]

The policy of social defence may be used to point out a distinct social dysfunction of the principle of maximum certainty. If members of society can rely upon criminal laws being drafted precisely and upon enforcement agents and the courts keeping within those boundaries, it is open to resourceful citizens to devise ways of circumventing those laws—conforming to the letter of the law, whilst dishonouring its spirit. Where (p. 67) this kind of activity is pursued in a systematic way, with powerful financial support, it may be regarded as a distinct threat to the values that the criminal law seeks to uphold. It is said that there are those in the financial and business worlds who make their living on these fringes of legality, exploiting the principle of maximum certainty as a shield to protect them from conviction.[117] Can these people be distinguished from Shaw, Knuller, Tan,[118] and others? It is doubtful whether a distinction between sexual and financial morality would be sufficient to justify a difference in approach. The proper response is that the principle of legality, and in particular of maximum certainty, would accept that there is a distinction between avoidance and evasion, and that mere avoidance must be tackled by legislative amendments to the law rather than by *ex post facto* stretching by the courts. The fact that the wide common law offence of conspiracy to defraud remains in full vigour, with the result that financial misdealers are not safe from its elastic clutches, should not be viewed with approval: the offence ought to be abolished and replaced with discrete offences that comply in both letter and spirit with the principle of maximum certainty.[119]

(k) The principle of strict construction

Two of the principles which are often brought under the umbrella of the principle of legality have already been discussed (non-retroactivity, maximum certainty); the principle of strict construction is the third. The difference here is that whereas the non-retroactivity principle applies to the lawmaking activities of Parliament and the courts, this principle relates to the courts' task in interpreting legislation. The formulation of the principle is a matter for debate. In its bald form, it appears to state that any doubt in the meaning of a statutory provision should, by strict construction, be resolved in favour of the defendant. One justification for this may be fair warning: where a person acts on the apparent meaning of a statute but the court gives it a wider meaning, it is unfair to convict that person because that would amount to retroactive lawmaking. Historically speaking, the principle seems to have originated either as a means of softening the effect of statutes requiring capital punishment, through the notion of construction *in favorem vitae*,[120] or as a response to statutory incursions into the common law—which in turn led Parliament to enact more detailed, subdivided offences of the kind that still survive in the Offences Against the Person Act 1861.[121]

(p. 68) The status of the principle of strict construction is unclear. It has some connection with Art. 7 of the Convention in that, as we saw earlier, the Court has held that the non-retroactivity principle requires that the criminal law must not be extensively construed to an

accused's detriment, for instance by analogy.[122] However, it is not clear how and when the Court would apply this principle. References to a principle of strict construction have been fitful both in England and the USA, leading to the claim that it is invoked more to justify decisions reached on other grounds than as a significant principle in its own right.[123] There is certainly no difficulty in assembling a list of cases in which it appears to have been ignored.[124] But it may be that it was not properly understood in its more sophisticated form in England, since it is relatively recently that a sequence of principles to be applied when interpreting criminal statutes has been established. According to the House of Lords, the proper approach is not to be bound by any particular dictionary definition of a crucial word in a statute, but rather to construe a legislative provision in accordance with the perceived purpose of that statute.[125] In order to assist in ascertaining that purpose, a court may consult a Hansard report of proceedings in Parliament, a government White Paper, or the report of a law-reform committee so as to ascertain the gap in the law which the legislation was intended to remedy.[126] If a Convention point arises, however, it is not a question of seeking the intention of Parliament but rather of applying s. 3 of the Human Rights Act 1998 and interpreting the statute, so far as possible, so as to comply with the Convention.

Those who disagree with the principle have sought to ridicule it by arguing that no system of criminal law can function adequately if absolutely every ambiguity has to be resolved in favour of the defendant.[127] But this line of attack misunderstands the true role of the principle, which has now been reasserted in the courts. Its proper place is in a sequence of points to be considered by a judge when construing a statutory offence. It will be an important advance in the development of English criminal law if other courts routinely follow the approach now established by the House of Lords, although the evidence suggests that neither courts nor counsel consider statutory interpretation to be a discrete subject with its own approach and its own precedents.[128] However, there are further important questions of interpretation to which no authoritative approach has been established. For example, uncertainty still prevails over the proper approach to interpreting statutory offences which do not include a fault requirement **(p. 69)** in their definition: the courts are still without a coherent approach to the question of strict liability, and no sooner is a high-sounding ('constitutional') principle declared than other courts ignore or circumvent it.[129]

What is the argument in favour of the more sophisticated version of the principle of strict construction? The 'fair warning' argument undoubtedly plays a part, in so far as it respects the idea of citizens as rational, choosing individuals, but the primary argument is constitutional. In terms of interpreting statutes the courts are the authoritative agency. Just as the principles of non-retroactivity and maximum certainty ought to be recognized by the legislature, so they should be recognized by the courts when engaging in interpretation. Indeed, the argument is even stronger for the courts, for they are the ultimate agency for determining the practical limits of the law, and yet they are an unelected group. Parliament should retain the main responsibility for the extent of the criminal law, and, indeed, it has the right to determine the courts' approach towards the task of interpretation (for example, by including some canons of interpretation in the Criminal Code[130]). The practical implication of this approach is that the courts should exercise restraint in their interpretive role, favouring the defendant where they are left in doubt about the legislative purpose.

(l) A broader purposive approach

Militating against the principle of strict construction is a broader purposive approach which relies on the aims of the criminal law as a whole rather than on a particular legislative purpose. Why should the courts allow those who indulge in obviously wrong behaviour to escape conviction by reference to a principle which assumes that citizens take care to ascertain the law beforehand (which they usually do not), and which also assumes that the government and Parliament can be left to deal promptly with behaviour which is seen as a social problem (which they usually cannot, because of pressures on parliamentary time)? Indeed, the argument goes further. Citizens who do act in reliance on a particular view of the law could be excused by means of a defence of ignorance or mistake of law.[131] As for the constitutional argument, the assumption seems to be that the principle of legislative supremacy is all-powerful. Important it may be, but there are other political and fundamental values that also have a claim to be taken into account. If one purpose of the criminal law is the deterrence of significant culpable wrongdoing and the punishment of those who engage in it, does this not supply a reason for courts to interpret criminal laws so as to achieve this end? An argument of this kind leaves a great deal to be debated—in Chapter 2 we saw how controversial the boundaries of criminalization can be[132]—but its kernel is that, as with the 'thin ice' principle, **(p. 70)** it may not be unfair to penalize someone who has positioned himself on the margins of lawfulness. This may be seen as a rationalization of the appellate courts' tendency to stretch the interpretation of statutes so as to criminalize people who, they think, have manifestly committed a serious wrong.[133] As John Bell has argued, 'if the law exists to promote collective goals, as well as to protect individual rights, it cannot be altogether unexpected that both of these aspects should come into the resolution of hard cases'.[134]

Two counter-arguments are often heard, in addition to the principle of legislative supremacy. One is the practical point that courts have only rarely put the legislature to the test by refusing to extend existing offences to new forms of anti-social behaviour and leaving the task to Parliament. There are some isolated examples,[135] but in general the courts have not established a tradition of strict construction. If they had either brought in acquittals or quashed convictions in every case where the application of a statutory provision left some room for doubt, then the government would have been highly likely to set up a regular system for redrafting and amending criminal laws. A typical course of events was that in the case of *Charles* (1976):[136] the Court of Appeal favoured the acquittal of a man who, in spite of his bank's prohibition, had deliberately and substantially overdrawn on his bank account, because the Court found it difficult to bring the conduct within the definition of the offence charged. Bridge LJ recognized that social defence might be better served by a conviction, but he did not regard it as the Court's function to stretch the words of the statute. The House of Lords had no such compunction: it did stretch the statutory wording, and restored the conviction.[137] Had the House of Lords adopted the same approach as the Court of Appeal, then the government and Parliament would have been left to decide on the need for an amendment to the law. In the meantime, Charles and a few others would have gone free. It is this consequence which some judges, regarding themselves as custodians of the public interest, have sought to avoid by adopting broad interpretations of statutes. Doubts have been expressed about whether appellate courts are in a proper position to assess the consequences of thus extending the law,[138] and there are more recent cases in which the courts decided that it was both too difficult and inappropriate to attempt to repair defective legislation.[139] Thus in *Preddy* [140] the House of Lords declined to adopt an interpretation of the Theft Act 1968 which would have upheld the appellant's conviction, and Parliament did move quickly to rectify the anomaly by

passing the Theft (p. 71) (Amendment) Act 1996 within five months; but, even then, Lord Goff could not resist a passing gibe at 'the so-called principle of legality, which has a respectable theoretical foundation but can perhaps be a little unrealistic in practice'.[141]

A second counter-argument is that the judicial function is to uphold individual rights, leaving broader issues of social policy to Parliament. Thus Ronald Dworkin has argued that judges ought to ground their decisions in reasons which uphold individual rights and ought not to take account of policies, goals, or overall social welfare.[142] Glanville Williams has advanced a similar argument specifically in relation to criminal law.[143] It may be argued, however, that this adopts a particularly one-sided view of the criminal law. Principles of individual fairness are important, and some of them are absolutely fundamental, but this should not be allowed to obscure the wider sense of autonomy advocated in Chapter 2—one which emphasizes the need to provide social conditions and facilities in which a broader range of choices is available, and which may provide good reasons for pursuing a given policy, provided always that Convention rights are duly respected.

(m) The presumption of innocence

The principle that a person should be presumed innocent unless and until proved guilty is a fundamental principle of procedural fairness in the criminal law. Its justifications may be found in the social and legal consequences of being convicted of a crime, in which context the principle constitutes a measure of protection against error in the process,[144] and a counterweight to the immense power and resources of the State compared to the position of the defendant. Article 6(2) of the Convention declares that 'everyone charged with a criminal offence shall be presumed innocent until proved guilty according to law', but the Strasbourg Court has not developed the presumption of innocence with any vigour. Indeed, in the leading decision of *Salabiaku* v *France* [145] the Court found no violation of Art. 6(2) in an offence (carrying a prison sentence) that placed the onus of proof on the defendant, stating merely that the reverse onus must be 'within reasonable limits which take into account the importance of what is at stake and maintain the rights of the defence'. The English courts, on the other hand, are feeling their way towards a more robust promotion of the presumption. The famous declaration of Lord Sankey LC in *Woolmington* v *DPP* (1935)[146] that 'throughout the web of the English criminal law one golden thread is always to be seen—that it is the duty of the prosecution to prove the prisoner's guilt', had increasingly been regarded as empty rhetoric as the numbers of statutory exceptions multiplied. However, in *Lambert* (2001)[147] the House of Lords used the power of interpretation in s. 3 of the (p. 72) Human Rights Act to reinterpret a reverse onus provision in s. 28 of the Misuse of Drugs Act 1971 so as to impose merely an evidential burden (not the burden of proof) on the defendant. A majority of their Lordships held that the severity of the potential penalty rendered this reverse onus a disproportionate burden on D. The House of Lords adopted the same approach to an anti-terrorism offence in *Attorney-General's Reference No. 4 of 2002*,[148] although in the conjoined appeal in *Sheldrake* v *DPP* their Lordships held that it would be easier to rebut the presumption for an offence with a low maximum penalty.[149]

(n) The policy of ease of proof

The presumption of innocence has been much neglected by the legislature: many offences are defined in such a way that the prosecution has to prove little, and then the defence bears

the burden of exculpation. Section 101 of the Magistrates' Courts Act 1980 places on the defendant the burden of proving any excuse, exemption, proviso, or qualification in the definition of an offence tried summarily, a regime that is usually justified on grounds of expediency and economy. Neglect of the presumption is not confined to so-called regulatory offences: some 40 per cent of offences triable in the Crown Court—i.e. the most serious offences in English law—appear to violate the *Woolmington* principle by placing a burden of proof on the defendant.[150] It seems that the presumption has been so insignificant to policymakers and legislators that often they have not even regarded it as necessary to give a reason for placing a burden on the defence.

However, there is evidence of change since *Lambert*: in the Sexual Offences Act 2003, there were several reverse onus provisions in the Bill, which were removed after the House of Commons Home Affairs Committee pointed out the conflict with the presumption of innocence.[151] Sometimes an attempt is made to justify a reverse burden by claiming that it is right to expect the defendant to prove elements relating to a defence. One difficulty here is that there is no satisfactory analytical distinction between offence and defence.[152] Legislative draftsmen do not follow a single drafting rule, and it may often be a matter of chance whether a given element is expressed as a defence or is rolled up into the definition of the crime.[153] A more reliable argument is that certain **(p. 73)** matters are much easier for one party to prove than the other: it is generally far easier for a defendant to prove that he or she had a licence or permit than for the prosecution to prove the absence of one.[154] However, this should not be allowed to shade into the far less persuasive argument that D should prove any matter that 'lies within his own peculiar knowledge',[155] a proposition that might equally apply to intention, knowledge, and many other core elements of crimes, and would thus undermine the presumption of innocence completely.

The policy of ease of proof does not merely manifest itself through the imposition of burdens on the defence. Parliament has within its control the definition of offences too, and frequently inserts strict liability elements into statutory offences. This is inconsistent with the principle of *mens rea* and with the rule of law (see 3.6(o)), but it does not contravene the presumption of innocence enshrined in Art. 6(2) of the Convention. That presumption is procedural, not substantive, and so applies only to the burden of proof.[156]

3.6 Principles relating to the conditions of liability

Setting the conditions for criminal liability raises further questions about 'rule of law' standards[157] and the principle of individual autonomy (outlined in Chapter 2.1). We have already seen how these standards underlie the principle of legality in its three manifestations: the principles of non-retroactivity, maximum certainty, and strict construction. Unless a person can know what the criminal law prohibits, it is unfair to impose a conviction. Both the rule of law and the principle of autonomy emphasize respect for individuals as deliberative, choosing persons. This is often taken to suggest, as we shall see in some of the detailed principles below, that an individual should be held criminally liable only for consequences that were knowingly brought about or knowingly risked. Whatever the merits of civil liability for other consequences, an individual should not be liable to censure and punishment for them. In contrast, the principle of welfare insists that the need for social co-operation and community life may create strong arguments for extending the ambit of the criminal law and the conditions

of liability—by, for example, imposing duties to take care in certain types of situation and making the negligent liable to conviction. However, it will be argued below that this does not undermine the principle of autonomy if the appropriate conditions are fulfilled, notably that there is fair warning of the imposition of a duty of care reinforced (p. 74) by the criminal sanction, and that there is an exception for those incapable of attaining the required standard. All these points are taken further in Chapter 5: the purpose here is to express schematically the kinds of argument used.

(o) The principle of *mens rea*

In order to satisfy rule of law standards, an offence must have a (subjective) *mens rea* requirement in order to alert D to the fact that he is about to violate the law: some element of *mens rea* is needed in order to give fair warning, which would be absent if offences could be committed accidentally. The principle of autonomy may be interpreted as taking the point further, arguing that the incidence and degree of criminal liability should reflect the choices made by the individual. The principle of *mens rea* expresses this by stating that defendants should be held criminally liable only for events or consequences which they intended or knowingly risked. Only if they were aware (or, as it is often expressed, 'subjectively' aware) of the possible consequences of their conduct should they be liable.[158] The principle of *mens rea* may also be stated so as to include the belief principle, since in some crimes it is not (or not only) the causing of consequences that is criminal but behaving in a certain way with knowledge of certain facts. Thus where the defence is one of mistaken belief, the principle of *mens rea* would state that a person's criminal liability should be judged on the facts as D believed them to be. All these aspects of the principle of *mens rea* are discussed further in Chapter 5.4 and 5.5. Although much of the principle's strength derives from the rule of law and the value of autonomy, this does not mean that negligence liability cannot be supported on the same basis: so long as there is an exception for incapacity, as argued, this may be fair.

(p) The policy of objective liability

In spheres of activity that are perceived to be particularly dangerous, it is often thought that there are sufficient justifications for going beyond subjective liability and imposing liability for failure to fulfil a duty of care. Perhaps the clearest example of this may be found in road traffic legislation: long-standing offences such as dangerous driving and careless driving make drivers criminally liable for the degree to which they fall below the standards expected of a competent motorist.[159] Among the justifications for this is the principle of welfare, which in this respect favours the imposition of standards of behaviour on citizens because their behaviour as motorists can so easily impinge on others, with disastrous consequences. In industrial contexts there is a whole host of offences based on negligence, particularly where hazardous substances or dangerous conditions are involved. Moreover, in many commercial settings the criminal law imposes strict liability on those who sell defective products or unwholesome foodstuffs, (p. 75) convicting them in many situations where the fault is small or non-existent. The case for extending the criminal law to relatively minor harms is based on expediency, and has already been criticized in Chapter 2.4(c) . Strict liability itself is often supported by reference to considerations of welfare, 'policy considerations', or 'social concern', but it will be argued in Chapter 5.5(a) that the justifications for going beyond negligence liability to strict liability are unpersuasive. Criminal liability for negligence, however, so long as it is founded on clear and well-publicized standards and duties for people performing certain activities, may be

compatible with the rule of law and with the principle of autonomy. Thus, as will be argued in Chapter 5.5(f), there may be certain spheres in which criminal liability can properly be based on a form of negligence—taking proper account of the seriousness of the harm, the need to warn citizens of their duties, and the need to exempt those who lack the capacity to conform their conduct to the required standard.

(q) The principle of correspondence

Another implication of the principle of individual autonomy (with its emphasis on choice and control) and the 'rule of law' ideal (with its emphasis on the ability of individuals to plan) is the principle of correspondence. Not only should it be established that the defendant had the required fault, in terms of *mens rea* or belief; it should also be established that the defendant's intention, knowledge, or recklessness related to the proscribed harm. Thus, if the conduct element of a crime is 'causing serious injury', the principle of correspondence demands that the fault element should be intention or recklessness as to causing serious injury, and not intention or recklessness as to some lesser harm such as a mere assault. Another example, as we shall see,[160] is the law of murder: in English law a person may be convicted of murder if he either intended to kill or intended to cause grievous bodily harm. However, the latter species of fault breaches the principle of correspondence:[161] the fault element does not correspond with the conduct element (which is, causing death), and so a person is liable to conviction for a higher crime than contemplated. In effect, murder and other crimes that breach the correspondence principle are constructive crimes. They reduce 'rule of law' protections and respect for autonomy by rendering D liable to conviction for a more serious offence than intended or knowingly risked; and, to that extent, the offence of conviction turns on the chance element of whether or not the more serious (unintended and unforeseen) harm results.[162]

(p. 76) (r) Constructive liability

The argument for the extended fault element in murder, as described in the previous paragraph, favours constructive liability.[163] This has a Latin tag, *versari in re illicita*,[164] and in its widest form it argues that anyone who decides to transgress the criminal law should be held liable for all the consequences that ensue, even if they are more serious than expected. This may be termed the 'unlawful act theory', in so far as it holds that the commission of any crime against another supplies sufficient culpability to justify conviction in respect of whatever harm results. The decision to commit a crime is the crucial moral threshold: once D has knowingly crossed this, he should be liable for the resulting harm. This broad doctrine has now given way to what might be termed 'moderate constructivism', which accepts 'the requirement of subjective *mens rea* introduced by the obligation to respect the rule of law'[165] but argues that by intentionally attacking another D changes normative position, 'so that certain adverse consequences and circumstances that would not have counted against one but for one's original assault now count against one automatically, and add to one's crime'.[166] In most forms this is a more moderate doctrine than the broad 'unlawful act theory'—it confines liability to resulting harms in the same 'family of offences' (usually, violence); and it does not necessarily justify the current English law of constructive manslaughter,[167] since some of its supporters restrict liability to cases where there is some 'proportionality' or alternatively 'no great moral distance' between the intended attack and the resulting harm.[168] However, these restrictive principles only come into play if the fundamental intuition of 'moderate constructivism' is

conceded. Why is a minor assault vested with such high moral importance that it is thought to justify liability for injuries much more serious than foreseen? Why should such a large slice of luck enter into the assessment of criminal liability, with the result that D is labelled as having committed a significantly worse wrong than he intended or knowingly risked? John Gardner originally argued that if the criminal law puts D on notice that this will be the consequence, the requirements of the rule of law are fulfilled.[169] However, giving fair warning of an unfair rule does not turn it into a fair rule, so we still await a justification for attributing such high moral importance to the change of normative position inherent in a common assault.[170] The existing law of offences against the person, stemming from an 1861 statute, is replete with examples of constructive liability, **(p. 77)** and the offences of murder and manslaughter are perhaps the best known instances in English law. The 'change of normative position' argument seems to depend on the strength of a particular intuition—that morally the most significant element in given conduct is a decision to use force on another, and that there is insufficient moral weight in the plea, 'I only intended to punch/kick/wound slightly, not to cause injuries of *that* magnitude'.[171] This is surely to adopt an unduly narrow view of moral responsibility. It attributes too little importance to the full context of the actor's decision, and allows a person's criminal liability to turn partly on luck.[172] This argument is pursued further in the next two sections.

(s) The principle of fair labelling

This principle is chiefly applicable to the legislature. Its concern is to see that widely felt distinctions between kinds of offences and degrees of wrongdoing are respected and signalled by the law, and that offences are subdivided and labelled so as to represent fairly the nature and magnitude of the law-breaking.[173] As James Chalmers and Fiona Leverick argue in their detailed study, labels are important chiefly to *describe* D's offending behaviour for the general public and to *differentiate* that behaviour for the purposes of those working within the criminal justice system.[174] One good reason for respecting these distinctions is proportionality: one of the basic aims of the criminal law is to ensure a proportionate response to law-breaking, thereby assisting the law's educative or declaratory function in sustaining and reinforcing social standards. Fairness demands that offenders be labelled and punished in proportion to their wrongdoing; the label is important both for public communication and, within the criminal justice system, for deciding on appropriate maximum penalties, for evaluating previous convictions, for classification in prison, and so on. 'In fairness both to offenders and to others with a relevant interest, there is a need for offence labels to convey sufficient information to criminal justice professionals to enable them to make fair and sensible decisions.'[175] Similar information may also be helpful to employers and potential employers, for example.[176]

A deeper justification for the principle of fair labelling has a more direct connection with common patterns of thought in society. It is that where people reasonably regard two types of conduct as different, the law should try to reflect that difference. **(p. 78)** In principle, the criminal law should 'track the reasonable moral convictions of the community'.[177] This argument was raised against the possibility of combining the crimes of theft and obtaining by deception into a single offence: people regard stealing and swindling as distinct forms of wrongdoing, and the law should not obscure this.[178] Although this proposal was not pursued, English criminal law does contain some extremely wide offences. Theft is a single offence with a maximum sentence of seven years' imprisonment, whereas in many other jurisdictions it is subdivided into greater and lesser forms (e.g. a form of petty theft, for offences below a certain

monetary value, with a lesser maximum penalty). Criminal damage is a single offence with a maximum sentence of ten years' imprisonment, with no subdivisions to reflect the type of property damaged or the magnitude of the damage inflicted. Perhaps the clearest example is robbery, an offence with a maximum sentence of life imprisonment which conjures up an armed raid by masked men seeking substantial money or property, and yet which in English law is fulfilled by a slight push in order to snatch a purse or handbag.[179] It is regarded as axiomatic that offences of violence should be subdivided so as to distinguish different levels of injury etc.,[180] and yet robbery is not subdivided to reflect the very different degrees of force used or threatened in different cases.

What aspects of the offence should be reflected in the label? Four points may be raised in answer to this question.

First, it was noted in sections (q) and (r) that some offences apply a much more serious label than D intended or knowingly risked—typically, the offence of manslaughter by unlawful act, for which the only fault element is in respect of the relatively minor offence of assault. The label describes the result but not the fault. This argument is examined elsewhere,[181] and controversy has recently been re-kindled by the new offences of causing death by careless driving and causing death by driving while disqualified, unlicensed, or uninsured, for which the fault element is a long way below the tragic result.[182]

Secondly, dividing an offence into degrees may be sufficiently informative for criminal justice professionals but may be opposed by others, including defendants and (perhaps) the public. Thus the Law Commission's recommendation that the English law of homicide be divided into murder in the first degree, murder in the second degree, and manslaughter may appear to be a triumph for fair labelling, until it is noted that provoked killings are classified not as manslaughter but as murder in the second degree—which some might regard as a misuse of the 'ultimate' label. Defendants and victims may disagree about this, but the issue is one of labelling.[183] If juries were to prove unwilling to return a verdict with the word 'murder' in it, this would create problems for the proposed scheme.

(p. 79) *Thirdly*, there are good reasons for applying the principle of fair labelling to defences. Chalmers and Leverick make the point that the same reasons favour fair labelling of justificatory defences as offences, since they may guide conduct and provide a moral assessment of conduct; for excusatory defences, it may still be important to signify why a particular verdict has been reached.[184] Similar points were raised by those who opposed the Law Commission's proposal for a relatively narrow definition of the partial defence of provocation, on the ground that it forced some defendants (often, women) to argue their case on a defence that reflects less well on their capacity and motivation (i.e. diminished responsibility).[185]

Fourthly, and separately from the above considerations, there may be a good social reason for creating a separate offence with a separate label in order to draw public attention to the wrongness of a particular course of action. Examples of this would be the creation of racially or religiously aggravated versions of certain offences, where the aggravating feature becomes part of the offence label rather than merely a matter that affects sentencing; or, as a more long-standing example, the separate offence of assault on a police officer. How far this can and should be carried is a matter of much dispute, as for example in relation to the separate offences of causing death by driving—why are they phrased in terms of 'causing death by'

rather than ‘manslaughter by’ or ‘culpable homicide by’? Why is there no similar offence of ‘causing death by medical negligence’?[186] Each of the four points above demonstrates the complex and contestable issues involved in implementing the principle of fair labelling.

(t) Efficiency of administration

Economic arguments would tend to favour broader drafting of offences, leaving appropriate distinctions in culpability to be made at the sentencing stage. A welcome reduction in public expenditure on the court system would follow. The labels given to offences are regarded as less important than the actual assessment of culpability, and this can be done expeditiously at the sentencing stage. A further efficiency argument stems from the limitations of juries and lay magistrates: the criminal law must be kept as simple as possible so as to avoid confusing lay people and producing erroneous verdicts, and this argues against finely graded offences which necessitate complex instructions on the law. Many of the reforms brought about by the Theft Act 1968 and the Criminal Damage Act 1971 involved broader offences with high maximum penalties, favouring efficiency of administration at the expense of the principle of fair labelling. However, as already noted, some respect was shown for fair labelling by, for example, retaining the separate offences of theft and deception, when it would have been possible to combine (p. 80) the two.[187] The common law offence of conspiracy to defraud is the prime example of allowing administrative efficiency to prevail—prosecutors greatly prize its flexibility—and, as noted below, the government departed from the Law Commission's recommendation and has retained this broad ‘blunderbuss’ offence despite the enactment of new offences in the Fraud Act 2006.[188] Although the Sexual Offences Act 2003 was drafted so as to include many differentiated but overlapping offences, many of those offences are drafted over-broadly and rely on prosecutorial discretion for the exclusion of cases—such as sexual familiarities between young people—that ought not to be criminalized. This creates a problem of mis labelling when prosecutorial discretion is not exercised appropriately and results in conviction for an unduly harsh offence.[189] In fact, the whole ethos of ‘efficient administration’ needs to be questioned. ‘Efficiency’ and ‘practicality’ are presented as neutral concepts, when they often boil down to the convenience of prosecutors. Rarely does one hear reference to the efficiency of a rule in protecting individual rights.

(u) The principle of contemporaneity

Part of the basic doctrine of criminal law, as described by Hall among others,[190] is that not only must the defendant cause the prohibited consequence and have the required fault, but that conduct and fault must co-exist at the same time. This is the principle of contemporaneity. We will see in Chapter 5.4(c) that the analysis of cases in the light of this principle can become rather difficult where there is a series of acts or a continuing act and where the fault element is only present for part of the time.

(v) The doctrine of prior fault

Even though the defendant did not have the required fault when performing the prohibited conduct, the doctrine of prior fault may be invoked to hold him liable—by fastening on to the defendant's fault at an earlier stage, which then led to an absence of fault at the time when the prohibited conduct took place. The title of Paul Robinson's seminal article, ‘Causing the Conditions of One's Own Defence’,[191] explains the rationale of the doctrine. A person should not be allowed to rely on an exculpatory condition (e.g. lack of fault through automatism or

intoxication) if he or she had deliberately or even negligently brought about that condition (e.g. by failing to take proper medication or by drinking alcohol to excess). Thus the doctrine operates by way of exception to—or, some would say, it conflicts with—the principle of contemporaneity. The doctrine, which shares some of the roots of constructive liability, is discussed further in Chapter 5.4(d).

(p. 81) 3.7 Conclusions

The purpose of this chapter has been to identify and to examine critically some of the theoretical and practical arguments for lawmaking and interpretation in the criminal law. The discussion has focused on arguments of principle, but this normative dimension has been linked to the practical issues involved in proposing legislation, interpreting statutes, and developing the common law. When referring to 'principles' the reference has been chiefly one of aspiration: it is not suggested that any of these principles is recognized as authoritative in English criminal law, and we have seen how often pragmatic or political arguments have held sway. Indeed, some of the normative propositions referred to here as 'principles' are not even regarded as sufficiently important to call upon legislators or judges who wish to depart from them to justify the departure. And even when a principle is recognized, its wording may be so indeterminate (e.g. *maximum* certainty, *fair* warning, *fair* labelling) as to impose only loose constraints.

The Human Rights Act has not brought major changes. The Convention does not have widespread relevance to the substantive criminal law, but it has had some effect on approaches to defining offences and to judicial decision-making. Although the potential significance of Art. 7 was diluted by the Strasbourg Court in *CR and SW* v *United Kingdom*,[192] there has been some willingness to apply the 'quality of law' standard when the government is trying to justify interference with the rights in Art. 5 and Arts. 8–11, for example.[193] The judiciary has taken Convention rights seriously in some high-profile decisions, on such matters as reverse burdens of proof,[194] certainty of definition in the offence of public nuisance,[195] and of course the detention without trial of terrorist suspects.[196]

Although political forces often hold sway in lawmaking, it is vital that principled arguments continue to be pressed, and this supplies a good reason for an assessment of appropriate principles of aspiration. As we have seen, some paradoxes emerge from the different pairs of principles. For example, the advocates of a degree of constructive liability rely on the occurrence of significant harm, however unexpected, as a reason for increasing the grade of an offence; yet they may not place such importance on resulting harm when accepting criminal liability for attempts, incitement, and other inchoate offences. The main thrust of this chapter has been to argue for greater attention to the rule of law and to the principle of autonomy when determining the conditions of criminal liability. Thus the subjective principles, the non-retroactivity principle, the principle of maximum certainty, the principle of strict construction, the principle of fair labelling, and the presumption of innocence—all of them tend to emphasize the value of fair warning and predictability in the law, the importance of respecting choices (p. 82) made by autonomous individuals, and the need to control the exercise of power by state officials. They are at the heart of legality, of the rule of law, and of what has been termed 'defensive criminal law'.[197] Whereas welfare-based principles and policies of social defence are more relevant to criminalization decisions, the rule of law and

the principle of autonomy should have priority in relation to the conditions of liability, qualified only by a minimalist welfare principle. In some situations it will be justifiable to impose duties of citizenship reinforced by the criminal law, but in section 3.4(c) it was argued that this could be done in certain circumstances without compromising the principle of autonomy. This debate, and others connected with it, is taken forward in the context of criminal conduct in the next chapter.

Further Reading

J. GARDNER, *Offences and Defences: Selected Essays in the Philosophy of Criminal Law* (2007), 33–56 and 246–8.

J. CHALMERS and F. LEVERICK, 'Fair Labelling in Criminal Law' (2008) 71 MLR 217 –46.

B. JURATOWITCH, *Retroactivity and the Common Law* (2008), 43–60, 127–38, 183–97.

LAW COMMISSION Consultation Paper No. 177, *A New Homicide Act for England and Wales?* (2005), 45–8.

L. ZEDNER and J. V. ROBERTS (eds), *Principles and Values in Criminal Law and Criminal Justice* (2012), chs 1, 2, 3, and 5.

Notes:

[1] As confirmed by the Home Office research by D. Brown and T, Ellis, *Policing Low-Level Disorder: Police Use of Section 5 of the Public Order Act 1986* (1994), and by T. Bucke and Z. James, *Trespass and Protest: Policing under the Criminal Justice and Public Order Act 1994* (1998).

[2] For a constructive critique of this use of the terms 'principle' and policy', see J. Gardner, 'Ashworth on Principles' in L. Zedner and J. V. Roberts (eds), *Principles and Values in Criminal Law and Criminal Justice* (2012).

[3] Law Com No. 177, para. 2.2, quoting from the submission of the Society of Public Teachers of Law. See also A. T. H. Smith, 'The Case for a Code' [1986] Crim LR 285.

[4] Law Com No. 177, i, para. 2.4.

[5] See Law Com No. 177, i, paras. 2.5 to 2.11 for fuller discussion.

[6] Law Com No. 143, *Codification of the Criminal Law: a Report to the Law Commission* (1985), submitted by Professors J. C. Smith, E. Griew, and I. Dennis.

[7] Law Com No. 177 in two volumes: i. report and draft Bill, ii. commentary on the draft Bill.

[8] See [1990] Crim LR 141–2. This concern, even if valid at the time, seems difficult to maintain in the light of, e.g., legislation such as the Criminal Justice Act 2003, with 339 sections and 38 Schedules.

[9] Law Com No. 218, *Legislating the Criminal Code: Offences against the Person and General Principles* (1993).

[10] Home Office, *Violence: Reforming the Offences Against the Person Act 1861* (1998).

[11] Law Com No. 237, *Legislating the Criminal Code: Involuntary Manslaughter* (1996).

[12] Home Office, *Reforming the Law on Involuntary Manslaughter: the Government's Proposals* (2000).

[13] Law Com No. 311, *Tenth Programme of Law Reform* (2008); see the editional comment at [2009] Crim LR 1.

[14] Law Com No. 330, *Eleventh Programme of Law Reform* (2011).

[15] See, e.g., Sir Henry Brooke, 'The Law Commission and Criminal Law Reform' [1995] Crim LR 911; Lord Bingham, 'A Criminal Code: Must We Wait for Ever?' [1998] Crim LR 694; Mrs Justice Arden, 'Criminal Law at the Crossroads: the Impact of Human Rights from the Law Commission's Perspective and the Need for a Code' [1999] Crim LR 439.

[16] *Chambers* [2008] EWCA Crim 2467, at 24.

[17] E.g. C. Wells, 'Restatement or Reform?' [1986] Crim LR 314; G. de Búrca, and S. Gardner, 'The Codification of the Criminal Law' (1990) 10 OJLS 559; S. Gardner, 'Reiterating the Criminal Code' (1992) 55 MLR 839.

[18] A. Ashworth, 'Is the Criminal Law a Lost Cause?' (2000) 116 LQR 225.

[19] P. W. Ferguson, 'Codifying Criminal Law: (1) A Critique of Scots Common Law' [2004] Crim LR 49.

[20] Section 3.4(g).

[21] L. Farmer, '"The Genius of our Law …": Criminal Law and the Scottish Legal Tradition' (1992) 55 MLR 25 , 39.

[22] Scottish Law Commission, *A Draft Criminal Code for Scotland* (2003), discussed by P. W. Ferguson, 'Codifying Criminal Law (2): the Scots and English Draft Code Compared' [2004] Crim LR 105. The Scots codifying team consisted of Professors E. Clive, P. Ferguson, C. Gane, and A. McCall Smith, with Professor Sir Gerald Gordon.

[23] See Chapter 1.3.

[24] See further S. Peers, *EU Justice and Home Affairs Law* (3rd edn., 2011), ch 8.

[25] For fuller discussion see B. Emmerson, A. Ashworth, and A. Macdonald (eds), *Human Rights and Criminal Justice* (3rd edn., 2012).

[26] *Percy* v *DPP* [2002] Crim LR 835.

[27] Human Rights Act 1998, s. 19.

[28] E.g., the Bill that became the Sexual Offences Act 2003 (on which see Chapter 8.5 and 8.6); and the provision that became s. 76 Criminal Justice and Immigration Act 2008 (on which see Chapter 4.6(g)).

[29] *Lambert* [2002] 2 AC 545, and *Sheldrake* v *DPP; Attorney General's Reference No. 4 of 2002* [2004] UKHL 43.

[30] Notably in *R* v *A* [2002] 1 AC 45.

[31] An example of its use was in *A*. v *Home Secretary* [2004] UKHL 56.

[32] Article 15 was analysed by the House of Lords in *A*. v *Home Secretary* (n 31).

[33] Now confirmed in Strasbourg by e.g. *Rivas* v *France* [2005] Crim LR 305.

[34] In *A*. v *Home Secretary* [2004] UKHL 56 the House of Lords found that the provisions for the detention without trial of suspected international terrorists were contrary to Art. 5 and were not saved by Art. 15, since, although their Lordships accepted the government's view that there was an emergency threatening the life of the nation, they held that the powers went further than strictly necessary and that they were discriminatory, by applying to non-nationals and not to British nationals. The government abandoned these powers and took different powers in the Prevention of Terrorism Act 2005.

[35] Sections 12 and 13 of the Human Rights Act require British courts to 'have particular regard to the importance of' the rights of freedom of expression and freedom of religion.

[36] B.Goold, L. Lazarus, and G. Swiney, *Public Protection, Proportionality and the Search for Balance* (Ministry of Justice Research Series 10/07).

[37] The most significant appear to be *H* [2002] 1 Cr App R 59 on parental chastisement (Chapter 4.8); *Percy* v *DPP* [2002] Crim LR 835 (s. 5 of the Public Order Act may interfere disproportionately with the defendant's Art. 10 right); and *Goldstein and Rimmington* [2005] UKHL 63 (public nuisance and Art. 7). Cf. *K*. [2011] EWCA 1691, where it was noted that the relevant legislation actually refers to Art. 4 on servitude and forced labour.

[38] See *R* v *R* [1992] 1 AC 599, and Chapter 8.5(b).

[39] See e.g. Protection of Children Act 1978 and Sexual Offences Act 2003, ss. 45–50.

[40] Protection from Harassment Act 1997, Chapter 8.3(g); see C. Wells, 'Stalking: the Criminal Law Response' [1997] Crim LR 463, and the new offence in Protection of Freedoms Act 2012, s. 111.

[41] *Clingham* v *Royal Borough of Kensington and Chelsea* [2003] 1 AC 787.

[42] See Chapter 1.2, and A. Ashworth, 'Social Control and "Anti-Social Behaviour": the Subversion of Human Rights?' (2004) 120 LQR 263.

[43] See further Chapter 4.4.

[44] Children and Young Persons Act 1933, s. 1.

[45] Domestic Violence, Crime and Victims Act 2004, discussed in Chapter 7.6.

[46] See A. Cadoppi, 'Failure to Rescue and the Continental Criminal Law' in M. A. Menlowe and A. McCall Smith, *The Duty to Rescue* (1993); A. Ashworth and E. Steiner, 'Criminal Omissions and Public Duties: the French Experience', (1990) 10 Legal Studies 153.

[47] The principle of fair warning is discussed in Chapter 3.5.

[48] See Chapter 3.5(i), and also the particular problems of prosecutorial discretion under the Sexual Offences Act 2003, discussed in Chapter 8.6.

[49] M. Moore, *Act and Crime* (1993) 58; cf. the broader discussion by W. Wilson, *Central Issues in Criminal Theory* (2002), ch 3.

[50] Cf. P. Robinson and J. Darley, *Justice, Liability and Blame* (1995), 45–8, and particularly B. Mitchell, 'Public Perceptions of Homicide and Criminal Justice' (1998) 38 BJ Crim 453 at 459.

[51] A. Ashworth, 'Criminalizing Ommissions', in A. Ashworth, *Positive Obligations in Criminal Law* (2013), ch 2.

[52] A. Duff, *Answering for Crime* (2007), 109–10.

[53] Discussed further in Chapter 4.7 and 4.8.

[54] See e.g. *Nachova* v *Bulgaria* (2005) 42 EHRR 43.

[55] J. Gardner, 'Introduction' to H. L. A. Hart, Punishment and Responsibility (2nd edn., 2008), xxxvi.

[56] B. Juratowitch, *Retroactivity and the Common Law* (2008), 49.

[57] [1962] AC 220.

[58] For the controversial nature of this approach to the relationship between law and morality see Chapter 2.5.

[59] A. T. H. Smith, 'Judicial Lawmaking in the Criminal Law' (1984) 100 LQR 46.

[60] *Knuller* v *DPP* [1973] AC 435, a case in which, paradoxically, the court appeared to create the offence of outraging public decency; *Rimmington and Goldstein* [2006] 1 AC 459, per Lord Bingham.

[61] *Khaliq* v *HM Advocate*, 1983 SCCR 483.

[62] *Stallard* v *HM Advocate*, 1989 SCCR 248, discussed by T. H. Jones, 'Common Law and Criminal Law: the Scottish Experience' [1990] Crim LR 292 and by L. Farmer, 'The Genius of our Law'.

[63] [1992] 1 AC 599, on which see M. Giles, 'Judicial Lawmaking in the Criminal Courts: the Case of Marital Rape' [1992] Crim LR 407.

[64] Summarized in the first edition of this work, at 301–3.

[65] (1995) 21 EHRR 363; for analysis, see Juratowitch, *Retroactivity and the Common Law*, 127–38.

[66] [1992] 1 AC 599.

[67] (1995) 21 EHRR 363, at 390 cf. the even more doubtful decision in *C* [2005] Crim LR 238.

[68] (1995) 21 EHRR 363, at 402.

[69] [1962] AC 220.

[70] [1973] AC 435.

[71] [1983] QB 1053.

[72] See nn 78–9.

[73] [1996] AC 1, at 28.

[74] In *Attorney-General's Reference (No. 2 of 1999)* [2000] 2 Cr App R 207, *per* Rose LJ at 218.

[75] [2007] 1 AC 136, at [29]; cf. also Lord Bingham in *Rimmington and Goldstein* [2006] 1 AC 549 at 33 and *Norris* v *Government of USA* [2008] UKHL 16, at 55–6.

[76] See P. H. Robinson, 'Rules of Conduct and Principles of Adjudication' (1990) 57 U Chic LR 729 , and P. Alldridge, 'Rules for Courts and Rules for Citizens' (1990) 10 OJLS 487. Cf. Law Com No. 177, cl. 4(4).

[77] See the views of Dworkin and Williams, discussed in section 3.4(l).

[78] See *Willer* (1987) 83 Cr App R 225 and the decisions summarized in *Hasan* [2005] UKHL 22, discussed in Chapter 6.3.

[79] *Kingston* [1995] 2 AC 355, discussed in Chapter 6.2(d).

[80] [1987] AC 417, discussed in Chapter 6.3.

[81] G. Fletcher, *Rethinking Criminal Law* (1978), 574, quoted by Smith, 'Judicial Lawmaking', 64–5.

[82] [1995] Crim LR 163.

[83] The decision in *Elbekkay* came a few months before Lord Lowry laid down his propositions about judicial lawmaking in *C* v *DPP*, n 73 and accompanying text.

[84] It might be argued that a well-drawn defence of reasonable mistake of law should be introduced to protect defendants from conviction in such cases, but the argument here is that it would be unlawful for a court to reach such a decision at all.

[85] See, respectively, *Kokkinakis* v *Greece* (1993) 17 EHRR 397 and *Chan Chi-hung* v *R* [1996] AC 442. The question received a similar answer under European Community law in Cases C–358/93 and C–416/93 *Aldo Bordessa* [1995] ECR I–361: see E. Baker, 'Taking European Criminal Law Seriously' [1998] Crim LR 361 , at 366–8, 376–7.

[86] [1973] AC 435.

[87] For the former see *Shaw* v *DPP* [1962] AC 220; for the latter see *Tan* [1983] QB 1053.

[88] E.g. by the Grand Chamber in *Korbeley* v *Hungary* (2010) 50 EHRR 1192, at 70; see also the excerpt from the *Kokkinakis* judgment in section (i).

[89] See n 65 and accompanying text; see also C. C. Murphy, 'The Principle of Legality in Criminal Law under the European Convention on Human Rights' [2010] EHRLR 192 , at 200.

[90] See, e.g., *Kolender* v *Lawson* (1983) 103 S Ct 1855; the Supreme Court of Canada applied the principle in *Prostitution Reference* (1990) 77 CR (3d) 1.

[91] *Kokkinakis* v *Greece* (1994) 17 EHRR 397, para. 52.

[92] *Kokkinakis* v *Greece* (1994) 17 EHRR 397, para. 40.

[93] *Sunday Times* v *UK* (1979) 2 EHRR 245, para. 49; see generally B. Emmerson, A. Ashworth, and A. Macdonald, *Human Rights and Criminal Justice*, ch 16.

[94] (2000) 30 EHRR 241.

[95] *Hughes* v *Holley* (1988) 86 Cr App R 130.

[96] *Steel* v *UK* (1999) 28 EHRR 603 thus upheld the definition of 'breach of the peace', even though there remains some uncertainty in the definitions offered by the courts.

[97] (2000) 30 EHRR 241, para. 39.

[98] See the discussion of *Gomez* and *Hinks* in Chapter 9.2.

[99] Law Commission Consultation Paper (LCCP) No. 155, *Fraud and Deception* (1999), Parts V and VI; cf. the proposals in Law Com No. 276, *Fraud* (2002), which led to the Fraud Act 2006 (see Chapter 9.8), and which seek to avoid this problem by deploying an inchoate mode of drafting.

[100] *Pattni et al*. [2001] Crim LR 570.

[101] *Cotter* [2002] Crim LR 824.

[102] [2005] UKHL 63.

[103] [2005] UKHL 63, para. 33, quoting from *Clark* [2003] 2 Cr App R 363, para. 12.

[104] J. Gardner, 'Rationality and the Rule of Law in Offences Against the Person' [1994] Camb LJ 502.

[105] See the two Home Office studies of policing practice (reference at n 1).

[106] A. P. Simester and A. von Hirsch, 'Regulating Offensive Conduct through Two-Step Prohibitions' in A. von Hirsch and A. P. Simester (eds), *Incivilities* (2007), at 186 –7.

[107] T. Endicott, 'The Impossibility of the Rule of Law' (1999) 19 OJLS 1 , 6.

[108] Endicott, 'The Impossibility of the Rule of Law', 17–18.

[109] E.g. the problem of defining the conduct element in attempts: see Chapter 11.3.

[110] (1926) 269 US 385, at 391.

[111] See n 1.

[112] Subject to the remarks of the House of Lords in *Norris* v *Government of USA* [2008] UKHL 16.

[113] See the studies at n 1.

[114] See further, on 'public order', N. Lacey, C. Wells, and O. Quick, *Reconstructing Criminal Law* (2010), ch 6.

[115] Discussed in Chapter 6.5.

[116] A. Ashworth, 'Ignorance of the Criminal Law, and Duties to Avoid It' (2011) 74 MLR 1, and Chapter 6.5.

[117] See D. McBarnet and C. Whelan, 'The Elusive Spirit of the Law: Formalism and the Struggle for Legal Control' (1991) 54 MLR 848.

[118] See section 3.4(g).

[119] See Chapter 9.9.

[120] L. Hall, 'Strict or Liberal Construction of Penal Statutes' (1935) 48 Harv LR 748. Similar reasoning (deriving more from the value of liberty than from capital punishment) may underlie the principle of giving the benefit to the accused when the Court of Appeal is faced with conflicting precedents: *Taylor* [1950] 2 KB 368.

[121] See Chapter 8.3.

[122] *Kokkinakis* v *Greece* (1994) 17 EHRR 397, para. 52, cited at n 91.

[123] J. C. Jeffries, 'Legality, Vagueness and the Construction of Penal Statutes' (1985) 71 Virginia LR 189.

[124] E.g. *Gomez* [1993] AC 442 and *Hinks* [2001] 2 AC 241 in the House of Lords, and many Court of Appeal decisions.

[125] *Attorney-General's Reference (No. 1 of 1988)* (1989) 89 Cr App R 60, affirming the Court of Appeal's decision at (1989) 88 Cr App R 191.

[126] Cf. *Black-Clawson International* v *Papierwerke Waldhof-Aschaffenber AG* [1975] AC 591 with *Pepper* v *Hart* [1993] AC 593.

[127] Jeffries, 'Legality, Vagueness and the Construction of Penal Statutes', and Law Com No. 177, para. 3.17.

[128] For fuller discussion see A. Ashworth, 'Interpreting Criminal Statutes: a Crisis of Legality?'

(1991) 107 LQR 419.

[129] See Chapter 5.5(a).

[130] Cf. Law Com No. 177, para. 3.17, criticized by Ashworth, 'Interpreting Criminal Statutes, 425–7.

[131] See Chapter 6.5.

[132] Cf. Smith, 'Judicial Lawmaking', 58: 'it may be doubted whether it is possible to formulate any organising principles according to which conduct is seen to be deserving of condemnation as criminal'.

[133] J. R. Spencer, 'Criminal Law and Criminal Appeals: the Tail that Wags the Dog' [1982] Crim LR 260. Another example, which illustrates how some of these cases occur because the prosecutor chose the wrong charge and the Court cannot bring itself to acquit or quash the conviction, is *Gomez* [1993] AC 442, discussed in Chapter 9.2.

[134] J. Bell, *Policy Arguments in Judicial Decisions* (1983), 222.

[135] E.g. *Oxford* v *Moss* (1979) 68 Cr App R 183 and *Gold and Shifreen* [1988] AC 1063: the Computer Misuse Act 1990 may be seen as a legislative response, at least to the latter decision.

[136] (1976) 63 Cr App R 252.

[137] [1977] AC 177.

[138] See Smith, 'Judicial Lawmaking', 52–4, and also Lord Lane CJ, on credit card frauds in *Clarke* (1982) 75 Cr App R 119.

[139] *Savage, Parmenter* [1992] 1 AC 699, discussed in Chapter 8.3.

[140] [1996] AC 815.

[141] [1996] AC 815, at 831.

[142] R. M. Dworkin, *A Matter of Principle* (1985), ch 1.

[143] E.g. G. Williams, 'Statute Interpretation, Prostitution and the Rule of Law' in C. Tapper (ed), *Crime, Proof and Punishment* (1981); 'Criminal Omissions—the Conventional View' (1991) 107 LQR 86, at 96.

[144] See the judgment of Brennan J in the US Supreme Court in *Re Winship* (1970) 397 US 358.

[145] (1988) 13 EHRR 379.

[146] [1935] AC 462.

[147] [2001] 3 WLR 206.

[148] [2004] UKHL 43.

[149] For further discussion, see A. Ashworth, 'Four Threats to the Presumption of Innocence' (2006) 10 Evidence and Proof 241.

[150] A. Ashworth and M. Blake, 'The Presumption of Innocence in English Criminal Law' [1996] Crim LR 306.

[151] See J. Temkin and A. Ashworth, 'Rape, Sexual Assaults and the Problems of Consent' [2004] Crim LR 328 , at 342–4.

[152] See the discussions by G. Williams, 'Offences and Defences' (1982) 2 Legal Studies 233; P. Robinson, 'Criminal Law Defenses: A Systematic Analysis' (1982) 82 Columbia LR 199; and K. Campbell, 'Offence and Defence', in I. Dennis (ed.), *Criminal Law and Criminal Justice* (1987).

[153] As demonstrated by A. A. S. Zuckerman, 'The Third Exception to the *Woolmington* Rule' (1976) 92 LQR 402.

[154] See *Hunt* [1987] AC 352, discussed by J. C. Smith, 'The Presumption of Innocence' (1987) 38 NILQ 223, and by P. Roberts and A. A. S. Zuckerman, *Criminal Evidence* (2nd edn., 2010), ch 6.

[155] Unfortunately even Lord Bingham in *Sheldrake* v *DPP* [2004] UKHL 43 relied on this flawed argument.

[156] As decided by the House of Lords in *G* [2008] UKHL 37.

[157] On which see the quotation from Gardner, n 55.

[158] Adopted in LCCP 177, *A New Homicide Act?*, para. 2.101.

[159] See Chapter 7.6.

[160] Chapter 7.3.

[161] The Law Commission accepted this, using this as a basis for its proposed reforms: LCCP 177, *A New Homicide Act?*, paras. 3.15–18; but it subsequently discarded the principle in order to achieve greater consensus: Law Com 304, *Murder, Manslaughter and Infanticide* (2006), para. 254ff, discussed in Chapter 7.3.

[162] See Chapter 5.4, and J. Horder, 'A Critique of the Correspondence Principle' [1995] Crim LR 759 ; B. Mitchell, 'In Defence of the Correspondence Principle' [1999] Crim LR 195; J. Horder, 'A Reply' [1999] Crim LR 206; and V. Tadros, *Criminal Responsibility* (2005), 93–8.

[163] For a fuller version of the argument in this paragraph, see A. Ashworth, 'A Change of Normative Position: Determining the Contours of Culpability in Criminal Law' (2008) 11 New Crim LR 232.

[164] J. Hall, *General Principles of Criminal Law* (2nd edn., 1960), 6.

[165] J. Gardner, 'On the General Part of the Criminal Law' in A. Duff (ed.), *Philosophy and the Criminal Law* (1998), 244.

[166] J. Gardner, 'Rationality and the Rules of Law in Offences Against the Person' (1994) 53 Camb LJ 502 , 509.

[167] See Chapter 7.5(a).

[168] See particularly J. Horder, 'A Critique of the Correspondence Principle' [1995] Crim LR 759, 763 and 766.

[169] Gardner, 244 (reference at n 165).

[170] See the discussion of these criticisms in J. Gardner, *Offences and Defences* (2007), 246–8.

[171] It is not clear that the counter-argument by Gardner, 'On the General Part of the Criminal Law', 236–9, deals satisfactorily with this point; cf. A. Ashworth, *Positive Obligations in Criminal Law* (2013), ch 5.

[172] For fuller discussion and references, see Chapter 7.5 on manslaughter.

[173] A. Ashworth, 'The Elasticity of Mens Rea' in C. Tapper (ed.), *Crime, Proof and Punishment* (1981); G. Williams, 'Convictions and Fair Labelling' [1983] Camb LJ 85; J. Horder, 'Rethinking Non-Fatal Offences against the Person' (1994) 14 OJLS 335; B. Mitchell, 'Multiple Wrongdoing and Offence Structure: a Plea for Consistency and Fair Labelling' (2001) 64 MLR 393.

[174] J. Chalmers and F. Leverick, 'Fair Labelling in Criminal Law' (2008) 71 MLR 217 , at 246.

[175] Chalmers and Leverick, 'Fair Labelling in Criminal Law', 234.

[176] Chalmers and Leverick, 'Fair Labelling in Criminal Law', 234–5.

[177] V. Tadros, 'Fair Labelling and Social Solidarity' in L. Zedner and J. Roberts (eds), *Principles and Values in Criminal Law and Criminal Justice* (2012), 79.

[178] Chapter 9.2(a).

[179] A. Ashworth, 'Robbery Reassessed' [2002] Crim LR 851.

[180] Admittedly English law does not do this well: see Chapter 8.3(m).

[181] In Chapter 5.4 and Chapter 7.5.

[182] See the discussion in Chapter 7.7.

[183] For detailed discussion, see Chapter 7.3.

[184] Chalmers and Leverick, 'Fair Labelling', 244–6.

[185] See further Chapter 7.4.

[186] See A. Ashworth, 'Manslaughter: Generic or Nominate Offences?', drawing from several other essays in C. Clarkson and S. Cunningham (eds), *Criminal Liability for Non-Aggressive Death* (2008).

[187] Criminal Law Revision Committee, 8th Report, *Theft and Related Offences*, Cmnd 2977

(1966), para. 38.

[188] See Chapter 9.8 and 9.9.

[189] E.g. *G*. [2008] UKHL 37, discussed in Chapter 8.5.

[190] J. Hall, *General Principles of Criminal Law* (2nd edn., 1960).

[191] (1985) 71 Virginia LR 1.

[192] (1996) 21 EHRR 363.

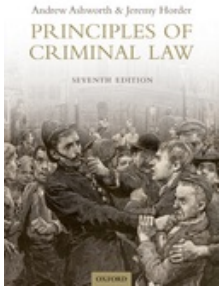
[193] See Chapter 3.5(i).

[194] See Chapter 3.5(m).

[195] *Goldstein and Rimmington* [2005] UKHL 63.

[196] *A* v *Home Secretary* [2004] UKHL 56.

[197] N. Jareborg, 'What Kind of Criminal Law do We Want?', *Beware of Punishment* (1995), discussed in Chapter 2.4(a).



Principles of Criminal Law (7th edn)

Andrew Ashworth and Jeremy Horder

Publisher: Oxford University Press
Print ISBN-13: 9780199672684
DOI: 10.1093/he/9780199672684.001.0001

Print Publication Date: May 2013
Published online: Sep 2013

4. Criminal Conduct: *Actus Reus*, Causation, and Permissions

Chapter: (p. 83) 4. Criminal Conduct: *Actus Reus*, Causation, and Permissions
Author(s): Andrew Ashworth and Jeremy Horder
DOI: 10.1093/he/9780199672684.003.0004

4.1 The general part of the criminal law
4.2 Involuntary conduct
4.3 Acts, states of affairs, and possession
4.4 Omissions
4.5 Causation
4.6 Self-defence and permissible force
4.7 Permissions, necessity, and the choice of evils
4.8 Conclusions
Further reading

4.1 The general part of the criminal law

This chapter and the following two chapters discuss what is usually known as the 'general part' of the criminal law.[1] The general part is comprised of rules and principles of the criminal law whose importance and application can be analysed and debated without necessarily referring to a specific crime. For example, it has been traditional for writers on English criminal law to approach the analysis of offences by means of two concepts with Latin names, *actus reus* and *mens rea*. The *actus reus* consists of the prohibited behaviour or conduct, including any specified consequences arising therefrom. The *mens rea* is usually described as the mental element—the intention, knowledge, or recklessness of the defendant in relation to the proscribed conduct. Analysis of the two concepts is analysis of the general part of the criminal law, in so far as it involves a search for a better understanding of the two concepts, as such, or a search for a common thread of principle in the way that they are employed in the criminal law. These two concepts are often referred to by their Latin names, but will be expressed here in terms of 'conduct' elements and 'fault' elements.

Questions involving these concepts relevant to the general part of the criminal law include whether it is ever right to convict someone of a crime when they were not at fault in engaging in the prohibited conduct. This is an important question, bearing (p. 84) in mind that, in English criminal law, there are thousands of strict liability offences (liability without fault).[2] A question in a similar vein, but turning things around, is: is it ever right to convict someone of a crime because they possessed the fault element (say, an intention to harm another person), but did not engage in any conduct wrongful in itself to further that intention? Some commonly encountered offences all but assume that it is indeed acceptable to convict people for little more than possessing a fault element.[3] Most controversially of all, we will see that there are examples of crimes where a criminal conviction has been upheld even when the person convicted was neither at fault, nor engaged in any voluntary conduct.[4]

What has just been said assumes that a rough-and-ready distinction between fault elements and conduct elements provides an appropriate starting point for consideration of such questions. There have also been efforts made to find more sophisticated ways of explaining the distinction.[5] In particular, in so far as criminal conduct must in some sense be 'wrongful' conduct, some theorists and some legal systems draw a distinction between the conduct element of a crime, and the circumstances in which that conduct may be permissibly engaged in.[6] For example, when, for adequate reason, a qualified surgeon operates on you, he or she inflicts harm on you—perhaps very serious harm—but no offence is committed. But is that because there is no 'wrongful' conduct in the circumstances, or because there is wrongful conduct but conduct that is permitted by the law given that there was adequate reason to engage in it?[7] There is no space here to examine these issues more extensively, and the classification adopted may be said to be less important than an enquiry into the key question that it might obscure: 'what the preconditions to criminal liability really are, and how far they really reflect the principles they are commonly supposed to encapsulate'.[8] For convenience of exposition the conditions of criminal liability may be divided into four working groups:

(i) act and causation requirements;
(ii) absence of permission;
(iii) capacity and fault requirements;
(iv) excusatory defences.

Chapter 5 deals with the requirements of criminal capacity (the doctrines of insanity, infancy,

and corporate liability) as well as traditional fault requirements, i.e. the range (p. 85) of possible fault elements which the prosecution has to establish in order to construct a case for the defence to answer. Chapter 6 will discuss 'excusatory' defences. These are defences that are concerned with absence of fault or culpability in a broader sense than is understood by a 'fault element' when such an element is included in the definition of an offence. Indeed, these defences can usually be pleaded even when the defendant committed a crime requiring proof by the prosecution of a fault element. An example is 'duress' (threats) where that has led someone to commit a crime. In limited circumstances, the law gives someone a complete (excusatory) defence to a range of crimes if those crimes were committed under duress, even if the crime in question involved proof of a fault element (such as an intention to steal). When one or more such excusatory defences are pleaded the defendant has to provide some evidence of the facts that he or she claims gave rise to the defences' relevance to the case, in order to raise them as live issues. Both positive and negative fault requirements can be analysed as aspects of the general part of the criminal law, although they do not apply invariably and to all offences. Finally, it should be noted that some defences may not fit easily into a category such as 'permission' or 'excusatory' defence.[9]

This chapter deals with both (i) act and causation requirements and (ii) absence of permission. It is fundamental to the characterization of certain conduct as criminal that it is not permissible. Some offences are drafted so as to exclude permissible conduct from the scope of the conduct element. An example is blackmail, where the wrongful conduct involved making an '*unwarranted* demand with menaces'.[10] However, the most usual approach is to define offences without reference to the possibility that the conduct may be permissible under certain circumstances. This makes the permissions something best analysed as doctrines of the general part of the criminal law. Perhaps it is for this reason that permissions are often classified as 'general' defences. Some excuses—like duress—may be general defences as well, but it can be argued that permissions are of more fundamental importance than excuses to a sound functioning of a legal system. Conduct which is permissible gives a defendant a legal right to engage in it in appropriate circumstances, even if the conduct in question involves the intentional infliction of serious harm or even killing. This is quite different in theory from the operation of defences which are excuses such as duress or mistake, discussed in Chapter 6. Someone seeking excuse concedes that they had no right to do as they did and that their act was wrongful. They nonetheless claim that they should be acquitted because they lacked culpability (in the broader sense, described above) at the time.[11] Where the defendant's act is regarded as permissible (say, in self-defence), the defendant claims the right to have done it (whether or not it was in some sense wrongful), even though the same act would in most situations be impermissible and wrong.[12] The fundamental importance of permissions comes from the fact that they mostly (if (p. 86) not in all cases) afford some guidance to citizens on the circumstances in which they are permitted or right to use force, cause damage, etc. It follows that the legal limits of permissions, in particular, ought to comply with standards of fair warning.[13]

The chapter begins with an exploration of the doctrines of voluntariness, acts, omissions, and causation. To proceed to conviction without proof of voluntary conduct would be to fail, in the most fundamental way, to show respect for individuals as rational, choosing beings. More generally, if people were liable generally to conviction for simply having failed to stop harm being done, or (perhaps even more so) because something had been done *to* them, this would fail to respect their autonomy (see Chapter 2.1) and would be unlikely to give them fair warning

of the incidence of the criminal sanction, unless reasonable duties had been made plain to them.[14] Similarly, where it cannot be established that the defendant (D) was responsible for the conduct or consequence prohibited by the crime, there should be no conviction.

Some such requirements are needed to protect individual autonomy by ensuring that both Parliament and the courts preserve fair warning and fair opportunities to choose not to offend. The chapter begins with the notion of involuntary conduct, the limits of which are examined in section 4.2. We then turn in section 4.3 to various challenges to the 'voluntary act' requirement—where is the act if the law criminalizes the occurrence of a state of affairs, or mere possession? Section 4.4 considers how the voluntary act requirement relates to crimes of omission. We then turn to causation, and later deal with the circumstances in which conduct may be recognized as justifiable.

4.2 Involuntary conduct

(a) Automatism and authorship[15]

A claim of 'automatism' is a denial of authorship, a claim that the ordinary link between mind and behaviour was absent, or that the link had become distorted in some fundamental way.[16] This can occur where what is prohibited by the law only occurred as a result of a set of involuntary movements of the body rather than as a result of voluntary acts. We should begin by noting that something that happens to one's body can be involuntary, without being 'automatic'. An example would be where someone (X) is forcibly seized by another (Y) and physically made to harm the victim or to damage their property. In such a case, Y is the real aggressor, whereas X is guilty of no crime **(p. 87)** because X's involvement was involuntary: controlled wholly by Y. Such cases are not further discussed here, and the terms 'involuntary' and 'automatic' will be used interchangeably. The more interesting cases involve behaviour that is involuntary because it is in some sense automatic (using that term fairly loosely). The law's understanding of involuntary—automatic—conduct extends to instinctive reactions, as where the defendant's driving is affected when he or she succumbs to a panic reaction when a swarm of bees enters his or her car. It also includes cases of what might be called 'mental disconnection', where the defendant appears to have control over his or her behaviour, but in fact does not. Examples may include committing offences whilst sleepwalking or when affected by serious concussion. Complex behaviour—such as driving—may occur in such cases, but it does not manifest itself in the form of voluntary conduct. Automatism is often regarded as a defence to crime rather than as a denial of an essential component of criminal conduct. Certainly, the discussion that follows has more in common with the treatment of various excuses in Chapter 6 than with the rest of this chapter. However, the discussion of the issue here reflects the common understanding that automatism undermines the sense in which someone is engaging in 'conduct' at all, and thus amounts to a denial of the conduct element of the crime.[17]

As a matter of 'general part' thinking, the theory is that automatism prevents liability for all crimes. Since all crimes require a form of conduct, or of voluntary control over a state of affairs (as in possession cases), even if some of them do not require fault, it follows that automatism may lead to acquittal on any and every charge. Many of the early cases concerned motoring offences for which strict liability is imposed, and to which automatism is one of the few routes to acquittal. However, since a plea of automatism may apply to all, or

almost all, crimes, the courts have attempted to circumscribe its use, defining it fairly narrowly and developing three major doctrines of limitation.

Where a defendant brings credible evidence to raise the possibility of involuntariness, the prosecution must establish beyond reasonable doubt that the accused was not in a state of automatism when the conduct occurred. In cases where the issue turns on mental malfunctioning ('I don't know what happened; I just suddenly blacked out'), that may involve the prosecution in an all but impossible task if the defendant exercises his or her right not to undergo medical examination. Consequently, rare though automatism claims are, judges have said that, in cases such as that of the 'blacking out' example just given, the defence must be able to rely on expert medical evidence bearing on the defendant's state of mind at the relevant time. In particular, in such cases, D's own testimony as to his or her state of mind will be regarded an insufficient foundation for the judge to leave the issue to the jury, or for the magistrates to dismiss the charge.[18]

(p. 88) (b) The essence of automatism

Examples of forms of involuntariness which might amount to automatism include convulsions, muscle spasms, acts following concussion, physically coerced movements, etc. Criminal lawyers used to express the legal position in terms of a requirement of a voluntary act, going on to say that an act is voluntary if it is willed.[19] One criticism of this is that it does not explain how the act of will itself occurs, and suggests an infinite causal regress;[20] another is that it misrepresents and exaggerates our awareness of the movements involved in our behaviour.[21] These criticisms led Hart to propose a 'negative' definition, describing involuntary actions as 'movements of the body which occurred though the agent had no reason for moving his body in that way'.[22] This switches attention to rare occasions of involuntariness, of which two types may be identified—behaviour which is uncontrollable, and behaviour which proceeds from severely impaired consciousness. Uncontrollable behaviour (it would not really be right even to describe the event as D's 'behaviour') may be illustrated thus: D is physically overpowered by X and is made to stab V. In these circumstances it is fair to say that this was not D's *act* but something which *happened to* D: the same view might be taken of a person brought to this country by ferry and then forced to leave the ferry and step onto British soil.[23] Further examples may be conduct during an epileptic fit, and reflex actions. Turning to behaviour proceeding from a lack of consciousness, this can be illustrated by things done during a hypoglycaemic episode (which may be the result of taking insulin to correct diabetes). Both types of automatism should apply equally to offences of omission, excusing those who fail to fulfil a legal duty through physical incapacity arising from inability to control behaviour or through significantly reduced consciousness.[24]

Those final words bring us to an unresolved question. Must a court be satisfied beyond reasonable doubt that the defendant had a total lack of consciousness or of control over his behaviour, or will a lesser impairment suffice? In the first place, we should recall that the prosecution bears the burden of proof, ultimately, and all that the defence needs do is to bring credible evidence to support its case. In *Broome* v *Perkins* (1987),[25] upholding a conviction for careless driving even though the defendant had been in a hypoglycaemic state, the Divisional Court held in effect that the defence must adduce credible evidence that the defendant was exercising no control over his bodily **(p. 89)** movements at the time. A similarly stringent test was applied in *Attorney General's Reference (No. 2 of 1992)*,[26] where

there had been expert evidence about a condition known as ‘driving without awareness’, but the Court held that automatism requires a ‘total destruction of voluntary control on the defendant's part’, and that the alleged condition did not establish this. These decisions are inconsistent with earlier cases in which the defendant's consciousness was significantly reduced but not totally absent, and yet where this was held sufficient for an acquittal;[27] both *Broome* and the *Reference* case concerned road traffic offences, and it is possible that a more restrictive view is taken there because of the risk of false claims, but that is hardly a convincing reason for such a significant distinction in the application of the involuntariness requirement.

What, then, should be the extent of the involuntariness doctrine? Hart's definition depends upon the absence of a reason for the movements of the body (‘the mind of a man bent on some conscious action’[28]), whereas the cases seem to have more to do with an absence of capacity. Glanville Williams, taking this point, argued that movements are involuntary if D is unable to avoid them.[29] Not only does this involve a shift of emphasis to capacity, but it also strikes an unusual note in asking not only whether D did control the movements (were they uncontroll*ed*?), but whether D could have controlled them (were they uncontroll*able*?). Williams's approach is preferable here, as the Law Commission's Draft Code recognizes; Hart's test dwells on cognition, whereas the essence of automatism is lack of volition. But there is no concealing the questions of judgment it leaves open. The Draft Code includes within automatism any movement which ‘(i) is a reflex, spasm or convulsion; or (ii) occurs while he is in a condition (whether of sleep, unconsciousness, impaired consciousness or otherwise) depriving him of effective control of the act’.[30] The key concept here is ‘effective control’, and this, combined with ‘impaired consciousness’, shows how difficult it is to eliminate questions of degree even from such a fundamental aspect of criminal liability. The *essence* of automatism lies in D's inability to control the movement (or non-movement) of his body at the relevant time, but it may be thought unduly harsh to restrict the doctrine to cases of apparently total deprivation. The phrase proposed by the Law Commission, ‘depriving him of effective control’, would expressly empower the courts to evaluate and judge D's worthiness for a complete acquittal, whereas if the decisions in *Broome* v *Perkins* and *Attorney General's Reference (No. 2 of 1992)* represent the law (at least within the sphere of road traffic offences), the doctrine of automatism is unavailable whenever the court believes that there was a residual element of control in the defendant's behaviour at the time. The advantage of the Law Commission's formula would be to allow sensitivity to the special facts of unusual cases; its disadvantage would lie in the freedom left to courts to incorporate extraneous considerations into their judgments.

(p. 90) At common law the courts have imposed at least three major limitations on the doctrine of automatism—by excluding cases involving insanity, intoxication, and prior fault—and it is to these developments that we must now turn.

(c) Insane automatism

Even if D's bodily movements are uncontrollable or proceed from unconsciousness, the doctrine of automatism will not be available if the cause of D's condition was a mental disorder classified as insanity.[31] The courts originally developed this policy for reasons of social defence, since it ensured that those who fell within the legal definition of insanity were subject to the special verdict and (at that time) to indefinite detention, rather than being allowed to

argue that their condition rendered their acts uncontrollable, and that they should therefore have an unqualified acquittal on the grounds of automatism.

The social policy behind this judicial approach is expressed most clearly in Lord Denning's speech in *Bratty* v *Attorney-General for Northern Ireland* (1963).[32] D based his defence to a murder charge on psychomotor epilepsy, but the trial judge ruled that automatism was not available, holding that the true nature of the condition was a disease of the mind and that therefore insanity was the only defence. The House of Lords upheld the trial judge's approach, and Lord Denning affirmed that 'it is not every involuntary act which leads to a complete acquittal'. D's behaviour may have been involuntary, 'but it does not give rise to an unqualified acquittal, for that would mean that he would be left at large to do it again'. The proper verdict is one of insanity, 'which ensures that the person who suffers from the disease is kept secure in a hospital so as not to be a danger to himself or others'. Moreover, Lord Denning was inclined to give 'mental disease' a broad definition for this purpose, so as to include 'any mental disorder which has manifested itself in violence and is prone to recur'. This decision confirmed the dominance of the policy of social defence over considerations of individual responsibility.

In practice, the effect of this strict approach has not been greatly to swell the numbers of people pleading insanity. Typically, if a defence is based on automatism but the judge rules that, since the origin of D's condition was a 'disease of the mind', the defence should be treated as one of insanity, many defendants decide to plead guilty to the charge rather than to persist with an insanity defence. The Criminal Procedure (Insanity and Unfitness to Plead) Act 1991 grants courts a discretion to choose committal to hospital, a supervision order, or an absolute discharge, if there is an insanity verdict.[33] This still places considerable emphasis on social defence, and may not be an attractive option if the defendant's condition bears little relation to the common understanding of insanity.

(p. 91) In recent years the courts have tended to transfer more varieties of involuntariness out of automatism and into insanity. The leading case is *Quick* (1973),[34] where D's defence against a charge of causing actual bodily harm was that the attack occurred during a hypoglycaemic episode brought on by the use of insulin and his failure to eat an adequate lunch. The defence relied on automatism, whereas the prosecution sought and obtained a ruling that the condition amounted to insanity. The defendant then pleaded guilty and appealed. The Court of Appeal, quashing the conviction, held that a malfunctioning of the mind does not constitute a 'disease of the mind' within the insanity defence if it is 'caused by the application to the body of some external factor such as violence, drugs, including anaesthetics, alcohol, and hypnotic influences'. This 'external factor' doctrine was accepted by the House of Lords in *Sullivan* (1984),[35] where it was also restated that 'diseases of the mind' include both permanent and transitory conditions. Thus, where the malfunctioning of the mind is caused by an external factor, the legal classification is automatism rather than insanity, and the prosecution must disprove D's claim; where it arises from an internal cause, the classification is insanity, and the burden of proof lies on D. This leads to the apparently strange result that a hypoglycaemic episode (resulting from the taking of insulin to correct diabetes) falls within automatism, whereas a hyperglycaemic episode (resulting from a high blood-sugar level which has not been corrected) falls within insanity, since it is an internal condition rather than a condition caused by an external factor.[36] Epilepsy falls within insanity for the same reason.

The courts have also applied the internal–external distinction to cases of somnambulism. In *Burgess* (1991)[37] the Court of Appeal held that, since there is no external cause of sleepwalking, this condition must be regarded as arising from internal causes and therefore classified as insanity, following *Quick* and *Sullivan*. The defendant in *Burgess* had not changed his plea to guilty but succeeded on a plea of insanity. Now, under the Criminal Procedure (Insanity and Unfitness to Plead) Act 1991, it would be open to a judge to grant an absolute discharge in these circumstances. However, the 'insanity' label might be unwelcome to many such defendants, and English law has no satisfactory means of dealing with cases involving both danger and an absence of responsibility.[38] The case for an urgent review of the 'external factor' doctrine is strong.[39]

One type of condition that has not yet been classified authoritatively in England is 'dissociation', which is often marked by a short period of uncharacteristic behaviour (p. 92) accompanied by some degree of memory loss. In *Rabey* (1978)[40] the Supreme Court of Canada ruled, in the case of a defendant who attacked a woman who had rejected his admiration for her, that the dissociative state in which he acted could not be classified as automatism. Although D's rejection by the woman might be regarded as an external factor, 'the ordinary stresses and disappointments of life which are the common lot of mankind do not constitute an external cause constituting an explanation for a malfunctioning of the mind which takes it out of the category of a "disease of the mind"'. Thus the rejection was an external factor but not the primary cause of the dissociative state: the Supreme Court thought that this lay in the defendant's 'psychological or emotional make-up'. That approach left open the possibility that an utterly extraordinary event might suffice as an external cause, and a trial judge so ruled in *T* (1990).[41] Here the defendant had been raped three days before she joined two others in a robbery, during which she said, 'I'm ill, I'm ill,' and then stabbed a bystander. Her defence was one of automatism arising from post-traumatic stress disorder caused by the rape. The judge ruled that the rape was a sufficient external cause to place the case within the doctrine of automatism rather than insanity.[42]

(d) Automatism through intoxication

The Court of Appeal in *Quick* held that automatism arising from intoxication does not fall within the definition of insanity. However, this does not mean that a person who causes harm whilst in such an intoxicated state as to have significantly reduced consciousness or to be unable to control movements of the body should be brought within the doctrine of automatism. If the cause of the involuntariness is intoxication, then the courts treat the case as falling within the ambit of the intoxication doctrine. It is rare for the evidence to be strong enough to raise a reasonable doubt that D was sufficiently intoxicated as to be in a state of automatism, but this seems to have been accepted in *Lipman* (1970),[43] where D had taken drugs and believed that he was fighting off snakes and descending to the centre of the earth, whereas he was actually suffocating his girlfriend. A defence of automatism was refused, and the case was treated as one of intoxication,[44] drawing on the doctrine of prior fault discussed in (e). However, if D's condition appears to have arisen through intoxication followed by concussion resulting from a bump on the head, the court may have to establish the dominant cause of (p. 93) the condition and subsequent behaviour.[45] The distinction may seem a complication too far, but consider this example. An air traffic controller goes on duty whilst heavily intoxicated. She is so intoxicated that she collapses unconscious when performing a vital part of her work, endangering many lives. If she is charged with an endangerment offence of some kind, there

seems to be no pressing reason to grant the defendant an automatism-based defence. However, it should arguably be different if her intoxication led her accidentally to fall, hit her head hard, enter a mental state akin to sleepwalking in consequence, and then collapse at work as just described. In the latter case, the causal influence of the intoxication is just the background in which another cause of automatism—the concussion—governs her behaviour.

(e) Prior fault

The aim of the doctrine of prior fault[46] is to prevent D taking advantage of a condition if it arose through D's own fault. In relation to automatism, the point was first made in *Quick* (1973),[47] where Lawton LJ held that there could be no acquittal on this ground if the condition 'could have been reasonably foreseen as a result of either doing or omitting to do something, as, for example, taking alcohol against medical advice after using certain prescribed drugs, or failing to take regular meals whilst taking insulin'. According to this view, the question of prior fault is resolved by applying the test of reasonable foreseeability, the test of the reasonably prudent person in D's position. But in *Bailey* (1983)[48] the Court of Appeal held that a person should not be liable to conviction if the condition of automatism arose through a simple failure to appreciate the consequences of not taking sufficient food after a dose of insulin, even if the reasonably prudent person would have realized it. The defence of automatism should be available unless it can be shown that D knew that his acts or omissions were likely 'to make him aggressive, unpredictable and uncontrolled with the result that he may cause some injury to others'. On this view, prior fault requires awareness of risk, sometimes called subjective recklessness.[49]

The conflict between the doctrine of prior fault and the principle of contemporaneity of conduct and fault is discussed elsewhere.[50] The question here is whether the doctrine should apply at all in automatism cases. Consider the approach of trying to avoid the conflict with the contemporaneity principle by convicting D in respect of conduct at an earlier point in time, when there was fault. In *Kay* v *Butterworth* (1945)[51] D fell asleep while driving home from night-work, and his car collided with soldiers marching down the road. It was held that he could be convicted of careless driving—not in respect of the collision (when he was asleep and therefore **(p. 94)** involuntarily omitting to exercise due care), but in respect of his earlier failure to stop driving when he felt drowsy. Even on its own terms, this approach is possible only where the offence is of a continuing nature, and where the charge can be appropriately worded. Having said that, one advantage of this approach is that it recognizes that the driving was at one stage involuntary, and that involuntary movements cannot be the subject of criminal liability. The application of prior fault in cases such as *Quick* fails to take this point, in the sense that criminal liability still depends on, or is traced through, the involuntary movements.[52] Only if one maintains that the doctrine of prior fault is so fundamental to our notions of responsibility that it trumps ordinary causal principles, as well as the principle of contemporaneity, can the law's position be rationalized.

(f) Reform

The proposition that people should not be held liable for conduct that is involuntary is fundamental, and the common law on automatism has developed from it. However, even accepting that cases of prior fault should continue to be excluded from automatism and that cases resulting from intoxication should be classified under the intoxication rules, one major

unsatisfactory feature of the law on automatism is the line drawn between this doctrine and the defence of insanity. Since the courts have flexible powers of disposal under the 1991 Act, it may be argued that judicial persistence with the internal/external distinction does not have drastic implications for defendants. Nonetheless, there can be no sense in classifying hypoglycaemic states as automatism and hyperglycaemic states as insanity, when both states are so closely associated with such a common condition as diabetes. The difference in burdens of proof (prosecution must disprove automatism, defence must prove insanity) compounds the anomaly. The proper boundaries of the defence of insanity will be examined further in Chapter 5.2(c), but it is apparent from the discussion here that the present scope of the phrase 'disease of the mind' is too wide. On the one hand, there are many states in which the functioning of the mind is affected but which should not sensibly be included within the concept of insanity. On the other hand, it is difficult to arrive at a clear definition of automatism: the Draft Code refers to 'impaired consciousness … depriving him of effective control of the act'.[53] This rightly recognizes that total absence of control should not be required, but it therefore leaves us with a test dependent on a judgment of degree and value ('effective'), and does so without identifying the relevance of the defendant's capacity rather than awareness and 'choice'.[54]

(p. 95) 4.3 Acts, States of affairs, and possession

Accepting that a person should not be held liable for things which occur whilst he or she is in an involuntary state amounting to automatism, should there be a further requirement that liability should be based on acts? At first blush it seems wrong that people should be held liable for things that happen to them, or for a simple failure to do something. Do legal systems succeed in avoiding the creation of offences that do not require an act? Should they try to avoid such offences?[55]

Before sketching answers to those two questions, we must make the point that not all criminal offences are formulated so as to require proof of a particular *type* of act. For some offences, such as wounding and rape, the definition specifies an act and it is clearly a wrongful act in itself. For other offences, such as doing an act with intent to impede the apprehension of a person who has committed an arrestable offence,[56] and all crimes of attempt, the definition requires an act, but not one that is in itself necessarily wrongful: the intention with which the act is done makes a crucial contribution to the wrongfulness of the act, but the act requirement still functions so as to exclude involuntary movements. (Whether ordinary acts should be penalized simply because of the actor's intentions is discussed elsewhere.[57]) For yet other offences, the definition refers only to a result (e.g. causing death), and the act requirement is implicit; any kind of act suffices. Those offences have a tendency to raise questions of causation (did D's act cause the death?), which draws attention to another feature of the act requirement: what is necessary is not merely an act, but an act that causes the conduct or consequence specified in the definition of the offence. This should rule out cases in which D's act is superseded by the voluntary intervening act of some third party—where it is the intervening act, and not D's original act, that is the cause. The troublesome decisions on voluntary intervening acts are reviewed in section 4.5.

There are three types of offence that appear to challenge the requirement of an act. First, there are offences relating to states of affairs: is it right that a person should be liable to

conviction in respect of a state of affairs that happens to him, and is not his act? Secondly, most criminal codes contain offences of possession, and it is questionable whether these require any act. Thirdly, and most obviously, there are offences of omission. The essence of these offences is that they penalize a person for doing nothing when he or she should have done something. We examine in the next section whether, and to what extent, offences of omission can be justified. In the remainder of this section, states of affairs and offences of possession are considered.

(p. 96) (a) Situational liability

Are there good reasons for convicting a person simply because a state of affairs exists, without the person 'doing' anything to create or to continue that state of affairs? The leading case is *Larsonneur* (1933),[58] where D left England because the duration of her permitted stay had come to an end. She went to Ireland, from where she was deported back to this country. On her return, she was convicted of 'being found in the United Kingdom' contrary to the Aliens Order 1920. Her appeal, based on the argument that her return to England was beyond her control, was dismissed by the Court of Criminal Appeal. The case is widely criticized: her return to this country was not her own act, and was contrary to her will and desire. The Court might have held that there was no voluntary act by the defendant, since it appears that various officials compelled her return to this country. It might then have given consideration to the degree of any prior fault on her part.[59] The judgment fails to discuss these points of principle, and the decision hardly shines as a beacon of common law reasoning. However, *Larsonneur* does not stand alone. In *Winzar* v *Chief Constable of Kent* (1983)[60] the Divisional Court confirmed a conviction for being found drunk on a highway, in a case where the defendant had been taken from a hospital on to the highway by the police. Another similarly worded offence is that of being drunk in charge of a motor vehicle, and there are many other offences that impose what Peter Glazebrook has termed 'situational liability'.[61]

We will see in Chapter 5.3(b) how, in certain situations, the courts have imposed 'vicarious liability' on shop owners and employers by construing statutory words so as to achieve convictions. In effect, these individuals and companies are being held liable simply for states of affairs—for the fact that an employee sold American ham as Scottish ham, for example, even though the shop owner had specifically warned against this.[62] However, Andrew Simester has argued that in all these cases it is not the absence of a required act that is objectionable, but the absence of a fault element.[63] The proper approach, he submits, is evident from two New Zealand prosecutions of visitors for staying after the expiration of a visitor's permit. In *Finau* v *Department of Labour* (1984)[64] the conviction was quashed because D was pregnant and no airline would carry her. In *Tifaga* v *Department of Labour* (1980)[65] the conviction was upheld because D was at fault in running out of money, with the result that he could not afford a ticket. The offence did not require an act (or an omission), but rather a state of affairs for which D was responsible. Thus, as argued in Chapter 5.3(b), it may be defensible **(p. 97)** to impose situational liability if the law is so phrased as to ensure that defendants are in control of their activities and know about their duty to avoid certain situations. This insists on a voluntariness requirement, but not an act requirement. So long as fair warning is given of the standards expected of those embarking on certain activities or enterprises, the principles of legality or 'rule of law' are satisfied and autonomy is respected.[66] The English legislature, unfortunately, sees no objection to creating state-of-affairs offences such as 'being found' or 'being drunk in charge' without any voluntariness requirement—not

even exceptions to cover the person who has been manhandled into the position in which he or she is found or the person who has been rendered drunk by the strategem of others.[67] The courts have failed to develop the common law so as to provide a defence of compulsion or to insist on proof that D was responsible (i.e. voluntarily) for the conduct, result, or state of affairs proscribed.

It is interesting to contrast English law in this respect with the rules developed by the Supreme Court of the United States, taking us back to the 'prior fault' doctrine. In *Robinson* v *California*,[68] the Supreme Court held that it was unconstitutional, as a form of cruel and unusual punishment, to make someone criminally liable merely for being a drug addict. The *Robinson* decision has been used to strike down state laws criminalizing simple vagrancy or homelessness. However, in *Powell* v *Texas*,[69] this narrow concession was not built on further. The Court held that where D, a chronic alcoholic, was charged with being found in a state of intoxication in a public place, his inability (if such it was) to stop drinking to excess did not make it cruel and unusual to punish him when he appeared in that state in public. The *Powell* Court distinguished the *Robinson* case on the grounds that in the latter case, D had been punished with imprisonment merely for being in a certain state, namely alcoholism. By contrast, the defendant Powell could have avoided public places when intoxicated even if his intoxication was involuntary (which the Court doubted that it was). In *Powell*, thus, D's alcoholism was regarded as nothing more than an explanation of how he came—voluntarily—to commit the crime.[70]

(b) Offences of possession

English law contains several offences of possession, relating to such items as offensive weapons,[71] any articles for use in a burglary, theft, or deception,[72] and controlled drugs.[73] Sometimes possession is the basic element of a crime in the inchoate mode, such as possessing drugs with intent to supply.[74] In ordinary language, one might agree that it is possible to possess an item without any act on one's part. Are offences of (p. 98) this kind therefore contrary to principle? Most of the difficulties with the concept of possession have arisen in drugs cases. The leading decision is that of the House of Lords in *Warner* v *Metropolitan Police Commissioner* (1969),[75] but neither the speeches of their Lordships nor subsequent cases have rendered the law clear or principled. The first proposition is that a person is not in possession of an item that has been slipped into her bag or pocket without her knowledge. The second proposition is that if a person knows that an article or container has come under her control, she is deemed to be in possession of it even if mistaken about its contents, unless the thing is of a wholly different nature from what was believed.[76] The exception is extremely narrow: Warner believed that certain bags contained scent when in fact they contained cannabis, but that was held not to be a sufficiently fundamental mistake, and his knowledge that he had the bag was sufficient. In *Warner* Lord Pearce stated that the mistake would not be sufficiently fundamental if D thought the containers held sweets or aspirins when in fact they held heroin.[77] The narrowness of this exception to the second proposition throws attention back to the first proposition, but that has also been confined tightly. In *Lewis* (1988)[78] it was held that D was rightly convicted of possessing controlled drugs when they were found in a house of which he was tenant but which he rarely visited. His defence was that he neither knew nor suspected that drugs were on the premises. The Court of Appeal appeared to hold that, since he had the opportunity to search the house, he should be held to possess items that he did not know about but could have found. In effect, this

reduces the first proposition almost to vanishing point. Surely it could equally be said, of the person into whose bag drugs are slipped by some third party, that she could have searched her bag and found them? Probably this is another example of the so-called 'war against drugs' resulting in the distortion of proper legal standards.

The reason for enacting offences of possession is that they enable the police to intervene before a particular wrong or harm is done: in effect, these offences extend the scope of criminal liability beyond the law of attempts.[79] One ground for questioning possession offences is that they may criminalize people at a point too remote from the ultimate harm, not allowing for a change of mind. Another pertinent question is whether they depart from the voluntariness requirement. Although taking possession of an article will often (but not always) involve some act of the defendant, it is surely wrong to regard the conduct as *voluntary* if D was substantially mistaken as to its contents. Thus the first proposition in *Warner* is right in suggesting that possession is not purely a physical matter but does have a mental component, although wrong in restricting that fault element to the mere realization that some item or container has arrived in one's pocket, bag, or house. The Court of Appeal has been pressed to **(p. 99)** broaden the fault element, notably in *Deyemi and Edwards* (2008),[80] chiefly by reference to those House of Lords decisions such as *B* v *DPP* and *K*,[81] which stated that the presumption of *mens rea* is a constitutional principle. The Court felt itself bound by previous decisions on possession of firearms, which follow the *Warner* approach, but certified a point of law of general public importance for the House of Lords. Until the decision in *Warner* is revisited, it remains objectionable that the English courts have failed to adhere to any basic voluntariness requirement, and have also ridden roughshod over normal principles of causation, which would operate so as to relieve D from liability when the voluntary act of a third party had brought about the possession.[82]

4.4 Omissions

Omissions are controversial for two main reasons—first, there is the question whether and to what extent it is justifiable to criminalize omissions rather than acts;[83] and secondly, there is the question whether liability for omissions violates the 'act requirement' in criminal law. Pursuing the second point here, much has been made of the importance of requiring proof that the defendant voluntarily did something to produce the prohibited conduct or consequence. In so far as this can be termed an 'act requirement', are omissions a true exception to it?[84] If they are, is this another argument against criminalizing them?

One much-discussed preliminary question is the distinction between acts and omissions.[85] Sometimes it is argued that certain verbs imply action and therefore exclude liability for omissions, and that the criminal law should respect the distinctions flowing from this. English courts have often used this linguistic or interpretive approach. It has led to a variety of decisions on different statutes,[86] without much discussion of the general principles underlying omissions liability. The Law Commission's Draft Criminal Code may be said to signal the continuation of this approach, by redefining the homicide offences in terms of 'causing death' rather than 'killing', and redefining the damage offences in terms of 'causing damage' rather than 'damaging', so as 'to leave fully open to the courts the possibility of so construing the relevant (statutory) provisions as to impose liability for omissions'.[87] The Draft Code would therefore remove any linguistic awkwardness in saying, for example, that a parent killed a

child (p. 100) by failing to feed it; but it does so in this specific instance, and without proclaiming a general principle that the act requirement may be fulfilled by an omission if a duty can be established. Attachment to the vagaries of the language is no proper basis for delineating the boundaries of criminal liability.

In some situations the courts, following the linguistic approach, have nevertheless found themselves able to impose omissions liability. In *Speck* (1977)[88] the defendant was charged with committing an act of gross indecency with or towards a child. The evidence was that an 8-year-old girl placed her hand on his trousers over his penis. He allowed the hand to remain there for some minutes, causing him to have an erection. The Court of Appeal held that the defendant's failure to remove the hand amounted to an invitation to the child to continue with the act, and that the offence would then be made out. In effect, the Court either held that his inactivity in those circumstances constituted an invitation which amounted to an act, or it created a duty in an adult to put an end to any innocent touching of this kind, with omissions liability for not fulfilling the duty. The analysis is similar to that in *Miller* (1983),[89] where D fell asleep whilst smoking, woke up to find the mattress smouldering, but simply left the room and went to sleep elsewhere. He was convicted of causing criminal damage by fire, on the basis that a person who initiates a sequence of events innocently and then fails to do anything to stop the sequence should be regarded as having caused the whole sequence. On this view the conduct constitutes a single, continuing act; Miller caused the damage because he took no steps to extinguish the fire he had innocently started. It must be doubted whether these efforts to find an act which then coincides in point of time with the defendant's knowledge or intention are convincing.[90] Surely the courts are imposing liability for an omission in these cases, by recognizing that a duty arises. *Speck* is a little different from *Miller* since the original act in *Speck* was that of the girl, and the duty must therefore amount to the recognition of an obligation on an adult to put an end to an indecent yet innocent touching by a child. In so far as these decisions appear to extend the statutory wording, are they objectionable on grounds of retroactivity and lack of fair warning, or defensible as applications of existing common law doctrine to new situations?

In other situations it seems possible to offer plausible reasons for regarding the same event as either an act or an omission, and in some cases the courts have sought to exploit this ambiguity when dealing with problematic medical issues.[91] Yet it is one thing to say that a healthcare professional who decides not to replace an empty bag for a drip-feed has omitted to do something, whereas switching a ventilator off is an act. It is another thing to maintain that the act–omission distinction should be crucial to any determination of the criminal liability in the two situations. In *Airedale NHS Trust* v *Bland* (1993)[92] the House of Lords held that it would be lawful for a doctor to (p. 101) withdraw treatment from a patient in a persistent vegetative state, even though death would inevitably be hastened by that conduct. The House held that the withdrawal of treatment would constitute an omission, and thus regarded the duties of the doctor as the central issue.[93] The decision was that a doctor has no duty to continue life-supporting treatment when it is no longer in the best interests of the patient, having regard to responsible medical opinion.[94] However, the Court of Appeal declined to adopt this subterfuge in *Re A (Conjoined Twins: Surgical Separation)*,[95] holding that the surgical separation of the twins would undoubtedly be an act, and subsequently deciding that carrying out an operation which would result in the death of one twin in order to save the life of the other was permissible as a necessity. This required the Court, in effect, to recognize a new defence of ‘balance of evils’ in English law—which was what the House of Lords tried to avoid in *Bland*, by construing

the withdrawal of treatment as an omission and then focusing attention on the existence of a duty.

The question thus arises again: is there any clear means of distinguishing acts from omissions? It has been argued that conduct should be classified as an omission if it merely returns the victim to his or her 'natural' condition, or the condition in which she would have been but for D's attempt to carry out treatment, or a rescue.[96] Disconnecting a life-support machine would therefore not be classified as an act because it merely returns the patient to the condition in which he or she would have been without any treatment. This view is open to several objections, notably that of deciding what the 'original condition' is in relation to each actor, and the implication that a person who has saved a non-swimmer from drowning could, on discovering that the non-swimmer is an enemy, leave him in the water.[97] However, one advantage of categorizing the conduct as an omission is that it then makes liability depend on the recognition of a duty, which would be straightforward in the case of the rescued non-swimmer. This approach may therefore offer comfort to those who insist that the act–omission distinction should not be used to avoid or foreclose moral arguments about the proper limits of criminal liability. But it is not a clear distinction, since it remains open to manipulation in different situations. The conclusion must therefore be that, although there are some clear cases of omission and some clear cases of act, there are many ambiguous cases in which the act–omission distinction should not be used as a cloak for avoiding the moral issues.[98]

(p. 102) This demonstration of the fragility of the act–omission distinction and of the vagaries of the English language indicates that it may be simplistic to oppose omissions liability in principle. There are some clear cases of omission in which it is desirable to have criminal liability, such as the parent who neglects to feed her or his child or neglects to protect it from abuse.[99] Omissions can be involuntary or not, in the same way as acts; and, provided that the harm resulted because D failed to intervene, it can be argued that omissions are also causes.[100] Omissions liability may therefore satisfy the principle that no one should be held liable for bodily movements that he or she did not and could not direct. It may also satisfy the principle that no person should be held liable for conduct or consequences that he or she did not cause. But one point of the act requirement is to exclude liability for mere decisions and failures to think that do not result in some kind of behaviour, and omissions fall foul of that.[101] However, there are exceptions to the act requirement for a good reason—that certain positive duties to act are so important that they can rightly be made the subject of criminal liability. Of course, such a duty should also be defined with sufficient certainty, and should be adequately discoverable by those to whom it applies. So long as these formal requirements are fulfilled there can be no fairness objection to holding a person liable, provided that he or she is capable of taking some steps to carry out the duty.

4.5 Causation

At the beginning of this chapter it was stated that causation can be one of the most basic requirements of criminal liability. For those offences that merely require conduct, the voluntariness requirement is crucial.[102] For the many crimes which specify proof of consequences, whether or not stemming from voluntary conduct, the requirement of causation assumes a central place. Of course, as we shall see in Chapter 5, the law often goes further and insists not only that the defendant voluntarily caused the offence, but also that he did so

knowingly, intentionally, and so on. Here, however, the concern is to explore the minimum conditions for criminal liability, of which causation can be one.

Two kinds of consideration are of special significance in law when deciding whether a person or persons 'caused' something to occur. First, there are reasonable expectations about how things will or may turn out, if something is done or not done. Suppose that you leave a dog locked in a car in extremely hot weather for the whole day, and fail to feed your baby for several days, and they both die. Unless some other exceptional (p. 103) kind of explanation for the deaths is given, our reasonable expectation that the conduct you engaged in must inevitably—and therefore did—cause the deaths will prevail, when furbished (as would be normal at any trial) with scientific evidence showing the effects on the victims respectively of dehydration or lack of nutrition. The test of reasonable expectations is, though, mainly an exclusionary test. It rules out certain kinds of explanation for actions and events. Suppose D leaves a young baby in the middle of a wood, where the baby is later killed by a bird of prey or a fox. Such an outcome can be regarded as caused by D, if it is within the range of outcomes that might be expected to follow in the ordinary course of events from what D did. By contrast, if the baby left in the woods is killed by an earthquake, such an event not having occurred in that region for 1,000 years, we are unlikely to say that the baby's death was caused by D's conduct. Even though the baby would—we assume—not have been killed in the earthquake had he or she not been left in the woods, the death in the earthquake is outside the range of what might reasonably be expected to follow in the ordinary course of events from being left in the woods. In some cases, of course, there may be more than one possible cause of an event that falls within the scope of what might reasonably be expected to occur. Suppose that—at the same moment—D1 shoots V in the leg, and D2 stabs V in the stomach. V subsequently dies from loss of blood. In such a case, forensic evidence may conceivably show that either the shooting or the stabbing had no impact on the course of events. However, the likelihood is that both the stabbing and shooting will have played some part in causing V's death. As we will see, the law makes allowance for this possibility in its understanding of legal causes of outcomes, and hence both D1 and D2 may be regarded as having caused V's death.

It is important to note that this 'expectations principle' can apply to human interventions, whether they are accidental or deliberate. Suppose, to vary the earlier example, that an armed criminal strays into the woods. Clearly, if the criminal decides to kill the baby for some reason, then this act will be the cause of the baby's death rather than D's original act in leaving the baby in the woods.[103] However, suppose that the criminal's gun simply goes off unexpectedly as he is walking along, and by a tragic accident the baby is shot dead by the bullet. In such a case, we are likely to say that the sheer unexpectedness of such an outcome breaks the chain of causation leading from D's original act of abandoning the baby in the woods to the baby's death. Even though the killing was unintentional, it is thus the armed criminal who caused the death, not D. Finally, reasonable expectations must be described at the right level of specificity if they are to do the work they need to do to guide judgments in causation cases. For example, (p. 104) suppose D is chasing V with hostile intent through a dark forest, and in the dark V trips over a treasure chest, hits his head, and dies. D may be found to have caused V's death, if tripping over *something*, falling, and suffering a mortal wound in making reasonable efforts to escape D through a dark forest is the kind of accident we accept as being within the range of things that could well happen to V in the circumstances. That tripping and falling over a *treasure chest* was wholly unexpected and unforeseeable is quite irrelevant.[104]

This brings us to the second kind of consideration of special relevance to the law's understanding of causation. This is the principle of autonomy, discussed in Chapter 2.1. The autonomy principle is sometimes employed by the courts to overlay or 'trump' the expectations-based set of causal considerations. Suppose D strikes V and leaves V unconscious in an area of town known for very frequent fatal shootings of vulnerable people so that they can be robbed. Whilst unconscious, V is shot dead by a robber. In this case, the shooting may well be regarded as something coming within the range of what might be expected to occur as a consequence of D's actions. It will, nonetheless, not be regarded as a consequence brought about by D, if it was a free, deliberate, and informed act—an autonomous act—on the part of the robber.[105] We will consider this notion later in this section.

Before looking further into the common law approach, a further important factor must be mentioned. There can, of course, be more than one cause of an event. It would, therefore, be possible to find that two unconnected people had a hand in bringing about that event, for the purposes of establishing the separate liability of each in criminal or civil law.[106] Suppose D1 intentionally stabs V in order to cause a life-threatening injury. V is taken to hospital where, through negligence on the part of D2 (a doctor), inappropriate treatment is given to V that might have saved her life relatively easily. Let us assume that the treatment does not manifest negligence so appalling that it falls outside what might have been within the bounds of expectation, and thus does not in itself break the chain of causation from D's action to V's death (a point considered further below). In that case, both D1 and D2 may be found to have had a causal influence in killing V. It is thus perfectly possible for D1 to be found guilty of murder (causing V's death through an intention to kill or seriously injure), *and* for D2 to be found liable to pay damages in civil law for having caused V's death through a negligent breach of a duty of care to V.[107] Notice the implicit influence of the principle of welfare in reaching the latter conclusion. We now take it for granted that there (p. 105) are emergency services under a duty to take stab victims to hospital, and that when that happens, doctors and nurses owe duties of care—shaped by exacting professional standards—to treat the victims as a high priority, and with all the skills at their disposal. These assumptions guide what falls within the scope of our expectations concerning what is likely to happen to injured victims of crime, and hence concerning who should be regarded as having had a hand in bringing about what happens to them. Analysis of who did what to whom, whether in criminal or in civil law, cannot be undertaken in isolation from broader assumptions about the rights and duties created by social and political structures.[108]

(a) The general principle

The definitions of many crimes require that D caused a result (e.g. murder, grievous bodily harm, criminal damage) or that he caused a result by certain means (e.g. causing death by dangerous driving). In cases where it is clear that D either intended to cause the result or knowingly risked causing it, the causal enquiry is likely to be brief because no court will see much merit in the argument that the result was highly unlikely in the circumstances and probably a coincidence. Thus the dictum 'intended consequences are never too remote' is one expression of the strong effect which culpability has in hastening a finding of causation and overlooking restrictive policies which might otherwise be invoked.[109] Where the culpability element does not overshadow the issue—and particularly in crimes of strict liability, where no culpability may be required—the question arises what minimum connection must be established between D's conduct and the prohibited result. Although courts have occasionally

succumbed to the temptation to say that causation is a question of fact for the jury or magistrates,[110] there ought to be guidance on the principles to be applied when assessing the significance of those facts. Some decisions have attempted to articulate principles, but how coherent they are is a matter of debate.

The general principle is that causation is established if the result would not have occurred *but for* D's conduct, although support for this principle in the courts is not unwavering. In *Cato* (1976),[111] for example, the Court of Appeal expressly stopped short of the 'but for' test. D had been convicted of the manslaughter of V, whom he had (p. 106) injected with a heroin compound at V's request. On the issue of whether D's injection of the heroin could be said to have caused V's death, the Court stated that: 'as a matter of law, it was sufficient if the prosecution could establish that it was *a* cause, provided it was a cause outside the *de minimis* range, and effectively bearing upon the acceleration of the moment of the victim's death'.[112] The Court later stated that the cause must be 'a cause of substance', although it held that the term 'substantial cause' would be putting the requirement too high.[113] Clearly, the Court was reluctant to accept 'but for' causation here, fearing that the link between D's conduct and V's death might be too tenuous. Whatever one makes of the Court's reasoning on the facts of the case, it was right not to endorse the but-for test wholeheartedly. The text is both under- and over-inclusive. The Court in *Cato* was concerned about its under-inclusiveness: that the but-for test excludes some causes of events that are highly significant even if the events could or would have occurred without them. Suppose D1 makes V drink a poison that has a 60 per cent chance of killing V. Whilst V is incapacitated by the poison, D2 (unconnected with D1) later pours a weaker version of the poison down V's throat that raises the chance of V dying from the poison to 80 per cent. V dies from the effects of the poison. In this case, V might well have died from the effects of the poison even if D2 had done nothing but stand and watch. It cannot be proved that D2's contribution to events was a but-for cause of V's death. However, D2's contribution ought almost certainly to be regarded as *a* cause—along with D1's conduct—of V's death.

Without supplementation, the but-for test can also seem spectacularly over-inclusive, if it is not understood in a sophisticated way. Suppose that D robs V. Someone might say, 'But-for the actions of D's grandparents in conceiving D's parents, D would never have existed to perpetrate the robbery. So, the grandparents were a but-for cause of the robbery'. That kind of reasoning takes too undiscriminating a view of causation.[114] The law's starting point in its search for causes is the human conduct that led to the consequences complained of. The law's starting point is not the human conduct—or other factors—that created or shaped the person themselves whose conduct then led to those consequences.[115] That principle leaves plenty of scope for the law to pay attention to, for example, the causal influence of other people's conduct on the *conduct* of the person that caused the consequences. That is the normal approach when the question is whether X assisted or encouraged D in some way to commit a crime against V. The principle as it has just been expressed also leaves plenty of scope for considering the causes of D's conduct for the purposes of deciding if D should, say, be excused or exempted from liability on the grounds of, for example, duress or insanity. By contrast, (p. 107) whilst the actions of D's grandparents explain how D came to exist, they do not explain how D came to commit the crime.

Medical cases provide an example of another complicating factor. This is the tendency of the courts to use lack-of-causation arguments as a way of creating scope for doctors to

administer treatments, such as pain-killers, that may themselves accelerate death even whilst they are having their intended pain-killing effect. At the celebrated trial of Dr Bodkin Adams (1957), charged with murdering a patient by administering excessive doses of morphine, Devlin J stated the orthodox view that to shorten life by days and weeks is to cause death no less than shortening it by years, but he added that a doctor 'is still entitled to do all that is proper and necessary to relieve pain and suffering even if the measures he takes may incidentally shorten life'.[116] This direction to the jury might be thought compatible with the principle subsequently espoused in *Cato*, that a *de minimis* contribution (i.e. a minimal cause which 'people of common sense would overlook'[117]) is not a sufficient cause in law. However, this probably does not capture the precise point of the *Adams* direction, which is rather that a doctor's administration of drugs in order to relieve pain, founded upon clinical judgment, will not be regarded as causing death so long as it remains within reasonable bounds. Those bounds were transgressed in the case of Dr Cox, who administered a drug in order to stop the patient's suffering by causing her death, not simply to relieve pain.[118] The *Adams* approach was followed in Dr Moor's case (1999),[119] where the trial judge again drew a distinction between administering drugs with intent to kill the patient and administering drugs as proper treatment to relieve pain and suffering. What the courts appear to be doing here is to deny that there is causation in the latter instance, in order to avoid the need to confront the question whether a doctor can have a valid defence to an intentional killing.[120] The orthodox proposition that shortening life involves causing death is neglected, and the courts apply a version of the doctrine of double effect to argue that the doctor does not cause death if the primary intention is to relieve pain, even though it is well known that this will shorten the patient's life. This is perhaps best characterized as a covert recognition, in causation doctrine, of some form of defence based on clinical medical necessity.[121]

To summarize, the *Cato* principle is that it is sufficient if D's conduct was a 'but for' cause which was more than minimal: it need not be a substantial cause,[122] but it (p. 108) seems that a mere 'but for' cause will rarely be sufficient,[123] and it might be best to require D's conduct to be a 'significant cause'.[124] The principle has been illustrated here in relation to 'result-crimes', but the same approach should be adopted to crimes that penalize conduct or possession, although for those crimes the difficulties will usually concern the exceptions in (b).[125] The Draft Criminal Code re-states the general principle in terms of 'an act which makes more than a negligible contribution to its occurrence',[126] and the Model Penal Code deals with the issue by excluding causes which are too remote to have a just bearing on responsibility.[127] The requirement of 'but for' causation is sometimes termed 'factual causation', which is then contrasted with 'legal causation'—not only to suggest that the law requires something more than 'but for' causation, but also to indicate that there are other aspects of the doctrine to be considered.

(b) Interventions between conduct and result

A natural event occurring after D's conduct may be treated as terminating D's causal responsibility, but (as suggested earlier) not if it could reasonably be expected.[128] The contrast would be between D, whose assault victim catches scarlet fever in hospital and dies (which should be treated as a 'visitation of Providence' and as negativing any causal connection between D and the death), and E, who leaves his assault victim lying on a tidal beach, where he later drowns (this is within the risk which was reasonably foreseeable, and therefore not sufficiently unexpected to prevent causal responsibility for the death). What if

D's act is followed by another human act, which intervenes before the result occurs? We say at the beginning of this section that the chain of causation can be regarded as broken in such cases if the intervention came in the form of a free, deliberate and informed act (the point is considered again shortly). But in at least three sets of situations—(i) the non-voluntary conduct of third parties; (ii) the conduct of doctors; and (iii) the conduct of the victim—this is not so, raising questions about what is the general rule and what the exception.

(i) 'Non-Voluntary' Conduct of Third Parties:

Since the general principle is said to be that the voluntary intervening act of a third party severs or supersedes the causal connection between D's act and the prohibited result, the courts have developed exceptions in cases where the third party's intervention would not be described as voluntary. If the third party is an infant or is mentally disordered, this lack of rational capacity may be sufficient to discount the third party's act in causal terms. The same **(p. 109)** applies if D sets out to use a responsible adult as an 'innocent agent', giving false information to that person in the hope that he or she will act upon it. The behaviour of the person who has been tricked is discounted as non-voluntary for these purposes. The case of *Michael* (1840)[129] illustrates the principle. D's child was in the care of a foster-mother, and D, wishing her child dead, handed a bottle of poison to the foster-mother, saying that it was medicine for the child. The foster-mother saw no need for the medicine and placed it on the mantelpiece, from which her own 5-year-old child later removed it and administered a fatal dose to D's child. The intended result was therefore achieved through the unexpected act of an infant rather than through the mistakenly 'innocent' act of an adult, but neither of these intervening acts was regarded as sufficient to relieve D of causal responsibility.[130]

A similar approach may be taken where the intervening act is one of compulsion, necessity, or duty. If the third party brings about the prohibited harm whilst under duress from D, then D may be regarded as the legal cause of the result.[131] The same analysis can be applied where D creates a situation of necessity, or where D's behaviour creates a duty to respond in the third party. Thus in *Pagett* (1983)[132] D was being pursued by the police and took his pregnant girlfriend hostage, holding her in front of him as a shield whilst he fired shots at the police. The police fired back at D, but killed the girlfriend. The Court of Appeal upheld D's conviction for the manslaughter of his girlfriend, even though the fatal shots were fired by the police and not by him. The Court offered two reasons in support of this conclusion: first, the police officer's conduct in shooting back at D was necessary for his self-preservation and therefore was not a voluntary act; and, secondly, that the police officer was acting from a duty to prevent crime and to arrest D. Both these reasons beg important questions: did a necessity exist? Was there a duty? They contain no reference to a duty to avoid harm to the person being held hostage: should not the liberty to act in self-preservation be subject to this qualification?[133] These points ought to have been explored at least. Perhaps a better rationale for this decision may be found in a doctrine of 'alternative danger': where D places a person in the position of having to choose between two drastic courses of action, one threatening self-danger and the other threatening danger to another, the result should be attributed causally to the creator of the emergency, and not to the unfortunate person who has to choose. This leaves open the possibility of finding that a trained police officer ought to have acted with greater circumspection towards the hostage on the facts of *Pagett*, if that is a fair judgment on the facts of that case, **(p. 110)** since the law might justifiably expect more of a trained official than of a hapless citizen caught up in extreme events.[134]

Whatever one might say about the Court of Appeal's attempts to rationalize the causal responsibility of Pagett for his girlfriend's death, at least they kept some faith with the fundamental principle that a voluntary intervening act breaks the causal chain. This cannot be said of one aberrant decision of high authority, *Environment Agency* v *Empress Car Co (Abertillery)* (1999).[135] In this case the company had fixed an outlet from its diesel tank which would drain towards a river, governed by a tap that was not locked. An unknown person opened the tap and the river was polluted. The company denied that it caused the polluting matter to enter controlled waters, contrary to the Water Resources Act 1991, and on normal principles one would expect the deliberate act of a third party to negative its causal responsibility. However, the House of Lords held that if the company 'did something which produced a situation in which the polluting matter could escape but a necessary condition of the actual escape which happened was also the act of a third party or a natural event, [the court] should consider whether that act or event should be regarded as a normal fact of life or something extraordinary'.[136] In this way the House of Lords discarded the general principle that a voluntary intervening act breaks the causal chain in favour of the distinction 'of fact and degree' between ordinary and extraordinary interventions. The conviction in this case is a clear policy decision, aimed at imposing stringent duties on companies to take steps to prevent pollution, and convicting them for omissions to fulfil those duties. When the House of Lords returned to the subject in *Kennedy (No. 2)*, Lord Bingham held that the *Empress Car* decision is to be confined to its facts.[137] In *Kennedy No. 2* (2008)[138] D handed V a syringe of heroin with which V then injected himself and died. Overruling the Court of Appeal's strained judgment in favour of a conviction for manslaughter, Lord Bingham recognized the criminal law's approach of treating individuals as autonomous beings, giving rise to the principle that 'D is not to be treated as causing V to act in a certain way if V makes a voluntary and informed decision to act in that way'. Thus the House of Lords unanimously held that there should be no conviction for manslaughter because D did not cause V to take the heroin: it was self-administered.

(ii) Conduct of Doctors:

The decision in *Pagett* contains more than a hint that the court was far more concerned about convicting a morally culpable person than about the refinements of causation, and similar leanings may be found in cases involving **(p. 111)** doctors. In cases where medical attention is given to a victim, there is rarely any doubt that it may properly be described as 'voluntary': doctors work under pressure, occasionally having to make rapid decisions, but they are trained and trusted to exercise clinical judgment in these circumstances. Doctors act under a duty to treat patients, but they surely do so voluntarily.

However, the courts have drawn a distinction between (a) cases where the injury inflicted by D remains a substantial and operating cause of death despite the subsequent medical treatment, in which case D remains causally responsible even if the medical treatment is negligent; and (b) those where the original wound becomes merely 'the setting in which another cause operates', in which case D's responsibility may be negatived by subsequent aberrant medical treatment.[139] The reference to an 'operating and substantial' cause may be regarded as more favourable to D than the general principle of causation, unless the term 'substantial' is read as meaning, simply, 'more than minimal'. This is confirmed by the statement in *Cheshire* (1991)[140] that a significant contribution is all that is required, and that the defendant's act does not need to be the sole or even the main cause:

> Even though negligence in the treatment of the victim was the immediate cause of his death, the jury should not regard it as excluding the responsibility of the accused unless the negligent treatment was so independent of his acts, and in itself so potent in causing death, that they regard the contribution made by his acts as insignificant.[141]

No clear reason is offered for discounting the voluntary intervening act of the doctor. If the doctor administers a drug to which the patient is known to be intolerant, or gives some other wrong treatment, surely the inappropriateness of the medical treatment should affect the causal enquiry. The courts' reluctance to discuss the causal significance of the medical treatment probably stems from a desire to ensure the conviction of a culpable offender, and this suggests a strong attachment to a 'wrongful act' approach to causation, deciding the issue by reference to broader judgments of innocence and culpability. This appears to overlook the fact that D, who inflicted the original wound which gave rise to the need for medical attention, will still be liable for attempted murder or a serious wounding offence even if the medical treatment is held to negative his causal responsibility for the ensuing death. For adherents of the 'wrongful act' approach this would be insufficient: they want to see responsibility for the ultimate result pinned on the defendant. However, a court which declares that it is not the doctor who is on trial but the original wrongdoer[142] is merely offering an unconvincing rationalization of its failure to apply the ordinary causal principle that a voluntary intervening act which accelerates death should relieve the original wrongdoer of liability for the result. If that causal principle is thought unsuitable for medical (p. 112) cases, should we not be absolutely clear about the reasons, and then look closely at a doctrine of clinical medical necessity?[143]

(iii) Conduct or Condition of the Victim:

The general principle that the law approaches causation by considering the effect of an autonomous individual's conduct upon a 'stage already set' is usually taken to extend to cases where the victim has some special condition which makes him or her especially vulnerable. This is sometimes known as the 'thin skull' principle, or the principle that defendants must take their victims as they find them. If D commits a minor assault on V, and V, who is a haemophiliac, dies from that assault, the principle applies to render D causally responsible for the death.[144] Now this principle of causation may have little practical effect on its own, since most of the serious criminal offences require proof of *mens rea* (proof that D intended or foresaw the risk of causing, say, serious injury), and it will usually be possible to show that the *mens rea* was lacking because D was unaware of V's special condition. However, where an offence imposes constructive liability (such as manslaughter in English and American law),[145] the 'thin skull' principle reinforces the constructive element by ensuring that there is no causal barrier to convicting D of an offence involving more serious harm than was intended or foreseen. The objections to constructive manslaughter are set out in Chapter 7.5. The objection to the 'thin skull' principle is that such physical conditions are abnormal and that much of the standard analysis of causation turns on distinctions between normal and abnormal conditions.[146]

What principles should apply to the causal effect of the victim's conduct after D's original act? Should V's conduct be subject to the normal rules of voluntary intervening acts? *Roberts* (1972)[147] was a case in which D, while driving his car, made suggestions to his passenger,

trying to remove her coat, at which point she opened the door and leapt from the moving car, suffering injury. The Court of Appeal upheld D's conviction for assault occasioning actual bodily harm, on the basis that a victim's 'reasonably foreseeable' reaction does not negative causation. Whether 'reasonable foreseeability' is an accurate way of expressing the point in question must be doubted; one might well say that the prospect of the woman jumping from the moving car was relatively unlikely. Surely it would be better to consider the principle of 'alternative danger': D's conduct had placed V in a situation of emergency in which she had to make a rapid choice about how to react. One might then say that any reaction which cannot be regarded as wholly abnormal or 'daft'[148] should remain D's causal responsibility. In this sense, V's reaction is non-voluntary.

(p. 113) What if the victim refuses to accept medical treatment for the injury inflicted by D? The question presented itself starkly in *Blaue* (1975).[149] D stabbed V four times, piercing her lung. V was advised that she would die from the wounds unless she had a blood transfusion, but, adhering to her faith as a Jehovah's Witness, she refused to undergo this treatment. She died. The Court of Appeal held D to be causally responsible for her death. Her intervening decision not to accept the 'normal' treatment did not negative D's causal responsibility, because, the Court argued, the situation was analogous to that covered by the 'thin skull' rule. Stating that 'those who use violence on other people must take their victims as they find them', the Court added that this 'means the whole man [*sic*], not just the physical man. It does not lie in the mouth of the assailant to say that his victim's religious beliefs which inhibited him [*sic*] from accepting certain kinds of treatment were unreasonable.'[150] Is this another example of a court stretching the principles of causation so as to ensure the conviction of a wrongdoer? The 'thin skull' principle applies only to pre-existing physical conditions of the victim. The principle of individual autonomy suggests that, in general, any subsequent act or omission by V should negative D's causal responsibility. Exceptions to this are where V's subsequent conduct falls within the 'reasonable foreseeability' notion in *Roberts* [151] or, perhaps, within the principle of 'alternative danger'. D's actions in *Blaue* can certainly be said to have caused a situation of alternative danger and emergency, and so then the question would be whether V's reaction should be classified as wholly abnormal. In a statistical sense it surely was: it must be rare to refuse a blood transfusion knowing that death will follow that refusal. To accept this would be to make no distinction between one who refuses treatment for religious reasons and one who refuses out of spite. It could be argued that the standard of normality should be informed by social values rather than enslaved to statistical frequency, that religious beliefs are a matter of conscience which should be respected, and therefore that acts or omissions based on religious conviction should not be set aside as abnormal. Bolstering this argument is the view that matters of conscience, taken seriously, leave someone to a significant degree unfree to do other than follow their conscience. That being so, it could be said that the victim, whilst an autonomous person, was not acting freely when refusing to have a blood transfusion, preserving the link between the offender's wrongful act and her death. No doubt there was also much sympathy and respect for the victim, courageously adhering to her religious beliefs in the face of death, generating the argument that it would not be appropriate to hold her causally responsible for her own death.

There can also be examples in which V has aggravated his or her condition by failure to attend to injuries or wounds, or even by deliberately re-opening them. The judicial approach is to hold that D can still be convicted if his conduct made an operative and substantial contribution to the result, even if V's own act or omission also contributed.[152] Once again, the

more rigorous approach of recognizing that V's own act broke the causal chain, and that D should therefore be convicted of an attempt or other offence, has been found unattractive by the courts.

(p. 114) **(c) Causation and omissions**

One of the difficulties sometimes raised about imposing criminal liability for omissions, in addition to those already discussed in section 4.4, is the problem of causation. How can an omission be said to cause harm? Or are these cases exceptions to the causal requirement?[153]

Starting with the most basic question, is it possible to say that, but for an omission, a harm would not have resulted? The existence of a duty justifies calling it an omission, and the non-performance of that duty in a situation where it arises can be said to cause the result. To take an extreme example, a parent who makes no attempt to save her or his child from drowning in shallow water can be said to cause the child's death: but for the parent's inaction, the child would almost certainly have lived. It is no answer to say that the child would have drowned anyway if the parent had not been there, because in that eventuality there would have been no duty and hence no omission. On the facts as they were, the parent was present, and but for non-performance of the duty the child would not have died. When dealing with causation by acts, we have seen that the courts have used terms such as ‘significant’ and even ‘substantial’ in some cases, chiefly to rule out remote or minimal causes, but this should create no special difficulty for omissions. One counter-argument is that this approach may sometimes lead to the conclusion that many people caused a result: if, in a jurisdiction which imposes a duty of easy rescue, twenty or more people stand by without offering any help or raising the alarm, the conclusion must be that all these people caused the harm that occurred. This is true, and is hardly an argument against the causation approach.

This is not to suggest that the application of causal arguments to cases of omission is without difficulty. For example, if A stabs V it is obvious that but for A's act V would not have suffered this wound; but if a parent makes no effort to save a child drowning in a pool, it is possible that the duty might have been fulfilled by summoning help (which might have caused delay, and the child's life might have been lost), or that the parent might not have been able to save the child's life anyway (if it had already been in the pool some time before the parent arrived). The point of these examples is that the ‘but for’ clause may be less concrete in some omissions cases, and may occasionally require a judgment to be made. However, at the very least there are many clear cases where ordinary causal analysis creates no more problems than it does in relation to acts.

(d) Causing other persons to act

Can it ever be held that one person caused another to act in a certain way? The notion would seem to be inconsistent with the general principle of individual autonomy, emphasized above by reiterating the principle that a voluntary intervening act removes or displaces the previous actor's causal responsibility. Yet we have already noted one (p. 115) case in which a person can be said to cause another to act—the case of innocent agency, where the third party lacks rationality or has been tricked. Further cases arise in the law of complicity, that branch of the criminal law which holds people liable for helping or encouraging others to commit crimes, which will be discussed at length in Chapter 10.

One example of the type of case under discussion is where D goes to P and offers P money to injure or kill V:[154] the law will hold D liable for counselling and procuring P's subsequent offence, and one might say that D *causes* the offence, in some sense. Clearly, however, D did not cause P to act as an innocent agent: P was not, we assume, lacking in rational capacity, and so on the general principle of individual autonomy P would be regarded as causally responsible for the result. D cannot, therefore, be held to have caused that result in the usual sense, but one might follow Hart and Honoré in suggesting that D may be said to have given P a reason for committing it.[155] This is a dilution of the general approach to causation, aimed specifically at rationalizing the criminal liability of certain accomplices.

But it is not only those who 'counsel or procure' who are brought within the English law of accomplice liability. It is also persons who 'aid and abet' others to commit offences. Advice, information, and other acts of assistance and encouragement may be great or small, and may be readily obtainable from others if this would-be accomplice had declined. So, as an element of causal contribution to P's offence, D's 'aiding' may be insignificant indeed—certainly well below the 'but for' threshold, even in the extended sense adopted by the notion of 'occasioning'. Many writers now acknowledge that the element of causation is absent from some cases of 'aiding and abetting'.[156] This brings us to a reconsideration of the role of causation.

(e) Conclusion

Causation is a complex topic, with which we have been able to deal only briefly here. Proof of causation is often said to be an essential precondition of criminal liability, but there is reason to doubt the generality of that requirement, notably in respect of accomplice liability (just discussed) and vicarious criminal liability.[157] Rather than insisting on a universal requirement of causation, it may be preferable to argue that liability should be negatived, in general, by the voluntary intervening act of another. Several criticisms of the judicial approach to three exceptional categories of case have been advanced. Often the explanations given by the courts are unconvincing. Whilst traditional or standard causal theory emphasizes the significance of the last voluntary **(p. 116)** act, there is no reluctance to look wider or to massage the term 'voluntary' in certain situations, especially where D clearly started the sequence of events by doing a wrongful act. The challenge is to re-examine the intuitions that lead judges and others to their conclusions (e.g. the wrongful act theory, the approach to medical mistakes, etc.), with a view to constructing a law that ensures that the courts respect the various principles outlined in Chapter 3.

4.6 Self-defence and permissible force

Many offences include a qualification such as 'without lawful excuse', 'without lawful authority or reasonable excuse', and so on. We are not concerned here with the different shades of meaning attached to such phrases,[158] nor with the legislature's frequent use of the word 'excuse' to refer to permissions, but rather with some general doctrines which grant permissions to engage in conduct which would otherwise be criminal. Self-defence is the best known of these permissions, but there are others concerned with the prevention of crime, the arrest of suspected offenders, the protection of property, and so forth.

Lawyers frequently speak of these doctrines as defences, e.g. 'the defence of self-defence',

and procedurally that is how they function. If there is evidence, usually raised by the defendant, that the conduct may have been permissible, the prosecution bears the burden of proving beyond reasonable doubt that the conduct was *not* permissible or otherwise lawful. 'If the prosecution fail to do so, the accused is entitled to be acquitted because the prosecution will have failed to prove an essential element of the crime, namely that the violence used by the accused was unlawful.'[159] The consequences of presenting the permissions as the element of unlawfulness required in all crimes will not be taken further here.[160] Neither this, nor the procedural device of treating them as defences, should deflect attention from the fundamental significance of permissions. There are certain situations when individuals have a right or permission to do things which would generally be prohibited because they cause harm or damage. The most extreme occasions are those on which the law permits one person to kill another. It is sometimes said that defences such as self-defence involve 'justifications' for conduct. However, Suzanne Uniacke argues that justified conduct is conduct that one has a right to do, and defences such as self-defence cover situations in which one may—one is entitled to—choose whether to act or not (it might be morally wrong to make the choice to do the act that is covered by the defence). Such defences are thus best described as 'permissions'.[161]An important point arising from this is that the rules (p. 117) governing permissions should ideally respect the various principles of legality and the rule-of-law for the same reason that offence definitions should, that is, because they may be relied upon to guide behaviour.[162]

(a) Self-defence and individual autonomy[163]

It is hardly surprising that decisions on self-defence formed an important and frequent element in the development of the English common law in days when there was no organized policing and when the carrying of deadly weapons was common. The issues here concern the basic right to life and physical safety. An individual who is either attacked or threatened with a serious physical attack must be accorded the legal liberty to repel that attack, thus preserving a basic right. A well-regulated society will provide a general protection, but it cannot guarantee protection at the very moment when an individual is subjected to sudden attack. The criminal law cannot respect the autonomy of the individual if it does not make provision for this dire situation.

(b) The problem of conflicting rights

In terms of individual autonomy, one difficulty with this position is that these situations involve two individuals (at least). If the law gives the person attacked the liberty to wound or kill the aggressor, what happens to the aggressor's right to life and physical safety? The answer to this question must have as its starting point the European Convention on Human Rights, Art. 2 of which declares the right to life in these terms:

> **1.** Everyone's right to life shall be protected by law. No one shall be deprived of his life intentionally save in the execution of a sentence of a court following his conviction of a crime for which this penalty is provided by law.[164]
> **2.** Deprivation of life shall not be regarded as inflicted in contravention of this Article when it results from the use of force which is no more than absolutely necessary:
> **a.** in defence of any person from unlawful violence;
> **b.** in order to effect a lawful arrest or to prevent the escape of a person lawfully

detained;
c. in action lawfully taken for the purpose of quelling a riot or insurrection.

(p. 118) Articles 3 and 5 of the Convention protect a citizen's freedom from inhuman treatment and security of person, but, unlike Art. 2, they contain no explicit exceptions in favour of the permissible use of force, and the Court has had to imply such exceptions.[165] As for the exceptions to Art. 2, two of them appear rather strange. To suggest that causing death may be absolutely necessary 'to effect an arrest' (Art. 2.2b) is somewhat absurd since, as Sir John Smith has pointed out, one cannot arrest a dead person.[166] A killing that is permissible to prevent a riot or insurrection (Art. 2.2c) is barely conceivable. However, Art. 2 has no exception for killings in the prevention of any other non-violent crime. Thus, for example, a householder who kills a burglar ought to have no defence, if Art. 2 is applied, unless the circumstances can be said to have involved the defence of a person from unlawful violence. The acquittal of the householder, in a case where physical violence had not been offered by the burglar, might suggest that English law does not respect the right to life in Art. 2.[167]

The approaches of other legal systems differ considerably. Some maintain that an innocent person's rights are absolute and thus recognize few limitations on those rights, even when that person is repelling a minor assault or defending property.[168] This suggests that the aggressor forfeits the normal rights when he embarks on an attack, and that it is his misconduct in starting the conflict which justifies the law in giving preference to the liberty of his victim. The idea of forfeiture is not objectionable in itself,[169] but it should be carefully circumscribed lest it allows the person attacked to stand fast and use whatever force is necessary to protect his rights of ownership and liberties of passage. The forfeiture approach bears some similarity to the 'wrongful act' analysis in causation[170] and to the theory of constructive liability,[171] in that it attributes great significance to the wrongfulness of a person's initial act. However, the focus should be on the right to life, as the jurisprudence of the European Convention establishes.[172] Initial wrongfulness should only be taken to permit the proportionate use of force: the innocent subject of an attack should not be free to use whatever force is necessary to vindicate his threatened rights. Such an analysis would assign no value to the rights of the attacker. If the criminal law is committed to ensuring that everyone's life is protected and that force is inflicted as rarely as possible, it cannot accept a vindicatory approach which would allow the infliction of gratuitous, or at least disproportionate, harm. Forfeiture of life to protect a person from some minor hurt, loss, or damage would promote the value of honour above respect for life and limb. The tendency of the English courts to reach for the concept of reasonableness, without setting out the relevant rights first, is an unfortunate aspect of legal culture.

(p. 119) **(c) The rules and the principles**

Self-defence is a long-standing defence in English law,[173] but it must be considered in the light of two statutory provisions. Section 3 of the Criminal Law Act 1967 states that 'a person may use such force as is reasonable in the circumstances in the prevention of crime …'. The section was not intended to supplant the common law rules on self-defence,[174] and the courts have continued to develop those rules. It is true that in most situations of self-defence it could be said that the person was preventing crime (i.e. preventing an attack which constituted a crime), but that would still leave certain cases untouched—notably, attacks by a child under 10, by a mentally disordered person, or by a person labouring under a mistake of fact. Such aggressors would commit no offence, and so it is the law of self-defence, not the prevention of

crime, which governs.[175]

Section 3 of the Criminal Law Act 1967 has now been buttressed by s. 76 of the Criminal Justice and Immigration Act 2008, which 'is intended to clarify the operation of the existing defences' (s. 76(9)), notably self-defence. It is rare for legislation to state on its face that it is for clarification: this curious notion must mean that the common law defence is not abolished,[176] but that the new provisions supersede the common law to the extent that they apply. However, as will appear from the following paragraphs, s. 76 deals with only a few of the many issues of principle arising in the law of self-defence.

Section 76(2) states that the section applies to the common law on self-defence and to s. 3 of the Criminal Law Act, which deals with force used in the prevention of crime or in effecting a lawful arrest. When the Law Commission considered the issue some years ago, it identified other possible bases for permitting the use of force (such as the prevention or termination of trespass on property), and these must not be forgotten.[177] The principles should be the same as for the other permissions, as they are flexible enough to adapt to a wide variety of circumstances. However, there has been constant political pressure in recent years to create specially favourable rules for householders seeking to keep out or eject trespassers from their homes, and for those defending their property more generally from attack. One result of that has been the introduction of an 'avoidance of doubt' provision dealing with the question of whether those in—or in possession of—property can stand their ground, refuse to abandon the property, and confront a (would-be) trespasser in defence of the property. Section 148 of the Legal Aid, Sentencing and Punishment Act 2012 now amends the law to make it clear that there is no duty to retreat in the face of trespass to property (presumably, property under one's legitimate care, control, or ownership). Whether or not retreat (p. 120) or abandonment should have been the right reponse is now just a factor for the trier of fact to consider as part of the overall judgment of whether someone's response was within the bounds of reasonableness.

Ironically, where the force used is not physical but consists of damage to *another's* property, the legal principles have long been generous to D. The permissible damaging of another's property requires only that D believed that 'the means of protection adopted … would be reasonable having regard to all the circumstances'.[178] This hardly embodies a legal standard at all, since it turns on D's beliefs as to what is reasonable. One feature of the Draft Criminal Code was that it would abolish the different rule for property damage.

(d) The proportionality standard

The law of self-defence has two elements: necessity and proportionality. The requirement that the use of force must be necessary (or, where the right to life is involved, 'absolutely necessary') is combined with a further requirement that the amount of force must be proportionate to the value being upheld. This shows respect for the rights of the attacker in self-defence cases, and for the rights of suspected offenders in relation to the other permissions. Even though the necessity part has subjective elements, as we shall see, the reasonableness of the force used depends not on D's beliefs but on an objective assessment.[179] Thus where D misjudges the amount of force which is reasonable, e.g. to insist on passing along a path barred by another, to eject a trespasser, or to detain a poacher, this is a mistake of law rather than of fact. The Court of Appeal has confirmed that D's view of the

amount of force that was reasonable is not determinative: the magistrates or jury should assess whether, in the circumstances existing at the time, the amount of force was reasonable.[180] The standard cannot be a precise one: s. 76 of the 2008 Act states that the force must not have been 'disproportionate', i.e. not out of proportion to the amount of harm likely to be suffered by the defendant, or likely to result if a forcible intervention is not made. What is crucial is that it should rule out the infliction or risk of considerable physical harm merely to apprehend a fleeing non-violent offender,[181] to stop minor property loss or damage, etc. As a nineteenth century Royal Commission remarked, a law whose only requirement was necessity 'would justify every weak lad whose hair was about to be pulled by a stronger one, in shooting the bully if he could not otherwise prevent the assault'.[182] On this (p. 121) view, the proper approach is to compare the relative value of the rights involved, and not to give special weight to the rights of (say) a property owner simply because the other party is in the wrong (i.e. committing a crime).[183] Thus in *Rashford* (2006)[184] the Court of Appeal rightly held that self-defence should not be ruled out simply because D was the initial aggressor. If V's response to D's aggression was out of all proportion, D would be justified in using sufficient force to protect himself. If, however, D had intended to provoke V into attacking him, in order to then use fatal force on V, it is well established that self-defence would be unavailable.[185]

Although Art. 2 of the Convention does not specify a proportionality requirement, the Strasbourg Court has emphasized that the use of deadly force must be both absolutely necessary and strictly proportionate if it is to come within an exception to the right to life.[186] The American Model Penal Code provides that deadly force is not permitted, 'unless the actor believes that such force is necessary to protect himself against death, serious bodily harm, kidnapping or sexual intercourse compelled by force or threat'.[187] It is debatable whether this goes too far in allowing the lawful sacrifice of a life to prevent certain non-fatal assaults,[188] and it should be noted that Art. 2 of the Convention is vague on this question. Deadly force may be permitted, 'in defence of any person from unlawful violence', but how serious a violent attack? The Strasbourg jurisprudence is no more precise than English law on this point. The Model Penal Code formulation might be a worthwhile starting point for analysis and argument, although it is arguable that the breadth and uncertainty of 'kidnapping' makes its inclusion in the list of threats that might warrant deadly force to resist them a controversial one.[189]

Should the judgment of proportionality be affected by the fact that the force was used against a law enforcement officer? Since English law renders an arrest lawful if the police officer has reasonable grounds for suspicion (even if the grounds turn out to be erroneous), this may be of importance. There are English decisions which draw a distinction between resisting a lawful —but mistaken—arrest (which is not permissible), and repelling the unlawful use of violence by police (which is permissible).[190] This principle is to be found both in the Model Penal Code and the Draft Criminal Code.[191] It permits individuals to defend themselves against excessive force by the police, whilst requiring them not to use force against police who are effecting an arrest (p. 122) for which the officer may believe there are reasonable grounds (even if the arrestee believes otherwise).

(e) Aspects of the necessity requirement

The necessity requirement forms part of most legal regimes on permissible force. The first question to be asked is: necessary for what? We have seen that force may be permitted for any one of several lawful purposes. The necessity must be judged according to the lawful

purpose which the defendant was trying to pursue: for self-defence, purely reactive defensive force will often be all that is necessary; in order to apprehend a suspected offender, on the other hand, a police officer or citizen will need to behave proactively. These differences may become particularly important in cases where there is a suspicion or allegation that the force was used by way of revenge or retaliation rather than in pursuit of a lawful purpose. What was the defendant's purpose? Could the conduct be said to be necessary for that purpose?

Does this reference to 'purpose' mean that there is a mental element in the permissions, such that a person cannot rely on a particular permission if he or she is ignorant of the basic facts needed to support that permission? In *Dadson* (1850)[192] a constable shot a fleeing thief. Such force was permissible only against 'felons', and a thief was a felon if he had two previous convictions. This thief had previous convictions and so was a felon, but the constable fired at him without knowing of these convictions. It was held that the constable could not rely on the permission to use force to apprehend a felon because he was unaware of the basic fact needed to constitute the permission. The Northern Irish case of *Thain* (1985)[193] takes this point further. D, a soldier on duty, stated from the outset that he did not fire the shot in order to apprehend V (who was running away at the time). He said that he shot in reaction to a sudden movement by V. It seems that D might have succeeded if he had maintained that his intention was to arrest, but he proffered another reason and was convicted of murder. This decision holds that D's beliefs or motives have a significant bearing on the permissibility of the use of force, and this is surely right. In many circumstances a greater use of force might be justifiable for law enforcement than merely for defence.[194]

In most cases, where no problem of the mental element arises, the main issue is necessity. The English courts have continued to develop the common law, but without always relating the issues to any general themes and without explicit reference to the **(p. 123)** primacy of the right to life. An attempt is made here to organize the decisions around six aspects of necessity, referring to s. 76 of the 2008 Act where relevant.

(i) Imminence:

Although s. 76 is silent on the matter, there is authority that the use of force can be necessary only if the attack is imminent.[195] If there is time to warn the police, then that is the course which should be taken, in preference to the use of force by a private individual.[196] But this apparently does not mean that it is unlawful to prepare or keep armaments for an anticipated attack. In the *Attorney-General's Reference (No. 2 of 1983)*[197] D's shop had been looted during rioting which the police had struggled to control; D made some petrol bombs with which to repel any future attack, and the question was whether these were in his possession 'for a lawful object'. It was held that they were, if the jury accepted that D intended to use them only against an attack on his premises which the police could not control. This is an unusually indulgent approach for the criminal courts—a conviction followed by a discharge would be more normal, since it does not signal that such conduct is permissible—but it was a response to a particular type of situation. If the police are unable to offer protection and attack is imminent, the rationale for justifiable force is made out—although objects so lethal as fire-bombs should rarely be approved as lawful means of defending business premises, as opposed to defending a home or human beings.

This decision leaves a number of questions about the 'imminence' requirement unresolved. Where a woman who has been habitually subjected to physical abuse by her male partner has

a reasonable fear that he may kill her next time, does this satisfy the 'imminence' requirement if she then kills him whilst he is asleep? True it may be that 'a "reasonable person" does not fear immediate death from a sleeping person',[198] but that reference to immediacy is surely too strict, and it may be argued that the real issue is whether the woman reasonably fears a danger to her life that she will be unable to avoid.[199] Another problem concerns the lawfulness of carrying a gun or an offensive weapon in order to repel an anticipated attack: the authorities would seem to suggest that, although the use of the weapon might be lawful if an attack takes place, its possession beforehand remains an offence.[200] A further unresolved question arises where a law enforcement officer shoots a fleeing suspect on the basis that the suspect is likely, **(p. 124)** if allowed to escape, to commit violent offences: must it be shown that those offences might or would be committed sooner rather than later?[201]

(ii) A Duty to Avoid Conflict?:

One of the most technical but most significant elements in the common law of self-defence was the duty to retreat. Its technicality lay in its careful wording and its exceptions; its significance was that, from an early stage, the common law recognized limitations on the forfeiture principle and on the primacy of the non-aggressor's autonomy in these situations. However, the duty has now disappeared as such. In *Julien* (1969)[202] it was rephrased as a duty to demonstrate an unwillingness to fight, 'to temporize and disengage and perhaps to make some physical withdrawal'. In *Bird* (1985)[203] the Court of Appeal accepted that the imposition of a 'duty' is too strong. The key question is whether D was acting in self-defence, or in revenge or retaliation. Evidence that D tried to retreat or to call off the fight might negative a suggestion of revenge, but it is not the only way of doing so. The modification of the law seems to derive from the suggestion in Smith and Hogan's textbook that the 'duty' as described in *Julien* is inconsistent with the liberty to make a pre-emptive strike.[204] It is not. The liberty to make a pre-emptive strike can easily be cast as an exception to the general duty to avoid conflict, and, as such, it is no more inconsistent with the rule than any other exception to a rule. The difficulty with regarding the duty to avoid conflict as merely one consideration to be borne in mind here is that it says nothing about the circumstances which might outweigh it. If the law is to protect everyone's right to life and to pursue the minimization of physical violence, the avoidance of conflict—or what Fiona Leverick refers to as the 'strong retreat rule'[205]—must be right in principle. Section 76 is silent on this.

(iii) Freedom of Movement:

English law also recognizes an exception to the duty to avoid conflict (if such a duty exists) in those cases where D is acting lawfully in remaining at, or going to, a place, realizing that there is a risk that someone will force a violent confrontation there. The authority for this is *Field* (1972),[206] where D was warned that some men were coming to attack him. D stayed where he was, the men came and made their attack, and in the ensuing struggle D stabbed one of them fatally. The Court of Appeal quashed his conviction, holding that he had no duty to avoid conflict until his attackers were present and had started to threaten him. The American case of *State* v *Bristol* (1938)[207] takes the point further, holding that D had no duty to avoid entering a bar where he knew his adversary (who had threatened him with attack) to be drinking. The American court declined to lay **(p. 125)** down a rule which might 'encourage bullies to stalk about the land and terrorize citizens by their mere threats'. These two decisions appear to promote the value of freedom of movement above any duty to avoid conflict in advance by,

for example, informing the police of the threat.[208] However, in *Redmond-Bate* v *DPP*[209] the Divisional Court held that the defendant's right to preach should be protected, as an exercise of the right to freedom of expression under Art. 10 of the Convention, and it was only if the words spoken were likely to provoke violence in others that it would have been proper to arrest her: if her words were not provocative of violence, only those who used or threatened violence should have been arrested. This suggests a small qualification of a subject's right to freedom of expression, and there are surely strong arguments for this. Should not the minimization of physical violations (implicit in Art. 5) take precedence over freedom of expression (Art. 10) and movement? Is there not some analogy with omissions to assist in saving life, where a citizen's general liberty should also be outweighed by a specific social duty?[210] These remarks concern self-defence and the defence of property only; clearly, a person who acts with the purpose of preventing crime or arresting a suspected offender cannot be expected to avoid conflict, and so the proportionality standard ought to assume primacy there.

(iv) Pre-Emptive Strike:

The use of force in self-defence may be justifiable as a pre-emptive strike, when an unlawful attack is imminent.[211] This is a desirable rule, since the rationale for self-defence involves the protection of an innocent citizen's vital interests (life, physical security), and it would be a nonsense if the citizen were obliged to wait until the first blow was struck. The liberty to make a pre-emptive strike is not inconsistent with a duty to avoid conflict (if it were recognized), but it should be read as being subject to that duty. In other words, it would be possible and desirable to have a law which imposed a general obligation to avoid conflict but, where this was not practical, authorized a pre-emptive strike.[212] A law which allows pre-emptive strikes without any general duty to avoid conflict runs the risk, as Dicey put it, of encouraging self-assertion through violence.[213]

(v) Necessity, Proportionality, and Law Enforcement:

The point has already been made that a police officer or citizen whose purpose is to prevent a crime or to apprehend a suspected offender must behave proactively. The primary legal restriction on such conduct has been the standard of proportionality, in relation to the purpose that the actor was aiming to achieve.[214] How serious an offence was being or had been **(p. 126)** committed? Is there a danger of serious offences in the near future? Applying Art. 2 of the Convention, not only must the permission fall within para. 2(a), (b), or (c) of the Article, but the force must be shown to have been 'absolutely necessary' and 'strictly proportionate'—the adverbs emphasizing the sharper formulation of the tests under the Convention. This should be the benchmark for scrutinizing the so-called 'shoot-to-protect' policy adopted by the Association of Chief Police Officers in 2003 and defended after the London bombings. Although its details have not been made public, the Metropolitan Police Commissioner referred to shooting to kill 'a deadly and determined bomber who is intent on murdering many other people'.[215] Much then depends on whether reasonable grounds should be required for the belief that V is such a person.

Some of the leading European decisions are not uncontroversial. In *McCann and others* v *UK* (1996)[216] the European Court of Human Rights held (by a ten to nine majority) that the UK had violated the right to life of three suspected IRA terrorists who were shot dead by security

forces in Gibraltar. The most important ruling was that Art. 2 requires law enforcement operations to be organized so as to 'minimize, to the greatest extent possible, recourse to lethal force'. The Court found that the planning of the operation failed to show the required level of respect for the suspects' right to life. It did not find that the soldiers who fired the shots violated Art. 2, although it did state that their reactions lacked 'the degree of caution in the use of firearms to be expected from law enforcement personnel in a democratic society, even when dealing with dangerous terrorist suspects'.[217] In *Andronicou and Constantinou* v *Cyprus* (1998)[218] the Court (by a five to four majority) held that Art. 2 was not violated when Cypriot security forces stormed a house where a hostage was being held, firing machine guns in all directions and killing both the gunman and the hostage. This decision appeared to leave a considerable gap between the strict formulation of the tests and their application to the facts, but the Court distinguished it in *Gül* v *Turkey* (2002).[219] The Court noted that in the *Cyprus* case the hostage-taker was known to be in possession of a gun, which he had fired twice already. In the *Turkey* case, there was insufficient reason to believe that Gül had a gun, and 'the firing of at least 50–55 shots at the door was not justified by any reasonable belief of the officers that their lives were at risk'.[220] It is fair to say that the Strasbourg judgments, **(p. 127)** particularly when applied to the facts of the cases, leave some scope for debate about what Art. 2 actually requires.[221]

(f) Mistaken belief as to necessity

In English law the rule has become established that a person who purports to use justifiable force should be judged on the facts as he or she believed them to be.[222] Section 76(3) of the 2008 Act confirms that this subjective test represents English law, and s. 76(4) goes on to state that the reasonableness of the belief may be considered when assessing whether it was genuinely held.[223] However, in cases of killing under Art. 2, the Strasbourg Court has insisted on several occasions that the actions of those who take life should be judged on the basis of the facts that 'they honestly believed, *for good reason*, to exist'.[224] This is clearly an objective test which, in effect, places such a high value on the right to life as to require law enforcement officers to have adequate factual foundations for their beliefs before using lethal force in consequence. It is easy to argue that this may not always be possible; but a more telling point is that, where it is possible, it ought to be done so as to respect the right to life. For this reason, previous editions of this work have contended that it should be a principle of English law; the arrival of the Convention jurisprudence strengthens that case. The fact that the Strasbourg cases on Art. 2 deal only with law enforcement officers should not be crucial, since it is the State's duty to ensure that the law protects the lives of all victims, no matter who threatens them.[225] However, in *Bubbins* v *UK* (2005)[226] the Strasbourg Court appeared to modify its position, reiterating the requirement of an 'honest belief, for good reason', but then softening it considerably by emphasizing the actual belief of the police officer at the time he shot V.[227] It is true to say that the Strasbourg Court has had ample opportunity to point out any incompatibility between the English law of self-defence and the Convention, and has not done so.[228] Yet, as the Joint Committee on Human Rights has pointed out, adopting the same argument as this book, the preponderance **(p. 128)** of Strasbourg jurisprudence favours the objective test of reasonable belief, and 'the very minimum required by human rights law' in order to protect the right to life of ordinary citizens is that the test of belief 'for good reason' should be introduced 'when force is used by state agents.'[229]

(g) Permissible force and the emotions

The foregoing paragraphs have examined principles which might produce outcomes that consistently uphold human rights in those varied situations in which a claim of permissible force might arise. Some might regard those principles as too mechanical for the sudden and confused circumstances of many such cases. It is well known that a sudden threat to one's physical safety may lead to strong emotions of fear and panic, producing physiological changes which take the individual out of his or her 'normal self'. According to this view, the most just law is the simplest: was the use of force an innocent and instinctive reaction, or was it the product of revenge or some manifest fault?

This simple approach may have the great advantage of recognizing explicitly the role of the emotions in these cases. It is surely right to exclude revenge attacks from the ambit of justifiable force.[230] It is also consistent with the doctrine of prior fault for the law to construe the standards of reasonableness and necessity strictly against someone whose own fault originally caused the show of violence.[231] The question then is how much indulgence should be granted to the innocent victim of sudden attack who reacts instinctively with strong force. In the leading case of *Palmer* (1971)[232] Lord Morris stated that it is 'most potent evidence' of reasonableness that the defendant only did what he or she 'honestly and instinctively thought necessary'. The Strasbourg Court, despite its insistence on the requirement of 'good reason', deferred in *Bubbins* to the beliefs of 'an officer who was required to act in the heat of the moment to avert an honestly perceived danger to his life'.[233] Section 76(7) of the 2008 Act now gives legislative authority to this approach, by providing that a court should take account, when assessing reasonableness, of the considerations:

- that a person acting for a legitimate purpose may not be able to weigh to a nicety the exact measure of any necessary action; and
- that evidence of a person's having done only what the person honestly and instinctively thought was necessary for a legitimate purpose constitutes strong evidence that only reasonable action was taken by that person for that purpose.

(p. 129) The additional flexibility of this approach suggests that it is more accurate to state the law's requirement in terms of a 'not disproportionate' use of force rather than a proportionate response, but even then there must be limits. It cannot be right for absolutely any reaction 'in a moment of unexpected anguish' to be held to be justifiable,[234] particularly in the case of a trained firearms officer, even if it is right for the courts to consider 'how the circumstances in which the accused had time to make his decision whether or not to use force and the shortness of the time available to him for reflection, might affect the judgment of a reasonable man'.[235] To the extent that the law has moved away from objective standards towards indulgence to the emotions of innocent citizens, the rationale of permissions becomes diluted by elements of excuse.[236]

The fairness of this concession to what Blackstone termed 'the passions of the human mind'[237] is often supported by reference to the famous dictum of Holmes J, namely, that 'detached reflection cannot be demanded in the presence of an uplifted knife'.[238] This dictum is significant for its limited application: it concerns cases of an 'uplifted knife', i.e. typically, sudden and grave threats or attacks; it has no application to cases where the attack is known to be imminent and the defendant has time to consider his position. Nor should it necessarily be conclusive in relation to those who are trained to deal with extreme situations, such as the police and the army.[239] As the element of sudden and unrehearsed emergency recedes, the

social interest in the minimal use of force becomes a firmer precept again. In this type of situation, the law ought to give consideration to the relative importance of the sanctity of life and the physical safety of all persons, including offenders, when compared with such other interests as the free movement of citizens. The aphorism about the 'uplifted knife' should not be used to prevent the principled resolution of cases to which it does not apply.

(h) Conclusions

The law relating to self-defence and permissible force depends on resolution of a clash between two aspects of the right to life—the individual's autonomy and right to protect life by using even fatal force if necessary, and the right to life of every citizen (including offenders). English lawyers have generally been reluctant to discuss the issues in these terms, and the government has rarely acknowledged its positive obligation under Art. 2 of the Convention to have in place laws that give maximum protection to the right (p. 130) of life of all citizens. The relevant law—whether on self-defence or the other forms of permission—is mostly common law, and the enactment of s. 76 of the Criminal Justice and Immigration Act 2008 to 'clarify' the common law is a disappointment, a missed opportunity to legislate at the detailed level rightly recommended by the Law Commission[240] and to engage with Art. 2 of the Convention and its requirements. An urgent re-assessment of the law on premissible force is called for, taking full account of the issues discussed above.

4.7 Permissions, necessity, and the choice of evils

The discussion so far has focused on self-defence and the permissions relating to law enforcement and the prevention of crime. Generally speaking, the permissions relating to self-defence may be linked directly to the principle of autonomy, in the basic sense of self-preservation, whereas the permissions relating to law enforcement may be linked to the principle of welfare, although that principle should also be interpreted so as to insist on the minimal use of force. In some situations, however, the principle of individual autonomy is compromised because it may not be possible to protect the autonomy of all persons involved. These are the 'choice of evils' cases, which must now be discussed.

(a) Necessity as a permission

English law contains limited defences of duress and necessity, which apply when a person commits an otherwise criminal act under threat or fear of death or serious harm. The relevant law is examined in a later chapter,[241] where it will become apparent that many statements about the ambit of the defences (especially in the courts) are ambivalent or even indiscriminate as to whether their basis lies in permissibility (D had a right to use this force) or excuse (the use of force was impermissible, but D did not behave unreasonably in the dire circumstances). One apparently clear statement came when the House of Lords, in rejecting duress as a defence to murder, held in *Howe* (1987)[242] that, even if D's own life is threatened, it cannot be permissible to take another innocent life. What this means is that one innocent person who stands in danger of imminent death cannot be permitted to kill another innocent person. To kill an aggressor in self-defence is one thing, but to kill an uninvolved third party, even if this were the only means of preserving one's own life, could not be right—even though (p. 131) it might be excusable, as we shall see elsewhere.[243] But what about the possibility of permitting the killing of an innocent non-aggressor when this will save two or more other

lives? One example of this emerged from the inquest into the deaths caused by the sinking of the ferry *Herald of Free Enterprise* in 1987.[244] At one stage of the disaster several passengers were trying to gain access to the ship's deck by ascending a rope-ladder. On that ladder there was a young man, petrified, unable to move up or down, so that nobody else could pass. People were shouting at him, but he did not move. Eventually it was suggested that he should be pushed off the ladder, and this was done. He fell into the water and was never seen again, but several other passengers escaped up the ladder to safety. No English court has had to consider this kind of situation:[245] are there circumstances in which the strong social interest in preserving the greater number of lives might be held to override an individual's right to life?

Any residual permission of this kind must be carefully circumscribed. It involves the sanctity of life, and therefore the highest value with which the criminal law is concerned. Although there is a provision in the Model Penal Code allowing for a defence of 'lesser evil',[246] it fails to restrict the application of the defence to cases of imminent threat, opening up the danger of citizens trying to justify all manner of conduct by reference to overall good effects.[247] The moral issues are acute: 'not just anything is permissible on the ground that it would yield a net saving of lives'.[248] Yet there may be situations in which the sacrifice of a small number of lives may be the only way of saving a much greater number of lives, as where a dam is about to burst (flooding a whole town) unless a sluice-gate is opened (flooding a less densely populated area). Could a doctrine of necessity permit the intentional killing of people in the latter area in order to save the greater number, if there were no alternative? There are strong arguments in favour of recognizing some such extreme situations as involving a permission to kill, but there are those who would oppose this and would insist that there can never be a permission for intentionally taking life—although it may be acceptable to recognize a (partial) excuse in such cases.

Some situations give rise to the further moral problem of 'choosing one's victim', which arises when, for example, a lifeboat is in danger of sinking, necessitating the throwing overboard of some passengers,[249] or when two people have to kill and eat **(p. 132)** another if any of the three is to survive.[250] To countenance a permission in such cases would be to regard the victim's rights as less worthy than the rights of those protected by the action taken, which represents a clear violation of the principle of individual autonomy. Yet it is surely necessary to make some sacrifice if the autonomy of everyone simply cannot be protected. A dire choice has to be made, and it must be made in a way that fairly minimizes the overall harm. In an ideal world, a fair procedure for resolving the problem—perhaps the drawing of lots—would be employed. But here, as with self-defence and the 'uplifted knife' cases,[251] one should not obscure the clearer cases where there is no need to choose a victim: in the case of the young man on the rope-ladder, blocking the escape of several others, there was no doubt about the person who must be subjected to force, probably with fatal consequences.

(b) Medical necessity

Is it ever justifiable for a doctor to act contrary to the letter of the law for clinical reasons? There has been little direct discussion of this by the courts or the legislature. The summing-up in *Bourne* (1939)[252] is sometimes cited as authority that a doctor may not be convicted (there, for carrying out an abortion) if it is necessary to save the life of the patient, but that particular area of the law is now subject to express statutory provisions.[253] More common in recent

times has been the acceptance of 'concealed defences' of medical necessity, by means of stretching established concepts.[254] For example, we saw how Devlin J in the *Adams* trial modified the general proposition that any acceleration of death satisfies the conduct element for unlawful homicide.[255] And the next chapter will show how the House of Lords in *Gillick* v *West Norfolk and Wisbech Area Health Authority* (1986)[256] deviated from the general proposition that intention includes foresight of virtual certainty. In these decisions the desired effect was to avoid the conviction of a doctor who acted in the 'best interests' of the patient, and the chosen method was to distort established concepts rather than to confront the problem openly.

One way of bringing the issues into the open would be to create a special defence, which might (following Paul Robinson's suggested draft) provide a permission for reasonable treatment for the promotion of the patient's health.[257] The definition would be quite elaborate, and much would turn on the criteria of reasonableness. Some would contend that 'reasonableness' should be determined by reference to **(p. 133)** practices 'accepted at the time by a responsible body of medical opinion',[258] whereas the ultimate determination ought surely to be that of the court.[259] Alternatively, the judges could be left to develop a defence at common law. One of the first English judges to confront some of the issues was Lord Goff in his speech in *Re F* (1990),[260] where he distinguished three forms of necessity—public necessity, private necessity, and necessity in aid of another. The last category was not merely confined to medical cases (e.g. acting to preserve the life of a person who is in a condition that makes it impossible to give consent), but also extends to other cases of action to protect the safety or property of a person unable to give consent. The key element of the decision in *Re F* was that the necessity was determined by reference to the patient's best interests. It might be possible to reconcile the result of *Bourne*[261] with this approach, but the reasoning in that case was that the interests of the young mother should be allowed to override those of the foetus. That kind of balancing of interests was ruled out in *Dudley and Stephens*, but it underlies the reasoning of Brooke LJ in *Re A (Conjoined Twins: Surgical Separation)*,[262] where he distinguished *Dudley and Stephens* on the ground that in *Re A* there was no doubt about the person whose life should be sacrificed and why (that she was incapable of separate existence, and that a failure to operate would hasten the death of both twins). This frank approach to the problem is preferable to the distorting effect of some of the earlier decisions,[263] but there remains the question of how exactly a serviceable defence of necessity should be drafted.

(c) Necessity and other judicial development of permissions

In the past almost all permissions were developed by the judges. If the criminal law is to be codified, should an exhaustive list of permissions be included? The Law Commission thinks not. Its Draft Criminal Code includes provisions on duress and on permissible force, but clause 45(4) provides that a person does not commit an offence by doing an act that is permitted or excused by 'any rule of common law continuing to apply by virtue of section 4(4)'.[264] The intended effect is to preserve the power of the courts to develop defences, including permissions. There is an evident need for flexibility in responding to new sets of circumstances, but on the other hand the courts **(p. 134)** are not suited to the kind of wide-ranging review that ought to be carried out before a permission is recognized or even taken away.[265] A code should go as far as it can in formulating the permissions for what would otherwise be criminal conduct, even if it must rely on terms such as 'reasonable' at various points. This may mean the open discussion not merely of hitherto concealed defences such as

medical necessity,[266] but also of broader concepts of necessity. Thus in *Shayler* (2001)[267] (disclosure of official secrets in order to expose alleged failures by the security services to protect citizens adequately) and again in *Jones, Milling et al* (2006)[268] (damage to an airbase in order to impede aircraft leaving for the invasion of Iraq), the appellate courts took a highly restrictive approach to the prospect of a defence of necessity, whereas decisions such as *Re A (Conjoined Twins: Surgical Separation)*[269] demonstrate a possible category of necessity. In *Shayler* and in *Jones*, the courts were urged to apply the defence to what may be termed 'political necessity', to permit acts aimed at preventing a greater evil. The conditions for such a defence ought to be tightly circumscribed, but that is no reason to deny its existence.[270]

(d) Statutory recognition of purpose-based permissions

There is an increasing tendency to insert into legislation some specific permissions, linked to D's purpose in acting. A long-standing example is s. 5(4) of the Misuse of Drugs Act 1971, allowing a defence to drugs charges if D's purpose in keeping the possession of the drugs was to prevent another from committing an offence or to hand them over to the authorities. Another example is s. 87 of the Road Traffic Regulation Act 1984,[271] creating exemptions from speed limits for emergency vehicles. Sections 1 and 4 of the Protection from Harassment Act 1997 both include defences for persons whose course of conduct (which might otherwise amount to 'stalking') was 'pursued for the purpose of preventing or detecting crime'.[272] Section 73 of the Sexual Offences Act 2003 states that a person cannot be convicted of aiding, abetting, or counselling a child sex offence if he acts 'for the purpose of (a) protecting the child from sexually transmitted infection, (b) protecting the physical safety of the child, (c) preventing the child from becoming pregnant, or (d) promoting the child's emotional well-being by (p. 135) the giving of advice'.[273] The presence of the permission depends here on the purpose or motive for which D acts, a point underlined by the further requirement that D does not act for the purpose of sexual gratification or in order to encourage sexual activity. Now s. 50 of the Serious Crime Act 2007 provides a 'defence of acting reasonably' to a person who would otherwise be guilty of encouraging or assisting crime,[274] and, again, one of the factors to be considered in assessing reasonableness is 'any purpose for which he claims to have been acting' (s. 50(3)(b)). Thus central to all these permissions is the purpose for which the act was done.

4.8 Conclusions

This chapter has dealt with various issues relevant to criminal conduct. It began by examining the extent to which the law reflects the principle of individual autonomy through its requirements of voluntary act and of causation. Not only is the reflection imperfect, but we found that discussion of these conduct elements in criminal liability (sometimes labelled *actus reus*) involves mental elements and fault elements at several points, e.g. involuntariness, omissions, causation, and purpose in cases of permission. The chapter then turned to the requirement that the conduct be unlawful, in the sense of impermissible, and once again we saw that the boundaries of permissions depend on conflicting considerations which are often not openly or fully analysed. The true significance of many of these issues will not become apparent until Chapters 5 and 6, or later, but three points may be signalled at this stage.

First, this chapter has provided ample evidence of the importance, in shaping the criminal law,

of conflicts between the principle of individual autonomy and principles of welfare. For example, even in relation to the voluntariness requirement—the veritable sanctum of individual autonomy—there are the marks of welfare-based limitations where the rules on insanity, intoxication, and prior fault impinge. Similar conflicts appear clearly in the legislative and judicial approaches to liability for omissions. Even in the permissions for force, the strong individualism which favours the 'innocent' defendant has occasionally come into conflict with the underlying social goal of minimizing force in these situations.

A second general point is that most of the doctrines considered yield, at crucial junctures, to malleable terminology which leaves considerable discretion to those who apply the law. This is at its plainest with the ubiquitous term 'reasonable' in the permissions, although there is now some evidence of a more principled approach. Discretion is also conceded by the proposition that the boundaries of omissions liability turn on (p. 136) the interpretation of particular words in statutes, by various concepts in the sphere of causation (e.g. *de minimis*, 'voluntary'), and by such notions as prior fault and 'external factor' in automatism. The presence of these open-ended terms does not empty the rules of their significance, but it raises doubts about the law's commitment to the values upheld by the principle of maximum certainty outlined in Chapter 3.5(i) . It is one thing to leave the rules open-ended when persons are unlikely to rely on them as such (as with the excusatory defences discussed in Chapter 6), although even there the value of consistent judicial decisions should not be overlooked. It is another thing to leave the rules open-ended when citizens as well as courts may rely on them: thus the Law Commission's recognition that the law on self-defence can be structured more explicitly is a welcome step away from universal deference to 'reasonableness'. In that respect, the enactment of s. 76 of the Criminal Justice and Immigration Act 2008 is almost an irrelevance, and certainly a sorely missed opportunity.

Thirdly, in this chapter we have seen the first signs of the impact of the European Convention on English criminal law. More still needs to be done to bring the terms of the defence of reasonable chastisement of children into line with Art. 3, and there is a strong case for going further and abolishing the defence entirely. The effects of Art. 2 on the various rules governing the permission to use force are more difficult to gauge, partly because the leading Strasbourg decisions are not as clear as some would maintain. However, before Parliament accepted the amendment that became s. 76 of the 2008 Act there should have been a proper public assessment of the positive obligations stemming from Art. 2: the government's rather late and cursory treatment of the issue suggests less than full commitment to the Human Rights Act.

Further Reading

R. A. duff, *Answering for Crime* (2007), ch 5.

R. D. Mackay, *Mental Condition Defences in the Criminal Law* (1995), ch 1.

H. L. A. Hart and T. Honoré, *Causation in the Law* (2nd edn., 1985), chs XII and XIII.

F. Leverick, *Killing in Self-Defence* (2006), *passim*.

B. Sangero, *Self-Defence in Criminal Law* (2006), *passim*.

V. Tadros, *Criminal Responsibility* (2005), ch 10.

C. Erin and S. Ost (eds), *The Criminal Justice System and Health Care* (2007), chs 6–12.

Notes:

[1] J. Gardner, 'On the General Part of the Criminal Law', in R. A. Duff (ed.), *Philosophy and the Criminal Law* (1998).

[2] See Chapter 5.5(a).

[3] See section 4.3.

[4] See section 4.3.

[5] See the critical essay by P. H. Robinson, 'Should the Criminal Law Abandon the Actus Reus/Mens Rea Distinction?', in S. Shute, J. Gardner, and J. Horder, (eds), *Action and Value in Criminal Law* (1993).

[6] On German law, in this respect, see G. P. Fletcher, *Rethinking Criminal Law* (1978), and Michael Bohlander, *Principles of German Criminal Law* (2009).

[7] See John Gardner, 'Justification under Authority (2010) 23 *Canadian Journal of Law and Jurisprudence* 71; P. H. Robinson, *Structure and Function in Criminal Law* (1997).

[8] A. T. H. Smith, 'On Actus Reus and Mens Rea', in P. R. Glazebrook (ed.), *Reshaping the Criminal Law* (1978), 95.

[9] A. Ashworth, 'Testing Fidelity to Legal Values: Official Involvement and Criminal Justice' (2000) 63 MLR 633.

[10] Theft Act 1968, s. 21(1).

[11] See, generally, J. Horder, *Excusing Crime* (2004), ch 1.

[12] Cf. J. Gardner, *Offences and Defences* (2007), ch 4.

[13] P. Robinson, 'The Modern General Part: Three Illusions', in S. Shute and A. P. Simester (eds), *Criminal Law Theory: Doctrines of the General Part* (2002); because the permissions guide conduct, M. Moore (*Placing Blame*, (1997), ch 1) goes so far as to state that they belong to the 'special part'.

[14] This caters for criminal liability for omissions, discussed in section 4.4.

[15] See generally R. D. Mackay, *Mental Condition Defences in the Criminal Law* (1995), ch 1; R. F. Schopp, *Automatism, Insanity, and the Psychology of Criminal Responsibility* (1991).

[16] See, generally, H. L. A Hart, *Punishment and Responsibility* (1968), at 107.

[17] Thus in *Attorney General's Reference (No. 4 of 2000)* [2001] Crim LR 578 a driver claimed that when he put his foot down to the brake pedal he pressed the accelerator instead and the

bus shot forward out of his control; this was truly a claim of accident and not of involuntary conduct.

[18] *Cook* v *Atchison* [1968] Crim LR 266.

[19] The classic statement is that of J. Austin, *Lectures on Jurisprudence* (5th edn., 1885), 411–24. For an excellent application of the philosophy of action to criminal responsibility see R. A. Duff, *Criminal Attempts* (1996), chs 9–11.

[20] A. I. Melden, 'Willing', in A. R. White (ed.), *The Philosophy of Action* (1968), 77.

[21] H. L. A. Hart, *Punishment and Responsibility* (2nd edn., 2008), 103.

[22] Hart, *Punishment and Responsibility*, 255–6, reformulating (in response to criticism) the passage appearing at 105.

[23] The facts of *Larsonneur*, discussed in the text accompanying n 58.

[24] See Model Penal Code, Art. 2.01(1), draft Criminal Code (Law Com No. 177) cl. 33(2), and A. Smart, 'Responsibility for Failing to Do the Impossible' (1987) 103 LQR 532.

[25] (1987) 85 Cr App R 321; see also *Isitt* (1978) 67 Cr App R 44.

[26] (1993) 97 Cr App R 429.

[27] E.g. *Charlson* [1955] 1 WLR 317; *Quick* [1973] QB 910.

[28] Hart, *Punishment and Responsibility*, 106.

[29] G. Williams, *Textbook of Criminal Law* (2nd edn., 1983), ch 29.

[30] Law Com No. 177, cl. 33(1).

[31] Discussed in detail in Chapter 5.2.

[32] [1963] AC 386.

[33] For further discussion see Chapter 5.2(c).

[34] [1973] QB 910.

[35] [1984] AC 156.

[36] *Hennessy* (1989) 89 Cr App R 10; *Bingham* [1991] Crim LR 433.

[37] [1991] 2 QB 92; cf. *Bilton, The Daily Telegraph*, 20 July 2005, where a person who carried out serious sexual acts while sleepwalking was apparently acquitted entirely.

[38] For an illuminating discussion, see I. Embrahim et al., 'Violence, Sleepwalking and the Criminal Law: the Medical Aspects' [2005] Crim LR 614 , and W. Wilson et al., 'Violence, Sleepwalking and the Criminal Law: the Legal Aspects' [2005] Crim LR 624.

[39] R. D. Mackay and B. J. Mitchell, 'Sleepwalking, Automatism and Insanity' [2006] Crim LR 901;

Law Commission, *Insanity and Automatism Scoping Paper* (July 2012).

[40] (1978) 79 DLR (3d) 414, on which see R. D. Mackay, 'Non-Organic Automatism—Some Recent Developments' [1980] Crim LR 350.

[41] [1990] Crim LR 256 (Snaresbrook Crown Court).

[42] The cases are discussed in Jeremy Horder, 'Pleading Involuntary Lack of Capacity' (1993) 52 *Cambridge LJ* 298.

[43] [1970] 1 QB 152.

[44] On which see Chapter 6.2. If English law were to abandon the *Majewski* approach and adopt the Antipodean solution (see Chapter 6.2(e), p. 202), cases of involuntariness through intoxication would fall to be dealt with by the general rules on automatism.

[45] *Stripp* (1979) 69 Cr App R 318.

[46] Discussed in Chapter 3.6(v), and in Chapter 5.4(d).

[47] [1973] QB 910; for discussion of this development see A. J. Ashworth, 'Reason, Logic and Criminal Liability' (1975) 91 LQR 102.

[48] (1983) 77 Cr App R 76.

[49] On which see Chapter 5.5(c).

[50] See Chapter 5.4(d).

[51] (1945) 173 LT 191.

[52] See C. Finkelstein, 'Involuntary Crimes, Voluntarily Committed', in S. Shute and A. P. Simester (eds), *Criminal Law Theory: Doctrines of the General Part* (2002).

[53] Chapter 5.2(d).

[54] Compare Law Com No. 177, paras. 11.3–11.4, with the discussion of the case of *T* by Jeremy Horder, 'Pleading Involuntary Lack of Capacity' (1993) 52 Camb LJ 298, at 312–15. For further reflections on the need for reform, see Law Commission, *Insanity and Automatism Scoping Paper* (July 2012).

[55] Cf. M. Moore, *Act and Crime* (1993), with Duff, *Criminal Attempts*, chs 9–11, and A. P. Simester, 'On the So-Called Requirement for Voluntary Action' (1998) 1 Buffalo Crim LR 403.

[56] Criminal Law Act 1967, s. 4.

[57] See Chapter 11.

[58] (1933) 149 LT 542.

[59] Cf. the analysis by D. J. Lanham, '*Larsonneur* Revisited' [1976] Crim LR 276, suggesting that the decision may have been based on prior fault (see Chapter 5.4(e)).

[60] *The Times*, 28 March 1983.

[61] P. R. Glazebrook, 'Situational Liability', in Glazebrook (ed), *Reshaping the Criminal Law* (1978), 108.

[62] As in *Coppen* v *Moore* [1898] 2 QB 306.

[63] Simester, 'On the So-Called Requirement for Voluntary Action', at 410–13.

[64] [1984] 2 NZLR 396.

[65] [1980] 2 NZLR 235.

[66] See Chapter 3.5(g).

[67] Cf. *Kingston* [1995] 2 AC 355, Chapter 6.2.

[68] 370 US 660 (1962).

[69] 392 US 514 (1968).

[70] D. Husak and B. Mclaughlin, 'Time Frames, Voluntary Acts, and Strict Liability' (1992) 12 *Law and Philosophy* 95; D. Husak, 'Re-Thinking the Act Requirement' (2007) 28 Cardozo LR 2437.

[71] Prevention of Crime Act 1953.

[72] Theft Act 1968, s. 25.

[73] Misuse of Drugs Act 1971, s. 5(2).

[74] Misuse of Drugs Act 1971, s. 5(3).

[75] [1969] 2 AC 256.

[76] These propositions were restated by the Court of Appeal in *McNamara* (1988) 87 Cr App R 246.

[77] [1969] 2 AC, 256, at 307.

[78] (1988) 87 Cr App R 270, with commentary by J. C. Smith at [1988] Crim LR 517.

[79] See the discussion in Chapter 11.9(c).

[80] [2008] 1 Cr App R 25.

[81] [2000] 2 AC 428 and [2002] 1 AC 462 respectively, discussed in Chapter 5.5(a).

[82] See A. Ashworth, 'The Unfairness of Risk-Based Possession Offences' (2011) 5 *Criminal Law and Philosophy* 237.

[83] On which see Chapter 3.4(c) and (d).

[84] See Simester, 'On the So-Called Requirement for Voluntary Action', 427.

[85] See Duff, *Criminal Attempts*, 317–20.

[86] With different interpretations of words such as 'cause': see G. Williams, 'What should the Code do about Omissions?'(1987) 7 *Legal Studies* 92.

[87] Law Com No. 177, ii, para. 7.13; see generally paras. 7.7–7.13.

[88] (1977) 65 Cr App R 161.

[89] [1983] 2 AC 161.

[90] See the criticisms by J. C. Smith [1982] Crim LR 527 and 774, and D. Husak, *Philosophy of Criminal Law* (1987), 176–8.

[91] See I. M. Kennedy, *Treat Me Right* (1988), 169–74.

[92] [1993] AC 789.

[93] On this, see A. McGee, 'Ending the life of the act/omission dispute: causation in withholding life-sustaining measures' (2011) 31 *Legal Studies* 467.

[94] Cf. now the Mental Capacity Act 2005, especially s. 4, and also M. Wilks, 'Medical Treatment at the End of Life—a British Doctor's Perspective', in C. Erin and S. Ost (eds), *The Criminal Justice System and Health Care* (2007).

[95] [2000] 4 All ER 961.

[96] J. Rachels, 'Active and Passive Euthanasia' (1975) 292 *New England J of Medicine* 78, as restated by M. Moore, *Act and Crime*, 26.

[97] Rachels, 'Active and Passive Euthanasia', 27.

[98] Cf. N. Lacey, C. Wells, and O. Quick, *Reconstructing Criminal Law* (3rd edn., 2003), 680–95.

[99] E.g. *Emery* (1993) 14 Cr App R (S) 394, and the duty imposed by the Domestic Violence, Crime and Victims Act 2004, discussed in Chapter 7.6.

[100] See R. A. Duff, *Answering for Crime* (2007), 111, and the discussion in section 4.5 on Causation.

[101] Duff, *Answering for Crime*, 112–13.

[102] For the view that voluntary conduct should not be analysed in terms of causing something to occur, see John Gardner's review of Michael Moore's *Act and Crime* (1994) 110 LQR 496.

[103] As we will see later, though, this example is subject to a policy exception. Suppose that D1 knocks V unconscious in an area of town where killings of defenceless people are very common. V is later intentionally killed by D2 while she (V) is still unconscious. Given that this kind of outcome might reasonably have been expected, is D1 still to be regarded as a cause of V's death? No. The answer to that question would ordinarily be 'yes', because it is within the range of what might reasonably be expected to follow from D1's act. However, the law treats free, deliberate, and informed acts as breaking what would otherwise be a solid chain of

causation: *Kennedy* (No. 2) [2008] 1 AC 269 (HL), and D2's act in intentionally killing V was such an act.

[104] See, more generally, S. Shute, J. Gardner, and J. Horder (eds), *Action and Value in Criminal Law* (1993), Introduction.

[105] For an application of the autonomy principle, in preference to the expectations principle (although these terms are not used) see *Kennedy (No 2)* [2005] UKHL 38.

[106] E.g. *Attorney-General's Reference No. 4 of 1980* (1981) 73 Cr App R 40.

[107] D2 cannot be found criminally liable for manslaughter unless D2's negligence in breaching the duty of case was 'gross' (see Chapter 7); but if the negligence was indeed gross, then the treatment will normally be the kind of unexpected calamity befalling V likely to lead a jury to conclude that the chain of causation leading from D1's act to V's death was broken.

[108] For a critical argument along these lines, see A. Norrie, *Crime, Reason and History* (2nd edn., 2001), ch 7.

[109] Although, in some cases, it is in fact possible for intended consequences to be too remote to be attributed to the person trying to bring them about. Suppose D believes he can jump across the English Channel and land in France. As he jumps, a tornado sweeps him up and carries him across to France. Even assuming that, had he not initially jumped, the tornado would not have carried him all the way to France, the result's occurrence is too remote in causal terms from the way that D envisaged the result coming about to be attributable to his action. See, generally, R. A. Duff, *Intention, Agency and Criminal Liability* (Oxford, 1990).

[110] E.g. *Alphacell Ltd* v *Woodward* [1972] AC 824, but cf. the slightly more definite approach in *National Rivers Authority* v *Yorkshire Water Services* [1995] 1 AC 444. See generally N. Padfield, 'Clean Water and Muddy Causation' [1995] Crim LR 683.

[111] (1976) 62 Cr App R 41.

[112] (1976) 62 Cr App R 41, 45.

[113] (1976) 62 Cr App R 41, 46; cf. *Cheshire* [1991] 1 WLR 844, referring to a 'significant contribution'.

[114] Although, of course, the grandparents' role may be relevant to other kinds of judgment that people may wish to make, such as whether 'criminality runs in the family'.

[115] See Hart and Honoré, *Causation in the Law*, ch 1 and *passim*, and the derivative discussions by S. Kadish, *Blame and Punishment* (1987), ch 8, and H. Beynon, 'Causation, Omissions and Complicity' [1987] Crim LR 539; cf. also Williams, *Textbook of Criminal Law*, ch 14.

[116] [1957] Crim LR 365.

[117] H. L. A. Hart and T. Honoré, *Causation in the Law* (2nd edn., 1985), 344–5.

[118] See (1992) BMLR 38.

[119] A. Arlidge, 'The Trial of Dr. Moor' [2000] Crim LR 31.

[120] The subsequent case of *Re A (Conjoined Twins: Surgical Separation)* [2000] 4 All ER 961 (n 95, and accompanying text) is one of the few to confront this question.

[121] See S. Ost, 'Euthanasia and the Defence of Necessity', in C. Erin and S. Ost (eds), *The Criminal Justice System and Health Care* (2007), and section 4.8(b).

[122] There are isolated exceptions: see Corporate Manslaughter and Corporate Homicide Act 2007, s. 1(3), stating that 'an organisation is guilty of an offence under this section only if the way in which its activities are managed or organised by its senior management is a *substantial element* in the breach' (our italics). See further Chapter 7.5(c).

[123] The old law on obtaining by deception (now replaced by the Fraud Act 2006, on which see Chapter 9.8) provided a possible example of 'but for' causation: see p. 125 of the fifth edition of this work.

[124] This was how Lord Bingham paraphrased *Cato* in *Kennedy (No. 2)* [2008] UKHL 1 AC 269, at 274.

[125] See the discussion of crimes of possession in Chapter 4.3(b).

[126] Law Com No. 177, cl. 17(1)(a).

[127] American Law Institute, *Model Penal Code*, s. 2.03.

[128] Hart and Honoré, *Causation in the Law*, 342; the Draft Criminal Code refers to an intervening act 'which could not in the circumstances have been reasonably foreseen', Law Com No. 177, cl. 17(2).

[129] (1840) 9 C and P 356; cf. G. Williams, '*Finis* for *Novus Actus*' [1989] Camb LJ 391.

[130] Cf. *Cogan and Leak* [1976] 1 QB 217, on 'semi-innocent agency', discussed in Chapter 10.6.

[131] *Bourne* (1952) 36 Cr App R 125; see also Chapter 10.6.

[132] (1983) 76 Cr App R 279; see Hart and Honoré, *Causation in the Law*, 330–4.

[133] Article 2 of the ECHR suggests so: see Chapter 4.6(b).

[134] See further Chapter 6.4; cf. the arguments of P. A. J. Waddington, '"Overkill" or "Minimum Force"?' [1990] Crim LR 695, with the implications of Art. 2 of the ECHR.

[135] [1999] 2 AC 22, overruling *Impress (Worcester) Ltd* v *Rees* [1971] 2 All ER 357.

[136] *Per* Lord Hoffmann at 36.

[137] [2008] 1 AC 269, at 276, adding that the House 'would not wish to throw any doubt on the correctness of the *Empress Car* case'.

[138] [2008] 1 AC 269, at 276; the Court of Appeal's first decision in this case was also much

criticized, see *Kennedy* [1999] Crim LR 65.

[139] *Smith* [1959] 2 QB 35, distinguishing *Jordan* (1956) 40 Cr App R 152; cf. the critical attack of Norrie, *Crime, Reason and History*, 147–8.

[140] [1991] 1 WLR 844.

[141] [1991] 1 WLR 844, 852.

[142] *Per* Lord Lane CJ, in *Malcherek* (1981) 73 Cr App R 173.

[143] Section 4.7.

[144] A clear example, on these facts, is the American case of *State* v *Frazer* (1936) 98 SW (2d) 707.

[145] See Chapters 5.4(a) and 7.7.

[146] See the criticism of Hart and Honoré by Norrie, *Crime Reason and History*, 149–50.

[147] (1972) 56 Cr App R 95; see also *Corbett* [1996] Crim LR 594.

[148] (1972) 56 Cr App R 95, at 97.

[149] (1975) 61 Cr App R 271.

[150] *Per* Lawton LJ, (1975) 61 Cr App R 271, 274.

[151] (1972) 56 Cr App R 95.

[152] See also *Dear* [1996] Crim LR 595.

[153] For discussions see Husak, *Philosophy of Criminal Law*, ch 6; A. Leavens, 'A Causation Approach to Omissions' (1988) 76 Cal LR 547; H. Beynon, 'Causation, Omissions and Complicity' [1987] Crim LR 539.

[154] *Calhaem* [1985] QB 808.

[155] Hart and Honoré, *Causation in the Law*, 51; cf. G. Williams, 'Finis for *Novus Actus*' [1989] Camb LJ 391 , at 398.

[156] J. C. Smith, 'Aid, Abet, Counsel and Procure', in P. R. Glazebrook (ed.), *Reshaping the Criminal Law* (1978); Kadish, *Blame and Punishment*, ch 8; cf. Part 2 of the Serious Crime Act 2007, discussed in Chapter 11.7.

[157] See Chapter 5.3(b).

[158] See R. Card, 'Authority and Excuse as Defences to Crime' [1969] Crim LR 359 , 415.

[159] *Per* Lord Griffiths in *Beckford* v *R* [1988] AC 130, at 144.

[160] See Chapter 6.4, and cf. R. H. S. Tur, 'Subjectivism and Objectivism: Towards Synthesis', in S. Shute, J. Gardner, and J. Horder (eds), *Action and Value in Criminal Law* (1993).

[161] S. Uniacke, *Permissible Killing: the Self-Defence Justification of Homicide* (1994), 26 and ch 2 generally.

[162] See section 4.1, and n 12.

[163] For detailed studies of the law on self-defence and the theory underlying it, see F. Leverick, *Killing in Self-Defence* (2006), and B. Sangero, *Self-Defence in Criminal Law* (2006).

[164] Note that Protocol 6 to the Convention requires the abolition of the death penalty. Several European States, including the UK, have agreed to this protocol, which is also brought into English law by the Human Rights Act 1998.

[165] *Rivas* v *France* [2005] Crim LR 305 and *RJ and M-J D* v *France* [2005] Crim LR 307.

[166] J. C. Smith, 'The Right to Life and the Right to Kill in Law Enforcement' (1994) NLJ 354.

[167] For a similar argument, accepted by the European Court, see *A* v *UK*, discussed in section 4.8.

[168] Fletcher, *Rethinking Criminal Law*, 862–3; cf. A. Dershowitz, *Preemption* (2006), 197–9.

[169] Uniacke argues that there is no conceptual difficulty with the notion of forfeiture so long as we accept that the right to life, like many other rights, is conditional on our conduct: *Permissible Killing*, 201 and ch 6 generally.

[170] Section 4.5.

[171] See Chapter 3.6(r).

[172] See n 216 and accompanying text.

[173] A. Ashworth, 'Self-Defence and the Right to Life' [1975] CLJ 282.

[174] Ashworth, 'Self-Defence and the Right to Life', 285.

[175] See the judgment of Ward LJ in *Re A (Conjoined Twins: Surgical Separation)* [2000] 4 All ER 961.

[176] Cf. s. 59 of the Serious Crime Act 2007 ('the common law offence of inciting the commission of another offence is abolished'), discussed in Chapter 11.6.

[177] Law Com No. 177, cl. 44, mostly restated in Law Com No. 218, *Legislating the Criminal Code: Offences Against the Person and General Principles* (1993), cl. 27.

[178] Criminal Damage Act 1971, s. 5(2).

[179] See e.g. *Jones, Milling et al* [2007] 1 AC 136.

[180] *Owino* [1996] 2 Cr App R 128, not following *Scarlett* (1994) 98 Cr App R 290. See also *Tudor* [1999] 1 Cr App R (S) 197. Cf. the controversy surrounding the US case of *People* v *Goetz* (1986) 68 NY 2d 96, where D had shot and wounded four youths on the New York subway after they had demanded five dollars from him.

[181] As the European Court of Human Rights held in *Nachova* v *Bulgaria* (2006) 42 EHRR 933.

[182] Report of the Royal Commission on the Law Relating to Indictable Offences (1879, C. 2345), note B, at 44; see at 11 for an assertion of the principle that 'the mischief done by, or which might reasonably be anticipated from, the force used is not disproportioned to the injury or mischief which it is intended to prevent'.

[183] See Leverick, *Killing in Self-Defence*, ch 6. For a different view see the approach of the German Supreme Court: M. Bohlander, *Principles of German Criminal Law* (2009), 99–114.

[184] [2006] Crim LR 546.

[185] For the eighteenth century authorities, see Ashworth, 'Self-Defence and the Right to Life', 299–301.

[186] E.g. in *Andronicou and Constantinou* v *Cyprus* (1998) 25 EHRR 491, at para. 171; *Gül* v *Turkey* (2002) 34 EHRR 719, at para. 77; *Nachova* v *Bulgaria* (2006) 42 EHRR 933.

[187] Model Penal Code, s. 3.04.

[188] J. C. Smith, *Justification and Excuse in the Criminal Law* (1989), 109 and ch 4; F. Leverick, *Killing in Self-Defence*, ch 7.

[189] Law Commission, *Simplification of the Criminal Law: Kidnapping* (Consultation Paper No. 200, 2011).

[190] *Fennell* [1971] 1 QB 428; *Ball* [1989] Crim LR 579.

[191] Model Penal Code, s. 3.04(2)(a)(i); Law Com No. 177, cl. 44(4).

[192] (1850) 4 Cox CC 358.

[193] [1985] NI 457.

[194] Cf. *Nachova* v *Bulgaria*, n 181 and text thereat; see also n 198. For controversy over the *Dadson* principle, see R. Christopher, 'Unknowing Justification and the Logical Necessity of the *Dadson* Principle in Self-Defence' (1995) 15 OJLS 229, and P. H. Robinson, 'Competing Theories of Justification: Deeds v. Reasons' with J. Gardner, 'Justifications and Reasons', both in A. P. Simester and A. T. H. Smith (eds), *Harm and Culpability* (1996).

[195] E.g. *Attorney-General for Northern Ireland's Reference* [1977] AC 105; *Chisam* (1963) 47 Cr App R 130.

[196] See *Jones, Milling et al* [2007] 1 AC 136; see also Lord Bingham's judgment on duress and the duty to avoid using force in *Hasan* [2005] 2 AC 467, discussed in Chapter 6.3. See also J. Horder, *Homicide and the Politics of Law Reform* (2012), at 249–52.

[197] [1984] QB 456; see also *Cousins* [1982] QB 526.

[198] J. Dressler, 'Battered Women who Kill their Sleeping Tormentors', in S. Shute and A. P. Simester (eds), *Criminal Law Theory* (2002), 269.

[199] J. Horder, 'Killing the Passive Abuser', in Shute and Simester, *Criminal Law Theory*, at 292–3; *Homicide and the Politics of Law Reform*, at 252–5; Leverick, *Killing in Self-Defence*, ch 5. Cf. also the proposal to create a new partial defence (in murder cases) for situations where D acted during a loss of self-control stemming from D's fear of serious violence from V, discussed in Chapter 7.4(b).

[200] See *Evans* v *Hughes* [1972] 3 All ER 412; Smith, *Justification and Excuse*, 117–23; and now D. J. Lanham, 'Offensive Weapons and Self-Defence' [2005] Crim LR 85.

[201] A point left open by the European Commission in *Kelly* v *UK* (1993) 74 DR 139.

[202] [1969] 1 WLR 839.

[203] [1985] 1 WLR 816.

[204] J. C. Smith and B. Hogan, *Criminal Law* (5th edn., 1983), 327, quoted by the Court of Appeal in *Bird* [1985] 1 WLR 816; see now *Criminal Law* (12th edn., by D. Ormerod, 2011), 368.

[205] Leverick, *Killing in Self-Defence*, 82, and ch 4 generally. For the householder's position, see now s. 148 Legal Aid, Sentencing and Punishment Act 2012; section 4.6(c).

[206] [1972] Crim LR 435.

[207] (1938) 53 Wyo 304.

[208] Cf. Lord Mance in *Jones, Milling et al*. [2007] 1 AC 136, with the arguments of F. McAuley and J. P. McCutcheon, *Criminal Liability: a Grammar* (2000), 760–1.

[209] [1999] Crim LR 998; cf. *Beatty* v *Gillbanks* (1882) 9 QBD 308 and *Nicol and Selvanayagam* v *DPP* [1996] Crim LR 318.

[210] See section 4.4.

[211] E.g. *Beckford* v *R* [1988] AC 130, at 144.

[212] See n 204 and accompanying text.

[213] A. V. Dicey, *Introduction to the Study of the Law of the Constitution* (8th edn., 1923), 489.

[214] See the discussion of *Thain*, n 193 and text thereat.

[215] Sir Ian Blair in oral evidence to the House of Commons Home Affairs Committee, *Counter-Terrorism*, 13 September 2005, Qs 59–60.

[216] (1996) 21 EHRR 97; for analysis of the ECHR case law, see Leverick, *Killing in Self-Defence*, ch 10, and B. Emmerson, A. Ashworth, and A. Macdonald (eds), *Human Rights and Criminal Justice* (3rd edn., 2012), 794–803.

[217] Cf. P. A. J. Waddington, '"Overkill" or "Minimum Force"?' [1990] Crim LR 695, for the argument that if officers do not shoot to kill they risk the possibility that an injured suspect might still be able to kill or wound someone—in which case, shooting to kill might be permissible

in the first place.

[218] (1998) 25 EHRR 491.

[219] (2002) 34 EHRR 719.

[220] (2002) 34 EHRR 719, para. 82.

[221] However, it is widely recognized that the State has a positive duty to ensure that the right to life of all its citizens is protected, and to ensure that its police and military personnel conduct their operations with due respect for Art. 2. Passages in several judgments (e.g. *Isaveya* v *Russia* (2005) 41 EHRR 791, at para. 175) suggest that there may be grounds for charging senior police officers with negligent manslaughter if they fail in this duty. See also *Juozaitiene* v *Lithuania* (2008) 47 EHRR 1194.

[222] By the Privy Council in *Shaw* v *R* [2002] 1 Cr App R 10; cf. *Martin* [2002] 1 Cr App R 27, where the Court of Appeal nevertheless held that psychiatric evidence to assist the jury to understand D's likely perceptions was not admissible.

[223] Section 76(5) states that voluntary intoxication should be left out of account. General discussions of mistaken beliefs will be found in Chapter 6.4 and of intoxication in Chapter 6.2.

[224] *McCann et al*. v *UK* (1996) 21 EHRR 97, at para. 200; *Andronicou and Constantinou* v *Cyprus* (1998) 25 EHRR 491, at para. 192; *Gül* v *Turkey* (2002) 34 EHRR 719, at paras. 78–82. See Leverick, *Killing in Self-Defence*, ch 10.

[225] See n 221.

[226] (2005) 41 EHRR 458.

[227] (2005) 41 EHRR 458, paras. 138–9.

[228] Per Collins J in *R (Bennett)* v *HM Coroner for Inner London* [2006] EWHC Admin 196; see also the government response to the Joint Committee, printed as Appendix 7 to the report.

[229] Joint Committee on Human Rights, *Legislative Scrutiny* (15th report, session 2007–8), para. 2.35.

[230] As the Law Commission has recommended their exclusion from the partial defence of provocation: see Chapter 7.5(b).

[231] See A. Ashworth (reference at n 173), and Leverick, *Killing in Self-Defence*, ch 6.

[232] [1971] AC 814, at 832.

[233] *Bubbins* v *UK* (2005) 41 EHRR 458, at para. 139.

[234] A phrase from *Palmer*, n 232; see also the insistence of the Joint Committee on Human Rights (n 229), para. 2.24, that allowing force which is not ‘grossly disproportionate’ would go too far and breach the State's obligations under Art. 2.

[235] *Per* Lord Diplock, in *Attorney-General for Northern Ireland's Reference* [1977] AC 105.

[236] On which see J. Horder, *Excusing Crime* (2004), 48–52; J. Horder, *Homicide and the Politics of Law Reform* (2012), 251–2.

[237] *Commentaries on the Laws of England*, iii, 3–4.

[238] *Brown* v *United States* (1921) 256 US 335, at 343.

[239] Cf., however, the use of the concession in the *Andronicou* case (reference at n 218), and in *Bubbins* (reference at n 226).

[240] In the Draft Criminal Code, Law Com No. 177, cl. 44; however, on some of the issues, this book differs from the Commission's particular recommendations.

[241] See Chapter 6.3.

[242] [1987] AC 417.

[243] Cf. J. J. Thomson, 'Self-Defense' (1991) 20 Philosophy and Public Affairs 283, with R. Christopher, 'Self-Defense and Objectivity' (1998) 1 Buffalo CLR 537; on necessity as an excuse see Chapter 6.3(a).

[244] Smith, *Justification and Excuse*, 73–9.

[245] Cf. *Dudley and Stephens* (1884) 14 QBD 273, the case in which two men saved themselves by killing and eating the weakest member of a threesome who had been adrift in a boat for many days; but they were rescued the following day, and some have questioned the necessity of their act. See A. W. B. Simpson, *Cannibalism and the Common Law* (1984), and Chapter 6.4(a).

[246] Model Penal Code, s. 3.02; cf. G. P. Fletcher, *Rethinking Criminal Law* (1978), 788–98.

[247] Cf. the remarks of the House of Lords in *Jones, Milling et al* [2007] 1 AC 136.

[248] Thomson, 'Self-Defense', 309; see also J. Finnis, 'Intention and Side-Effects', in R. G. Frey and C. W. Morris (eds), *Liability and Responsibility* (1991), for the argument that it is never morally right to choose (intend) to take another's life.

[249] *United States* v *Holmes* (1842) 26 Fed Cas 360.

[250] *Dudley and Stephens* (1884) 14 QBD 273.

[251] See *Brown* v *United States* (1921) 256 US 335, and the text accompanying n 229.

[252] [1939] 1 KB 687.

[253] Abortion Act 1967.

[254] Smith, *Justification and Excuse*, 64–70; A. Ashworth, 'Criminal Liability in a Medical Context: the Treatment of Good Intentions', in A. P. Simester and A. T. H. Smith (eds), *Harm and Culpability* (1996).

[255] See section 4.6(a), on the cases of Dr Adams and Dr Moor; see also the 'medical'

exception to the principle that a voluntary intervening human act negatives causal responsibility in section 4.6(b)(ii).

[256] [1986] AC 112, discussed in Chapter 5.5(b).

[257] P. Robinson, *Criminal Law Defences* (1984), ii, 173.

[258] *Airedale NHS Trust* v *Bland* [1993] AC 789, *per* Lord Browne-Wilkinson at 883.

[259] As Lord Mustill argued in the *Bland* case.

[260] [1990] 2 AC 1; see S. Gardner, 'Necessity's Newest Inventions' (1991) 11 OJLS 125.

[261] See n 252.

[262] [2000] 4 All ER 961, on which see J. Rogers, 'Necessity, Private Defence and the Killing of Mary' [2001] Crim LR 515.

[263] See S. Ost, 'Euthanasia and the Defence of Necessity', in C. Erin and S. Ost (eds), *The Criminal Justice System and Health Care* (The Criminal Justice System and Health Care).

[264] For discussion see Law Com No. 177, ii, para. 12.41.

[265] See particularly the two articles by Rogers, on reasonable chastisement (J. Rogers 'A Criminal Lawyer's Response to Chastisement in the European Court of Human Rights' [2002] Crim LR 98) and on necessity and private defence (reference at n 262), and the discussion of 'the democracy problem' by Gardner (reference at n 260).

[266] See Chapter 5.3(c).

[267] [2001] 1 WLR 2206; the case went to the House of Lords on other grounds: [2003] 1 AC 247.

[268] [2007] 1 AC 136.

[269] See n 262 and text thereat.

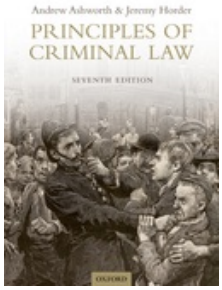
[270] S. Gardner, 'Direct Action and the Defence of Necessity' [2005] Crim LR 371; cf. C. Clarkson, 'Necessary Action: a New Defence' [2004] Crim LR 81.

[271] As amended by s. 19 of the Road Safety Act 2006.

[272] See further A. Ashworth, 'Testing Fidelity to Legal Values: Official Involvement and Criminal Justice', in Shute and Simester (eds), *Criminal Law Theory*, at 322 –30.

[273] See also the similar defence for principals in s. 14 of the Sexual Offences Act 2003 (facilitating the commission of a child sex offence).

[274] For the Law Commission's approach, see Law Com No. 300, *Inchoate Liability for Assisting and Encouraging Crime* (2007), 82–8.



Principles of Criminal Law (7th edn)

Andrew Ashworth and Jeremy Horder

Publisher: Oxford University Press
Print ISBN-13: 9780199672684
DOI: 10.1093/he/9780199672684.001.0001

Print Publication Date: May 2013
Published online: Sep 2013

5. Criminal Capacity, *Mens Rea*, and Fault

Chapter: (p. 137) 5. Criminal Capacity, *Mens Rea*, and Fault
Author(s): Andrew Ashworth and Jeremy Horder
DOI: 10.1093/he/9780199672684.003.0005

5.1 The issues
5.2 Agency, capacity, and mental disorder
5.3 Corporate liability
5.4 Fault and *mens rea*: general principles
5.5 Varieties of fault
5.6 The variety of fault terms
5.7 The referential point of fault
Further reading

5.1 The issues

In Chapter 4 we examined some of the fundamental requirements of a crime that are usually embraced by the notion of *actus reus*—voluntary act, causation, and absence of justification.

One feature of that discussion was how frequently a kind of fault element was to be found playing a role in the *actus reus*: for example, the doctrine of prior fault in automatism (4.2(e)), compassionate purpose in causation (4.5(a)), and elements of prior fault in the principles of permissible? force (4.6(d) and (e)). In this chapter we deal first with another fundamental requirement of a crime, criminal capacity. It is a precondition of criminal liability that the defendant is a person with sufficient capacity to be held responsible, and this leads to an examination of infancy and insanity as barriers to criminal responsibility (5.2), and then to corporate criminal liability (5.3).

Having established that the defendant meets the preconditions for criminal responsibility, we then move to the fault requirements, or *mens rea* (as criminal lawyers often call them). An important fault element is intention, proof of which is required in major crimes such as murder, rape, and robbery. The presence of a fault element may not mean that D was necessarily culpable, in an all-things considered sense. The latter depends on whether D's conduct was justified (Chapter 4) or was excused (Chapter 6). But, those considerations apart, the fault element normally indicates culpability, and in 5.4 we explore some of the reasons for and against the criminal law requiring proof of fault in any form. We then go on, in 5.5, to give detailed consideration to the principal varieties of fault requirement in the criminal law. In broad terms there is a hierarchy of fault requirements: intention is the highest form, followed by recklessness, and then by negligence. However, the majority of crimes in English law impose strict liability, **(p. 138)** being offences for which neither intention, nor recklessness, nor negligence needs to be proved. Most of these are summary offences, triable only in the magistrates' courts and carrying relatively low penalties. However, around half of the offences triable in the Crown Court have a strict liability element: that is, they do not require proof of fault in relation to one or more of the conduct, consequence, or circumstance elements of the crime.[1] An example is assault occasioning actual bodily harm contrary to s. 47 of the Offences Against the Person Act 1861. This offence requires proof of fault (intention or recklessness) with regard to the element of assault, but does not require proof of fault in relation to the occasioning of actual bodily harm.[2]

It is therefore important, throughout this chapter, to distinguish between normative claims about the principles the law should observe and the realities of the law as it is. It may be argued that criminal conviction should always be founded on proof of fault, but it would require a reform affecting thousands of offences to turn that aspiration into a reality. In order to underscore this point, section 5.5 of this chapter begins with a discussion of strict liability, before turning to intention, recklessness, and negligence.

Two further points must be made at this stage. One is that it is not unusual for an offence to have two or more different fault elements, relating to different aspects of the *actus reus*: the point may be illustrated by considering the several different elements in 'abuse of trust' offences in ss. 16–19 of the Sexual Offences Act 2003, which include the various requirements that D intentionally does the sexual activity, that D knows or could reasonably be expected to know of the circumstances by virtue of which he is in a position of trust in relation to the victim, and which requires no knowledge as to age if the victim is under 13, but requires reasonable belief that the victim is 18 if in fact he or she is aged 13–17. It is much clearer if crimes such as these are analysed in terms of their separate elements—e.g. conduct, circumstances, result—so as to ascertain what form of fault is required in respect of each element.[3] This leads to the second point: as we go through the specific offences in Chapters 7, 8, and 9 we will see that it

is not just the terminology of fault requirements that is diverse (many statutes contain words such as 'maliciously' and 'wilfully') but also their substance (e.g. requirements such as 'dishonestly' and 'fraudulently').

The discussion in this chapter does not purport to cover all fault terms and is confined to positive fault requirements, in other words, the mental element specified in (or implied within) the offence and which the prosecution must establish. Selected for analysis below are core fault terms such as intention, recklessness, knowledge, and negligence (the core fault elements under the US Model Penal Code), together with offences that use other terminology which has been held to impose a form of 'strict' or no-fault liability. One difficulty in focusing on a small range of fault terms is that the existing variety of approaches to fault is not captured, and that any generalization (p. 139) on the basis of a few fault terms may lead to inaccurate conclusions.[4] We will return to that difficulty at the end of the chapter, after laying some foundations for wider discussion.

5.2 Agency, capacity, and mental disorder

One of the fundamental presumptions of the criminal law and criminal liability is that the defendant is 'normal', i.e. is able to function within the normal range of mental and physical capabilities. Many of the principles of individual fairness discussed in Chapter 3 presuppose an individual who is rational and autonomous: otherwise he does not deserve to be liable to criminal punishment. A person who is mentally disordered may fall below these assumed standards of mental capacity and rationality, and this may make it unfair to hold him responsible for his behaviour. It is for this autonomy-based reason that most systems of criminal law contain tests of 'insanity' which result in the exemption of some mentally disordered persons from criminal liability. A similar rationale may be given for the voluntariness requirement, discussed in Chapter 4.2. There is also the prior question of whether the defendant is fit to be tried—whether the person can participate in the trial in a sufficiently meaningful sense. It is an essential precondition of a fair trial, as Antony Duff has argued,[5] that the defendant is a responsible citizen who is answerable before the court. The doctrine of 'unfitness to plead' embodies a procedural attempt to deal with this in relation to mentally disordered defendants.[6] Once it has been decided that a person is fit to plead, there is still the question whether at the time of the alleged act D was a sufficiently responsible moral agent: the defence of insanity, discussed in paragraphs (b) and (c), addresses this issue. Before, that, however, a few words must be said about young children, where legitimate concerns about answerability to the court and moral agency have received an unsatisfactory response from English lawmakers.

(a) The minimum age of criminal responsibility

In England and Wales the minimum age of criminal responsibility is 10, substantially lower than the minimum age in many other European countries (although higher than in some US states), where teenage children are dealt with in civil tribunals up to (p. 140) the age of 13 (France), 14 (Germany), 15 (Scandinavia) or 16 (Spain and Portugal). At common law the presumption of *doli incapax* applied to children under 14, requiring the prosecution to establish that the child knew that the behaviour was seriously wrong before the case could go ahead. The presumption was much criticized,[7] some arguing that children who failed to realize the

wrongness of their behaviour were more in need of conviction and compulsory treatment,[8] and it was abolished by s. 34 of the Crime and Disorder Act 1998.[9] However, it remains important to think about fundamental issues in relation to the responsibility of young offenders. Are they fit to stand trial at the age of 10? Do they have sufficient understanding of the proceedings to participate meaningfully in them? In what sense are they responsible citizens at that age? Can it be said that, when they do criminal things with the required fault element, they are acting as moral agents, in a sufficiently full sense?[10] The first two points were discussed by the European Court of Human Rights in *V and T* v *United Kingdom* (1999),[11] drawing on the United Nations Convention on the Rights of the Child, which does not lay down a minimum age of criminal responsibility but does declare several other relevant standards.[12] The Court held that, although the trial process to which the two 11-year-old applicants were subjected did not amount to 'inhuman and degrading treatment' within Art. 3 of the Convention, the trial did violate Art. 6 in its failure to ensure that the boys understood the proceedings and had the opportunity to participate, and in the failure to reduce feelings of intimidation and inhibition. A subsequent Practice Direction sets out the steps that trial judges should take in these unusual cases in order to comply with Art. 6,[13] but the Strasbourg Court has held that this gives insufficient priority to the need to ensure that all young children have adequate opportunity to participate meaningfully in the criminal trial.[14]

The European Commissioner on Human Rights has specifically recommended that consideration be given to raising the age of criminal responsibility 'in line with norms prevailing across Europe', on the grounds that children of 10, 11, or 12 cannot have sufficient understanding of the nature and consequences of their actions.[15] The cognitive abilities of young children may not be sufficiently developed; their self-control may not yet have developed adequately; and they may be particularly susceptible to **(p. 141)** peer pressure at that age.[16] These are all aspects of moral development and, since childhood and adolescence are the time when moral reasoning and self-control should be learnt, it is not reasonable for the criminal law to demand as much from children as from adults.[17] The case for raising the minimum age of criminal responsibility in England and Wales is overwhelming.[18]

(b) The special verdict of insanity[19]

If the defendant is thought fit to stand trial, then the issue of mental disorder may be raised as a defence; namely, that at the time of the alleged offence D was too disordered to be held liable. Medical evidence will be crucial in determining this,[20] but it is for the law to lay down the appropriate test. Mental disorder is a broad concept under the Mental Health Act 1983, as amended by the Mental Health Act 2007, and few would maintain that all those who fall within one of the four classes of disorder under that Act should be exempted from criminal liability. The criminal law has settled on a much narrower conception of 'insanity', proof of which should lead to a verdict of 'not guilty by reason of insanity'. In order to understand how this defence functions, however, it is important to bear in mind that until the Criminal Procedure (Insanity and Unfitness to Plead) Act 1991 came into force, the result of a successful defence of insanity was mandatory and indefinite commitment to a mental hospital. Whilst research revealed that about one-fifth of defendants thus committed were released within nine months,[21] there was no certainty of, or entitlement to, early release and the potentially severe effect of the insanity verdict was enough to lead many defendants to plead guilty and to hope for a more favourable disposal at the sentencing stage.[22] The 1991 Act gave the court the same discretion after an insanity verdict (except in murder cases, dealt with later) as it has

after a finding of unfitness to plead: hospital order, supervision, absolute discharge.[23] This still leaves the possibility that the court will order deprivation of liberty, even though the defendant has 'succeeded' on a 'defence'. Insanity defences (p. 142) remain rare, with an average of fifteen per year from 1999–2001, but around half of the disposals are community-based, i.e. supervision or absolute discharge.[24]

The possible legal consequences of the insanity verdict show the tension between considerations of individual autonomy and policies of social protection in this sphere, and the same tension is manifest in the evidential and procedural provisions.[25] Insanity is the only general defence where the burden of proof is placed on the defendant,[26] a paradox when one reflects that the consequence of a successful defence may be a court order favouring social protection rather than the defendant's own interests. The prosecution may raise insanity if the defendant pleads diminished responsibility in response to a murder charge,[27] and, according to one view, can do so in all cases where D puts state of mind in issue.[28] The prosecution bears the burden of proving insanity here, which is much more appropriate given the consequences of the verdict of 'not guilty by reason of insanity'.

The requirements of the defence of insanity were laid down by the judges in *M'Naghten's Case* as long ago as 1843:[29]

> to establish a defence on the ground of insanity, it must be clearly proved that, at the time of committing the act, the party accused was labouring under such a defect of reason, from disease of the mind, as not to know the nature and quality of the act he was doing; or, if he did know it, that he did not know he was doing what was wrong.

A 'defect of reason' means the deprivation of reasoning power, and does not apply to temporary absent-mindedness or confusion.[30] It is, however, limited to cognitive defects, and therefore excludes from the insanity defence those forms of mental disorder that involve significant emotional or volitional deficiencies. Although in that respect the definition of insanity is very narrow,[31] in other respects it is so wide as to go well beyond even the general definition of mental disorder in the Mental Health Acts 1983–2007. Thus the phrase 'disease of the mind' has been construed so as to encompass any disease which affects the functioning of the mind—whether its cause be organic or functional, and whether its effect be permanent or intermittent—so long as it was operative at the time of the alleged offence.[32] This means, as we saw (p. 143) in Chapter 4.2(c), that any condition which affects the functioning of the mind and which results from an 'internal' rather than an 'external' cause will be deemed to be a 'disease of the mind', and if D relies on it in his defence he will be held to be raising the defence of insanity. The 'internal factor' doctrine has resulted in epilepsy,[33] sleepwalking,[34] and hyperglycaemia[35] being classified as insanity. This shows that the policy of social protection has gained the upper hand, and that the judiciary has been prepared to overlook the gross unfairness of labelling these people as insane in order to ensure that the court has the power to take measures of social defence against them. Even then, the policy of protection has not been carried to its logical conclusion, since the law now perpetrates the absurdity of classifying *hyper*glycaemia as insanity (protective measures possible under the 1991 Act) whilst, because of the external/internal distinction, classifying *hypo*glycaemia as automatism (resulting in an outright acquittal unless prior fault can be shown).[36] More will be said about

this later.

Where it is established that there was a defect of reason due to disease of the mind, it is then necessary to show that it had one of two effects.[37] First, the defence is fulfilled if D did not know the nature and quality of the act—in other words, did not realize what he was doing. In most cases this would show the absence of intention, knowledge, or recklessness; but since this mental state arises from insanity, considerations of protection are held to require the special verdict rather than an ordinary acquittal. Secondly, the defence is fulfilled if D did not know that he was doing wrong. English law appears ambivalent about the proper approach to this requirement: the Court of Appeal has confirmed that 'wrong' bears the narrow meaning of 'legally wrong',[38] although there is evidence that in practice courts sometimes act upon the Australian interpretation of 'failure to appreciate that the conduct was morally wrong' (usually, where D believes that he must, for some distorted reason, do the act).[39] The main difficulty with English law's insistence on confining this second limb to cases in which D knew that his or her act was legally wrong, is that it is using a test to judge those suffering from certain kinds of mental disorder that negate the moral relevance of the test. In terms of culpability, someone so deluded that he or she kills a boy because he or she thinks that the boy is the re-incarnation of Napoleon, is more or less on a par **(p. 144)** with someone so deluded that he or she kills a girl because he or she believes that the girl is at that moment trying to kill the Queen through the use of supernatural thought powers. Yet, formally, only the latter comes within the scope of the insanity defence. Only in the latter case does D's delusion mean that he or she does not appreciate that what he or she is doing is 'legally' wrong because he or she believes that he is acting necessarily and proportionately in defence of another. By contrast, in the former case, D may think that what he or she did was not morally wrong (preventing a full-grown Napoleon re-appearing on the world stage), but may fully appreciate that it was legally wrong. This is unsatisfactory, but it seems that legislative reform would be required to introduce the broader 'moral wrong' test.

(c) Reform

Two major issues concerning defences of mental disorder emerge from the above discussion: the question of definition and the question of protective measures. In the past, the latter has often driven the former in that the definition has been expanded to include persons against whom compulsory measures are thought to be necessary, whether or not they would be regarded by experts as suffering from a serious mental disorder. The 1991 Act altered the balance somewhat, since committal to a mental hospital is now only a possible and not an inevitable consequence of a special verdict of not guilty by reason of insanity. But the label 'insane' remains, and it is manifestly unsuitable for those whose behaviour stemmed from epilepsy, somnambulism, or diabetes.[40]

Defence lawyers will rightly challenge aspects of the insanity doctrine under the Human Rights Act.[41] Article 5.1(e) of the European Convention allows that 'persons of unsound mind' may lawfully be deprived of their liberty, but the leading decision in *Winterwerp* v *Netherlands*[42] lays down three further requirements. First, there must be a close correspondence between expert medical opinion and the relevant definition of mental disorder: that can hardly be said of a test formulated in 1843 and subsequently held to encompass epilepsy, hyperglycaemia, and sleepwalking.[43] Secondly, the court's decision must be based on 'objective medical expertise', a requirement that could be used in conjunction with the 1991 Act to hold that

psychiatric reports to the court should be accorded more weight than under the restrictive M'Naghten test.[44] Thirdly, the court must decide that the mental disorder is 'of a kind or degree warranting (p. 145) compulsory confinement', and until the law was changed in 2004 the court had no opportunity to make such a determination in murder cases.[45]

Although arguments based on Art. 5 only have purchase at the stage where D is deprived of liberty, they are relevant in many cases and it would be best if the defence of insanity itself were reformed sensibly before piecemeal challenges are mounted under the Human Rights Act. The M'Naghten Rules are widely recognized to be outmoded. They refer only to mental disorders which affect the cognitive faculties, i.e. knowledge of what one is doing, or of its wrongness, whereas some forms of mental disorder impair practical reasoning and the power of control over actions. This is now recognized in the 'diminished responsibility' doctrine in manslaughter,[46] which includes cases of 'irresistible impulse', and it should clearly be recognized as part of a reformed mental disorder defence. The Model Penal Code accomplishes this by referring to mental disorders which result in D lacking 'substantial capacity either to appreciate the wrongfulness of his conduct or to conform his conduct to the requirements of the law'.[47] The Butler Committee proposed to take this into account in a different way—by ensuring that one ground for a mental-disorder verdict is that, at the time of the alleged offence, D was suffering severe mental illness or handicap.[48] In other words, if the mental disorder was severe in degree, there should be no need to establish that it affected D's cognition: so long as the court is satisfied that the conduct was attributable to that disorder, the special verdict should be returned. It therefore includes both cognitive and volitional deficiencies, and places the insanity verdict more squarely on the ground of incapacity.[49] In doing so, however, it takes a somewhat static view of mental disorder, confining it more or less to the major psychoses.[50] It fails to recognize the variety of mental disorders, and the fact that some of them may substantially impair the patient's practical reasoning even though the diagnosis contains some contestable elements that not all experts agree on. Psychiatry has been attacked for offering diagnoses when these inevitably contestable elements are in issue, but the proper response is to recognize and discuss the contestible elements rather than to deny that they should influence criminal liability in any circumstances.[51]

Only to a small extent is this conservative approach to mental disorder mitigated by the second limb of the Butler proposals, also to be found in a revised form in the Draft (p. 146) Criminal Code.[52] This provides for evidence of mental disorder to be adduced to show that D lacked the mental element for the crime. The Law Commission, unlike the Butler Committee, would limit the type of mental disorder that may be relied upon here to 'severe mental illness' and 'incomplete development of mind'. The Commission cited the danger of allowing too wide a definition, which would sweep in too many defendants.[53] However, the proposed definition is framed so as to include cases of 'pathological automatism that is liable to recur', and again classifies diabetes and epilepsy within mental disorder for reasons of social protection.[54] This is both contrary to the principle of fair labelling[55] and in violation of the European Convention, and should be abandoned. A separate form of defence should be devised for this group of conditions. Of course this leads to the problem of drawing a definitional line between 'insanity' and 'automatism', and it was the difficulty of doing so that led the Law Commission to bring these cases within the mental disorder defence, believing that this would be less 'offensive' and 'preposterous' than the insanity label.[56] Even if that answers the fair labelling argument, it leaves the European Convention challenge unaffected unless it is provided that no person with those conditions shall be deprived of liberty—and that, again, would require a separate

definition.

5.3 Corporate liability

(a) Natural and corporate personality

Most discussion of criminal liability is concerned with individual defendants as authors of acts or omissions, raising questions of respect for the autonomy of individuals. We saw in Chapters 2.1 and 2.2 that a developed notion of autonomy is not solely about negative liberty, i.e. protecting individuals from harm, but also involves elements of positive liberty or welfare, i.e. providing facilities and social arrangements whereby individuals can exercise autonomy more fully. By providing a framework for individuals to form companies and corporations, the legal system contributes to this end. Corporate activities now play a major part in individual and commercial life—through companies as employers, as providers of goods and services, as providers of transport and of recreational facilities, and so forth. The criminal law has made increasing inroads into these spheres in recent years. The courts have developed doctrines of vicarious and corporate liability, and the legislature had introduced new offences directed specifically at corporate activities in the financial and commercial sphere (e.g. Financial Services and Markets Act 2000, and the Companies Acts 1985–9). Yet historically the criminal law has developed around the notion of individual human **(p. 147)** beings as the bearers of rights and duties. It is still somewhat trapped in that framework, even though the idea of companies as separate legal entities from their shareholders and their management was established in the nineteenth century. A limited liability company has long been treated as a separate legal entity from the person or persons who control it.[57]

The present theory, then, is that corporate personality attaches to companies just as natural personality attaches to individuals (with certain modifications). But does this theory, which has a secure grip in company law, mean that companies can be convicted of offences? The courts moved slowly in this direction in the mid-nineteenth century. Although still doubting whether companies could be said to *do* 'acts', the courts overcame any reluctance to hold companies liable for *failing* to act[58] and for committing a public nuisance.[59] The driving force behind these innovative decisions, both concerning railway companies in the early days of rail travel, was not legal theory but social protection: 'there can be no effective means of deterring from an oppressive exercise of power, for the purpose of gain, except the remedy by an indictment against those who truly commit it, that is, the corporation acting by its majority'.[60] And from there the law developed towards criminal liability for companies, acting through their controlling officers.[61]

(b) Towards corporate criminal liability

This subject was given a pressing social importance in the late 1980s by the series of disasters connected with corporate activities and involving considerable loss of life—for example, the Piper Alpha oil rig explosion, the Clapham rail disaster, the King's Cross fire, the sinking of the *Marchioness*, and in 1987 the capsize of the ferry *Herald of Free Enterprise*. It does not make sense to present each of these, and the string of subsequent transportation disasters, as the responsibility of a few individuals. Indeed, enquiries into the disasters have tended to emphasize the role of deficiencies in the systems of corporate management and accountability. Major disasters apart, a variety of organizations offer evidence of a constant

stream of incidents of industrial pollution, unsafe working conditions, impure foods, and unfair business practices which impinge upon, or threaten to impinge upon, the lives of individual citizens.

Growing recognition of the significance of corporate harm-doing has not, however, been accompanied by substantial alteration of the framework of criminal liability. The trend, as we shall see, has been to attempt to fit corporate liability into the existing structure rather than to consider its implications afresh. And, more important in social terms, there has been little change of approach at the level of enforcement. (p. 148) It is one thing to have a set of laws which penalizes corporate wrongdoing as well as individual wrongdoing. It is quite another thing to have a balanced machinery of enforcement which strives to ensure the proportionate treatment of individuals and companies according to the relative seriousness of their offences. Present arrangements seem to draw a strong line between frequent police action against individuals and the relatively infrequent action of the various inspectorates, government departments, etc. against companies.[62] However, the social calculation cannot be presented simply as an imbalance in treatment between 'crime in the streets' and 'crime in the suites'. We must also take into account the finding of social surveys that it is street crimes that cause real harm and fear to people, not least to those who are already among the most disadvantaged in society.[63] It is therefore a question for discussion whether devoting large resources to the detection and prosecution of corporate harm-doers would be either defensible or socially acceptable.

There are some straightforward applications of the doctrine that a company is a legal person, separate from the individuals involved in its operations. Thus, for example, two principal provisions of the Health and Safety at Work Act 1974 are as follows:

> s 2 (1) It shall be the duty of every employer to ensure, so far as is reasonably practicable, the health, safety and welfare at work of all his employees.
>
> s 3 (1) It shall be the duty of every employer to conduct his undertaking in such a way as to ensure, so far as is reasonably practicable, that persons not in his employment who may be affected thereby are not thereby exposed to risks to their health and safety.

These provisions, in conjunction with s. 33 of the Act (which creates an offence of failing to discharge either duty), are clearly directed at companies no less than at individual employers.[64] Thus in *British Steel plc*[65] the company was convicted of failing to discharge its duty under s. 3 of the Act. During an operation to re-locate a steel platform, under the supervision of a British Steel employee, an unsafe method of working led to the collapse of the platform and a sub-contracted worker was killed. The Court of Appeal upheld the conviction, on the basis that it was the employer on whom the duty was imposed, and the duty had clearly not been discharged. Similar reasoning can be used to hold companies liable for a whole range of offences of strict liability: just as much as any individual, companies can cause pollution, sell goods, fail to submit annual returns, etc. An offence of strict liability is one which requires no fault for conviction: any person may be found guilty simply through doing or failing to do a (p. 149) certain act.[66] Thus, if a company owns the business or premises concerned,

it may be convicted of failing to control emissions of pollutants, or for causing polluting matter to enter a stream, whether or not these events come about through fault on the company's part.[67]

(i) The Possibility of Vicarious Liability:

Outside the criminal law there have been further developments, and the law of torts has established a doctrine of vicarious liability of employers for the conduct of their employees.[68] By contrast with Federal law in the USA,[69] there is no such general doctrine in the criminal law, but various exceptions and quasi-exceptions are gaining a foothold. One is the 'delegation principle': where a statute imposes liability on the owner, licensee, or keeper of premises or other property, the courts will make that person vicariously liable for the conduct of anyone to whom management of the premises has been delegated.[70] This applies whether the defendant is an individual or a company. The underlying reason for this principle seems to lie in the assumption that such offences would otherwise be unenforceable, since delegation would remove responsibility from the person in effective control.[71] The second exception revolves around the interpretation of such key words in statutes as 'sell', 'use', and 'possess'. The clearest example is where a statute prohibits the selling of goods in certain circumstances. *Coppen* v *Moore (No. 2)* (1898)[72] held the shop owner liable as the person who sold the goods in law, even though he was away from the shop at the time and an assistant carried out the transaction—in breach of the instructions left by the owner. So long as the assistant is acting as an agent rather than as a private individual, 'vicarious' liability is imposed.[73] In effect, a similar result flowed from the application of s. 3 of the Health and Safety at Work Act 1974 in the *British Steel* case, since the company was held liable for the inadequate supervision by its own employee.[74] A third exception or quasi-exception arises where a statutory offence penalizes conduct that appears to require a personal act, such as 'using' a motor **(p. 150)** vehicle with defective brakes: in *James & Son* v *Smee*[75] the Divisional Court held the company liable, on the basis that the use of the vehicle by an employee in the course of employment constituted use by the employer.

These examples of vicarious liability in the criminal law may appear not to respect the principle of individual autonomy, in so far as they hold people (or a company) liable for something that was not their own voluntary act or omission. They can be justified only on the principle of welfare and, even then, they should be made to respect 'rule of law' values by ensuring fair warning of the standards expected. Fair warning is not assured if decisions are made by way of statutory interpretation in the courts, rather than clearly by the legislature.

(ii) The Identification Principle:

We now return to corporate liability as such. Most of the instances discussed so far concern offences of strict liability, where it is often easier to construe a statute so as to impose direct liability on a company. In 1944 the courts began to develop a new doctrine which imposes liability on companies for offences requiring a mental element. In *DPP* v *Kent and Sussex Contractors Ltd*[76] the defendant company was charged with two offences—making a statement which was known to be false, and using a false document with intent to deceive. The Divisional Court held that the company could be convicted of both offences, on the basis that its officers possessed the required 'knowledge' and 'intent to deceive', and that those states of mind could therefore be imputed to the company itself. As Viscount Caldecote CJ held, 'a

company is incapable of acting or speaking or even thinking except in so far as its officers have acted, spoken or thought'. Thus the company is identified with those officers who are its 'directing mind and will' for these purposes.[77] This identification principle was applied in the leading case of *Tesco Supermarkets* v *Nattrass* (1971),[78] where the company had been convicted of offering to sell goods at a higher price than indicated, contrary to the Trade Descriptions Act 1968. A shop assistant at a local Tesco store had failed to follow the manager's instructions, with the result that the goods were offered at a higher price than advertised. The House of Lords quashed the conviction, holding that the manager of one of the company's supermarkets was not sufficiently high up in the organization to 'represent the directing mind and will of the company'. The identification principle is therefore fairly narrow in its scope. It allows large companies to disassociate themselves from the conduct of their local managers, and thus to avoid criminal liability. Moreover, where a large national or multi-national company is prosecuted, the identification principle requires the prosecution to establish that one of the directors or top managers had the required knowledge or culpability. Managers at such a high level tend to focus on broader policy issues, not working practices. Thus it may be considerably easier to achieve convictions in respect of the (p. 151) activities of small companies than of large corporations, because there will tend to be more 'hands-on' management in small companies.[79]

The seeds for an expansion of the *Tesco* v *Nattrass* test have been sown by Lord Hoffmann, speaking for the Privy Council in *Meridian Global Funds Management Asia Ltd* v *Securities Commission* (1996).[80] Courts should be prepared to go beyond the people who represent the 'directing mind and will' of a company, and to enquire, in the context of the particular offence, 'whose act (or knowledge, or state of mind) was *for this purpose* intended to count as the act, etc., of the company?' The reach of this extension is unclear, since much turns on the statutory context. In this case it enabled the conviction of the company on the basis of the knowledge of two investment managers that they were making unlawful investments. When the Court of Appeal was invited to extend the identification principle along these lines in *Attorney-General's Reference (No. 2 of 1999)*,[81] a case arising from the Southall train crash, it declined to do so. Rose LJ held that:

> The identification theory, attributing to the company the mind and will of senior directors and managers, was developed in order to avoid injustice: it would bring the law into disrepute if every act and state of mind of an individual employee was attributed to a company which was entirely blameless.[82]

The terms of this statement beg a number of questions, but it was clear from the judgment that the Court of Appeal thought that any significant extension of the judge-made identification principle should be left to Parliament.

(c) Individualism and corporatism

The history of legal developments in this sphere suggests a somewhat slow progress towards integrating corporations into a legal framework constructed for individuals, with few gestures towards the differences between corporations and individual human beings.[83] There are those who argue that social phenomena can only be interpreted through the actions and motivations

of individuals, and abstractions like corporations constitute barriers to proper understanding.[84] Only individuals can *do* things, and so the law is right to concentrate its attentions upon them. Indeed, any other view might threaten the principle of individual autonomy by holding people liable when they did no voluntary act.

(p. 152) The weakness of this argument is that individual actions can often be explained fully only by reference to the social and structural context in which they were carried out. When the managing director of a company is announcing a commercial strategy, he or she is acting not merely as an individual but also as an officer of the company. Without reference to the structure and policies of the company and to that person's role within it, there can be no proper explanation of what was said and done. The argument, therefore, is that the behaviour of individuals is often shaped by their relationship to groups and collectivities—'shaped' in a meaningful sense, not 'determined' in the sense that individual autonomy is lost in the process (since individuals normally have some liberty to disengage themselves from the corporation). The thrust is that companies often have a policy structure and a dynamic of their own which to some extent transcend the actions of their individual officers. Perhaps the clearest application of this can be found in offences of omission, particularly those involving strict liability. In a case like *Alphacell Ltd* v *Woodward* (1972),[85] where polluting matter escaped from the company's premises into a river, it seems both fairer and more accurate to convict the company rather than to label one individual as the offender: where the law imposes a duty, the company should be organized so as to ensure that the duty is fulfilled.

None of this is meant to suggest that individuals within a corporation should not bear personal responsibility for their conduct. In appropriate cases they should do so, provided that they had fair warning of any special duties attached to the activities of the company.[86] The important point is that companies should be open to both criminal and civil liability, since it is they who create the structural context for the individual's conduct *qua* company officer. The corporation appoints the individual and sustains him in this position—the individual is in that place, doing that thing, because of the corporation—and so it is right that the corporation should bear primary liability, or at least concurrent liability with its officer. This does not mean that legality and 'rule of law' principles should be neglected: companies are run by individuals, who ought to receive fair warning of their duties. All these arguments may need adjusting for small, even one-person, companies and also for non-profit organizations. Moreover, they leave open the question whether the criminal law in its traditional form is the most appropriate means of dealing with corporate harm-doing.

(d) Changing the basis of corporate liability

The theoretical arguments in favour of corporate criminal liability seem strong, but developments at common law have been slow. The 'identification principle' in *Tesco Supermarkets* v *Nattrass*[87] has a relatively narrow sphere of operation, and there has **(p. 153)** been little judicial enthusiasm for the greater flexibility proposed in the *Meridian* case.[88] A small number of statutes impose direct or vicarious liability on companies, the Health and Safety at Work Act 1974 being an example, but there is no such general approach. An alternative strategy of placing the emphasis on individual liability would be unlikely to work with larger companies: any particular individual might be dispensable within a corporation (e.g. the 'Company Vice-President responsible for going to gaol'), allowing the company to continue on its course with minimal disruption. It might also be difficult to identify the individual responsible,

not least because the lines of accountability within companies are sometimes unclear, although with smaller companies, which are far more numerous, this might be workable.

A number of different approaches have been canvassed in recent years. Celia Wells, whilst emphasizing the need to re-assess the socio-political role of corporations and of individuals within them, lends support to an approach that depends partly on a version of aggregation, whereby a company's culpability should be constructed out of the knowledge and the attitudes of employees as a whole,[89] and partly on the need to ensure that individual company officers are prosecuted where appropriate. Another, complementary approach would be to use company policies, or their absence, as the basis for liability. This follows the approach of Brent Fisse and John Braithwaite, and in particular their concept of 'reactive fault'.[90] In their view, rather than expending prosecutorial energy and court time trying to disentangle the often convoluted internal structures and policies of corporations, the law should require a company which has caused or threatened a proscribed harm to take its own disciplinary and rectificatory measures. A court would then assess the adequacy of the measures taken. The concept of fault would thus be a *post hoc* phenomenon. Rather than struggling to establish some antecedent fault within the corporation, the prosecution would invite the court to infer fault from the nature and effectiveness of the company's remedial measures after it has been established that it was the author of a harm-causing or harm-threatening act or omission. The court would not find fault if it was persuaded that the company had taken realistic measures to prevent a recurrence, had ensured compensation to any victims, and had taken the event seriously in other respects. The whole orientation of the system would be different: every death caused, whether purely accidental or not, would be treated as potentially a serious offence until the company established otherwise.[91]

Following a lengthy process of discussion and negotiation, a new form of corporate liability has now been introduced in the limited (but high-profile) area of homicide.[92] The Corporate Manslaughter and Corporate Homicide Act 2007 introduces a new offence of corporate manslaughter, which can be committed only by 'organizations' and not by individuals. The legislative framework of the new offence is highly **(p. 154)** technical, but for present purposes we can focus on the mechanism by which liability is imposed. Section 1 of the 2007 Act provides:

> An organisation…is guilty of an offence if the way in which its activities are managed or organised—
>
> • causes a person's death, and
>
> • amounts to a gross breach of a relevant duty of care owed by the organisation to the deceased.

Three features of the new Act's approach stand out. First, it applies to 'organizations', which include companies, partnerships, and various associations and government departments. This is controversial, but is not pursued here. Secondly, the offence is only committed if 'the way in which its activities are managed and organized by its senior management is a substantial element in the breach' of duty. This focus on 'senior management' is developed by s. 1(4), which provides that senior managers must be persons who 'play significant roles' in either

decision-making or managing the whole or a substantial part of the organization's activities. This shows that the model of corporate liability adopted in the 2007 Act has not strayed far from the 'identification principle' that has developed at common law. It is, to be blunt, doubtful if the manager of a large Tesco superstore plays a significant role in managing a substantial part of Tesco's activities. If the company is to be prosecuted under the 2007 Act, it must be shown that people at a higher level in a large organization organized the relevant activities in such a way as to amount to a substantial element in the breach. Thirdly, however, s. 8 of the Act directs the jury to consider any alleged breach of health and safety legislation, and permits the jury to take account of evidence of 'attitudes, policies, systems or accepted practices within the organization that were likely to have encouraged' any failure to meet safety standards. This suggests that evidence of what is sometimes called 'corporate culture' may be determinative in some cases.

Whether this new approach will be thought to achieve justice in homicide cases remains to be tested. Certainly it seems to be a rather narrow approach to serve as a model for corporate criminal liability generally, and so the quest for a fairer set of principles must go on. The new approach also serves to raise the wider question of whether it is the conviction of organizations that is the most important aspect, or whether the sentencing of organizations should be regarded as important too. A company can hardly be imprisoned, moderate fines can be swallowed up as business overheads, and swingeing fines may have such drastic side-effects on the employment and livelihoods of innocent employees as to render them inappropriate. Fisse and Braithwaite have proposed a range of special penalties, some of which are rehabilitative (putting corporations on probation to supervise their compliance with the law), some of which are deterrent (punitive injunctions to require resources to be devoted to the development of new preventive measures), and others of which have mixed aims (e.g. community service by companies).[93] In their view, the primary search should be for a regime which **(p. 155)** ensures maximum prevention. The 2007 Act provides for three types of sentence—publicity orders (requiring the organization to make it known that it has been convicted of this offence); remedial orders (requiring the offender to remedy the causes of the homicide); and fines (which may prove problematic for the reasons given above, and which are questionable in so far as they may have deleterious effects on the level of public service provided by organizations such as hospital trusts and the police).

5.4 Fault and *mens rea*: general principles

(a) Choice and the subjective principles

The principle of *mens rea* has already been outlined in Chapter 3.6(o), together with the related principles of correspondence (Chapter 3.6(q)) and of fair labelling (Chapter 3.6(s)). The essence of the principle of *mens rea* is that criminal liability should be imposed only on persons who are sufficiently aware of what they are doing, and of the consequences it may have, that they can fairly be said to have chosen the behaviour and its consequences. This approach is grounded in the principle of autonomy (Chapter 2.1): individuals are regarded as autonomous persons with a general capacity to choose among alternative courses of behaviour, and respect for their autonomy means holding them liable only on the basis of their choices.[94] The principle of *mens rea* may also be claimed to enhance the constitutional values of legality and rule of law, by reassuring citizens that they will be liable to conviction,

and to the exercise of state coercion against them, only if they intentionally or knowingly cause or risk causing a prohibited harm. If this were achieved, the criminal law would ensure that 'each person is guaranteed a greatest liberty, capacity and opportunity of controlling and predicting the consequences of his or her actions compatible with a like liberty, capacity and opportunity for all'.[95] What this liberal view rejects is an approach which holds people criminally liable solely on the ground that liability and punishment would have a general deterrent effect in preventing further harms. That approach, associated with utilitarian theories,[96] looks to the probable social effects of liability and punishment, denying the individual defendant any special status in the matter: if the punishment of people in D's position would have an overall deterrent effect, then D should be punished, even though he or she cannot be said to have *chosen* to cause the harm. Deterrent theories therefore tend to give priority to social protection. Theories of punishment in the liberal tradition may recognize the relevance of social protection, at least at the level of justifying the criminal law itself and justifying the criminalization of certain conduct, but at the level of individual liability to conviction and censure **(p. 156)** they insist that respect for the principle of individual autonomy has superior value to general calculations of social utility. (This means that they must either denounce strict liability offences, or find some plausible argument in their favour.)

The principle of *mens rea* also encompasses the belief principle, which holds that criminal liability should be based on what defendants believed they were doing or risking, not on actual facts which were not known to them at the time. Also flowing from the principle of *mens rea*, as we saw in Chapter 3.6(q), is the principle of correspondence, which insists that the fault element for a crime should correspond to the conduct element specified for the crime. Thus, if the conduct element is 'causing serious injury', then the fault element ought to be 'intention or recklessness as to causing serious injury'; a lesser fault element, such as 'intention or recklessness as to a mere assault', would breach the principle of correspondence. This makes the point that the notion of choice is not an abstract phenomenon, but should in principle be linked to the circumstances or consequences specified in the definition of each crime.

Do the notions of fault and choice that underlie the principle of *mens rea* have a wider application? While the principle of *mens rea* supports only criminal liability for intention, knowledge, and (subjective) recklessness, there are serious questions about whether gross negligence, or even negligence, can be said to involve sufficient fault and choice to justify the imposition of criminal liability. English law contains several offences of negligence, whereas the tendency of commentators has been to regard them as aberrant and calling for special justification. This discussion will be taken further in paragraphs 5(f) and 5(g).

(b) Constructive liability and 'moral luck'

We have already seen, in Chapter 3.6(q), that subjectivists tend to place high value not only on the principle of *mens rea* and on the belief principle (that D should be judged on the facts as he believed them to be), but also on the principle of correspondence (that in relation to each conduct element of an offence, the fault requirement should be at the same level). We also noted, in Chapter 3.6(p), that this is disputed by advocates of constructive liability, arguing that once D has crossed a significant moral threshold he should be held liable for whatever consequences follow. We will see in later chapters that among the examples of constructive liability are manslaughter by unlawful act (Chapter 7.5) and unlawful wounding (Chapter 8.3). Offences of this kind allow what is termed 'moral luck' to play a significant role in

determining the level of criminal liability. As elaborated in Chapter 3.6(q) and (r), subjectivists tend to oppose the intrusion of moral luck into criminal liability. The argument is that the criminal law should blame people for what they intended or foresaw and for what lay within their control: it should draw a straight line through the vicissitudes of life and the vagaries of fortune when determining the extent of criminal liability.[97] A different view is taken (p. 157) by moderate constructivists.[98] Like subjectivists, moderate constructivists accept that the criminal law should respect the rule of law and should maintain 'clear and certain offence definitions, good publicity, and conformity between announced rule and adjudicative standard'.[99] However, moderate constructivists reject the principle of correspondence between the level of the conduct element and the level of the fault or *mens rea*, and instead argue that, so long as D intentionally commits a relevant offence, that fault is sufficient to justify conviction for a more serious offence in the same family if an unanticipated and more serious consequence results.[100] This is because:

> By committing an assault one changes one's normative position, so that certain adverse consequences and circumstances that would not have counted against one but for one's original assault now count against one automatically, and add to one's crime.[101]

This is John Gardner's statement of the doctrine of 'change of normative position:' as he accepts, to assert that such a change takes place when D intentionally commits a relevant offence does not supply a justification for imposing moderately constructive liability on D.[102] More work needs to be done if the 'change of normative position' argument is to be a convincing rationale for moderate constructivism. In the meantime, as argued in Chapter 3.6(r), the criminal law should give precedence to the principle of correspondence.

(c) The principle of contemporaneity

As we saw in Chapter 3.6(u), the principle of contemporaneity states that the fault element must coincide in point of time with the conduct element in order to amount to an offence. This forms part of the ideology that the function of the criminal law is not to judge a person's general character or behaviour over a period of time; its concern is only with the distinct criminal conduct charged. According to this view, whether or not criminal conviction is deserved depends on D's conduct and mental attitude at the relevant time. But this narrow statement of the principle, if indeed it ever represented a complete statement of the law,[103] has been progressively abandoned in the face of intuitions to the contrary exemplified in leading cases. In the famous case of *Fagan* v (p. 158) *Metropolitan Police Commissioner* (1969)[104] D accidentally drove his car on to a policeman's foot, and then deliberately left it there for a minute or so. The defence to a charge of assault was that the conduct element (applying force) had finished before the fault element began; the act and the intent never coincided. The Divisional Court held that D's conduct in driving the car on to the foot and leaving it there should be viewed as a continuing act, so that the crime was committed when the fault element (D's realization of what had happened and decision to leave the car there) came together with the continuing conduct. This is not the only occasion on which the courts have invoked the notion of a 'continuing act' to expand the timeframe of a crime and thus the application of the principle of contemporaneity.[105] However, a different approach was taken by the House of Lords in *Miller* (1982),[106] the case in which a squatter was smoking in bed,

accidentally set the mattress on fire, but simply moved to another room without attempting to remedy the problem, with the result that the house caught fire. Lord Diplock did not reject the view that the fire was a continuing act that began accidentally but could then be connected with D's fault when he realized that the mattress was on fire. However, his Lordship expressed a preference for the 'duty' analysis, whereby the accidental creation of danger gave rise to a duty (a continuing duty to avert the danger caused) which in this case D knowingly failed to discharge.

The continuing act approach seems to exert an influence in another area. In *Thabo Meli* v *R* (1954)[107] the plan was to kill V in a hut and then throw his body over a cliff: this was what D believed he was doing, but in fact V died from the fall down the cliff and not from the beating in the hut. The argument for the appellant was based on the lack of contemporaneity (this time it was intent first, death later), but the Privy Council rejected this, holding that the beating and the disposal over the cliff formed part of a planned series of acts which should be regarded as a single course of conduct. On this analysis, the presence of the fault element at any stage during the planned sequence would suffice. That reasoning was extended in *Church* (1966)[108] to cover a series of acts which had not been planned but which simply followed one after the other. Subsequently, in *Le Brun* (1991)[109] the Court of Appeal had to deal with a case in which D had assaulted his wife, and then when he tried to move her unconscious body dropped her, causing her to suffer a fractured skull from which she died. The Court held that the conduct and the fault elements 'need not coincide in point of time' so long as they formed part of a 'sequence of events', particularly in a case such as this where D's later acts were attempts to conceal his initial offence. All these cases could have resulted in convictions for other offences (attempted murder in *Thabo Meli*, grievous or actual bodily harm in the last two cases), but the courts apparently took the view that since the consequence—death—resulted **(p. 159)** from D's original culpable conduct, homicide convictions ought to be registered. A similar analysis would be possible in non-homicide cases. The decisions therefore take a rather elastic view of the contemporaneity principle, and seem to be motivated by considerations akin to constructive liability.[110]

It is convenient to deal here with one more awkward situation relating to the link between conduct and fault. In *Attorney-General's Reference (No. 4 of 1980)* (1981),[111] it appeared that D was arguing with his female partner at the top of a flight of stairs, that he pushed her away and she fell backwards down the stairs, that he concluded she was dead, and then dragged her back to their flat with a rope around her neck and cut up her body. The Court of Appeal held that there could be a conviction on these facts, even though it was not clear which of D's acts caused death. So long as the jury was satisfied that D had sufficient fault for manslaughter when he pushed her backwards, and sufficient fault for manslaughter when he cut up her body,[112] it was immaterial which act caused death. The facts of this case are somewhat stronger than the facts of *Thabo Meli*, *Church*, and *Le Brun*, since in all of those cases it was clear that it was not D's initial act that caused death. Surely in the *Reference* case it should have been possible to convict D if the court was satisfied that there was a sequence of events and that D had the required fault element at some stage; the actual facts, however, were taken not to raise this point.

(d) The doctrine of prior fault

We saw in Chapter 3.6(v) that the principle of contemporaneity conflicts in certain situations

with the doctrine of prior fault—the principle that a person should not be allowed to take advantage of any defence or partial defence to criminal liability if the relevant condition or circumstances were brought about by his or her own fault. Whilst the contemporaneity principle insists that the criminal law is concerned with the prohibited event itself, not with its antecedents or its sequels, the doctrine of prior fault points to circumstances in which the antecedents of the event ought (by way of principled exception) to affect a proper moral evaluation of D's conduct. Two examples of the doctrine's operation may be given. First, a person who deliberately drinks to excess in order to stoke up the courage to do a certain act will not be allowed to rely on that intoxication by way of defence because it arose from prior fault.[113] Secondly, if D taunts another in the hope of inducing the other to attack him, D should not be able to rely on loss of self-control or self-defence as a defence to a charge of murder, because the attack on D will be regarded as self-induced.[114] Examples of the doctrine of prior (p. 160) fault in operation were noted in Chapter 4, in relation to automatism and self-defence, and will be seen in abundance in Chapter 6 (on intoxication, duress, necessity, etc.).

One remaining question concerns the amount of 'fault' required for the doctrine to take effect. A study by Paul Robinson revealed considerable diversity of provisions in the Model Penal Code and in American laws generally,[115] and a similar diversity appears in England.[116] Should *any* causal contribution by D make a defence unavailable, or should it be a lack of proper care (for example, drinking alcohol when its possible effects are widely known,[117] joining a gang which is known to use violence[118]), or should the doctrine require proof that D foresaw the possibility that certain conduct might follow? The differences between these approaches ought not to be regarded as unimportant, since the withdrawal of a *defence* simply on the grounds of some small amount of fault on D's part is equivalent to a principle of constructive liability for *offences*. One way of avoiding this difficulty would be to devise a range of offences to cover 'faulty' acts (e.g. excessive consumption of alcohol), and then convict D of an offence of that kind—whilst not removing any defence to the substantive crime which might otherwise be open.[119] This would introduce further complexities into the law, but at least it attempts a fair solution to a difficult problem.

5.5 Varieties of fault

Having introduced the subjective principles and some problems of contemporaneity of conduct and fault, we now move to the core fault elements. First to be considered is strict liability, for which there may be little or no fault at all. One reason for considering these offences first is that they are the most numerous, a fact that belies the prominence often given to intention and recklessness in the rhetoric of English criminal law. We then turn to the *mens rea* terms of intention, recklessness, and knowledge, before exploring the little-used concept of negligence.

(a) Strict liability[120]

There is no clear convention about when criminal liability should be classified as 'strict'. We will use the term here to indicate those offences of which a person may be convicted without proof of intention, knowledge, recklessness, or negligence. Some offences prescribe liability without fault but allow the defendant to avoid liability on proof of 'due diligence'. There is dispute about whether offences with such provisos (p. 161) are properly termed 'strict liability' offences,[121] but for our present purposes they will be included within the concept of

strict liability. This corresponds with the Canadian approach, which separates strict liability (where a defendant can avoid liability by establishing that there was no negligence) from absolute liability (where the only defences available relate to fundamental elements of capacity or necessity).[122] The term 'absolute liability' has its own difficulties, however, since one can argue that liability should only be described as absolute where there is no defence available at all to someone who is proved to have caused the prohibited event. What this shows, above all, is that there is no settled terminology to give simple expression to the numerous permutations of conditions for liability. If one takes account of the device of shifting the burden of proof on to the defendant, then the permutations range from requiring *mens rea*—with the burden of proof on the prosecution—to defining special defences or provisos with an evidential burden on D, defining special defences or provisos with a legal burden of proof on D, requiring proof of negligence by the prosecution, creating a no-negligence defence to be proved by D, imposing liability with no due diligence defence at all, and even to a dispensation from proving an element of the offence.[123]

(i) For and Against Strict Liability:

Let us leave aside the complexities introduced by changes in the burden of proof, and formulate a central question: what are the arguments for imposing criminal liability with no due diligence defence available? The main argument is a form of protectionism or 'social defence'. It maintains that one of the primary aims of the criminal law is the protection of fundamental social interests. Why should this function be abandoned when the violation of those interests resulted from some accident or mistake by D? Surely, Wootton argued, '*mens rea* has got into the wrong place': it should be relevant not to the actual conviction, but to the appropriate means of dealing with the offender after conviction. 'If the object of the criminal law is to prevent the occurrence of socially damaging actions, it would be absurd to turn a blind eye to those which were due to carelessness, negligence or even accident. The question of motivation is in the first instance irrelevant.'[124] At a time when victims' interests are receiving greater recognition, arguments of this kind may find considerable support. The infliction of the prohibited harm would become the trigger for state action, aimed at minimizing the risk of the harm being repeated.

The strength of the argument lies in its concern for the welfare of citizens in general. Its weakness is to suggest that this is a justification for using the *criminal law* in **(p. 162)** *this* way. There are two major questions to be answered here: would it be fair? Would it be effective? The fairness issue is one which runs through this chapter and, indeed, through the whole book. The criminal law is society's most condemnatory instrument, and, as argued in Chapter 2.1, Chapter 3.6, and section 5.4(a), respect for individual autonomy requires that criminal liability be imposed only where there has been choice by D. A person should not be censured for wrongdoing without proof of choice (as distinct, perhaps, from being held civilly liable). This is a fundamental requirement of fairness to defendants. Indeed, it is not only unfair to censure people who are not culpable, but also unfair to punish them for the offence. Moreover, in so far as the criminal trial has a communicative function, strict liability impairs this by severely limiting D's ability to explain, excuse, or justify the conduct and by requiring a conviction in all but exceptional circumstances.[125]

Opponents of subjectivism may dismiss this as a mere matter of convention—and outmoded convention at that. The criminal law should simply be regarded as an efficient social resource

for the prevention of harm,[126] with conviction carrying no special moral connotations of 'guilt' or 'blame'. Is there not something incongruous, in a world in which avoidable deaths and injuries are much too frequent and cause much grief and insecurity, for the State meticulously to observe the 'intent' and 'belief' principles, the presumption of innocence, and other fairness principles so as to facilitate the acquittal of clumsy, ignorant, but nevertheless dangerous people?[127] One answer to this challenge is to reassert that the prevention of harm is neither the sole nor the overriding aim of the criminal law, and that the criminal law is not the only official means of preventing harm. Even Bentham, whose general approach was to transcend individual considerations and to weigh the social benefits against the social disadvantages of criminal liability, argued that criminal punishment is an evil which should be reserved for the worst cases, and that legislators should turn first to education, regulation, and civil liability as means of preventing harms.[128]

The subjective principles reflect the value of individual autonomy, but many of the harms which afflict, or threaten to afflict, citizens today are the result of the acts or omissions of corporations. Pollution, defective products, food and drugs, safety at work, transport systems—all these sources of danger are dominated by corporate undertakings. We saw in section 3 of this chapter that the traditional doctrines of the criminal law have various shortcomings when applied to corporate decision-making and responsibility. Once a secure basis for corporate liability is found, the next question would concern the appropriate conditions of liability for companies. Some corporations operate in spheres of such potential social danger, and wield such power **(p. 163)** (in terms of economic resources and influence), that there is no social unfairness in holding them to higher standards than individuals when it comes to criminal liability—so long as fair warning is given, since companies are run by individuals. This is particularly so when companies operate in spheres where public safety may be at risk. However, the same cannot generally be said of individuals, save in exceptional categories such as road traffic offences, where a licence to drive is required and safety is a central issue. It can therefore be argued that the conflict between social welfare and fairness to defendants should be resolved differently according to whether the defendant is a private individual or a large corporation. On the other hand, those two categories do not exhaust the range of defendants: a large proportion of British businesses have a sole proprietor, and, although their duties may well be more extensive, it can be argued that their criminal liability should follow the model for private individuals.[129] That model should reject strict liability for individuals on grounds of unfairness and lack of respect for autonomy: negligence should be the minimum requirement.

Moving to the second question, whether criminal liability without fault is a particularly efficacious means of preventing harm, it is important to keep in mind the differences between individual behaviour and corporate activity. At least two aspects of efficacy arise: the ease of enforcing no-fault offences, and the preventive effects of liability without fault. Ease of enforcement may be thought obvious: it must be less trouble to prepare a prosecution in which fault is not relevant than to prepare one in which proof of fault is needed. Indeed, the Court of Appeal has quashed convictions on the basis that evidence of fault is inadmissible, because not relevant, if adduced by the prosecution on a strict liability charge.[130] For the more serious offences, however, evidence of fault will be needed at the sentencing stage if the courts are to pass sentence on a proper basis.[131] This means that the prosecution will have to prepare some evidence on the point, which in turn diminishes any procedural benefit of strict liability. But there may still be benefits to the prosecutor in not having to prove fault for minor offences,

and there may also be indirect benefits as a result of being able to use the threat of prosecution and conviction in order to secure compliance. Many of the regulatory agencies with the power to invoke 'strict liability' offences adopt what may be termed a 'compliance strategy' towards law enforcement—that is, aiming to secure conformity to the law without the need to process and penalize violators.[132] Regulatory activities focus on obtaining compliance, and prosecution is reserved for the few cases where either the violator is recalcitrant or the violation is so large that public concern can only be assuaged by a prosecution. This may also mean that prosecutions tend to be brought only in cases where there is fault: indeed, there are regulatory agencies (p. 164) which pursue such a policy, even though they have no-fault offences at their disposal.[133] There is little evidence among the regulatory agencies of a 'deterrence strategy', using criminal prosecution as a primary means of preventing breaches of the law. That approach to law enforcement is more typical of the police, who rarely occupy themselves with the so-called regulatory offences aimed at commercial and industrial safety, etc.

It is therefore difficult to reach a firm conclusion about the preventive efficacy of strict liability. It is probably an overstatement to regard it as a 'means of prevention', since the no-fault offence usually forms one part of a broad regulatory scheme. Some argue that the availability of a no-fault offence strengthens the regulator's hand in ensuring compliance and, therefore, prevention. It enables regulators to use lesser measures, and then to prosecute when there is real fault.[134] Others argue that no-fault offences which are followed by low penalties on conviction are almost counterproductive, resulting in the imposition of derisory fines on large organizations. Indeed, if regulation in such spheres as industrial safety had been harnessed to relatively serious offences requiring proof of fault, then those offences might now be taken much more seriously, integrated into people's thinking about offences against the person rather than being regarded as 'merely regulatory' and 'not real crime'.[135] This is, of course, part of a much wider issue about the conventional concepts of crime (as now embodied, for example, in the Draft Criminal Code)[136] and about conventional approaches to enforcement which regard some offences as police matters and some not. Much turns on the agency through which enforcement takes place, the style of enforcement adopted, and the elements of discretion in choosing and following a style of enforcement.

Is it an argument in favour of, or against, strict liability that the offence is a minor one or a grave one? The English courts have used both triviality and gravity as arguments in favour of strict liability. Many offences with low penalties are, or have been held to be, offences requiring no proof of fault.[137] This reasoning derives some justification from an economic argument based on ease of prosecution: such trivial offences are not worth the public expenditure of prosecution and court time in proving fault. There is hardly any stigma in being convicted of such offences, and so it is thought to be in the public interest to dispose of them quickly (although the result may be to dilute the (p. 165) moral legitimacy of the criminal law). But none of this can apply to serious offences. Principles of individual fairness, even if overridden by economic considerations in respect of minor offences, should surely be central to the question of conviction for serious offences. One clear benchmark here is the availability of imprisonment as a punishment. The American Model Penal Code proposes that imprisonability should be a conclusive reason against strict liability.[138] In Canada the Supreme Court has held that an offence of strict liability which carries the possibility of a custodial sentence is contrary to the Charter of Rights, unless there is a no-negligence defence.[139] However, the jurisprudence of the European Court of Human Rights is equivocal on the

matter.[140]

(ii) A New Constitutional Principle?:

The new millennium brought an apparent change of direction. In *B* v *DPP* (2000)[141] the House of Lords had to decide whether, in the offence of indecency with a child under 14 contrary to the Indecency with Children Act 1960, there was strict liability as to the age of the child or the prosecution had to establish knowledge of the child's age. The House unanimously held that 'the common law presumes that, unless Parliament has indicated otherwise, the appropriate mental element is an unexpressed ingredient of every offence'.[142] Not only does this decision apply the presumption stated in *Sweet* v *Parsley* in preference to the older view that, in sexual offences, it is morally justifiable to impose strict liability as to age,[143] but Lord Steyn accepted the description of the presumption of *mens rea* as a 'constitutional principle' that is not easily displaced by a statutory text.[144] The same approach was taken by the House of Lords in *K* (2002),[145] where the charge was indecent assault on a girl under 16. The defence was that the girl had told D that she was 16. The question was whether this section of the Sexual Offences Act should continue to be regarded as imposing strict liability as to age, or whether the presumption of *mens rea* applied. Again, not only did the House of Lords find unanimously in favour of the presumption of *mens rea*, but both Lord Bingham and Lord Steyn described the presumption as a 'constitutional principle'.[146]

(p. 166) (iii) Exceptions to the Constitutional Principle?:

What does the term 'constitutional principle' mean? It is clearly intended as a principle of judicial interpretation. Whether it is a principle of which Parliament ought to take account is another matter: in the Sexual Offences Act 2003 it certainly did not, overruling the effect of both the House of Lords decisions.[147] Even for the judges, it is a principle and not a rule. Thus, for example, Lord Nicholls held in *B* v *DPP* that courts may rebut the presumption of *mens rea* by reference to 'the nature of the offence, the mischief sought to be prevented, and any other circumstances which may assist in determining what intent is properly to be attributed to Parliament when creating the offence'.[148] One might comment that if the presumption can be rebutted so easily it may prove to be worth little. It may be justifiable to rebut the presumption for minor offences which may be described as 'not criminal in any real sense', but the failure to regard the possibility of imprisonment as a crucial distinction is a major weakness.[149] A powerful example of this is *Gammon* v *Attorney-General for Hong Kong* (1985).[150] Following the collapse of a building, the defendants were charged with offences against the construction regulations which carried high fines and a maximum prison sentence of three years. Lord Scarman, giving the opinion of the Privy Council, re-affirmed the presumption of *mens rea* laid down in *Sweet* v *Parsley*, and added that 'the presumption is particularly strong where the offence is "truly criminal" in character'. He went on:

> the only situation in which the presumption can be displaced is where the statute is concerned with an issue of social concern; public safety is such an issue…. Even where a statute is concerned with such an issue, the presumption of *mens rea* stands unless it can also be shown that the creation of strict liability will be effective to promote the objects of the statute by encouraging greater vigilance to prevent the commission of the prohibited act.

The last few words support the principle that strict liability should not be imposed where there is nothing more a defendant could reasonably be expected to do in order to avoid the harm.[151] This means that liability is tethered, however loosely, to the defendant's control; liability is not completely strict in these cases. However, the earlier part of the quotation demonstrates how muddy the waters still are. In some cases the courts say that strict liability is appropriate for minor offences which are not truly criminal.[152] Yet they also seem to hold, as in *Gammon*, that it is appropriate where offences relate to public safety or social concern—a description which (as pointed out earlier) could extend to large areas of the criminal law. That the *Gammon* decision was cited by the House of Lords in *B* v *DPP* without any attempt to confront this problem indicates a pessimistic outlook for the 'constitutional principle'.

(p. 167) In a search for principled exceptions, let us examine two areas of the law—firearms, and sexual offences—where the courts have taken a different view. The decision of the Court of Appeal in *Deyemi and Edwards* (2008)[153] is of particular importance, since the defence placed strong reliance on the 'constitutional principle' of *mens rea*. The defendants were found in possession of an article that they believed to be a large torch but which was in fact a stun-gun. They were convicted of possessing a prohibited weapon, contrary to s. 5 of the Firearms Act 1968, and the judge, having examined the facts, gave them a conditional discharge. The Court of Appeal recognized the significance of the House of Lords decisions establishing the 'constitutional principle', but held that it was bound by a long line of authority to hold that this is a strict liability offence. The House of Lords decisions were each 'concerned with the proper meaning of the statutory provisions in question', held Latham LJ, a dismissal that confines their sphere of influence to statutory provisions that have not yet been the subject of an authoritative interpretation. On the substantive issue, presumably the argument is that strong reasons of public policy require the courts to impose strict liability in firearms cases, otherwise measures of control would be weakened. But the outcome here—conditional discharges for the two defendants—suggests that an acquittal in this kind of case would not weaken the law. The convictions were unfair, as the sentences indicate. The line of firearms cases which the Court applied ought to be overruled.

Turning to sexual offences, the decision of the House of Lords in *G.* (2008)[154] confirms that the offence of rape of a child under 13 in s. 5 of the Sexual Offences Act 2003 imposes strict liability as to age. The House was unwilling to accept human rights arguments to the effect that this breaches the presumption of innocence in Art. 6(2) and breaches the Art. 8 rights of the accused (who was aged 15 only).[155] The majority view, expressed by Baroness Hale, was that strict liability is necessary here in order to ensure the protection of children from the sexual attentions of others. The implication is that allowing a defence of reasonable mistake (a negligence standard) would reduce that protection unacceptably; on this view, the unfairness and stigma of convicting a mistaken defendant of this serious offence is less important, even when that defendant is also below the age of consent (and could have been charged with a lesser offence). Both the empirical and the normative strands in that attempted justification call for close examination.

(iv) Conclusion:

Despite pronouncements of high authority on the existence of a 'constitutional principle' requiring fault, English law remains in an unsatisfactory state. The judgments in *B* v *DPP* and in

K refer to the possibility of rebutting the principle or presumption; there are decisions since 2000 that show how easy it is for a court to find a reason for rebutting the presumption;[156] and it seems that courts will follow precedents on the precise statute rather than resorting to the broader authorities on (p. 168) the 'constitutional principle'.[157] So long as different statutes are promoted by different government departments without an overall grammar or standard, progress towards a consistent approach will be hampered. The first move should be for Parliament, probably prompted by the Law Commission, to establish a principled way of proceeding.[158] If there are persuasive economic and social arguments in favour of strict liability for minor offences—and those arguments must be rigorously evaluated—then this may be permitted so long as imprisonment is not available. There should be recognition of the principle that no person should be liable to imprisonment without proof of sufficient fault.[159] This principle should inform the distinction between minor and non-minor offences. The classification of an offence as 'regulatory', whatever that may mean, should be irrelevant to the imposition of strict liability: if imprisonment is available as a sanction, then fault should be required whether it is called 'regulatory' or not. Similarly, the 'public safety' test stated in the *Gammon* case should be discarded, not least because it points in exactly the wrong direction by arguing in favour of strict liability for more serious offences.

(b) Intention

The term '*mens rea*' has conventionally been used to connote the following fault requirements: intention or recklessness as to a specified consequence, and knowledge of, or recklessness as to, a specified circumstance.[160] In discussing offences of strict liability, we have considered the main arguments in favour of requiring fault as a condition of criminal liability, chiefly arguments of choice and fair warning. Now we move to the more detailed and specific question of drawing distinctions between the four main forms of fault which generally fall under the umbrella of *mens rea*. The task is important, because of the key role of intention in serious crimes. Sometimes the intent is the essence of an offence, as in doing an act with intent to impede the apprehension of an offender, all crimes of attempt, and offences defined in terms of 'doing *x* with intent to do *y*' (such as burglary: entering as a trespasser with intent to steal).[161] Sometimes the law uses intention as the main method of grading offences: both the murder–manslaughter distinction and the dividing line between wounding under s. 18 of the Offences against the Person Act 1861 (maximum penalty of life imprison (p. 169) ment) and wounding under s. 20 (maximum penalty of five years' imprisonment) turn on the presence or absence of intention.

(i) Intention in Principle:

It is quite possible—indeed, quite normal—to do things with more than one intention in mind. I can demolish a fence with the simultaneous intentions of making way for a new fence, providing wood for the fire, and so on. The approach of the criminal law, however, is generally not to ask with what intentions D committed the act, but to ask whether one particular intention was present when the act was committed. The law, generally speaking, is interested in the presence or absence of one particular intention—that specified in the definition of the offence charged—and not in conducting a general review of D's reasons for the behaviour in question. Did D intend to kill the crew of the aircraft on which he placed a bomb, as well as intending (as he admits) to claim the insurance money on the cargo? Did D intend to assist the enemy by his actions, as well as intending (as he admits) to save his family from a concentration camp?[162]

The law's approach in selecting one intention, and then abstracting it from D's other reasons and beliefs at the time, calls for careful consideration. It is essential to keep in mind the particular intent required by the definition of the offence. It is quite possible to say 'D pulled the trigger of the gun intentionally', without implying that D intended to kill V when he pulled the trigger. The offence of murder turns (broadly)[163] on the presence or absence of an intention to kill; whether the trigger was pulled intentionally or accidentally may be an important part of the case, but the legally required intention is that D *intended to kill* V. Loose references to whether D 'acted intentionally' can blur this distinction: it is unhelpful to refer to intention without relating it to a particular object or consequence, which in a legal context means the intent specified in the indictment or information.[164]

This approach to intention may avoid some errors, but the proper definition of intention remains the subject of theoretical debate and judicial disagreement. The core of 'intention' is surely aim, objective, or purpose; whatever else 'intention' may mean, a person surely acts with intention to kill if killing is the aim, objective, or purpose of the conduct that causes death. When drafting, however, it may be best to avoid the term 'purpose' (which may give rise to confusion with D's ultimate purpose in doing the act), and instead to define intention in terms of 'acting in order to bring about' the result.[165] Similarly in *Mohan* (1976)[166] James LJ defined intention as 'a decision to bring about [the proscribed result], in so far as it lies within the accused's power, no matter whether the accused desired that consequence of his act or not'. This definition has the advantage of stating that desire is not essential to intention (one may act out of **(p. 170)** feelings of duty, for example, rather than desire); it has the disadvantage of referring to a 'decision', whereas in many offences of violence and other crimes the events happen so suddenly and rapidly that an action can be engaged in intentionally without there having been deliberation about the alternatives beforehand. In law, a spontaneously formed intention is as much an intention as an intention that is the product of lengthy deliberation.[167]

The *Mohan* case involved an attempted crime, and intention is thought to be crucial to attempts, because one cannot be said to *attempt* to produce a result unless one *intends* to produce it (see Chapter 11.3(a)).[168] The decision in *Mohan* goes some way towards stating the core of the concept of intention, i.e. acting in order to bring about a result.[169] It is important to note that, in intending to bring about an end, one must also intend the means adopted to achieve it, because otherwise D could always avoid liability by pointing to some ulterior motive for the action: 'it was not my purpose to kill V, because my real purpose in shooting at V was to inherit V's money after V's death'. Such a purported detachment of the means from the end is quite unconvincing. Both are part of the intention with which D fired the shot, and the criminal law is interested only in whether the killing was intentional.

Should the concept of intention be more extensive than that, in the context of criminal liability? Lawyers have long worked with a concept of intention that includes not only acting in order to bring about *x*, but also acting with foresight of certainty that *x* will result—that D can be said to have intended a result if he or she realized that the result was certain to follow from the behaviour in question. An early example of this may be found in Bentham's writings, and his distinction between direct and oblique intention is one way of expressing the point.[170] One might say that a consequence is *directly* intended if D acts in order to produce it, and that it is *obliquely* intended if it is not D's aim but is known to be certain.[171] To regard both these mental attitudes as forms of intention is to make a moral point. It is not necessarily being claimed that ordinary people in their everyday language use the term 'intention' in this way.[172]

The claim is that the person who foresees a consequence as certain should be classified as having intended that result rather than as having been merely reckless towards (p. 171) it—and the claim is being made in the knowledge that some killings would thus be classified as murder rather than manslaughter, some woundings described as 'with intent' rather than merely as unlawful, and so on. As soon as the argument moves from the moral to the legal, such questions of classification arise. What has to be established is not that all cases of foresight of certainty are socially or morally as bad as all cases of purpose, but that it is more appropriate to classify them with 'intention' than with 'recklessness'.

If we pursue the moral part of the argument further, we find that the shorthand phrase 'foresight of certainty' is perhaps too brief in this context. Few future events in life are absolutely certain, and a reference to consequences as 'certain to follow' would generally mean 'practically certain to follow' or 'certain, barring some unforeseen intervention'.[173] A familiar example is D, who places a bomb on an aircraft with the aim of blowing it up in mid-flight in order to claim the insurance money on the cargo. D knows that it is practically certain that the crew of the aircraft will be killed as a result of the explosion. One might say that D's *purpose* is to claim the insurance money, but if the charge is murder, that is irrelevant. The key question is whether D intended *to kill*. Let us assume that D did not act in order to kill, i.e. that he had not intended the death of the air-crew as the means to his end. Should the law extend the definition beyond such a direct intent to cover D's awareness of the practical certainty that the crew would be killed? The argument in favour of this is that D's behaviour shows no respect for the value of human life at all: D knows that the crew will die, and yet he still pursues the aim of blowing up the aircraft. There is little social or moral difference between that and planning the explosion in order to kill the crew. It is sometimes thought that the 'test of failure' argues against this:[174] since D would not regard the explosion as a failure if the cargo were destroyed but the crew were not killed, this serves to differentiate him from someone whose purpose is to kill. But to establish that a philosophical distinction exists between D and the purposeful killer is not to conclude the matter: to transfer the argument from morality to law, it has to be decided whether the person who foresees death as virtually certain should be bracketed with the directly intentional killer (murder) or treated as merely reckless (manslaughter).[175] Recklessness, as we shall see below, includes the taking of relatively small risks. There is a strong argument that someone who takes a risk of death that amounts to a virtual certainty comes very close, in point of culpability, to the person who chooses someone's death as the means to an end. They both show no respect at all for human life. The Law Commission accepts this, preferring a definition that includes not only the person who acts in order to bring about the prohibited consequence, but also the person who 'thought that the result was a virtually certain consequence of his or her action'.[176]

(p. 172) (ii) Intention in the Courts:

At present there is no legislative definition of intention. How have the courts approached the question? The leading decisions concern the crime of murder, to be discussed in a later chapter,[177] but their effect can be summarized here. The first of the leading cases is *Moloney* (1985),[178] in which the House of Lords held that judges should generally avoid defining the term 'intention', beyond explaining that it differs from 'desire' and 'motive'. Only in exceptional cases should the judge depart from this golden rule, notably, where the essence of the defence is that D's purpose was only to frighten, not to harm, the victim. Here the jury should be instructed to decide whether D foresaw the prohibited consequence as 'a natural

consequence' of the behaviour: if the answer was yes, they could infer intention from that. In the course of his speech Lord Bridge gave hints of the sort of cases he meant to include—cases where the consequence was a 'little short of overwhelming', or 'virtually certain'—but unfortunately the centrepiece of his speech was the term 'natural consequence'. When this was used by the judge to direct the jury in *Hancock and Shankland* (1986),[179] it was held to be unsatisfactory. The House of Lords overruled its own test of 'natural consequence', and Lord Scarman stated that juries should be told that 'the greater the probability of a consequence the more likely it is that the consequence was foreseen, and that if that consequence was foreseen the greater the probability is that that consequence was also intended'.

These decisions left unclear the precise legal meaning of intention and the proper approach to directing a jury, and Lord Lane CJ attempted to synthesize the House of Lords decisions when presiding in the Court of Appeal in *Nedrick* (1986):[180]

> Where the charge is murder and in the rare cases where the simple direction is not enough, the jury should be directed that they are not entitled to infer the necessary intention, unless they feel sure that death or serious bodily harm was a virtual certainty (barring some unforeseen intervention) as a result of the defendant's actions and that the defendant realized that such was the case.

This direction now has the authority of the House of Lords. In *Woollin* (1999)[181] the House disapproved a direction in terms of whether D had realized that there was a 'substantial risk' of serious injury, and held that the *Nedrick* formulation should be followed—with one modification. Where *Nedrick* states that if D foresaw the relevant consequence as virtually certain the court is 'entitled to infer' intention, *Woollin* states that the court is 'entitled to find' intention.[182] This change has little practical significance, and it leaves open the possibility that, if courts are 'entitled' but not required to find intention in these cases, then there may occasionally be cases where they may lawfully decide not to find intention despite foresight of virtual certainty.[183]

(p. 173) In English law, therefore, intention is not defined in terms of (a) acting in order to bring about a result or (b) acting in the knowledge that the result is virtually certain to follow. The indirect or oblique element, (b), is said to be something on the basis of which intention can be found, and not a species of intention. The reluctance of the judiciary to commit themselves to a particular definition of intention confirms that they see the need to preserve an element of flexibility so that they can continue to allow occasional divergences from the 'standard' (a) or (b) definition. Appellate decisions over the years reveal a variety of departures from what might be termed the 'standard definition' of intention. Thus in *Steane* (1947)[184] the Court of Criminal Appeal quashed D's conviction under wartime regulations for the offence of doing acts likely to assist the enemy, with intent to assist the enemy. The Court held that if D's acts were as consistent with an innocent intent (such as saving his family from a concentration camp) as with a criminal intent, the jury should be left to decide the matter. This diverges from the standard definition, since it was never discussed whether D knew that it was virtually certain his acts would assist the enemy. The Court could probably have used the defence of duress to quash the conviction, but it evidently thought that adopting a narrow definition of intention provided a simpler route to the desired result. Similarly, in the civil case of *Gillick* v

West Norfolk and Wisbech Area Health Authority (1986)[185] the House of Lords held that a doctor who gives contraceptive advice to a girl under 16 for clinical reasons, whilst realizing that this would facilitate sexual activity, is not guilty of aiding and abetting the offence of sexual activity with a child. The decision might well have been placed on some such ground as 'clinical necessity',[186] but instead Lord Scarman explained that 'the bona fide exercise by a doctor of his clinical judgement must be a complete negation of the guilty mind'. With this sweeping statement it was held that the doctor did not have the intention required for aiding and abetting, even though it may be assumed that prescribing the contraceptives was foreseen as virtually certain to assist the commission of an offence.

To set alongside these two decisions which favour a narrow definition of intention it is not difficult to find decisions pointing in a different direction. In *Smith* (1960)[187] D had offered a bribe to an official, solely in order to demonstrate that the official was corrupt. The Court of Criminal Appeal upheld his conviction for corruptly offering an inducement to an official, holding that D had an intention to corrupt so long as he intended the offer to operate on the mind of the offeree. In this case D's law-abiding motivation was held to count for nothing. Similarly in *Chandler* v *DPP* (1964),[188] the defendants' convictions of acting 'for a purpose prejudicial to the safety or interests of **(p. 174)** the State' were upheld by the House of Lords. They had infiltrated a military airfield, and this was regarded as prejudicial to the State's interests. The defendants' argument that their own purpose was to promote the safety and interests of the State (by promoting peace), rather than to prejudice them, was discounted.

What these decisions demonstrate is that the courts do not adhere to a single definition of intention. Various observations may be made about this. One common reaction is to treat it as evidence for a 'realist' interpretation of how courts behave: they decide on the desired result, and then define the law in whatever way happens to achieve it. But the evidence is limited to a small number of appeal court decisions, and may not reflect the everyday operation of the criminal courts. Even if it were true to some degree (and few suggest that the courts have an absolute freedom in these matters), what is it that leads courts to adopt these reasons for reaching these particular results? Judges in the appellate courts are fond of referring to 'ordinary language' as a justification for their decisions, but this often appears to be a camouflage for moral judgments. Critical writers have made much of the tensions revealed by the varied judicial approach. Thus Nicola Lacey scrutinizes the shifting language of the appellate judges and argues that this reflects their attempt to keep the law fairly close to popular conceptions (and thereby to enhance its legitimacy) whilst trying to ensure that the interests of the powerful are not significantly challenged.[189] Alan Norrie, focusing on the way in which courts sometimes regard the defendant's motive as a reason for concluding that the result was not 'intended' (*Steane*, *Gillick*) and sometimes do not (*Smith*, *Chandler*), argues that contemporary criminal law is trapped by a set of concepts stemming from a desire to separate 'legal judgment from substantive moral issues', which means that in difficult cases the courts find themselves 'excluding and re-admitting substantive moral issues into a technically conceived set of fault categories'.[190] Thus a model direction stating that, where a court is satisfied that D foresaw a result as virtually certain, it is 'entitled to find' that D intended the result, may operate so as to allow the courts to expand and contract the definition so as to reflect other factors, including moral judgments of a defendant's background and situation.

(iii) Intention Concluded:

In delivering the unanimous judgment of the House of Lords in *Woollin*, Lord Steyn observed that the appeal concerned the crime of murder and that 'it does not follow that "intent" necessarily has the same meaning in every context in the criminal law'.[191] However, the variable approaches to intention described in the previous paragraphs have not been explained by judges on an offence-specific basis, and there would surely need to be particular arguments in favour of adopting a different definition for a certain crime or class of crimes. The *Woollin* definition may therefore be treated as established, and yet we have seen that the House of Lords left the door ajar: the phrase 'entitled to find' preserves an element of 'moral elbow-room' **(p. 175)** which many judges believe to be essential to doing justice. The Law Commission accepts this view: in recommending that 'an intention to bring about a result may be found if it is shown that the defendant thought that the result was a virtually certain consequence of his or her actions,'[192] the Commission argues that this element of flexibility is 'the price of avoiding the complexity' needed if a comprehensive definition were attempted, and that broad terms such as 'extreme indifference' would create greater uncertainty. The reason judges adopted variable meanings of intention in the decisions discussed above is largely that the standard definition, in combination with the range of available defences to liability, sometimes fails to capture moral distinctions which are thought important. The term 'intent'—sometimes the determinant of liability, sometimes a primary way of grading offences—is not one that necessarily incorporates elements of moral evaluation, unlike the other *mens rea* term 'reckless' (discussed later).[193] Thus when faced with a strong moral pull towards exculpation the courts have sometimes, as in *Steane* and in *Gillick*, manipulated the concept of intention rather than developing a defence to criminal liability. However, it would surely be better to adopt a tighter definition of intention, excluding the permissive words 'may be found' in the Law Commission's recommended definition, and to place greater emphasis on appropriate defences. Under the Criminal Code the courts would have a power to develop new defences,[194] so as to ensure that what they regard as important moral distinctions are marked appropriately.

(c) Recklessness

Much of the preceding discussion about the proper limits of the concept of intention in the criminal law has inevitably concerned the dividing line between recklessness and intention. The argument was that there are some cases in which D knows the risk of the prohibited consequence to be so very high (i.e. practically certain) that it is more appropriate to classify his mental attitude within the highest category of culpability (intention) rather than in the lesser category of recklessness. We may note that some would draw the dividing line lower, arguing that if D foresaw the prohibited consequence as a *probable* result, this should be classified as intention, leaving only the lesser degrees of risk within the category of recklessness.[195] Another avenue, not explored in English law, would involve employing the US Model Penal Code term 'knowledge' that something will occur: to cover states of mind where D foresees a high certainty of the occurrence. We will now move away from these arguments, but they do remind us that debates about the boundaries of intention relate to the grading of culpability and so of **(p. 176)** offences. The same is true of the lower boundary between recklessness and negligence: when criminal lawyers refer to offences as requiring '*mens rea*', they usually mean that either intention or recklessness will suffice for liability but that negligence will not. Thus, once again, the debate concerns not so much language as the limits of criminal liability.

An abiding difficulty in discussing the legal meaning of recklessness is that the term has been

given several different shades of meaning by the courts over the years. In the law of manslaughter, 'reckless' has often been regarded as the most appropriate adjective to express the degree of negligence ('gross') needed for a conviction:[196] in this sense, it means a high degree of carelessness. In the late 1950s the courts adopted a different meaning of recklessness in the context of *mens rea*, referring to D's actual awareness of the risk of the prohibited consequence occurring:[197] we shall call this 'advertent recklessness'. Controversy was introduced into this area in the early 1980s, when the House of Lords purported to broaden the meaning of recklessness so as to include those who failed to give thought to an obvious risk that the consequence would occur:[198] as we shall see in paragraph (ii), the House of Lords has now reversed itself on this point.[199] The law of manslaughter will be left for discussion later:[200] here we will focus on the other meanings of recklessness.[201]

(i) Advertent Recklessness:

It was in *Cunningham* (1957) that the Court of Criminal Appeal held that, in a statute, the term 'malicious' denotes intention or recklessness, and that recklessness means that 'the accused has foreseen that the particular kind of harm might be done and yet has gone on to take the risk of it'.[202]

There are essentially three elements in this definition, and they are the same ones found in the Model Penal Code's definition of recklessness as 'the conscious taking of an unjustified risk'. First, it requires D's actual awareness of the risk;[203] this is why it is referred to as 'advertent recklessness', and it is regarded as the key element in bringing recklessness within the concept of *mens rea*. A person should be held to have been reckless about a particular result only if the court is satisfied that he or she was aware of the risk at the time. The second element is that a person may be held to have been reckless if he or she was aware of *any degree* of risk: we have seen that when the risk is so high as to be a practical certainty, D may be classed as intending the consequence, but any risk, however slight, may be sufficient as a minimum for recklessness, so long as D is aware of it and it materializes. In its recommendations for reform of the law of homicide, the Law Commission proposes a narrower definition of recklessness—that **(p. 177)** D must be aware of a 'serious risk', i.e. one that is 'more than insignificant or remote'.[204] It is not clear whether this would alter the outcome of many cases, but it is right that an offence such as murder should be more tightly defined. The third element is that the risk which D believes to be present must be an unjustified or unreasonable one to take in the circumstances. This is an objective element: courts have rarely discussed it, but it exerts a significant background influence.

A typical example of the objective element is the surgeon who carries out an operation knowing that death will probably result.[205] In this example, assuming that there is a clinical justification for the operation, even exposing the patient to a high degree of risk from the operation itself may well be fully justified. In general, thus, 'the responsibility line is drawn according to an evaluation of the nature of the activity and the degree of the risk'.[206] However, the circumstances in which an activity is undertaken may be as important as the nature of the activity itself. Suppose, in the example just given, that (for a bet) the surgeon tried to conduct the same operation wearing a blindfold. Even if the surgeon was so skilled that most experts would say he or she posed no extra risk to the patient when blindfolded, the surgeon's gratuitous introduction of an extra potential source of risk would be regarded as acting recklessly. The evaluative task of determining objective risk has rarely been performed

by the courts, but, as Alan Norrie rightly points out, this is because prosecutors have often made their own evaluations at an early stage and no prosecution (or at least no prosecution for a serious offence such as manslaughter) has been brought in most such cases.[207] Thus we have scant judicial authority relating to the objective element in recklessness.

The justifications for the advertent definition of recklessness are grounded in the principle of individual autonomy and the importance of respecting choice, outlined above.[208] The distinction between recklessness and negligence turns on D's awareness or unawareness of the risk. In both cases there is an unreasonable risk taken, but D should only be held to have been reckless if he or she was aware of the risk. A person who is aware of the risk usually chooses to create it or to run it, and therefore chooses to place his or her interests above the well-being of those who may suffer if the risk materializes.[209] Choosing to create a risk of harmful consequences is generally much worse than creating the same risk without realizing it. Moreover, holding a person reckless despite unawareness of the risk would result in a conviction in a case like *Stephenson* (1979).[210] D, a schizophrenic, made a hollow in a haystack in order to sleep there; he felt **(p. 178)** cold, and so lit a small fire, causing the whole haystack to go up in flames, and resulting in damage of some £3,500. The defence relied on medical evidence that D may not have had the same ability to foresee the risk as a mentally normal person. The Court of Appeal, quashing D's conviction, held that the definition of recklessness clearly turned on what this defendant actually foresaw, and the medical evidence should have been taken into account on this point. This decision, then, strongly affirms the element of individual fairness in the advertent or subjective definition. An entirely objective test would exclude this.

Does concentration on the element of awareness always produce decisions in accord with fairness? There are at least two types of awkward case for a test of liability which requires the court to be satisfied that the defendant actually saw the risk, however briefly. One is where a person acts impulsively in the heat of the moment. This is often expressed in ordinary speech by saying ‘I acted without thinking’, or ‘I just didn't think’. D denies that he or she was aware of the risk at the time of acting. In *Parker* (1977)[211] D tried unsuccessfully to make a telephone call from a payphone; in his frustration he slammed down the receiver and broke it. The Court of Appeal upheld his conviction for causing criminal damage recklessly, despite his defence that it did not occur to him that he might damage the telephone. The Court held that he must have known that he was dealing with breakable material, even if that fact was not at the forefront of his mind when he slammed the receiver down. He had ‘closed his mind to the obvious’, or suppressed this knowledge at the time of the act.[212] It is quite evident that this decision involves some stretching of the awareness element which is thought to be central to advertent recklessness. In effect, it broadens the timeframe from the moment of the act itself to an earlier and calmer time, when D would almost certainly have answered the question: ‘What might happen if you slammed down a telephone receiver?’, by saying: ‘It might break’. The reason for thus broadening the timeframe is presumably to prevent bad temper resulting in an acquittal, since this would be socially undesirable: people should control their tempers. But it does sully the subjective purity of this definition of recklessness. In that regard, an important difference between *Parker* and *Stephenson* concerns the reasons why each did not foresee the possible damage that might be done by their conduct. In Stephenson's case, the explanation was a mental disorder the effects of which he could not control. By contrast, in Parker's case, the explanation was his loss of temper, something he simply failed to control. However, as we will see, the House of Lords has rejected any attempt to finesse the definition

of recklessness by reference to such factors.

The second problem is the ‘couldn't care less’ attitude: D might not have thought about a particular consequence, because it was irrelevant to his interests. If this **(p. 179)** version of events is accepted, D must be acquitted on the advertent definition of recklessness. Antony Duff has argued that these cases can and should be included within the meaning of recklessness, by invoking the concept of ‘practical indifference’. This is ‘a matter, not of feeling as distinct from action, but of the practical attitude which the action itself displays’. Moreover, it may include cases in which D fails to advert to certain aspects of the situation: ‘what I notice or attend to reflects what I care about; and my very failure to notice something can display my utter indifference to it’.[213] The argument is that people who are practically indifferent to certain key features of a situation may be just as much to blame as those who do advert to them. This argument was put strongly in relation to the pre-2003 law of rape, contending that judgments of practical indifference should be made on the basis that men *ought* to consider the victim's interests in such cases. Defensible as that approach is in that context,[214] the question is whether it is subjective, since it brings within the concept of recklessness some defendants who do not actually advert to these matters. Duff's response is that requiring practical indifference is just as subjective, and just as respectful of individual autonomy, as requiring awareness of risk. The practical indifference test looks to D's attitude at the time, on the basis of his acts and words. In practice, it is likely that juries applying the test of advertent recklessness would convict such defendants on the basis that they must have realized the risk; but that merely suggests that it may be unnecessary to confront Duff's point, not that it is wrong.

Thus there are at least two types of situation in which the ‘awareness’ requirement, the centrepiece of advertent recklessness, is problematic (on some views) and may fail to yield an acceptable grading of blameworthiness. One is the person who acts impulsively or in a temper, ‘without thinking’. The other is the person who fails to think about the consequences out of indifference to them. A third possibility would be where D states that he was so pre-occupied with other aspects of what he was doing as to give no thought to a particular consequence (although the courts might be reluctant to accept such a defence).[215] This brings us to a discussion of two key decisions in the House of Lords.

(ii) The Decisions in Caldwell (1982)[216] and in *G (2004):*[217]

In *Caldwell*, the House of Lords introduced a new objective definition of recklessness that, incidentally, would encompass the three types of situation with which the traditional definition does not deal convincingly. It was heavily criticized, and for all practical purposes the subsequent decision in *G* overrules it. Nonetheless, a brief discussion is appropriate here, in order to identify some of the issues of principle raised by the *Caldwell* decision and 28 years of applying it (mostly in criminal damage cases, since it was never accepted **(p. 180)** throughout the criminal law).[218] In *Caldwell*, Lord Diplock formulated the following model direction: a person is guilty of causing damage recklessly if:

> (i) he does an act which in fact creates an obvious risk that property would be destroyed or damaged and (ii) when he does the act he either has not given any thought to the possibility of there being any such risk or has recognized that there was

> some risk involved and has nonetheless gone on to do it.

It will be noticed that this definition includes the advertent element (by referring to the person who recognizes the risk and takes it), but then goes further, extending to all those who fail to give any thought to the possibility of a risk which may be described as obvious.

A major problem with Lord Diplock's test of what would have been obvious to the reasonable person was that it admitted of no exceptions. The effect was to convict young children and mentally impaired defendants by applying to them an objective standard of foreseeability that they could not meet.[219] Thus, even if the *Caldwell* test were to be regarded as an improvement because it extended to thoughtless and inconsiderate wrongdoers, the absence of a capacity exception produced unfair convictions in some cases. The case of *G*[220] involved two children aged 11 and 12 who set fire to some newspapers beneath a rubbish bin and then left, after which the fire spread and caused major damage to nearby shops. The House of Lords considered whether to preserve the *Caldwell* test and engraft a capacity exception on it so as to exempt those (such as children and the mentally disordered) who might be incapable of attaining the objective standard; but this solution was rejected on the ground that the *Caldwell* test was already complicated and that this would over-complicate it to the extent of risking confusion among juries and magistrates.[221] The leading speech by Lord Bingham accepts the substance of the criticisms of *Caldwell*—the lack of legal foundation for the decision, the unfairness of its effects in some cases—and marks a reversion to the traditional, more subjective definition of recklessness based on the defendant's awareness of the risk. This closes one of the common law's less distinguished chapters,[222] and more or less returns the criminal law to a single definition of recklessness. But it does not advance the debate about the types of case that strictly fall outside that traditional definition of recklessness—the indifferent D who appears not to have thought of the risk at all, and D who acts in sudden rage or temper and claims not to have realized the risk of harm.[223]

(p. 181) (iii) Reckless Knowledge:

Both *Caldwell* and *G* were concerned with the use of recklessness as a fault term in its own right under the Criminal Damage Act 1971. Sometimes, though, recklessness as defined in *G* is used as the basis for inferring that D actually 'knew' that something was the case, where it is knowledge that is the fault term in issue. In some cases, what we can refer to as '*G*' recklessness as to whether a circumstance element of a crime existed has been held to constitute 'wilful blindness', i.e. where D knows that there is a risk that a prohibited circumstance exists, but refrains from checking it. An example is *Westminster City Council* v *Croyalgrange Ltd* (1986),[224] where D was charged with knowingly permitting the use of premises as a sex establishment without a licence. The House of Lords held that:

> it is always open to the tribunal of fact, when knowledge on the part of a defendant is required to be proved, to base a finding of knowledge on evidence that the defendant had deliberately shut his eyes to the obvious or refrained from enquiry because he suspected the truth but did not want to have his suspicion confirmed.[225]

It will be seen that Lord Bridge used the language of inference here, suggesting that a court might infer knowledge from wilful blindness in the same way as he suggested that intention might be inferred from foresight of virtual certainty.[226] There is well-known authority to the effect that wilful blindness should be treated as actual knowledge.[227] However, D does not *know* the relevant circumstance in such cases, since he has refrained from finding out, and it may not be easy to establish that he had an overwhelmingly strong belief (that it is virtually certain) that the prohibited circumstance exists. Wilful blindness should therefore be treated as a form of reckless knowledge, and relevant only when reckless knowledge is sufficient, unless it can be shown that D refrained from making inquiries because he was virtually certain that his suspicion would be confirmed.[228]

(d) Negligence

Traditionally, books dealing with English criminal law afford an extremely brief discussion to negligence as a standard of liability. Among the common law crimes, only manslaughter rests on liability for (gross) negligence,[229] and careless driving and dangerous driving are among the few common offences based on negligence. Yet there are many offences of negligence among the statutory offences regulating **(p. 182)** various commercial and other activities, often taking the form of an indictable offence of doing an act 'with intent' to contravene the regulations, supported by a summary offence of negligence in committing an act in such a way as to 'have reason to believe' that the regulations will be contravened.[230] Moreover, other systems of law tend to have a larger group of offences of negligence, and may look askance at a set of laws which penalizes negligence where death is caused, but does not penalize it where serious injury or suffering is caused or risked.

One reason for the opposition of many English text-writers to criminal liability for negligence is that it derogates from the subjective principles stated at the beginning of this chapter.[231] The doctrine of *mens rea*, as expressed in the requirements of intention and recklessness, makes liability depend on proof that D chose the harm, in the sense of intending it or at least being aware that it might result. These elements are missing where mere negligence is sufficient: there is no need to prove that D adverted to the consequences at all, so long as the court is satisfied that a reasonable person in that situation would have done so. To have negligence as a standard of liability would therefore move away from advertence as the foundation of criminal responsibility, and in doing so might show insufficient respect for the principle of autonomy. The counter-argument to this might challenge the relevance to culpability (and to the public censure of criminal conviction) of 'the distinction between foreseen effects and effects that were unforeseen only because the agent was not paying as much attention as he could and should have paid'.[232] The proposition that human actions are sufficiently free to make blame and punishment defensible underlies most of the criminal law,[233] and it might be argued that a person who negligently causes harm could have done otherwise—he could have taken the care necessary to avoid the harm. So long as the individual had the capacity to behave otherwise, it is fair to impose liability in those situations where there are sufficient signals to alert the reasonable citizen to the need to take care. Autonomy is a fundamental principle, but this does not mean that advertence should always be required so long as there is fair warning and a fair opportunity to conform to the required standard.

Three features of this counter-argument should be noted. First, its focus on capacity should not be dismissed as 'objective', for that would be an undiscriminating use of the term. As Hart

has shown, it is perfectly possible to allow exceptions for those who cannot be expected to attain the standard of foresight and control of the reasonable citizen. One only has to supplement the question, 'did D fail to attain a reasonable standard of care in the circumstances?', with the further question; 'could D, given his mental and physical capacities, have taken the necessary precautions?'[234] Negligence (p. 183) liability need be 'objective' only in so far as it holds liable those who fail to take precautions when they could reasonably have been expected to do so. Liability can be termed subjective in so far as it takes account of the limited capacities of the particular person. Taking objective and subjective aspects together, the blameworthiness may be expressed as 'the culpability of unexercised capacity'.[235] As Andrew Simester puts it:

> Without external standards, judgement is impossible. Without reference to the defendant, judgement cannot lead to blame. The device of the reasonable man is, in a sense, one means by which the law seeks to reconcile the impersonal with the humane.[236]

In addition, empirical research suggests public support for some such individualization of negligence liability.[237] Secondly, negligence liability may also derogate from any principle of contemporaneity, in the sense that the culpable failure to take precautions often pre-dates the causing of the harm: the rail worker failed to check the signals or the track, so that a crash occurred later; D misunderstood the mechanism of the gun, so that when he later pulled the trigger it killed someone. The enquiry into capacity and opportunity necessitated by negligence liability widens the timeframe of the criminal law, giving precedence to the doctrine of prior fault over the principle of contemporaneity.[238] Thirdly, the argument is in favour of negligence liability, not strict liability. Existing law imposes obligations on people who engage in various activities: the obligations of those operating systems of public transport; or the obligations of driving a motor vehicle; or the obligations of owning or managing a factory; or the obligations of engaging in a particular trade or business. Strict liability was criticized in paragraph (a). Negligence liability, on the other hand, is not open to the same objections.

The discussion thus far should have established that people who cause harm negligently may be culpable, in so far as they fail to take reasonable precautions when they have a duty and the capacity to do so. What it does not establish is that negligence is an appropriate standard for criminal liability, for it must be borne in mind that criminal liability is the law's most condemnatory form, and in principle it should be reserved for serious wrongs.[239] How might it be argued that the English doctrinal tradition of drawing the line of criminal liability below intention and recklessness, and above negligence (at least for 'conventional' crimes, such as those in the Draft Criminal Code)[240] is ill-founded? One approach would be to establish that some cases of negligence manifest greater culpability than some cases of subjective recklessness—the principal justification for the *Caldwell* decision. Thus it could be claimed that a person who knowingly takes a slight risk of harm is less culpable than another person who fails to think about or recognize a high risk of the same harm: D, a shooting champion, fires at a target, knowing that there is a slight risk that the bullet will ricochet and (p. 184) injure a spectator, which it does; E, who rarely handles guns, is invited to participate in a shooting party and fires wildly into bushes, failing to consider the possibility of others being there, and one is injured. Is D manifestly more culpable than E? A different comparison would be between

someone who knowingly takes the risk of a small harm occurring and someone who fails to recognize the risk of a serious harm occurring: a criminal law which convicts the former and not the latter could be said to be transfixed by the notion of a 'consistent' general part. Why maintain that negligence is never an appropriate standard of criminal liability, even where the harm is great and the risk obvious?

The argument is therefore moving towards the conclusion that negligence may be an appropriate standard for criminal liability where: (i) the (potential) harm is great; (ii) the risk of it occurring is obvious; (iii) D has a duty to try to avoid the risk; and (iv) D has the capacity to take the required precautions. This opens up further debates on various points. The thesis is that negligence may be an appropriate standard where there are well-known risks of serious harm. This argues in favour of negligence as a standard of liability for certain serious offences against the person, including some serious sexual offences,[241] and also for some serious offences against the environment and property. But it must be debated whether liability for serious crime should be confined to *gross* negligence, not simple negligence. And it would be vital to protect 'rule of law' expectations, and thus to ensure that people receive fair warning of any duties that may form the basis of criminal negligence liability.[242] The spread of negligence liability would not have to result in the broadening of the traditional category of *mens rea*: negligence could be admitted as a form of fault, whereas intention and recklessness would remain the two forms of *mens rea*. It would be perfectly possible for a criminal code to provide separate crimes of negligence, with lower maximum sentences, at appropriate points in the hierarchy of offences. A further issue is whether the offences of negligence should be in the inchoate mode—'failing to take reasonable precautions'—or should be tied to the occurrence of the particular harm. Careless driving is of the former type, manslaughter of the latter, and this point will be pursued further in connection with crimes of endangerment.[243]

Even granted this argument in favour of criminalizing certain instances of negligence, what would be the point of doing so? This takes us back to the aims of the criminal law, discussed earlier.[244] It might be tempting to maintain that the general preventive aim of the criminal law cannot be served by offences of negligence: the notion of deterrence presupposes rational reflection by D at the time of offending, whereas the distinguishing feature of negligence is that D failed to think (when a reasonable person would have done). However, it can be argued that crimes of negligence may exert a general deterrent effect, by alerting people to their duties and to the need **(p. 185)** to take special care in certain situations. The practical prospects of deterrence here seem no less propitious than in relation to offences requiring intention or recklessness. The principal justification, however, would be that negligent harm-doers deserve criminal conviction because and in so far as they are sufficiently culpable. This is a question of degree and of judgment, on which views may differ.[245]

(e) Objective versus subjective

Much of the discussion of the law in this section of the chapter has concerned the interplay of subjective and objective factors in the definition of the core fault terms. It has been suggested that in crimes where strict liability is imposed on individual defendants, the courts have generally placed insufficient emphasis on respect for individual autonomy and the importance of requiring fault. When dealing with recklessness and mistake, however, the tendency of some text-writers and judges has been to regard the advertent or subjective approach as axiomatic, thus excluding from conviction certain people who may be no less culpable than

those who are convicted. The *Caldwell* test could be seen as a way of supplementing the narrow conception of moral fault embodied in advertent recklessness, but it was flawed in other respects (notably, the absence of an incapacity exception) and it perished.[246] An alternative is Duff's test of practical indifference, which relies considerably on objective judgments as evidence of a person's attitude when behaving in a particular way. A further alternative would be to introduce more offences of negligence and, in respect of mistaken belief, more objective limitations on defences to criminal liability—a task on which the legislature embarked in the Sexual Offences Act 2003. It is evident that, in many cases examined in this chapter, an approach that focuses solely on advertence fails to capture some moral distinctions and to satisfy all social expectations.[247] Subjective tests heighten the protection of individual autonomy, but they typically make no concession to the principle of welfare and the concomitant notion of duties to take care and to avoid harming the interests of fellow citizens. However, if we are to move towards greater reliance on objective standards, at least two points must be confronted. First, objective tests must be applied subject to capacity-based exceptions. This preserves the principle of individual autonomy by ensuring that no person is convicted who lacked the capacity to conform his or her behaviour to the standard required. Secondly, any improved moral 'fit' obtained by moving more towards objective standards must be weighed against the greater detraction from the principle of maximum certainty that is likely to result.[248] Objective standards inevitably rely on terms such as reasonable, ordinary, (p. 186) and prudent. They appear much more malleable and unpredictable than subjective tests that ask whether or not a defendant was aware of a given risk, and they explicitly leave room for courts and even prosecutors to make social judgments about the limits of the criminal sanction.

5.6 The variety of fault terms

Although the focus so far has been upon intention, recklessness, and knowledge, an examination of criminal legislation in force—some modern, some from the nineteenth century—reveals a diversity of fault terms. Even if the Draft Criminal Code were to be enacted, its provisions would not be restricted to the core fault terms discussed so far. Moreover, the Code would cover only some two hundred out of perhaps ten thousand criminal offences, so the diversity will inevitably remain for some years. A full survey of the different fault terms cannot be offered here, but some general remarks may be worthwhile.

Nineteenth century legislation such as the Offences Against the Person Act 1861 makes considerable use of the term 'maliciously'.[249] It is now settled that this term should be interpreted to mean intention or recklessness, which simplifies the criminal lawyer's task.[250] Unfortunately, certain other terms have not been interpreted consistently in line with the core terminology. Many statutory offences, both ancient and modern, rely on the term 'wilfully': although in *Sheppard* (1981)[251] the House of Lords held that the term meant 'intentionally or recklessly' in the context of the crime of wilful neglect of a child, there are other offences in which 'wilfully' has been held not to require full *mens rea*.[252] Many offences are defined in terms of 'permitting', a word that has usually been interpreted as requiring full knowledge but has sometimes been held to impose strict liability, even on individuals.[253]

More to the point, however, is the fact that many major criminal offences rely on fault terms that bear little relation to any of those discussed so far. Theft and several other Theft Act

offences rely on the term 'dishonestly', which, as we shall see,[254] encompasses a mixture of elements of subjective awareness and motivation with elements of objective moral judgment. Some fraud offences turn on whether the act or omission was done 'fraudulently'. And a number of public order and racial hatred offences impose liability where a certain consequence is 'likely' to result from D's conduct, without reference to whether D is aware of this likelihood. Thus, for example, a person commits the offence of creating 'fear or provocation of violence' by the use of threatening, abusive, or insulting words or behaviour *either* with intent to cause another person (p. 187) to believe that immediate unlawful violence will be used, *or* 'whereby that person is likely to believe that such violence will be used or it is likely that such violence will be provoked'.[255] Similarly, the offence of publishing or distributing racially inflammatory material is committed if *either* D intends thereby to stir up racial hatred *or* 'having regard to all the circumstances racial hatred is likely to be stirred up thereby'.[256] Offences that rely on the court's assessment of the probable effect of certain conduct may be said to impose a form of strict liability, or at least liability for negligence, if it is assumed that the defendant ought to have known what effect was likely. However, suffice it to say that criminal offences in English law vary in their use of fault terms. The arguments for and against the core terms, examined in this chapter, should provide a framework for considering the justifications for most other fault terms that may be encountered.

5.7 The referential point of fault

To say that a certain crime should require intention or recklessness is not enough. One must enquire: intention (or recklessness) as to what? It might be said loosely that 'the crime of manslaughter requires proof of intention or recklessness': the reason this is a loose statement is that the intent or recklessness required may be the same as that for assault or some other criminal act, whereas the liability imposed is that for homicide. Close analysis of the elements of the crime will show that the required fault and the result specified in the definition are not on the same level. This is what the principle of correspondence, outlined above, aims to eliminate.[257] Whenever one is discussing intent or recklessness, its referential point should always be established.

(a) Fault, conduct, and result

The argument may be carried further by considering the width or narrowness of the definitions of offences. It would be far easier to establish intent for a broad offence—such as intentionally causing physical harm to another—than to establish intent in a system with a hierarchy of graded offences—such as attempted murder, causing serious injury intentionally, causing injury intentionally, and common assault—which would require proof of more specific mental states. Similarly, a law which includes a general offence of intentionally causing damage to property belonging to another makes it far easier to establish the intent than a law with a series of offences differentiated according to the type of property damaged. Do these different legislative techniques have significant implications for the subjective doctrines of fault? Surely they do: one could argue that a single broad offence of 'intentionally causing physical (p. 188) harm to another' would obliterate the distinction between intending a minor assault and intending a major injury, and that a single broad offence of 'intentionally damaging property belonging to another' obliterates the distinction between intending damage to a cheap item and intending damage to an expensive item.[258] Any tendency towards broader offence

definitions, evident in criminal damage[259] but not in sexual offences,[260] would give greater weight to the 'malice principle' of liability for the consequences of any wrongdoing (section 5.4(b)) than to the principle of correspondence (section 5.4(a)). To that extent, it would detract from the elements of choice and control which are fundamental to the subjective approach. But how should this problem be solved?[261] It is hardly practical to allow each person to nominate those factors which he or she regarded as significant in any particular event: who is to say whether fidelity to individual choice and control requires two or twenty grades of criminal damage, or two or four grades of offences of violence? Nonetheless, the implications for fault principles of these labelling decisions[262] should be kept firmly in mind.

The argument may be taken still further, for there are cases where it is plain that D intended to cause a different result from the one which actually occurred. How ought the law to deal with such cases? Should it respect D's choice, and provide for a conviction of attempting to do *X* (which was what D intended to do)? Or should it regard the result as the dominant factor, ignore the difference in D's intention, and convict on the basis of 'sufficient similarity' between the intention and the result? English law adopts the latter, more pragmatic approach. The Law Commission, in introducing a provision into the Draft Criminal Code which follows the traditional approach, confirms the emphasis on results by stating that a conviction for attempt would be 'inappropriate as not describing the *harm done* adequately for labelling or sentencing purposes'.[263] The traditional English approach rests on three doctrines—unforeseen mode, mistaken object, and transferred fault.

(b) Unforeseen mode

When D sets out to commit an offence by one method but actually causes the prohibited consequence in a different way, the offence may be said to have been committed by an unforeseen mode. Since most crimes penalizing a result (with fault) do not specify any particular mode of commission,[264] it is easy to regard the difference of mode as **(p. 189)** legally irrelevant. D intended to kill V; he chose to shoot him, but the shot missed; it hit a nearby heavy object, which fell on V's head and caused his death. Any moral distinction between the two modes is surely too slender to justify legal recognition. To charge D with *attempting* to kill V when he *did* kill him seems excessively fastidious. Pragmatism is surely the best approach here, and English law is generally right to ignore the unforeseen mode.[265]

(c) Mistaken object

When D sets out to commit an offence in relation to a particular victim but makes a mistake of identity and directs his conduct at the wrong victim, the offence may be said to have been committed despite the mistaken object. The same applies if D intends to steal one item of property but mistakenly takes another. So long as the two objects fall within the same legal category, it may be said that any moral distinction between them is too slender to justify legal recognition. However, much depends on the breadth of definition of the relevant offence: there is surely some moral significance in the plea: 'I thought the picture I damaged was just a cheap copy; I had no idea that a valuable painting would be kept in that place'.[266] English law favours the pragmatic answer of reflecting shades of moral culpability at the sentencing stage, but one might argue on principle that to convict this person of intentionally or recklessly damaging a valuable painting is a gross mislabelling of the wrong. In one sphere, English law's general approach of ignoring mistake of object within the same offence is not followed. This is

the law of complicity: where A gives assistance to D who plans to kill X, and then D decides to kill Y, there is long-standing authority to the effect that A cannot be convicted for aiding and abetting D's murder of Y.[267] The complexities of the moral distinctions drawn here are discussed in Chapter 10.5, but if it is accepted that the identity of the victim is so important in this type of case, one may enquire more widely whether there really is inadequate moral significance in the plea: 'I intended to kill my enemy, X, and never meant any harm to the poor innocent, Y'. The pragmatic approach adopted elsewhere in the criminal law (apart from complicity) may fail to mark significant moral distinctions in some cases, and many might be dissatisfied if the only conviction were for attempting to murder X.

(d) Transferred fault

When D sets out to commit an offence in relation to a particular person or a particular property but his conduct miscarries and the harm falls upon a different person or (p. 190) a different property, English law regards D's intent as transferred and the offence as committed against the actual victim or property. When the fault is transferred, any defence which D may have is transferred with it.[268] As with unforeseen mode and mistaken object, the fault may only be transferred within the same class of offence.[269] Thus, if D throws a brick at some people, intending to hurt them, and the brick misses them and breaks a window, the intent to injure cannot be transferred to the offence of damaging property.[270] In this situation, the possible offences are an attempt to cause injury, and recklessly damaging property. As with the doctrine of mistaken object, the breadth of definition of the offence has some importance here. It is one thing to accept that D, who swung his belt at W and struck V, should be convicted of injuring V;[271] it is quite another thing, in moral terms, to accept that E, who threw a stone at a window, should be convicted of intentionally damaging a valuable painting which, unbeknown to him, was hanging inside. Yet English law would convict E, applying the broad wording of the Criminal Damage Act 1971 (any 'property belonging to another'), without any need to rely on the doctrine of transferred fault.[272] Thus the ambit of all three doctrines is much affected by the breadth of each offence definition.

The doctrine of transferred fault and its relationship with conceptions of subjective guilt remain sources of considerable controversy.[273] Rather surprisingly, in view of its long pedigree in English law, the doctrine was denounced by Lord Mustill in the House of Lords for 'its lack of any sound intellectual basis'. In *Attorney-General's Reference (No. 3 of 1994)*[274] D stabbed his girlfriend in the stomach, knowing that she was pregnant. Two weeks later the child was born prematurely, and because of its grossly premature birth it failed to thrive and died after four months. The House of Lords held that on these facts D could not be convicted of murder, holding that transferred malice could have no application because the foetus had no separate existence at the time the mother was attacked. The facts of this case are unusual, thankfully, but the House of Lords failed to deal convincingly with the relevance of the doctrine of unforeseen mode (should it matter that the child's death resulted from the premature birth, not from any direct wound?) and with the relevance of the extended principle of contemporaneity (if the death was part of an unbroken sequence of events following the stabbing, should not D's original intent be connected with the ultimate death?).[275] It could be argued that it would go too far if three artificial doctrines (p. 191) (transferred fault, unforeseen mode, and extended contemporaneity) were combined to find someone guilty of the highest crime in the land. Indeed, it has been argued that the law should recognize a further restrictive principle, the remoteness doctrine, so as to ensure that there is no conviction of an offence (e.g.

murder) if the way in which the death of the unanticipated victim occurred was so remote from what D intended or anticipated that to convict D of murdering the actual victim would be an unrepresentative label.[276]

(e) Establishing the referential point

A system of criminal law which succeeded in reflecting the varying degrees of importance which people attribute to aspects of their intention (the mode of execution, the identity of the victim, the value of the property) might be a 'law professor's dream', but it is clearly not practical. Such an individuated or fine-grained approach to fault has to give way, at least in some respects, to claims of administrative efficiency. But that does not establish that the traditional English approach is the most appropriate. The draft Criminal Code provides for the continuation of the pragmatic approach, arguing that this is simpler for prosecutors and that an attempt conviction in the above situations would ignore the harm actually done.[277] Does its pragmatism stretch too far? Would it not be better to analyse some of these cases in terms of an unfulfilled intention, combined with an accidental (or perhaps reckless) causing of harm? Some would argue that the present law of inchoate offences would not ensure a conviction in all these cases of miscarried intent and miscarried recklessness:[278] according to this view, the three doctrines are not merely effective in returning convictions and symbolically right in their emphasis on results,[279] but also necessary if justice is to be done in all cases. There is, it may be argued, no serious distortion of 'desert' or proportionality involved in the three doctrines, since the doctrines do not misrepresent the class of harm that D set out to commit. Yet there remains the law's ambivalence about the importance of a victim's identity: if this really is significant to offenders and people's judgments of them, as the law of complicity implies, should not prosecutors make more use of the law of attempts, where it is clearly applicable?[280]

(p. 192) Further Reading

H. L. A. HART, *Punishment and Responsibility* (2nd edn., 2008), chs 2 and 5.

J. Gardner, 'Introduction ', to H. L. A. Hart, *Punishment and Responsibility* (2nd edn., 2008).

R. A. Duff, *Answering for Crime* (2007), ch 3.

R. A. Duff, 'Whose Luck is it Anyway?' in C. Clarkson and S. Cunningham (eds), *Criminal Liability for Non-Aggressive Death* (2008).

V. Tadros, *Criminal Responsibility* (2005), ch 8.

A. P. Simester (ed.), *Appraising Strict Liability* (2005).

A. Ashworth, 'A Change of Normative Position: Determining the Contours of Culpability in Criminal Law' (2008) 11 *New Crim LR* 232.

Notes:

[1] A. Ashworth and M. Blake, 'The Presumption of Innocence in English Criminal Law' [1996] Crim LR 306.

[2] See further, Chapter 8.

[3] P. H. Robinson, *Structure and Function in Criminal Law* (1997), ch 3.

[4] For debate see J. Gardner and H. Jung, 'Making Sense of Mens Rea: Antony Duff's Account' (1991) 11 OJLS 559; J. A. Laing, 'The Prospects of a Theory of Criminal Culpability: Mens Rea and Methodological Doubt' (1994) 14 OJLS 57; J. Gardner, 'Criminal Law and the Uses of Theory: a Reply to Laing' (1994) 14 OJLS 217.

[5] E.g. R. A. Duff, 'Law, Language and Community: Some Preconditions of Criminal Liability' (1998) 18 OJLS 189.

[6] For further analysis, see Law Commission, *Unfitness to Plead* (CP No. 197, 2010); R. Mackay, *Mental Conditions Defences in Criminal Law*, ch 5.

[7] Notably by the House of Lords in *C* v *DPP* [1996] AC 1.

[8] An argument expressed strongly by G. Williams, 'The Criminal Responsibility of Children' [1954] Crim LR 493, at 495–6.

[9] For discussion of whether a defence of *doli incapax* still exists, see *DPP* v *P* [2006] 4 All ER 628 and *T* [2008] 2 Cr App R 17.

[10] J. Horder, 'Pleading Involuntary Lack of Capacity' (1993) 52 Camb LJ 298, at 300–2.

[11] (1999) 30 EHRR 121.

[12] G. van Bueren, *The International Law on the Rights of the Child* (1995), ch 7.

[13] *Practice Direction: Crown Court (Trial of Children and Young Persons)* [2000] 1 Cr App R 483.

[14] *SC* v *United Kingdom* (2005) 40 EHRR 226; L. Hoyano, 'The Cornoners and Justice Act 2009: Special Measures Directions Take Two: Entrenching Unequal Access to Justice?' [2010] Crim LR 345.

[15] Office of the Commissioner of Human Rights, *Report by Mr Alvaro Gil-Robles, Commissioner for Human Rights, on his visit to the United Kingdom* (Comm DH (2005) 6), paras. 105–7.

[16] F. Zimring, 'Toward a Jurisprudence of Youth Violence', in M. Tonry and M. Moore (eds), *Youth Violence*, (1998), 447.

[17] A. von Hirsch and A. Ashworth, *Proportionate Sentencing* (2005), ch 3.

[18] See further H. Keating, 'Reckless Children' [2007] Crim LR 546.

[19] Mackay, *Mental Condition Defences in Criminal Law*, ch 2; V. Tadros, *Criminal Responsibility*, ch 12.

[20] Section 1(2) of the Criminal Procedure (Insanity and Unfitness to Plead) Act 1991 requires the evidence of two doctors, at least one of them approved by the Home Secretary as an experienced psychiatrist.

[21] R. D. Mackay, 'Fact and Fiction about the Insanity Defence' [1990] Crim LR 247.

[22] The presence in prison, in consequence, of many offenders with mental disorders was criticized in Lord Bradley's Report, *People with Mental Health Problems or Learning Disabilities in the Criminal Justice System* (2009).

[23] Hospital orders, with a restriction indicating the minimum time to be spent in hospital to protect the public from serious harm, form roughly 38 per cent of disposals in insanity cases, with supervision orders being made in around 41 per cent of cases: R. D. Mackay, B. J. Mitchell and L. Howe, 'Yet More Facts about the Insanity Defence' [2006] Crim LR 399.

[24] R. D. Mackay, B. J. Mitchell and L. Howe, 'Yet More Facts about the Insanity Defence' [2006] Crim LR 399.

[25] See A. Loughnan, '"Manifest Madness": Towards a New Understanding of the Insanity Defence' (2007) 70 MLR 379, proposing a reinterpretation of the exceptional procedural and evidential provisions relating to insanity.

[26] T. H. Jones, 'Insanity, Automatism and the Burden of Proof on the Accused' (1995) 111 LQR 475; a challenge to this under Art. 6.2 of the Convention now seems unlikely to succeed, following the Court of Appeal's decision in *Lambert, Jordan and Ali* [2001] 1 Cr App R 205 to uphold the reverse onus in diminished responsibility.

[27] Criminal Procedure (Insanity) Act 1964, s. 6.

[28] *Per* Watkins LJ, in *Dickie* (1984) 79 Cr App R 213, at 219.

[29] (1843) 10 Cl and Fin 200; see generally N. Morris, *Madness and the Criminal Law* (1982), and I. Potas, *Just Deserts for the Mad* (1982).

[30] *Clarke* (1972) 56 Cr App R 225.

[31] See paragraph (d).

[32] *Per* Lord Diplock, in *Sullivan* [1984] AC 156.

[33] *Sullivan* [1984] AC 156.

[34] *Burgess* [1991] 2 QB 92, overlooked in the rape case of *Bilton, Daily Telegraph*, 20 December 2005. See also the decision of the Canadian Supreme Court in *Parks* (1990) 95 DLR (4th) 27.

[35] *Hennessy* (1989) 89 Cr App R 10.

[36] See, more fully, Chapter 4.2.

[37] The fact that these limbs of *M'Naghten* are alternatives ought to mean that insanity may be a defence to strict liability crimes too, since the second test is applicable there, and a

Divisional Court ruling to the contrary is difficult to support: *DPP* v *H* [1997] 1 WLR 1406, analysed critically by T. Ward, 'Magistrates, Insanity and the Common Law' [1997] Crim LR 796.

[38] *Johnson* [2008] Crim LR 132, applying *Windle* [1952] 2 QB 826, which had been followed by the majority of the Supreme Court of Canada in *Schwartz* (1979) 29 CCC (2d) 1.

[39] *Stapleton* v *R* (1952) 86 CLR 358; research evidence from R. Mackay and G. Kearns ('More Facts about the Insanity Defence' [1999] Crim LR 714), and Mackay, Mitchell, and Howe ('Yet More Facts about Insanity', at 406–7) shows that many psychiatrists interpret 'wrongness' in this wider sense, and that courts seem to accept this.

[40] R. D. Mackay and G. Reuber, 'Epilepsy and the Defence of Insanity—Time for Change?' [2007] Crim LR 782; R. D. Mackay and B. J. Mitchell, 'Sleepwalking, Automatism and Insanity' [2006] Crim LR 901; see also the discussion on automatism in Chapter 4.2(f).

[41] A Convention challenge to the M'Naghten Rules has already met with some success in Jersey: R. D. Mackay and C. A. Gearty, 'On Being Insane in Jersey' [2001] Crim LR 560.

[42] 2 EHRR 387 (1979).

[43] P. J. Sutherland and C. A. Gearty, 'Insanity and the European Court of Human Rights' [1992] Crim LR 418.

[44] E. Baker, 'Human Rights, M'Naghten and the 1991 Act' [1994] Crim LR 84.

[45] A new s. 5 of the 1991 Act, inserted by s. 24 of the Domestic Violence, Crime, and Victims Act 2004, gives courts a choice of orders following the special verdict in a murder case. If D is suffering from a mental disorder making detention in hospital appropriate under s. 37 of the Mental Health Act 1983, the judge has the power to make a hospital detention order. If the judge finds that D poses a threat of serious harm to the public, the judge can make an additional 'restriction' order, imposing a minimum time period before D can be considered for discharge from hospital: Criminal Procedure (Insanity) Act 1964, s.5 (as amended).

[46] Homicide Act 1957, s. 2; see Chapter 7.4(e).

[47] Model Penal Code, s. 4.01.

[48] Butler Report, para. 18.30.

[49] Cf. Scottish Law Commission, *Report on Insanity and Diminished Responsibility* (2004), paras. 2.52–63, rejecting any volitional component in the insanity defence.

[50] Having said that, schizophrenia is in fact the most common basis for an insanity plea: R. D. Mackay, B. J. Mitchell, and L. Howe, 'Yet More Facts About the Insanity Defence' [2006] Crim LR 399.

[51] K. W. M. Fulford, 'Value, Action, Mental Illness, and the Law', in S. Shute, J. Gardner, and J. Horder (eds), *Action and Value in Criminal Law* (1993).

[52] Law Com No. 177, cll. 34–40.

[53] Law Com No. 177, para. 11.27. See now the Law Commission Scoping Paper, *Insanity and Automatism* (July 2012).

[54] Law Com No. 177, ii, para. 11, 28.

[55] See Chapter 3.6(s).

[56] Law Com No. 177, para. 11.28(c).

[57] *Salomon* v *Salomon* [1897] AC 22.

[58] *Birmingham and Gloucester Railway Co* (1842) 3 QB 223.

[59] *Great North of England Railway Co* (1846) 9 QB 315.

[60] *Per* Denham CJ at 320.

[61] Another landmark case was *Mousell Bros* v *London and North-Western Railway Co* [1917] 2 KB 836. For discussion of the history see L. H. Leigh, *The Criminal Liability of Corporations in English Law* (1969), ch 2, and C. Wells, *Corporations and Criminal Responsibility* (2nd edn., 2001), ch 5.

[62] See A. Ashworth, 'Is the Criminal Law a Lost Cause?' (2000) 116 LQR 225, and the discussion by D. Nelken, 'White Collar and Corporate Crime', in M. Maguire, R. Morgan, and R. Reiner (eds), *The Oxford Handbook of Criminology* (5th edn., 2012).

[63] T. Jones, D. Maclean, and J. Young, *The Islington Crime Survey*; M. Gottfredson, *Fear of Crime* (Home Office Research Study No. 84, 1986).

[64] *Associated Octel* [1996] 1 WLR 1543, a decision of the House of Lords. See also *Gateway Foodmarkets Ltd* [1997] Crim LR 512, imposing a duty under s. 2 of the Act on the employer in respect of the acts of all employees, not just those who were 'controlling minds'.

[65] [1995] 1 WLR 1356; compare the much more restrictive approach in *Seaboard Offshore Ltd* v *Secretary of State for Transport* [1994] 1 WLR 541.

[66] See *Birmingham and Gloucester Railway Co* (reference at n 67) and the discussion of strict liability in section 5.5(a).

[67] See the conviction under s. 85 of the Water Resources Act 1991 upheld in *Environment Agency* v *Empress Car Co (Abertillery)* [1999] 2 AC 22, criticized in the next section.

[68] P. S. Atiyah, *Vicarious Liability in the Law of Torts* (1967).

[69] See, 'Developments in the Criminal Law – Corporate Crime: Regulating Corporate Behaviour Through Criminal Sanctions' (1979) 92 *Harvard Law Review* 1227.

[70] Cf. *Allen* v *Whitehead* [1930] 1 KB 211 with *Vane* v *Yiannopoullos* [1965] AC 486; see P. J. Pace, 'Delegation: A Doctrine in Search of a Definition' [1982] Crim LR 627.

[71] The doctrine was criticized by the Law Commission in, Consultation Paper No. 195 (2010), *Criminal Liability in Regulatory Contexts*, paras 7.35–57. In *St Regis Paper Company Ltd*

[2011] EWA Crim 2527, the delegation principle was confined to licensing cases. Modern legislation sometimes employs a different structure to deal with such situations, by (very broadly speaking) making it an offence for the owner or licensee, etc. to allow unauthorized activity to go on: see e.g. the Licensing Act 2003, s. 136.

[72] [1898] 2 QB 306.

[73] It could be argued that this is not an example of vicarious liability because the owner does the *actus reus* himself since he is the seller. However, the physical act is that of his employee, so at least it is a form of quasi-vicarious liability.

[74] See n 65 and accompanying text.

[75] [1955] 1 QB 78.

[76] [1944] KB 146.

[77] Two other cases decided in the same year confirmed this approach: *ICR Haulage Ltd* [1944] KB 551, and *Moore* v *I Bresler Ltd* [1944] 2 All ER 515.

[78] [1972] AC 153.

[79] Cf. *JF Alford (Transport) Ltd* [1997] 2 Cr App R 326 (Chapter 10.3(b)), and the conviction of manslaughter of a small outdoor pursuit company and its managing director in respect of the deaths of young canoeists sent out in poor weather with inadequate training and supervision (*OLL Ltd and Kite, The Times*, 9 December 1994), with the difficulty of identification in *Redfern* [1993] Crim LR 43.

[80] [1995] 2 AC 500.

[81] [2000] 2 Cr App R 207.

[82] [2000] 2 Cr App R 211.

[83] See Wells, *Corporations and Criminal Responsibility*, ch 3, and G. R. Sullivan, 'The Attribution of Culpability to Limited Companies' (1996) 55 Camb LJ 515.

[84] Cf. S. Lukes, *Individualism* (1973), ch 17.

[85] [1972] AC 824; cf. the early decision in *Birmingham and Gloucester Railway Co* (1842) 3 QB 223.

[86] Wells, *Corporations and Criminal Responsibility* (2nd edn., 2001), 160–3; cf. J. Gobert and M. Punch, *Rethinking Corporate Crime* (2003), ch 8, with their discussion of companies as accomplices in ch 2.

[87] [1972] AC 153.

[88] See n 80.

[89] Wells, *Corporations and Criminal Responsibility*, 164–8.

[90] B. Fisse and J. Braithwaite, *Corporations, Crime and Accountability* (1993).

[91] See the analysis by G. R. Sullivan, 'Expressing Corporate Guilt' (1995) 15 OJLS 281.

[92] See the detailed discussion in Chapter 7.5(c).

[93] Fisse and Braithwaite, *Corporations, Crime and Accountability*; cf. Gobert and Punch, *Rethinking Corporate Crime*, ch 7.

[94] Cf. A. Brudner, 'Agency and Welfare in Criminal Law', in S. Shute, J. Gardner, and J. Horder (eds), *Action and Value in Criminal Law* (1993), and R. Lippke, *Rethinking Imprisonment* (2007), 84–98.

[95] D. A. J. Richards, 'Rights, Utility and Crime', in M. Tonry and N. Morris (eds), *Crime and Justice: An Annual Review* (1981), iii, 274.

[96] Notably those of Bentham: for extracts and discussion see von Hirsch, Ashworth, and Roberts, *Principled Sentencing* (3rd edn., 2009), ch 2.

[97] For further argument, compare A. Ashworth, 'Taking the Consequences', in Shute, Gardner, and Horder (eds), *Action and Value in Criminal Law* (1993) and V. Tadros, *Criminal Responsibility* (2005), 90–8, with R. A. Duff, *Criminal Attempts*, ch 12, and R. A. Duff, 'Whose Luck is it Anyway?', in C. Clarkson and S. Cunningham (eds), *Criminal Liability for Non-Aggressive Death* (2008).

[98] See Chapter 3.6(r); compare the different framing of the same debate in German and French laws: J. R. Spencer and A. Pedain, 'Strict Liability in Continental Criminal Law', in A. P. Simester (ed.), *Appraising Strict Liability* (2005), 275–81.

[99] J. Gardner, 'On the General Part of the Criminal Law', in R. A. Duff (ed.), *Philosophy and the Criminal Law* (1998), 243.

[100] Gardner, 'On the General Part of the Criminal Law', at 244; see also Chapter 3.6(r).

[101] J. Gardner, 'Rationality and the Rules of Law in Offences against the Person' (1994) 53 Camb LJ 502, at 509.

[102] J. Gardner, *Offences and Defences* (2007), 246–7, replying to A. Ashworth, 'A Change of Normative Position: Determining the Contours of Culpability in Criminal Law' (2008) 11 New Crim LR 232.

[103] An early general statement was that of Lord Kenyon CJ in *Fowler* v *Padget* (1798) 7 Term Rep 509.

[104] [1969] 1 QB 439.

[105] E.g. in rape (*Kaitamaki* v *R* [1985] 1 AC 147, now confirmed by the Sexual Offences Act 2003, s. 79(2)) and in theft (on appropriation, *Hale* (1978) 68 Cr App R 415). Cf. the critique by M. Kelman, 'Interpretive Construction in the Substantive Criminal Law' (1981) 33 Stanford LR 591, and the defence by M. Moore, *Act and Crime* (1993), 35–7.

[106] [1983] 2 AC 161, discussed in Chapter 4.4.

[107] [1954] 1 WLR 228.

[108] [1966] 1 QB 59.

[109] [1992] QB 61.

[110] Cf. the felony-murder rule and constructive manslaughter, section 5.4(b).

[111] [1981] 1 WLR 705.

[112] An intention merely to assault would suffice: see the discussion in 5.4(b).

[113] See *Attorney-General for Northern Ireland* v *Gallagher* [1963] AC 349, and Chapter 6.2.

[114] See Coroners and Justice Act 2009, s. 56(6), indicating that, for the purposes of the loss of self-control defence, fear of serious violence or a justifiable sense of being seriously wronged will be disregarded if, 'caused by a thing which D incited to be done or said for the purpose of providing an excuse to use violence'. For the position under the old law, see *Edwards* v *R* [1973] AC 648, and *Johnson* (1989) 89 Cr App 148. See also Chapter 6.7.

[115] P. H. Robinson, 'Causing the Conditions of One's Own Defence: A Study in the Limits of Theory in Criminal Law Doctrine' (1985) 71 Virginia LR 1.

[116] Cf. the different wording in the Draft Criminal Code (Law Com No. 177) on automatism (cl. 33(1)(b) and on duress (cl. 42(5)), for example.

[117] See Chapter 6.3(c).

[118] *Hasan* [2005] 2 AC 467, and Chapter 6.5(c).

[119] Robinson, 'Causing the Conditions of One's Own Defense'.

[120] See the searching exploration of this topic in A. P. Simester (ed.), *Appraising Strict Liability* (2005).

[121] See the study by L. H. Leigh, *Strict and Vicarious Liability* (1982).

[122] There is ample authority that automatism is a defence to strict liability offences, but some disagreement on whether insanity may afford a defence: cf. *Hennessy* (1989) 89 Cr App R 10 with *DPP* v *H* [1997] 1 WLR 1406, discussed in section 5.2(c).

[123] A. Ashworth, 'Towards a Theory of Criminal Legislation' (1989) 1 Criminal Law Forum 41.

[124] B. Wootton, *Crime and the Criminal Law* (2nd edn., 1981) 47. Note that a few pages later Baroness Wootton advocates 'a wider concept of responsibility…in which there is room for negligence as well as purposeful wrongdoing' (50), which is less an argument for strict liability than for negligence liability. Support for negligence liability is also found in the landmark decision of *Sweet* v *Parsley*, discussed in the text at n 154.

[125] See, for example, the contributions of J. Horder and R. A. Duff in Simester (ed.), *Appraising Strict Liability*.

[126] Cf. the nuanced argument of G. Lamond, 'What is a Crime?' (2007) 27 *OJLS* 609, at 629–31, suggesting that strict liability may have a proper role in regulating conduct that increases the risk of violations of significant public or private interests, as in road traffic law, health and safety, and food standards.

[127] J. Braithwaite, *Corporate Crime in the Pharmaceutical Industry* (1984), ch 9.

[128] *Introduction to the Principles of Morals and Legislation*, ch XIII.

[129] See J. Horder, 'Strict Liability, Statutory Construction and the Spirit of Liberty' (2002) 118 LQR 458, at 472–4.

[130] *Sandhu* [1997] Crim LR 288.

[131] Cf. *Lester* (1976) 63 Cr App R 144 with *Hill* [1997] Crim LR 459.

[132] A. Reiss, 'Selecting Strategies of Social Control over Organizational Life', in K. Hawkins and J. M. Thomas (eds), *Enforcing Regulation* (1984).

[133] The leading study is K. Hawkins, *Law as Last Resort* (2003). For shorter reviews, see G. Richardson, 'Strict Liability for Regulatory Crime: The Empirical Research' [1987] Crim LR 295, and R. Baldwin, 'The New Punitive Regulation' (2004) 67 MLR 351.

[134] See Hawkins, *Law as Last Resort*; B. S. Jackson, '*Storkwain*: a Case Study in Strict Liability and Self-Regulation' [1991] Crim LR 892, discussing the role of the Pharmaceutical Society in regulating pharmacists.

[135] Cf. decisions such as *Seaboard Offshore Ltd* v *Secretary of State for Transport* [1994] 1 WLR 541, *British Steel* [1995] 1 WLR 1356, *Associated Octel* [1996] 1 WLR 1543, and *Gateway Foodmarkets Ltd* [1997] Crim LR 512.

[136] Cf. the justifications for confining the English codification initiative to 'traditional' offences by the Code Team (Law Com No. 143, paras. 2.10–13 and Appendix A) and by the Law Commission (Law Com No. 177, paras. 3.3–6), with the critical remarks of C. Wells, 'Restatement or Reform' [1986] Crim LR 314 and A. Ashworth, 'Is the Criminal Law a Lost Cause?' (2000) 116 LQR 225.

[137] *Alphacell Ltd* v *Woodward* [1972] AC 824, following the notion of 'quasi-crimes' outlined by Lord Reid in *Sweet* v *Parsley* [1970] AC 132.

[138] Model Penal Code, s. 6.02(4). For discussion in the context of the US Constitution see A. Michaels, 'Constitutional Innocence' (1999) 122 Harv LR 829.

[139] *References re Section 94(2) of the Motor Vehicles Act* (1986) 48 CR (3d) 289; see D. R. Stuart, *Canadian Criminal Law* (4th edn., 2001).

[140] Whether the presumption of innocence ought to have any implications for strict criminal liability is a matter that has been debated extensively. See e.g. the contribution by Sullivan in Simester (ed.), *Appraising Strict Liability*; V. Tadros and S. Tierney, 'The Presumption of Innocence and the Human Rights Act' (2004) 67 MLR 402; and A. Ashworth, 'Four Threats to the Presumption of Innocence' (2006) 123 SALJ 62.

[141] [2000] 2 AC 428.

[142] *Per* Lord Nicholls at 460.

[143] *Prince* (1875) LR 2 CCR 154; cf. R. Cross, 'Centenary Reflections on Prince's Case' (1975) 91 LQR 520 and J. Horder, 'How Culpability Can, and Cannot, Be Denied in Under-age Sex Crimes' [2001] Crim LR 15.

[144] *Per* Lord Steyn at 470, borrowing the expression from Sir Rupert Cross, *Statutory Interpretation* (3rd edn., 1995, by Bell and Engle), at 166.

[145] [2002] 1 AC 462.

[146] Lord Bingham at 17, Lord Steyn at 32. Lord Bingham made similar remarks in the recklessness case of *G* [2004] 1 AC 1034, discussed in 5.5(c).

[147] See the discussion of sexual offences in Chapter 8.5.

[148] [2000] 2 AC at 463–4.

[149] In addition to *Howells* and *Muhamad*, see also decisions such as *Storkwain* (n 158(), *Gammon* v *Attorney-General for Hong Kong* [1985] AC 1 and *R* v *Wells Street Magistrates' Court and Martin, ex p Westminster City Council* [1986] Crim LR 695.

[150] [1985] AC 1 at 14.

[151] See *Lim Chin Aik* v *R* [1963] AC 160.

[152] For an example, see *Harrow LBC* v *Shah* [2000] 1 WLR 83 (selling lottery tickets to a person under 16: strict liability as to age approved so as to help enforcement).

[153] [2008] 1 Cr App R 25.

[154] [2008] UKHL 37.

[155] For fuller discussion of the decision, see Chapter 8.6(a).

[156] E.g. *Muhamad* [2003] QB 1031 (offence of materially contributing to insolvency by gambling); *Matudi* [2003] EWCA Crim 697 (offence of importing products of animal origin, not citing either *B* v *DPP* or *K*).

[157] As in *Deyemi and Edwards* (reference at n 153). See also the speculation of Colin Manchester on how the Licensing Act 2003 will be interpreted, in 'Knowledge, Due Diligence and Strict Liability in Regulatory Offences' [2006] Crim LR 213.

[158] See now, Law Commission, *Criminal Liability in Regulatory Contexts* (CP No. 195, 2010), Pt 6.

[159] See further R. A. Duff, *Punishment, Communication and Community* (2001), 149–51.

[160] In that respect, '*mens rea*' is a term narrower in scope than the term 'fault element', because the latter clearly includes negligence.

[161] Burglary is discussed in Chapter 9.5. On intent-based crimes see generally A. Ashworth, 'Defining Criminal Offences without Harm', in P. F. Smith (ed.), *Criminal Law: Essays in Honour of J. C. Smith* (1987), and J. Horder, 'Crimes of Ulterior Intent', in A. P. Simester and A. T. H. Smith (eds), *Harm and Culpability* (1996).

[162] See the discussion of *Steane* in n 184 and accompanying text.

[163] See Chapter 7.3(c).

[164] For further study see R. A. Duff, *Intention, Agency and Criminal Liability* (1990), chs 3, 4, and 6, critically discussed on this point by A. P. Simester, 'Paradigm Intention' (1992) 11 Law and Philosophy 235.

[165] LCCP 177, *A New Homicide Act?*, paras. 4.36–37, adopting the argument of A. Khan, 'Intention in Criminal Law: Time to Change?' (2002) 23 Statute LR 235.

[166] [1976] QB 1.

[167] R. Cross, 'The Mental Element in Crime' (1967) 83 LQR 215.

[168] An exception involves cases in which someone tries to do something in order to show that it is impossible to achieve, such as seeking to jump over the roof of a very high building. Here, there may be an attempt without an intention to succeed, but such cases are rare. If such a case arose in a criminal context, it would not count as a criminal attempt, because there was no 'intent to commit the offence', as required by the Criminal Attempts Act 1981, s. 1(1).

[169] Compare J. Finnis, 'Intention and Side-Effects', in R. G. Frey and C. W. Morris, *Liability and Responsibility* (1991), 32, with A. P. Simester, 'Why Distinguish Intention from Foresight?', in Simester and Smith (eds), *Harm and Culpability* (1996).

[170] Bentham, *Introduction to the Principles of Morals and Legislation*, ch VIII, on direct and oblique intent. Bentham's definition of oblique intent was wider than that described here, a point discussed by Glanville Williams, 'Oblique Intent' (1987) 46 Camb LJ 417.

[171] Bentham, *Introduction to the Principles of Morals and Legislation*, ch VIII.

[172] See the discussion of 'ordinary language' in the next section.

[173] The phrase of Lord Lane CJ, in *Nedrick* (1986) 83 Cr App R 267.

[174] Duff, *Intention, Agency and Criminal Liability*, ch 3.

[175] For extensive discussion, see I. Kugler, *Direct and Oblique Intention in the Criminal Law* (2002).

[176] Law Com No 304, *Murder, Manslaughter and Infanticide* (2007), para. 3.27.

[177] Chapter 7.3(c).

[178] [1985] AC 905.

[179] [1986] AC 455.

[180] (1986) 83 Cr App R 267.

[181] [1999] AC 82.

[182] Applied by the Court of Appeal in *Matthews and Alleyne* [2003] 2 Cr App R 30, although Rix LJ commented that 'there is very little to choose between a rule of evidence and one of substantive law'.

[183] Commonly discussed examples involve situations of emergency, where a defence of necessity is unavailable because the defence has no application, as in murder cases. Consider an example in which D and her baby are trapped by an advancing fire at the top of a high building, and D throws the baby off the edge in the vain hope that someone below may by a miracle catch the baby. In such a case, even if D foresaw the baby's death as certain to occur as a result of her action, a court might not infer from that that D intended to kill the baby by that action.

[184] [1947] KB 997.

[185] [1986] AC 112.

[186] See the discussion in Chapter 4.8(b).

[187] [1960] 2 QB 423; see also *Yip Chiu-Cheung* [1995] 1 AC 111, discussed in Chapter 11.5.

[188] [1964] AC 763.

[189] N. Lacey, 'A Clear Concept of Intention: Elusive or Illusory?' (1993) 56 MLR 621.

[190] A. Norrie, *Crime, Reason and History* (2nd edn., 2001), 58.

[191] [1999] AC 82, at 90; see the observations of V. Tadros, 'The System of the Criminal Law' (2002) 22 LS 448, at 451–5.

[192] Law Com No. 304, para. 3.27; see generally paras. 3.18–26.

[193] See Chapter 5.5(c)(i).

[194] Expressly preserved by cll. 4(4) and 45(4) of the draft Criminal Code. See now *Re A (Conjoined Twins: Surgical Separation)* [2000] 4 All ER 961, discussed in Chapter 7.2; and more generally, A. Ashworth, 'Criminal Liability in a Medical Context: the Treatment of Good Intentions', in Simester and Smith (eds), *Harm and Culpability* (1996).

[195] This was one of the views expressed in *Hyam* v *DPP* [1975] AC 55, by Lord Diplock (not dissenting on this point); see J. Buzzard, 'Intent' [1978] Crim LR 5, with reply by J. C. Smith at [1978] Crim LR 14.

[196] See *Andrews* v *DPP* [1937] AC 576 and *Adomako* [1995] 1 AC 171, discussed in Chapter 7.5.

[197] *Cunningham* [1957] 2 QB 396, adopting the definition offered by C. S. Kenny, *Outlines of Criminal Law* (1st edn., 1902; 16th edn., 1952).

[198] *Caldwell* [1982] AC 341, and *Lawrence* [1982] AC 510.

[199] In *G*. [2004] 1 AC 1034.

[200] Chapter 7.5(b).

[201] A further meaning of recklessness was adopted in sex cases (see *Kimber* [1983] 1 WLR 1118, *Satnam S and Kewal S* (1984) 78 Cr App R 149), but the enactment of the Sexual Offences Act 2003 relegates this to a matter of historical interest only.

[202] See n 197.

[203] Model Penal Code, s. 2.02(s)(c).

[204] Law Com No 304, paras. 3.36–40, relating to first degree murder and to reckless murder (second degree); for further discussion, see Chapter 7.3(c).

[205] Criminal Law Revision Committee, 14th Report, *Offences against the Person* (1980), 8.

[206] D. J. Galligan, 'Responsibility for Recklessness' (1978) 31 CLP 55, at 70.

[207] Norrie, *Crime, Reason and History*, 78–80. For example, prosecutions for offences of recklessness have been unusual in respect of large-scale transportation disasters.

[208] See section 5.4(a).

[209] For an analysis of fault in such terms, see e.g. Alan Brudner, 'Agency and Welfare in the Penal Law', in S. Shute, J. Gardner, and J. Horder (eds), *Action and Value in Criminal Law* (1993).

[210] [1979] QB 695.

[211] [1977] 1 WLR 600.

[212] See the discussion by Geoffrey Lane LJ in *Stephenson* [1979] QB 695, and M. Wasik and M. P. Thompson, 'Turning a Blind Eye as Constituting Mens Rea' (1981) 32 NILQ 328, at 339. In *Booth* v *CPS* (2006) 170 JP 305 the Divisional Court upheld a finding of recklessness on the basis that D had 'closed his mind' to the obvious.

[213] Duff, *Intention, Agency and Criminal Liability*, 162–3.

[214] The Sexual Offences Act 2003 alters the definition of rape in this direction: by introducing a reasonableness test of belief in consent, it ensures that practically indifferent defendants should be convicted. See Chapter 8.5.

[215] See G. Williams, 'The Unresolved Problem of Recklessness' (1988) 8 Legal Studies 74, at 82.

[216] [1982] AC 341. The case of *Lawrence* (reference at n 198) was decided on the same day.

[217] [2004] 1 AC 1034.

[218] For a fuller discussion, see the 4th edition of this work, 183–7.

[219] See e.g. *Elliott* v *C*. (1983) 77 Cr App R 103 (mentally handicapped girl of 14), *Stephenson* [1979] QB 695 (man with schizophrenia).

[220] [2004] 1 AC 1034.

[221] *Per* Lord Bingham at para. 38. For substantive argument, see V. Tadros, 'Recklessness and the Duty to Take Care', in S. Shute and A. P. Simester (eds), *Criminal Law Theory: Doctrines for the General Part* (2002), at 255–7.

[222] For the detailed history of the rise and fall of *Caldwell* recklessness, and suggestions for further development, see A. Halpin, *Definition in the Criminal Law* (2004), ch 3.

[223] On this point one may compare German criminal law, which also adopts this broader form of recklessness with a capacity exception—the question being whether D would or should have foreseen the risk, given his intellectual capacities and knowledge at the time. See J. R. Spencer and A. Pedain, 'Strict Liability in Continental Criminal Law', in A. P. Simester (ed.), *Appraising Strict Liability* (2005), 241.

[224] (1986) 83 Cr App R 155; see also the draft Criminal Code, Law Com No. 177, cl. 18(a).

[225] *Westminster City Council* v *Croyalgrange Ltd* (1986) 83 Cr App R 155.

[226] See *Moloney* [1985] AC 905; cf. *Woollin* [1999] 1 AC 82 (reference at n 181).

[227] The classic statement is that of Devlin J, in *Roper* v *Taylor's Garages Ltd* [1951] 2 TLR 284, at 288.

[228] Contrast the differing views of Shute, 196–8 (reference at n 239), and G. R. Sullivan, 'Knowledge, Belief and Culpability' and V. Tadros, 'Recklessness and the Duty to Take Care', in Shute and Simester (eds), *Criminal Law Theory*, at respectively 213–14 and 252–4.

[229] See Chapter 7.5(c).

[230] Some examples are collected at [1980] Crim LR 1.

[231] See section 5.4(a).

[232] J. Gardner, 'Introduction', summarizing the views of H. L. A. Hart, *Punishment and Responsibility* (2nd edn., 2008).

[233] Discussed in Chapter 4.2.

[234] This is the argument of Hart, *Punishment and Responsibility*, chs 2 and 5. The absence of an incapacity exception was a major argument against the *Caldwell* test.

[235] See the detailed discussion by M. S. Moore, *Placing Blame* (1997), ch 9 and 588–92.

[236] A. P. Simester, 'Can Negligence be Culpable?', in J. Horder (ed.), *Oxford Essays in Jurisprudence* (4th Series) (2000), at 106.

[237] Robinson and Darley, *Justice, Liability and Blame*, 123.

[238] See section 5.4(f).

[239] A. Ashworth, 'Is the Criminal Law a Lost Cause?' (2000) 116 LQR 225.

[240] See Chapter 3.2.

[241] As now adopted in the Sexual Offences Act 2003, discussed in Chapter 8.5.

[242] On this and other points, see J. Horder, 'Gross Negligence and Criminal Culpability' (1997) 47 U Toronto LJ 495.

[243] See Chapters 7.6, 7.7, and 8.3(f).

[244] See Chapter 1.3.

[245] Some 'subjectivists' might accept a case for some criminal negligence liability, while insisting that it is categorically different from liability based on choice: see Moore (reference at n 235).

[246] See the discussion in section 5.5(c).

[247] Cf. Gardner's view that 'once we go beyond the paradigm of intention…the mentalities of crime quickly fragment and lack any intelligible ordering': J. Gardner, 'On the General Part of the Criminal Law', in R. A. Duff, *Philosophy and the Criminal Law* (1998), 231.

[248] Norrie, *Crime, Reason and History*, 66.

[249] See the discussion of specific offences in Chapter 8.3.

[250] *Cunningham* [1957] 2 QB 396; *Savage, Parmenter* [1992] AC 699; section 5.3(c).

[251] [1981] AC 394.

[252] See J. A. Andrews, 'Wilfulness: a Lesson in Ambiguity' (1981) 1 Legal Studies 303.

[253] Compare, e.g., *James and Son* v *Smee* [1955] 1 QB 78 with *Baugh* v *Crago* [1976] Crim LR 72.

[254] In Chapter 9.2.

[255] Public Order Act 1986, s. 4(1); see Chapter 8.3.

[256] Public Order Act 1986, s. 19(1).

[257] See section 5.2(b).

[258] Cf. the facts of *G*. [2004] 1 AC 1034, where the two children set fire to paper beneath a dustbin, and the ultimate result was damage to buildings costing around £1 million.

[259] See Law Com No. 29, *Offences of Damage to Property* (1970), and the Criminal Damage Act 1971.

[260] Sexual Offences Act 2003, discussed in Chapter 8.5.

[261] See A. Ashworth, 'The Elasticity of *Mens Rea*', in C. Tapper (ed.), *Crime, Proof and Punishment* (1981), and Moore, *Placing Blame*, ch 11.

[262] See the discussion of the principle of fair labelling in Chapter 3.6(s).

[263] Law Com No. 177, ii, para. 8.57 (my italics).

[264] The offences of fraud form an exception: see Chapter 9.7.

[265] See Ashworth, 'The Elasticity of *Mens Rea*', 46–7.

[266] See Ashworth, 'The Elasticity of *Mens Rea*', 47.

[267] See Law Com No. 177, ii, para. 8.31, and Chapter 10.5(a).

[268] *Gross* (1913) 23 Cox CC 455 (partial defence of provocation transferred).

[269] See A. Ashworth, 'Transferred Malice and Punishment for Unforeseen Consequences', in P. Glazebrook (ed.), *Reshaping the Criminal Law* (1978).

[270] *Pembliton* (1874) 12 Cox CC 607.

[271] As in the leading case of *Latimer* (1886) 17 QBD 359.

[272] See Ashworth, 'Transferred Malice and Punishment', 89–93.

[273] Cf. e.g., D. Husak, 'Transferred Intent' (1996) 10 Notre Dame J Law, Ethics and Public Policy 65, with A. M. Dillof, 'Transferred Intent: an Inquiry into the Nature of Criminal Culpability' (1998) 1 Buffalo Crim LR 501.

[274] [1998] 1 Cr App R 91.

[275] See the discussion of this principle in section 5.4(c).

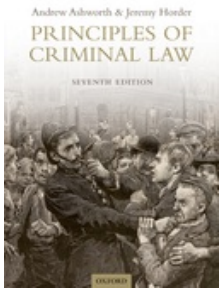
[276] J. Horder, 'Transferred Malice and the Remoteness of Unexpected Outcomes from Intentions' [2006] Crim LR 383.

[277] In effect, cl. 24 of the Draft Criminal Code is a 'deeming' provision: see Law Com No. 177, ii, paras. 8.57–59.

[278] G. Williams, 'Convictions and Fair Labelling' [1983] CLJ 85.

[279] Cf. the discussion of luck and results in section 5.4(b).

[280] Cf. Horder, 'Transferred Malice and Remoteness', with A. P. Simester and G. R. Sullivan, *Criminal Law: Theory and Doctrine* (3rd edn., 2007), 156–8.



Principles of Criminal Law (7th edn)

Andrew Ashworth and Jeremy Horder

Publisher: Oxford University Press
Print ISBN-13: 9780199672684
DOI: 10.1093/he/9780199672684.001.0001

Print Publication Date: May 2013
Published online: Sep 2013

6. Excusatory Defences

Chapter: (p. 193) 6. Excusatory Defences
Author(s): Andrew Ashworth and Jeremy Horder
DOI: 10.1093/he/9780199672684.003.0006

6.1 Excuses and other defences
6.2 Intoxication
6.3 Duress and coercion
6.4 Reasonable mistake and putative defences
6.5 Ignorance or mistake of law
6.6 Entrapment
6.7 Reviewing the non-permission-based defences
Further reading

6.1 Excuses and other defences

Criminal lawyers sometimes speak and write as if criminal guilt turns on the presence or absence of *mens rea*, but observations in previous chapters have already hinted that matters

are not so simple. The notions of fault and culpability go further and deeper than *mens rea* and require a discussion of other doctrines broadly termed 'defences'. It is technically incorrect to use the term 'defence' when referring to the 'defence of mistake' or the 'defence of accident', since these (along with intoxication) are simply 'failure of proof' arguments; 'mistake' or 'accident' is merely a way of explaining why the prosecution has failed to prove the required knowledge, intention, or recklessness in respect of a particular ingredient of an offence.[1] Defences of various kinds have been discussed in earlier chapters. The absence of a voluntary act (Chapter 4.2) is often referred to as the defence of automatism. The various permission-based defences, such as self-defence, were analysed in Chapter 4.6, 4.7, and 4.8. Defences of lack of capacity, particularly insanity, were discussed in Chapter 5.2. In the present chapter the focus is on excuses and potential excuses for wrongful acts, the essence of which is that D 'lived up to normative expectations' when responding to testing circumstances[2]—typically duress (section 6.3), but also to some extent intoxication (section 6.2), reasonable mistake and putative defences (section 6.4), and mistake of law (section 6.5). Last, there **(p. 194)** is a miscellany of possible defences, chiefly entrapment (section 6.6), but also some forms of mistake of law (section 6.5) that are based on elements of excuse and other public-policy arguments. We will return, at the end of the chapter, to take stock of the various rationales.

6.2 Intoxication

Research confirms that many of those who commit crimes of violence and burglary (at least) have taken some kind of intoxicant beforehand.[3] Alcohol is probably the most widely used of intoxicants, but narcotic or hallucinogenic drugs are involved in some cases, too, and our discussion will relate to those who have taken alcohol, drugs, or a combination of the two. The usual effects are a loosening of inhibitions and, perhaps, a feeling of well-being and confidence. It is well known that people who have taken intoxicants tend to say or do things which they would not say or do when sober, and, in that sense, intoxicants may be regarded as the cause of such behaviour. But, as we saw in Chapter 5, the criminal law's conception of fault has tended to concentrate on cognition rather than on volition. Thus the approach to intoxication has not been to examine whether D's power to choose to cause the prohibited harm was substantially reduced, but has been to focus on its relation to *mens rea*. However, the law has been reluctant to allow intoxication simply to negate *mens rea*: instead, rather like its approach to automatism (see Chapter 4.2), it has drawn on arguments of prior fault and social defence in order to prevent the simple acquittal of those who cause harm and who lack awareness at the time because of intoxication. This, as we shall see, has caused various doctrinal difficulties for English criminal law.

(a) The english intoxication rules

From what was said earlier about the doctrine of prior fault,[4] it is not surprising to find that a person who deliberately drinks himself into an intoxicated state in order to carry out a crime will have no defence. As Lord Denning declared in *Attorney-General for Northern Ireland* v *Gallagher* (1963):[5]

> If a man, whilst sane and sober, forms an intention to kill and makes preparation for it …

> and then gets himself drunk so as to give himself Dutch courage to do the killing, and whilst drunk carries out his intention, he cannot rely on this self-induced drunkenness as a defence to a charge of murder.

(p. 195) Cases such as this are rare. More frequent are cases in which D has become intoxicated 'voluntarily', i.e. where there is no reason to regard it as 'involuntary',[6] and has then done something which, he argues, he would not have done but for the alcohol or drugs.

It could be said that there is an 'inexorable logic'[7] that if *mens rea* is not present, whether through intoxication or otherwise, D should not be convicted. However, considerations of social protection have led the courts to introduce an unusual distinction. The decision in *DPP* v *Majewski* (1977)[8] divides crimes into 'offences of specific intent' and 'offences of basic intent', and allows intoxication as a 'defence' (in the form of a denial of fault) to the former but not to the latter. Murder and wounding with intent are crimes of specific intent, and there is no great loss of social defence in allowing intoxication to negative the intent required for those crimes when the amplitude of the basic intent offences of manslaughter and unlawful wounding lies beneath them—ensuring D's conviction and liability to sentence. Various theories have been advanced in an attempt to explain why those offences (together with theft, handling, and all crimes of attempt, for example) are crimes of 'specific intent' whereas others are not, but none is satisfactory.[9] For example, to assert (as did Hughes LJ in *Heard* (2008))[10] that crimes of specific intent require proof of purpose is unconvincing, since that is not true of, for example, handling stolen goods (a specific intent crime, after *Durante*[11]). Moreover, many crimes contain some elements for which only intent will suffice and others for which recklessness or negligence is sufficient.[12] However, this rather ramshackle law has proved workable. The courts have thus restricted the operation of the 'inexorable logic' of *mens rea* to the few offences of specific intent and, since most of them are underpinned by a lesser offence of 'basic intent', no great loss of social defence has occurred.

The policy expressed in *Majewski* through the idea of 'offences of basic intent' was expressed slightly differently in *Caldwell* (1982)[13] in terms of 'recklessness'. Thus, where recklessness is a sufficient fault element for the crime, evidence of intoxication is irrelevant because anyone who was intoxicated is deemed to have been reckless. This is a simpler rule to apply, although it appears not to have displaced the *Majewski* test.[14] It is subject to an exception, as we shall see in section 6.2(d), in cases where the intoxication can be regarded as to some degree 'involuntary'. Section 6(5) of the Public Order Act 1986, which applies only to offences in that Act, reads as follows:

> a person whose awareness is impaired by intoxication shall be taken to be aware of that of which he would be aware if not intoxicated, unless he shows either that his intoxication was **(p. 196)** not self-induced or that it was caused solely by the taking or administration of a substance in the course of medical treatment.

This provision, though couched in the terminology of awareness instead of advertent recklessness, may be thought to express the law's general approach.[15]

The effect of all these rules is that voluntary intoxication rarely functions as a ground of

exculpation. Here, as with automatism and some mistakes, the 'logic' of the standard doctrines of *actus reus* and *mens rea* has been subordinated to considerations of social defence. Thus where it is alleged that intoxication induced a state of automatism, the case is treated as one of intoxication (the cause) rather than automatism (the effect).[16] The same approach has been quite vigorously pursued in cases of intoxicated mistake, bringing them under the rules of intoxication (the cause) rather than mistake (the effect). At common law, in *O'Grady* (1987),[17] where the defence took the form of a drunken mistaken belief in the need for self-defence, the Court of Appeal held that D could not rely on his mistake if it stemmed from intoxication. This means, in effect, that where the normal subjective rule for mistake clashes with the objective rule for intoxication, the latter takes priority. The Court of Appeal confirmed this in *Hatton* (2006),[18] declining an invitation to depart from *O'Grady* and confirming a conviction for murder of someone who made an intoxicated mistake in self-defence.[19] The common law approach has now been enshrined in statute, by s. 76 of the Criminal Justice and Immigration Act 2008. In relation to a mistaken belief in the need to use force in self-defence or prevention of crime, ss. 76(4) and 76(5) say:

> **(4)** If D claims to have held a particular belief as regards the existence of any circumstances—
>
> **(a)** the reasonableness or otherwise of that belief is relevant to the question whether D genuinely held it; but
>
> **(b)** if it is determined that D did genuinely hold it, D is entitled to rely on it for the purposes of subsection (3), whether or not—
>
> **(i)** it was mistaken, or
>
> **(ii)** (if it was mistaken) the mistake was a reasonable one to have made.
>
> **(5)** But subsection (4)(b) does not enable D to rely on any mistaken belief attributable to intoxication that was voluntarily induced.

The current law may have some logic behind it. It may be appropriate to take a different approach to the relevance of intoxication depending on whether D is denying fault, or claiming a (putative) defence to a crime respecting which he or she admits have possessed the fault element. However, the approach also involves a need for fine distinction-making of a kind that becomes more troublesome the more serious the (p. 197) crime in issue. For example, consider D's potential for liability for murder, with its mandatory sentence of life imprisonment, in the following examples:

1. D, a very strong individual, was so voluntarily intoxicated that he believed at the time that the heavy wooden pole with which he repeatedly struck V until V died was made of a lightweight wood that would not cause serious harm even when repeated blows were struck.

2. D was so voluntarily intoxicated that he mistakenly thought that V, who was walking towards D, intended to attack D there and then with lethal force, and so he struck V repeatedly with a heavy wooden pole, causing V's death.

In example 1, D is denying that he or she had the fault element (intention to kill or to do serious

harm). As murder is a crime of specific intent, D's state of voluntary intoxication—and hence D's explanation of his or her actions—may be considered by the jury in determining whether D had the fault element when striking V. So, D has a route to conviction for manslaughter only, on the basis of denial of the fault element for murder. By contrast, in example 2, D admits (we may assume) having the fault element for murder, but claims that—due to voluntary intoxication—he believed that he was acting in self-defence. Applying s. 76 of the 2008 Act, D will not be able to rely on his honest but mistaken belief that V was about to attack him with lethal force, and will accordingly have no route to manslaughter because (we are assuming) he admits having killed whilst having the fault element for murder. However, stepping back from the strict application of the law, one may ask whether there is enough, morally speaking, in the distinction between examples 1 and 2 to justify providing a route to manslaughter in the first, but not in the second. Assuming that they are both telling the truth, does D clearly deserve the mandatory life sentence in example 2, in a way that D in example 1 does not? There is a case for saying that both examples should be treated as instances of reckless killing, and therefore as a highly culpable form of manslaughter.

(b) The attack on the english approach

The approach of the English courts has been attacked on several grounds. The distinction between 'specific intent' and 'basic intent' is ill-defined, even if it does have some moral coherence. The approach of deeming intoxicated persons to be reckless rests on a fiction, and the attempts of Lord Elwyn-Jones in *DPP* v *Majewski* to argue that intoxicated persons really are reckless because 'getting drunk is a reckless course of conduct'[20] involve a manifest confusion between a general, non-legal use of the term 'reckless' and the technical, legal term, which denotes (for almost all offences)[21] that D was aware of the risk of the result which actually occurred. In most cases it is **(p. 198)** far-fetched to argue that a person in the process of getting drunk is aware of the type of conduct he or she may later indulge in.

These criticisms of the courts' attempts to stretch the established meaning of 'intent' and of 'recklessness' in order to deal with the problems of intoxication have been joined by other arguments. Some have held that the intoxication rules are inconsistent with s. 8 of the Criminal Justice Act 1967, which requires courts to take account of all the evidence when deciding whether D intended or foresaw a result:[22] but the effect of *DPP* v *Majewski* is to deny that evidence of intoxication is relevant unless the crime is one of specific intent, and s. 8 extends only to legally relevant evidence.[23] Another argument is that the intoxication rules are inconsistent with the principle of contemporaneity, in that they base D's conviction (of an offence of basic intent) on the antecedent fault of voluntarily taking intoxicants:[24] but the principle of contemporaneity itself conflicts with the doctrine of prior fault, as we have noted,[25] and there seems no reason why contemporaneity should be an absolute principle. The question is whether it is appropriate to apply the rival doctrine of prior fault to intoxication cases.

Whatever the merit of these criticisms, it is undeniable that the intoxication rules in English law rest on fictions and apparently illogical legal devices. Is it the policy of restricting the defence of intoxication which is wrong, or merely the legal devices used to give effect to the policy?

(c) Intoxication, culpability, and social policy

One may concede that, in fact, a person may be so drunk as not to know what he or she is

doing when causing harm to others or damage to property, and yet maintain that there are good reasons for criminal liability. What might these reasons be? At the root of the 'social defence' or 'public protection' arguments is the proposition that one of the main functions of the criminal law is to exert a general deterrent effect so as to protect major social and individual interests, and that any legal system which allows intoxication to negative *mens rea* would present citizens with an easy route to impunity. Indeed, the more intoxicated they became, the less likely they would be to be held criminally liable for any harm caused. As a matter of human experience, it is far from clear that this argument is soundly based. There are several common law jurisdictions which have declined to follow the English approach and which simply regard intoxication as one way of negativing *mens rea*.[26] Two comments may be made (p. 199) here. First, these jurisdictions can be taken to be reinforcing the important and often neglected point that it is extremely rare for a defendant to be able to raise even a reasonable doubt that he was unaware of what he was doing. All that is required for proof of intent or recklessness is a momentary realization that property is being damaged or that a person is being assaulted, etc. Thus, even if evidence of intoxication were relevant, D's condition would not usually be acute enough to prevent conviction. Secondly, and alternatively, the rarity of acquittals based on intoxication in these jurisdictions may simply be because juries and magistrates are applying a normative test rather than a purely factual test. Thus the confidence of the majority judges in the High Court of Australia that juries and magistrates will not be too readily persuaded to acquit in these cases[27] may derive less from the rarity of acutely intoxicated harm-doers than from a belief that the courts will simply decline to return verdicts of acquittal where D is regarded as unworthy or culpable in some general way. This would suggest that both the English and the Australian approaches are unsatisfactory in their method—the English because it deems intoxicated harm-doers to be 'reckless' when they are not, the Australian because it relies on juries to make covert moral assessments and not simply the factual assessment that the law requires—even if they usually produce socially acceptable outcomes.

There remains the question of individual culpability. What distinguishes evidence of intoxication from many of the other explanations for D's failure to realize what most ordinary people would have foreseen is the element of prior fault. It was D's fault for taking drink or drugs to such an extent as to lose control over his behaviour. Does this mean that, in order to support a finding of culpability, it must be established that D knew of the likely effects of the intoxicants upon behaviour? Probably not, for it would be regarded as perfectly fair to assume that all people realize the possible effects of taking alcohol or drugs (apart from the exceptional situations to be discussed in paragraph (d)). 'It is common knowledge that those who take alcohol to excess or certain sorts of drugs may become aggressive or do dangerous or unpredictable things.'[28] This is plainly an objective standard, but it is so elementary that it should not be regarded as unfair on anyone to assume such knowledge. Thus there is an element of culpability in intoxication cases which serves to distinguish them not only from insanity cases (which arise without fault) but also from many cases of simple absence of *mens rea*. The point was put more strongly and more directly in early modern times, when temperance was regarded as a virtue and excessive drinking as an 'odious and loathsome sin'.[29]

But in what does the culpability consist? Specifically, is D to blame for becoming intoxicated or for causing the proscribed harm? It is fairly simple to establish culpability for becoming intoxicated if there is no evidence that it was 'involuntary'. It is fairly (p. 200) difficult to

establish culpability for causing the proscribed harm if we follow normal principles: we must assume acute intoxication at the time of the act, and if we look back to the period when D was becoming intoxicated, it is unlikely that one could establish actual foresight of the kind of harm eventually caused. Perhaps some people who regularly assault others when drunk may realize that there is a risk of this occurring, but in order to encompass the majority of cases, it would be necessary to rewrite the proposition about 'common knowledge' so as to maintain that people should realize that, when intoxicated, they are likely to cause damage or to assault others. The culpability, in other words, is somewhat unspecific—as in many instances where prior fault operates to bar a defence.[30] Sentencing decisions suggest that intoxication may mitigate on the first occasion it is raised, if the offence can be portrayed as 'out of character', but it will not mitigate any subsequent offences committed in an intoxicated state.[31]

(d) Voluntary and non-voluntary intoxication

We have already noted that non-voluntary intoxication may constitute an exception to the general intoxication rules, and we saw that s. 6(5) of the Public Order Act 1986 recognizes an exception where the intoxication was not 'self-induced'. There is, however, no sharp distinction between the voluntary and the non-voluntary: rather, there is a continuum of states in which D has more or less knowledge about the properties of what he is consuming. The English courts, consistently with their generally restrictive approach, have been reluctant to exempt defendants from the intoxication rules. Thus in *Allen* (1988),[32] D's argument was that he had become intoxicated because he had not realized that the wine being given to him had a high alcohol content. The Court of Appeal held that, so long as a person realizes that he is drinking alcohol, any subsequent intoxication is not rendered non-voluntary simply because he may not know the precise strength of the alcohol he is consuming. In some circumstances this might be quite a harsh ruling, but in broad terms it is compatible with judicial statements about the unpredictability of alcohol.

A different problem arose in *Hardie* (1985),[33] where D took a quantity of Valium tablets 'for his nerves' and later set fire to an apartment. The Court of Appeal quashed his conviction. The main distinguishing factor here was that Valium is widely regarded as a sedative or soporific drug, and is not thought likely 'to render a person aggressive or incapable of appreciating risks to others'. This suggests that one basis for the distinction between voluntary and non-voluntary intoxication is a division of intoxicants into those that are sedative and others that may have aggressive effects. The Court in *Hardie* added that D would nonetheless be treated as reckless if he had known, contrary to **(p. 201)** general beliefs, that Valium might have disinhibiting rather than sedative effects.[34] It should be noted that s. 6(5) of the Public Order Act 1986, set out earlier, allows D a defence where the intoxication 'was caused solely by the taking or administration of a substance in the course of medical treatment'. In line with the general approach, this should be confined to cases where D was not warned of the possible effects, or where those effects were not widely known.

The question of non-voluntary intoxication is raised most directly by *Kingston* (1995).[35] The evidence suggested that certain sedative drugs had been introduced into D's coffee, and that he had then carried out indecent sexual acts on a sleeping boy. The Court of Appeal quashed D's conviction, holding that if D had been placed in an altered mental state by the stratagem of another, and this led him to form an intent that he would not otherwise have formed, he should have a defence. This approach accepts that D may have had the mental element required for

the crime, but looks to the *cause* of that condition: in effect, a doctrine of prior lack of fault. The House of Lords restored the conviction. If the non-voluntary intoxication is so acute as to negative *mens rea*, then it may lead to an acquittal of any offence requiring *mens rea*, whether of specific or basic intent. Where non-voluntary intoxication is not so acute as to negative *mens rea*, Lord Mustill held that there is no basis for an acquittal unless the courts were to create a new defence.[36] This the House was unwilling to do, because their Lordships could see no significant moral difference between this case and *Allen*, and because the opportunity for false defences was considerable. The matter was one for the Law Commission and Parliament.

What, then, is the position? If the intoxicant is in the soporific category, it seems from *Hardie* that D may have a defence if he can show that he lacked the mental element required for the crime. The general rule would prevent evidence of intoxication being adduced to show that he was not reckless but, if the intoxication was non-voluntary, evidence of the intoxication should be admitted. However, where the intoxicant is not so powerful as to remove D's awareness of what he is doing, it seems immaterial whether it is in the soporific or the 'aggressive' category. *Kingston* holds that there is no defence available and D is therefore convicted on the basis of his intention or recklessness. Even if D can establish that the intoxicant was administered without his awareness—the 'laced' or 'spiked' drink[37]—this appears insufficient to alter the analysis, even though one might think that this presents a stronger argument than *Hardie*. The House of Lords in *Kingston* overlooked D's absence of fault in bringing about the condition, and adopted an implausibly narrow view of excuses premised on the presence or absence of *mens rea*. For these reasons, the decision should be reversed, but it is doubtful whether one should go further, as G. R. Sullivan **(p. 202)** has argued, and allow courts to look to D's character and destabilized condition in order to determine whether or not he was blameworthy, and to find a defence if D is not adjudged blameworthy.[38]

(e) Finding a legal solution

A simple solution compatible with the ordinary logic of the liability rules is to regard evidence of intoxication as relevant on issues of *mens rea*, following various decisions in New Zealand and in the non-Code states of Australia.[39] There will only rarely be acquittals, and these may be regarded as part of a small price for respecting the principle of individual autonomy—like occasional acquittals of clumsy and thoughtless individuals. In practice the behaviour of most defendants who allege intoxication will show some elements of intention, knowledge, or awareness.[40] However, an objection to the Antipodean approach is that it seems to yield the anti-social maxim 'more intoxication, less liability', and public outcries at certain acquittals have led some Australian states to abandon the simple 'logical' approach.[41] It gives no weight to the elements of choice and risk involved in getting drunk. Usually the choice is to loosen one's self-restraint rather than to commit a crime, let alone a particular kind of crime; but the retention of control over one's behaviour might fairly be regarded as a social duty, and its abandonment as a form of wrongdoing.[42] This argument may be weakened where D is addicted to alcohol or drugs, since the element of choice may have been exhausted long ago.[43]

In this country the various proposals for reform seem to fall into one of two different camps. On the one hand there are those who argue that the essence of the wrongdoing in most cases lies in becoming intoxicated, and that it is unfair to label a defendant as a certain kind of offender

(wounding, indecent assault, etc.) if he really was so intoxicated as not to realize what he was doing. Along these lines was a Consultation Paper issued by the Law Commission in 1993, proposing that courts be allowed to take account of evidence of intoxication on any issue of fault (following the Antipodean approach), but also introducing a new offence of causing harm whilst intoxicated—a 'state of affairs' offence designed to achieve a measure of social defence without unfair labelling of the offender (in line with German law).[44] However, the prevailing approach (p. 203) to reform is an adaptation of the common law. A Government version is to be found in a draft Bill of 1998:[45]

> For the purposes of this Act a person who was voluntarily intoxicated at any material time must be treated—
>
> • as having been aware of any risk of which he would have been aware had he not been intoxicated; and
>
> • as having known or believed in any circumstances which he would have known or believed in had he not been intoxicated.

The first part of this means that in most cases an intoxicated actor will be deemed reckless, which is not far from the present law and its distinction between specific and basic intent.[46] The 1998 Bill also deals with intoxicants taken on medical advice, and includes a definition of voluntary intoxication. It does not provide a separate defence of involuntary intoxication, and indeed creates a presumption that intoxication was voluntary.

More recently, the Law Commission has proposed a way of rationalizing the current law without using the confusing terms 'specific' and 'basic' intent.[47] In its place, the Law Commission draws a distinction between crimes in which the fault element is an 'integral' element, and crimes in which the fault element is not an 'integral' element. Only in the former may voluntary intoxication be used as a way of denying the fault element. The Commission lists those species of fault the inclusion of which in the definition of the offence will make them 'integral' to the offence, meaning that the prosecution will have to prove that D had the fault element even if D denies having it on the grounds that he or she was voluntarily intoxicated:

> Recommendation 3
>
> **(1)** Intention as to a consequence;
> **(2)** Knowledge as to something;
> **(3)** Belief as to something (where the belief is tantamount to knowledge);
> **(4)** Fraud;
> **(5)** Dishonesty.

This proposal is to be welcomed in so far as it requires judges, when considering if a crime is one to which voluntary intoxication may be evidence of lack of fault, only to decide (p. 204) whether the fault element falls within one of the categories just mentioned. They would no

longer have to wrestle with the application of the more abstract and indeterminate notions of 'specific' and 'basic' intent, and hence the risk of mis-categorizations—such as that in *Heard*[48]—might be avoided more often. In making this advance, though, the Law Commission relies on another distinction that is not without difficulty, namely the distinction between crimes where the fault element is 'integral' to the offence, and crimes where it is not. Clearly, the notion of fault being 'integral' to the offence cannot mean simply that a fault element is expressly included in the offence; otherwise, the distinction would be doing no work. In its understanding of what is 'integral' to the offence, the Law Commission is alluding instead to the wrongdoing that underlies the offence. The idea is that, in some crimes—murder, theft, fraud, for example—the fault element is integral to the wrongdoing itself: morally speaking, there can simply be no 'murder' without intention, no 'theft' without dishonesty, and so on. So, the argument runs, it would be unfair to deny D the possibility of denying the fault element in such crimes (whatever the reason for the absence of the fault element), given how central the fault element is to the moral wrong underlying the crime in question. By contrast, it is said, in some crimes—criminal damage is an example—the fault element may be added to the definition, as a matter of fairness to the accused, but is not integral to the underlying wrong. One may question how helpful this distinction really is. For example, is handling stolen goods 'knowing or believing' them to be stolen a crime in which the fault element is integral to the wrong, or not? Happily, under the Law Commission's scheme, such troublesome theoretical questions would not have to be tackled in the courts, who would look for guidance directly to Recommendation 3.

All of this might be described as 'workable', although it ignores the moral arguments made by those who favour the modified German-Antipodean approach to which the Law Commission was temporarily attached in 1993. The case for a purely subjective approach to intoxication seems unconvincing, but the arguments about how the intoxicated wrongdoer should be labelled and sentenced remain keenly contested.[49]

6.3 Duress and coercion

This part of the chapter deals with cases in which D's behaviour fulfils the conduct element and the positive fault requirements of an offence, but in which D acted in response to threats from another person (sometimes called 'duress *per minas*'), or in order to avert dire consequences (called 'duress of circumstances'), or, unusually, in **(p. 205)** circumstances of marital coercion. We have already seen, in Chapter 4.8, that some cases of necessity might give rise to a claim that what would otherwise be a criminal action was permissible, but those are likely to be rare cases where there is a net saving of lives. Having said that, in focusing here on the *excusatory* defences of duress, we will find that the development of the common law has been characterized by confusions over whether, when D responds to pressure by committing an offence, D acts permissibly or only excusably.

(a) Requirements of the defences

The courts have generally held that the requirements of duress by threats and of duress of circumstances are in parallel.[50] Although both defences require some danger external to D,[51] they arise in different factual circumstances, and it might be best to illustrate this by contrasting two cases. In *Hudson and Taylor* (1971)[52] two teenagers were prosecution

witnesses at a trial for wounding. They testified that they did not know the man charged and could not identify him as the culprit. The man was acquitted, but the young women were charged with perjury. They admitted that they gave false evidence, but said that they were under duress, having been threatened with violence by various men, one of whom was in the public gallery at the original trial. The Court of Appeal quashed their convictions because the defence of duress had been wrongly withdrawn from the jury. In *Conway* (1989)[53] two men approached D's car, whereupon D, urged on by his passenger, drove off at great speed and in a reckless manner. D's explanation was that he knew that his passenger had recently been threatened by two men who had fired a shotgun. D feared that these two men intended harm, and his driving was in response to that emergency. The Court of Appeal quashed the conviction for reckless driving because the trial judge had failed to leave the defence of duress of circumstances to the jury. A difference between these two cases is that for the defence of duress there should typically be a threat intended by the threatener to coerce D into committing a particular offence, whereas for duress of circumstances there will typically be a situation of emergency (involving perceived danger) that leads D to do something that would otherwise be an offence. However, there are additional subtle differences between the defences (although these may not have legal consequences):

1. In duress by threats cases, the crime D is to commit to avoid the threat will be specified by the threatener; in duress of circumstances cases, it is D who decides that the commission of a particular crime is the only reasonable course of conduct to take if the threat is to be avoided.
(p. 206) **2.** In duress by threats cases, one issue for D is a character assessment of the threatener in the shape of an assessment of is or her credibility: how likely is it that the threatener can or will implement the threat if D refuses to comply with the demand? In duress of circumstances, the equivalent issue for D is a risk assessment: how likely is it that the threat will have an impact on D in a way that makes commission of the crime the only reasonable course of action?
3. Unlike duress by threats, duress of circumstances overlaps with self-defence (if that defence is given a broad understanding). For example, *Conway*[54] could be seen as a case in which D acted in self-defence rather than under duress, if self-defence is deemed to include avoiding action that takes a form other than the use of force. If ducking to avoid something thrown at one's head is conduct that is self-defensive in nature, D's conduct in *Conway* should be analysed in a similar way.

What, then, are the general requirements of the two defences? They appear to be restricted to cases where D acted as he did out of fear of death or serious injury.[55] Threats to property or to reputation have been held to be insufficient,[56] but there was a dictum in *Steane* (1947)[57] that a threat of false imprisonment would suffice. In a sense it seems strange that the degree of threat or danger should be fixed in this way, since the seriousness of the crimes in respect of which duress is raised may vary considerably. A dire threat should be necessary to excuse a person who caused a grave harm, but it does not follow that some lesser threat should not be sufficient to excuse a lesser offence. However, the courts have continued to insist on threats of death or serious harm as the standard requirement and, additionally, that the threats must

be such that 'a sober person of reasonable firmness' would not have resisted them.[58] This objective condition has been tested in cases in which there have been attempts to introduce evidence to the effect that D's personality rendered him or her particularly susceptible to threats. In *Bowen* (1996)[59] the Court of Appeal held that the question is whether D responded 'as a sober person of reasonable firmness sharing the characteristics of the defendant would have done'. In applying this test a court should not admit evidence that D was more pliable, vulnerable, timid, or susceptible to threats than a normal person, and characteristics due to self-abuse (alcohol, drugs) should also be left out of account. But the Court did suggest that it would be proper to take account of age, sex, pregnancy, serious physical disability, or a 'recognized psychiatric condition'.[60] In view of the re-affirmation of the objective standard of self-control in loss of self-control **(p. 207)** cases,[61] this broadening of the ambit of duress may appear anomalous. However, the comparison with the operation of a partial defence to murder (i.e. provocation) is not an apt one, since duress operates as a complete defence to offences other than murder. Whereas the objective standard in provocation can be maintained in the expectation that mentally disordered defendants will have resort to the partial defence of diminished responsibility, the possibility of relaxing the requirements of duress for mentally disturbed defendants can only be realized through a complete defence or conviction followed by mitigation of sentence.[62]

In some cases the question of mixed threats and mixed motives has arisen: in *Valderrama-Vega* (1985),[63] a case in which D was both under severe financial pressure and subject to blackmail threats, the Court of Appeal held that duress would be available if the jury found that D would not have acted as he did but for the death threats he had received. The other pressures may have exerted an influence, but so long as the threats were causally significant, this was sufficient.

The threats need not be addressed to D personally:[64] the defence is available if the threats are against D's family or friends, but it now seems that there must be some connection with D.[65] In the unusual case of *Shayler* (2001),[66] the defence was that D revealed official secrets because he believed that (unidentified) people were placed in danger by MI5's activities. The Court of Appeal held that, for the defence to be available, the threat or danger must be to D himself or 'towards somebody for whom he reasonably regarded himself as being responsible'.[67] This arguably introduces an unnecessary complication to the defence. Suppose that a bank robber threatens to shoot a bank customer or employee, unless an employee or customer volunteers to help with the robbery; D, a customer, agrees to help the robber. In this example, D is not in any way responsible for the welfare of any other customer saved by his or her decision to help the robber; yet, it would seem harsh to deny the defence to D. Would it really be held by the courts that D, being a customer, could not invoke the defence whereas, had a bank employee volunteered instead of a customer, the defence would have been available, because bank employees have a degree of responsibility for their customers? Such a distinction seems arbitrary.

The threat must be 'present' and not a remote threat of future harm, but how long an interval may elapse? In *Hudson and Taylor*,[68] the facts of which were outlined earlier, **(p. 208)** the Court of Appeal held that it is not necessary that the threat would be carried out immediately, so long as its implementation was imminent. The same approach was taken in *Abdul-Hussain et al*. (1999),[69] where a group of Shiite Muslims from Iraq had hijacked an aircraft to Stansted airport. When they surrendered, they claimed that they had acted out of fear of persecution

and death at the hands of the Iraqi authorities. The trial judge withdrew the defence from the jury on the ground that the threat was not sufficiently close and immediate, but the Court of Appeal held that imminence is sufficient and that the execution of the threat need not be immediately in prospect. However, in *Hasan* (2005)[70] Lord Bingham opposed the drift towards the looser concept of 'imminence' and held that older authorities in favour of a requirement of immediacy should be restored: there is a duty to take evasive action where possible, particularly where the threat 'is not such as [D] reasonably expects to follow immediately or almost immediately on his failure to comply with the threat'.[71] Lord Bingham regarded *Hudson and Taylor* as wrongly decided, commenting that he could not accept 'that a witness testifying in the Crown Court at Manchester has no opportunity to avoid complying with a threat incapable of execution there and then'. This strong line may, though, leave intact the concession to the defendants' youth in *Hudson and Taylor*—'having regard to his age and circumstances, and to any risks to him which may be involved in the course of action relied upon'.[72] Having said that, more broadly, Lord Bingham's conception of duress evidently finds no place for those who cannot measure up to reasonable expectations.

Another objective element is that the defendant is not entitled to be judged on the facts as he believed them to be. Contrary to the generally subjective approach to mistaken beliefs,[73] the Court of Appeal in *Graham* (1982)[74] held that the test for duress is whether, as a result of what D *reasonably* believed that the duressor had said or done, he had *good cause* to fear death or serious injury. Lord Lane offered no convincing reasons for departing from the subjective orthodoxy of the time, and in *Safi* (2003)[75] the Court of Appeal appeared to favour a subjective approach, although the point was not argued to a clear conclusion.[76]

Both duress by threats and duress of circumstances are subject to the doctrine of prior fault.[77] In *Sharp* (1987)[78] D joined a gang of robbers participating in crimes where guns were carried, but when he tried to withdraw he was himself threatened **(p. 209)** with violence. The Court of Appeal held that the defence of duress is unavailable to anyone who voluntarily joins a gang 'which he knows might bring pressure on him to commit an offence and was an active member when he was put under such pressure'. In *Shepherd* (1987)[79] the Court added that: 'there are certain kinds of criminal enterprises the joining of which, in the absence of any knowledge of propensity to violence on the part of one member, would not lead another to suspect that a decision to think better of the whole affair might lead him into serious trouble'. The doctrine of prior fault does not only operate in the context of joining criminal enterprises: it also applies where drug users become indebted to drug dealers who have a reputation for violence. The leading decision now is *Hasan*,[80] where D associated with a man who was known to use violence, and who allegedly forced D (by threats) to carry out two burglaries. Lord Bingham held that there should be an objective test, based on the foreseeability of violence being threatened by the people with whom D was associating, and not requiring foresight of coercion to commit crimes of a particular kind:[81]

> The policy of the law must be to discourage association with known criminals, and it should be slow to excuse the criminal conduct of those who do so. If a person voluntarily becomes or remains associated with others engaged in criminal activity in a situation where he knows or ought reasonably to know that he may be the subject of compulsion by them or their associates, he cannot rely on the defence of duress to excuse any act which he is thereafter compelled to do by them.[82]

Thus the subjective element in *Sharp*, 'which he knows …', is superseded by the strongly objective approach running through Lord Bingham's speech in *Hasan*. However, Baroness Hale's speech favours the subjective approach in *Sharp*, and also argues that the foreseen threat must have been a threat to commit crimes rather than a general threat of violence.[83] The latter point is surely right: the likelihood of being subjected to violence or threats thereof is different from the foreseeability of threats being used to force D to commit crimes, and the latter should be required.

(b) Theoretical foundations for the defences

Why should defences of duress be allowed? One argument is that acts under duress are permissible in the sense that they constitute a lesser evil than the carrying-out of the threat: the credentials of this rather narrow argument were discussed in Chapter 4.8. In general the courts have tended to mix arguments about permissions with those of excuse, without noticing the distinction. How strong are the arguments for excusing D rather than saying that the act is permissible? It is fairly clear that duress does not negative intent, knowledge, or recklessness: D will know only too well the nature and consequences of the conduct. It also seems unlikely that duress negatives the voluntary **(p. 210)** nature of D's conduct: the elements of unconsciousness and uncontrollability of bodily movements which are regarded as the hallmark of involuntary behaviour[84] are not typically to be found in duress cases. Two separate rationales, with somewhat different implications, warrant further discussion—the first seeing duress as characterized by moral involuntariness, the second regarding it more as a reasonable response to extreme pressure.

Although conduct in response to duress or necessity is not *in*voluntary, it may be described as *non*-voluntary. The argument is that there is a much lower degree of choice and free will in these cases than in the normal run of actions. George Fletcher has termed this 'moral or normative involuntariness', arguing that the degree of compulsion in these cases is not significantly less than in cases of physical involuntariness.[85] The phrases used by the Court of Appeal in *Hudson and Taylor*—'effective to neutralize the will of the accused', and 'driven to act by immediate and unavoidable pressure'—have been repeated in many subsequent decisions. Even though 'neutralizing the will' puts it rather too strongly, the idea of moral involuntariness seems to encapsulate the approach of English judges, who also draw on a supposed analogy with loss of self-control. Full acceptance of the 'moral involuntariness' rationale might lead to an entirely subjective version of duress, in which the degree of pressure experienced by D would be the main issue. In fact English law imposes a standard of reasonable steadfastness, but of course that could be explained as a means of avoiding false defences (as courts and reform committees often state) rather than a rejection of the basic rationale.[86] The weakness of the moral involuntariness account of duress is that it mis-describes most actions taken under duress, which are coerced but are neither involuntary nor non-voluntary. It is possible to imagine circumstances in which a threat could break D's will to resist. An example might be where D is subjected to prolonged and agonizing torture, and then threatened with a continuation of the torture unless he or she complies with a threatener's demand. In such a case, D may conceivably lack the will to resist, but such cases will be rare.

An alternative rationale is to regard the successful duress defence as recognition that D responded in a reasonable way to the pressure of circumstances which involved extreme

danger. It is important not to read too much into the element of reasonableness here. It is not being claimed that D had a right to respond as he did, save perhaps in the small group of cases where a net saving of lives is in prospect.[87] Duress usually operates as an excuse, recognizing the dire situation with which D was faced and limiting the defence to cases where D responded in a way that did not fall below the standard **(p. 211)** to be expected of the reasonable citizen in such circumstances. On this rationale the person of reasonable firmness assumes a central role, not so much in announcing a standard that should be followed, or reducing the risk of false defences, but rather in recognizing that D was not lacking in responsibility for what was done.[88] D is excused for giving way to the threat or danger when resistance could not reasonably be expected in the circumstances—which means that self-sacrifice is required in certain (lesser) situations. There is thus a pale reflection of doctrines of self-defence, which requires a proportionate response to the threatened harm if D is to be acquitted.[89]

That leaves the issue of citizens who, for one reason or another, cannot attain the standard of reasonable firmness in these situations. We saw that in *Bowen*[90] the Court of Appeal recognized a small group of conditions which might be allowed to modify the standard of reasonable firmness, whilst maintaining that the standard should be upheld for those falling outside that short list. Arguments of this kind have been encountered in other contexts.[91] The 'moral involuntariness' rationale argues in favour of including these people in the defence of duress, on the basis of the severe reduction of their free will. But they fall outside the 'reasonable response' rationale, to which the standard of reasonable steadfastness is central, and so the most appropriate form of defence would ideally be one that rests on diminished capacity or extreme mental or emotional disturbance.[92]

A more radical approach would be to argue that, since there are so many questions of degree in duress cases (degree of threat, degree of immediacy, seriousness of crime), they are much more appropriate for the sentencing stage than the liability stage.[93] On that view, the duress defences should be abolished altogether. At present English law takes the view (except in murder cases) that there is a point at which threats or an emergency may place so much pressure on an individual that it is unfair to register a conviction at all, so long as the individual does not fall below the standard of reasonable firmness, but that in lesser situations claims of duress sound only at the sentencing stage. Mitigation may be right if 'desert' is the basis for sentence, but supporters of deterrent sentencing have a particular problem. Their general approach is to maintain that the stronger the temptation or pressure to commit a crime, the stronger the law's threat should be in order to counterbalance it.[94] The law and its penalties should be used to strengthen the resolve of those under pressure. Yet Bentham also accepted that criminal liability and punishment are inefficacious where a person is subject to such acute threats (e.g. death, serious injury) that the law's own threat cannot be expected **(p. 212)** to counterbalance it: in these cases, he said, there should be a complete defence.[95] The difficulty with this analysis is that it suggests heavy deterrent sentences for all cases except the most egregious, where it prescribes no penalty at all—a distinction with momentous effects but no clear reference point. There is surely a sliding scale of intensity of duress and necessity. If, in the dire circumstances that confront D, he or she responds in such a way that one could not reasonably expect more of a citizen, then surely neither conviction nor punishment is deserved. Mitigation of sentence should be available for less extreme cases, to reflect strong elements of pressure that did not amount to the full defence.

(c) Duress and the taking of life

Although most of the elements of these defences seem to be based on a rationale of excusing a person's understandable submission to the threat, the troubled issue of whether the defences should be available to murder has led the courts to draw on permission-based rationales. The tone was set in the late nineteenth century with *Dudley and Stephens* (1884),[96] where two shipwrecked mariners killed and ate a cabin-boy after seventeen days adrift at sea. Lord Coleridge CJ held that no defence of necessity (now called duress of circumstances) was available in a case of taking another person's life. In the first place, he argued, there is no *necessity* for preserving one's own life, and there are circumstances in which it may be one's duty to sacrifice it. Then, secondly, if there were ever to be a similar case, who would judge which person is to die? (This point might be overcome by drawing lots.) So he concluded that, terrible as the temptation might be in this kind of case, the law should 'keep the judgment straight and the conduct pure'. The sentence of death was later commuted to six months' imprisonment, thus emphasizing the obvious conflict between the desire to re-affirm the sanctity of life and the widely felt compassion for people placed in an extreme situation.

In *DPP* v *Lynch* (1975)[97] the House of Lords accepted, by a majority of three to two, that duress by threats should be available as a defence to an accomplice to murder, reflecting the law's compassion towards a person placed under such extreme pressure. But then the Privy Council in *Abbott* v *R* (1977)[98] held that duress was unavailable as a defence to the principal in murder, and in *Howe* (1987)[99] the House of Lords had to decide whether to perpetuate this distinction between principals and accomplices. Their Lordships decided not to do so, unanimously favouring a rule which renders duress and necessity unavailable as defences in all prosecutions for murder.[100] The primary reason for their decision was that the law should not recognize that any individual **(p. 213)** has the liberty to choose that one innocent citizen should die rather than another. All duress cases involve a choice between innocents, D and the intended victim, and the law should not remove its protection from the victim. Thus D is required to make a heroic sacrifice. A secondary argument, similar to that employed a century earlier in *Dudley and Stephens*, was that executive discretion could take care of deserving cases—either by releasing D on parole at an early stage or even by refraining from prosecution.[101]

Both these arguments are open to criticism. The argument based on protection for the innocent victim seems to assume that duress is being advanced as a permission for killing: this enables the judges to assume that, because the killing of an innocent person is impermissible, duress should not be a defence. It was argued earlier that a killing under duress might be justifiable if there were a net saving of lives,[102] but that is not the issue here. Where it is a question of liability for taking one innocent life to save another, the rationale must be one of excuse, not permission. It can therefore be put alongside other situations in which a killing may be excused in whole or in part (e.g. mistaken self-defence, intoxication, loss of self-control), without being permitted.[103] Utilitarians might argue that a rule denying duress as a defence to murder is preferable because over the years it might achieve a net saving of lives:[104] this not only fails to take the defendant's interests into account, but also assumes that persons under duress will know of the law's approach and will be influenced by it, an assumption which will rarely be true. The second argument, in favour of convicting the person under duress and then invoking executive clemency to reduce the punishment, also smacks of an unrealistic

utilitarian solution. For one thing, there can be no certainty that the Parole Board will view these cases more favourably than others. For another, if we are satisfied that D was placed under extreme pressure, we ought to declare that publicly either by allowing a defence or, if not, by allowing a partial defence to murder on an analogy with loss of self-control. The argument in favour of merely a partial defence should not be understated: as Chapter 7.4(c) will show, it is possible both to recognize the sanctity of life as a fundamental value and to demonstrate compassion.

The case for a partial defence in duress cases has arguably been strengthened by the extension of the partial defence to murder of loss of self-control to cover cases in which D lost self-control and killed V when in fear of serious violence from V.[105] The requirement in duress cases that the threatener have insisted on immediate or almost immediate compliance[106] is strongly analogous to a requirement for loss of self-control. Further, whilst it is true that in loss of self-control cases it must be the person threatening the violence who is killed, rather than an innocent third party (as in duress cases), this is arguably no more than a factor to take into account when deciding **(p. 214)** whether the person of reasonable steadfastness might have done as D did. In its 2005 Consultation Paper, the Law Commission proposed that duress should be available as a partial defence to first degree murder, reducing it to second degree murder, and that the *Bowen* test of relevant characteristics should be tightened so as to run in parallel to the partial defence of loss of self-control.[107] There were other, complicated proposals about how this approach should be adapted to defences of duress to second degree murder and to manslaughter, but the consultation process persuaded the Commission to abandon this whole approach. Although recognizing that consultees were ‘more divided on duress’ than on any other aspect, the Commission has now reverted to its earlier view that in principle it would be morally wrong to convict of any crime a defendant who satisfies the stringent requirements of the defence of duress, having reacted as a person of reasonable fortitude might have done.[108] The Commission recognizes that recommending duress as a partial defence might have been a compromise acceptable to many, but it states that the argument against a complete defence based on the sanctity of life is not conclusive because of cases of ‘ten year olds and peripheral secondary parties becoming involved in killing under duress’.[109]

The reference to age is sharpened by the subsequent decision in *Wilson* (2007),[110] where a boy of 13 was pressed by his father into helping with the killing of a neighbour and no defence of duress was available on the charge of murder, despite considerable evidence that he was so frightened that he could not disobey his father. The Law Commission's principal argument is that as a matter of moral principle a person who is found by a jury to have reacted to extreme circumstances as a reasonable person might have done ‘should be completely exonerated despite having intentionally killed’, adding that youth is a relevant factor in determining reasonableness.[111] Thus the Commission insists that the threat must be believed to be life-threatening, and that D's belief that the threat has been made is based on reasonable grounds. The argument for adopting the *Graham* approach is that, compared with provocation and self-defence (which have no such requirement of reasonable belief), there is a less immediate temporal or physical nexus between the threat and the killing in duress cases.[112] This also becomes the primary argument in favour of the Commission's recommendation that the burden of proof be reversed where duress is raised as a defence to homicide[113]—that the separation of the threat from the killing creates extra difficulties for the prosecution. However, the Commission supports the tightening of the law by the House of Lords in *Hasan*, one aspect of

which was the replacement of the former 'imminence' requirement with (p. 215) one of immediacy; so the temporal separation cannot be great, and reference to 'time to reflect' takes insufficient account of the great emotional turmoil brought about by threats of this kind.[114]

6.4 Reasonable mistake and putative defences

For the first three-quarters of the twentieth century, the approach of the common law to mistake was that if the defendant wished to rely on this defence it must be shown that he had reasonable grounds for his mistaken belief. The leading case was *Tolson* (1889),[115] where the Court for Crown Cases Reserved held that a mistake of fact on reasonable grounds would be a defence to any criminal charge. Despite being cited as the leading case, the ambit and status of *Tolson* were never clear, since Stephen J devoted much of his judgment to the proposition that if the mental element of the crime is proved to have been absent, the crime so defined is not committed.[116] Certainly it is authority for the proposition that reasonable mistake is a defence to crimes of strict liability.[117] It is also authority on the crime of bigamy, and was expressly preserved by the House of Lords in *DPP* v *Morgan* (1976)[118] when it introduced (or, in the light of Stephen J's judgment, reintroduced) the proposition that if the mental element is missing in respect of one of the conduct elements specified in the definition of the crime, then as a matter of inexorable logic D should be acquitted even if the mistake was wholly unreasonable.

The 'inexorable logic' argument may be accepted as a starting point, but the question is whether considerations of moral fault indicate that in certain types of case it should be abandoned. We have already seen that the 'inexorable logic' has not been followed in respect of intoxication (where special restrictive rules have been created). When the House of Lords in *Morgan* opted for the 'inexorable logic' approach, treating the claim of mistake as a mere denial of the required mental element, it expressly left undisturbed two different rules—the *Tolson* principle, as applied to bigamy, and the requirement that mistakes relating to a defence should be reasonable. This second requirement relates to 'defences' resting on permission: if there is a mistake about the circumstances giving rise to the permission, this makes it a putative defence (i.e. an *excuse* rather than a (p. 216) *permission*, because the circumstances for permission were absent and D merely believed they were present). The persistence of the objective approach to mistake in these cases owed more to assumption and repetition than to principled argument. Its chief application was in self-defence, where courts had tended to require that any mistake about the circumstances should be based on reasonable grounds.[119] But this reasonable mistake doctrine, left intact in *Morgan* itself, was swept away by decisions of the Court of Appeal and Privy Council in the 1980s.[120] Thus a putative defence will succeed wherever the prosecution fails to prove that D knew the relevant facts (i.e. that D did not hold the mistaken belief claimed), no matter how outlandish that belief may have been. Thus in *Williams* (1984)[121] V saw a man, X, snatch a bag from a woman in the street; V ran after X and forcibly detained him; D then came upon the scene and asked V why he was punching X; V said, untruthfully, that he was a police officer; D asked V for his warrant card, and when V failed to produce the card, D struck V. D was charged with assaulting V, and his defence was that he mistakenly believed that his actions were permissible in the prevention of crime. It is plain that his actions were not in fact permissible, since V was acting lawfully in trying to detain X.[122] The law requires the prosecution to satisfy the court that D was aware of the facts which made his action unlawful, and he was not. He

was mistaken. The Court of Appeal held that his conviction should be quashed: 'The mental element necessary to constitute guilt is the intent to apply unlawful force to the victim. We do not believe that the mental element can be substantiated by simply showing an intent to apply force and no more.'

The courts in *Williams* and *Beckford*[123] presented this as an application of the 'inexorable logic' approach in *Morgan* (overlooking the fact that *Morgan* left this aspect of the law unchanged), reasoning as follows:

- unlawfulness is an element in all crimes of violence;
- intention, knowledge, or recklessness must be proved as to that element; and therefore;
- a person who mistakenly believes in the existence of circumstances which would make the conduct lawful should not be criminally liable.

The crucial step is the first: how do we know that unlawfulness is a definitional element in all crimes?[124] Not all crimes are defined explicitly in this way. So it is, rather, a doctrinal question. Andrew Simester has argued that unlawfulness cannot be an **(p. 217)** ingredient of the *actus reus*, since only when there is *actus reus* with *mens rea* can we conclude that conduct was unlawful.[125] Might this not be a question of terminology? Some would argue, as we saw in Chapter 4.6, that there is no *actus reus* where the conduct is permissible. If 'absence of permission' is substituted for 'unlawfulness' in the above reasoning, does not the difficulty claimed by Simester disappear? A stronger argument is that, irrespective of the definitional boundaries of the *actus reus*, there is a need to confront the moral issue whether there should be some grounds for doing so before using force against another. Using force is *prima facie* wrongful and so citizens should not use force without grounds for doing so, bearing in mind that the circumstances in which D has to act will affect what is regarded as adequate grounds. This distinguishes cases of putative defence from other cases of mistake in which D does not think what he is doing is wrongful or dangerous.[126]

Rather than relying on the logic of steps (i), (ii), and (iii), the law should adopt this more context-sensitive approach, taking some account of the circumstances of the act, of D's responsibilities, and of what may reasonably be expected in such situations.[127] The consequence may be not to require knowledge of a certain circumstance in the definition of the offence, but to require reasonable grounds for a belief. In rape cases these considerations militate in favour of a requirement of reasonable grounds for any mistake, as the Sexual Offences Act 2003 now provides.[128] Reasonable grounds should also be required in respect of age requirements for consensual sexual conduct, although in this respect the 2003 Act goes further and imposes strict liability in some circumstances.[129] In principle, it is also right to require reasonable grounds before allowing the acquittal of a police officer with firearms training, as in *Beckford* v *R* (1987).[130] Of course, any such infusion of objective principles must recognize the exigencies of the moment, and must not demand more of D than society ought to expect in that particular situation.[131] That is a necessary safeguard of individual autonomy. The general point, however, is that there may be good reasons for society to require a certain standard of conduct if the conditions were not such as to preclude it,

particularly where the potential harm involved is serious. These arguments may be no less strong in many cases of putative defences of duress, where a reasonableness requirement has been imposed.[132] Any move in the direction of requiring reasonableness may have (p. 218) the effect of raising the question whether cases of mistaken belief in permission are necessarily cases of excuse, or whether they may be treated as forms of permission.[133] In fact they have elements of both: Antony Duff proposes that this is best expressed by describing D's conduct as wrong but warranted—wrong because there is no objective reason for it, but warranted because D (reasonably) believed in the existence of circumstances that would have made it the right thing to do.[134]

English law currently takes variable approaches to these questions. In recent years the judges have often seemed to be firmly in the embrace of the 'inexorable logic' approach to mistake,[135] but there have been some deviations which perhaps suggest recognition of the complexity of the issues. As noted in the discussion of duress in section 6.3(a), the poorly reasoned decision in *Graham*,[136] holding that a mistake about the nature of the threat must be a reasonable one if the defence of duress is to be available, has now been championed on strong protectionist grounds by Lord Bingham in *Hasan* and adopted by the Law Commission.[137] However, although the objectivist approach in the Sexual Offences Act suggested a more context-sensitive treatment of mistake and putative defences, such considerations were neglected in the drafting of the self-defence provisions in s. 76(3) of the Criminal Justice and Immigration Act 2008, which confirms a wholly subjective test of belief with no variations between trained police or military personnel and ordinary citizens caught up in a sudden incident.[138]

6.5 Ignorance or mistake of law

(a) The english rules

English criminal law appears to pursue a relatively strict policy against those who act in ignorance of the true legal position, but the maxim *ignorantia juris neminem excusat* (ignorance of the law excuses no one) is too strong as a description. Ignorance or mistake as to civil law, rather than criminal law, is capable of forming the basis of a defence; indeed, the crimes of theft and criminal damage explicitly provide for defences where D believes that he has a legal right to take or to damage property.[139] But it would be unsafe to state the rule by reference to a distinction between matters of civil law and criminal law, because offences are often defined in such a way as to blur the two. Whether goods are classified as 'stolen' for the purposes of the offence of handling stolen property seems to be a question of criminal law, so if D knows all (p. 219) the facts but misunderstands their legal effect, this is irrelevant. Whether an auditor is disqualified from acting for a certain company seems to be a question of civil law, so where D was unaware of the relevant law, his conviction for acting as an auditor knowing that he was disqualified was quashed.[140] One difference between these two offences is that the latter contains the word 'knowingly', whereas the crime of handling includes the words 'knowing or believing'; it is certainly true that a number of English decisions have allowed mistake or ignorance of the law to negative 'knowingly',[141] but this cannot explain all the decisions.[142] English law does recognize that the obligations are not all on one side. The state has duties to declare and to publicize laws and regulations: non-publication of a Statutory Instrument will usually afford a defence to any crime under that Instrument to a

person unaware of its existence,[143] and failure to publish a government order in respect of a particular person will also afford a defence to that person if he or she is unaware of the order.[144]

(b) Individual fairness and public policy

It could be argued that individual fairness demands the recognition of ignorance or mistake of law as an excuse: a person who acts in the belief that conduct is non-criminal, or without knowing that it is criminal, should not be convicted of an offence. Although ignorance of the law may not negative the fault requirements of a particular offence, respect for individual autonomy supports the excuse in its own right: a person who chooses to engage in conduct without knowing that it is criminal makes a choice which is so ill-informed as to lack a proper basis. The counter-arguments are based on conceptions of intrinsic wrong and of social welfare. One is that it can fairly be assumed that people know that certain morally wrong conduct is criminalized, even if they are unaware of the precise terms of the law.[145] The utilitarian argument that it is desirable to encourage knowledge of the law rather than ignorance, and any rule which allowed ignorance as a defence would therefore tend to undermine law enforcement.[146] This does not establish that ignorance of the law is always wrong, merely that it may be socially harmful. Another is the argument that, if we judge defendants on their *particular view* of the law rather than on the law as it is, we are contradicting the essential objectivity of the legal system.[147] This is, to say the least, an exaggeration: so long as the court states what the law is, the law's objectivity remains unimpaired. It would also seem to suggest (p. 220) that for a court to allow any excuse amounts to a denial of the offence. This not only confuses the element of excuse with the element of wrongdoing,[148] but also overlooks the value of a publicized trial, where reasonable mistake of law is allowed, as a means of public education.

Is it generally wrong to be ignorant or mistaken about the law? It may be argued that it is a duty of citizenship to know the law. Thus, to convict a person despite ignorance of the law is not to attack the principles of choice and individual autonomy which were identified earlier as fundamental to the principles of fairness.[149] Rather it is to forsake an atomistic view of individuals in favour of a recognition of persons as social beings, with both rights and responsibilities within the society in which they live.[150] It has already been argued that in many situations it is fair to expect citizens to take care to enquire into the surrounding circumstances before they act, and the case for requiring some mistakes to be reasonable has been put.[151] A similar line of argument might support a duty on each citizen to take reasonable steps to become acquainted with the criminal law.[152] There are few problems in making the duty known, since ‘ignorance of the law is no excuse’ is a widely known principle even now.[153] The duty should not be an absolute one, however. First, there is often uncertainty in the ambit of the law. Sometimes the legislature acknowledges the difficulty of stating the law by allowing D's own standards as a benchmark of lawfulness, as in the crime of blackmail.[154] Sometimes it resorts to a broad standard such as ‘reasonable’ or ‘dishonest’, leaving the courts to concretize the norm after each event, which goes against the principles of maximum certainty and fair warning.[155] This is not to suggest that every case in which the courts change the law should inevitably give the defendant a defence of ignorance of the law; indeed, the European Court of Human Rights has held not only that judicial extensions of the law conform to Art. 7 if they are ‘reasonably foreseeable’, but also that the application of that test varies according to the subject-matter of the law and that ‘a law might still satisfy the

requirement of foreseeability even if the person concerned had to take legal advice' to determine its practical scope.[156] A second reason for not making the policy absolute is the possibility that the State has not fulfilled its duties in respect of making a new offence known and knowable.[157] The State clearly (p. 221) has this duty when it seeks to impose criminal liability for an omission,[158] and the duty applies generally to the publication of laws. This, indeed, is an aspect of the principle of legality, requiring both certainty of definition and fair warning.[159]

One way of maintaining the general duty to know the law, whilst allowing exceptions based on respect for individual autonomy, would be to provide that a mistake of law may excuse if it is reasonable. This, in combination with the argument in section 6.4, would have the advantage of narrowing the present gulf, wide and difficult to defend, between the effects of ignorance of law (no general defence) and ignorance of fact (frequently negativing liability).[160] Ignorance of the law would clearly be reasonable if fair warning of a prohibition had not been given: this would accommodate the second point above. Mistake or ignorance of law might also be reasonable if D had no cause to suspect that certain conduct was criminal, or if D had been misinformed or wrongly advised about the law (see (c)), or perhaps in other circumstances.[161] Ignorance and mistake would be unlikely to be held reasonable if D was engaging in a business or an activity (such as driving a car) that is known to have changing rules;[162] but the merit of a reasonableness requirement is that it would not absolutely rule the defence out. A defendant would be able to argue that there were special circumstances warranting exculpation. To rebut the claim that such an excuse might be raised so often as to impede the administration of the criminal law, one has only to refer to the lengthy experience of Scandinavian countries in providing for defences of this kind.[163]

The Draft Criminal Code states that 'ignorance or mistake as to a matter of law does not affect liability to conviction for an offence except (a) where so provided, or (b) where it negatives the fault element of the offence'.[164] This is traditional, inflexible, and unsatisfactory: it would prevent the courts from developing a wider defence, and would relegate most of these matters to mitigation of sentence.[165] Moreover, exception (b) hardly corresponds to any general moral distinction. The legislature has not pursued a consistent policy in deciding whether or not 'knowingly' should form part of the definitions of offences, and it certainly cannot be assumed that Parliament had considered whether particular offences justify an exception in favour of ignorance (p. 222) or mistakes of criminal law (including unreasonable ones). The courts have veered between allowing ignorance of law to negative 'knowingly' and declaring that this approach would be 'wholly unacceptable'.[166] There is a need to adopt a clear principle (a duty with circumscribed exceptions) and then to interpret statutory offences in the light of it. The same approach should be adopted where the offence includes a phrase such as 'without lawful excuse' or 'without reasonable excuse'.[167]

(c) The reliance cases

Another benefit of moving away from the relatively strict English policy against defences based on mistake or ignorance of criminal law towards a 'reasonable grounds' defence would be to deal more fairly with the 'reliance' cases. In *Cooper* v *Simmons* (1862)[168] an apprentice absented himself from his apprenticeship after the death of his master, having sought the advice of an attorney and having been counselled that he was no longer bound. The Court nevertheless convicted him of unlawfully absenting himself from his apprenticeship, and

Pollock CB stated that ‘it would be dangerous if we were to substitute the opinion of the person charged … for the law itself’. In *Arrowsmith* (1975)[169] D had on occasions distributed leaflets urging British soldiers not to serve in Northern Ireland. In the past the Director of Public Prosecutions had declined to prosecute her under the Incitement to Disaffection Act 1934, but now she was charged with an offence under that Act. One line of defence was that she reasonably believed, as a result of a letter from the Director, that her conduct did not contravene the Act. The Court of Appeal upheld her conviction, stating that ‘a mistake as to the law would not avail the appellant except perhaps in mitigation of sentence’. Both these cases would surely be better analysed in terms of reasonable reliance. If it is established that D relied on advice from officials with regard to the lawfulness of the proposed conduct, that ought to be sufficient to support reasonable grounds for the mistake of law.

Confusion may arise about the entitlement of a particular agency or official to advise a member of the public about the law, as one English case vividly demonstrates,[170] but since reasonable mistake of law would be an excuse, the key question is whether D reasonably assumed that the person giving the advice was duly authorized. In the element of reliance, these cases can call upon a kind of estoppel reasoning—the State and the courts should not convict a person whom they or their officers have advised otherwise.[171] Thus the Control of Pollution Act 1974, s. 3(4)(a), specifically creates a **(p. 223)** defence to the crime of unlicensed waste-disposal where D ‘took care to inform himself from persons who were in a position to provide information’, recognizing both individual fairness and an estoppel on officials. Thus, even if one were persuaded by the argument that allowing mistake of law as a general defence would encourage ignorance of the law, the reverse of that argument applies here: to recognize officially induced error as a defence would signal the value of citizens checking on the lawfulness of their proposed activities. Indeed, all the values that support the principle of fair warning militate in favour of recognizing officially induced error, since a citizen who seeks advice is showing respect for the law.[172]

One reason for the rarity of appellate cases on mistake of law may be that it is often accommodated in other ways. An appeal is unlikely if a person receives substantial mitigation of sentence, perhaps an absolute or conditional discharge. On some occasions a person who acted on a mistaken view of the law might not be prosecuted at all, or the prosecution might be discontinued.[173] In one case a company was advised by members of the local council's planning department that the erection of advertising boards would not require planning consent. The company erected the boards, and the council then brought a prosecution. The Divisional Court held that the prosecution should have been stayed as an abuse of process,[174] Schiemann LJ stating that it is ‘important that the citizen should be able to rely on the statements of public officials’. The council had argued that these were junior officials and that the company was wrong to rely on their opinion, but the Divisional Court replied that ‘it was not as though they had requested planning advice from one of the council's gardeners’. This is a significant decision, employing the powerful procedural approach of staying the prosecution where a mistaken view of the law has been implanted by an official. The courts might well decline to recognize a substantive defence of officially induced error of law,[175] but it can be argued that staying the prosecution is a more appropriate remedy inasmuch as D might not have brought himself within the offence definition at all if the official advice had not been given.

Should the doctrine extend to acting on the advice of a lawyer? Glanville Williams, although a

strong supporter of a defence of reasonable reliance on official statements, pointed out the danger that allowing reliance on a lawyer's advice (rather than official advice) might open up a broad route to exculpation for corporate defendants in particular.[176] On the other hand, for an individual to take legal advice might be even (p. 224) more reasonable, in terms of citizenship duties, than to rely on the advice of a junior official.[177]

6.6 Entrapment

There are cases in which the police arrange either for one of their own officers or for some other person to approach D and tempt him to commit an offence. If D commits the offence after the officer or *agent provocateur* has over-stepped the boundary of permissible conduct, should there be a defence of entrapment? Some jurisdictions admit such a defence. Until 2001 English law relied merely on the exclusion of evidence or mitigation of sentence in such cases. Now, following the decision of the House of Lords in *Looseley; Attorney-General's Reference No. 3 of 1999*,[178] proof of entrapment leads to a stay of the prosecution.

What amounts to entrapment? The House of Lords held that where 'the police conduct preceding the commission of the offence was no more than might be expected from others in the circumstances' it is acceptable.[179] This is the 'unexceptional opportunity test': if all that the official does is to offer D an unexceptional opportunity, this is permissible conduct. If the official goes further than that—as by inciting, instigating, persuading, or pressurizing—it would be a case of entrapment. Where there are reasonable grounds for suspecting a particular individual, or individuals frequenting a certain place, of involvement in a type of offence (e.g. drug dealing), it seems that it is permissible to test the person(s) by approaching them and making an enquiry.[180] The rationale of this approach to entrapment seems to have two strands. First, the courts are concerned to prevent abuse of executive power: it would be a misuse of power for the State's agents to lure citizens into breaking the law and then to prosecute them for doing so. Secondly, entrapment must be prevented in order to protect the integrity of the criminal justice system—which would be undermined if the courts allowed the prosecution of crimes created by state officials.[181] These rationales led the House of Lords in *Looseley* to adopt the procedural remedy of staying the prosecution for abuse of process, rather than allowing the trial to proceed and according D a defence to criminal liability. This approach is consistent with that of the Strasbourg Court in *Teixeira de Castro* v *Portugal*,[182] which held that the entrapped applicant had been 'deprived of a fair trial from the outset', and therefore that Art. 6 had been violated.

The Supreme Court of the United States still upholds an entrapment defence,[183] and the Model Penal Code includes one.[184] The Supreme Court's version focuses on whether (p. 225) D would have committed the offence otherwise, which then becomes a question of whether he was 'pre-disposed' to commit such offences. This notion is also to be found in the Strasbourg decision in *Teixeira de Castro*, but it shifts the enquiry back towards the character and previous record of the person incited—and into dangerous waters. The House of Lords was wise to reject the notion of predisposition in its *Looseley* judgment, but it remains to be seen whether its requirement of 'reasonable suspicion' that the person targeted was involved in that type of offending will be any more robust.

The rationale and remedies for entrapment just described are dependent on the involvement of the State and its officials in instigating crime. No such rationale would apply if it were a private

individual who, on his or her own initiative, incited D to commit the offence: the fact that one person incites another does not relieve the other of criminal liability, since the law regards each of them as autonomous individuals who are able to choose what to do. However, there is an argument that few people would wish to live in a society where they were liable to have their virtue tested unexpectedly (by, for example, journalists in search of a story), and that therefore the exclusion of evidence ought to be available in egregious cases of private entrapment.[185] The courts seem to accept this to some extent, in that they seem to have made little of the distinction between official entrapment and private entrapment (typically engineered by journalists), although there has been no case in which a stay of prosecution on grounds of private entrapment has been ordered and upheld.[186]

6.7 Reviewing the non-permission-based defences

In Chapter 4 we dealt with permissions for the use of force, often regarded as defences, and also with involuntary conduct. Permissions are clearly separate from the exculpatory doctrines in this chapter, but the reason for placing involuntariness (automatism) in Chapter 4 is that it relates to the basic requirement of a voluntary act. From the functional point of view, however, automatism tends to operate as a defence, and its rationale belongs properly with the capacity requirements (expressed in terms of infancy and insanity) discussed in Chapter 5.2. Reference will be made below to these incapacity 'defences', as we consider some general questions about the rationales, functions, and appropriate responses to the various conditions discussed in this chapter. First, we shall examine the implications of the threshold question: should a suggested excuse be recognized as a defence, or merely as a mitigating factor in sentencing, or even marked in a different way? Secondly, we consider the roots of fault and the excuses **(p. 226)** in conceptions of individual responsibility. Thirdly, we go on to examine the arguments in favour of policies of social defence and social responsibility. Whether it is possible to travel beyond a demonstration of the conflicting policies and principles and to achieve a unifying theory is then the question which remains.

(a) The recognition of exculpatory doctrines

In moral and social terms there is probably a scale of exculpation, running from the most acute forms that affect agency itself by denying responsibility (such as insanity and automatism) to mere matters of difficulty and extra pressure at the other extreme. Most forms of exculpation can be manifested to a different degree (strong or weak circumstances of duress, mild or acute mental disorder). During the course of the chapter it has often been remarked that the courts strive to keep the ambit of a particular 'defence' as narrow as possible, so as to capture only the full or extreme cases. This approach leaves other cases which have exculpatory elements to be dealt with in some other way. In some spheres of criminal law it is not simply a question of whether there is a defence or not. Loss of self-control and diminished responsibility[187] are available as partial defences to murder, reducing the crime to manslaughter, and there is no procedural reason why they and other partial defences should not be granted a wider application—wherever there is a ladder of offences, the partial defence might serve to reduce the higher to the lower.[188] There are obvious counter-arguments, grounded in the increased complexity and length of trials of cases where the unique stigma of 'murder' is not present,[189] but these concede rather than weaken the moral/social arguments for allowing the reduced culpability in, say, loss of self-control cases to be signified by a

reduction in the offence of conviction. This may be regarded as an example of fair labelling:[190] just as there is a 'scale of excuse, running downwards from excusing conditions, through partial excuses to mitigating excuses',[191] so the law should reflect these gradations through complete defences, partial defences, and then mitigation of sentence.

In some spheres, English courts have faltered and have refused to recognize a defence at all, leaving all degrees of exculpation to be reflected by procedural means, chiefly at the sentencing stage. This has been the predominant approach to entrapment,[192] and for many years it was the courts' approach to excuses based on necessity.[193] Indeed, the House of Lords has gone further by proposing executive discretion as a desirable way of mitigating the effective punishment of those who kill under duress.[194]

(p. 227) It would be procedurally possible to deal with all excuses, and, indeed, with all fault requirements, by excluding them from the criminal trial and dealing with them at the sentencing stage. As we saw in Chapter 5.4(a), one could create a strict liability system in which proof of conduct and causation was sufficient for conviction, and fault would then be considered at the sentencing stage as a pointer to the most appropriate means of state intervention to prevent any repetition. The objection to this is that a criminal conviction is rightly regarded as condemnatory: it is unfair to apply this official censure when the absence of fault is so high on the 'scale of excuse' that there should be no formal blame. Supporters of strict liability, such as Baroness Wootton, would reply that on their system a conviction would not carry such a stigma, since it would not imply culpability.[195] Such an approach would sacrifice the underlying deterrent and censuring elements of the criminal law, as well as reducing the protection of individual autonomy by reducing the individual citizen's ability to plan and to predict the law's interventions. So long as the criminal law is the principal censuring institution, conviction should carry the moral connotation of culpable wrongdoing, and so there ought to be the possibility of recognizing compelling excuses by means of acquittal.

Even if defences to criminal liability are recognized for 'strong' exculpatory factors, it will remain necessary to deal appropriately with 'weak' or imperfect cases of exculpation. This is where mitigation of sentence should be the principal tool. Unless the penalty is mandatory (as, in English law, for murder), courts will be able to reflect the strength of the excuse in the sentence they pass. However, there are two difficulties in treating this as an ideal way of reflecting the defendant's desert. First, there is the question of establishing the factual basis for mitigation. Sometimes this will have emerged during a trial, if a trial has taken place,[196] but more often it will be necessary to lay a foundation after conviction and before sentence. Procedures to ensure proper fact-finding are still developing, but there has been insufficient recognition of the importance of ensuring that defendants have the same evidential safeguards as they would have had in a criminal trial.[197] Secondly, there is no clear recognition that mitigation of sentence is a right. It is often presented as discretionary, suggesting that courts may withhold a reduction in sentence if they wish to do so.[198] This is unsatisfactory, and reflects the general lack of structure of English sentencing law in respect of mitigating factors.

If defences to liability and mitigation of sentence should be the two principal responses to excuses, what should be the role of procedural remedies? The most powerful procedural approach is not to prosecute at all. Thus prosecutors are expected to take account of the likely line of defence in a particular case, and they might therefore bring no prosecution if

convinced that a certain defence will probably succeed. Where they are not so convinced, they may still decide that a prosecution would not (p. 228) be 'in the public interest'. The *Code for Crown Prosecutors* mentions cases where 'the offence was committed as a result of a genuine mistake or misunderstanding', and cases where 'the defendant is elderly or is, or was at the time of the offence, suffering from significant mental or physical ill health'.[199] Both of these factors are to be weighed against the seriousness of the offence. In practice, non-prosecution and discontinuance of prosecution are responses to many cases involving mentally disordered persons, who may then be admitted to hospital or a treatment programme informally. However, a deeper issue is whether a prosecution should be stayed once it has been commenced. This powerful remedy has been held appropriate in cases of entrapment[200] and in one case of officially induced mistake of law.[201] The reason it is particularly appropriate in these types of case is that the involvement of officials in 'creating' the offence makes it wrong for the prosecution to be heard by the courts at all. Providing a defence to liability would not be enough: it is so fundamentally wrong for the state to prosecute that D should not be put to the trouble of defending himself.

(b) Individual responsibility

It was shown in Chapter 5.4(a) that the roots of the conception of individual responsibility which underlies the principle of *mens rea* lie in respect for the autonomy of the individual. Thus defendants who did not have the capacity to choose—who were not responsible moral agents—should be dealt with by means of the denial-of-responsibility 'defences' of infancy, insanity, and automatism. Those who were responsible moral agents should then be judged, if they raise defences such as duress, necessity, or reasonable mistake, according to the standard of what we ought reasonably to expect of a person in that situation. These defendants are, as John Gardner puts it, 'asserting their responsibility' (in the sense that they are claiming to have the capacities of a normal citizen of full age and sound mind) but claiming an excuse on the ground that their response to a testing situation 'lived up to expectations in a normative sense'.[202] Thus, as we saw in section 6.3, the standard of the person of reasonable firmness is central to the defences of duress and necessity. Now in one sense this might be thought to be indulgent to D—there is no requirement that he should have felt totally deprived of his freedom of action, merely that a reasonably steadfast citizen would have found the pressure intolerable[203]—but that may be explained on the ground that this is not a denial of responsibility but an excuse, where a high but reasonably achievable standard is more appropriate than perfectionism.[204]

(p. 229) In another sense, however, the standard of 'normative expectations' may be thought insufficiently indulgent to D: it precludes actual enquiry into the pressures experienced by this defendant. Even if D felt totally overwhelmed by the pressures, the law would not allow a defence of duress unless a reasonably steadfast person would also have been seriously affected. In other words, there is no scope for a plea of diminished personal capacity, based on D's inability to meet the normative expectations. In the past the courts have been reluctant to lower the standard, because of a fear that false defences may succeed if the law were totally subjective, or a fear of a significant loss in the deterrent effect of the law, or perhaps for other protectionist reasons. But in more recent years, as we have seen, courts have occasionally been willing to lower the standard in order to take account of certain individual susceptibilities and conditions.[205] Lowering the standard blurs the rationale, however. Strictly speaking, if D lacks the capacity to attain the standard normatively expected,

then the essence of plea is not that D behaved as a responsible citizen might be expected to, but rather that D is to some extent denying responsibility for what was done.[206]

This would reduce the grade of liability for defendants who to a significant extent felt coerced, compelled, or 'pressured' to do what they did and where there is evidence of an underlying condition to explain this. It might, for example, be open to those who narrowly fail to satisfy the requirements of a defence of insanity, and could include such conditions as pre-menstrual syndrome.[207] It would also deal with those unable to attain the standard of reasonable steadfastness in duress and necessity.[208] In order to preserve the distinct grounds for different complete excuses (such as duress), and to respect fair labelling, it would be preferable to articulate as many discrete defences as possible, and to have any defence or partial defence of diminished capacity in a kind of residual or 'sweeper' role. Whether its availability would unduly complicate trials is for careful enquiry and debate. There is no need for citizens to have fair warning of its existence,[209] but it is important to ensure that the courts exercise their power fairly and consistently as between similarly or equivalently situated defendants.

(c) Social responsibilities and social defence

In practice, the objective standard of the person of reasonable firmness in excuses such as duress and necessity may be sustained less by the doctrine of 'normative expectations' (p. 230) or Hart's 'fair opportunity' rationale than by judicial fear of false defences.[210] The latter may also be a prominent reason for the presence of restrictive conditions in intoxication (the limitation to crimes of 'specific intent') and in ignorance or mistake of law (the virtual denial of such a defence). There are, however, stronger protectionist arguments for restrictions. One is the importance of taking compulsory measures against persons shown to be capable of causing harm in their condition. This is a major plank of the 'special defence' in insanity cases, where absence of capacity leads to a special verdict which, in turn, may give rise to compulsory measures of social protection. Yet we saw in Chapter 5.2 that the terms of the defence are not designed to demonstrate that D is a dangerous person, likely to cause further serious harm if given a simple acquittal. The same might be said of the restrictions placed on intoxication as a defence (section 6.2), where beliefs about future dangerousness may play some part, but probably the chief reason for restricting the defence is the belief that people who do harm whilst intoxicated are blameworthy.[211]

One argument often mobilized against the infiltration of objective requirements into excusing defences is 'logic'. We have noted this in relation to intoxication (section 6.2(b)) and particularly mistake of fact (section 6.4). Consistency of approach to excusing conditions would certainly seem to be an element in fairness, but it does not follow that the excuses should be consistently and utterly subjective in their requirements. The subjective principles have their foundation in the principle of individual autonomy, and its emphasis on choice, control, and fair warning. But we have seen that modern liberal philosophy has begun to emphasize that individuals should be viewed as members of society with mutual obligations rather than as abstracted and isolated individuals. The subjective principles and the contemporaneity principle,[212] ingrained as they are in much academic writing in the common law world, in some judicial pronouncements, and in many Law Commission proposals, seem premised on an atomistic view of individual behaviour.[213]

An alternative approach would spell out certain duties of citizenship which should form part of membership of a legal community and which might have some bearing on issues of criminal responsibility. One such duty might be to show reasonable steadfastness in the face of pressure, and to avoid uncontrolled behaviour that might lead to harm to others. This might be applied to cases of intoxication, based on the general social proposition that persons who take large amounts of alcohol or certain drugs constitute a greater and well-known risk of causing harm. A similar argument might be used to justify the refusal to admit loss of self-control as a general defence, rather than as a partial defence to murder. In principle, no exceptions should be admitted (p. 231) to the principle that citizens should control their tempers. However, certain loss of self-control cases contain strongly exculpating elements, in terms of justified anger or fear combined with a disturbed emotional state, and these make a convincing case for loss of self-control as a qualified defence.[214]

How might the 'duties of citizenship' approach apply to mistake cases? Citizens may surely be expected to make reasonable efforts to acquaint themselves with the contours of the criminal law, but this does not support the refusal of the English courts and legislature to recognize a general excuse based on ignorance or mistake of law. On the contrary, the citizen's duty is fulfilled by making reasonable enquiries, and this would support a defence of reasonable ignorance or mistake of law. Indeed, where there is reasonable reliance on official advice the prosecution should be stayed, since D has acted as a good citizen should.[215] Strangely, the English courts erred in the opposite direction in cases of mistake of fact, seduced by the allure of what Lord Hailsham described as 'inexorable logic'. The courts have failed to show proper sensitivity to the rights of others in particular situations which ought to alert the citizen, but Parliament has now intervened in relation to sex cases. Thus, rather than regarding the defendant in a rape case as abstracted from the situation of close proximity to the victim and subject only to the momentary and 'inexorable' logic of the question: 'did he at that time realize that there was a risk that she was not consenting?', the law now requires that D reasonably believed that the other party consented.[216] Similarly, rather than applying broad subjective principles to a defendant who alleges mistake as to the age of a young person with whom he had (consensual) sexual relations, the law now requires a reasonable belief that the child is 16 or over where the actual age is 13–15 (inclusive),[217] although it goes further and (controversially) imposes strict liability as to age where the child is under 13.[218] Would it not also be proper to require higher standards of those trained for special roles? Thus, rather than regarding a police officer as abstracted from his or her training and knowledge of alternative means of resolving a situation and subject only to the momentary and 'inexorable' logic of the question: 'did he at that time believe that his life was in danger from V?', the law should ask whether he took care (so far as possible) to ensure that V was armed, before injuring V or taking V's life.[219]

The drift of this argument is towards the idea of duties of citizenship which relate in part to control of one's own passions or 'vices'[220] and in part to one's respect for the rights of others in situations which obviously concern those rights (e.g. sexual intercourse, the use of deadly force). The doctrine of prior fault should prevail over (p. 232) the principle of contemporaneity, as the various duties tug the enquiry away from the momentary conduct towards a broader consideration of the situation and its antecedents. Those wedded to traditional theory will doubtless regard this as the spread of negligence liability, and so it is. In this sense, it is compatible with much of what was said by Lord Diplock in *Caldwell*,[221] in that failure to give thought to those matters which the reasonable citizen might regard as obvious

may be just as culpable as momentary advertence to such matters. But the idea of duties of citizenship does not require full adherence to the *Caldwell* doctrine. Two modifications are particularly important. First, the general notion that citizens with ordinary powers of perception and self-control should exercise those powers must be subject to an exception in favour of persons incapable of attaining that general standard.[222] But it was argued above that it would be clearer to deal with such persons separately under a (partial) defence of diminished capacity, rather than to distort the general 'normative expectations' of citizens. Secondly, a full-blown notion of individual responsibility should be responsive to the relative magnitude of the wrongs or harms. The paradox of *Caldwell* is that it applied chiefly to criminal damage, an offence which is, in most instances,[223] well down the scale of seriousness. A socially sensitive doctrine would impose greater duties of care on citizens in situations where serious harm is widely known to be possible (e.g. use of firearms, fire-raising, irregular driving), where great harm is a possibility (e.g. the operation of transport systems, sports stadiums), and particularly where the means of avoiding the wrong or harm are relatively simple (as in sexual intercourse, enquiring about the other's willingness). It will be evident that these arguments do not promise a simplified system of fault and excuses, but Chapters 5 and 6 should have demonstrated that the present system is far from simple. Conflicts between 'pure' individual responsibility and questions of social responsibility are endemic in this sphere. The allure and 'logic' of orthodox subjectivism need re-appraisal in the light of considerations of welfare and social responsibility, and a proper adjustment of the different claims debated.

Lastly, discussion of citizens' responsibilities should not lead one to neglect the positive duties of the State in these matters. The obligation to publicize new criminal laws is one such duty, particularly strong in respect of duties to act. It is also time to recognize more fully the wrongness of entrapping citizens into committing offences (section 6.6) and the wrongness of convicting those who rely on official advice (section 6.5). And then there is the more general issue of the State's responsibility for social conditions which foster crime. This is not an outrageous notion: the preamble to the European Convention on Compensation for Victims of Crimes of Violence refers to the idea that the State's duty to provide compensation arises from its failure to prevent crimes,[224] **(p. 233)** and this suggests at least an obligation to take reasonably determined measures to reduce crime. One such measure is to relieve those criminogenic social conditions of poverty, bad housing, unemployment, lack of social facilities, and so forth which have an established link with law-breaking.[225] Even if we are not prepared to go so far as to accept social deprivation as an excuse for crime,[226] it may be regarded as significantly reducing an offender's 'desert', and also as an example of state neglect of a duty towards its citizens.[227]

(d) Exculpation and 'desert'

Modern writings on the criminal law have made substantial advances in uncovering and criticizing the reasons for admitting, rejecting, and shaping the various fault requirements in criminal liability. Some 'defences' are essentially denials of capacity and responsibility (notably infancy, insanity, and automatism); others are denials of the positive fault requirements of offences (usually, of intention, recklessness, or knowledge). Another important conceptual distinction is that between permission and excuse, which improves the clarity of analysis and might avert confusions in the courts.[228] However, once the conceptual distinction is made, it must be recognized that some defences (or partial defences) contain elements of both,[229] and that some others rest on neither rationale—for example, principles of integrity and coherence

support a decision to stay the prosecution if there is a finding of entrapment or reliance on official advice. It is probably true that defendants would prefer to be acquitted on grounds of permissibility (recognizing that the conduct was acceptable in the circumstances) rather than on grounds of excuse (conduct unacceptable, but D insufficiently culpable), and indeed that many defendants would prefer to be acquitted on grounds of excuse than on grounds of denial of responsibility (D lacking capacity at the time, not acting as a responsible moral agent).[230] This is one reason women defendants may be unwilling to accept a diminished responsibility defence when they claim loss of self-control.[231]

The search for a unifying theory of excuses has been less productive, partly because different authors set out to rationalize different groups of defences (some including **(p. 234)** denials of capacity, others excluding them).[232] Hart's influential doctrine, that a person should be held criminally liable only if he or she had the capacity and a fair opportunity to act in conformity with the law,[233] captures the essence of individual autonomy in the importance of having fair warning and being able to plan and predict. However, it leaves much work to be done on appropriate criteria of the 'fairness' of opportunities. Gardner's theory of 'normative expectations' is clear about its rationale,[234] but of course requires interpretation in practice. However, both Hart and Gardner recognize that the enquiry should not be entirely subjective, and that there are good grounds for expecting people to attain certain standards of behaviour. The idea of duties of citizenship, aired in the previous section, might thus be developed to broaden out the concept of desert. Although some of the objective requirements mentioned in this chapter are based on principles of protection, it should not be thought that all of them are derogations from a properly social theory of individual autonomy.[235]

Desert theory—maintaining that individuals should be liable to punishment only when they deserve it, and to the extent that they deserve it[236]—may find its application in one of three forms in modern writings.[237] One is the character theory, which argues that D's 'desert' is 'gauged by his character' and therefore that 'a judgment about character is essential to the just distribution of punishment'.[238] Behaviour should be excused when it does not reflect D's true character, but D should be held responsible whenever the behaviour can be regarded as genuinely expressive of his dispositions.[239] The Court of Appeal came close to espousing this theory in *Kingston*,[240] when it held that D should not be held liable for acts done whilst involuntarily (but not totally) intoxicated. Full espousal of the theory would have excused D if he had no general disposition to paedophilia, but would have convicted him if paedophilia was part of his general character. There are several difficulties with this approach, one of which is the breadth of the conception of character it employs (although that, in turn, raises the question of one's responsibility for one's character), and another is its lack of sharpness in distinguishing between acceptable and unacceptable excuses.[241] Fletcher's attempt to limit the theory to the particular act charged, by reference to the principle of legality and the value of privacy, is unconvincing.[242] A second approach is choice theory, emphasizing respect for D's autonomy and for the choices he or she made and not imposing liability for conduct which cannot be said to be chosen. Gardner's 'normative **(p. 235)** expectations' theory falls into this category, as does much of Hart's famous doctrine of fair opportunity. A third strand may be found in capacity theory, which focuses on D's capacity to conform conduct to the law's requirements. Although some regard this as a general rationale, it can be argued that its proper place is as a supplement to choice theory, not denying or altering 'normative expectations' theory, but adding to it a further ground of (partial) defence for those unable to attain the objective standards inherent in the 'normative expectations' approach.[243]

Acknowledging that there are some who cannot attain the general normative standards requires an assessment of other principles, facts, and rationales, as we have seen (for example) when examining the case for a defence based on social deprivation. But this is not to reject a framework based on desert, however, since that would be to reject the foundations for many of the safeguards and protections for individuals that are constructed out of respect for autonomy, and that is not the road we should go down.

Further Reading

H. L. A. HART, *Punishment and Responsibility* (2nd edn., 2008), chs 2 and 7, and Introduction by J. Gardner.

S. Kadish, *Blame and Punishment* (1987), ch 5.

J. Gardner, *Offences and Defences* (2007), chs 4, 6, and 7.

J. Horder, *Excusing Crime* (2004), ch 3.

V. Tadros, *Criminal Responsibility* (2005), chs 10 and 11.

R. A. Duff, *Answering for Crime* (2007), ch 11.

P. Westen, 'An Attitudinal Theory of Excuse', (2006) 25 *Law and Philosophy* 289.

Notes:

[1] See P. H. Robinson, 'Criminal Law Defenses: A Systematic Analysis' (1982) 82 Columbia LR 199, *Structure and Function in Criminal Law* (1997), ch 5, and *Criminal Law Defences* (1984), for a five-fold classification of defences: (i) failure of proof defences; (ii) offence modifications (e.g. withdrawal in complicity); (iii) justifications; (iv) excuses; and (v) non-exculpatory public-policy defences (e.g. time limitations). This chapter is concerned with (iv) and with some forms of (i).

[2] J. Gardner, *Offences and Defences* (2007), ch 6.

[3] G. Dingwall, *Alcohol and Crime* (2006); the British Crime Survey reports that 45 per cent of victims of violent incidents believed the offender(s) to be influenced by alcohol and 19 per cent believed their offender(s) to be influenced by drugs: C. Kershaw et al., *Crime in England and Wales 2007/08* (2008), 76–7.

[4] See Chapter 5.4(d).

[5] [1963] AC 349, at 382.

[6] See the discussion in section 6.2(d).

[7] The phrase of Lord Hailsham in *DPP* v *Morgan* [1976] AC 182, at 214, criticized in Chapter 5.5(d) and section 6.5.

[8] [1977] AC 443.

[9] See the discussion in A. Ward, 'Making Some Sense of Self-induced Intoxication' [1986] CLJ 247.

[10] [2008] QB 43, on which see D. Ormerod, [2007] Crim LR 654.

[11] [1972] 3 All ER 962.

[12] S. White, 'Offences of Basic and Specific Intent' [1989] Crim LR 271.

[13] [1982] AC 341.

[14] The discussion of 'drunken accidents' in *Heard* pays little regard to the possibility of recklessness in certain situations (reference at n 10).

[15] *Aitken* (1992) 95 Cr App R 304, *Richardson and Irwin* [1999] 1 Cr App R 392.

[16] *Lipman* [1970] 1 QB 152; see Chapter 4.2.

[17] (1987) 85 Cr App R 315; there is debate about whether this ruling was merely *obiter dictum*, but it has been applied in *O'Connor* [1991] Crim LR 135 and in *Hatton*.

[18] [2006] 1 Cr App R 16.

[19] See also *Fotheringham* (1989) 88 Cr App R 206, on rape.

[20] [1977] AC 443, at 475.

[21] See Chapter 5.5(c) for discussion.

[22] See J. C. Smith, 'Intoxication and the Mental Element in Crime', in P. Wallington and R. Merkin (eds), *Essays in Honour of F. H. Lawson* (1987).

[23] [1977] AC 443, at 475; *Woods* (1981) 74 Cr App Rep 312. See C. Wells, 'Swatting the Subjectivist Bug' [1982] Crim LR 209.

[24] Voiced by majority judges in the High Court of Australia, in *O'Connor* (1980) 146 CLR 64.

[25] See Chapter 5.4(d) and (e).

[26] See *Keogh* [1964] VR 400, and *O'Connor* (1980) 146 CLR 64 in Australia, and *Kamipeli* [1975] 2 NZLR 610 in New Zealand: compare G. Orchard, 'Surviving without *Majewski*—a View from Down Under' [1993] Crim LR 426 with S. Gough, 'Surviving without *Majewski*?' [2000] Crim LR 719.

[27] Cf. S. Gough, 'Intoxication and Criminal Liability: the Law Commission's Proposed Reforms' (1996) 112 LQR 335, at 337.

[28] *Bailey* (1983) 77 Cr App R 76, *per* Griffiths LJ at 80.

[29] J. Horder, 'Pleading Involuntary Lack of Capacity'(1993) 52 Camb LJ 298, at 308–9.

[30] See P. H. Robinson, ‘Causing the Conditions of One's Own Defence’ (1985) 71 Virginia LR 1, at 50–1, discussed in Chapter 5.4(e).

[31] For the uncompromising judicial response to repeated offences of drunken violence, see *Sheehan and O'Mahoney* [2007] 1 Cr App R (S) 149 and *McDermott* [2007] 1 Cr App R (S) 145.

[32] [1988] Crim LR 698.

[33] (1985) 80 Cr App R 157.

[34] This follows the reasoning in *Bailey* (1983) 77 Cr App R 76 on diabetes and automatism: see Chapter 4.2.

[35] [1995] 2 AC 355.

[36] His Lordship concluded that the few distant authorities in favour of the defence were unpersuasive, and so the House of Lords (rightly) considered the issue afresh.

[37] For an example see *Blakely and Sutton* [1991] Crim LR 763.

[38] G. R. Sullivan, ‘Making Excuses’, in A. P. Simester and A. T. H. Smith (eds), *Harm and Culpability* (1996). For discussion of character-based theories of excuse, see section 6.7(b).

[39] See n 26.

[40] R. Shiner, ‘Intoxication and Responsibility’ (1990) 13 Int J Law and Psychiatry 9; C. N. Mitchell, ‘The Intoxicated Offender—Refuting the Legal and Medical Myths’ (1988) 11 Int J Law and Psychiatry 77.

[41] Gough, ‘Surviving without *Majewski*?’, also discussing the Canadian decision in *Daviault* (1995) 118 DLR (4th) 469 and its consequences.

[42] Gough, ‘Intoxication and Criminal Liability’.

[43] Cf. H. Fingarette, ‘Addiction and Criminal Responsibility’ (1975) 84 Yale LJ 413 with J. Tolmie, ‘Alcoholism and Criminal Liability’ (2001) 64 MLR 688.

[44] Law Commission Consultation Paper No. 127, *Intoxication and Criminal Liability* (1993). German law adopts this approach, allowing intoxication to negative intention (applying the ‘inexorable logic’) but then applying an offence of ‘dangerous intoxication’ that consists of committing the conduct element of another offence while culpably intoxicated: see J. R. Spencer and A. Pedain, ‘Strict Liability in Continental Criminal Law’, in A. P. Simester (ed), *Appraising Strict Liability* (2005), 244–5.

[45] Home Office, *Violence: Reforming the Offences Against the Person Act 1861* (1998), draft Bill, cl. 19, based on the criminal code proposals in Law Com No. 177, draft Bill, cl. 22. An intervening report from the Law Commission, Law Com No. 229, *Legislating the Criminal Code: Intoxication and Criminal Liability* (1995), was not adopted in its central recommendations.

[46] Sir John Smith rightly questioned (b), which might have unexpected consequences in attributing to people beliefs they did not hold: ‘Offences Against the Person: the Home Office

Consultation Paper' [1998] Crim LR 317, at 321.

[47] Law Commission, *Intoxication and Criminal Liability* (No. 314, 2009).

[48] [2008] QB 43 (CA).

[49] Cf. A. Ashworth, 'Intoxication and the General Defences' [1980] Crim LR 556 with Gough, 'Intoxication and Criminal Liability'. See now R. Williams, 'Voluntary Intoxication – A Lost Cause?' (2012) *Law Quarterly Review* (forthcoming).

[50] See *Willer* (1986) 83 Cr App R 225, *Conway* (1988) 88 Cr App R 159, *Martin* (1989) 88 Cr App R 343, discussed by D. W. Elliott, 'Necessity, Duress and Self-Defence' [1989] Crim LR 611.

[51] *Rodger and Rose* [1998] 1 Cr App R 143 (D's own suicidal tendencies cannot found either defence).

[52] [1971] 2 QB 202.

[53] [1989] 3 All ER 1025.

[54] [1989] 3 All ER 1025, discussed earlier.

[55] *DPP for Northern Ireland* v *Lynch* [1975] AC 653; *Bowen* [1996] 2 Cr App R 157.

[56] In, respectively, *DPP* v *Lynch* [1975] AC 653 at 687, and *Valderrama-Vega* [1985] Crim LR 220.

[57] [1947] KB 997.

[58] *Graham* (1982) 74 Cr App R 235, confirmed by the House of Lords in *Howe* [1987] AC 417.

[59] [1996] 2 Cr App R 157.

[60] For the suggestion that this phrase has wider implications than the Court realized, see A. Buchanan and G. Virgo, 'Duress and Mental Abnormality' [1999] Crim LR 517.

[61] Coroners and Justice Act 2009, discussed in Chapter 7.4(b).

[62] See further J. Horder, *Excusing Crime* (2004), 183–5.

[63] [1985] Crim LR 220; P. Alldridge, 'Developing the Defence of Duress' [1986] Crim LR 433.

[64] *Valderrama-Vega* (reference at n 63); *Gill* (1963) 47 Cr App R 166; and Law Com No. 83, *Defences of General Application* (1977), 2–3.

[65] However, it has been held that the defence is unavailable where D himself is the source of the danger, through his (conditional) determination to commit suicide: *Rodger and Rose* [1998] 1 Cr App R 143.

[66] [2001] 1 WLR 2206.

[67] Lord Bingham in *Hasan* [2005] 2 AC 467 approved this formulation as 'consistent with the

rationale' of duress (para. 21(3)).

[68] See n 52 and accompanying text.

[69] [1999] Crim LR 570.

[70] [2005] 2 AC 467. The decision is also known as *Z*.

[71] [2005] 2 AC 467, para. 28.

[72] [1971] 2 QB 202, at 207.

[73] See Chapter 5.5(d) and section 6.4; the Divisional Court erroneously applied this general approach to duress in *DPP* v *Rogers* [1998] Crim LR 202.

[74] (1982) 74 Cr App R 235; much of Lord Lane's judgment proceeds on an analogy with provocation, even though the preponderance of authority favours a subjective test for belief in provocation cases—see section 6.4, and W. Wilson, 'The Structure of Criminal Defences' [2005] Crim LR 108.

[75] [2003] Crim LR 721.

[76] It is tolerably clear from the strong objectivism of Lord Bingham's speech in *Hasan* [2005] 2 AC 467, notably at para. 38, that he would support the *Graham* test.

[77] Discussed in Chapter 5.4(d).

[78] [1987] QB 853.

[79] (1988) 86 Cr App R 47.

[80] [2005] 2 AC 467.

[81] Overruling *Baker and Ward* [1999] 2 Cr App R 335 on this point.

[82] [2005] 2 AC 467, at para. 38; see also *Ali* [2008] EWCA 716.

[83] [2005] 2 AC 467, para. 77.

[84] See Chapter 4.2.

[85] G. P. Fletcher, *Rethinking Criminal Law* (1978), 803, adopted by Dickson J in the Supreme Court of Canada in *Perka* v *R* (1984) 13 DLR (4th) 1. For discussion see C. Wells, 'Necessity and the Common Law' (1985) 5 OJLS 471.

[86] Acceptance of the 'moral involuntariness' rationale might also raise questions about the law's rejection of social and financial pressures as grounds of defence: see section 6.8(b).

[87] Discussed in Chapter 4.8.

[88] Gardner, *Offences and Defences*, ch 6; Horder, *Excusing Crime*, 99–109.

[89] See the argument of C. Clarkson, 'Necessary Action: a New Defence' [2004] Crim LR 81.

[90] [1996] 2 Cr App R 157, n 59 and accompanying text.

[91] E.g. where negligence is the fault element for crimes (see Chapter 5.5(d)), and to a small extent in self-defence (see Chapter 4.6(g)).

[92] Cf. Horder, *Excusing Crime*, 183–5, and the discussion in section 6.7.

[93] See section 6.8(a), and M. Wasik, 'Duress and Criminal Responsibility' [1977] Crim LR 453.

[94] J. Bentham, *Introduction to the Principles of Morals and Legislation* (1789), ch XIV, para. 9.

[95] Bentham, *Introduction to the Principles of Morals and Legislation*, para. 11.

[96] (1884) 14 QBD 273.

[97] [1977] AC 653.

[98] [1977] AC 755; cf. I. Dennis, 'Duress, Murder and Criminal Responsibility' (1980) 96 LQR 208.

[99] [1987] AC 417.

[100] The House of Lords held in *Gotts* [1992] 2 AC 412 that, by logical extension, duress should not be available as a defence to attempted murder.

[101] *Per* Lords Griffiths and Mackay, at 446 and 457.

[102] Chapter 4.8.

[103] P. Alldridge, 'The Coherence of Defences' [1983] Crim LR 665.

[104] A. Kenny, *Freewill and Responsibility* (1978), 38.

[105] Coroners and Justice Act 2009, s. 55(3). See further, Chapter 7.

[106] *Hasan* [2005] 2 AC 467 (HL), para. 28.

[107] LCCP 177, *A New Homicide Act?* (2005), Part 7.

[108] Law Com No. 304, *Murder, Manslaughter and Infanticide* (2006), Part 6; the earlier report adopting the same approach was Law Com No. 218, *Legislating the Criminal Code: Offences against the Person and General Principles* (1993).

[109] Law Com No. 304, *Murder, Manslaughter and Infanticide* (2006), Part 6, para. 6.46.

[110] [2007] QB 960.

[111] Law Com No. 304, paras. 6.53 and 6.142–3.

[112] Law Com No. 304, para. 6.79.

[113] For criticism of this recommendation, see A. Ashworth, 'Principles, Pragmatism, and the Law Commission's Recommendations on Homicide Law Reform' [2007] Crim LR 333, at 340–2.

[114] The Ministry of Justice's Consultation Paper 19 on *Murder, Manslaughter and Infanticide: Proposals for Reform of the Law* (2008), much discussed in Chapter 7, does not cover the duress recommendations.

[115] (1889) 23 QBD 168.

[116] Compare E. Griew, 'States of Mind, Presumptions and Inferences', in P. F. Smith (ed.), *Criminal Law: Essays in Honour of J. C. Smith* (1987), with A. P. Simester, 'Mistakes in Defence' (1992) 12 OJLS 295, and R. H. S. Tur, 'Subjectivism and Objectivism: Towards Synthesis', in Shute, Gardner, and Horder (eds), *Action and Value in Criminal Law* (1993).

[117] Confirmed by the House of Lords in *Sweet* v *Parsley* [1970] AC 132.

[118] [1976] AC 182, discussed in Chapter 5.5(d).

[119] The leading cases were probably *Rose* (1884) 15 Cox CC 540 and *Chisam* (1963) 47 Cr App R 130. The only careful analysis was that of Hodgson J in the Divisional Court in *Albert* v *Lavin* (1981) 72 Cr App R 178. Cf. however the subjective approach to mistake in provocation cases: *Letenock* (1917) 12 Cr App R 221, *Wardrope* [1960] Crim LR 770.

[120] *Kimber* (1983) 77 Cr App R 225, followed by *Gladstone Williams* (1984) 78 Cr App R 276 and by *Beckford* [1988] 1 AC 130.

[121] (1984) 78 Cr App R 276.

[122] S. Uniacke, *Permissible Killing* (1994), discussed in Chapter 4.6, would say that D's conduct was agent-perspectivally permitted to act but not objectively permitted.

[123] See n 120.

[124] Cf. the discussion by S. Yeo, *Compulsion in the Criminal Law* (1991), 198–208.

[125] Simester, 'Mistakes in Defence'; see also Gardner, *Offences and Defences*, ch 5.

[126] *McCann* v *UK*, discussed in Chapter 4.6(g); see also Simester, 307 (reference at n 125).

[127] Cf. A. Brudner, 'Agency and Welfare in the Penal Law', in Shute, Gardner, and Horder (eds), *Action and Value in Criminal Law*, 35 and 43.

[128] See Chapter 5.5(d) and Chapter 8.5(c).

[129] See Chapter 8.6(d), discussing *G*. [2008] UKHL 37.

[130] Compare *Beckford* [1988] AC 130 with *McCann* v *UK*, Chapter 4.7(f)(vi); cf. J. Horder, 'Cognition, Emotion and Criminal Culpability' (1990) 106 LQR 469. The High Court of Australia has required 'reasonable grounds' in all cases of mistaken self-defence: *Zecevic* v *R* (1987) 162 CLR 645.

[131] See, e.g. the provision in s. 76(7) of the Criminal Justice and Immigration Act 2008, that in determining whether force was reasonable in self-defence a court should take account of 'what the person honestly and instinctively thought necessary', discussed in Chapter 4.6(g).

[132] See section 6.3(c), and the Law Commission Consultation Paper No. 139, *Consent in the Criminal Law* (1995), ch 7.

[133] See J. Horder, 'Killing the Passive Abuser', in S. Shute and A. P. Simester (eds), *Criminal Law Theory: Doctrines of the General Part* (2002).

[134] R. A. Duff, *Answering for Crime* (2007), 270–6.

[135] For recent affirmations see *B* v *DPP* [2000] 2 AC 428 and *K* [2002] 2 AC 462 discussed in Chapter 5.5(a).

[136] (1982) 74 Cr App R 235.

[137] [2005] 2 AC 467, discussed in part 3(a) of this chapter.

[138] See the discussion in Chapter 4.6(f).

[139] Theft Act 1968, s. 2(1)(a); Criminal Damage Act 1971, s. 2.5(2)(a).

[140] *Secretary of State for Trade and Industry* v *Hart* [1982] 1 WLR 481.

[141] Williams, *Textbook of Criminal Law*, ch 20.

[142] E.g. *Grant* v *Borg* [1982] 1 WLR 638, *Jones, The Times*, 19 August 1994.

[143] Statutory Instruments Act 1946, s. 3(2).

[144] *Lim Chin Aik* v *R* [1963] AC 160; see also Toulson LJ in *Chambers* [2008] EWCA Crim 2467.

[145] *Christian* v *R*. [2006] 2 AC 400 (defendants from Pitcairn Island knew rape and sexual abuse were seriously wrong and criminal, though unaware of terms of English law); see H. Power, 'Pitcairn Island: Sexual Offending, Cultural Difference and Ignorance of the Law' [2007] Crim LR 609.

[146] O. W. Holmes, *The Common Law* (1881), 48.

[147] J. Hall, *General Principles of Criminal Law* (1960), 388, and Chapter 4.1.

[148] Fletcher, *Rethinking Criminal Law*, 734, and Chapter 4.1.

[149] See Chapter 5.4(a).

[150] J. Raz, *The Morality of Freedom* (1987), 206–7, and Chapter 4.2 and 4.3.

[151] In Chapter 5.5(d) and in section 6.4.

[152] A. Ashworth, 'Ignorance of the Criminal Law and Duties to Avoid it' (2011) 74 MLR 1, and R. Goodin, 'An Epistemic Case for Legal Moralism' (2010) 30 OJLS 615.

[153] Cf. D. Husak, 'Ignorance of Law and Duties of Citizenship' (1994) 14 Legal Studies 105, 110: 'the problem arises from the fact that few persons are likely to be aware of the existence of the alleged duty to know the law'.

[154] Theft Act 1968, s. 21(1), discussed in Chapter 9.4.

[155] See Chapter 3.5(h).

[156] *Cantoni* v *France* (1997) VIII HRCD 130, on the French offence of selling prohibited pharmaceutical products; cf. Chapter 3.5(g) on Art. 7.

[157] Husak, 'Ignorance of Law', at 115, rightly emphasizes that the state has duties as well as citizens.

[158] See the American case of *Lambert* v *California* (1957) 355 US 225 on omissions (and Chapter 4.4(c)).

[159] See Lord Bingham in *Rimmington and Goldstein* [2006] 1 AC 459 at [30]; and Chapter 3.5(i).

[160] Cf. D. Husak and A. von Hirsch, 'Culpability and Mistake of Law', in Shute, Gardner, and Horder (eds), *Action and Value*.

[161] See Husak and von Hirsch, 'Culpability and Mistake of Law', proposing that the only way of avoiding unfairness is to allow courts to assess the moral legitimacy of D's beliefs. Cf. the remark of Brooke LJ in *R (on application of W)* v *DPP* [2005] EWHC Admin 1333, that a boy of 14 'might well not know what was a criminal offence and what was not'.

[162] Thus the distinction drawn by Brudner, 'Agency and Welfare', 36, between ignorance of 'true crimes (as distinct from welfare offences)' is not convincing, since there may be strong duties in the latter category too.

[163] J. Andanaes, '*Error Juris* In Scandinavian Law', in G. Mueller (ed.), *Essays in Criminal Science* (1961); cf. generally P. Brett, 'Mistake of Law as a Criminal Defence' (1966) 5 Melb U LR 179.

[164] Law Com No. 177, cl. 21.

[165] As in *Thomas* [2006] Crim LR 71, where D was unaware that the Sexual Offences Act 2003 had changed the law by criminalizing sexual acts by foster parents with former foster children under 18 (not 16).

[166] Cf. *Secretary of State for Trade and Industry* v *Hart* [1982] 1 WLR 481, with *Grant* v *Bord* [1982] 1 WLR 638, two decisions of the House of Lords in the same year; see generally A. T. H. Smith, 'Error and Mistake of Law in Anglo-American Criminal Law' (1984) 14 Anglo-American LR 3. Cf. *Attorney-General's Reference (No. 1 of 1995)* [1996] 2 Cr App R 320, where the absence of 'knowingly' was one factor in the Court's decision to hold that ignorance of the law was no excuse.

[167] See R. Card, 'Authority and Excuse as Defences to Crime' [1969] Crim LR 359 and 415.

[168] (1862) 7 H and N 707, discussed by Brett, 'Mistake of Law as a Criminal Defence'.

[169] [1975] QB 678.

[170] *Cambridgeshire and Isle of Ely CC* v *Rust* [1972] 1 QB 426.

[171] A. Ashworth, 'Excusable Mistake of Law' [1974] Crim LJ 652.

[172] A. Ashworth, 'Testing Fidelity to Legal Values', in Shute and Simester (eds), *Criminal Law Theory*, and the refinements proposed by Horder, *Excusing Crime*, 270–6.

[173] *Code for Crown Prosecutors*, para. 4.17(d) ('genuine mistake or misunderstanding').

[174] *Postermobile* v *Brent LBC, The Times*, 8 December 1997, discussed at [1998] Crim LR 435, and by Ashworth, 'Testing Fidelity to Legal Values', at 303.

[175] Cf. *Kingston* [1995] 2 AC 355, discussed in section 6.3(d), where the House of Lords held that it must be for Parliament to decide whether or not to introduce a new defence.

[176] G. Williams, 'The Draft Code and Reliance on Official Statements' (1989) 9 Legal Studies 177, at 186–7; the Model Penal Code, s. 2.04(3), also allows reliance on official advice, but not a lawyer's advice, as a defence.

[177] See further Ashworth, 'Testing Fidelity to Legal Values', at 306–7.

[178] [2002] 1 Cr App R 29.

[179] *Per* Lord Nicholls at [23].

[180] See the discussion by A. Ashworth, 'Re-Drawing the Boundaries of Entrapment' [2002] Crim LR 161, and in 'Testing Fidelity to Legal Values', at 310–22.

[181] See, e.g., Lord Nicholls at 1 and Lord Hoffmann at 39–40.

[182] (1999) 28 EHRR 101.

[183] *Jacobson* v *US* (1992) 112 S Ct 1535.

[184] Section 2.13 (official inducement of offence; not available if offence involves bodily injury).

[185] K. Hofmeyr, 'The Problem of Private Entrapment' [2006] Crim LR 319.

[186] Cf. the decision of the Court of Appeal in *Shannon* [2000] 1 Cr App R 168 with that of the Strasbourg Court in *Shannon* v *UK* [2005] Crim LR 133; see also Ashworth, 'Re-Drawing the Boundaries of Entrapment', at 175–6.

[187] See Chapter 7.4(b) and (e).

[188] As proposed by the Criminal Law Revision Committee in its 1976 Working Paper, 'Offences against the Person'.

[189] See M. Wasik, 'Partial Excuses in the Criminal Law' (1982) 45 MLR 515, and Horder, *Excusing Crime*, 143–52.

[190] See Chapter 3.5(l).

[191] Wasik, 'Partial Excuses', 524.

[192] See section 6.6.

[193] See section 6.3(c).

[194] See *Howe* [1987] AC 417, but cf. the discussion in section 6.3(c).

[195] The views of Baroness Wootton were discussed in Chapter 5.5(a).

[196] See Chapter 1.4 on the prevalence of guilty pleas.

[197] See A. Ashworth, *Sentencing and Criminal Justice* (5th edn., 2010), 372–6.

[198] Ashworth, *Sentencing and Criminal Justice*, 372–6, Ch 5.7.

[199] Crown Prosecution Service, *Code for Crown Prosecutors*, discussed in Chapter 1.4.

[200] *Looseley*; *Attorney General's Reference No. 3 of 1999* [2002] 1 Cr App R 29, discussed in section 6.6.

[201] *Postermobile plc* v *Brent LBC*, *The Times*, 8 December 1997, discussed in section 6.5(c).

[202] Gardner, *Offences and Defences*, 124.

[203] See *Hasan* [2005] 2 AC 467, and the theoretical discussion by A. Brudner, 'A Theory of Necessity' (1987) 7 OJLS 338.

[204] E. Colvin, 'Exculpatory Defences in Criminal Law' (1990) 10 OJLS 381, 395.

[205] In duress, see the loosening in *Bowen* [1996] 2 Cr App R 157 and the tightening in *Hasan* [2005] 2 AC 467, section 6.3(a); in provocation, see the loosening in *Smith (Morgan)* [2001] 1 AC 146 and the tightening in *Attorney General for Jersey* v *Holley* [2005] UKPC 23, Chapter 7.4(b).

[206] For an argument that there should be an intermediate category of cases where the essence of D's response is diminished capacity, see Horder, *Excusing Crime*, ch 3; R. Lippke, *Rethinking Imprisonment* (2007), 88–101.

[207] P. Taylor and G. Dalton, 'Pre-Menstrual Syndrome: a New Criminal Defense?' (1983) 19 Cal WLR 269; *Sandie Smith* [1982] Crim LR 531; and J. Dressler, 'Reflections on Excusing Wrongdoers: Moral Theory, New Excuses and the Model Penal Code' (1988) 19 Rutgers LJ 671, 707.

[208] See section 6.3(b).

[209] See Chapter 3.5(i).

[210] In *Hasan* [2005] 2 AC 467, Lord Bingham's primary reason for taking a restrictive, objectivist approach to the duress defence was one of 'public policy', including (para. 22) fear of false defences.

[211] For other arguments in favour of taking coercive measures against those acquitted on certain grounds, see Colvin, 'Exculpatory Defences', 392.

[212] See Chapter 5.4(a) and (d).

[213] M. Kelman, 'Interpretive Construction in the Substantive Criminal Law' (1981) 33 Stanford LR 591.

[214] Horder, *Excusing Crime*, Chapter 4, and Chapter 7.4(b).

[215] Section 6.5(c).

[216] Sexual Offences Act 2003, s. 1(1)(c), and Chapter 8.5(i).

[217] Cf. Sexual Offences Act 2003, s. 9(1)(c) with the decisions of the House of Lords in *B* v *DPP* [2000] 2 AC 428 and *K.* [2002] 2 AC 462, discussed in Chapter 5.5(a).

[218] E.g. Sexual Offences Act 2003, ss. 5–8, interpreted in *G.* [2008] UKHL 37 and criticized in Chapter 8.6.

[219] See *McCann* v *UK*, discussed in Chapter 4.6(f)(vi), and Gardner, *Offences and Defences*, 128–30.

[220] Fletcher, *Rethinking Criminal Law*, 514; V. Tadros, *Criminal Responsibility* (2005), Chapter 3.3.

[221] [1982] AC 341, discussed in Chapter 5.3(c).

[222] See the discussion in Lippke, *Rethinking Imprisonment*, 88–101.

[223] Cf. criminal damage by fire, which is often serious.

[224] Council of Europe, *European Convention on Compensation for the Victims of Crimes of Violence* (1984).

[225] For reviews, see D. Farrington, 'Childhood Risk Factors and Risk-Focused Prevention', and D. Smith, 'Crime and the Life Course', in M. Maguire, R. Morgan, and R. Reiner (eds), *Oxford Handbook of Criminology* (4th edn., 2007).

[226] See text at nn 209–212.

[227] N. Lacey, *State Punishment* (1988), ch 3 and 140–1.

[228] See, e.g., the discussion of *Howe*, Chapter 6.3(d).

[229] For an introduction to the literature, see Fletcher, *Rethinking Criminal Law*, ch 10; K. Greenawalt, 'The Perplexing Borders of Justification and Excuse' (1984) 84 Columbia LR 1897; J. Dressler, 'Justifications and Excuses: a Brief Review of the Concept and the Literature' (1987) 33 Wayne LR 1155; G. Williams, 'The Theory of Excuses' [1982] Crim LR 732; W. Wilson, *Central Issues in Criminal Theory* (2002), chs 10 and 11; R. A. Duff, *Answering for Crime* (2007), ch 11.

[230] See D. Husak, 'The Serial View of Criminal Law Defences' (1992) 3 Crim L Forum 369, developed by Horder, *Excusing Crime*, ch 3.

[231] See further Chapter 7.5.

[232] P. Westen, ‘An Attitudinal Theory of Excuse’ (2006) 25 Law and Philosophy 289, 330.

[233] H. L. A. Hart, *Punishment and Responsibility* (2nd edn., 2008), chs 2 and 7, and the re-assessment in J. Gardner's ‘Introduction’, xxxiv–liii.

[234] Gardner, *Offences and Defences*, ch 5.

[235] See Chapter 4.1 for discussion.

[236] See Chapter 1.5.

[237] See Westen, ‘Attitudinal Theory of Excuse’.

[238] Fletcher, *Rethinking Criminal Law*, 800.

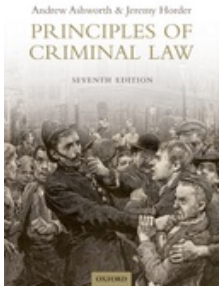
[239] For analysis and discussion, see Lacey, *State Punishment*, 65–78; Horder, *Excusing Crime*, ch 1; Tadros, *Criminal Responsibility*, ch 1.

[240] Discussed in section 6.2(d); see further Sullivan, ‘Making Excuses’.

[241] Cf. Dressler, ‘Reflections on Excusing Wrongdoers’, 692–701, with Tadros, *Criminal Responsibility*, ch 11.

[242] Fletcher, *Rethinking Criminal Law*, 800, criticized by Brudner, ‘A Theory of Necessity’, 344–7.

[243] Horder, *Excusing Crime*, ch 3.



Principles of Criminal Law (7th edn)

Andrew Ashworth and Jeremy Horder

Publisher: Oxford University Press
Print ISBN-13: 9780199672684
DOI: 10.1093/he/9780199672684.001.0001

Print Publication Date: May 2013
Published online: Sep 2013

7. Homicide

Chapter: (p. 236) 7. Homicide
Author(s): Andrew Ashworth and Jeremy Horder
DOI: 10.1093/he/9780199672684.003.0007

7.1 Death and finality
7.2 The conduct element: causing death
7.3 Defining murder: the inclusionary question
7.4 Defining murder: the exclusionary question
7.5 'Involuntary manslaughter'
7.6 Causing or allowing the death of a child or vulnerable adult
7.7 Causing death by driving
7.8 Reviewing the structure of the law of homicide
Further reading

There are a surprising number and variety of homicide and homicide-related offences in English law.[1] This chapter deals with the most important instances in which the criminal law prohibits and punishes behaviour that causes death or risks causing death. Murder, manslaughter, and several other homicide offences are discussed, and one recurrent issue

here is fair labelling: does English law respond proportionately to the different degrees of culpability manifested in cases where death is caused?

7.1 Death and finality

The culpable causing of another person's death may fairly be regarded as the most serious offence in the criminal calendar. It is sometimes argued that treason or terrorism are more serious offences, since they may strike at the very foundations of the State and its social organizations, but this line of thinking has little substance. Both treason and terrorism-related offences cover a large range of conduct, much of which is very remote from any harm done.[2] Treason-related offences, for example, include the common law offence of 'compounding treason'. This involves agreeing, in exchange for some benefit, not to prosecute someone who has committed treason. This is wrongdoing that in (p. 237) all probability would now be treated rather less dramatically either as bribery or as perverting the course of justice.

The harm caused by homicide is absolutely irremediable, whereas the harm caused by many other crimes is remediable to a degree. Even in crimes of violence which leave some permanent physical disfigurement or psychological effects, the victim retains his or her life and, therefore, the possibility of further pleasures and achievements, whereas death is final. This finality makes it proper to regard death as the most serious harm that may be inflicted on another person, and to regard the culpable causing of death without justification or excuse as the highest wrong.

Although many deaths arise from natural causes, and many others from illnesses and diseases, each year sees a large number of deaths caused by 'accidents', and also a number caused by acts or omissions which amount to some form of homicide in English law. In 2000, for example, the statistics showed that there were some 13,000 accidental deaths, of which some 3,200 occurred on the roads and the remainder either at work or in the home.[3] By comparison, the number of deaths recorded as criminal homicide is much smaller: it rose from around 600 per year at the start of the 1990s to around 700 per year in the early years of this century, since when it has fallen back to 638 in 2010–11 and to 550 in 2011–12.[4] This includes all the murders and manslaughters, but it leaves further questions to be confronted. For example, are we satisfied that the 700 deaths recorded as homicide are in fact more culpable than all, or even most, of the deaths recorded in other categories? In other words, does English criminal law pick out the most heinous forms of killing as murders and manslaughters, or are the boundaries frozen by tradition? For example, the number of offences of causing death by dangerous driving, causing death by careless driving whilst intoxicated, and causing death by careless driving now stands at around 400 per year[5]: some of these offences result in sentences more severe than those handed down for some forms of manslaughter,[6] which prompts the question whether these offences should be brought into manslaughter or other offences should be removed from that category.

We will see below that Parliament has created four new homicide offences in the last few years. For one of them (corporate manslaughter) it has used the term manslaughter. For the others it has either used the terminology of 'causing death by' (the two offences introduced by the Road Safety Act 2006)[7] or provided no label at all (the offence under s. 5 of the Domestic Violence, Crime and Victims Act 2004).[8] Various questions may be raised: are these labelling decisions acceptable? Are these extensions of homicide law defensible, or is the distance

between the defendant's fault and the (p. 238) consequent death too remote? What implications, if any, should the different labels have for sentence levels? These and other problems in the reform of homicide law will be examined, after the contours of the present law have been discussed.

7.2 The conduct element: causing death

English law distinguishes between the offences of murder and manslaughter, as we shall see, but the two crimes do have a common conduct element. It must be proved that the defendant's act or omission caused the death of a human being. The requirements of causation in the criminal law were discussed in Chapter 4.5, and already some problems came to light. Thus, the standard doctrine is that to shorten life by days is to cause death no less than shortening it by years, and this raises questions about the liability of doctors who administer drugs which they know will have the effect of shortening life, even though their primary purpose is to relieve pain. We noted that, in the rare trials of doctors for murder, the approach has been to direct the jury (in effect) to determine whether the doctor's primary motive was to relieve pain or to accelerate the patient's death[9]—an approach that conflicts with the orthodox approach to intention. It would be more consistent with prevailing doctrine for the courts to accept that a doctor may be clinically justified in administering a form of treatment he or she foresees as almost certain to hasten death (so long as death is not directly intended), but may have a suitably refined defence of clinical necessity in this situation, in spite of fulfilling both the conduct and fault elements for murder.[10]

At what points does an organism start and cease to be a person within the protection of the law of homicide? The current view, both in English law and in that of many other European countries,[11] is that a foetus is not yet a person and therefore cannot be the victim of homicide. Thus, in the difficult case of *Attorney-General's Reference (No. 3 of 1994)*,[12] where D had stabbed his pregnant girlfriend, also injuring the foetus, and the child was born prematurely and died some four months later from the wound, the House of Lords held that the doctrine of transferred intention could not be applied because it could only operate to transfer intention from one person to another, and not from a person to (what was at the relevant time) a foetus. Only when the child is born alive and has an existence independent of its mother does it come within the protection of the law of homicide, although there are other serious offences capable (p. 239) of commission before birth, notably child destruction (which carries a maximum of life imprisonment).[13] The point at which the protection of the law of homicide begins was a crucial factor in the case of *Re A (Conjoined Twins: Surgical Separation)*.[14] The twins were conjoined and both would have died within months if left conjoined, but the stronger twin had good prospects of survival if surgical separation was performed. The Court of Appeal held that the weaker twin was sufficiently capable of independent breathing to be classed as a human being: she was independent of her mother, even though she was dependent on the vital organs of her twin for survival. Once it was decided that she was a person within the protection of the law of homicide, it followed that the operation to separate the twins would constitute the conduct element of murder in relation to the weaker twin (who would inevitably die shortly afterwards) unless there was some legal justification for the homicide, which the Court, invoking a version of necessity, held that there was.

It seems that a person will be treated as dead if he or she has become irreversibly ‘brain

dead', the definition of brain death being largely left to medical practice.[15] Thus switching off the life support machine of someone who already fulfils the criteria of brain death would not amount to the conduct element of murder. What if the patient does not fulfil those criteria, but is in a persistent vegetative state? This was the situation in the case of Tony Bland, who was being kept alive by food from a naso-gastric tube and by occasional administrations of antibiotics.[16] The House of Lords held that it would be lawful to discontinue treatment, thus allowing the patient to die. The elements of criminal homicide would not be present, they held, because discontinuing treatment was not causing death: it was allowing the patient to die of his pre-existing condition. Discontinuing treatment was properly regarded as an omission, not as an act. Further, it was not a criminal omission because there was no duty to treat the patient, given that there was no hope of recovery and it was no longer in his best interests to be kept alive. The controversial aspects of this decision cannot be pursued here.[17]

At common law there was also a rule that a person could only be convicted of a homicide offence if the death occurred within a year and a day of the accused's act or omission. Advances in medical science now make it possible for some victims to be kept alive for years after being injured or wounded, and the argument that the passage of years should not prevent a homicide prosecution was accepted by Parliament in the Law Reform (Year and a Day Rule) Act 1996, which abolished the old rule. The Act relies on prosecutorial discretion to prevent oppressive or unfair prosecutions: s. 2 provides that, where more than three years have elapsed since the injury and the defendant has already been convicted of a non-fatal offence, a prosecution for homicide may only be **(p. 240)** instituted with the Attorney General's consent. It would be helpful to see the publication of some principles or guidelines on which this discretion should be exercised.

7.3 Defining murder: the inclusionary question

(a) The procedural context

If causing death is to be regarded as the most serious harm, it would seem to follow that the most blameworthy form of homicide (the greatest wrong) should result in the most severe sentences imposed by the courts. Indeed, many systems of criminal law impose a mandatory sentence for murder (or whatever the highest form of homicide is called in that system). In some jurisdictions this is a mandatory sentence of death.[18] In the United Kingdom the penalty for murder is the mandatory sentence of life imprisonment.[19] The existence of the mandatory sentence has a significant impact on the shape and content of the remainder of the law of homicide: as we shall see, the dividing line between murder and manslaughter may be affected by the inability of courts to give different sentences for murder, and there are those who believe that the strongest reason for retaining provocation or 'loss of control' as a partial defence to murder is that otherwise a judge could not reflect degrees of culpability in the sentence (for murder).

The mandatory sentence of life imprisonment is divided into three portions: the first is now known as the minimum term (formerly, the tariff period), and is intended to reflect the relative gravity of the particular offence. It is a term that is served in full, and the early release provisions applicable to all determinate custodial sentences do not apply here. Once the minimum term expires, the second part consists of imprisonment based on considerations of public protection, and a murderer who is thought still to present a danger may be detained until

the Parole Board decides that it is safe to order release. The third portion is after release from prison: the offender remains on licence for the rest of his life. Although until 2003 the Home Secretary had the final say on the minimum term and ultimate release, those decisions have now passed to the courts and the Parole Board respectively.[20] However, the government wished to fetter the judges so as to ensure that minimum terms were not set too low. Thus s. 269 of the (p. 241) Criminal Justice Act 2003 requires a court, when setting the minimum term to be served by a person convicted of murder, to have regard to the principles set out in Sch 21 of the Act. The structure of that Schedule is to indicate four starting points:

- (for those over 21 at the time of the offence) a whole life minimum term for exceptionally serious cases, such as premeditated killings of two people, sexual or sadistic child murders, or politically, religiously, or ideologically motivated murders.
- (for those over 18 at the time of the offence) 30 years for particularly serious cases such as murders of police or prison officers on duty, murders involving firearms or explosives, sexual or sadistic killings, or murders aggravated by racial or sexual orientation, or cases that would have attracted a 'whole life' term starting point, had the offender been 21 at the time of the offence.
- (for those over 18 at the time of the offence) 25 years for murder committed with a knife or other weapon intentionally taken to the scene in order to commit the crime, or to have the weapon available for use, and it was used.
- (for those over 18 at the time of the offence) 15 years for other murders not falling within either of the higher categories.

It should be borne in mind that to compare the minimum term with a determinate sentence one should double it: in other words, a minimum term of 15 years is the equivalent of a determinate sentence of about 30 years.[21] However, the language of Sch 21 leaves considerable latitude to the sentencing judge. Although criteria are enumerated for the whole life and 30-year starting points, they are expressed as factors that would 'normally' indicate such a sentence. There is then provision for the court to take account of any further relevant factors, and an explicit statement that 'detailed consideration of aggravating and mitigating factors may result in a minimum term of any length (whatever the starting point)'. The Lord Chief Justice amended the previous guidance to reflect the 2003 provisions when he issued a Practice Direction in May 2004.[22] He has subsequently emphasized that s. 269(3) merely states that the judge must specify the minimum term that 'the court considers appropriate', and indeed went on to say that so long as the judge bore in mind the principles set out in Sch 21, 'he is not bound to follow them'—although an explanation for departing from them should be given.[23] Nonetheless, anomalies can arise. Suppose that a farmer's wife chooses to accede to her terminally ill husband's request by shooting him with a shotgun. On the face of it, in such a case, 30 years is the indicated minimum and premeditation may take the minimum term even higher, although the sentencing judge might have to balance these factors against the mitigating factors mentioned in para. 11(d) and 11(f) (p. 242) of Sch 21, namely provocation brought about by prolonged stress, and the fact that the killing was intended as an act of mercy.[24]

The system introduced by the 2003 Act means that judges can vary the minimum term to reflect degrees of culpability in murder, but the overall framework of the mandatory sentence means that judges cannot set the maximum term to be served, as they do for other serious

offences. On expiry of the minimum term, release is determined on public protection grounds by the Parole Board. This constraining effect of the mandatory life sentence means that the justifications for retaining it must be scrutinized afresh. One argument in favour of the mandatory life sentence is that it amounts to a symbolic indication of the unique heinousness of murder. It places the offender under the State's control, as it were, for the remainder of his or her life. This is often linked with a supposed denunciatory effect—the idea that the mandatory life sentence denounces murder as emphatically as possible—and with the supposed general deterrent effect of declaring that there is no way of avoiding the life-long effect of this sentence. It might also be argued that the mandatory life sentence makes a substantial contribution to public safety.

None of these arguments is notably strong, let alone conclusive. The mandatory penalty does indeed serve to mark out murder from other crimes, but whether the definition of murder is sufficiently refined to capture the worst killings, and only the worst killings, remains to be discussed. As we shall see in section 7.3(c), it is sufficient for murder if D killed without intent to kill but with intent to cause serious harm, and the lesser intent is merely a mitigating factor from the various starting points in Sch 21 of the 2003 Act. Whether the life sentence is regarded as a sufficient denunciation depends on the public's perception of what life imprisonment means: if it is widely believed that it results in an average of about ten years' imprisonment, the effect will be somewhat blunted, even if the belief is untrue. The same applies to the general deterrent argument: its effectiveness depends on whether the penalty for murder affects the calculations of potential killers at all, and, if it does, whether the prospect of life imprisonment influences them more than the alternative of a long, fixed-term sentence.

As for public protection, this depends on executive decisions with regard to release; it raises the question whether it is necessary for public protection to keep most 'lifers' in for so long.[25] It is sometimes claimed that murderers should be treated differently because they are particularly dangerous: anyone who chooses to kill once can choose to kill again. But this is an over-generalization that takes little account of the situational variations of murder cases. Moreover, the argument will seem less persuasive when we have discussed cases of manslaughter by reason of diminished responsibility: where a murder is reduced to manslaughter, the judge has a wide sentencing discretion and **(p. 243)** may, according to the facts of the case, select a determinate prison sentence, a hospital order, or life imprisonment. There is no evidence that those who kill and are convicted of manslaughter by reason of diminished responsibility are less dangerous than those convicted of murder, and yet the judge has sentencing discretion in one case and not in the other. Considerations of this kind led the House of Lords Committee on Murder and Life Imprisonment to recommend the abolition of the mandatory sentence for murder.[26] A committee chaired by the former Lord Chief Justice, Lord Lane, reached the same conclusion in 1993.[27] Both committees favoured judicial sentencing discretion to mark the relative heinousness of the murder, subject to review on appeal.[28] A discretionary sentence of life imprisonment would still be available for those cases in which it was thought appropriate. Such a reform could bring improvements in natural justice without loss of public protection, but successive governments have been reluctant to contemplate the abrogation of the mandatory sentence for murder, and the latest reform proposals are premised on the retention of the mandatory penalty.[29]

(b) The structure of homicide law

The structure of the law of homicide varies across jurisdictions,[30] and recent proposals for reforming English law will be discussed below. It must be said that the current structure of the English law of homicide is rather strange. Although formally there are two offences—murder and manslaughter—the latter includes two distinct varieties: 'voluntary' manslaughter (killings which would be murder but for the existence of defined extenuating circumstances); and 'involuntary' manslaughter (killings that are in fact the product of voluntary conduct, but for which there is no need to prove any awareness of the risk of death being caused, but for which there is nonetheless thought to be sufficient fault to justify liability for a killing). The arguments therefore tend to focus on three borderline questions: What is the minimum fault required for conviction of murder? In what circumstances should murder be reduced to manslaughter? What is the minimum fault required for a conviction of manslaughter?

(c) Requirements for murder

In English criminal law, satisfying the fault requirement for murder involves the prosecution in proof that D possessed one of two states of mind: either an intent to kill, or (p. 244) an intent to cause grievous bodily harm. What do these requirements mean? Do they extend the definition of murder too far, or are they too narrow?

An intent to kill may be regarded as the most obvious and least controversial form of fault element for murder. In part, though, that judgment hinges on the meaning given to 'intent' in the criminal law. The meaning of intent has been the subject of a number of House of Lords decisions,[31] and yet the definition is still not absolutely clear. A broad definition would be that a person *intends* to kill if it is his or her aim to kill by the act or omission charged, in the sense that he or she would regard it as a failure if V was not killed by the act or omission (although the courts do not themselves use this so-called 'test of failure', which is merely a helpful explanatory tool). In practice, the 'golden rule' is the first to be applied—that intention should be left without description or definition in most cases, and the full definition should be reserved for cases where D claims that his purpose was something other than to cause injury. This is because the full definition includes a further possibility, in addition to proof of aim or purpose of killing on D's part. This is proof that D foresaw that V's death was virtually certain to follow from his or her act or omission, whether or not V's death was aimed at (i.e. whether or not D would have regarded V's survival of the incidence as a 'failure' on D's part to achieve his or her goal). If the jury is sure that D acted with this state of mind, they are entitled to infer that D intended to kill (we will look further at this issue).

To this extension of the meaning of intent must also be added that, as was mentioned above, it is sufficient for the prosecution to show that, in killing V, D intended to cause grievous (serious) harm to V, and hence it will be enough for the prosecution to show that D foresaw grievous bodily harm as virtually certain to occur. So, in a case where D has killed V, in the absence of any justification or excuse:

1. If D intended to kill: *murder*;
2. If D intended to cause grievous (serious) bodily harm: *murder*;
3. If D foresaw death or grievous bodily harm as virtually certain to occur: *murder*, if the jury infers that D intended to kill or cause grievous bodily harm.

A fairly typical set of facts is provided by *Nedrick* (1986),[32] where D had a grudge against a woman and had threatened to 'burn her out'. One night he went to her house, poured paraffin

through the letter-box and onto the front door, and set it alight. One of the woman's children died in the ensuing fire. When asked why he did it, D replied: 'Just to wake her up and frighten her'. A defence of this kind, a claim that the purpose was only to frighten and not to cause harm, requires the full definition of intention (i.e. including the reference to foresight of death or grievous bodily harm as a virtual certainty) to be put to the jury. The question is: granted that D's aim was to frighten, did he nonetheless realize that it was virtually certain that his act would cause death **(p. 245)** or grievous bodily harm to someone? The jury should answer this, as in all criminal cases, by drawing inferences from the evidence in the case and from the surrounding circumstances.

As was pointed out in Chapter 5.5(b), the decision of the House of Lords in *Woollin*[33] leaves some leeway in the application of the test by holding that, where the jury concludes that D foresaw that death or grievous bodily harm was virtually certain to ensue, it is 'entitled to find' that D had the intention necessary for murder. The test remains a permissive principle of evidence rather than a rule of substantive law, although the Court of Appeal has accepted that, once there is an appreciation of virtual certainty of death, 'there is very little to choose between a rule of evidence and one of substantive law'.[34] However, the test is so formulated in order to leave a degree of indeterminacy,[35] and this could allow juries to make broader moral or social judgments when deciding whether the fault element for murder is fulfilled in a case where death (or grievous bodily harm) was known to be virtually certain.[36]

What about the alternative element in the definition, an intent to cause grievous bodily harm? This has considerable practical importance, since this is all that the prosecution has to prove in order to obtain a verdict of guilty of murder. It must be shown that the defendant intended (which, again, includes both acting in order to cause the result and knowledge of practical certainty) to cause 'really serious injury' to someone, although the use of the word 'really' is not required in all cases.[37] The House of Lords confirmed this rule in *Cunningham* (1981):[38] D struck his victim on the head a number of times with a chair, causing injuries from which the victim died a week later. D maintained throughout that he had not intended to kill, but there was evidence from which the jury could infer—and did infer—that he intended to cause grievous bodily harm. The House of Lords upheld D's conviction for murder: an intent to cause really serious injury is sufficient for murder, without any proof that the defendant even contemplated the possibility that death would result.

Does the 'grievous bodily harm' rule extend the definition of murder too far? If the point of distinguishing murder from manslaughter is to mark out the most heinous group of killings for the extra stigma of a murder conviction, it can be argued that the 'grievous bodily harm' rule draws the line too low. The rule departs from the principle of correspondence (see Chapter 5.4(a)), namely that the fault element in a crime should relate to the consequences prohibited by that crime. By allowing an **(p. 246)** intent to cause grievous bodily harm to suffice for a murder conviction, the law is turning its most serious offence into a constructive crime. Is there any justification for 'constructing' a murder conviction out of this lesser intent? One argument is that there is no significant moral difference between someone who chooses to cause really serious injury and someone who sets out to kill. No one can predict whether a serious injury will result in death—that may depend on the victim's physique, on the speed of an ambulance, on the distance from the hospital, and on a range of other medical and individual matters unrelated to D's culpability. If one person chooses to cause serious injury to another, he or she has already crossed one of the ultimate moral thresholds and has shown a sufficiently

wanton disregard for life as to warrant the label ‘murder’ if death results. The counter-arguments, which would uphold the principle of correspondence, are that breach of that principle is unnecessary when the amplitude of the crime of manslaughter lies beneath murder, and also that the definition of grievous bodily harm includes a number of injuries which are most unlikely to put the victim's life at risk. In the leading case of *Cunningham* Lord Edmund-Davies (dissenting) gave the example of breaking someone's arm: that is a really serious injury, but one which is unlikely to endanger the victim's life.[39] So in practice the ‘grievous bodily harm’ rule goes beyond the point at which the arguments of its supporters still carry weight. In its charging standards, the Crown Prosecution Service gives the following account of when it is appropriate to charge D with the offence of wounding with intent to do grievous (serious) bodily harm, an account that will also serve as a guide to cases in which, if V dies, it will be appropriate to charge murder:

- injury resulting in permanent disability, loss of sensory function or visible disfigurement;
- broken or displaced limbs or bones, including fractured skull, compound fractures, broken cheek bone, jaw, ribs, etc; injuries which cause substantial loss of blood, usually necessitating a transfusion or result in lengthy treatment or incapacity;
- serious psychiatric injury. As with assault occasioning actual bodily harm, appropriate expert evidence is essential to prove the injury.[40]

It must be recognized that many other legal systems also have a definition of murder that goes beyond an intent to kill.[41] What other approaches might be taken? The fault element for many serious offences is intent or recklessness: why should this not suffice for murder? One question is whether all killings in which the defendant is aware of a risk of death are sufficiently serious to warrant the term ‘murder’. An answer sometimes given is that they are not, because a driver who overtakes on a bend, knowingly **(p. 247)** taking the risk that there is no vehicle travelling in the opposite direction, should not be labelled a murderer if a collision and death happen to ensue.[42] This example assumes that sympathy for motorists will overwhelm any tendency to logical analysis: the question is whether motorists are ever justified in knowingly taking risks with other people's lives. Yet if the example is modified a little, so that the overtaking is on a country road at night and the risk is known to be slight, it becomes questionable whether the causing of death in these circumstances should be labelled in the same way as, say, an intentional killing by a hired assassin. This is not to suggest that motorists, in particular, should be treated differently. The point is rather that, even though knowingly taking risks with other people's lives is usually unjustifiable, taking a slight risk is less serious than intentionally causing death. In discussing the boundaries of murder, we are concerned with classification, not exculpation.

To classify all reckless killings as murder might be too broad, but the point remains that some reckless killings may be thought no less heinous than intentional killings. Can a satisfactory line be drawn here? One approach would be to draw the line by reference to the degree of probability. Murder would be committed in those situations where D caused death by an act or omission which he knew had death as the probable or highly probable result. A version of this test of foresight of high probability is used in several other European countries;[43] it was introduced into English law by the decision in *Hyam* v *DPP* (1975),[44] but abandoned in *Moloney* (1985)[45] on grounds of uncertainty. A related approach, applicable to certain terrorist situations, would be to maintain that someone who intends to create a risk of death or serious

injury endorses those consequences to the extent that, if they occur, they can fairly be said to be intended.[46]

A second approach is to frame the law in such a way as to make it clear that the court should make a moral judgment of the gravity of the defendant's conduct. Section 210.2 of the Model Penal Code includes within murder those reckless killings which manifest 'extreme indifference to the value of human life'.[47] Scots law treats as murder killings with 'wicked recklessness', a phrase which directs courts to evaluate the circumstances of the killing.[48] Both the Model Penal Code test and the Scots test may be reduced to circularity, however, for when one asks how extreme or how wicked the recklessness should be, the only possible answer is: 'wicked or extreme enough to justify the stigma of a murder conviction'. Admittedly, the Model Penal Code does contain a list (p. 248) of circumstances which may amount to extreme indifference, which assists the courts and increases the predictability of verdicts in a way that Scots law does not. Having said that, under both approaches there is no precise way of describing those non-intentional killings which are as heinous as intentional killings. The advocates of this approach argue that the law of murder has such significance that the principle of maximum certainty should yield to the ability of courts to apply the label in ways more sensitive to moral/social evaluations of conduct. Opponents argue that the principle of maximum certainty is needed here specifically to reduce the risk of verdicts based on discriminatory or irrelevant factors, such as distaste for the defendant's background, allegiance, or other activities, especially if the mandatory life sentence is at issue.[49]

A third, more precise formulation now favoured by the Law Commission is that a killing should be classified as murder in those situations where there is an intention to cause serious injury coupled with awareness of the risk of death.[50] Neither an intention to cause serious injury nor recklessness as to death should be sufficient on its own, but together they could operate so as to restrict one another and perhaps to produce a test which both satisfies the criterion of certainty and marks out some heinous but non-intended killings.

A fourth approach, adopted by English law until 1957 and still in force in many American jurisdictions, is some form of felony-murder rule: anyone who kills during the course of an inherently dangerous felony should be convicted of murder.[51] Thus stated, there is no reference to the defendant's intention or awareness of the risks: the fact that D has chosen to commit rape, robbery, or another serious offence, and has caused death thereby, is held to constitute sufficient moral grounds for placing the killing in the highest category. Plainly, this is a form of constructive criminal liability: the murder conviction is constructed out of the ingredients of a lesser offence. Presumably the justification is that D has already crossed a high moral/social threshold in choosing to commit such a serious offence, and should therefore be held liable for whatever consequences ensue, however accidental they may be.[52] The objections would be reduced if awareness of the risk of death was also required: in other words, if the test were the commission of a serious offence of violence plus recklessness as to death. The effect of that test would be to pick out those reckless killings which occurred when D (p. 249) had already manifested substantial moral and legal culpability, and to classify them as murder.

Four alternative approaches have been described, and others could be added. The point is that the traditional concept of intention does not, of itself, appear to be sufficiently well focused to mark out those killings which are the most heinous. The law must resort to some kind of

moral and social evaluation of conduct if it is to identify and separate out the gravest killings. Some would defend the GBH rule on this basis as a form of 'rough justice,' and that argument could be extended to some of the cases in the fourth category above, as William Wilson has proposed.[53]

At the other end of the spectrum were the Law Commission's provisional proposals, which proposed to deal with the issue by means of a distinction between first degree murder and second degree murder. The mandatory life sentence would remain for first degree murder, the definition of which would be refined by confining it to cases where there is an intent to kill.[54] Second degree murder would then include cases where D is proved to have killed while intending to do serious harm, defined more tightly than in existing law,[55] and also cases where D is proved to have killed with reckless indifference as to causing death. Second degree murder would carry a maximum sentence of life imprisonment, together with the label 'murder', and is an attempt to allow some 'moral elbow-room' in the definition of murder outside the mandatory penalty.[56] However, in its final report the Law Commission sought a compromise that enlarges first degree murder beyond intention to kill and yet does not encounter the objections made against the GBH rule. In effect, the Commission adopts the third approach above, arguing that first degree murder should extend beyond an intent to kill to those cases where there is an intent to cause serious injury coupled with an awareness of a serious risk of causing death.[57] The Law Commission's view is that cases involving both these elements are morally equivalent to cases of intent to kill, or at least are closer to those cases than to cases placed in the other offence of murder in the second degree.

(p. 250) What cases would fall within murder in the second degree? The Law Commission identified two types of case—where D kills with an intention to do serious injury (those not accompanied by an awareness of the risk of death and therefore not within murder in the first degree), and where D 'intended to cause injury or fear or risk of injury aware that his or her conduct involved a serious risk of causing death'. The latter category is designed to capture bad cases of reckless killing and to sweep them into an offence with the label murder (in the second degree). One issue with this provision is whether the breadth of the concepts of 'injury' and 'serious risk' enables the proposal to distinguish fairly between these cases and others that fall into manslaughter. Another issue is whether the introduction of the provision would place too many choices between closely related mental states that the jury must juggle, in deciding whether D is guilty of first degree, second degree murder, or manslaughter. There is a considerable likelihood that, were the provision introduced, there would be more disagreements between individual jurors as to which offence category (if any) it fell into, and hence more cases in which the jury failed to agree on a verdict. This would mean that a fresh trial would have to be ordered, with all the witnesses having to given their evidence again, with no guarantee that a fresh jury would be more likely to agree on a verdict.[58] In any event, the Government indicated that it was not minded to pursue the first degree/second degree distinction, and would be focusing on reform of the partial defences to murder.[59]

7.4 Defining murder: the exclusionary question

Even in a legal system which had the narrowest of definitions of murder—say, premeditated intention to kill—there would still be an argument that some cases which fulfil that criterion should have their labels reduced from murder to manslaughter because of extenuating

circumstances. Just as the discussion of the *inclusionary* aspect of the definition of murder travelled beyond the concepts of intent and recklessness, so the discussion of the *exclusionary* aspect (i.e. which killings fulfilling the definition should be classified as manslaughter rather than murder?) must consider the circumstances in which the killing took place and other matters bearing on the culpability of the killer.

(a) The mandatory penalty

The existence of the mandatory penalty has significant effects on the shape of the substantive law of homicide. One argument is that the main reason for allowing such matters **(p. 251)** as loss of self-control to reduce murder to manslaughter is to avoid the mandatory penalty for murder: if the mandatory penalty were abolished, it would be sufficient to take account of loss of self-control when sentencing for murder. However, this argument neglects the symbolic function of the labels applied by the law and by courts to criminal conduct. Surely it is possible that a jury might decline to convict of murder a person who intentionally killed following a loss of self-control, even though they knew that the judge could give a lenient sentence, because they wished to signify the reduction in the defendant's culpability by using the less stigmatic label of manslaughter. Since there are two offences—and particularly in jurisdictions where there are three or more grades of homicide—surely it is right and proper to use the lesser offence to mark significant differences in culpability. This may be seen as an application of the principle of fair labelling. When a jury takes the decision between the two grades of homicide, this may also assist the judge in sentencing, and help the public to understand the sentence imposed.[60] A second major effect of the mandatory penalty for murder derives from the long minimum terms (plus the detention for public protection and then the licence for life) imposed for murder, as compared with the considerably shorter sentences for manslaughter upon loss of self-control or by reason of diminished responsibility. Thus the sentencing guidelines for manslaughter upon loss of self-control indicate a starting point of twelve years' imprisonment where minimal provocation led to a loss of self-control is low, and starting points of eight and three years for more serious provocation leading to a loss of self-control.[61] The difference between the highest starting point for manslaughter following a loss of self-control—twelve years (release on licence after six years)—and the lowest starting point for murder—fifteen years (which means fifteen years at least before release on licence)—is so considerable that, in practice, 'there is the greatest of pressure to distort the concepts of provocation and diminished responsibility to accommodate deserving or hard cases. This pressure will continue as long as each case of murder carries the mandatory life sentence'.[62]

(b) Manslaughter following a loss of self-control

Killings are generally thought to be less heinous when they are the result of grave provocation, or of a fear of violence stemming from words or conduct on V's part. Before important legislation in 2009, only provocation (not a fear of violence) had historically been accepted as a ground for reducing to manslaughter a killing which would otherwise be murder.[63] From time to time, there continue to be cases where the provocation **(p. 252)** is so gross and so strong that a court imposes a very short prison sentence or even a suspended sentence for the manslaughter—typically, cases where a wife, son, or daughter kills a persistently bullying husband or father. In cases of this type (amongst others), though, the motivation may not be provocation so much as a fear of continuing violence, but where—for one reason or another—the complete defence of self-defence or action in prevention of crime cannot succeed. The

Coroners and Justice Act 2009 sought to address this gap in the law. The 2009 Act put a fear of serious violence on a par with provocation, as a basis for reducing the offence from murder to manslaughter, so long as—putting on one side a number of restrictions and qualifications—in either case (or where both are pleaded together) D acted during a loss of self-control. The issues here are whether either or both of these 'partial' defences (defences to murder that reduce the crime to manslaughter) have any place in the modern law, or contrariwise, whether there is a case for extending them.[64]

The 2009 Act made highly significant changes to the law governing the partial defences. However, it is helpful to start with a brief explanation of the old structure, built from a mixture of common law and legislation, that was replaced by the 2009 Act: to a considerable extent, the 2009 Act still relies on that old structure. Before the coming into force of the 2009 Act, the doctrine of provocation (as it was commonly known) had two main elements. These emerge in s. 3 of the Homicide Act 1957, which the new law replaces:

> Where on a charge of murder there is evidence on which the jury can find that the person charged was provoked (whether by things done or by things said or by both together) to lose his self-control, the question whether the provocation was enough to make a reasonable man do as he did shall be left to be determined by the jury; and in determining that question the jury shall take into account everything both done and said according to the effect which, in their opinion, it would have on a reasonable man.

This was not intended to be a complete statement of the law on provocation, but it settled the form of the main requirements. First, there had to be evidence that D was provoked to lose self-control and kill. Then the jury had to decide whether the provocation in question was enough to make a 'reasonable man' who had lost self-control do as D did. Importantly, D did not bear the burden of proving any of this him or herself. In a murder trial, when evidence of provocation was given or emerged in the course of the trial, the burden of showing beyond reasonable doubt that the requirements of s. 3 were *not* satisfied lay upon the prosecution.[65] If the prosecution failed to discharge that burden to that standard, D was entitled to an acquittal on the murder charge on the grounds of provocation, and would be convicted of manslaughter instead. In practice, then, in any case where evidence of provocation became relevant, the prosecution would focus **(p. 253)** on one, or both, of two things. First, the prosecution could seek to convince the jury that D never lost control, however grave the provocation might have been. Secondly, the prosecution could seek to convince the jury that, even if D did lose self-control, the provocation was not of such a grave kind that it might have moved even a reasonable person to lose self-control and kill with the fault element for murder.

(i) The Subjective Requirement and its Replacement:

The first requirement of the pre-2009 qualified defence of provocation was predominantly subjective—evidence that D was provoked to lose self-control and kill. Without this, there would be no way of excluding planned revenge killings as a response to provocation, and the argument is that they should be excluded from the defence. A person who coolly plans a murder as a response to an affront or a wrong is defying the law in so doing, and (barring the applicability of some other defence) there can be no excuse for that. By contrast, the killer

provoked to lose self-control is, for the duration of the loss of self-control, not fully master of his or her mind, and so—in theory—is not deliberately defying the law in the same way. As Richard Holton and Stephen Shute argue, the paradigm case is where D normally had sufficient self-control to suppress violent inclinations, but the provocation aroused those inclinations and undermined D's controls.[66] In the old case of *Duffy*,[67] Devlin J (before he became Lord Devlin) expressed this idea in the following famous passage:

> [C]ircumstances which induce a desire for revenge are are inconsistent with provocation, since the conscious formulation of a desire for revenge means that a person has had time to think, to reflect, and that would negative a sudden temporary loss of self-control, which is of the essence of provocation.

In what ways has this requirement for a loss of self-control been altered by the reforms effected by the 2009 Act?

The wording of s. 3 of the Homicide Act 1957 (the residual elements of the common law having been abolished) has now been replaced by ss. 54 and 55 of the 2009 Act. These sections introduce a partial defence renamed 'loss of control'. The defence includes a new version of the old 'provocation' defence (the second limb of the defence), but also includes a new defence focused on a loss of self-control stemming from a fear of serious violence at V's hands (the first limb of the defence). In relation to the subjective requirement, the new law retains the requirement that D's acts or omissions in doing or being party to a killing resulted from D's loss of self-control (s. 54(1) of 2009 Act).[68] The 2009 Act also re-states in a new form two ancient common law doctrines that served to restrict the defence in important ways. The first, just mentioned, is that the defence of loss of self-control will not apply where D acts on, 'a considered desire for (p. 254) revenge' (s. 54(4)). The second is that the defence will not apply if D's loss of self-control stemmed from something that D him or herself incited to be done or said in order to provide an excuse to use violence (s. 55(6)(a) and (b)).[69]

> More significantly, the 2009 Act makes the following changes to the old law:
>
> **1.** Section 54(6) says that the defence must only be left for the jury to consider where, 'sufficient evidence is adduced to raise an issue with respect to the defence … [namely where] … evidence is adduced on which, in the opinion of the trial judge, a jury, properly directed, could reasonably conclude that the defence might apply'.
> **2.** Section 54(2) says that the loss of self-control need no longer be 'sudden'.

Let us turn first to consideration of this second change. In the passage cited earlier, Devlin J referred to the need at common law for a 'sudden temporary' loss of self-control. This supposed requirement at common law was ever-afterwards controversial. To begin with, it is unclear what is added by stipulating that a loss of control must be 'temporary'. A loss of self-control cannot indefinitely sustain itself or be sustained for very long, even if, having subsided, it then periodically overtakes D as he or she reflects from time to time on some provocation or

on some threat of violence from V. Secondly, it was never clearly the case at common law in any event that a loss of self-control had to be 'sudden' (i.e. immediately following a provocation, rather than happening at a slightly later point as D reflected on something said or done earlier).[70] In many cases prior to 2009, this supposed requirement was ignored by both judges and juries.[71] Critics of the suddenness requirement also claimed that it slanted the defence in favour of male defendants and prejudiced it against female defendants, in so far as the latter, unlike the former, tend not to lose self-control instantly but to react in a more 'slow burning' way.[72] Whatever one's view about this, though, there was always a certain amount of tension at common law, and now in the legislation, between the removal of the supposed requirement of suddenness, and the exclusion by s. 54(4) from the scope of the defence of killings prompted by a 'considered desire for revenge'.

To begin with, although this is not acknowledged by the legislation, a provoked killing, even following a loss of self-control, normally has a vengeful motivation: the 'desire for retaliatory suffering' as ancient Greek philosopher Aristotle called it. So, on the one hand, it is perfectly consistent with pleading the defence that D did not (p. 255) react instantaneously and brooded on what was said or done, perhaps even forearming him or herself in readiness to confront V.[73] That is the effect of s. 54(2) even though, ironically, evidence of delay (such as the detour to the garage to fill up the car in *Baillie*[74])—and even more so, evidence of pre-planning—can be powerful evidence that D's supposed loss self-control at the time of the killing was *not* genuine or never occurred. On the other hand, by virtue of s. 54(4), in cases in which D acted from a 'considered' desire for revenge the defence is simply inapplicable. The combined effect of these provisions seems to be that, even if D does take time to brood on vengeful thoughts and even if D to some extent has prepared for a retaliatory attack on V, so long as D (a) had lost self-control at the time of the killing and (b) was not at that time motivated by any preconceived decision to exact vengeance that he or she may have come to previously, the defence may apply. That position is intelligible, legally and morally, but is based on fine distinctions that it may be very difficult to draw, not least in circumstances where it is likely that D's account of his or her own thoughts, feelings, and actions will be the only or main source of evidence for those thoughts, feelings, and actions. The Law Commission had originally argued strongly against the retention of any loss of self-control requirement.[75] In the Commission's view, there should instead simply be a negative test of whether D acted on a considered desire for revenge; if he or she did not, then the defence would be available in principle. However, it is not entirely clear that this approach would have resolved the difficulties in distinguishing deserving from undeserving cases in this area.[76] It is one thing to exclude cases like *Ibrams*[77] from the defence: not merely was there a gap of some five days between provocation and killing, but there was evidence of planning and premeditation. It is another thing to exclude defendants with slow-burning temperaments, who do not react straight away to an insult or wrong, but go away and then react after minutes or even hours of festering anger. However, the problem then is that allowing lapse of time between the provocation and the retaliation—as suggested in *Ahluwahlia*[78]—not only helps women defendants but also broadens the timeframe for men, and may thus weaken the excusatory force that derives from acting in uncontrolled anger.

(ii) The subjective requirement and its replacement:

Turning to the first change, the opening words of the old s. 3 of the Homicide Act 1957 ('Where on a charge of murder there is evidence on which the jury can find that the person charged

was provoked.') were construed by the courts in such a way that almost any evidence of a provoked loss of self-control would make provocation an issue in the trial, and the prosecution would come under an obligation to show that the elements of the defence were not made out, as described above. What was required, stated Lord Steyn in *Acott* (1997),[79] is 'some evidence of a specific act or words of provocation resulting in a loss of self-control', whereas 'a loss of self-control caused by fear, panic, sheer bad temper or circumstances **(p. 256)** (e.g. a slow down of traffic due to snow) would not be enough'. However, what may properly be defined as 'provocation' in this context proved controversial. In *Doughty*[80] the crying of a 17-day-old child was held to be sufficient to satisfy the requirement for a 'provoked' loss of self-control, even though a child's crying is scarcely even voluntary conduct, let alone conduct that is intended to or known to be likely to provoke. *Doughty* did not, of course, decide that a baby's crying was to be regarded as such that a reasonable person might have done as D did in that case. The point the Court of Appeal made was that even a baby's persistent crying was 'evidence … that the person charged was provoked' such that the defence became an issue at trial and the prosecution had to convince the jury that its elements were not satisfied. It was a waste of the court's time, and of counsels' time, to have to address defences when, as in *Doughty*, they had such little chance of success. What is more, albeit exceptionally, some juries were acquitting Ds of murder, following a direction from the judge on the provocation issue, in cases where the provocation was so trivial that, as a matter of justice, it ought never to have been put before the jury. An example is *Naylor*.[81] D picked up a prostitute (V) in his car, and then refused to pay as agreed for the services he had received. When V remonstrated with him he strangled her with such force that he broke bones in her neck. As there was 'evidence … that the person charged was provoked', the defence of provocation was put to the jury, which (surprisingly) acquitted him of murder and convicted of manslaughter only.

So far as the second the second limb of the defence is concerned,[82] it may be argued that s. 54(6) seeks to snuff out the possibility that cases such as *Doughty* and *Naylor* might end in manslaughter verdicts on the grounds of loss of self-control. It does this by providing that the loss of self-control defence is not to be put to the jury unless the judge is of the opinion that a jury, having been given proper directions, might reasonably conclude that the defence applied. This gives the trial judge an important and broad responsibility and discretion to exercise, in the role of 'gatekeeper', to the loss of self-control defence. Were cases with facts similar to those in *Naylor* and *Doughty* to recur, on any view it is hard to see how they would pass the judicial 'gatekeeper', given the height of the new hurdle (to be considered shortly) that D must surmount if he or she is to make loss of self-control an issue in the case in relation to the second limb of the defence. So far as the first limb of the defence (addressed below) is concerned—a fear of serious violence from V—s. 54(6) is less dramatic in its effect in this respect. It is still meant to deny the defence to Ds who raise wholly implausible claims to have lost self-control due to a fear of serious violence at V's hands, but as we will now see, s. 54(6) is a less powerful tool in that regard in relation to the first limb of the defence than in relation to the second limb.

(p. 257) In relation to the first limb of the defence, s. 55(4)(b) is at the heart of the 2009 Act's replacement for the subjective requirement in what were formerly provocation cases. It requires that a loss of self-control as a result of something said or done (or both together) cause D 'to have a justifiable sense of being seriously wronged'. These are the words designed to replace the old notion of a 'provoked' loss of self-control under the 1957 Act, and

are referred to in the legislation as being part of a ‘qualfying trigger’ bringing the defence into play (s. 55(2)).[83] It seems immediately apparent how the wording of s. 55(4)(b) will be likely to exclude cases such as *Doughty* from the scope of the loss of control defence, at the point when the judge has to decide whether a properly directed jury might reasonably conclude that the defence may apply. This is because s. 55(4)(b) avoids the language of ‘provocation’, by employing instead the notion that D must have had a justifiable sense of being seriously wronged. In this way, the law introduces the idea that, for the purposes of the second limb of the defence, D must have had good cause to feel that he or she was the victim of some kind of serious injustice, insult, or other glaring instance of denigration or derogatory conduct at the hands of another: nothing short of that will, assuming it sparks a loss of self-control, be sufficient to bring the defence into play (other things being equal). A crying baby is, quite simply, not capable of behaving in such a way towards another person, however frustrated or enraged that person may be by the crying. The way that the law achieves this, though, is by introducing an objective (judgmental) element into what was formerly an almost purely factual, subjective question concerning whether D was provoked to lose self-control. The objective, judgmental element is represented by the requirement that D's sense of being seriously wronged by some piece of conduct must be a ‘justifiable’ sense of being seriously wronged.[84] It is worth noting the contrast, in this respect, with the subjective requirement for the first limb of the defence (the other ‘qualifying trigger’ bringing the defence into play), which does not involve this heavily judgmental element. Section 55(3) requires no more than evidence of a ‘fear of serious violence from V against D or another identified person’. Such evidence will bring the loss of self-control defence into play, when this limb of the defence is relied on, whether or not the fear of serious violence was ‘justifiable’.[85] This is likely significantly to complicate the judge's task in discharging the gatekeeper function, and in directing the jury, when D pleads (as he or she is entitled to do) both limbs of the defence together.

(p. 258) (i) The objective requirement, and its modification:

It is helpful to begin by focusing on what the 2009 Act puts in place of the old provocation defence (the second limb of the defence, under s. 55(4)), and in that regard starting with a brief discussion of the pre-2009 law. Under s. 3 of the Homicide Act 1957, the jury had to decide not only whether D had lost self-control at the time of the killing, but whether the provocation was such as might have made a reasonable man do as D did. The latter question is the objective requirement, and it is still part of the post-2009 law (in a more sophisticated form, as we will see). Its function is to ensure that not every homicidal loss of self-control reduces the offence from murder to manslaughter. It would, for example, be unacceptable if the defence served to reduce from murder to manslaughter an intentional killing involving the act of a possessive spouse angered by no more than his or her partner's decision to go out alone for an evening, or the act of someone who flies into rage when lawfully arrested for a crime he or she has committed. Only those provocative acts serious enough to unbalance the reactions of a person with reasonable self-control should suffice.[86] However, the 1957 Act did not elaborate on the kinds of provocation that might form the basis of a successful plea.[87] The authors of the 1957 legislation were content to leave that question to be decided by each jury on a case by case basis.[88]

Regrettably, though, the Appeal Courts could not resist the temptation to introduce legal complexity to the relatively simple provisions of the 1957 Act. They sought to spell out, case by case, the characteristics of the ‘reasonable person’ as a matter of law, and hence dictate

to the jury what should, and should not, be taken into account in deciding whether the reasonable person might have done as D did in the circumstances. In so far as it affected his or her reaction, could the reasonable person still be reasonable when jealous, depressed, temperamental, or touchy on the subject of a disability or a previous criminal record? Could the 'reasonable' person possibly be someone who had a mental disorder that affected their capacity to maintain self-control? Judges needlessly set themselves the task of answering all these questions—and more of a similar kind. Naturally, when considering these questions, judges disagreed amongst themselves over the right answers, over the kinds of characteristics that could, and could not, be regarded as features of the reasonable person. This served only to push the law even further into obscurity.[89] We will return to this issue shortly.

(p. 259) A very significant effect of the 2009 Act is to bring to the fore, and make explicit, an objective requirement that was only implicit in the pre-2009 law: the requirement for the conduct that sparked D's loss of self-control to be an instance of very grave provocation. Section 55(4) says that, in addition to being something that gave D a justifiable sense of being seriously wronged (a requirement that we have already considered), the conduct that sparked D's loss of self-control will not amount to a qualifying trigger unless (s. 55(4)(a)) it, 'constitutes circumstances of an extremely grave character'. It will still be, as it was under the law prior to the 2009 Act, a matter for the jury whether what was done or said that led D to lose self-control and kill constituted circumstances of an extremely grave character. However, it is arguable that s. 55(4)(a) was intended to raise the bar that D must surmount in order to bring the defence into play: the provocation must not merely be serious, but 'extremely grave'.

In the Parliamentary debate on the issue in 2008–9, Baroness Scotland, speaking for the government, gave as an example a hypothetical case in which a refugee living in the UK encountered a man responsible for rounding up members of his old village, locking them in a church, and then setting the church alight. The man laughs at the incident and describes in some detail what happened to the refugee's family killed in the fire. The refugee thereupon lost self-control and killed the man. Baroness Scotland went on the say:

> We consider that the words and conduct limb of the partial defence needs to be included in this kind of extremely grave example, where the defendant would have a justifiable cause to feel seriously wronged. We remain of the view that the partial defence should succeed only in the gravest of circumstances.[90]

Baroness Scotland's example, coupled with this explanation, suggests two things.

First, what is to count as an 'exceptionally grave' provocation must be judged in context. There can never be a list of exceptionally grave provocations detached from consideration of circumstantial and contextual issues such as who the provoker and the provoked person were, the relationship between them, and the manner in which the provocation was given. For example, if the hypothetical war criminal in the example given by Baroness Scotland had given his account of the events at the church to a young British person who was born long after the incident took place, and knew nothing of it, the gravity of the provocation would be reduced. It might still be a grave provocation, but arguably no longer an exceptionally grave provocation. So, as the Law Commission put it (considering its own version of the test), 'The jury should be

trusted to evaluate the relative grossness of provocation, in whatever form it comes, according to their own sense of justice in an individual case'.[91] Under the 1957 Act, this was also the position, following the overruling in *DPP* v *Camplin* (1978)[92] of the old case of *Bedder* v *DPP* (1954).[93] In *Bedder* v *DPP*, D, who was sexually impotent, was taunted **(p. 260)** about his impotence and kicked in the groin by a prostitute with whom he had been attempting to have sexual intercourse, whereupon he lost self-control and killed her. The House of Lords held that the jury should consider the effect of these acts on a 'reasonable' man, without regard to the sexual impotence. That was a difficult rule to apply, because it is hard to see how the gravity of the provocation constituted by a taunt about impotence can be properly understood without reference to whether the person taunted is indeed impotent. The House of Lords in *Bedder* v *DPP* failed to consider whether it was possible to take into account D's impotence, in assessing the gravity of the provocation, whilst at the same time insisting that the provocation must be so grave that it might lead even a person with reasonable powers of self-control to lose control and kill.[94] The effect of the decision in *DPP* v *Camplin* was to adopt the latter approach. Lord Diplock held that a court should consider the effect of the provocation on 'a person having the power of self-control to be expected of an ordinary person of the sex and age of the accused, but in other respects sharing such of the accused's characteristics as they think would affect the gravity of the provocation to him'. We will consider the first part of this ruling in due course. So far as the second part of the the ruling is concerned—characteristics affecting the gravity of the provocation—following the decision in *Camplin*, increasingly few, if any, limits were set to the kinds of characteristics that may affect the gravity of the provocation. In *Morhall* (1996),[95] D was a glue-sniffing addict who had been taunted about his glue-sniffing by the victim, whom D subsequently stabbed. The Court of Appeal held that in applying the objective test the jury should be directed not to take account of discreditable characteristics such as glue-sniffing (or paedophilia). The House of Lords disagreed, and held that a jury should be directed to take account of any matter relevant to an assessment of the strength of the provocation. As we will see, in broad terms, this is now the approach under the new law.

Does this mean that there are no boundaries at all to what personal attributes may be taken into account in assessing the gravity of the provocation? What about the case of a racist who believes that it is gravely insulting for a non-white person to speak to a white man unless spoken to first?[96] Lord Taylor in *Morhall* put the case of 'a paedophile upbraided for molesting children',[97] which raises similar issues. The implication of the House of Lords decision in *Morhall* is that the judgment of such matters must be left to the jury without much guidance. It could be argued strongly that is unsatisfactory: there ought to be a normative element that excludes attitudes and reactions inconsistent with the law or inconsistent with the notion of a tolerant, pluralist society that upholds the right to respect for private life without discrimination (Arts. 8 and 14 of the Convention). However, the significance of that argument has sharply diminished in the light of the reforms effected by s. 55(4)(a) of the 2009 Act, and its requirement that **(p. 261)** provocation be of an 'extremely grave' character. Further, Baroness Scotland's second point in the passage cited earlier from her speech indicates that s. 55(4)(a) is meant to be a restatement of what was originally envisaged by the legislature when debating the 1957 Act, namely that commonly encountered provocations—even very annoying or wounding ones, such as persistently inconsiderate behaviour by a neighbour or the discovery that a spouse is in another relationship—should not be capable of forming the basis of a successful plea.[98] In the years following the reform of the defence in 1957, it would

be fair to say that courts had—whilst making the law ever more complex—also allowed juries to consider a provocation plea in a far wider range of cases, involving commonly encountered provocations, than the legislature had envisaged in 1957. To that extent, s. 55(4)(a) is a welcome development.

It is against that background that we should consider s. 55(6)(c), which provides that, 'In determining whether a loss of self-control had a qualifying trigger … the fact that a thing done or said constituted sexual infidelity is to be disregarded'. As these words indicate, s. 55(6)(c) concerns a (dis)qualifying trigger, but it is illuminating to discuss it more generally as part of the post-2009 modification of the objective requirements of the loss of self-control defence. In policy terms, the provision was intended to stop possessive men, in particular, pleading a partner's infidelity as a basis for reducing murder to manslaughter: something that it was open to them to do (with no guarantee of success, of course) under the old law.[99] The provision is, though, so clearly and obviously incapable of doing that (except in rare cases), that it is probably better to regard its importance as lying not so much in the extent to which it narrows the scope of the law, as in its symbolism as a commitment to taking domestic violence more seriously. The case for regarding it as more important symbolically than normatively is expressed in Baroness Scotland's explanation of the section, worth citing at length:

> Even accepting that a great deal has been done in recent years to address this problem, and that pleas of provocation on the basis of sexual infidelity generally do not succeed, it is still true that, under the current law, the defence can be raised and could technically succeed. We want to make it clear in the Bill that this can no longer be the case, and that it is unacceptable for a defendant who has killed an unfaithful partner to seek to blame the victim for what occurred. It is important to correct a misconception here. By doing this, we are not saying that people are not entitled to feel upset and angry at a partner's unfaithfulness: we are concerned here with a partial defence to murder and the circumstances in which it is appropriate to reduce liability for murder to that of the less serious offence of manslaughter. We are saying that killing in response to sexual infidelity is not a circumstance in which such a reduction can be justified.[100]

(p. 262) The case for saying that s. 55(6)(c) is of little normative significance was to an extent conceded by the government itself, when it stated that it is only sexual infidelity in itself that must be disregarded in a provocation case.[101] If there is other evidence that constitutes a qualifying trigger, then the case may be considered by the jury notwithstanding the part played in D's reaction by sexual infidelity. This point was hammered home by the Lord Chief Justice in the Court of Appeal's decision in *Clinton*.[102] Indeed the Court of Appeal went on to say that even evidence of sexual infidelity itself could be given, 'where sexual infidelity is integral to and forms an essential part of the context in which to make a just evaluation whether a qualifying trigger properly falls within the ambit of subsections 55(3) and (4)'.[103]

The case for saying that s. 55(6)(c) will have only a negligible impact in cases where possessive men haved used violence against women (and against their sexual partners in particular) has been much commented on, not least in *Clinton* itself.[104] To adapt an earlier example, if D loses control and kills V simply because V wishes to have a night out without D present, that evidence will not be ruled out as a basis for a plea of loss of self-control by s.

55(6)(c). Similarly, a plea of loss of self-control will not be ruled out by that section in any of the following examples:

> **(a)** D 'stalks' a celebrity with whom he is obsessed (although they have never met), losing control and killing her when he sees her having dinner with a man;
> **(b)** D loses control and kills V, his 16-year-old daughter, when V says that she intends to start dating;
> **(c)** D loses self-control and kills V, his partner, when V says that she will never have sexual intercourse with him again.

In these examples, it is highly unlikely that the defence of loss of self-control would be put to the jury, or if put to the jury it is highly unlikely that the defence would succeed; but that is not because of the existence of s. 55(6)(c). It is because of the combined effect of s. 54(6)—that requires the judge to withdraw a case from the jury if a properly directed jury could not reasonably conclude that the defence might apply—and s. 55(4)(a), that requires the evidence to constitute circumstances of an extremely grave character. Were it not for the perceived great importance of the symbolic function of **(p. 263)** s. 55(6)(c), it is strongly arguable that sexual infidelity cases should have been left to be weeded out by the same combination of ss. 54(6) and 55(4)(a).

(ii) The objective requirement and its modification:

Section 55(3) creates a new basis for reducing murder to manslaughter, under the heading of loss of self-control. As we have seen, a qualifying trigger for the loss of self-control defence is that D's loss of self-control 'was attributable to D's fear of serious violence from V against D or against another identified person'. This short statement of the first limb of the defence captures both the subjective element, '*fear* of violence' (already considered), and an objective requirement that the violence feared must have been 'serious'; s. 55(3) does not say as much, but it would be wholly inconsistent with the tenor of the provisions as a whole were it to be a matter solely for D whether the violence he feared was serious. It should not, for example, be possible for a gang member to say that he responded with lethal violence to a punch from a member of a rival gang, because he regarded violence offered by rival gang members to be much more serious than other kinds of violence. 'Serious' should probably be understood to mean, 'constituting at least serious bodily harm'. However, the application of the first limb may not be all that straightforward in some circumstances.

Consider the facts of the case of *Uddin*, that arose under the old pre-1957 common law.[105] D was a Moslem who killed another Moslem (V) when V threw a pigskin shoe at him. At the trial, expert evidence of the religious significance of shoe throwing (and in particular, no doubt, of *pigskin* shoe throwing) was given to assist the jury in understanding the gravity of the provocation. That would almost certainly also happen were D in a similar case now to plead loss of self-control under the second limb, on the basis that this was exceptionally grave provocation that gave him a justifiable sense of having been seriously wronged. However, were D to claim that he intentionally killed V solely on the grounds that he faced 'serious' violence from V, how should that claim be treated? It is submitted that the claim should fail. The incident was serious only as a form of provocation, not as a form of violence (a far more objective question). However, as has already been pointed out, D would be entitled to plead the two limbs of the loss of self-control defence together, entailing a tricky task for the judge in directing the jury. That direction would be further complicated if, as indicated earlier, D was

mistaken about what V threw at him, thinking it was a pigskin shoe when in fact it was a plastic container of some kind.

The underlying explanation for s. 55(3) is principally the difficulty that may arise, highlighted in the Law Commission's analysis of the provocation defence,[106] when a woman kills an abusive husband or partner (V) without reacting suddenly in the face of a final provocation or threat from V. In such cases, it will often make more sense, in terms of the moral narrative, to describe her ultimate reaction in killing the husband as attributable to fear for her own or her children's safety rather than to anger (although **(p. 264)** motives may be understandably mixed).[107] It will also make sense, in those terms, to explain her reaction as delayed because of (amongst other things) an inequality between her size and strength and his—that necessitates waiting until he is off guard to defend herself—rather than because of sheer malevolence or a purely vengeful motivation. Neither of these points was capable of accommodation under a defence of provocation tied, as it was under the old law, to the notion of a sudden and angry loss of self-control.

Moreover, although solid evidence to prove this one way or another has been hard to come by, juries have been considered reluctant to apply the complete defence of self-defence in such circumstances, even though that defence is sensitive to considerations such as a disparity in size between those involved, such that the weaker person may (more justifiably) use a weapon or wait until the stronger person is off his guard.[108] As we have seen, so far as the loss of self-control defence is concerned, the new law has dispensed with the suddenness requirement (s. 54(2)), but crucially, it retained the requirement for a loss of self-control (s. 54(1)). The government departed from the Law Commission's view: that the latter should be abolished, as it was doing as much as the former to make things difficult for a battered woman who had killed her abusive partner, having waited until he was off his guard. Although there is certainly truth in this, that does not mean that the government's retention of the loss of self-control requirement was necessarily wrong. This first limb of the loss of self-control defence has an application in a number of contexts when what would otherwise be murder is the result of a fear of serious violence: such as when someone lashes out with lethal intent when attacked in a public house brawl, or when an armed police officer shoots a man dead without warning because the officer believes that the man may be threatening him. In both such cases, a jury may be reluctant to acquit completely on the grounds of self-defence, but has the option of reducing murder to manslaughter under the first limb of the defence. In such cases, it is much more understandable that the law would be reluctant even to see murder reduced to manslaughter, unless the killer could say, as part of the excusatory explanation for his or her reaction, that he or she had lost self-control.[109]

(iii) The objective requirement and its modification:

Should D by some miracle surmount the hurdles to pleading loss of self-control just discussed, there is still one hurdle left to jump. That is the test set out in s. 54(1)(c), reflecting a requirement of the old common law, alluded to in the previous version of s. 3 of the 1957 Act. The test—formally, part of the qualifying trigger for the defence—is whether someone of D's sex and age, with a normal degree of tolerance and self-restraint, and in D's circumstances, **(p. 265)** might have reacted in the same or in a similar way. Added to this, in s. 54(3), is an elaboration of the meaning of D's ‘circumstances’:

> [T]he reference to 'the circumstances of D' is a reference to all of D's circumstances other than those whose only relevance to D's conduct is that they bear on D's general capacity for tolerance or self-restraint.

It is unclear how much is really added by these two provisions, given that the loss of self-control defence cannot come into play, in any event, unless one of the limbs of the defence is satisfied, and the disqualifying triggers (a 'considered revenge' motive; self-induced loss of self-control; reliance solely on sexual infidelity, and so forth) do not apply. If, for example, under the second limb of the defence, someone is found to have intentionally killed having lost control in the face of an exceptionally grave provocation that gave them a justifiable sense of being seriously wronged, is that not just another way of saying precisely that, in the circumstances, a normal person in D's position might indeed have acted in the same or in a similar way?[110] In fact there may be some room for these provisions to have an impact. An example is where, at the time of the killing, D occupied a role that demanded of him or her greater self-restraint than an ordinary member of the public might be expected to show. A case in point might be where D, a police officer from an ethnic minority seeking to control a violent crowd, is subjected to continued pushing and shoving, coupled with continuous racist abuse. After an hour of this treatment, the officer loses self-control, knocks over a demonstrator and stamps on his head, killing him. In such a case, the first limb of the defence might be satisfied (exceptionally grave provocation giving D a justifiable sense of having been seriously wronged). However, a jury might nonetheless find that a person with a normal degree of tolerance and self-restraint *who was a police officer on crowd-control duty* (these being 'the circumstances of D') would not have reacted in the same or in a similar way.[111]

As indicated above, under the pre-2009 law, the higher courts took upon themselves the task of explaining to the jury the characteristics of the 'reasonable man' (as it was then termed), but continually disagreed amongst themselves over which characteristics were and which were not attributable to the 'reasonable man'. Indeed, following the enactment of the Homicide Act 1957 the House of Lords or Privy Council considered some aspect of the provocation defence (and this is not a complete list) in 1968, 1973, 1978, 1996 (twice), 1997, 2001, and 2005, with the Court of Appeal considering it in many more cases. In few areas (with the exception of complicity, dealt with in Chapter 10) can Dickens' characterization of Chancery lawyers have been more **(p. 266)** appropriate in the criminal law: 'some score of members of the High Court … mistily engaged in one of the ten thousand stages of an endless cause, tripping one another up on slippery precedents, groping knee-deep in technicalities, running their goat-hair and horse-hair warded heads against walls of words…'.[112] It would not be appropriate to go through those 'slippery precedents' now that s. 54(1)(c) replaces them, as (in broad terms) that provision aimed to set the law as described in *Attorney-General for Jersey* v *Holley*[113] on a statutory footing.

What s. 54(1)(c) seeks to ensure is that the jury does not take into account, in D's favour, some feature of his or her psychological make-up that makes him or her prone to explode into violent rage in circumstances where ordinary people would have kept their tempers in check, or would have responded in a less violent (or non-violent) way. For example, D may be someone for whom jealousy leads to extreme anger,[114] who may suffer from Intermittent Explosive Disorder, or who may be suffering from a tumour affecting the brain such that his or her reactions to stress have become unpredictable or uncontrollable (or both).[115] Whether or

not any of these factors are D's 'fault', they are not to be taken into account by the jury. This is because they affect the level of restraint that can be expected of D in general; they do *not* necessarily relate to the gravity of the provocation or to the seriousness of the violence feared on the occasion in question. Where D simply struggles to—or cannot—control him or herself in the way that a person of ordinary tolerance and self-restraint should do, and it is that—rather than the gravity of the provocation or a fear of serious violence—which explains his or her loss of self-control and lethal use of violence, the right plea is diminished responsibility, and not loss of self-control.

This explanation of s. 54(1)(c) is something of an over-simplification. For example, even the person of ordinary tolerance and self-restraint may be affected by irritability or tiredness in such a way that they are more likely to 'fly off the handle'. In such a case, D's irritability or tiredness may well form part of the 'circumstances of D' that are relevant to judging the possible reaction of a person of ordinary tolerance and self-restraint, for the purposes of s. 54(3). However, it is hard to see how that will help D much, if his or her violent reaction was not in response to an exceptionally grave provocation or a fear of serious violence (although it might help to explain, in an appropriate case, why D made a mistake about the provocation or threat offered). Section 54(1)(c) also creates its own exception to the general rule, by stipulating that D's 'sex and age' can affect the level of self-restraint and tolerance to be expected of D in the circumstances. Quite why, for example, D's sex is thought especially likely to affect D's level of tolerance (or, for that matter, her capacity for self-restraint) is something of a mystery. Even if men are, say, generally less racially or religiously tolerant than women,[116] should a jury **(p. 267)** really be making allowances for this? Again, the issue is unlikely to arise, because the need to satisfy the requirements of the first and second limbs (a fear of—objectively—serious violence, or an extremely grave provocation giving S a justifiable sense of being seriously wronged) will tend to mean that reactions attributable to racial stereotyping or religious intolerance will fall at the first hurdle.

(c) Manslaughter by reason of diminished responsibility[117]

General considerations: Diminished responsibility was formerly one of the most frequently used qualified defences to murder, but in recent years the numbers have fallen from eighty per year in the early 1990s to around twenty per year (22 in 2004, for example). Diminished responsibility was introduced into English law only in 1957, in response to long-standing dissatisfaction with the insanity defence. Insanity was, and still is, a complete defence to crime, as we saw in Chapter 5.2, but its confines are narrow, and on a murder charge a verdict of not guilty by reason of insanity requires the court to make a hospital order with restrictions.[118] Diminished responsibility has a wider ambit, but its effect is merely to reduce murder to manslaughter. Moreover, by way of contrast with the defence of loss of self-control, the burden is on the accused to show (on the balance of probabilities) that he or she is suffering from diminished responsibility.[119] The judge then has a discretion in sentencing, and in recent years about half of the cases have resulted in hospital orders without limit of time.[120] The existence of the diminished responsibility defence is one of the reasons for insisting that the loss of self-control defence is insensitive to mental disorders affecting D's levels of tolerance and powers of self-restraint: D must be 'normal' in this respect (s. 54(1)(c)). For, if D is clinically abnormal in this respect (and it is that which explains D's reaction), he or she is free to plead diminished responsibility which, if successful, has the same effect as a plea of loss of self-control in reducing murder to manslaughter.

(p. 268) *The post-2009 law*: The wording with which s. 2 of the Homicide Act 1957 introduced diminished responsibility was generally regarded as unsatisfactory and has now been replaced (by s. 52 of the 2009 Act) with the following provisions:

> **(1)** A person (D) who kills or is a party to the killing of another is not to be convicted of murder if D was suffering from an abnormality of mental functioning which—
>
> **(a)** Arose from a recognized medical condition,
>
> **(b)** Substantially impaired D's ability to do one or more of the things mentioned in subsection (1A), and
>
> **(c)** Provides an explanation for D's acts or omissions in doing or being a party to the killing.
>
> **(1A)** Those things are—
>
> **(a)** To understand the nature of D's conduct;
>
> **(b)** To form a rational judgment;
>
> **(c)** To exercise self-control.
>
> **(1B)** For the purposes of subsection (1C), an abnormality of mental functioning provides an explanation for D's conduct if it causes, or is a significant contributory factor in causing, D to carry out that conduct.

The aim of the reforms was to bring greater clarity of definition to the terms employed to describe diminished responsibility, and to ensure that those terms were capable of adaptation to developing clinical diagnostic practices. Hence, the abnormality of mental functioning from which D suffers must arise from a 'recognized medical condition', where it is understood that, over time, what count as recognized medical conditions may change as knowledge about mental functioning advances.[121] In practice, under the old law, where a diminished responsibility plea was backed by medical evidence, it was simply accepted by the prosecution—meaning that D would be convicted of manslaughter only, without the need for a full trial to go ahead—in 77 per cent of cases. Whether or not there is reason to think that this statistic will alter, in the light of the change of definition of diminished responsibility, and in the light of the new relationship it forms with the loss of self-control defence, is something to be considered when the ingredients of the defence have been analysed.

The nature of the conditions: The notion of an 'abnormality of mental functioning' arising from a 'recognized medical condition' suggests that whether or not D suffers from such a condition is essentially an expert question. It would be inconsistent with the tenor of the legislation, and unfair to D, to leave members of the jury to decide whether or not D's condition meets the criteria if that matter is not in dispute between the experts. The emphasis in the new law is different to the path adopted by the old law, under which an abnormality of mind was said to be 'a state or mind so different from (p. 269) that of ordinary human beings that the reasonable man would term it abnormal'.[122] This was unsatisfactory, not least because it suggests that the state of mind in question must be something not experienced in any form by mentally normal people (schizophrenia, for example); whereas, many abnormalities of mental functioning are

states of mind very familiar—at least in a moderate form—to 'ordinary human beings', such as pathological jealousy or intermittent explosive disorder.[123] However, in cases where experts disagree over whether or not there is an abnormality of medical functioning, or over whether the abnormality stems from a recognized medical condition, the matter will have to go to the jury. Even if this issue is not in dispute, the jury should be told that they are free to decide whether or not D's condition, established on the basis of expert opinion, '*substantially impaired* D's ability to do one or more of the things mentioned in subsection (1A)'. It will also be for the jury to decide whether the abnormality of mental functioning was the cause, or a significant contributory factor in causing, D's condition, although they may be assisted on this issue by expert evidence.[124] Again, these are matters on which D bears the burden of proof on the balance of probabilities.[125]

What kinds of conditions will meet the criteria? In *Byrne*,[126] D strangled and then mutilated a woman after her death. Evidence was given that from an early age Byrne had suffered from extremely strong perverse desires that he found it all-but impossible to control, and it was such a desire that had overwhelmed him when he killed the woman. Such a case would fall within the scope of the defence, because it involves an abnormality of mental functioning substantially impairing D's ability to exercise control over violent impulses, an abnormality recognized as a medical condition. The well-respected Diagnostic and Statistical Manual of Mental Disorders (DSM-4) lists some 16 different kinds of recognized mental disorder, including:

- Disorders Usually First Diagnosed in Infancy, Childhood, or Adolescence
- Delirium, Dementia, and Amnestic and Other Cognitive Disorders
- Mental Disorders Due to a General Medical Condition
- Substance-Related Disorders
- Schizophrenia and Other Psychotic Disorders
- Mood Disorders
- Anxiety Disorders

(p. 270) • Somatoform Disorders

- Dissociative Disorders
- Sexual and Gender Identity Disorders
- Eating Disorders
- Sleep Disorders
- Impulse-Control Disorders Not Elsewhere Classified
- Adjustment Disorders
- Personality Disorders
- Other Conditions That May Be a Focus of Clinical Attention

This is not a list of disorders drawn up for legal purposes, and so not all of these disorders, even if they affected D's conduct, would be capable of substantially impairing D's ability to (s. 52(1)(a)) understand the nature of his or her conduct, to form rational judgment, or to exercise self-control. Even so, the DSM gives an indication of the breadth of expert opinion concerning abnormalities of mental functioning. Certain to be included are the effects of alcohol

dependency,[127] of depressive illnesses resulting from, for example, long-term abuse at the hands of a violent partner,[128] or from the stress of long-term care for a terminally ill relative.[129]

Picking up on the final example, some critics of the new law complained that the 2009 reforms would end the practice of 'benign conspiracy' (allegedly sometimes entered into by the prosecution and the defence, in agreeing not to contest the case) to allow those who had taken a premeditated and rational decision to kill a terminally ill relative (at the latter's request) to plead guilty to manslaughter only.[130] That is a curious objection, since the very fact that the practice could only be sustained by a benign conspiracy shows that the practice was, in fact, inconsistent with the legal requirement for any abnormality of mental functioning arising from the stress of long-term care for the terminally ill person to have a medically recognized origin (to use the modern language of the 2009 law). Excuses for rationally perpetrated euthanasia, whether or not they are partial excuses, should be introduced after open democratic debate on their merits, and not introduced through a back door route created by lawyers manipulating defences that were intended as a humane way of treating only those with medically recognized abnormalities of mental functioning. The irony is that, as the Law Commission was at pains to point out in an almost wholly neglected part of its **(p. 271)** Consultation Paper in the subject,[131] many of those who kill terminally ill relatives following years of stressful long-term care are indeed suffering from such an abnormality of mental functioning that both substantially impairs their judgment and control, and makes a significant contribution to their conduct in killing V; and that can be true whether or not V consented to be killed. We consider this issue further below.

Where a mental disorder has been aggravated by the effects of voluntary intoxication, the pre-2009 law was that the judge should instruct the jury to answer the question, 'Has the defendant satisfied you that, despite the drink, his mental abnormality substantially impaired his mental responsibility for his fatal acts?'[132] This focuses on the 'substantial impairment' element of the partial defence, and the Court of Appeal took the same approach in *Wood*,[133] where the underlying clinical condition was alcohol dependency syndrome and D had also drunk much alcohol. The jury should decide whether the clinical condition 'substantially impaired' D's responsibility, discounting any effects of alcohol consumed voluntarily. In effect, the jury are left to determine how much of D's drinking derived from his alcohol dependency and how much was 'voluntary'. This inevitably involves a good deal of speculation by the jury on which the assistance that expert evidence can provide may be limited. In such cases, it is arguable that evidence of voluntary intoxication should not simply rule out a plea of diminished responsibility, even if the voluntary intoxication made some causal contribution to D's conduct in killing V. This approach is warranted, because the issue of voluntary intoxication is more complicated than when alcohol affects a mentally normal person. Research shows both that alcohol dependency or heavy drinking may generate psychiatric disorders and that, vice versa, those with psychiatric disorders often become alcohol dependent or heavy drinkers: in an effort, for example, to offset the unwanted and unpleasant effects of a disorder.[134] The focus should be on whether or not the abnormality of mental functioning (which may include the lasting effects of excessive drinking over a long period) substantially impaired D's understanding, judgment, or control, and whether that made a significant contribution to D's conduct in killing V.

That brings us to the first decision on diminished responsibility under the new law, in *Dowds*.[135] In that case, D had, whilst heavily intoxicated, killed his partner V with a knife, inflicting some

sixty stab wounds in the process. The evidence suggested that D periodically drank very heavily, but retained control over when he started drinking. In support of his plea of diminished responsibility, D nonetheless claimed that his acute intoxication at the time of the offence was a 'recognized medical condition' for the purposes of the new law, even though the intoxication was voluntary. D relied on a World Health Organization classification of acute intoxication as a medical condition **(p. 272)** (WHO ICD-10). D was convicted and his appeal was dismissed by the Court of Appeal. Hughes LJ said (para. 40) that, even when D is suffering from a recognized medical condition, that is only a necessary element to be satisfied if D is to raise diminished responsibility. The presence of a medically recognized condition will not in and of itself always be sufficient for that purpose. In support of that conclusion. Hughes LJ pointed to the fact that the Dictionary of Scientific Medicine (DSM) itself warns that there is what it refers to as an 'imperfect fit' between clinical diagnosis and legal concepts.[136] By way of example, Hughes LJ highlights the fact that the DSM includes as possible basis for a clinical diagnosis 'unhappiness', 'irritiability and anger', and 'paedophilia', none of which could ever come to be regarded as 'recognized medical conditions' for the purposes of the defence of diminished responsibility (a point made earlier). In Hughes LJ's view, voluntary intoxication, however acute, should be placed in the same category. That is to say, even if it is a recognized medical condition, it is not a medical condition appropriate for recognition in law as capable of giving rise to an abnormality of mental functioning substantially impairing D's ability in the relevant respects.

The Court of Appeal's approach, then, is to admit that acute voluntary intoxication can be a recognized medical condition, but to carve out some space for judicial discretion to rule that not all recognized medical conditions will suffice to bring the diminished responsibility defence into play. As we have just indicated, that approach is consistent with what the DSM itself says about the 'imperfect fit' between clinical and legal analysis. However, even if one puts aside the case of voluntary intoxication as a special case, the approach has the broader potential both to give rise to significant difficulties for trial judges in deciding whether or not to put the defence to the jury in contested cases, and to give rise to tensions between legal and clinical analysis that it was one purpose of the s. 52 reform to reduce. A more radical view of the reform would be that (a) any recognized medical condition is in principle capable of founding a defence of diminished responsibility, (b) that it is D's task to prove (on the balance of probabilities) that the condition gave rise to an abnormality of mental functioning that had the effects s. 52 requires it to have, and (c) that it is the prosecution's task to show the contrary beyond a reasonable doubt. On this radical view, if such an approach means more contested cases in which the prosecution seeks to rebut defence evidence that a recognized medical condition met the conditions of s. 52, then so be it. However, not the least of the problems with the radical view is that it places in jeopardy the prospect of establishing a satisfactory relationship between the defences of diminished responsibility and of loss of self-control.[137]

Pleading loss of self-control and diminished responsibility together: There is nothing to stop D pleading both loss of self-control and diminished responsibility together. One cynical reason for D to take this course is the hope that if, say, the loss of self-control **(p. 273)** that led to the killing was not triggered by very grave provocation, and D was suffering only from a mild form of mental disorder, the jury will nonetheless put these two pieces of evidence together and bring in a manslaughter verdict even though, strictly speaking, that would be a case of adding 2 and 2 together in order to reach the required '5'. This is because if neither the evidence relating to the loss of self-control defence itself, nor the evidence for the diminished

responsibility defence itself, is independently sufficient to satisfy the criteria respectively for each of those defences, the verdict should be murder. There should be no mixing and matching of half-fulfilled criteria on each side to make a 'whole' defence to murder. To that end, a judge should instruct a jury considering both defences to ignore evidence relevant only to one of them, when considering the other.[138] So, suppose that D claims that he reacted with murderous rage to a mildly offensive remark made by V not only because he (D) lost self-control, but also due to the influence on him of a medically recognized abnormality of mental functioning. D calls evidence from a psychiatrist who has examined him to say that D suffers from a mental abnormality that means that he sometimes finds it impossible to control his temper. The judge should tell the jury that this evidence is not relevant to the plea of loss of self-control (other than to show, if need be, that D had in fact lost self-control at the time of the killing). In particular, the psychiatrist's evidence cannot affect (a) whether D 'justifiably' has a sense of being seriously wronged, (b) whether the loss of self-control was attributable to circumstances of an extremely grave character, or (c) whether a person of D's sex and age with a normal degree of tolerance and self-restraint might have reacted as D did. Consequently, we may expect to see a shift in popularity towards diminished responsibility and away from old-style provocation in its newly restricted form as the loss of self-control defence. This is because—financial resources permitting—it is likely to prove easier to find a medical practitioner somewhere in the UK (or, if need be, in the world) willing to give evidence that D suffers from an abnormality of mind stemming from a 'medically recognized condition' that influenced his or her conduct, than it is to fulfil the requirements of the narrow loss of self-control defence.[139] To that end, a 'recognized' medical condition is not necessarily one that a substantial body of medical practitioners would accept as such: it can include, for example, a condition discovered by an individual practitioner who has published the results of his or her own medical research in a peer-reviewed Journal.[140] All this suggests that, in the future, we may see more contested trials than we have been used to on the issue of diminished responsibility.

At a superficial level, the two defences of loss of self-control and diminished responsibility can seem as if they are two sides of a single coin, the former excusing normal **(p. 274)** people, and the latter abnormal people, who—for the reasons specified in each defence—could not be expected to contain an urge to kill. Moreover, they are often raised in similar circumstances: where, for example, a man has killed his partner following an argument or alleged infidelity.[141] However, the appearance is something of an illusion. In each case, the reasons for excusing differ so greatly that, ethically speaking, these defences have little or nothing in common. In cases of loss of self-control, the basis for excuse is that no more could reasonably have been expected of D—any ordinary person might have reacted in that way—although, given the nature of the motive for which D acted (retaliation; revenge-taking), there is not enough in this to warrant a full excuse and hence an acquittal. By contrast, 'reasonableness' plays no part at all in the assessment of D's homicidal conduct in diminished responsibility cases. In effect, D is saying, 'I was only to an extent morally responsible for my actions, and to the extent that I was *not* morally responsible, I should not be judged by the standards of ordinary people at all'. Those acting under the influence of provocation or a fear of violence are 'morally active' (in evaluative control), and hence full morally accountable—if not fully to blame—for their conduct, whereas those acting under diminished responsibility are morally more 'passive' (less capable of evaluative control), and less justly held fully to account for their conduct.[142] Accordingly, the defence of diminished responsibility may have just as clear an application to

cases of, for example, premeditated, sexually motivated, or mass killing as it does to killing in the heat of the moment. Even a homicidal war crime could be reduced to manslaughter if there was evidence that the perpetrator's responsibility was diminished, whereas no amount of provocation could ever excuse—let alone justify—such an act.

The absence of theoretical connection between the two partial defences to murder is an illustration of a broader problem in the law of homicide. Currently, there is little more than a jumble of instances in which murder can be reduced to manslaughter, if one also adds in the curious case of part-completed suicide pact (s. 4 of the Homicide Act 1957), all with their own rationales for existence, none of which is wholly convincing in its own terms.[143] Were the mandatory sentence for murder to be abolished, it would be possible—with the assistance of statutory guidelines if need be—to rid the law of these anomalous excuses and regard the issues (provocation, fear, mental disorder, etc.) as matters of sentence mitigation. Not the least of the benefits of such a scheme would be that it would cease to matter which precise defence pigeonhole D's actions fitted into, with all the current implications that has for the admissibility of evidence (ir)relevant to the defence in question. It would be possible to take account of both diminished responsibility and fear of violence or provocation, depending on the degree to which they had a just bearing on the appropriate sentence. Ironically, under current sentencing guidelines, when D is convicted of murder because the (p. 275) specific defences based on these factors have been rejected by the jury, it is precisely this approach that influences what sentence D receives.[144]

(d) Killing in pursuance of a suicide pact

Section 4 of the Homicide Act 1957 provides that a person who kills another in pursuance of a suicide pact is guilty of manslaughter, not murder. A suicide pact exists where two or more people, each having a settled intention of dying, reach an agreement which has as its object the death of both or all.[145] Some suicide pacts may be regarded as the highest expression of individual autonomy, by means of a mutual exercise of the individuals' rights of self-determination, but the Law Commission reported concern that the majority of cases involve men taking decisions to end the lives of the spouses or partners for whom they are caring.[146] The Criminal Law Revision Committee recommended that killings in pursuance of a suicide pact should be a separate offence, on the ground that the stigma and maximum penalty for manslaughter are inappropriate in these cases.[147] This is a more contentious stance than might at first glance be supposed. In principle, for example, s. 4 would cover the following cases:

> **(A)** a cult leader secures the agreement of all his 300 followers that they will die together with him in a barn that he will set alight. He sets the fire with that intention in mind but, finding it hot, changes his mind and makes his escape while the 300 followers die.
> **(B)** Two terrorists are on the run from the police. They return to their apartment and agree that one will shoot the other dead before shooting himself dead, to avoid the capture and questioning of either. One shoots the other dead, but then changes his mind about killing himself and decides to fight to the death with the pursuing police instead. When the police arrive later he gives up on that intention as well, and allows himself to be arrested without resistance.

An offence dealing with suicide pacts must be up the task of fair labelling in such cases, and it

is strongly arguable that the right label is (at least) manslaughter.[148] Consequently, the Law Commission recommended no change to the law until there is a wider review of 'consensual' and 'mercy' killings. However, it abandoned its earlier proposal that s. 4 should be abolished and all cases dealt with under the partial defence of diminished responsibility if they were to fall outside the scope of murder. This was because there might be cases in which a suicide pact was the product of a rational (p. 276) decision by mentally normal people, and such cases required consideration alongside similar 'ending of life' decisions, rather than being dealt with in isolation:[149]

> Y has terminal cancer and is determined to bring about her own death one way or another. X, Y's husband, does not wish to live on if Y is dead. So, X and Y decide to end both their lives by jumping off a high cliff on to the rocks below. They hold hands at the top of the cliff, count to three in unison, shout, 'Go!', and then jump off. X survives the fall but Y dies.

Were it not for s. 4, X would in theory be guilty of the murder of Y because, with the intention that they should both die, his acts of assistance and encouragement play a causal role in bringing about Y's death, although the law almost always treats such a role in another's death as the specific offence of doing an act capable of encouraging or assisting suicide rather than as murder.[150] Had Y survived instead of X, it would be Y who was guilty of murder or of encouraging/assisting suicide, for identical reasons. Yet, it is perhaps not all that easy to see why X's decision to end both their lives *with Y's agreement* should make such a fundamental difference to the legal outcome. Suppose Y had asked X to push her off the cliff, and X had agreed; but secretly, X always harboured the intention to jump off the cliff immediately afterwards, a decision he did not communicate to Y for fear of causing her even greater distress. In such circumstances, if X jumps off the cliff immediately afterwards and survives, he is nonetheless guilty of the murder of Y and has no defence. Indeed, given that he pushed her off the cliff, there is no case for treating what X did as merely encouraging or assisting suicide. This kind of example illustrates that it would make more sense for the law to consider all forms of 'ending of life' decisions together, when considering how far to extend the scope of defences to murder, rather than permitting only an exception for suicide pact cases that is morally so arbitrary in its range and application. For similar reasons, the relationship between murder and s. 4 manslaughter needs to be considered in the light of the specific offence of encouraging or assisting suicide. For example, why is the latter not manslaughter, if V dies having been influenced by D's encouragement or assistance, with killing in the course of a suicide pact being treated as a separate specific offence instead?

(e) Doing an act capable of assisting or encouraging suicide or attempted suicide

Suicide and attempted suicide ceased to be criminal when the Suicide Act 1961 became law, in recognition of the right to self-determination. However, as indicated at the end of the last section, it is an offence contrary to s. 2(1) of the Suicide Act 1961 if :

> **(a)** Does an act capable of encouraging or assisting the suicide or attempted

suicide of another person, and
(p. 277) **(b)** D's act was intended to encourage or assist suicide or an attempt at suicide.
(1A) The person referred to in subsection (1)(a) need not be a specific person (or class of persons) known to, or identified by, D.
(1B) D may commit an offence under this section whether or not a suicide, or an attempt at suicide, occurs.
(1C) An offence under this section is triable on indictment and a person convicted of such an offence is liable to imprisonment for a term not exceeding 14 years.[151]

This version of the offence is a version modified by s. 59 of the Coroners and Justice Act 2009, although the changes were intended simply to modernize the language of s. 2(1),[152] and clarify the law.[153] It may appear paradoxical to legalize an activity (suicide), but at the same time make it a serious offence to encourage or assist that lawful act. Further, many of the cases governed by s. 2 involve compassionate assistance, where many may think there is little case for prosecuting. However, the rationale for the offence is illustrated by *McShane* (1977),[154] where a woman was convicted of an attempt to counsel her mother's suicide by encouraging her repeatedly to take an overdose, and it was shown that the mother's death would greatly alleviate the defendant's financial problems. There remains a need to protect the vulnerable from persuasion on such a crucial matter as the ending of life. Just because suicide is not a criminal offence does not mean that it has ceased to involve an unjustified harm through the elimination of a human life. That being so, there can be a legitimate case for criminalizing the encouragement or assistance of suicide, and *McShane* is an illustration of the kind of case where it seems justified to employ the deterrent and retributive powers of the criminal law.[155]

The consent of the Director of Public Prosecutions (DPP) is required before a prosecution under s. 2 is commenced, and that has brought under scrutiny the prosecution policy adopted by the DPP in relation to such prosecutions. A number of difficulties have arisen in relation to scope of the offence. For example, suppose someone (V) attempts to kill themselves through an overdose. The emergency services arrive whilst V is still conscious and in need of urgent treatment, but V refuses treatment under any circumstances. It might seem as if to attempt forcibly to treat V would be to assault V, and the courts have confirmed that this is indeed so.[156] However, doctors and the emergency services are under a duty to take positive action to help those in their care, and those needing immediate treatment for whom they have assumed (p. 278) responsibility, meaning that an omission can count as an 'act' for legal purposes. So, do doctors and the emergency services do 'an act capable of … assisting' V to commit suicide by allowing V to die unaided? It would seem that they do not.[157] So, in seeking provide an escape route from the dilemma in which care workers may find themselves, in such situations, the law errs on the side of the right to self-determination and avoids paternalism (seeking to improve someone's prospects even when they are themselves fully capable of deciding where their own best interests lie). It is probably right to do so, in so far as to permit the forcible administering of treatment on a sane and mature adult against their will is likely to be an inhuman and degrading process for that person, and will hence involve a breach of Art. 3 of the European Convention on Human Rights. In some countries, the law has gone further, and does not look unfavourably even on doctors who take positive steps to assist suicide.[158]

That still leaves unclear what policy should be adopted towards the ordinary citizen who seeks to assist,[159] in a variety of circumstances, someone who wishes to die. All prosecutions must pass tests not only of evidential sufficiency, but also of public interest, and it is in relation to the public interest factor in prosecuting s. 2(1) cases that devising prosecution policy is most difficult and controversial. On the one hand, taking it for granted that the criminalization of assisting suicide is the right legal policy in general,[160] there would be a strong public interest in prosecuting someone who set up a commercial operation in the UK to help people end their lives.[161] On the other hand, if a wife simply agrees with her terminally ill husband's request not to give him any more of the medicine he needs to stay alive for the few more days that the medicine can realistically give him, or buys tickets for them both to visit a country where he can be assisted to die, there may—depending on the precise facts—be little or no public interest in a prosecution.

In *R (on the Application of Purdy)* v *DPP*,[162] the applicant sought to compel the DPP to reveal or devise a published policy for prosecuting under s. 2, so that she could make a properly informed decision on whether to ask her husband to assist her to travel abroad to die. The House of Lords agreed with the argument that Art. 8—the right to respect for private and family life—was engaged by the prohibition on s. 2. Even so, Art. 8(2) provides that public authorities may legitimately interfere with respect for private and family life, but only—amongst other things—if the interference is 'in **(p. 279)** accordance with the law'.[163] The prohibition in s. 2 itself is, of course, in accordance with the law. However, the DPP is himself also a 'public authority' seeking to interfere or impinge on a matter of private and family life. In that regard, the House of Lords said that the absence of a published prosecution policy in relation to s. 2, meant that there was a risk that prosecutions would not be 'in accordance with the law', if it was not possible for individuals like Purdy to make highly important personal decisions against a sufficiently clear legal policy background. So, the DPP was obliged to publish a code setting out the factors to be consided in any prosecution decision in relation to s. 2.[164] This argument involves a sleight of hand, because there was never any suggestion that a prosecution would be undertaken other than 'in accordance with the law'.[165] It is true that forcing the DPP to draw up a comprehensive prosecution policy in relation to s. 2 would assist citizens the better to assess the risk that they might be prosecuted if they took certain steps. However, that argument might equally apply to cases in which someone is contemplating committing, assisting or encouraging, or conspiring to commit euthanasia (murder, in English law).[166] Moreover, the issuing of official guidelines in relation to the prosecution of a particular offence (s. 2, in this instance) opens up the prospect of secondary litigation testing whether, in any allegedly borderline case, the guidance had been correctly followed. That could lead to prosecutions being stayed for lengthy periods whilst the secondary litigation is conducted to answer the point, or to convictions being quashed long after the event, on procedural fairness grounds that would have no application to crimes closely analogous to assisting suicide (where there was no official guidance), such as euthanasia. Perhaps the answer is that all serious crimes should come with comprehensive official guidance on prosecution policy, whose implementation in any individual case can be challenged by the individual prosecuted or convicted (or perhaps also by a third party, such as Dignity in Dying). That would take the law into a new era in which public law principles of judicial review were potentially as important as criminal law principles to the outcome of cases, something that English law has witnessed in private litigation against the State.[167] That might not be such a bad thing, although it would draw the courts into making authoritative decisions not only on the scope of the substantive

law (as they have always done), but now also on the boundaries within which a decision based on a pre-announced policy will be regarded as reasonable, and as having taken into account relevant—and disregarded irrelevant—considerations. Inevitably, there (p. 280) would be tensions between judicial interventions of this kind, and the broader position so far as the accountability of the DPP on policy matters is concerned: the DPP is answerable politically, on policy questions, to the Attorney General (a member of Parliament).

Amongst the factors listed as being relevant to a prosecution decision are:

In favour of prosecution:

1. The would-be suicide is under 18 years of age;
2. The suspect not being wholly motivated by compassion;
3. The suspect being unknown personally to the would-be suicide, and encouraging or assisting through, for example, the provision of specific information through website material;
4. The suspect being paid by the would-be suicide, or providing assistance to more than one person;
5. The suspect acting in his or her capacity as a health professional;

Against prosecution:

1. The suspect was wholly motivated by compassion;
2. The assistance or encouragement was only minor;
3. The suspect had sought to dissuade the would-be suicide, and participated only reluctantly;
4. The suspect reported the would-be suicide's death and co-operated fully with the police.

These factors span across excusatory, justificatory, and after-the-fact mitigating features of a case, but in a distinctive way. In D's favour, the factors are sensitive to excusatory features such as a compassionate motive or only reluctant participation, and to 'good citizenship' features such as reporting the death to, and co-operating with, the authorities. On the other hand, against D, the factors are sensitive to whether someone acts under a false cloak of justification (in his or her capacity as a professional, as a commercial provider, or as a self-appointed actor 'in the public interest'). The logic of this approach is that it is precisely in those cases where someone sets themselves up as giving help or guidance in opposition to the law that a prosecution is desirable to underline the authority of the law itself.[168] By contrast, where someone acts from compassion, or only reluctantly (given the law's demands), whilst there is still a case for prosecution—after all, even reluctant murderers or thieves are still murderers or thieves—the public interest in the prosecution may be less compelling.

(p. 281) (f) 'Mercy' Killing

This concept has no special legal significance in English criminal law. Where there is a clear case of mercy killing by a doctor, he or she is likely to avoid prosecution or to benefit from Devlin J's concession to good motive in the *Adams* case.[169] Under the old law, the usual response to a 'genuine' case involving a non-professional defendant is that 'legal and medical consciences are stretched to bring about a verdict of manslaughter by diminished

responsibility'.[170] In Mackay's study of 157 cases in which diminished responsibility was raised, it seems that six were probably cases of mercy killing.[171] Practitioners seemed to accept that worthy cases of mercy killing should be eased into diminished responsibility, but this informal approach provides the defendant with no legal basis for a defence—he or she is truly at the mercy of the psychiatrists, the prosecutor, and the judge.[172] The decision of the House of Lords in the *Purdy* case (discussed in section (d)) to force the DPP to issue guidelines on prosecution policy in relation to the offence of assisting suicide seems equally significant in relation to all these 'manoeuvres' to escape the full force of the law of murder. Time will tell whether the judges see sufficient force in the analogies to prompt the issuing of yet more official guidance on prosecution policy in this difficult area.

The Criminal Law Revision Committee (CLRC) regarded the bending of the law as unsatisfactory, and we have seen—in relation to diminished responsibility—that it may no longer be possible to engage in it in quite the same way under the post-2009 law.[173] The CLRC tentatively proposed a new offence of mercy killing where a person, out of compassion, unlawfully kills another who is, or is believed by him to be, permanently helpless or in great pain. The proposal attracted strong opposition, some arguing that it might withdraw legal protection from the weak and vulnerable, others arguing that the fundamental ethical problems could not be satisfactorily resolved by legal definition. In respect of doctors, some flexibility is achieved through such distinctions as that between bringing about a patient's death through omission (which may be lawful) and (p. 282) bringing it about by a positive act (which is not),[174] and between intending to cause death and intending to relieve pain while knowingly accelerating death.[175] A 'blind eye' may be turned to the practices of some doctors. But doctors cannot be assured that a 'blind eye' will be turned, and relatives and friends may be exposed to the strict law. In terms of protection for the vulnerable,[176] the chief difference between the present system and the CLRC's proposed offence is that the latter had a maximum penalty of two years' imprisonment, whereas life imprisonment is now available even where there is a conviction for manslaughter on grounds of diminished responsibility. The Law Commission concluded that a separate review and consultation on 'consensual' and 'mercy' killings would be necessary before well-founded proposals could be made.

(g) Conclusion: the murder—manslaughter boundary

In this section we have been examining the partial defences which mark out cases where, despite the presence of the mental element for murder, culpability is thought to be sufficiently reduced to warrant a reduction in the class of offence. Our discussion has taken a broad view of partial defences, commenting also on some possible defences which are not (yet) accepted in English law. Various reasons have been advanced for recognizing partial defences to murder. Some regard the mandatory penalty for murder as the chief, even the sole, reason for these doctrines. However, whilst highly significant, the mandatory penalty is not the only argument for partial defences. A key issue is the proper legal classification of an offence which contains strong exculpatory features: should killings influenced by diminished responsibility really be treated as cases of murder, whether or not the judge has flexibility on sentence? The Law Commission found strong support for the murder–manslaughter distinction, and for the view that partial defences should have the effect of reducing the crime from the most heinous to something lesser.[177] Worldwide, the label 'murder' (or its equivalent), and the stigma thought to accompany it, are very widely reserved for the most heinous group of killings,[178] with lesser forms of homicide classified differently where the culpability is significantly

lower.[179]

The Law Commission recommended a three-tier structure for the law of homicide which includes two degrees of murder (first degree murder, second degree murder) and (p. 283) manslaughter.[180] Assuming—until we examine the matter in detail—that the scope of manslaughter corresponds roughly with the existing law of involuntary manslaughter, the Law Commission's recommendations would have three grades of conviction and therefore three thresholds to consider. To distinguish between first and second degree murder on the basis of the existence of an intent to kill or an intent to cause serious injury with an awareness of a serious risk of causing death may be acceptable, but it would focus much argument on the boundaries of 'serious injury' and of 'serious risk'. Similarly, the proposal that cases of intention to cause injury or fear or risk of injury with an awareness of a serious risk of causing death should qualify for conviction of second degree murder may be acceptable, but it will lead to much argument over the boundaries of 'injury' and of 'serious risk'.[181] Under the Law Commission's revised structure, the partial defences would reduce first degree murder to second degree murder, rather than from murder to manslaughter as under the current structure. The government chose not to explore further this three-tier structure for the law of homicide.

Arguments in favour of some of the partial defences have been set out above. Since it is possible that more than one defence might be raised in each murder case, sometimes in combination with a defence of lack of intent, or self-defence, a system of criminal law which offers a number of partial defences to murder risks undue complication and confusion in contested cases.[182] There is a risk—albeit small—that a jury may be divided over which partial defence applies, if any, on particular facts, leading to a situation in which no clear verdict can be reached. On the other hand, one merit of separate partial defences is that they focus the evidence and the legal argument, giving the jury (in contested cases) an opportunity to assess the particular arguments for partial exculpation. The challenges posed by having separate but closely allied defences, such as loss of control and diminished responsibility, could be overcome—as they are in some US states—by merging the two into a partial defence of 'extreme emotional disturbance', following the lead of the Model Penal Code.[183] This might encompass all those partial defences with an element of excuse in them. A provoked loss of self-control could fall within this new doctrine, as could diminished responsibility, although a general defence of mental disorder may be a better way of labelling and dealing with cases of clinical mental disorder. Cases now treated as infanticide often involve extreme emotional disturbance, as do mercy killings (although not those performed by professionals or commercial providers), suicide pacts, and cases of duress. One advantage of this (p. 284) amalgamation might be that there would be less potential for the jury to become confused, and yet the jury would still be empowered to reduce murder to manslaughter in appropriate cases. One disadvantage of the change might be that the more precise moral distinctions currently incorporated within the law would become submerged within the sentencing discretion, where the signposts are less clear and the arguments less structured.

A variant on this approach, a version of which is to be found under Art. 345 of the French Penal Code, is to give the jury in any murder case the right to find 'extenuating circumstances', which would mean—were it to be introduced in English law—that the judge would be free to pass an appropriate sentence rather than having to impose the mandatory life penalty. A sophisticated version of this was put forward as an amendment in the House of

Lords during the debate that preceded the 2009 Act, but it was not adopted. It read:

> **56:** Before Clause 46, insert the following new Clause—"Murder: extenuating circumstances
>
> **(1)** In a trial for murder the trial judge may in the course of his summing up direct the jury that if they are satisfied that the defendant is guilty of murder, but are of the opinion that there were extenuating circumstances, they may on returning their verdict add a rider to that effect.
> **(2)** The judge may not give such a direction unless there is evidence on which a reasonable jury might so find.
> **(3)** Where the jury has so found, the judge shall not be obliged to pass a sentence of life imprisonment but may pass such other sentence as he considers appropriate having regard to any extenuating circumstances found by the jury.
> **(4)** If the judge passes a sentence other than a sentence of life imprisonment, he shall be obliged to state his reasons.
> **(5)** If it appears to the Attorney General that the sentence so passed is unduly lenient he may refer it to the Court of Appeal under section 36 of the Criminal Justice Act 1988 (c. 33) (reviews of sentencing).[184]

This would be a highly sophisticated means of dealing with excusatory claims in homicide cases, although it is less clear that it would operate in a fair way when it is mental disorder that is the basis of the plea of extenuating circumstances. Juries are prone to find that horrific killings deserve to be treated as murder irrespective of the severity of any mental disorder that led the killer to do the acts in question. That is not fair to the killer whatever we may think of his or her acts, and does not ensure that he is treated more 'severely' in any event: prisoners with mental disorders may simply be transferred to hospitals for treatment.

(p. 285) It is arguable that both partial defences and 'extenuating circumstances' provisions only exist because legislatures in many countries have always wished to underpin the supposed uniqueness of murder, as a crime, with a unique (meaning uniquely severe) sentencing system to match, requiring a complex system for ensuring that at least some cases can fall down into a lesser (and less severely treated) category of homicide. Another alternative, then, would be to preserve the distinction between murder and manslaughter—but making it depend solely on the nature of the offender's fault element—and underpin this with separate but overlapping sentencing regimes for each offence. So, murder might involve a starting point of (say) fifteen years' imprisonment, going up to life imprisonment, whereas manslaughter might involve complete discretion over sentences up to a maximum of twenty years' imprisonment.[185]

7.5 'Involuntary manslaughter'

The category of killings which has come to be known as involuntary manslaughter has nothing to do with involuntariness, properly so-called. These are not cases where the accused has caused death while in an involuntary state.[186] They are cases where death has been caused

with insufficient fault to justify labelling it as murder, but with sufficient fault for a manslaughter verdict. The word ‘involuntary’ is therefore used merely to distinguish these killings from ones which have the necessary intent for murder but which are reduced to manslaughter by one of the doctrines just considered, such as loss of self-control or diminished responsibility. The legal debate in involuntary manslaughter is over the lower threshold of homicide liability—where to draw the line between manslaughter and cases of death by misfortune which are not serious enough to deserve a manslaughter conviction.

There are now three forms of involuntary manslaughter—two at common law (manslaughter by unlawful and dangerous act, manslaughter by gross negligence) and a statutory addition, corporate manslaughter. These three offences raise some deep issues of general principle. For example, manslaughter by unlawful and dangerous act is a species of constructive liability, which was criticized in Chapters 3.6(r) and 5.4(b). In none of the cases of involuntary manslaughter is death or grievous bodily harm intended. Can constructive liability be justified by reference to the magnitude of the harm resulting, i.e. death? Or would it be fairer to convict the wrongdoer of a lesser offence, thus ignoring the chance result of death occurring? Consider this example:

> D is arguing with V over whether V took D's place in the queue. V insults D, and D punches V in the stomach. V falls over, hits his head, and dies.

(p. 286) In law, so long as D is shown to have caused V's death, D commits manslaughter by unlawful and dangerous act in this example. The risk that V might die from D's punch is not relevant to the question of whether D is guilty of the crime. It is sufficient, as we shall see, that D commits the offence of assault (an act causing or posing a danger of ‘some harm’), and that the assault causes death.[187]

The other two forms of involuntary manslaughter are based on liability for negligence, albeit gross negligence: as we saw in Chapter 5.5(f), this is regarded as insufficient for liability for most serious offences.[188] Is it right that liability for the second most heinous crime in English law, which carries a maximum penalty of life imprisonment, should be satisfied by this relatively low grade of fault?[189] These questions will be discussed in more detail once the elements of the offence have been outlined.

(a) Manslaughter by unlawful and dangerous act

This species of involuntary manslaughter is based upon constructive liability. In broad terms, the law constructs liability out of the lesser crime which D was committing, and which happened to cause death. In fact, the courts have progressively narrowed this form of manslaughter over the last century or so:[190] there was a time when the mere commission of a tort or civil wrong sufficed as the ‘unlawful act’, and when there was no additional requirement of ‘dangerousness’ to be satisfied. What the prosecution must now prove is that D was committing a crime (not being a crime of negligence or a crime of omission), that in committing this crime he caused V's death, and that what he did when committing this crime was objectively dangerous. Let us examine each of these requirements in turn.

First, D must have been committing a crime. In many cases the crime which constitutes the

'unlawful act' will be a battery or an assault occasioning actual bodily harm, arising from a push, a punch, or a kick. The prosecution must establish that all the elements of the crime relied upon as the unlawful act were present: to this extent a mental element is required for this form of manslaughter, and so in assault or battery this would be the mental elements of intent or recklessness. This point had been overlooked by the trial judge in *Lamb* (1967),[191] in assuming that an assault had taken place when two young men were joking with a revolver, without noting that fear was neither caused nor intended to be caused.[192] The point appears to have been overlooked by all the courts, including the House of Lords, in *Newbury and Jones* (1977):[193] two boys **(p. 287)** caused the death of a railwayman by pushing a paving stone off a railway bridge on to a train below, but none of the judges identified the precise crime which constituted the 'unlawful act'. No doubt the boys' act was a crime (a form of criminal damage, or a specific railway offence), and so this case does not call into question the proposition that all the elements of the crime relied upon must be established. In *Dhaliwal* (2006)[194] D had subjected V to a long course of abuse, including physical assaults. One evening he abused her again, striking her once, and she subsequently committed suicide. The Court of Appeal quashed the manslaughter conviction, on the ground that V's severe emotional trauma caused by D's long course of abuse was not a recognized psychiatric condition and therefore not 'bodily harm'. Thus the abuse was not an unlawful act.

The 'unlawful act' requirement also means that D must not have any defence to the crime relied upon. Intoxication would supply a defence to a crime of specific intent in this context,[195] but in most cases the prosecution will rely on a crime of basic intent or recklessness and therefore intoxication would be no defence.[196] In a case where the prosecution relies on assault or battery as the 'unlawful act' and D claims that it was a justifiable use of force, the court must be satisfied beyond reasonable doubt that the force was not justified if it is to proceed to a manslaughter conviction.[197]

There appear to be two types of crime which will not suffice as the unlawful act—crimes of negligence and crimes of omission. The reasons for excluding crimes of negligence were stated in *Andrews* v *DPP* (1937),[198] where a driver had killed a pedestrian whilst overtaking another car. There was little dispute that D had committed the offence of dangerous driving, but did that automatically make him guilty of manslaughter when death resulted? The House of Lords held that it did not: since the essence of dangerous driving was negligence, a driver should only be convicted of manslaughter if his driving was so bad as to amount to the gross negligence required under the second head of involuntary manslaughter (see below). Whether or not the decision was motivated by tenderness towards motorists is hard to tell, but there is certainly some logic in keeping offences of negligence out of the 'unlawful act' doctrine when a separate head of manslaughter by gross negligence exists. The logic of the second exception is less evident, and cases of omission have not always been treated differently. In *Senior* (1899)[199] a man who belonged to a religious sect called the Peculiar People refused to call a doctor to his child, who subsequently died; he was held guilty of manslaughter on the ground that he had committed an unlawful act (wilful neglect of the child) which caused death. However, this very reasoning was abjured in *Lowe* (1973),[200] where D failed to ensure that medical help was summoned to his child, and **(p. 288)** it died. The Court of Appeal held that a manslaughter verdict would not necessarily follow from a conviction for wilful neglect:

> if I strike a child in a manner likely to cause harm it is right that if the child dies I may be

> charged with manslaughter. If, however, I omit to do something with the result that it suffers injury to health which results in death, we think that a charge of manslaughter should not be an inevitable consequence, even if the omission is deliberate.

This passage suggests that the law should, and does, draw a distinction between the blameworthiness of acts and omissions, even where the omission is deliberate. Yet the connection between withholding medical aid and subsequent death is surely closer than that between striking a child once and subsequent death. The father's duty in *Senior* and in *Lowe* is manifest and incontrovertible. If the 'unlawful act' doctrine is thought sound, these cases should fall squarely within it. If the doctrine is thought unsound, it should be abolished. This manifestation of the distinction between acts and omissions is morally untenable.[201]

Once it has been established that D was committing a criminal offence, the second step is to establish that this caused the death. In most cases of battery or actual bodily harm the causal connection will be plain, but cases involving drugs have presented difficulties. In *Kennedy (No 2)*[202] D passed a syringe containing heroin to V, who injected himself and later died. The Court of Appeal upheld D's conviction for manslaughter, on the basis that the unlawful act was causing a noxious substance to be taken by V,[203] and that D was acting in concert with V and therefore bore joint responsibility for the offence. However, the House of Lords overruled this decision,[204] and re-affirmed the principle that a voluntary act (i.e. V's self-administration of the drugs) breaks the causal chain and prevents D from bearing responsibility for the death.

The third requirement is that the defendant's conduct in committing the crime must have been objectively dangerous. This was seen as a slight restriction of the doctrine when it was imposed in *Church* (1966),[205] where the Court held that 'the unlawful act must be such as all sober and reasonable people would inevitably recognize must subject the other person to, at least, the risk of some harm resulting therefrom, albeit not serious harm'. The House of Lords has declined to narrow this test by requiring that D recognized the risk.[206] The test remains largely objective, but not entirely so. The dangers inherent in the situation should be judged on the basis of a reasonable person in that position, endowed with D's knowledge of the surrounding circumstances. Thus an ordinary person who burgled the house of an elderly resident would realize the possible dangers as **(p. 289)** soon as the age and frailty of the householder became apparent,[207] whereas the ordinary person would not know (if D did not know) that an apparently healthy girl of 15 had a weak heart.[208] However, the reasonable person does not make unreasonable mistakes, and so the mistake of D who carelessly loaded a gun with a live cartridge thinking that it was blank was not taken into account.[209] One element of the *Church* test—'some harm … albeit not serious harm'—has been construed restrictively. In *Dawson* (1985) D, wearing a mask and carrying a pickaxe handle, approached a petrol-station attendant and demanded money; D fled when the attendant pressed the alarm bell, but the attendant then suffered a heart attack and died. The Court of Appeal held that the unlawful act would be regarded as 'dangerous' only if it was likely to cause physical harm, not if mere emotional shock (unaccompanied by physical harm) was foreseeable. The manslaughter conviction was quashed, partly because the trial judge had given the impression that conduct likely to produce emotional disturbance would be sufficient.[210]

Both the elements of 'unlawfulness' and 'dangerousness' in this form of manslaughter can be criticized. One important criticism is that these elements together fail to identify sufficiently

clearly conduct that is sufficiently blameworthy to justify conviction for manslaughter, but is not in essence conduct where negligence as to unforeseen consequences plays the crucial role in determining blamworthiness. For, as we saw just now in the discussion of *Andrews* v *DPP*, where negligence is playing that role it should ordinarily not be sufficient to justify liability for manslaughter unless it amounts to *gross* negligence in breach of a duty of care not to cause death (a basis for manslaughter discussed in the next section). By contrast, in French law, the focus in the equivalent offence is on neither the unlawfulness of conduct, as such, nor on the danger of minor harm that it poses. Instead, Art. 222-7 says simply that, 'acts of violence causing an unintended death' may be punished by up to fifteen years' imprisonment.[211]

(b) Manslaughter by gross negligence

This second variety of 'involuntary' manslaughter has suffered no fewer changes of direction than the first. Gross negligence became well established as a head of manslaughter in the nineteenth century, and then all but disappeared from the law in the 1980s. Thus in *Finney* (1874),[212] where an attendant at a mental hospital caused the death of a patient by releasing a flow of boiling water into a bath, the test was whether he had been grossly negligent. In *Bateman* (1925),[213] where a doctor had attended the confinement of a woman who died whilst giving birth, the Court of Criminal Appeal held that there must be negligence over and above that which is sufficient to establish **(p. 290)** civil liability, and which shows 'such disregard for the life and safety of others' as to deserve punishment. This test was approved by the House of Lords in *Andrews* v *DPP* (1937).[214] In *Lamb* (1967)[215] two young men were joking with a gun; D pointed it at V and pulled the trigger, believing that it would not fire because neither bullet was opposite the barrel. The gun was a revolver, however, and it did fire, killing V. The Court of Appeal held that D might properly be convicted if his belief that there was no danger of the gun firing had been formed in a criminally negligent way.

The beginnings of a change of direction appeared in *Stone and Dobinson* (1977),[216] where two people were convicted of manslaughter for allowing a sick relative, whom they had permitted to live in their house, to die without medical attention. The Court of Appeal's grounds for finding a duty of care in this case are scrutinized elsewhere.[217] The fault element required was expressed as recklessness, and defined thus: 'a reckless disregard of danger to the health and welfare of the infirm person. Mere inadvertence is not enough. The defendant must be proved to have been indifferent to an obvious risk of injury to health, or actually to have foreseen the risk but to have determined nevertheless to run it.' This passage contrasted 'mere inadvertence' with 'indifference to an obvious risk', perhaps foreshadowing the change that was about to take place. In the 1980s it was the concept of recklessness, in the *Caldwell* sense,[218] that came to dominate this variety of manslaughter. Both the House of Lords in *Seymour*[219] and the Privy Council in *Kong Cheuk Kwan*[220] propounded this as the proper test, and it was widely assumed that manslaughter by gross negligence had been absorbed into and replaced by reckless manslaughter.

In *Adomako* (1995)[221] the House of Lords re-established manslaughter by gross negligence, and jettisoned manslaughter by *Caldwell* recklessness. Lord Mackay held that manslaughter by gross negligence requires the prosecution to prove (i) that D was in breach of a duty of care towards the victim, (ii) that the breach of duty caused the victim's death, and (iii) that the breach of duty amounted to gross negligence.

What determines the existence of a duty? Lord Mackay took the view that this was simply a matter of consulting the law of tort, and some decisions can be thus explained. Certain duty situations are well established, such as parent–child and doctor–patient. Others have been recognized in previous decisions: there are the omissions cases where D has a contractual duty to ensure safety,[222] and where D was initially responsible for creating a hazardous situation.[223] New duty-situations may be recognized, as in *R* v *West London Coroner, ex p Gray* (1988),[224] where the Divisional Court recognized that police officers have a duty of care towards persons they arrest, particularly persons who are intoxicated. In *Prentice* (1994)[225] the Court of Appeal recognized the duty of an **(p. 291)** electrician to leave the house safe for the householder who employed him. A company has a duty to ensure the health and safety of its employees and of others affected by its activities,[226] for example. More recently, interest has focused on the criminal law's recognition of duties beyond those of the law of torts. This is not a new phenomenon, because the reasons adduced to support a duty to care for a sick relative in *Stone and Dobinson* (e.g. blood relationship, guest in house) remain controversial. In *Wacker* (2003)[227] D was involved in a plan to bring sixty illegal immigrants into the UK in a container on his lorry, and fifty-eight of them died from suffocation. The point was taken that, since the sixty would-be immigrants had concurred in the plan, D did not have an enforceable duty of care towards them because of their voluntary involvement in the illegality. The Court of Appeal responded that, while this may be the situation in the law of tort, the criminal law has the wider function of protecting the public and it is therefore not subject to the same restrictions as the law of tort. In *Willoughby* (2005)[228] D asked V to come to a disused public house that D owned and to help him set fire to it with petrol. The ensuing fire killed V and injured D. The Court of Appeal held that D was rightly convicted of the manslaughter of V, as well as the offence of arson endangering life, because D owed a duty to V. The Court held that the trial judge had been wrong to hold that the duty arose simply by virtue of D's ownership of the pub, but held that the duty stemmed from D's recruiting V to help and assigning him the dangerous task of spreading the petrol. As in *Wacker*, the effect is to go beyond duty-situations recognized by the law of negligence and to impose on D a duty towards people who are willing participants in the same enterprise. The decision in *Willoughby* recognizes that the existence of a duty is a question of law. But, in the absence of criteria for determining duty-situations,[229] this appears to be common law decision-making at its retrospective worst.

It is in a way understandable that the courts should wish to avoid tying the concept of duty in the law of criminal negligence to the concept as it is currently understood in the law of tortious negligence. The duty concept has evolved in tort to reflect considerations concerned with monetary compensation of one private citizen for damage done by another (or by the state or one of its agents) that have no direct application in the substantive criminal law. So, for example, it can be a relevant consideration limiting the duty of care in tort that D might—if a duty were imposed—be exposed in a disproportionate way to an unlimited liability to compensate to an unlimited class of persons; but that concern is not relevant in the criminal law.[230] Moreover, in an ideal world, criminal trials would not be delayed (or followed) by lengthy secondary **(p. 292)** litigation over whether a duty of care arose in law, in the way that this heavily litigated question has pre-occupied civil courts for over a century. Accordingly, the criminal courts have settled for a simpler position, involving a two-step process: (a) the judge rules whether, as a matter of law, D's relationship with V was capable of giving rise to a duty, and if the ruling is that the relationship may involve in law a duty, then (b) it is for the jury to decide whether that duty arose on the facts of the case before them.

Much simpler though this approach may be, it sacrifices a great deal in point of certainty, in that it will be difficult for an ordinary person to know in advance when a duty of care will arise, and therefore whether they must do or not do certain things to avoid another's death if they are to escape criminal liability for manslaughter. A good example of the kind of retrospective lawmaking to which this approach can lead is to be found in *Evans*.[231] D had given her 16-year-old half-sister heroin at home, even though her sister was a recovering addict. V self-injected, and then began to show clear symptoms of having overdosed. D and her mother appreciated that there was a danger to V's health, but were afraid of getting into trouble if they called the emergency services. Consequently, they simply put V to bed and checked on her periodically, sleeping in the same room as her. By the morning, V had died from heroin poisoning. D was convicted of manslaughter and appealed, but the Court of Appeal upheld her conviction. It did so, however, not in virtue of D having supplied V with the heroin in the first place, but on the basis that, having *contributed* (by that act of supply) to the creation of a situation in which there was a risk of V's death, she had a duty to seek to rectify it by taking reasonable steps, and in the circumstances breached that duty in a grossly negligent way through failing to summon help before V died. This finding involved an extension to the *Miller*[232] doctrine that the unjustified creation of a dangerous situation may lead to a duty to take reasonable steps to eliminate the danger (in that case, the danger posed by letting a cigarette fall and set fire to the room). The extension comes about because it was V who herself created the danger of death by self-injecting with heroin; D merely assisted in the creation of that danger by V. Small extension to the *Miller* doctrine though it might seem, it does involve judicial extension of the ambit of criminal liability for manslaughter through case by case development. This is unsatisfactory, in that in the controversial area of dangerous drug-taking, the issues ought to be addressed through a proper consultative process that it is beyond the courts to undertake before they extend the law.[233] In French law, a combination of Art. 221-6 and Art. 121-3 provides for just the kind of situation encountered in *Evans*. By Art. 221-6, the causing of death by negligence is an offence punishable by up to three years' imprisonment, and by Art. 121-3, that offence can be committed in the following circumstances:

> natural persons who have not directly contributed to causing the damage, but who have created or contributed to create the situation which allowed the damage to happen who **(p. 293)** failed to take steps enabling it to be avoided, are criminally liable where it is shown that they have … committed a specified piece of misconduct which exposed another person to a particularly serious risk of which they must have been aware.

As a matter of doctrine, a less convoluted route to conviction in *Evans* might have been to say that D's supply of the heroin to V was a grossly negligent act that was itself still an operating cause of V's death. It was still an operating cause, in that—being only 16—V's decision to self-inject a controlled drug was not adequately free and informed, and hence did not break the chain of causation from D's supply; only self-injection by someone 18 years old or older (in full knowledge of the facts) would adequately meet the 'free, deliberate, and informed' criterion and hence break the chain of causation.[234] Even taking that course would, though, involve an extension of the scope of the law.

Once it is established that there was a duty, that it was breached, and that this caused the

death, there is the question of the terms in which the test of gross negligence is to be put to the jury. Lord Mackay LC in *Adomako* held that gross negligence depends:

> on the seriousness of the breach of duty committed by the defendant in all the circumstances in which he was placed when it occurred and whether, having regard to the risk of death involved, the conduct of the defendant was so bad in all the circumstances as to amount in the jury's judgment to a criminal act or omission.[235]

Lord Taylor CJ in the Court of Appeal had earlier stated that there were other types of case that might justify a finding of gross negligence, notably cases where there was actual awareness of a risk combined with indifference to it or a grossly negligent attempt to avoid it.[236] It does not seem difficult to encompass these other cases within the *Adomako* test, so long as the focus remains on 'the risk of death'. If such a risk was reasonably foreseeable, then the jury must decide whether D's conduct fell so far below the expected standard as to justify conviction for manslaughter. It has often been observed that this test is circular: if members of the jury ask how negligent D must have been if they are to convict him of manslaughter, the answer is 'so negligent as to deserve conviction for manslaughter'. Significant as the circularity point may be, more powerful are the arguments that a) it fails to meet the test of certainty properly required of a criminal law by Art. 7 of the Convention, and b) its breadth leads to unfair inconsistencies in prosecution policy. The *Adomako* test was challenged on the former basis in *Misra* (2005),[237] and drew the unconvincing response that the question 'is not whether the defendant's negligence was gross and whether, additionally, it was a crime, but whether his behaviour was grossly negligent and consequently criminal'. This is a distinction without a difference and, despite the Court's discussion of some of the **(p. 294)** Strasbourg authorities, it should not be the last word on the subject. Indeed, Judge LJ went on to state that 'this is not a question of law, but one of fact'. Lord Mackay's words in *Adomako* make it clear that the jury is, in effect, deciding a question of law when it decides whether the conduct was bad enough to be classed as manslaughter. The second criticism of the *Adomako* test emerges from research by Oliver Quick into the decision-making of prosecutors in cases of fatal errors by medical staff,[238] finding a number of unexplained variations in prosecution decisions that the broad terminology of the offence permits.

Finally, we should note that, closely allied to manslaughter by gross negligence is the offence of manslaughter by (subjective) recklessness. There is some confusion over the relationship, in that in *Adomako* Lord Mackay indicated that it would not be wrong for a judge in directing the jury on the fault element in gross negligence manslaughter cases to use the term 'reckless' to describe D's conduct. However, it seems clear that causing death by recklessness is a form of manslaughter in its own right. In *Lidar*,[239] V died under the wheels of D's car when he lost his grip on the car as it was being driven at speed by D following a fight involving them both. D was convicted of manslaughter by recklessness. The Court of Appeal upheld Lidar's conviction on the basis that he had foreseen a risk that V might suffer death or serious injury if he (D) continued to drive at speed, and yet he continued to do so, and caused V's death thereby.

(c) Corporate manslaughter

The Corporate Manslaughter and Corporate Homicide Act 2007 introduced a new form of

manslaughter, corporate manslaughter, to English law. It was formerly possible to convict a company of manslaughter by gross negligence at common law, but the 'identification doctrine' (discussed in Chapter 5.3) proved so restrictive in practice that only a few convictions of smaller companies were obtained.[240] Public concern at the considerable loss of lives resulting from companies' operations, and belief in the fairness of imposing the censure of homicide convictions (rather than merely of convictions under the Health and Safety at Work Act 1974) in bad cases, led to the lengthy and politically controversial process of bringing forward legislation.[241] The new offence can be committed only by an 'organization', and organizations can no longer be convicted of manslaughter by gross negligence (although individuals can). An individual cannot be held liable for the offence of corporate manslaughter, or for complicity in it.

(p. 295) The provisions of the Act are beset with considerable technicality,[242] but five key elements of the definition may be identified—(i) an 'organization' must (ii) owe a relevant duty of care and (iii) the way in which the activities were managed or organized must amount to a gross breach of that duty, (iv) a substantial element in that gross breach being the way that the organization's activities were organized by senior management, and (v) death must be caused by the way in which the activities were managed or organized. First, what qualifies as an 'organization' for the purpose of the Act? The definition goes well beyond companies and includes partnerships, some unincorporated associations, and most public bodies (such as hospital trusts, the police, and government departments).[243] The practical implications of these broad categories are considerably narrowed down by the second requirement, that the organization must owe a relevant duty of care to the deceased person. The concept of duty of care, elaborated in s. 2, is confined to duties recognized by the law of negligence.[244] Especially controversial in this respect was the prospect that liability could arise for deaths in custody, particularly where these occurred through a suicide that it is alleged could have been prevented. Intially, the Government delayed making the 2007 Act applicable to such deaths, but since 2011 it has been applicable in that situation as specified in s. 2(2). There are also several exclusions in ss. 3 to 7 from duties that would otherwise apply—exclusions dealing with public bodies' decisions on resource allocation and public policy, military activities, the operations of emergency services, and duties under the Children Act 1989.[245] Whether there was a relevant duty of care is a question of law for the judge; the technicality of the tests and the exclusions may give rise to considerable legal argument.

Once the prosecution has satisfied the court that the defendant is an organization to which the Act applies, and that there was a relevant duty towards the deceased, the third element is that the way in which its activities were managed or organized amounted to a gross breach of the organization's duty. How can this be established? A breach is gross if the conduct allegedly amounting to the breach 'falls far below' what could reasonably be expected of the organization in the circumstances. This is a question of degree for the jury, similar to that which has to be decided when determining whether negligence is 'gross' for the purposes of manslaughter by gross negligence (7.5(b)). In this connection s. 8(2) requires the jury to consider whether there was a breach of health and safety legislation. If there was, then the jury should take account of how serious the breach was, how much of a risk of death it posed, and (by s. 8(3)) **(p. 296)** any evidence of what is often termed corporate culture, i.e. evidence of 'attitudes, policies, systems or accepted practices within the organization that were likely to have encouraged' any breach of safety legislation. This broadens the timeframe of the new offence, by reducing the possibility that the grossness of the breach is assessed

simply on a ‘snapshot’ taken at the time of the fatal incident.

The fourth element in the definition is that the way in which the organization's activities ‘are managed and organized by its senior management is a substantial element in the breach’. The term ‘senior management’ refers (s. 1(4)) to persons who play ‘significant roles’ in either decision-making about or actual managing of the whole or a substantial part of the organization's activities. This may prove to be a fairly restrictive definition, especially in relation to large organizations, since scrutiny falls only on those who play a significant role in relation to a substantial part of all the organization's activities. The test is probably a factual one (who played a significant role?), and courts are unlikely to be deflected by nomenclature. But then, once the persons who are senior managers are identified for the purposes of the Act, the jury must also be satisfied that those persons’ role in the activities was a ‘substantial element in the breach’, a restrictive phrase that invites argument about the role of a particular employee's fault, and thereby revisits some of the problems of the ‘identification doctrine’ in corporate liability generally.[246]

The fifth requirement is that the way in which the organization's activities were managed caused the death. The issue of causation is not straightforward: presumably a ‘more than minimal’ cause is sufficient,[247] and, since there is no provision in the Act to prevent the application of normal principles, a voluntary intervening act (such as the conduct of an employee) would break the causal chain,[248] clearly not the intention behind the Act.

The new offence of corporate manslaughter is an important step towards recognition that corporate liability in this sphere is fair and that it has to be constructed differently from individual liability. There are, however, various respects in which the Act could have been improved. The Act combines great technical complexity in some respects with considerable open texture in key terms, such as ‘gross’, ‘significant’, and ‘substantial’. Moreover, it remains to be seen whether its application is easier and more extensive than the identification doctrine that applied previously: the notion of ‘senior management’ still requires the court to identify people within an organization who had a certain amount of influence and whose failure was a substantial element in the breach. On the other hand, if the test proves to be applicable without difficulty to larger organizations, the kernel of this approach could and should be adapted to other forms of corporate liability. The requirement of the consent of the DPP for any prosecution is regrettable, since the possibility of private prosecution could have **(p. 297)** operated to prevent any official ‘cover-ups’. The relationship between the new offence and offences under the Health and Safety at Work Act 1974 remains to be worked out:[249] a reconsideration of that legislation, with a view to reformulating its offences, would be a sensible next step. In the meantime, the Sentencing Guidelines Council has issued sentencing guidelines on both corporate manslaughter (for which only three forms of sentence—fines, remedial orders, and publicity orders—are possible) and offences under the Health and Safety at Work Act resulting in death.[250]

(d) The contours of involuntary manslaughter

The English law of manslaughter exhibits a tension between the significance of the harm caused and various principles of fairness such as the principles of correspondence and fair labelling. It is the resulting harm (death) which still dominates, and the enormous moral distance between D's conduct and the fatal result is evident from the fact that in many

situations there may be nothing more than a conviction for common assault if death does not result (manslaughter by unlawful act if death results) or even no criminal offence at all (manslaughter by gross negligence if death results). Much is made of the unique significance of human life and the need to mark out, and to prevent, conduct which causes its loss. But does this really justify the present contours of the law of involuntary manslaughter?

It is important not to neglect the fact that manslaughter currently covers a wide range of culpability. The focus thus far has been on the lower borderline, but there are some forms of manslaughter that fall little short of murder, such as manslaughter by recklessness.[251] There is no doubting the substantial culpability of the person who embarks on a course of conduct knowing that there is a risk of death or serious injury to another (e.g. the man who administered carbon tetrachloride to the woman in *Pike*,[252] knowing the danger of physical harm to her). We noted earlier that the Law Commission has recommended that some forms of reckless killing (where D intended to cause injury or fear or risk of injury, knowing that the conduct involved a serious risk of causing death) should be included in the new offence of murder in the second degree,[253] with lesser varieties falling within the offence of manslaughter.[254]

The main focus of our discussion above was on the lower threshold of manslaughter, where its minimum requirements form the boundary with accidental (non-criminal) homicide. It can be strongly argued that to apply the label 'manslaughter' to the conduct of a person who envisaged no more than a battery, e.g. by a single punch, is both disproportionate and unfair. It is only luck that makes the difference between (p. 298) the summary offence of common assault (maximum, six months' imprisonment) and the grave offence of manslaughter (maximum, life imprisonment). In such cases, the manslaughter label exaggerates the amount of culpability, producing an extreme form of constructive liability.[255] The Law Commission originally accepted this reasoning and recommended the abolition of unlawful act manslaughter,[256] but this has now been replaced—without detailed justification—by a recommendation that adopts the Government's own formulation of a possible offence of manslaughter based on death caused by an act that D intended to cause injury or was aware carried a serious risk of injury.[257] This reversal will be welcome to those who argue that D's responsibility for the death cannot be avoided: it is something D did (he killed by acting dangerously), and he bears some moral responsibility for it.[258] It will also be welcome to those who maintain that a person who changes his or her normative position by attacking another ought to be held liable for manslaughter if death results. Any 'bad luck' in holding the attacker guilty is clearly traceable to the offender's fault in making the attack.[259] However, it can be strongly counter-argued that the language of 'attack' and 'change of moral position' fails to address the enormous gulf between what was intended and what (by mischance) resulted.[260] Statistically speaking, the risk of death from a single punch is far too remote to enter into reasonable contemplation, and it is not clear how significant the proposed restriction to causing 'injury' would be. Death would not be an intrinsic risk when injuring another, rather than injuring another seriously. It seems wrong to attribute too much weight to chance: 'the offender's fault falls too far short of the unlucky result. So serious an offence as manslaughter should not be a lottery'.[261] If D's conduct was not serious enough to constitute reckless manslaughter (as described in the previous paragraph), and does not amount to manslaughter by gross negligence, the proper course is simply to convict D of whatever other offence he has committed and to pass sentence for that.[262]

Where does this leave the crime of manslaughter by gross negligence? Negligence is not usually a sufficient fault element for serious offences. The Law Commission, after a review of the arguments, concluded that it is justifiable in homicide cases to criminalize gross negligence where D unreasonably takes a risk of causing death, where the failure to advert to the risk is culpable because the risk is obviously foreseeable and D (p. 299) has the capacity to advert to the risk.[263] The Commission recommends an offence of killing by gross negligence, with the following elements:

> **(1)** a person by his or her conduct causes the death of another;
> **(2)** a risk that his or her conduct will cause death would be obvious to a reasonable person in his or her position;
> **(3)** he or she is capable of appreciating that risk at the material time; and
> **(4)** either
> his or her conduct falls far below what can reasonably be expected of him or her in the circumstances; or
> he or she intends by his or her conduct to cause some injury, or is aware of, or unreasonably takes, the risk that it may do so, *and* the conduct causing (or intended to cause) the injury constitutes an offence.[264]

This formulation has a number of good features. It incorporates a capacity requirement (3), and now insists that the objective risk must be one of death (2).[265] There is no special provision for omissions, but such cases should fall within (4) and the criteria for deciding whether or not there was a duty to act will continue to be left for development at common law. The formulation of condition (4)(a) does not go far in the direction of maximum certainty, but the Commission argues that at least the new test would not be circular (a criticism levelled at the *Adomako* test), and that the only alternative to leaving 'a large degree of judgment to the jury' would be 'to define the offence in such rigid and detailed terms that it would be unworkable'.[266] As for the second limb of (4), this is advanced as a test that may be simpler for juries to apply than the test in (4)(a), and one that is likely to be co-extensive in practice with (4)(a). It does not, of course, make any explicit reference to gross negligence, and its form is similar to the existing 'unlawful act' doctrine—a doctrine whose abolition the Law Commission originally recommended but whose retention, in modified form, the Commission now supports. The difference in this context is that condition (2) must be satisfied before condition (4)(b) would be applied. The Law Commission envisages that the maximum penalty for killing by gross negligence would be a determinate sentence, not life imprisonment, but no conclusions are reached on its precise grading. However, before we leave the question of how the law of involuntary manslaughter should be structured, it is important to assess various other homicide offences and to consider their proper place.

(p. 300) 7.6 Causing or allowing the death of a child or vulnerable adult

There has long been concern about the difficulty of achieving a homicide conviction when the death of a young child has been caused by one of the child's parents or carers but it cannot be proved which. Parliament has responded by introducing the offence of causing or allowing

the death of a child or vulnerable adult, contrary to s. 5 of the Domestic Violence, Crime and Victims Act 2004. Whether the creation of a new offence was necessary, as distinct from special procedural means of bringing such cases within mainstream homicide offences, warrants further examination.[267]

7.7 Causing death by driving

English law now contains some five offences of causing death by driving:

(1) causing death by dangerous driving, contrary to s. 1 of the 1988 Act;
(2) causing death by careless driving when under the influence of drink or drugs, contrary to s. 3A of the 1988 Act;
(3) causing death by careless driving, contrary to s. 2B of the 1988 Act;
(4) causing death by driving when unlicensed, disqualified, or uninsured, contrary to s. 3ZB of the 1988 Act;
(5) causing death by aggravated vehicle-taking, contrary to s. 1 of the Aggravated Vehicle-Taking Act 1992.

It is not possible to go into the detail of all these offences, but as they take the law of involuntary homicide well beyond the scope of gross negligence or unlawful and dangerous act manslaughter, it is worth considering the issues of principle that some of them raise.

The offence of *causing death by dangerous driving* replaced the former offence of causing death by reckless driving and, unlike that offence, is defined in the legislation. This is a considerable step towards greater certainty in the criminal law. In outline, s. 2A(1) provides that a person drives dangerously if '(a) the way he drives falls far below what would be expected of a competent and careful driver; and (b) it would be obvious to a competent and careful driver that driving in that way would be dangerous'. Section 2A(2) adds that a person also drives dangerously if it would be obvious to a competent and careful driver that driving the vehicle in its current state would be dangerous—for example, driving an obviously defective vehicle or driving with an (p. 301) unsteady load.[268] Section 2(3) defines 'dangerous' in terms of danger either of injury to any person or serious damage to property, and provides that any special knowledge possessed by the driver should be taken into account. This is an objective standard, but its extension to cases where only serious damage to property (and not death or injury) is foreseeable may be considered too wide. Since it applies to conduct on the road that falls 'far below what would be expected', the standard may therefore be higher than that of negligence in the law of tort, and is approaching (or equivalent to) a standard of gross negligence. The maximum for this offence is fourteen years, following the Criminal Justice Act 2003, compared with a maximum of five years for the offence of dangerous driving. It remains possible to convict drivers of murder where the required fault element can be proved,[269] and likewise of manslaughter where the prosecution can establish, following *Adomako*,[270] that D was grossly negligent as to the risk of death, compared with a high degree of negligence as to injury or damage, as required for causing death by dangerous driving.

The Road Safety Act 2006 has introduced two further offences. The first is *causing death by careless driving*, with a maximum sentence of five years' imprisonment. The Act states that careless or inconsiderate driving means driving that 'falls below what would be expected of a

competent and careful driver',[271] and this contrasts with the dangerous driver whose driving must fall 'far below' that standard. However, the offence of careless driving is chiefly intended to penalize small errors of judgment, and it can hardly be said that the offence is intended to protect people's lives (unlike dangerous driving). Thus it can be said that the moral distance between the underlying offence of careless driving—for which Parliament has provided only a fine as the penalty—and causing death by careless driving, with its maximum of five years, is too great, and that this is an improper use of a homicide offence. This is not to downplay the concern and grief of the families of victims of these offences; but that must be responded to in a different way, rather than by excessive punishment of someone whose error may have been both slight and momentary. The second new offence is *causing death when driving while unlicensed, disqualified, or uninsured*. The essence of this offence is simply a minimal element of causation: if the driver causes death when he is committing one of these three other offences (no valid licence, disqualified from driving, no insurance), he is guilty of this homicide offence without proof of any fault in the driving.[272] Indeed, if there were fault in the driving, one would expect a prosecution for one of the three offences with higher maxima. The reason for creating a homicide offence for deaths caused in these circumstances is that the driver should not have been on the road at all: his or her decision to drive when not permitted to do so was a *sine qua non* of the incident that caused death. Parliament regarded this as the least serious of the offences, **(p. 302)** assigning it a maximum penalty of two years' imprisonment. That may be taken as an indication of the absence of a fault requirement for the actual driving. However, research among members of the public shows unequivocally that this view is widely rejected: where a disqualified driver takes to the road, and happens to cause death through no fault in the manner of driving, most people regard this as more serious than causing death by careless driving[273]—whereas Parliament evidently viewed it as less serious by a factor of 2 to 5. This research was commissioned in order to assist with the drafting of guidelines for sentencers, but in fact it made that task more difficult, once it became apparent that there was widespread public rejection of the hierarchy of maximum penalties that had been created. Most people, it seems, would wish to see a reversal of the maxima for causing death by careless driving and causing death when driving while unlicensed, disqualified, or uninsured; but the sentencing guidelines must reflect the law as it stands.[274]

Is there a need for these separate homicide offences? The first offence of causing death by dangerous driving was introduced in 1956, largely because juries were unwilling to convict culpable motorists of such a serious-sounding offence as manslaughter. Ever since its introduction there have been those who have pointed to its 'illogicality'.[275] The difference in practice between an offence of dangerous driving (maximum penalty of five years) and one of causing death by dangerous driving (maximum penalty of fourteen years) may simply be one of chance. Bad driving may or may not lead to an accident, depending on the chance conjunction of other factors and other people's behaviour. And an accident may lead to death (in which case the more serious offence is committed) or merely to serious injuries or to minor damage. The response to this 'illogicality'—which is, of course, the very problem with the law of involuntary manslaughter too—has varied. Both the James Committee in 1976[276] and the Criminal Law Revision Committee in 1980[277] recommended the abolition of the offence of causing death by dangerous driving, thereby accepting the 'illogicality' argument. This accords with the CLRC's proposal that 'unlawful act' manslaughter should be abolished.[278] However, the North Report on road traffic law reversed this trend. The report accepted the principle that, in general, persons should be judged according to the intrinsic quality of their

driving rather than its consequences, but argued that the law should depart from this in cases where death is caused and the driver's culpability is already high.[279] There is a well-known risk in motoring that certain kinds of driving may cause accidents, and that accidents may cause death. The rules of the road are designed not only to produce the orderly and unhampered movement of traffic, but also to protect property, safety, (p. 303) and lives. One who deviates so manifestly from these rules as to drive dangerously ought to realize—because the driving test requires a driver to realize—that there is a considerable risk of an accident. If an accident happens as a result of driving which falls well below the proper standard, then that may well be a case of culpable negligence even if the driver had never thought of the risk in that particular case, because the driver is presumed to know the Highway Code.

Sound as this reasoning may be where it is dangerous driving that results in death, it is significantly less convincing in other cases.[280] Perhaps the next most serious cases would be those where D drives after taking considerable alcohol or drugs, and cases where D drives after being disqualified from driving, and with both of these it is debatable whether the fault is sufficient to justify conviction and sentence for a homicide offence. One view is that it is sufficient—a decision to drive while intoxicated flies in the face of widely advertised safety campaigns, and a decision to drive while disqualified ignores the road safety reasons that led to the disqualification. Another view is that, in these cases and more generally, the current trend places far too much emphasis on the occurrence of death. These are not cases in which death is intended or knowingly risked: many of them are cases of negligence, to a greater (dangerous) or lesser (careless) degree, albeit that the risks to safety involved in motoring are well known. The great significance attributed to the accident of death is more appropriate to a compensation scheme than to a system of criminal law. Yet if the criminal law in motoring cases were to focus on ‘intrinsic’ fault rather than the consequences of the bad driving, it would come down much harder on many people who by good fortune did not cause any or much harm even though their driving fell appallingly below the required standard. Those who think it wrong that the courts should respond so readily to the ‘accident of death’ would equally have to harden themselves to reject the pleas of drivers who say ‘at least I did no harm’. If the courts were to focus on the intrinsic fault in a defendant's driving, sentencing would become more difficult in itself and more controversial in the view of the mass media.

7.8 Reviewing the structure of the law of homicide

In this chapter we have discussed a wide array of different homicide offences. Towards the end of the chapter, questions about the proper contours and boundaries of the law of homicide have become more and more pressing. Although some suggestions and criticisms have been ventured at appropriate points, we may conclude the chapter with some broader reflections on the structure of the law of homicide.

(p. 304) Three main interlinked issues present themselves—questions about appropriate fault requirements, questions about appropriate labels, and questions about appropriate sentence levels.[281] Let us begin with fault: the principle should be that of equal treatment of offences of equal seriousness. There should therefore be an alignment of the minimum culpability requirements for homicide offences, unless there are strong reasons to the contrary. For example, manslaughter by gross negligence requires the risk of death to have been obvious,

whereas causing death by dangerous driving may be committed if there was danger of injury or serious damage to property—requirements which are surely far too low for a homicide offence. The offence of corporate manslaughter is rather reticent on the whole issue, although s. 8 of the Corporate Manslaughter and Corporate Homicide Act 2007 does state that, where the death arose from a breach of health and safety regulations, the jury should consider how serious a risk of death existed.[282] However, we find major departures from this principle when it comes to the two new homicide offences of causing death by careless driving and causing death when driving while unlicensed, disqualified, or uninsured. Causing death by careless driving falls significantly below the threshold of fault required for manslaughter by gross negligence, and for causing death by dangerous driving. Moreover, the rationale for having an offence of careless driving is not so much to save lives (one purpose of the offence of dangerous driving) as to protect from injury and damage to property, so the claims for the new offence to be admitted as a form of criminal homicide are low. The arguments relating to causing death when driving while unlicensed, disqualified, or uninsured are different, because it is the initial criminal act of driving when not permitted to do so that colours the consequences. The parallel is therefore with manslaughter by unlawful act, and the question is whether the moral distance between the originating criminal act and the tragic (accidental) result is too great to justify its inclusion as a homicide offence. This does not mean that the defendant is not convicted, since the underlying criminal offence is still there, and the legislature could create another (non-homicide) offence if it were thought morally and socially appropriate. The chief argument in favour of including these as homicide offences is that the deliberate commission of a criminal offence changes D's normative position such that it is fair to hold him liable for the fatal (if unanticipated) consequences—a view which, as we have seen, begs enormous questions, such that the original progenitor of the 'change of normative position' reasoning no longer supports it.[283]

This leads us into the second general issue, that of labelling. In principle the label applied to an offence should be a fair representation of the degree of culpable **(p. 305)** wrongdoing typically disclosed by the offence. It also seems fair that the labels used should be consistent. At present the term 'manslaughter' is used both for killings reduced from murder by a partial defence and for killings stemming from gross negligence or from an unlawful and dangerous act, as well as corporate manslaughter. The Law Commission has recommended that this common law confusion should be resolved by labelling the former as murder in the second degree while retaining the term manslaughter for the latter, and some counter-arguments were raised earlier.[284] Our present concern is at the lower boundary, where there is a contrast between manslaughter by gross negligence and causing death by dangerous driving (different labels, similar culpability), and where there are three other Road Traffic Act offences that use the formula, 'causing death by …'. In terms of nomenclature, it can be argued that the condemnatory term 'manslaughter' should be reserved for killings with more than the minimum culpability requirement—killings that currently amount to reckless manslaughter, not merely gross negligence, and certainly not unlawful and dangerous act cases.[285] This would mean that a fresh term should be sought for any group of killings that are considered sufficiently culpable to warrant a homicide conviction—perhaps a term such as 'culpable homicide', not hitherto used in English law.

This brings us to the third set of issues, relating to the sentencing of homicide offences. In principle there should not be a significant disparity between the condemnatory force of the offence label and the normal range of sentences. We should therefore reject the idea of a

conviction for manslaughter by unlawful act, resulting from a single punch after an argument, that is followed by a community sentence or short custodial sentence. The sentence correctly indicates that the offence did not warrant that label in the first place.[286] On the other hand, as we have observed, sentence levels for causing death by dangerous driving are often higher than for gross negligence manslaughter. This difference calls for re-examination, as Michael Hirst argues,[287] but we may decide that it is right—in which case that would be a strong argument in favour of bringing the offence into an appropriate mainstream homicide offence. These are all questions that need to be examined on a wide canvas, and the starting point should be a general review of homicide offences—in other words, a wider review than the Law Commission has hitherto been able to carry out.

(p. 306) Further reading

C. M. G. CLARKSON and S. CUNNINGHAM (eds), *Criminal Liability for Non-Aggressive Death* (2008).

A. ASHWORTH and B. MITCHELL (eds), *Rethinking English Homicide Law* (2000).

J. HORDER, *Homicide and the Politics of Law Reform* (2012).

A. REED and M. BOHLANDER (eds), *Loss of Self-control and Diminished Responsibility: Domestic, Comparative and International Perspectives* (2011).

B. MITCHELL and J. ROBERTS, ' Sentencing for Murder: Exploring Public Knowledge and Public Opinion in England and Wales ' [2012] *British Journal of Criminology* 141.

Notes:

[1] For a non-exhaustive list, see J. Horder, 'The Changing Face of the Law of Homcide', in J. Horder (ed.), *Homicide Law in Comparative Perspective* (1997).

[2] See e.g. Terrorism Act 2000, s. 57.

[3] *Social Trends 2000* (2001).

[4] P. Taylor and S. Bond, *Crimes detected in England and Wales 2011/12* (2012), Table 1.

[5] Taylor and Bond, *Crimes detected in England and Wales 2011/12* (2012): 409 in 2010/11 and 400 in 2011/12.

[6] Sentencing Guidelines Council, *Causing Death by Driving* (2008); M. Hirst, 'Causing Death by Driving and Other Offences: a Question of Balance' [2008] Crim LR 339.

[7] See section 7.7.

[8] See section 7.6.

[9] Cf. the cases of Dr Bodkin Adams, Dr Moor, and Dr Cox, discussed in Chapter 4.5.

[10] See n 14 and accompanying text, where the Court of Appeal adopted this approach in the somewhat analogous 'conjoined twins' case.

[11] See the discussion by the European Court of Human Rights in *Vo* v *France* (2005) 40 EHRR 259, holding that a foetus does not come within the protection of Art. 2 of the Convention, which guarantees the right to life. Cf. E. Wicks, 'Terminating Life and Human Rights: the Fetus and the Neonate', in C. Erin and S. Ost (eds), *The Criminal Justice System and Health Care* (2007).

[12] [1998] AC 245; the doctrine of transferred intention, and the impact of this decision on it, was discussed in Chapter 5.5(d).

[13] Essentially, the killing of a foetus capable of being born alive: Infant Life Preservation Act 1929, s. 1.

[14] [2000] 4 All ER 961.

[15] *Malcherek and Steel* (1981) 73 Cr App R 173.

[16] *Airedale NHS Trust* v *Bland* [1993] AC 789.

[17] Cf. Chapter 4.4; J. Coggon, 'Ignoring the moral and intellectual shape of the law after *Bland*' (2007) 27 LS 110; A. McGee, 'Finding a Way Through the Ethical and Legal Maze: Withdrawal of Medical Treatment and Euthanasia' [2005] 13 Med LR 357.

[18] There are also some jurisdictions in which capital punishment is discretionary. See generally R. Hood and C. Hoyle, *The Death Penalty: a World-wide Perspective* (4th edn., 2008).

[19] The process of abolishing the death penalty was completed by s. 36 of the Crime and Disorder Act 1998 (dealing with treason and piracy), thus ensuring compliance with Protocol 6 to the European Convention.

[20] The change resulted from the decision of the European Court of Human Rights in *Stafford* v *United Kingdom* (2002) 35 EHRR 1121 and subsequently of the House of Lords in *R (on the application of Anderson)* v *Secretary of State for the Home Department* [2003] 1 AC 837, fundamentally because the Home Secretary cannot be regarded as an 'independent and impartial tribunal' as required by Art. 6 of the Convention.

[21] As noted by Lord Woolf CJ in *Sullivan* (n 23). This is because a determinate sentence of 30 years means 15 years in prison (followed by 15 years on supervised licence), whereas a minimum term for murder is not subject to the general provisions on early release and is served in full.

[22] *Practice Direction (Crime: Mandatory Life Sentences) (No. 2)* [2004] 1 WLR 2551.

[23] *Sullivan* [2005] 1 Cr App R (S) 308.

[24] See the examples discussed by the Law Commission in LCCP 177, *A New Homicide Act for England and Wales? A Consultation Paper* (2005), paras. 1.112–18.

[25] On this, see the cautious words of S. Brody and R. Tarling, *Taking Offenders out of*

Circulation (Home Office Research Study No. 64, 1980), 33.

[26] HL Select Committee on Murder and Life Imprisonment (1988–9), HL Paper 78, paras. 101–22, adopting the reasoning of D. A. Thomas, 'Form and Function in Criminal Law', in P. R. Glazebrook (ed.), *Reshaping the Criminal Law* (1978); cf. also M. D. Farrier, 'The Distinction between Murder and Manslaughter in its Procedural Context' (1976) 39 MLR 414.

[27] *Committee on the Penalty for Homicide* (1993).

[28] See further M. Wasik, 'Sentencing for Homicide', in A. Ashworth and B. Mitchell (eds), *Rethinking English Homicide Law* (2000).

[29] Law Com No. 304, *Murder, Manslaughter and Infanticide* (2006), and Ministry of Justice, Consultation Paper 19, *Murder, Manslaughter and Infanticide: proposals for reform of the law* (2008).

[30] See J. Horder (ed.), *Homicide Law in Comparative Perspective* (2007).

[31] See the discussion of *Moloney* [1985] AC 905, *Hancock and Shankland* [1986] AC 455 and *Woollin* [1999] 1AC 82 in Chapter 5.5(b).

[32] (1986) 83 Cr App R 267.

[33] [1999] 1 AC 82.

[34] *Per* Rix LJ in *Matthews and Alleyne* [2003] 2 Cr App R 30, at 45.

[35] As the Law Commission has accepted: LCCP 177, *A New Homicide Act for England and Wales?* (2005), para. 3.8.

[36] See the discussion of the views of N. Lacey and A. Norrie, Chapter 5.5(b)(ii). The Law Commission recommends that the common law approach in *Woollin* should form the basis of a new law: Law Com 304, 57–8.

[37] Cf. *Janjua* [1999] 1 Cr App R 91, where there had been a stabbing with a five-inch knife, with *Bollom* [2004] 2 Cr App R 6, where the Court of Appeal approved a definition in terms of 'seriously and grievously to interfere with the health or comfort of the victim'.

[38] [1982] AC 566.

[39] [1982] AC 582; see also the criticism by Lord Mustill in *Attorney-General's Reference (No. 3 of 1994)* [1998] AC 245 at 258–9, and by Lord Steyn in *Powell and Daniels* [1999] AC 1, at 15.

[40] ⟨www.cps.gov.uk/legal/l_to_o/offences_against_the_person/⟩

[41] Both Federal and state law in the US extends murder beyond an intention to kill; that is also true of, for example, the Indian Penal Code, and of most states in Australia.

[42] An example given by Lord Goff, 'The Mental Element in the Crime of Murder' (1988) 104 LQR 30, at 48.

[43] See, e.g., A. du Bois-Pedain, 'Intentional Killings: the German Law', in Horder, *Homicide Law*

in Comparative Perspective.

[44] [1975] AC 55.

[45] [1985] AC 905.

[46] A. Pedain, 'Intention and the Terrorist Example' [2003] Crim LR 579.

[47] This was recommended as one ground for a murder conviction by the Law Reform Commission of Ireland, *Homicide: Murder and Involuntary Manslaughter* (2008), also requiring that D took a 'substantial and unjustifiable risk' with another's life.

[48] See Sir G. H. Gordon, *Criminal Law of Scotland* (3rd edn., 2001, by M. G. A. Christie), vol. II, 290.

[49] This is particularly relevant to killings resulting from the activities of (allegedly) terrorist groups. The HL Select Committee on Murder etc., para. 76, concluded that: 'It is neither satisfactory nor desirable to distort [general principles] in order to deal with the reckless terrorist and other "wickedly" reckless killers, who will, in any event, be liable to imprisonment for life [i.e. for manslaughter].'

[50] Law Com No 304, *Murder, Manslaughter and Infanticide*, part 3, following the CLRC 14th Report (1980), para. 31, adopted in the Draft Criminal Code cl. 54(1) and supported by the HL Select Committee on Murder etc., para. 71.

[51] See C. Finkelstein, 'Two Models of Murder: Patterns of Criminalisation in the United States', in Horder, *Homicide Law in Comparative Perspective*.

[52] In their empirical research, P. Robinson and J. Darley found that most of their sample agreed that an accidental killing during a robbery should be punished more severely than other negligent killings, but they did not agree with classifying it as murder: *Justice, Liability and Blame* (1995), 169–81. As the authors express it, the majority view was in favour of a felony-manslaughter rule, not a felony-murder rule.

[53] W. Wilson, 'Murder and the Structure of Homicide', in Ashworth and Mitchell (eds), *Rethinking English Homicide Law* (2000).

[54] Research shows moderate public support for the mandatory life sentence, but some disagreement about the types of homicide for which the measure is appropriate: see LCCP 177, *A New Homicide Act?*, App A, 'Report on Public Survey of Murder and Mandatory Sentencing in Criminal Homicides', by B. Mitchell. See now B. Mitchell and J. V. Roberts, 'Public Attitudes to the Mandatory life Sentence for Murder: Putting Received Wisdom to the Empirical Test' [2011] Crim LR 456.

[55] For the broad definition now adopted, see n 42; the new definition would relate serious harm to either endangering life or causing permanent or long-term damage to physical or mental functioning—LCCP 177, *A New Homicide Act?*, para. 3.144.

[56] For discussion, see W. Wilson, 'The Structure of Criminal Homicide' [2006] Crim LR 471, and A. Norrie, 'Between Orthodox Subjectivism and Moral Contextualism: Intention and the Consultation Paper' [2006] Crim LR 486.

[57] Law Com No. 304, *Murder, Manslaughter and Infanticide* (2006), Part 3, discussed by A. Ashworth, 'Principles, Pragmatism and the Law Commission's Recommendations on Homicide Law Reform' [2007] Crim LR 333. Cf. Law Reform Commission of Ireland, *Homicide: Murder and Involuntary Manslaughter*, recommending retention of an intent to cause serious injury as sufficient for murder.

[58] For criticism along these lines, see R. Taylor, 'The Nature of Partial Defences and the Coherence of (Second Degree) Murder' [2007] Crim LR 345.

[59] Ministry of Justice, *Murder, manslaughter and infanticide: proposals for reform of the law* (2008), para. 9.

[60] This was the view of the HL Select Committee on Murder etc., paras. 80–3, agreeing with the CLRC, 14th Report (1980), para. 76.

[61] Sentencing Guidelines Council, *Manslaughter upon Provocation* (2005).

[62] Law Com No. 290, *Partial Defences to Murder* (2004), para. 2.68.

[63] See generally, Jeremy Horder, *Provocation and Responsibility* (1992). A fear of violence featured sporadically in explanations for the existence of the provocation defence from the seventeenth century onwards, but was not authoritatively accepted as such.

[64] See now, J. Horder, *Homicide and the Politics of Law Reform* (2012), ch 8; A. Reed and M. Bohlander (eds), *Loss of Self-control and Diminished Responsibility: Domestic, Comparative and International Perspectives* (2011).

[65] See *Acott* [1997] 2 Cr App R 94.

[66] R. Holton and S. Shute, 'Self-Control in the Modern Provocation Defence' (2007) 27 OJLS 49.

[67] [1949] 1 All ER 932n.

[68] So long as that loss of self-control resulted from a 'qualifying trigger', namely a justifiable sense of being seriously wronged (provocation), or a fear of serious violence at V's hands.

[69] An example would be where D dares V to hit him, saying that V will prove himself to be nothing but a coward if V fails to do it; so, V hits D, upon which D loses self-control and stabs V to death. Arguably, this sensible provision in fact imposes greater restrictions than were in place at common law. At common law, the 'self-induced' character of provocation was merely a factor that the jury was to take into account in deciding whether the reasonable person might have done as D did: see *Johnson* [1989] Crim LR 738.

[70] In *Ahluwalia* [1992] 4 All ER 889 (CA), the Court of Appeal rejected the view that there was such a requirement at common law.

[71] See e.g. *Baillie* [1995] Crim LR 739, where the provocation defence was left to the jury even though D had fetched a gun from his attic, and then filled his car with petrol from the garage before heading to V's house.

[72] For an example, see *Thornton* [1992] 1 All ER 306, where D took the time to sharpen a

kitchen knife before returning to the living room and stabbing her abusive husband to death. The provocation defence was left to the jury. See also *Ahluwalia* [1992] 4 All ER 899.

[73] See the cases discussed at nn 70–2.

[74] *Baillie* [1995] Crim LR 739.

[75] Law Commission, *Partial Defences to Murder* (Law Com 290, 2004), paras. 3.28–30; 3.315–17.

[76] For further discussion, see Jeremy Horder, *Homicide and the Politics of Law Reform* (2012), 213–22.

[77] (1981) 74 Cr App R 154.

[78] 1992] 4 All ER 889 (CA).

[79] [1997] 2 Cr App R 94, at 102.

[80] (1986) 83 Cr App R 319, on which see J. Horder, 'The Problem of Provocative Children' [1987] Crim LR 654.

[81] (1987) 84 Crim App R 302.

[82] See text preceding n 67.

[83] The other part of the qualifying trigger in the second limb, the requirement for provocation 'of an extremely grave character' is considered below, as part of the objective requirements of the defence.

[84] The justifiability element appears to have two separate effects. First, in cases where D believes that he or she has been seriously wronged, but this view is based on a mistake on D's part about what has been said or done, that mistake must be justifiable (see n 85). Secondly, in so far as D believes that he or she has been *seriously*—not just trivially—wronged, that belief must also be justifiable.

[85] The difference in approach is doubtless explained by the fact that when D is pleading self-defence or prevention of crime as a (complete) defence to murder, a subjective belief—whether or not justifiable—in the existence of deadly threat will be sufficient to bring the defence into play: Criminal Justice and Immigration Act 2008, s. 76(4). By contrast, s. 55(4)(b) effectively overrules the old decision in *Letenock* (1917) 12 Cr App R 221, a decision that had appeared to make the question whether or not D understood V's conduct as embodying a grave provocation a purely subjective one: see n 81.

[86] For a contrary view, though, see B. Mitchell, R. Mackay, and W. Brookbanks, 'Pleading for Provoked Killers: In Defence of Morgan Smith' (2008) 124 LQR 675.

[87] The common law was, historically, much more forthcoming in this respect. See e.g. *Mawgridge* (1707) 1 Kel 119.

[88] On the history of the legislation, in that regard, see J. Horder, *Homicide and the Politics of Law Reform* (2012), ch 8.

[89] The highest court even used its Privy Council status, hearing appeals from other jurisdictions where the law was in substance the same as in England and Wales, to disagree with decisions by the House of Lords on the law governing England and Wales, an unacceptable practice when driven simply by disagreement on the substantive issues rather than by some special feature of the law in the overseas jurisdiction: see *Attorney-General for Jersey* v *Holley* [2005] 2 AC 580. It took a further decision of the Court of Appeal to decide that the Holley case represented English law: *James* [2006] QB 588.

[90] HL debates, 7th July, col 582–3.

[91] Law Commission, *Murder, Manslaugher and Infanticide* (Law Com 304, 2006), p. 85.

[92] [1978] AC 705 (HL).

[93] [1954] 2 All ER 201.

[94] See A. Ashworth, 'The Doctrine of Provocation' [1976] Camb LJ 292.

[95] [1996] 1 AC 90.

[96] An example from Horder, *Provocation and Responsibility*, 144.

[97] (1994) 98 Cr App R 108, at 113 (CA).

[98] For example, the war criminal hypothetical was also used as an illustration of the need for the defence in the debates preceding the 1957 Act, although it was given greater significance at that time because of the continuing application of the death penalty.

[99] HC Public Bills Committee, 3 March 2009, col 439.

[100] HL debates, 7 July 2009, col 589.

[101] HC debates, 9 November 2009, col 83 (Claire Ward), cited by D. Ormerod, *Smith and Hogan's Criminal Law* (13th edn., 2011), 521.

[102] *Clinton, Parker and Evans* [2012] EWCA Crim 2, paras. 40–4.

[103] *Clinton, Parker and Evans* [2012] EWCA Crim 2, para. 39. Confusingly, though, having said that it would approach the interpretation of s. 55(6)(c) as an ordinary language question (para. 4), the Court of Appeal went on to suggest that s. 55(6)(c) should be understood so as to extend its reach beyond an ordinary language construction. So, the Court said that the section should be understood to cover untrue 'confessions' of sexual infidelity, and also reports to D by others of sexual infidelity (para. 28), even though by no stretch of the imagination could these 'constitute' sexual infidelity. Perhaps this line of argument was adopted as part of the courts' well-known duty to avoid statutory constructions that lead to absurdity; but in the case of s. 56(6)(c), it is hard to know in what directions such a duty would take the law.

[104] *Clinton, Parker and Evans* [2012] EWCA Crim 2, paras. 17–25.

[105] *The Times*, 14 September 1929, discussed in Ashworth, 'The Doctrine of Provocation'.

[106] Law Commission, *Partial Defences to Murder* (Consultation Paper No. 173, 2003).

[107] See S. Edwards, 'Loss of Self-Control: When His Anger is Worth More Than Her Fear', in A. Reed and M. Bohlander (eds), *Loss of Self-Control and Diminished Responsibility* (2011), ch 6.

[108] For an outstanding analysis, see A. McColgan, 'In Defence of Battered Women who Kill' (1993) 13 OJLS 508.

[109] For deeper analysis see J. Horder, *Homicide and the Politics of Law Reform* (2012), 239–55.

[110] For an analogous argument in relation to the defence of duress, see K. J. M. Smith, 'Duress and Steadfastness: In Pursuit of the Unintelligible' [1999] Crim LR 363.

[111] For a powerful analysis of provocation and loss of self-control when D is on duty as a member of the police or army, see J. Gardner, 'The Gist of Excuses' (1998) 1 *Buffalo Criminal Law Review* 575. See also, under the old law, *R* v *Clegg* [1996] 1 AC 482 (HL), where a soldier in Northern Ireland was convicted of murder when he shot at a car both before and after it had passed a checkpoint.

[112] Charles Dickens, *Bleak House*, p. 14.

[113] [2005] 2 AC 580.

[114] *Weller* [2003] Crim LR 724 (CA), now no longer good law.

[115] *Luc Thiet-Thuan* v *R* [1997] AC 131.

[116] There is, for example, some evidence of greater racial tolerance amongst women than men, although the evidence shows that it is a minor influence on racial attitude formation generally: M. Hughes and S. Tuch, 'Gender Differences in Whites' Racial Attitudes: Are Women's Attitudes Really More Favourable?' (2003) 66 *Social Psychology Quarterly* 384.

[117] For detailed discussion, see R. Mackay, 'Diminished Responsibility and Mentally Disordered Killers', in Ashworth and Mitchell (eds), *Rethinking English Homicide Law* (2000); R. Mackay, 'The New Diminished Responsibility Plea' [2010] Crim LR 290; R. Fortson QC, 'The Modern Partial Defence of Diminished Responsibility', in A. Reed and M. Bohlander (eds), *Loss of Control and Diminished Responsibility* (2011), chs 1 and 2; L. Kennefick, 'Introducing a New Diminished Responsibility Defence for England and Wales' (2011) 74 MLR 750.

[118] If the conditions for such an order are fulfilled: see s. 24 of the Domestic Violence, Crime, and Victims Act 2004, and Chapter 5.2.

[119] This is to avoid a situation in which D claims that his or her responsibility was diminished, but produces no medical evidence to back this claim, and refuses to be examined by the medical experts advising the prosecution. It would be wrong to sentence D on the basis of unproven claims about his or her mental disorder. However, in theory at least, it would be possible to insist that a claim of diminished responsibility is backed by medical evidence without going as far as to place the burden of proof on the accused on the balance of probabilities.

[120] See the research by R. D. Mackay in Law Com No. 290, *Partial Defences to Murder*, App B.

[121] Under the old law, there was a fixed list of conditions from which the abnormality of mind (as it was then called) had to arise, although few lawyers or psychiatrists paid much attention to it.

[122] *Byrne* [1960] 2 QB 396, per Lord Parker CJ.

[123] In practice, under the old law, a broad range of abnormalities of mind was accepted as meeting the criteria.

[124] For a case where a causal link was not established, although D suffered from ADHD, see *Osborne* [2010] EWCA 547.

[125] As usual, if the prosecution wishes to refute the defence evidence, it must do so to the beyond-reasonable-doubt standard.

[126] [1960] 2 QB 396.

[127] Under the old law, see *Tandy* [1989] 1 All ER 267.

[128] *Hobson* [1998] 1 Cr App R 31.

[129] See the discussion in Law Commission Consultation Paper No. 177 (2005) , *A New Homicide Act for England and Wales*?, part 8.

[130] See Kennefick (reference at n 117). See also the evidence of 'Dignity in Dying' to the Joint Committee on Human Rights, 8th Report, 2008–9, para 1.150, cited by D. Ormerod, *Smith and Hogan's Criminal Law* (13th edition), 531 n 160; *Cocker* [1989] Crim LR 740 (CA).

[131] See the discussion in Law Commission Consultation Paper No. 177 (2005) , *A New Homicide Act for England and Wales*?, part 8.

[132] *Dietschmann* [2003] 1 AC 1209, *Per* Lord Hutton at 41.

[133] [2008] 2 Cr App R 34.

[134] Vania Modesto-Lowe and Henry R. Kransler, 'Diagnosis and Treatment of Alcohol-Dependent Patients with Comorbid Psychiatric Disorders' (1999) 23 *Alcohol Research and Health* 144.

[135] [2012] EWCA Crim 281.

[136] DSM-IV, introduction.

[137] It is noteworthy, in this regard, that Dowds himself unsuccessfully pleaded both loss of self-control (on the basis of a fear of serious violence) and diminished responsibility.

[138] See the seminal article by R. D. Mackay, 'Pleading Provocation and Diminished Responsibility Together' [1988] Crim LR 411.

[139] See J. Horder, *Homicide and the Politics of Law Reform* (2012), at 233.

[140] See Public Bill Committee Debates, 3 March 2009, col 414, cited by D. Ormerod, *Smith and*

Hogan's Criminal Law (13th ed.), 531 (reference at n 163).

[141] For critical discussion of this common feature, see J. Horder, *Excusing Crime* (2004).

[142] See J. Horder, *Excusing Crime* (2004), ch 1.

[143] See J. Horder, *Homicide and the Politics of Law Reform* (2012), ch 8.

[144] Criminal Justice Act 2003, Sch 21 to s. 269.

[145] The burden of proof will be on the survivor to prove this, on the balance of probabilities.

[146] LCCP 177, *A New Homicide Act?*, paras. 8.68–83.

[147] 14th Report (1980), para. 132.

[148] The Royal Commission on Capital Punishment (1949–53) had recommended that suicide pacts in which one person agreed to kill another person before killing himself ('you, then me' pacts) should remain murder, and only 'die together' pacts should be manslaughter. The government of the day decided to draw no distinction between the two and both are covered by s. 4. In examples (A) and (B), the first is a 'die together' pact and the second a 'you, then me' pact.

[149] Law Com No. 304, paras. 7.42–45.

[150] Assisting or encouraging suicide is an offence, punishable with up to fourteen years' imprisonment, contrary to s. 2(1) of the Suicide Act 1961.

[151] Under French law, the equivalent offence carries a maximum sentence of only three years. Imprisonment: Art. 221-13.

[152] To reflect the language of the offences of encouraging and assisting crime under the Serious Crime Act 2007.

[153] Further provisions to clarify the law in s. 2A will not be addressed here.

[154] (1978) 66 Cr App R 97.

[155] See also *Cumming* [2007] 2 Cr App R(S) 20.

[156] *Re B (Refusal of treatment)* [2002] 2 All ER 449. Depending on the facts of the case, there might be a defence of necessity or of duress of circumstances available to the medical professionals.

[157] *B (Refusal of treatment)* [2002] 2 All ER 449.

[158] See e.g. J. Griffiths, 'Assisted Suicide in the Netherlands' (1995) 58 MLR 232, and M. Blake, 'Physician-Assisted Suicide: a Criminal Offence or a Patient's Right?' (1997) 5 Medical LR 294.

[159] Unless there is a radical change in ethical and legal thinking, it seems clear that the law should make little or no allowance for the person who *encourages* (as opposed to assists) another to commit suicide.

[160] A matter on which, of course, people differ strongly, but consideration of which is beyond the scope of this work.

[161] Although perhaps not such a strong public interest as to make it desirable to criminalize UK citizens if and when they engage in this conduct in countries where doing so is tolerated.

[162] [2009] UKHL 45.

[163] The interference must also be, 'necessary in a democratic society … for the prevention of crime, for the protection of health or morals, or for the protection of the rights and freedoms of others'.

[164] See ⟨www.cps.gov.uk/publications/prosecution/assisted_suicide_policy.pdf⟩, discussed in P. Lewis, 'Informal Legal Change and Assisted Suicide: the Policy for Prosecutors' (2011) 31 LS 119.

[165] See further, J. M. Finnis, 'Invoking the Principle of Legality against the Rule of Law' (2010) *New Zealand Law Review*, 601–16.

[166] In cases of inchoate assisting and encouraging crime contrary to the Serious Crime Act 2007, any offence is subject to defence of 'reasonableness'. A fortiori, it ought to follow that guidance on the use of the inchoate offence must also be issue, where the inchoate offence relates to s. 2, and perhaps also euthanasia.

[167] See, generally, C. Booth QC and D. Squires, *The Negligence Liability of Public Authorities* (2006).

[168] See J. Horder, *Excusing Crime* (2004), at 233.

[169] See Chapter 4.5(a), and N. Lacey, C. Wells, and O. Quick, *Reconstructing Criminal Law* (4th edn., 2010), 618–40. For an (unsuccessful) prosecution of a family doctor for murder by administering high doses of morphine, see Martin, *The Guardian*, 15 December 2005, p. 8. The House of Lords Select Committee on Medical Ethics examined the issues and decided against recommending an offence of mercy killing, largely on the ground that existing provisions are sufficiently flexible to allow appropriate outcomes to be achieved, HL Select Committee on Medical Ethics, *Report* (Session 1993–94), i, paras. 259–60.

[170] CLRC 14th Report, para. 115; cf. *Cocker* [1989] Crim LR 740 with Lord Goff, 'A Matter of Life and Death' (1995) 3 Medical LR 1, at 11, and the findings of B. Mitchell, 'Public Perceptions of Homicide and Criminal Justice' (1998) 38 BJ Crim 453, at 460.

[171] Law Com No. 270, *Partial Defences to Murder*, App B: 'The Diminished Responsibility Plea in Operation—an Empirical Study'. The estimate of six cases rests on inferences from Professor Mackay's descriptions of the relevant features of each case.

[172] On which see S. Ost, 'Euthanasia and the Defence of Necessity' [2005] Crim LR 355.

[173] Although, as we have seen, the re-definition of an abnormality of mental functioning as having to arise from a 'recognized medical condition' may assist some mercy killers suffering from the long-term stress of care without the need for any bending of the rules.

[174] The basis of the decision in *Airedale NHS Trust* v *Bland* [1993] AC 789, discussed in Chapter 4.4.

[175] The basis of the decision in *Adams* [1957] Crim LR 365, discussed in Chapter 4.6. See R. Tur, 'The Doctor's Defence and Professional Ethics' (2002) 13 KCLJ 75.

[176] Cf. M. Otlowski, *Voluntary Euthanasia and the Common Law* (1997), and J. Keown, *Euthanasia, Ethics and Public Policy* (2002).

[177] Law Commission, *Murder, Manslaughter and Infanticide* (2006).

[178] Some jurisdictions have terms for most serious forms of murder, such as the French concept of 'un assassinat': premeditated killing under Art. 221 of the Code Penale.

[179] See generally, J. Horder (ed.), *Homicide Law on Comparative Perspective* (2007); A. Reed and M. Bohlander (eds), *Loss of Self-control and Diminished Responsibility: Domestic, Comparative and International Perspectives* (Farnham, 2011).

[180] Law Com No. 304; p. 249. The term 'second degree' murder was employed by a Legislature as long ago as 1794, in Pennsylvania. A recommendation to divide the English law of murder into first and second degree murder can be dated back at least to the Royal Commission on Capital Punishment of 1866.

[181] See the valuable article by Richard Taylor, considering the implications for homicide trials of such these proposals for change: 'The Nature Of Partial Excuses And The Coherence Of Second Degree Murder' [2007] Crim LR, 345.

[182] For criticism along these lines, see J. Horder, *Homicide and the Politics of Law Reform* (2012), ch 8.

[183] Model Penal Code, s. 210.3.1(b). It must be said, however, that this partial defence is one of the least well received sections of the Code in the USA, with only one or two adoptions: see J. Chalmers, 'Merging Provocation and Diminished Responsibility' [2004] Crim LR 198.

[184] HL debates, 26 October 2009, col 1008–09, Lord Lloyd, adopting a proposal put forward by Professor John Spencer QC.

[185] The Sentencing Guidelines Council would, as now, have the function of designing guidelines for the kinds of cases, within manslaughter, that should attract lower or higher sentences.

[186] On which, see Chapter 4.2.

[187] Similarly, under the French Penal Code, an act of violence causing an unintended death is punishable by up to 15 years' imprisonment: Art. 222-7. As we will see, English law goes much further, extending liability to unlawful and dangerous acts well beyond those that involve violence.

[188] Article 221-6. The offence is punishable with up to three years' imprisonment.

[189] It is, though, interesting to note that in French law causing death by negligence is the

equivalent of manslaughter whether or not the negligence was ‘gross’, Art. 221-6. The offence is punishable with up to three years’ imprisonment.

[190] R. J. Buxton, ‘By Any Unlawful Act’ (1966) 82 LQR 174.

[191] [1967] 2 QB 981.

[192] For the law of assault, see Chapter 8.3(e).

[193] [1977] AC 500.

[194] [2006] 2 Cr App R 24, discussed by J. Horder and L. McGowan, ‘Manslaughter by Causing Another's Suicide’ [2006] Crim LR 1035, who conclude that on the facts, a prosecution for manslaughter by gross negligence would have been more likely to succeed.

[195] *O'Driscoll* (1977) 65 Cr App R 50.

[196] *Lipman* [1970] 1 QB 152, and generally Chapter 6.2.

[197] *Scarlett* (1994) 98 Cr App R 290.

[198] [1937] AC 576.

[199] [1899] 1 QB 283.

[200] [1973] QB 702.

[201] In *Khan and Khan* [1998] Crim LR 830 the Court of Appeal suggested that omissions cases should be dealt with under gross negligence manslaughter.

[202] [2005] 2 Cr App R 23, criticized by D. Ormerod and R. Fortson, ‘Drug Suppliers as Manslaughterers (Again)’ [2005] Crim LR 819.

[203] Contrary to s. 23 of the Offences Against the Person Act 1861.

[204] [2008] 1 AC 269; for a review of the general topic, see W. Wilson, ‘Dealing with Drug-Induced Homicide’, in C. Clarkson and S. Cunningham, *Criminal Liability for Non-Aggressive Death* (2008).

[205] [1966] 1 QB 59.

[206] *DPP* v *Newbury and Jones* [1977] AC 500.

[207] *Watson* [1989] 1 WLR 684.

[208] *Carey* [2006] Crim LR 842.

[209] *Ball* [1989] Crim LR 730.

[210] *Dawson* (1985) 81 Cr App R 150; cf. the strange interpretation of this decision in *Ball* [1989] Crim LR 730 and *Watson* [1989] 1 WLR 684.

[211] For a defence of manslaughter on this basis, see J. Horder, *Homicide and the Politics of*

Law Reform (2012), ch 5.

[212] (1874) 12 Cox CC 625.

[213] (1925) 94 LJKB 791.

[214] [1937] AC 576.

[215] [1967] 2 QB 981.

[216] [1977] QB 354.

[217] A. Ashworth, 'The Scope of Criminal Liability for Omissions' (1989) 105 LQR 424, at 440–5.

[218] Discussed in Chapter 5.5(c).

[219] [1983] 1 AC 624.

[220] (1986) 82 Cr App R 18.

[221] [1995] 1 AC 171.

[222] *Pittwood* (1902) 19 TLR 37, the operator of a railway level crossing.

[223] *Miller* [1983] 2 AC 161, discussed in Chapter 4.4.

[224] [1988] QB 467.

[225] [1994] QB 302; this was the case that became *Adomako* in the House of Lords, the other three appellants in the consolidated appeal having had their convictions quashed by the Court of Appeal.

[226] *R* v *DPP, ex parte Jones* [2000] Crim LR 858.

[227] [2003] QB 1203.

[228] [2005] Crim LR 389.

[229] See the discussion by J. Herring and E. Palser, 'The Duty of Care in Gross Negligence Manslaughter' [2007] Crim LR 24.

[230] Although there is an analogous concern in the criminal law governing omissions not to impose duties to act in particular situations, breach of which would have the potential to be a criminal offence, on too wide a range of persons in that situation: see A. Ashworth, 'The Scope of Criminal Liability for Omissions' (1989) 105 LQR 424.

[231] [2009] EWCA Crim 650.

[232] [1983] 2 AC 161 HL.

[233] See generally, G. Williams, 'Gross Negligence Manslaughter and Duty of Care in "Drugs" Cases: *R* v *Evans*' [2009] Crim LR 631.

[234] For the application of the 'free, deliberate, and informed' critrerion, as an indication of

when someone's intervention (including V's by e.g. self-injecting) will break the chain of causation, see the decision of the House of Lords in *Kennedy (No. 2)* [2008] 1 AC 269.

[235] [1995] 1 AC at 187.

[236] *Prentice* [1994] QB 302, at 323.

[237] [2005] 1 Cr App R 21, on which see the comments of V. Tadros, *Criminal Responsibility* (2005), 85. Another (unsuccessful) ground of appeal was that the definition of the offence is so uncertain as to be incompatible with Art. 7 of the Convention.

[238] O. Quick, 'Prosecuting "Gross" Medical Negligence: Manslaughter, Discretion and the Crown Prosecution Service' (2006) 33 JLS 421.

[239] [2000] 4 Archbold News 3.

[240] See generally C. Wells, *Corporations and Criminal Responsibility* (2nd edn., 2001); J. Gobert and M. Punch, *Rethinking Corporate Crime* (2003); and C. Wells, 'Corporate Manslaughter: Why Does Reform Matter?' (2006) 122 SALJ 646.

[241] C. Wells, 'Corporate Manslaughter: Why does Reform Matter?' (2006) 122 SALJ 646.

[242] For analysis, see J. Gobert, 'The Corporate Manslaughter and Corporate Homicide Act 2007' (2008) 71 MLR 413; D. Ormerod and R. Taylor, 'The Corporate Manslaughter and Corporate Homicide Act 2007' [2008] Crim LR 589; and C. Clarkson, 'Corporate Manslaughter: Need for a Special Offence?', in C. Clarkson and S. Cunningham, *Criminal Liability for Non-Aggressive Death* (2008).

[243] See s. 1(2) and Sch 1 to the Act.

[244] Compare the law of manslaughter by gross negligence (section 7.5(b)), where the courts have based liability on duties not recognized by the law of torts.

[245] For criticism of the 2007 Act's approach to the liability of public authorities, see J. Horder, *Homicide and the Politics of Law Reform* (2012), ch 4.

[246] Gobert, 'Corporate Manslaughter', at 418.

[247] See the discussion of *Cato* [1976] 1 WLR 110 in Chapter 4.5.

[248] See the discussion of *Kennedy (No. 2)* [2008] 1 AC 269 in Chapter 4.5.

[249] F. Wright, 'Criminal Liability of Directors and Senior Managers for Deaths at Work' [2007] Crim LR 949.

[250] See Sentencing Guidelines Council, 'Corporate Manslaughter and Health and Safety Offences causing Death' (2010).

[251] D. Ormerod, *Smith & Hogan's Criminal Law* (12th edn., 2008), 532–3.

[252] [1961] Crim LR 547.

[253] Law Com No. 304, Part 2, discussed at 7.3(b).

[254] Law Com No. 304, Part 2, paras. 3.52–56.

[255] See Chapter 3.6(r).

[256] Law Com No. 237, *Involuntary Manslaughter*, paras. 5.14–16.

[257] Law Com No. 304, paras. 3.46–49, adopting Home Office, *Reforming the Law on Involuntary Manslaughter: the Government's Proposals* (2000).

[258] For development of this view, see J. Gardner, 'On the General Part of the Criminal Law', in R. A. Duff (ed.), *Philosophy and the Criminal Law* (1998), 236–9.

[259] C. Clarkson, 'Context and Culpability in Involuntary Manslaughter', in Ashworth and Mitchell (eds), *Reforming English Homicide Law* (2000), esp. 159–63.

[260] A. Ashworth, 'A Change of Normative Position: Determining the Contours of Culpability in Criminal Law' (2008) 11 New Crim LR 232; see Chapter 3.6(q) and (r).

[261] CLRC 14th Report, para. 120.

[262] Although we should note once more the position in French under which a violent act that causes an unintended death is an offence punishable by up to three years' imprisonment: see section (a) at n 238.

[263] Law Com No. 304, paras. 3.50–60, amending only slightly Law Com No. 237, *Involuntary Manslaughter*, Part 4.

[264] Law Com No. 237, para. 5.34.

[265] This is the slight amendment made in Law Com No. 304, although it sits rather awkwardly with the Commission's view of unlawful act manslaughter. Cf. the Law Reform Commission of Ireland, *Homicide*, paras. 5.68–69, accepting a capacity requirement but not the objective risk of death.

[266] Law Com No. 237, *Involuntary Manslaughter*, para. 5.32.

[267] Cf. Law Com No. 279, *Children: their Non-Accidental Death or Serious Injury* (2003).

[268] Cf. *Crossman* (1986) 82 Cr App R 333.

[269] S. Cunningham, 'The Reality of Vehicular Homicides' [2001] Crim LR 679.

[270] [1995] 1 AC 171, discussed in part 7.5(b).

[271] Road Safety Act 2006, s. 30 (inserting a new s. 3ZA into the Road Traffic Act 1988).

[272] See now A. P. Simester and G. R. Sullivan, 'Being There' [2012] 71 CLJ 29.

[273] Roberts et al., 'Public Attitudes'.

[274] Sentencing Guidelines Council, *Causing Death by Driving Offences* (2008).

[275] Sir Brian McKenna, 'Causing Death by Reckless or Dangerous Driving: a Suggestion' [1970] Crim LR 67.

[276] Report of the Interdepartmental Committee on the Distribution of Criminal Business between the Crown Court and the Magistrates' Courts (1975), App K.

[277] 14th Report (1980), paras. 140–8.

[278] 14th Report (1980), paras. 116–23.

[279] Road Traffic Law Review (1988), ch 6.

[280] See S. Cunningham, 'Punishing Drivers who Kill: Putting Road Safety First?' (2007) 27 LS 288.

[281] For fuller argument, see the chapters by Ashworth, Duff, and Tadros in Clarkson and Cunningham, *Non-Aggressive Death*.

[282] It is not known how many cases will not involve a breach of health and safety regulations. If such cases exist, there appears to be no duty on the jury to consider the risk of death; if such cases do not exist, why beat about the bush?

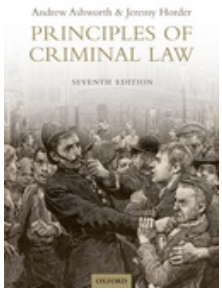
[283] See the debate between Gardner, Ashworth, and Gardner, discussed in Chapter 3.6(q) and (r).

[284] In part 4(i).

[285] Part of this argument would be that this group should includes killings reduced from murder by provocation or diminished responsibility: see Ashworth, 'Principles and Pragmatism', 340.

[286] Compare V. Tadros, 'The Limits of Manslaughter', in Clarkson and Cunningham, *Non-Aggressive Death*, 48. See also Barry Mitchell, 'More Thoughts about Unlawful and Dangerous Act Manslaughter and the One-Punch Killer' [2009] Crim LR 502.

[287] M. Hirst, 'Causing Death by Driving and Other Offences: a Question of Balance' [2008] Crim LR.



Principles of Criminal Law (7th edn)

Andrew Ashworth and Jeremy Horder

Publisher: Oxford University Press
Print ISBN-13: 9780199672684
DOI: 10.1093/he/9780199672684.001.0001

Print Publication Date: May 2013
Published online: Sep 2013

8. Non-Fatal Violations of the Person

Chapter: (p. 307) 8. Non-Fatal Violations of the Person
Author(s): Andrew Ashworth and Jeremy Horder
DOI: 10.1093/he/9780199672684.003.0008

8.1 Introduction: varieties of physical violation
8.2 Reported physical violations
8.3 Offences of non-fatal physical violation
8.4 Reported sexual assaults
8.5 Non-consensual sexual violation
8.6 Offences against the vulnerable
8.7 Other sexual offences
8.8 Re-assessing sexual offences law
Further reading

8.1 Introduction: varieties of physical violation

In this chapter we shall be discussing two main forms of physical violation: the use of physical

force, and sexual interference. There may be considerable variations of degree: physical force can be anything from a mere push to a brutal beating which leaves the victim close to death, and sexual interference may be anything from a brief touching to a gross form of sexual violation. One problem for the criminal law, therefore, is how to grade the seriousness of the various forms of conduct: to have just a single offence of non-fatal harm and a single offence of sexual violation would contravene both the principle of fair labelling (see Chapter 3.6(s)) and the principle of maximum certainty (see Chapter 3.5(i)). Not only would it be contrary to principle, but it would also leave little to be decided at the trial and would transfer the effective decision to the sentencing stage.

The scheme of the chapter is to discuss non-fatal physical offences (offences against the person) first, including the contested question of the limits of consent, and possible reforms of the law. The second half of the chapter is devoted to the law of sexual offences under the Sexual Offences Act 2003, focusing on the main offences and the definition of consent, and concluding with a review of the law's successes and failures.

(p. 308) 8.2 Reported physical violations

Crimes of violence constitute about 22 per cent of all crimes reported to, and recorded by, the police, with sexual offences constituting 1 per cent. Figures from the British Crime Survey 2012 show that, although the overall number of incidents of violent crimes doubled between 1981 and 1996, since then the number has declined. Slowly but steadily, the number of recorded crimes has come down by over 30 per cent to just below the number recording in 1981. Around 42 per cent of all incidents of violence involve no injury, and around 22 per cent involve an assault causing only minor injury.[1] Studies have begun to uncover the full extent of so-called ‘domestic’ violence as a proportion of violence in general,[2] but although police forces are moving towards more consistent policies of recording such incidents and dealing with them as true offences of violence,[3] different approaches are still found.[4] The British Crime Survey for 2012 puts the percentage of reported incidents of domestic violence at 14 per cent. Much of the violence that occurs takes place in the street, around transport facilities, or in pubs and clubs, the vast majority of both involving young men. In that regard, violent crime is committed in roughly equal proportions by strangers to, as by acquaintances of, the victim. It seems that the use of a weapon is important in determining the legal classification of offences (not surprisingly, since offences involving weapons may tend to have more serious consequences): some three-quarters of the serious woundings involved a weapon, whereas the proportion was only one-fifth for the less serious offences.[5]

Two particular points may be made about offences of physical violation. First, there is evidence of a strong correlation between drinking and violence. The 2007–8 British Crime Survey found that the victim said the offender was under the influence of drink in 45 per cent of cases and under the influence of drugs in a further 19 per cent of violent incidents, with higher averages in cases of stranger violence.[6] Even though most drinkers do not erupt into violence, the figures make it clear that the special rules relating to fault and intoxication, discussed in Chapter 6.2, come into play frequently. Thus in Nigel Fielding's research into cases of violence that come to court, the defendant had been intoxicated at the time of the alleged offence in about a third of his sample of cases, and usually the degree of intoxication was considerable.[7] A second general (p. 309) point is that many offences of violence have

consequences for the victim which extend well beyond any injury caused. There are psychological effects of fear and depression, which may significantly impair the victim's enjoyment of life long after the physical wounds have healed. Such effects are well-documented in the case of female victims of 'domestic' violence,[8] but many other victims of violence suffer lasting social and psychological effects stemming from the offence and from other circumstances (e.g. intimidation, long periods off work) that may follow it.[9]

The values which underlie the offences of physical violation are reflected in various Convention rights, such as Art. 3 (the right not to be subjected to 'torture or inhuman or degrading treatment'), Art. 5 (the right to liberty and security of person), and Art. 8 (the right to respect for one's private life). The principle of individual autonomy makes its influence felt here, in the sense that one should have the liberty to decide for oneself the level of pain to which one subjects one's body (e.g. in sport, or for pure recreation). Central to this is the issue of the extent to which individuals may lawfully consent to the infliction of harm or injury on their bodies, which (as we shall see) raises questions about the justifications for state interference with the right to respect for one's private life in Art. 8.

8.3 Offences of non-fatal physical violation

We have seen something of the various situations in which non-fatal physical harm might occur. How does the law classify its offences? How should it respond to these various invasions of physical integrity? One approach would be to create separate offences to cover different ways of causing injury and different situations in which violence occurs. This was the nineteenth century English approach, and many such offences still survive in the Offences Against the Person Act 1861 (relating, for example, to injuries caused by gunpowder, throwing corrosive fluid, failing to provide food for apprentices, setting spring guns). A second approach would be to attempt to rank the offences by reference to the degree of harm caused and the degree of fault in the person causing it. The 1861 Act also contains some offences of this kind, but, as we shall see below, its ranking is impaired by obscure terms, uncertainties in the fault requirements, and some overlapping. Thorough reform of the law is long overdue, and will be discussed in subsection (l). A significant development in practice has been the promulgation, by the police and the Crown Prosecution Service, of charging standards for the various offences against the person.[10] The expressed aim is to improve fairness **(p. 310)** to defendants, through greater uniformity of approach to charging, and to make the criminal justice system more efficient by ensuring that the appropriate charges are laid at the outset. The guidance will be referred to as each offence is discussed, although its impact in practice is difficult to assess.

(a) Attempted murder

If we were to construct a 'ladder' of non-fatal offences, starting with the most serious and moving down to the least serious, the offence of attempted murder should be placed at the top. There is an immediate paradox here: attempted murder may not involve the infliction of any harm at all, since a person who shoots at another and misses may still be held guilty of attempted murder. What distinguishes this offence is proof of an intent to kill, not the occurrence of any particular harm. The fault element for attempted murder is therefore high—higher than for murder, under English law, since murder may be committed by someone who

merely intended to cause really serious injury and not death.[11] Nothing less than an intention to kill suffices to convict someone of attempted murder.[12] Beyond that, all that is necessary is proof that D did something which was 'more than merely preparatory' towards the murder.[13] Although a conviction is perfectly possible where no harm results—and such a case might still be regarded as a most serious non-fatal offence, since D tried to cause death—there are also cases where D's attempt to kill results in serious injury to the victim. In such cases a prosecution might be brought for attempted murder—and will succeed if the intention to kill can be proved. However, the court might not be satisfied of that 'beyond reasonable doubt', and might find that D only intended to cause grievous bodily harm. In that event, the conviction will be for the offence of causing grievous bodily harm with intent, but both offences carry the same maximum punishment—life imprisonment.[14]

(b) Wounding or causing grievous bodily harm with intent

Section 18 of the Offences Against the Person Act 1861 creates a serious offence which may be committed in a number of different ways. There are two alternative forms of conduct, and either of two forms of intent will suffice. The conduct may be either causing a wound or causing grievous bodily harm. A wound has been defined as an **(p. 311)** injury which breaks both the outer and inner skin. A bruise or a burst blood-vessel in an eye does not amount to a wound,[15] whereas this requirement of the offence may be fulfilled by a rather minor cut. Grievous bodily harm is much more serious, although it has never been defined with any precision and the authoritative description is 'really serious harm'.[16] The harm does not have to be life-threatening or permanent, but it takes far less to cause serious harm to a young child or vulnerable person than to an adult in full health.[17] The harm may be a sexually transmitted disease with significant effects: the old case of *Clarence* (1888)[18] was against this, but *Dica* (2004)[19] establishes that infection with HIV can amount to grievous bodily harm. The CPS guidance refers to injuries resulting in permanent disability or loss of sensory function, non-minor permanent visible disfigurement, broken or displaced limbs or bones, injuries which cause substantial loss of blood, and injuries resulting in lengthy treatment or incapacity.

Does the concept of 'bodily harm' extend to harm to the mind? This question has been raised in a number of cases of stalking and, although there is now specific legislation on stalking,[20] the substantive issue remains important under the 1861 Act. In *Ireland and Burstow* (1998)[21] the House of Lords heard appeals in two cases in which the defendants had repeatedly made silent telephone calls to their victims. Burstow had been convicted under s. 20 of the 1861 Act, of which grievous bodily harm is an element, and the House of Lords confirmed that 'bodily harm' includes any recognizable psychiatric injury. The House adopted the distinction, drawn by Hobhouse LJ in *Chan-Fook*,[22] between 'mere emotions such as distress or panic', which are not sufficient, and 'states of mind that are … evidence of some identifiable clinical condition', which may be sufficient if supported by psychiatric evidence.[23] What must be proved, under either s. 18 or s. 20, is that the psychiatric injury was 'really serious'.

Turning to the fault requirements, the one most commonly relied on in prosecutions is 'with intent to cause grievous bodily harm'. The meaning of 'intention' here is the same as outlined earlier.[24] Where an attack involves the use of a weapon,[25] that may make it easier to establish the relevant intention. On the other hand, where psychiatric injury is alleged, it may be more difficult to prove that D intended to cause really serious harm of that kind. If the prosecution fails to establish intention, the offence will be reduced to the lower category, to be considered

in section 8.3(c), so long as recklessness is proved. However, there is an alternative fault element for s. 18: 'with intent to prevent the lawful apprehension or detainer of any person'. Whilst the policy of this (p. 312) requirement—classifying attacks on persons engaged in law enforcement as especially serious—is perfectly understandable, one result of the wording of s. 18 of the 1861 Act is that D can be convicted of this offence (with a maximum penalty of life imprisonment) if he intends to resist arrest and is merely reckless as to causing harm to the police officer.[26] It seems that consequences so serious as grievous bodily harm need not have been foreseen or foreseeable in this type of case,[27] which confirms this element of the crime as a stark example of constructive criminal liability.[28]

(c) Intentionally or recklessly inflicting a wound or 'gbh'

Section 20 of the Offences Against the Person Act 1861 creates the offence of unlawfully and maliciously wounding or inflicting grievous bodily harm. The conduct element in this offence is similar to that for the more serious offence under s. 18, and the meanings of 'wound' and 'grievous bodily harm' are no different.[29] Considerable attention has been focused on the distinction between *causing* grievous bodily harm (s. 18) and *inflicting* grievous bodily harm (s. 20). Critics have long argued that it is illogical for the more serious offence to have the wider causal basis, but John Gardner has countered that it is perfectly rational to allow a wide causal basis (cause) when the fault element is narrow (intent) whilst restricting the causal basis (inflict) when the fault element is much wider (recklessness).[30] However, the exact meaning of the more restrictive word 'inflict' in s. 20 is controversial. For many years it was believed to require proof of a sufficiently direct action by D to constitute an assault. This was decided in the leading case of *Clarence* (1888),[31] where D had communicated venereal disease to his wife during intercourse that was held to be consensual. As she consented, there was no assault, and so there could be no 'inflicting' within s. 20. A number of other decisions overlooked this requirement: convictions were returned in *Martin* (1881)[32] for harm caused by placing a bar across the exit to a theatre and shouting 'Fire!', and in *Cartledge* v *Allen* (1973)[33] for injury to a hand when a man threatened by D ran off and smashed into a glass door, although in neither case was there a clear assault. However, the House of Lords in *Wilson* (1984)[34] and subsequent cases[35] has decided that there can be an 'infliction' of grievous bodily harm without proof of an assault. The (p. 313) decisions are unsatisfactory in their reasoning,[36] but may be explained as an attempt by the judiciary to improve the workability of a mid-Victorian statute.

The main difference between ss. 18 and 20 lies in the fault element, and it is a considerable difference. Section 18 requires nothing less than proof of an intention to do grievous bodily harm (apart from in cases of resisting arrest). Section 20 is satisfied by proof of intention but also by proof of recklessness, in the advertent sense of the conscious taking of an unjustified risk.[37] The fault element in s. 20 was broadened by the decision in *Mowatt* (1968).[38] The Court of Appeal held that there is no need to prove intention or recklessness as to wounding or grievous bodily harm themselves, so long as the court is satisfied that D was reckless as to *some* physical harm to some person, albeit of a minor character. This broad fault element—which goes against what might be an ordinary language reading of the wording of s. 20—has nonetheless been approved by the House of Lords.[39] Further, it must be kept in mind that the requirement for proof of recklessness is a requirement for proof only that there was foresight on D's part that his or her act *might* cause some harm.[40] The *Mowatt* extension is another example of constructive liability, and it complicates the process of developing out of the 1861

legislation a ‘ladder’ of offences graded in terms of relative seriousness. However, even without the *Mowatt* extension, one might ask whether the distinction between the intention only offence (s. 18) and the intention or recklessness offence (s. 20) in crimes of violence, which are often impulsive reactions to events, is so wide as to warrant the difference in maximum penalties between life imprisonment and five years’ imprisonment.[41]

(d) Aggravated assaults

Common assault is the lowest rung of the ‘ladder’ of non-fatal offences, with a maximum penalty of six months’ imprisonment, and it is discussed in more detail in (e). Beyond common assault, certain assaults are singled out by the law as aggravated—assault with intent to rob, assault with intent to prevent arrest, assault occasioning actual bodily harm, racially or religiously aggravated assaults, and assault on a constable. Each of these will be discussed in turn.

Assault with intent to rob, like robbery, carries a maximum of life imprisonment;[42] it is, in effect, an offence of attempted robbery. *Assault with intent to resist arrest* or to (p. 314) prevent a lawful arrest, contrary to s. 38 of the 1861 Act, carries a maximum penalty of two years’ imprisonment and may be charged where an assault on the police results in a minor injury.

A third form of aggravated assault, which is usually regarded as representing the rung of the ‘ladder’ below recklessly inflicting a wound or grievous bodily harm (contrary to s. 20) but above common assault, is *assault occasioning actual bodily harm* (contrary to s. 47). The conduct element of ‘actual bodily harm’ has been given the wide definition of ‘any hurt or injury calculated to interfere with the health or comfort of the victim’ so long as it is not merely ‘transient or trifling’.[43] However, in *Chan-Fook* (1994)[44] the Court of Appeal held that in most cases the words ‘actual bodily harm’ should be left undefined. Where there is no bodily contact it may be necessary to elaborate somewhat, but, as the House of Lords confirmed in *Ireland and Burstow*,[45] it should be made clear that any psychological effect on the victim must amount to psychiatric injury before it can fall within s. 47. Merely causing a hysterical or nervous condition is no longer sufficient.[46] This is a controversial restriction, even if it is arguably inherent in the word ‘bodily’, since research shows that immediate fright and lasting fear are produced by many attacks.[47] Harm of this magnitude ought to be given some recognition, but the courts have emphasized that only a clinical psychiatric condition, supported by expert evidence, falls within s. 47.[48] However, a kick that causes temporary unconsciousness has been held to be within s. 47, since it involves ‘an injurious impairment to the victim's sensory functions’.[49] The CPS guidance states that s. 47 should be charged where there is loss or breaking of a tooth, temporary loss of sensory function, extensive or multiple bruising, broken nose, minor fractures, minor cuts requiring stitches, and (reflecting *Chan-Fook*) psychiatric injury which is more than fear, distress, or panic.

The fault requirement for the offence of assault occasioning actual bodily harm reveals that it is an offence of constructive liability. All that needs to be established is the fault required for common assault, i.e. intent or recklessness as to an imminent unlawful touching or use of force.[50] This clearly breaches the principle of correspondence (Chapter 3.6(q)). The Court of Appeal tried to remedy this deficiency, but the House of Lords overruled it.[51] Constructive liability therefore remains: a person who risks a minor assault may be held guilty of a more

serious offence if 'actual bodily harm' happens to result. Moreover, the maximum penalty for the s. 47 offence is five years' (p. 315) imprisonment, with no apparent justification for the strange approach of making the penalty equivalent to the higher offence on the 'ladder' (the s. 20 offence), and the fault requirement equivalent to the lower offence on the 'ladder' (common assault, with a maximum of six months' imprisonment).[52]

A fourth form of aggravated assault is where an offence of assault occasioning actual bodily harm is *racially or religiously aggravated*. This is one of a group of aggravated offences created in order to signal the social seriousness of assaults that are either accompanied by, or motivated by, racial or religious hostility.[53] The essence of these offences 'is the denial of equal respect and dignity to people who are seen as "other"'.[54] The offence contrary to s. 28(1)(a) of the Crime and Disorder Act 1998 is committed when, at the time of the relevant offence (assault, and the offences contrary to s. 20 and s. 47 are included), the offender demonstrates racial or religious hostility towards V based on V's membership of a racial or religious group. The question of whether such hostility was demonstrated is an objective one for the jury. In *Rogers*, the House of Lords adopted a broad approach to the notion of race, holding that calling a group of women 'foreigners' when assaulting them demonstrated hostility based on a racial group. By contrast, the offence contrary to s. 28(1)(b) of the 1998 Act is subjective in nature. It is committed when the relevant offence is wholly or partly motivated by hostility towards members of a racial or religious group based on their membership of that group.[55] The effect of the aggravation is to raise the maximum penalty from five to seven years.

Brief mention should also be made of the offence, in s. 89 of the Police Act 1996, of *assaulting a police officer in the execution of his or her duty*. Procedurally speaking, this is not an aggravated assault, since it carries the same maximum penalty as common assault (six months' imprisonment) and is also triable summarily only. However, in practice the courts tend to impose higher sentences for assaults on the police, and it is therefore worth noting that this offence is committed even though D was unaware that he was striking a police officer. A decision by a single trial judge in 1865[56] is still regarded as authority for this proposition, but there is surely little justification for this today. The Draft Criminal Code is right to require actual or reckless knowledge that the person being assaulted is a constable,[57] leaving the possibility of conviction for common assault in other cases.

(p. 316) (e) Common assault

The lowest offence on the 'ladder' is what is known as common assault. Strictly speaking, the term 'assault' is used here in its generic sense, as including two separate crimes—assault and battery. In simple terms, battery is the touching or application of unlawful force to another person, whereas assault consists of causing another person to apprehend or expect a touching or application of unlawful force. Most batteries involve an assault, and in both popular and legal language the term 'assault' is often used generically to include batteries. However, the Divisional Court in *DPP* v *Little* (1992)[58] held not only that the two offences are separate in law but also that they are statutory offences and not, as had been assumed, still offences at common law. Each offence is properly charged under s. 39 of the Criminal Justice Act 1988, which provides that they are triable summarily only with a maximum penalty of six months' imprisonment. We discuss battery first, and then assault.

The essence of a *battery* is any touching or application of unlawful force to another. Examples might include a push, a kiss, touching another's hair, touching another's clothing,[59] or throwing a projectile or water which lands on another person's body.

Is it right that the criminal law should extend to mere touchings, however trivial? The traditional justification is that there is no other sensible dividing line, and that this at least declares the law's regard for the physical integrity of citizens. As Blackstone put it: 'the law cannot draw the line between different degrees of violence, and therefore totally prohibits the first and lowest stage of it; every man's person being sacred, and no other having a right to meddle with it, in any the slightest manner'.[60] It is strange, then, that the draft Criminal Code defines assault in terms of applying force to, or causing an 'impact' on the body of, another.[61] Would that include or exclude stroking another's hair or clothing? Individuals have a right not to be touched if they do not wish to be touched, since the body is private. Someone who knowingly touches V without V's consent violates this personal right as surely as if he had taken V's property, but does he use 'force'? The difficulty is most evident in cases of sexual assault, which may be committed by the least unwanted touching or stroking of one person's body by another. These are culpable acts, often regarded as being more serious than thefts of property. Should it be made clear that the offence really concerns the invasion of another's right not to be touched or violated in any way—a right not to suffer trespass to the person—and not necessarily an offence of 'violence'?[62] One consequence of defining the offence so widely is that reliance is placed on prosecutorial discretion to keep minor incidents out of court. The CPS guidance attempts to structure that discretion, but focuses more (p. 317) on the dividing line between s. 39 and s. 47. It states that 'although any injury can be classified as actual bodily harm, the appropriate charge will be contrary to s. 39 where injuries amount to no more than the following—grazes, scratches, abrasions, minor bruising, swellings, reddening of the skin, superficial cuts, a "black eye"'.

One disputed point about the ambit of the offence of battery is whether it can be committed by the indirect application of force, such as by digging a hole for someone to fall into. There are long-standing judicial dicta in favour of liability in these circumstances,[63] and the decision in *DPP* v *K* (1990)[64] now supports them. In this case a schoolboy, frightened that he might be found in possession of acid that he had taken out of a laboratory, concealed it in a hot air drier. Before he could remove it, another boy used the drier and suffered burns on his face. Parker LJ held that K had 'just as truly assault[ed] the next user of the machine as if he had himself switched the machine on'.[65] There are firm statements in two House of Lords decisions that are inconsistent with the possibility of an indirect battery,[66] but the Divisional Court continues to decide otherwise. Thus in *DPP* v *Santana-Bermudez* (2004)[67] a police officer asked D, before searching him, if he had any needles on him, and D falsely said that he had not. The officer put her hands into a pocket and her finger was pierced by a needle. The Court applied the principle in *Miller*[68] to hold that, since D had created the danger, his failure to avert the danger and its resultant materialization were capable of fulfilling the conduct requirement of battery.

Another problem is that, if the offence is defined so as to include all touchings to which the victim does not consent, it seems difficult to exclude everyday physical contact with others. This could be resolved by assuming that all citizens impliedly consent to those touchings which are incidental to ordinary everyday life and travel; but the judicial preference seems to be to create an exception for 'all physical contact which is generally acceptable in the

ordinary conduct of daily life'.[69] The cases decide that this exception extends to touching a person in order to attract attention, although there can be no exception when the person touched has made it clear that he or she does not wish to be touched again. The problem arose in *Collins* v *Wilcock* (1984),[70] where a police officer, not empowered to arrest D, touched D in order to attract her attention and then subsequently took hold of D's arm. D proceeded to scratch the police officer's arm, having previously made it clear—in colourful language—that she did not wish to talk to the police officer. The Divisional Court quashed D's conviction for assaulting **(p. 318)** a police officer in the execution of her duty, on the ground that the officer herself had assaulted D by taking hold of D's arm. The key issue here was D's obvious refusal of consent to any touching; in other cases there might be a question of whether the touching goes 'beyond generally acceptable standards of conduct'.[71] A number of decisions have suggested what appears to be an alternative approach: to ask whether D's touching was 'hostile'. This seems to be an inferior method of identifying the boundaries of permissible conduct. There has been disagreement whether this requirement forms part of the criminal law,[72] and the House of Lords applied it in *Brown* [73] whilst emptying it of almost all significance.

The essence of the crime of *assault*, as distinct from battery, is that it consists of causing apprehension of an immediate touching or application of unlawful force. It is therefore possible to have a battery without an assault (e.g. where D touches V from behind), as well as an assault without a battery (e.g. where D threatens to strike V but is prevented from doing so), but most cases involve both. Two disputed questions—whether words alone can constitute an assault, and how imminent the threatened force needs to be—have recently received considerable judicial and academic attention. The preponderance of authority until recently was that mere words, unaccompanied by any threatening conduct, could not amount to an assault,[74] but this was unsatisfactory if a primary purpose of the offence was to penalize the deliberate or reckless creation of fear of attack. As Lord Steyn put the point in *Ireland and Burstow*:[75]

> There is no reason why something said should be incapable of causing an apprehension of immediate personal violence, e.g. a man accosting a woman in a dark alley saying 'come with me or I will stab you.' I would, therefore, reject the proposition that an assault can never be committed by words.

In that case the argument was taken further, by recognizing that a person who makes silent telephone calls may also satisfy the conduct requirement for assault. The emphasis is now rightly placed on the intended or risked *effect* of what D did, rather than on the precise method chosen.[76]

That leaves the question of how immediate or imminent the threatened violence needs to be. In one case the Divisional Court held that assault was committed where a woman was frightened by the sight of a man looking in through the window of her house,[77] although there seems to have been little suggestion that the man was threatening to **(p. 319)** apply force either immediately or at all. The decision might be explained as a pragmatic attempt to remedy the absence of an offence which penalizes such 'peeping toms'.[78] Similarly in *Logdon* v *DPP* (1976)[79] D showed the victim a pistol in his desk drawer and said that it was loaded, and the

Divisional Court held that this was an assault even though D had not handled the gun or pointed it. Presumably the threat was thought sufficiently immediate. Also in this case, D knew that the gun was a replica and was unloaded, but his actions and words caused the victim to believe otherwise. The fact that no harm was likely is immaterial, since the essence of the offence is the causing of apprehension in the victim.[80] The question of immediacy has been raised sharply by the cases of silent telephone calls, but not answered clearly. In *Ireland and Burstow* [81] Lord Steyn held that a caller who says 'I will be at your door in a minute or two' could satisfy the requirement of immediacy or imminence (Lord Steyn appeared to use the terms interchangeably), and that by the same token a silent caller who causes the victim to fear that he may arrive at her door soon could also satisfy the requirement. Lord Hope concluded that repeated silent telephone calls could satisfy the conduct requirement in assault if they created an apprehension of immediate violence.[82]

The question was raised more directly in *Constanza* (1997),[83] particularly in respect of a letter put through V's door by D which caused V to fear that D had 'flipped' and might become violent at any time. D lived fairly close to V. The Court of Appeal contrasted a case where the feared violence would not occur before a time in the distant future, which would fall outside the definition of assault, and held that it would be sufficient 'if the Crown has proved a fear of violence at some time not excluding the immediate future'. In that case the appeal against conviction was dismissed. In *Ireland and Burstow* the House of Lords failed to discuss the *Constanza* test, but the two decisions taken together suggest a loosening of the 'imminence' requirement and perhaps the gentle drift of assault towards an offence of creating fear that does not require proof of a clinical psychiatric condition or proof of immediacy in a strict sense.[84]

The fault element required for assault and battery is either intention or advertent recklessness as to the respective conduct elements.[85] The offence is summary only but, where the offence is racially or religiously aggravated,[86] it becomes triable in the Crown Court and has the higher maximum penalty of two years' imprisonment.

(p. 320) **(f) Questions of consent**

In order to explain why offences of violence are regarded so seriously, reference has been made to the principle of individual autonomy. Individual autonomy has both positive and negative aspects: on the one hand it argues for liberty from attack or interference, whereas on the other hand it argues for the liberty to do with one's body as one wishes. In principle, just as the owner of property can consent to someone destroying or damaging that property,[87] so individuals may consent to the infliction of physical harm on themselves. We shall see below that consent may constitute the difference between the sexual expression of shared love between two people and serious offences such as rape or sexual penetration.[88] Should consent be given the same powerful role in relation to non-fatal injuries?[89] If a person wishes to give up her or his physical integrity in certain circumstances, or to risk it for the sake of sport or excitement, should the other person's infliction of harm on the willing recipient be criminalized?

A preliminary point in answering this question is whether the absence of consent is an element in the offence or the presence of consent is a defence. It seems more sensible to adopt the former alternative in relation to sexual offences. It would seem odd to suggest that every act of

sexual intercourse constitutes the whole conduct element of rape, to which the consent of the 'victim' then provides a defence.[90] Similarly, touchings between lovers, whether or not they might be labelled 'sexual', are surely not *prima facie* wrongs. So it is preferable to understand battery as an (unlawful) touching or application of force without the consent of the person touched. The defendant would normally raise the issue of consent, where relevant, but it should be for the prosecution to disprove it beyond reasonable doubt. The same burden of proof is borne where the defendant argues that the force was lawful, e.g. in self-defence. It is sometimes considered that self-defence and consent involve, in law, 'justifications' for conduct: in particular, some judges have fallen into the error of believing that recognition of consent implies approval of the conduct involved.[91] In fact, this analysis mis-characterizes both defences, which have both been referred to in this work as involving 'permissions'. Something may be permissible, in law, even if in morality it is the wrong thing to do. In the case of consent, the law's respect for someone's autonomy means that harmful but consensual conduct may be permitted, so long as it is freely participated in by **(p. 321)** the parties (or willingly endured by one party),[92] even if that conduct provides no benefit to those involved or to others. What the law claims is that respect for individual autonomy is right, not that the conduct which then takes place is right.[93]

The ambit of effective consent in non-fatal offences remains a matter of common law, and it has been determined by the answer of the judges to three questions. First, what counts as consent to physical interference? Secondly, of what offences is the absence of consent an element? Thirdly, even when it is not an element in an offence, can consent be relevant in limited circumstances? The answer to the first question has been altered by recent decisions on the communication of HIV. The old case of *Clarence* (1888)[94] had held that, if V knew that she was consenting to sexual intercourse, her unawareness that D had a sexually transmitted disease did not negative that consent. This was so, even though the charge was inflicting grievous bodily harm, and she would clearly not have agreed if she had known the true facts. In *Dica* (2004)[95] the Court of Appeal held that consent to sex did not imply consent to bodily harm from a sexually transmitted disease, and that *Clarence* should not be followed. The crucial question of when consent is taken to be present was soon revisited in *Konzani* (2005),[96] where D (who knew he was HIV positive) had unprotected sex with three people without informing them of his condition. The Court of Appeal held that only fully informed consent will suffice, and that this means that if the other party is not aware of D's condition there can be no valid consent to the transmission of the disease. The Court claimed that it was upholding the principle of autonomy in its decision, but this is a contentious proposition. On the one hand, the decision is faithful to the view that (very broadly speaking) in supposedly consensual dealings between persons there is a duty to disclose facts known to be relevant to a person's willingness to enter into those dealings, if the person ignorant of those facts may otherwise suffer harm or loss.[97] On the other hand, the value in such an intensely personal and private matter as sexual intercourse has a fragile basis, one that is easily undermined by legal intrusiveness in a way that the value of the relationship between (say) buyers and sellers or trustees and beneficiaries is not. For that reason, one might take the more 'risk-positive' view that, if V has unprotected **(p. 322)** sex with D without asking D any questions about his sexual health, V is exercising autonomy by taking a well-known risk of a sexually transmitted disease. The Court's decision, though, is more risk-neutral: in effect, D must disclose his condition to V so that V can take an informed decision, and failure to do so means that no valid consent from V can be forthcoming. Thus the Court imposes the duty on D. It may be, though,

that D must also be shown to have some understanding of the modes of transmission of HIV, before a duty to disclose can arise.[98] There will be further discussion of the effect of fraud and threats on consent and autonomy, in the context of sexual offences.[99]

The answer to the second question has also become clearer in recent years, chiefly as a result of three decisions. In *Attorney General's Reference (No. 1 of 1980)*,[100] the reference concerned a fight in the street between two youths to settle an argument. The essence of the Court of Appeal's answer was that 'it is not in the public interest that people should try to cause or should cause each other actual bodily harm for no good reason'. In other words, the Court held that, if the fight merely involves assault or battery, consent can be effective as a defence. But if the results constitute actual bodily harm—which, as we saw in subsection (d), extends to 'any hurt or injury calculated to interfere with the health or comfort of the victim'[101]—consent cannot be a defence. In *Attorney General's Reference (No. 1 of 1980)* Lord Lane CJ suggested that it was sufficient if actual bodily harm was caused, even if D did not intend that consequence, but in *Meachen* [102] the Court of Appeal held that D must intend or be reckless as to actual bodily harm. Thus, where D had consensually penetrated V's anus with his finger for their sexual gratification, his conviction under s. 20 (she suffered serious anal injury) was quashed because he only foresaw a simple assault and her consent to that was valid. These decisions continue to place the dividing line between actual bodily harm (presence of consent generally irrelevant) and assault and battery (absence of consent an element). This dividing line was attacked by counsel for the appellants in *Brown* (1994),[103] but by a majority of three to two the House of Lords confirmed it. Whilst Lords Mustill and Slynn (dissenting) took the view that the absence of consent should be an element in any offence not involving grievous bodily harm, the majority rejected this change as unwise and unworkable.[104] The general rule is thus that consent may negative assault or battery, but not a more serious offence.

Thirdly, in what circumstances can consent be relevant, exceptionally, in relation to harms that might otherwise amount to assault occasioning actual bodily harm or even **(p. 323)** a more serious offence? The best-known modern statement of the position is that of Lord Lane CJ in *Attorney-General's Reference (No. 6 of 1980)*:

> Nothing which we have said is intended to cast doubt on the accepted legality of properly conducted games and sports, lawful chastisement or correction, reasonable surgical interference, dangerous exhibitions, etc. These apparent exceptions can be justified as involving the exercise of a legal right, in the case of chastisement or correction, or as needed in the public interest, in the other cases.[105]

The closing words of this passage demonstrate the unsatisfactory basis of the prevailing judicial approach. How can it be said that dangerous exhibitions such as circus acts or trying to vault over twelve buses on a motorcycle are 'needed in the public interest'? The Supreme Court of Canada has attempted to answer this question by suggesting that stuntmen who agree to perform daredevil activities are engaged 'in the creation of a socially valuable cultural product', with benefits 'for the good of the people involved, and often for a wider group of people as well'.[106] This is far less convincing than an approach that begins with the high value placed on individual autonomy and liberty, and then examines reasons why particular consensual activities should be criminalized by way of exception to the general principle. This

would require judges to look for distinct reasons for criminalizing particular consensual conduct, rather than holding it all to be criminal and then finding exceptions by dint of overblown claims about what is 'needed' in the public interest.

If we examine the exceptional categories in turn, cases of lawful chastisement do not belong here: they are hardly consensual, and in any event are subject to legal restrictions.[107] Cases of reasonable surgical interference encompass all the usual medical operations,[108] but there are unanswered questions about non-essential interference such as plastic surgery (a proper manifestation of individual choice and autonomy?) and about the treatment of various disorders that can result in the voluntary amputations of limbs.[109] The exceptional category of sport has attracted many prosecutions in recent years arising from rugby and association football, but in the leading case of *Barnes* (2005)[110] the Court of Appeal re-asserted the proposition that not every 'foul' committed in breach of the rules amounts to a crime. It is assumed that players do, and may lawfully, consent to physical force over and above the minimum permitted by the rules. This does not exclude the possibility of convictions for the use of physical force well beyond that which may reasonably be expected in a game: the borderline is vague, but courts should decide particular cases by reference to the degree of violence used, its relation to the play in the game, any evidence of intent, and so on. It is sometimes thought that an intent to cause injury carries a case across the threshold into **(p. 324)** criminality,[111] but there are examples (such as some short-pitched bowling in cricket) where that would lead to unexpected liability. Moreover, in boxing this is surely what each boxer is trying to do. However, it would be wrong to take the legality of boxing as a benchmark: as more is known about the incidence of brain damage among boxers, and as more deaths result from boxing, the question why boxing is still lawful needs to be approached with circumspection and without preconceptions.[112]

We now turn to two categories that were not mentioned in the passage from Lord Lane's judgment, 'horseplay' and sado-masochism. In *Jones* (1986)[113] the Court of Appeal held that schoolchildren could validly consent to 'rough and undisciplined play' so long as there was no intention to cause injury thereby. In that case boys were tossed in the air by others, and injuries were sustained when the others failed to catch them as they fell. This 'horseplay' exception was taken much further in *Aitken* (1992),[114] where officers in the RAF had been drinking and then began various mess games and pranks. At one stage they poured white spirit on the flying suits of some officers who were asleep and set fire to them, dousing the flames with no ill effects. They then seized V, who resisted only weakly, and poured white spirit on his flying suit. When they lit it, he was engulfed in flames and suffered 35 per cent burns. The Courts Martial Appeal Court quashed their convictions for inflicting grievous bodily harm, contrary to s. 20 of the 1861 Act. The reason for the decision was chiefly the judge advocate's failure to direct the jury clearly that a mistaken belief in consent would provide a defence. This implies that actual consent would have provided a defence to conduct that would otherwise amount to inflicting grievous bodily harm.

Before commenting on the 'horseplay' exception recognized in *Jones* and *Aitken*, it is appropriate to move on to the leading case on sado-masochism, *Brown* (1994).[115] Here five men were convicted of assault occasioning actual bodily harm, and three of them also of unlawful wounding.[116] They were found to have indulged in various homosexual sado-masochistic practices in private, involving the infliction of injuries on one another but not requiring medical treatment. Having failed to persuade a majority of the House of Lords to

accept that the absence of consent should be an element in the offences of actual bodily harm or unlawful wounding, the appellants' second argument was that consensual sado-masochism should be recognized as an exceptional category. This was rejected by the Court of Appeal, according to which, 'the satisfying of sado-masochistic libido does not come within the category of good reason'[117]—and fared no better with a majority of the House of Lords. Lord Templeman condemned the 'violence' and 'cruelty' of what the defendants had done;[118] Lord Lowry referred to their desire to 'satisfy a perverted and depraved sexual desire';[119] Lord Jauncey (p. 325) was particularly exercised by the possibility that others might follow the defendants' example if their convictions were not upheld. That is a controversial matter for a judge to take into account, in this context, because in composing judgments judges are in a good position neither reliably to assess the future impact of legal decision-making on private or social activity, nor to weigh the competing considerations with the benefit of empirical evidence and input from expert groups: these are all better seen as matters for Parliament.[120] What emerges from these three speeches is an overwhelming distaste for the defendants' activities, and a determination to describe it in language designed to produce the conclusion that it should be criminalized. However, a court that looked for good reason for regarding the conduct as lawful might well find the task more difficult than one which looked for good reason to criminalize conduct that was private, consensual, and imposed no burden on the health service. This point emerges with clarity from the dissenting speech of Lord Mustill, who argued that the case was really about the criminalization of 'private sexual relations', and that the proper question was whether the public interest required this. He, like his fellow dissentient Lord Slynn, found no compelling reasons for criminal liability. To characterize the conduct as 'violence' helped the majority judges to their conclusion; if the infliction of pain had been recognized as a desired part of a consensual sexual experience, the approach should have been different.[121]

Beneath all these particular situations there are conflicting values which claim the law's attention. Respect for the principle of individual autonomy suggests that the liberty to submit to (the risk of) injury, however serious, ought also to be respected. It is an aspect of self-determination The point is conceded, so the argument might run, in the fact that suicide is no longer an offence, and it should therefore follow that consent to injury should negative any offence. That argument may not be decisive, though, because suicide assisted by another is a criminal offence,[122] as is euthanasia (treated as murder in English law), the explanation for that being that the involvement of others in the death changes and complicates the moral and legal issues.[123] One might have thought that many of the considerations at stake here, notably the fear of manipulation by the unscrupulous, would be less pressing and more manageable in respect of non-fatal harms. However, the judiciary has maintained a restrictive approach, with a low threshold for consensual harm (only common assault), and two criteria ('good reason', 'needed in the public interest') for recognizing exceptions that allow consensual harms. Even if the low threshold is accepted, the approach to exceptions is manifestly unsatisfactory. The two criteria adopted by the judges fail to explain, let alone to justify, the categories of conduct included and excluded. There has been no attempt to explain why 'horseplay' should be recognized as an exception when sado-masochism is not. Possible explanations suggest themselves—the disgust of the (p. 326) judges for sado-masochism, the notion that the armed forces contain 'decent people' who sometimes act in 'high spirits'—but these are not principled explanations and are an unworthy basis on which to open a small window of liberty. Plainly the degree of injury caused is not conclusive: in both the 'horseplay' cases there were

serious injuries requiring hospital treatment, as there may be in boxing, whereas in *Brown* no medical treatment was required.

A subsequent decision has muddied the waters still further. In *Wilson* (1996)[124] D had branded his initials on his wife's buttocks, at her suggestion, using a hot knife. The trial judge, following *Brown*, ruled that her consent could not be a defence to the charge of assault occasioning actual bodily harm. But the Court of Appeal quashed the conviction, saying that *Brown* does not establish that consent is never a defence to actual bodily harm. Exceptions are allowed, and the conduct in this case was equivalent to tattooing, which is an established exception. The Court added that there is surely no public interest in penalizing consensual activity between husband and wife in the privacy of their own home. However, it is difficult to see what reason there is for confining the privacy argument to husband and wife; and, of course, the approach of asking whether there are public interest reasons in favour of criminalization was the approach of the minority, not the majority, in *Brown*. To add to the confusion, *Brown* was followed (and *Wilson* distinguished) in the case of *Emmett*.[125] In this case, D caused actual bodily harm to V when (with her consent) he set fire to lighter fuel on her breasts. The Court of Appeal said that D's conduct went 'beyond' what was involved in *Wilson*, and so upheld D's conviction.

The discussion so far has been conducted in the shadow of the European Convention on Human Rights. Article 8 of the Convention declares the right to respect for one's private life: should this not conclude the debate in favour of the minority in *Brown* and the Court of Appeal in *Wilson*? An answer to this question can be given, since the *Brown* case was taken to the European Court of Human Rights, where it became *Laskey et al*. v *UK*.[126] The Court held that the criminalization of consensual sado-masochism does violate the right to respect for one's private life in Art. 8.1, but it went on to conclude that the criminal law's interference with the right can be justified as 'necessary in a democratic society … for the protection of health'. The Court regarded it as within each State's competence to regulate 'violence' of this kind, even though no hospital treatment was required by these defendants. The Court was urged to recognize that this case involved private sexual behaviour; it replied that, because of the 'significant degree of injury or wounding', the conduct might properly be regarded as violence.[127] The Court was urged to recognize that English law is biased against homosexuals, and **(p. 327)** it was referred to the *Wilson* case, in which violence in a heterosexual context was not criminalized. It replied that the facts of *Wilson* were not 'at all comparable in seriousness to those in the present case'.

The decision in *Laskey* v *UK* is a considerable disappointment to those who expected a rights-based approach, particularly one that respects privacy. However, it is evident that both the European and English courts will adopt a case by case analysis,[128] and the framework of Art. 8, supplemented by the Strasbourg jurisprudence, suggests that in future English courts will need to adopt rather more rigorous reasoning than that of the majority in *Brown*. In other respects, too, the approach of the English criminal courts to consent to injury requires re-appraisal. The Court of Appeal in *Wilson* was surely right to declare that the burden of finding strong arguments should lie on those who wish to criminalize consensual conduct, not on those who wish it to be lawful. This would mean that it is no longer necessary for judges to affirm that daredevil stunts are 'needed in the public interest' or that 'manly sports' help to keep people fit to fight for their country if necessary.[129] Instead, the question should be whether consensual boxing and 'horseplay', in so far as they are both expressions of

individual autonomy, do not go too far if there is a risk of serious injury resulting. This leads on to a further criticism of the law—the absence of clear boundaries to the exceptions. Fair warning ought to be required, since this 'defence' establishes the boundaries of criminal conduct. The exceptional categories plainly apply to offences more serious than common assault, but no court has ever decided how far they go. If boxing is to remain lawful, then do all the exceptions apply, even to the level of causing grievous bodily harm with intent? The sanctity of life is a weighty value, and preservation from serious injury may not be far behind as a principle of protection. However, greater attention should be paid to the two aspects—negative and positive—of the principle of individual autonomy. Here, the *negative* element is more important, requiring the state to respect each individual's right to pursue his or her choices consensually with others (subject to such limitations as the absence of a mercy-killing defence, and the protection of the young). In relation to sport this negative autonomy is reasonably well protected, but in some other contexts paternalism, and even disgust, seem to take over as sources of guiding reasons to restrict liberty and choice.

The Law Commission produced a substantial Consultation Paper in 1995, ranging over many of the detailed topics on which consent to injury is an issue.[130] Although the paper contains much of value, the Commission adopts the rather impoverished **(p. 328)** starting point of trying to assess 'the prevailing Parliamentary culture' in respect of legislation on 'moral issues', allegedly finding 'a paternalism that is softened at the edges when Parliament is confident that there is an effective system of regulatory control'. Of course there are important issues of public pressure and political viability to be taken into account in making recommendations; but the Commission's primary task should surely be to separate the bad arguments from the good, and to avoid all vague references to 'the public interest'. Whether a quantitative criterion (i.e. the distinction between assault and assault occasioning actual bodily harm) should remain a central feature of the law of consent must also be doubted,[131] not least because of the uncertain dividing line between the two offences which the CPS guidance illustrates.

(g) Protection from Harassment Act 1997[132]

When discussing the range of offences against the person in subsections (b) to (e), it was noted that most of those offences have recently been applied by the courts so as to cover various manifestations of 'stalking' in so far as it causes psychiatric injury or, in respect of common assault, fear of violence. More directly aimed at stalking are the provisions of the Protection from Harassment Act 1997. The Act introduced civil remedies for harassment of another, and also created two new criminal offences. One is the summary offence in s. 2 of pursuing a course of conduct in breach of the prohibition of harassment in s. 1. Section 4 creates an offence, punishable with up to five years' imprisonment, of putting people in fear of violence: there must be 'a course of conduct [which] causes another to fear, on at least two occasions, that violence will be used against him',[133] and the fault element is either an intention to cause such fear or negligence, where 'a reasonable person in possession of the same information would think the course of conduct would cause the other so to fear'.[134] Although there is no doubt that these offences address a serious wrong that can cause considerable distress,[135] the combination of a negligence standard with a maximum penalty of five years is unfortunate. It may also be noted that the phrase 'fear of violence' contains neither an imminence requirement nor the need to show psychiatric injury. Statutory changes have now created an aggravated form of the offences under ss. 2 and 4 of the 1997 Act: where the s. 2 offence is racially or religiously aggravated, the maximum penalty rises from six

months to two years; where the s. 4 offence is racially or religiously aggravated, the maximum penalty rises from five to seven years.[136]

(p. 329) **(h) Offences under the Public Order Act 1986**

Despite its title, the Public Order Act creates three serious offences which apply whether the conduct takes place in a public or a private place.[137] Of particular relevance here are those offences which involve violence or the threat of violence. The Act provides a 'ladder' of offences, of which the most serious is riot (s. 1). The essence of riot is the use of unlawful violence by one or more persons in a group of at least twelve persons who are using or threatening violence. The maximum penalty is ten years' imprisonment, compared with a maximum of five years for the lesser offence of violent disorder. The essence of violent disorder (s. 2) is the use or threat of unlawful violence in a group of at least three persons who are using or threatening violence. Beneath violent disorder comes the crime of affray (s. 3), defined in terms of threatening or using unlawful violence towards another, and carrying a maximum of three years' imprisonment. Affray may be committed by one individual acting alone. The term 'violence' includes conduct intended to cause physical harm and conduct which might cause harm (such as throwing a missile towards someone); and, for the two most serious offences of riot and violent disorder, 'violence' bears an extended meaning which includes violent conduct towards property.[138]

Three aspects of the breadth of these offences should be noted. First, not only are the definitions of 'violence' extended, but only one person need use this 'violence' whilst the remainder (eleven others for riot, two others for violent disorder) must be involved in threatening it. There is no barrier to convicting only one person of riot or violent disorder, so long as there is evidence that others were also present and threatening 'violence'.[139] Secondly, despite the label 'public order offences', all the offences can be committed either in public or on private property. And thirdly, although a key element in the offences is that the conduct be 'such as would cause a person of reasonable firmness present at the scene to fear for his personal safety', no such person need have been present. So in one sense these are offences of creating fear (and, in affray, one person causing fear in another)—supplementing common assault, and with much higher penalties—although in another sense they are not, since no person of reasonable firmness need actually be, or be likely to be, present. The odds, to put it bluntly, are stacked in favour of the prosecutor. Sentencing for these offences can result in several years' imprisonment where considerable violence is used and where D was the ringleader or prominently involved.[140]

The three serious offences are underpinned by three summary offences—causing fear or provocation of violence (s. 4), causing harassment, alarm, or distress with intent to cause it (s. 4A),[141] and causing harassment, alarm, or distress (s. 5). These summary (p. 330) offences do not involve actual violence, and the offence under s. 4 is inchoate in nature.[142] Where one of these offences is racially or religiously aggravated, it becomes triable on indictment, with a maximum penalty of two years' imprisonment.[143]

Is it necessary to have an extra ladder of offences so closely linked with the general ladder of offences against the person? One reason might be the unsatisfactory state of the law under the Offences Against the Person Act 1861; that Act fails to provide either a clear and defensible gradation of offences or any general offences of threatening violence against

another.[144] A more frequent argument is that the provisions of the Public Order Act are needed to cope with 'group offending', which causes fear in ordinary citizens, and causes extra difficulties for the police and for prosecutors (in obtaining persuasive evidence). Offences committed by groups may well occasion greater fear than offences committed by individuals, and it may also be true that groups have a tendency to do things which individuals might not do: there may be a group bravado, fuelled by peer pressure, which may lead to excesses. On the other hand, the criminal law already makes some provision for such cases. The law of conspiracy is aimed at group offending, but that branch of the law is itself open to criticism.[145] The law of complicity and the new offence of encouraging or assisting crime enable the conviction of people who aid and abet others to commit offences, and spread a fairly wide net in doing so.[146] But the 1986 Public Order Act may be seen as a response to the call for a simplified and more 'practical' scheme of offences for dealing with group disorder. Central to this 'practicality' is the way in which the offence definitions go a long way in smoothing the path of the prosecutor, as we saw in relation to the provision that 'no person of reasonable firmness need actually be, or be likely to be, present at the scene'. This is 'practical' in the sense that the prosecution need not rely on members of the public to come forward and give evidence, which there is often a reluctance to do. But it is manifestly impractical from D's point of view, since it limits the opportunities for the defence to contest the issue.

The most prominent argument for having separate 'public order' offences is that group activities of this kind constitute a special threat to law enforcement and the political system. This argument comes close to a constitutional paradox—that people who are protesting against the fairness of the political system may find themselves convicted of serious offences if they adopt a vigorous mode of protest which may be the only effective one available to them because of their relative powerlessness. Article 11 of the European Convention declares a right of peaceful assembly, and where the *bona* (p. 331) *fide* exercise of this right happens to lead to some form of disorder it would be contrary to Art. 11 to hold the speakers or organizers liable if they did nothing to provoke violence.[147] To deal with such violence there is a whole range of general offences against the person, reviewed in the preceding paragraphs. But violence and threats in a context labelled 'public order' now attract higher sentences and lower evidential requirements under the Public Order Act, not to mention a concept of 'public order' that includes private premises and a definition of 'violence' broadened to include damage to property. Thus, 'public order' is a favoured concept among the powerful, used for political advantage and as a means of introducing wide discretionary powers and offences defined in ways that disadvantage the defence.[148] The more recent term 'public safety' may assume the same role, as a difficult-to-contest reason for introducing sweeping powers that ignore sound principle.

(i) Administering noxious substances

The Offences Against the Person Act 1861 contains a number of crimes concerned with the administration of noxious or toxic substances. Section 22 penalizes the use of any overpowering drug or substance 'with intent to enable the commission of an arrestable offence' (maximum sentence of life imprisonment). Section 23 penalizes the intentional or reckless administration of any poison or noxious thing which results in danger to the victim's life or grievous bodily harm (maximum sentence of ten years' imprisonment). A person who prepares a syringe and then hands it to another, who self-injects, does not administer, cause to be administered, or cause to be taken, within the meaning of the section.[149] Section 24

penalizes the administration of any poison or noxious thing, ‘with intent to injure, aggrieve or annoy the victim’ (maximum sentence of five years). This section has been applied so as to cover the administration of a drug which causes harm to the victim's metabolism by over-stimulation, if D's motive for this is malevolent rather than benevolent.[150] It has also been held that a substance may qualify as noxious when administered in a large quantity even if it would be harmless in a smaller dose.[151]

(j) Torture

In order to comply with its international obligations, the government introduced an offence of torture in 1988. Its essence is the intentional infliction of severe pain or suffering by an official or by someone else with the consent or acquiescence of an (p. 332) official, and the maximum penalty is life imprisonment.[152] The offence is committed whether the pain or suffering is physical or mental, and whether it was caused by an act or an omission. In almost all cases this would amount to the general offence of wounding or causing grievous bodily harm, but the reason for the separate offence is to mark the distinctive character of official violence, and also to give the offence a wider extra-territorial effect.

(k) Neglect of duty

Several of the offences discussed above may be committed by omission. One can cause grievous bodily harm by omission, and a person who does so intentionally in a case where a duty of care exists may be convicted under s. 18 of the 1861 Act. An example would be starving a child for whom one has parental responsibility, with the result that the child suffers serious harm.[153]

There are also cases in which the criminal law creates special offences attached to certain duties of care, of which the parent's duty towards a child is one example. Section 1 of the Children and Young Persons Act 1933 contains an elaborately worded offence which may be termed ‘child neglect’. It consists, essentially, of wilfully assaulting, ill-treating, neglecting, abandoning, or exposing a child in a manner likely to cause unnecessary suffering or injury to health. The maximum penalty for child neglect is now ten years’ imprisonment, which should be sufficient to deal with cases involving considerable fault and actually or potentially serious consequences.[154] The Mental Health Act 1983 contains a somewhat similar offence of ill-treating or wilfully neglecting a patient in a mental hospital, which has a maximum penalty of two years’ imprisonment.[155] There is also an offence of misconduct in a public office, which applies where a police officer fails to take action to prevent the continuation of an offence of which he becomes aware.[156]

(l) Weapons, risk, and endangerment

Most of the offences considered above involve the occurrence of physical harm plus intention or recklessness. It is also justifiable, however, for the criminal law to penalize conduct which creates the risk of physical harm, particularly in situations where the conduct has little social utility or where the risk is well known. In fact, English criminal law has a wide range of such offences. For example, the Firearms (p. 333) Act 1968 (as amended) sets out a detailed scheme to control firearms and ammunition, using chiefly offences of possession.[157] Lower down the scale comes the offence of possessing an offensive weapon without lawful authority or reasonable excuse, contrary to the Prevention of Crime Act 1953. This offence, now with its

maximum penalty of four years' imprisonment,[158] encompasses two classes of weapon: first, an article made or adapted for use as a weapon; and, secondly, any article intended for such use. Much attention has been focused on the concept of 'reasonable excuse', where the courts have attempted to impose a fairly stringent test on persons whose reason for carrying a weapon is said to be fear of attack.[159] Further offences penalizing the possession, marketing, and sale of knives and bladed instruments may be found in ss. 139–41 of the Criminal Justice Act 1988, and the Knives Act 1997.[160] Where the risks posed by driving are concerned, the serious offences discussed in Chapter 7.7 are underpinned by a multitude of less serious offences directed at promoting road safety by reducing the risk of injury. One of these is exceeding the speed limit, an offence designed to prevent dangers of physical harm from occurring, and in that sense somewhat analogous to possession of an offensive weapon.[161] Other examples would be disobeying a traffic signal and crossing double white lines.

The question of endangerment has already been raised in a general fashion in Chapter 7.8. English criminal law contains a number of discrete offences of endangerment, created in particular circumstances to deal with particular problems. For example, in addition to the road traffic offences, there are offences under ss. 32 and 33 of the Offences Against the Person Act 1861 of endangering railway passengers; there are the offences under s. 1(2) of the Criminal Damage Act 1971 of endangering the lives of others by causing damage to property (usually by fire); the Health and Safety at Work Act 1974 penalizes employers for failure to ensure that employees and others affected by their activities are not exposed to risks to their health or safety;[162] and there are offences, such as that under s. 12 of the Consumer Protection Act 1987, of selling goods in contravention of safety regulations. These are all offences of endangerment, in the sense that no harm need have resulted from the dangerous behaviour. Their importance lies in the way that they promote an environment the enjoyment of which is not fraught with the risk of harm, unless running that risk of harm is integral to an activity with important value.

(p. 334) **(m) The structure of the non-fatal offences**

In this part of the chapter we have seen that, generally speaking, the existing range of offences seems to emphasize the result, the degree of foresight, the status of the victim, and any element of racial or religious aggravation as the critical issues in grading crimes of physical violation. The crimes in the 1861 Act form a somewhat shakily constructed ladder, with rather more overlapping of offences than is necessary and more elements of constructive liability than are justifiable.[163] Factors such as the existence of provocation, or the difference between premeditated and impulsive violence, are accorded no legal significance: however, they and other factors affect judgments of seriousness at the stages of prosecution and sentencing.[164] There are two main exceptions to this: the status of certain victims is reflected in separate offences for assaults on police officers and wilful neglect of children, for example, and the social seriousness of racial and religious aggravation is marked by a set of aggravated offences with higher maximum penalties.

There is an overwhelming case for reform of the 1861 Act. It is unprincipled, it is expressed in language whose sense is difficult to convey to juries,[165] and it may lead judges to perpetrate manifest distortions in order to secure convictions in cases where there is 'obvious' guilt but where the Act falls down. How might the non-fatal offences be reformed? It is important to start by affirming the principle of maximum certainty, the principle of correspondence, and the

principle of fair labelling, and in particular to ensure that the new scheme of offences is not so dominated by concerns about efficient administration (usually, prosecutorial convenience) as to produce wide, catch-all offences of the kind found in the public order legislation.[166] Proposals for reform were put forward by the Criminal Law Revision Committee (CLRC) in 1980, and revised by the Law Commission on various occasions culminating in a report and draft Bill in 1993.[167] The new Labour government proclaimed its commitment to reforming this 'outmoded and unclear Victorian legislation', and a new draft Bill (based on the previous proposals) was circulated for comment in 1998.[168] The structure of the draft Bills places three major offences beneath attempted murder: causing serious injury with intent to cause serious injury; causing serious injury recklessly; and causing injury either with intent or recklessly. Below these three offences would be common assault. Three forms of aggravated assault would be retained: assault on a police officer, causing serious injury with intent to resist arrest, and assault with intent to resist arrest.[169] The scheme depends chiefly on (p. 335) the seriousness of the harm caused and the degree of foresight, though in a much more structured fashion than the 1861 Act.[170]

There were some problems with the 1998 draft Bill. First, what is the meaning of 'injury'? Clause 15 follows the previous Bill in defining it as physical injury (including pain, unconsciousness, or any other impairment of a person's physical condition) and any impairment of a person's mental health. This seems to leave a wide and relatively indeterminate dividing line between causing injury and the lesser offence of assault. Minor cuts and bruises would be included, although the test of impairment of mental health is intended to exclude such conditions as alarm, distress, or anxiety and to be limited to clinical disorders.[171] This leaves various forms of mental distress uncovered, as we saw in the stalking cases discussed in subsections (b), (c), and (d), and the definition of assault in the draft Bill makes no reference to fear: it is in the sanitized terminology of causing another 'to believe that such force or impact is imminent'.[172]

8.4 Reported sexual assaults

A major change in the law brought about by the Sexual Offences Act 2003 will be discussed in the remainder of this chapter. However, an upward trend in reported sexual offences has been evident for several years. Among the most serious are rapes: recorded rapes of women and of men have increased considerably in recent decades.[173] In the last ten years, reported instances of rape of a woman increased from 6,281 in 1997 to 13,327 in 2005/06, dropping back to 11,648 in 2007/08, but then rising to 14,624 in 2011 (a figure that may reflect changes in 2009/10 designed to improve the recording of rape complaints). Rape of a male has increased steadily from 347 in 1997 to 1,150 in 2006/07, and then to 1,310 in 2011.[174] However, it is difficult to tell to what extent this represents a real increase in the number of rapes or an increase in the reporting of them. The 2000 sweep of the British Crime Survey found that one in twenty women said that they had been raped since the age of 16, and one in ten had experienced some form of sexual assault (including rape).[175] It is not merely the numbers that have been increasing but also that the contours of rape have been confirmed to be different from the stereotype of attacks by strangers. Research has shown that some 45 per cent of (p. 336) rapes were said to have been committed by the victim's current partner, acquaintances accounted for 16 per cent, ex-partners 11 per cent, 'dates' 11 per cent, 'other intimates' 10 per cent, and strangers only 8 per cent.[176] Merely 20 per cent of the rapes and 18 per cent of all sexual victimization were reported to the police, and then only half of them

by the victim.[177] Of rape victims who had contact with the police, 32 per cent were ‘very satisfied’ and 25 per cent ‘fairly satisfied’ with the police handling of the matter, compared with 16 per cent ‘a bit dissatisfied’ and 22 per cent ‘very dissatisfied’.[178] Despite improvements made by the police over recent years, there is no doubt that reporting a rape may still be a strenuous and harrowing experience.[179] It is therefore likely to continue as an under-reported offence.

Even where a serious sexual offence is reported and recorded, however, there remain particular problems in securing a conviction. Significant numbers of rape complaints are discontinued or taken no further for lack of ‘reliable’ evidence, and rape convictions have declined as a proportion of reported rapes, as recorded rapes have increased—in 1979 some 32 per cent of reported rapes resulted in conviction for rape, compared with 6 per cent in a 2003–4 study for the Home Office.[180] In that study of some 700 reported rapes, some 13 per cent ended in conviction for an offence (6 per cent for rape, 7 per cent for lesser offences), but around 70 per cent of the original reported cases had already disappeared from the system, mostly on grounds of either withdrawal by the victim or insufficiency of evidence. Although there is now greater reporting of rapes between acquaintances, it cannot be inferred that the decline in conviction rates is because juries are more reluctant to convict in cases of acquaintance rape, and that stranger rapes are easier to prove. Indeed, in the Home Office study, stranger rapes had the same overall conviction rate (11 per cent) as acquaintance rapes, the only higher rate being for parents and other relatives (32 per cent).[181] Among other factors, evidence of injuries to the victim was strongly associated with conviction.[182] Longer sentences are now imposed on convicted rapists, so that whereas in the year before the guideline judgment in *Billam* (1986)[183] some 25 per cent of convicted rapists received sentences of five years or more, that percentage rose to 53 per cent in 1989 and to 74 per cent in 2000.[184] Sentencing guidelines may have increased that effect: they certainly increased the starting point for sentences for rape between (former) intimates to the same level as that for stranger rape.[185]

The sentencing guidelines take full account of the practical effects of sexual assault, which can be considerable. There are well-documented consequences of rape for many **(p. 337)** victims: some authors write of a ‘rape trauma syndrome’, signifying deep disruption of the victim's life-pattern and thought-processes not just in terms of the physical effects of rape (physical pain, inability to sleep, prolonged distress), but also in terms of the effects on well-being (newfound fears, mistrust of surroundings and other people, embarrassment, and so on). Young's New Zealand report concluded that ‘rape is an experience which shakes the foundations of the lives of the victims. For many its effect is a long-term one, impairing their capacity for personal relationships, altering their behaviour and values and generating fear’.[186] The effects of sexual abuse of young children may be similar and long-lasting.[187] Indeed, there is no reason to suppose that such effects are confined to the victims of rape as traditionally defined: although sexual assaults vary in their degree, there may be many other forms of sexual assault which are serious enough to create such profound physical and psychological after-effects. Those effects may also tend to spread to the family and close friends of the victim, and then to reflect back on to the victim.[188]

8.5 Non-consensual sexual violation

The Sexual Offences Act 2003 was a major piece of law reform, and its provisions will be central to the discussion in the remainder of this chapter. The focus of this part of the chapter will be upon the offences of non-consensual sexual penetration. Before those offences are examined, however, we begin by exploring the rationale for taking sexual offences seriously, and then outline the structure and the aims of the 2003 Act.

(a) The essence of sexual invasion

What are the interests typically threatened or destroyed by sexual assaults? In section 8.4, the serious personal consequences of rape and other sexual assaults were described: in many cases rape causes a great deal of harm, and even lesser sexual assaults may have long-lasting psychological consequences that affect the quality of life. It is strongly arguable, however, that it is not primarily the physical harmfulness of sexual invasions that makes them serious offences. More significant is the autonomy principle, already described in Chapter 2.1 as the principle that individuals should be respected and treated as agents capable of choosing their acts and omissions. In the present context, however, that principle plays two different roles. It remains relevant to the conditions of liability, and thus to ensuring that defendants should not be convicted unless they may be said to be at fault for that which they are accused of doing. But it also has two **(p. 338)** further and particular implications. First, part of the rationale for laws against sexual offending is to protect the autonomy of individuals in sexual encounters, ensuring that there are criminal prohibitions to prevent unwanted sexual interference and to criminalize those who culpably interfere with individuals' sexual autonomy. In human rights terms, states have a positive obligation to have in place laws that protect citizens from unwanted sexual interference.[189] Thus the right to respect for one's private life in Art. 8 of the Convention recognizes that sexual choice is 'a most intimate aspect of affected individuals' lives'.[190] For this reason each citizen should have the right not to have others' sexual choices imposed on him or her.[191] The second implication of the principle of autonomy is the (*negative*) requirement that the state's laws should respect each individual's right to pursue his or her sexual choices consensually with others, subject to such limitations as public decency laws and to the protection of the vulnerable.[192] This requires the State to ensure that its laws do not unjustifiably inhibit the expression of sexuality in consensual and non-offensive contexts.[193]

Sexuality is an intrinsic part of one's personality, it is one mode of expressing that personality in relation to others, and it is therefore fundamental that one should be able to choose whether to express oneself in this way—and, if so, towards and with whom. This is where the positive and negative aspects of the principle of individual autonomy come together. The essence of sexual self-expression is that it should be voluntary, both in the giving and in the receiving. Thus, even where a sexual assault involves no significant physical force, it constitutes a wrong in the sense that it invades a deeply personal zone, gaining non-consensually that which should only be shared consensually.[194] Indeed, John Gardner and Stephen Shute argue that the real gravamen of rape is that it amounts to 'the sheer use of a person, and in that sense the objectification of a person'. In their view, rape is 'dehumanizing' because it is 'a denial of [the victim's] personhood'.[195] There is a denial of autonomy and of bodily integrity[196] here that applies in some measure to other sexual offences too. But the physical and **(p. 339)** psychological effects that typically flow from sexual offences (including humiliation and degradation) are also a large part of the justification for treating them seriously.

(b) The structure of the 2003 Act[197]

The Sexual Offences Act 2003 was the first fundamental reform of the relevant law for over a century, the Sexual Offences Act 1956 having been largely a consolidating measure. Sections 1 to 4 of the Act create newly defined offences of rape and sexual assault, and new offences of assault by penetration, and causing sexual activity. All these offences turn on the absence of consent. Sections 5 to 8 create parallel offences in respect of child victims under the age of 13, and to these offences consent is irrelevant. Sections 9–15 then create a number of sexual offences against children under 16, with differing maximum penalties according to whether the offender is an adult or is under 18. Sections 16–24 contain various 'abuse of trust' offences, committed against persons under 18 by those in a position of trust. The new Act contains a number of reformulated familial sex offences, in ss. 25–9 and 64–5. Sections 30–44 create a range of offences, committed against persons with mental disorder by others (including care workers). Sections 45–51 amend the law to protect children against indecent photographs, pornography, and prostitution. Sections 52–60 alter the law relating to prostitution and trafficking for sexual exploitation. There are three preparatory offences in ss. 61–3, and then ss. 66–71 contain offences of exposure, voyeurism, sexual penetration of a corpse, and sexual activity in a public lavatory. Part 2 of the Act contains new notification requirements for sex offenders, and various new preventive orders for the courts to make.

(c) The aims of the 2003 Act

The 2003 Act was a far-reaching reform intended to mark a fresh start in the criminal law's response to sexual misconduct. The Sex Offences Review that preceded it was instituted in January 1999, consulted widely, and produced its report, *Setting the Boundaries*, in July 2000.[198] The government then announced its proposals[199] and brought forward a Bill in 2002, the details of which changed considerably as a result of parliamentary scrutiny.[200] The Sexual Offences Act 2003 has some 143 sections, of **(p. 340)** which the first 71 create offences. It had been a very long time since there had been a statute creating as many offences as this. At the risk of over-simplification, some seven purposes of the Act may be outlined.

First, the Act is intended to modernize the law of sexual offences and to bring it more closely into line with contemporary attitudes. Thus the Home Office criticized the former law as 'archaic, incoherent and discriminatory', and argued that it failed to reflect 'changes in society and social attitudes'.[201] This refers particularly to the attitudes of some men towards women, and one significant change had already been made a decade earlier when the marital rape exception was finally abolished.[202] But it is open to question whether high maximum penalties for consensual sexual conduct between children are closely in line with modern attitudes.

Secondly, and related to the first purpose, the Act mostly creates gender-neutral offences. Apart from the offence of rape, which can only be committed by a man as a principal offender, the offences can be committed by a male or female against a male or female. This ensures equality of protection and of criminalization, thereby avoiding discrimination that might violate a person's Convention rights.[203]

Thirdly, clarity was said to be an aim of the new law, so that people could know what behaviour was unacceptable. It may be an advantage that there are many separately labelled offences; but the Act adopts an unusually prolix style of drafting criminal provisions, and there are many overlaps between offences. It is open to question whether this was the best means

of trying to achieve the desirable objective of greater clarity.

Fourthly, the government was very keen to clarify the law relating to consent[204]—a vexed question for many years, and one where the nuances of sexual encounters and the power of ingrained attitudes interact to create considerable problems of applying any definition and standards.[205] However, as we shall see in paragraph (h), the new approach fails to fulfil the aspirations to certainty and clarity.

Fifthly, the Act was intended to secure appropriate protection for the vulnerable, and to this end it includes (as we have already noted) several separate offences against children and also several separate offences against persons with mental disorder. One difficulty, to be discussed further in section 8.6, is that the Act's enthusiasm to criminalize sexual acts involving children succeeds in bringing many other children into the net of criminality, for what are perfectly normal and harmless teenage interactions. The government's reply is that prosecutors will use their discretion to ensure that youngsters are not prosecuted unless there is coercion or some other untoward element, but this is an unsatisfactory expedient. Indeed, it may not constitute sufficient protection for young people's right to respect for private life under Art. 8. **(p. 341)** Kissing, fondling and other consensual activities between 15 year olds should surely not put the participants at risk of prosecution.

Sixthly, one aim of the Act is to provide appropriate penalties to reflect the seriousness of the crimes committed.[206] Many of the maximum sentences are higher than before, and, even though the penalties for young offenders committing offences against children are lower than those for adults committing such offences, they are still very high bearing in mind the age of those involved.

Seventhly, the government hoped that the reformed law would play its part in reducing the attrition rate in rape cases and helping to convict the guilty. This was to be done by providing 'a clearer legal framework for juries as they decide on the facts of each case'.[207] With key terms such as 'consent' and 'sexual' under-defined, this aspiration always seemed more of a hope than an expectation, and the evidence suggests that it has not been realized.[208] Having said that, the Act expands the definition of rape, a change that, whether or not it ever turns out to be a way of increasing the number of convictions, is in many respects to be welcomed.

Reference will be made to these seven aims as various parts of the 2003 Act are examined. It is important to recall, however, that key concepts such as sexual autonomy and vulnerability cut both ways. As we saw in paragraph 8.5(a), a law of sexual offences that respects the principle of individual autonomy and complies with Art. 8 of the Convention will attend to both the negative and positive aspects of the principle—that is, it will ensure that the law penalizes those whose conduct amounts to unwanted interference with a person's sexual autonomy, and it will ensure that the law does not penalize those who are engaging consensually in sexual activities (unless they are publicly offensive or involve vulnerable victims). The principle will also be referred to below, particularly in respect of sexual activity involving two children and familial sexual activity.

(d) Rape

A reformed offence of rape was created by s. 1 of the 2003 Act, which provides:

> **(1)** A person (A) commits an offence if—
> **(a)** he intentionally penetrates the vagina, anus or mouth of another person (B) with the penis,
> **(b)** B does not consent to the penetration, and
> **(c)** A does not reasonably believe B consents.

One change was that rape now includes oral penetration with the penis. Under the old law, forced oral penetration could only be prosecuted as indecent assault, a label that (p. 342) manifestly failed to indicate the seriousness of the wrong. The opportunity to reform the law raised the question whether forced oral penetration should be classified as rape and thus aligned with vaginal and anal penetration, or whether it should be classified as assault by penetration, a new offence (see (e)) that also carries life imprisonment as its maximum sentence. The Sex Offences Review concluded that penetration of the mouth is 'as horrible, as demeaning and as traumatizing as other forms of forced penile penetration'.[209] The Review decided that the fact that this was penetration by the penis justified placing it within the offence of rape, even though penetration by other objects (included within the offence of assault by penetration) was also an extremely serious violation.[210] Against the argument of principle, some raised the practical argument that bringing oral sex within rape might have the effect of devaluing rape, and that juries might be unwilling to return rape verdicts in such cases. The Home Affairs Committee concluded that this is unlikely to occur in practice,[211] and supported the principle behind the change.[212]

The prosecution must prove that there was penetration by the penis,[213] and that it was intentional. Since 'penetration is a continuing act from entry to withdrawal',[214] this means that the offence can be committed by intentionally failing to withdraw the penis as soon as non-consent is made clear. The prosecution must also establish the absence of consent (see (h)). The fault requirement in relation to consent has long been a matter of controversy. At common law a defendant could be convicted if he was reckless as to non-consent, in the sense that he 'could not care less' whether the victim was consenting.[215] However, at common law a defendant could be acquitted if he mistakenly believed that the victim was consenting, according to the *Morgan* decision.[216] There was much debate about whether there should be degrees of rape to reflect differing degrees of fault,[217] but in the end the government opted for the requirement that 'A does not reasonably believe that B consents'. The ramifications of this objective standard will be explored in paragraph (i), but it will be observed that the concept of recklessness plays no part in the reformed law.

(p. 343) (e) Assault by penetration

This new offence carries a maximum sentence of life imprisonment, as does rape, but (like most other offences in the Act) it can be committed by a man or woman as a principal offender. Section 2 of the Act provides:

> **(1)** A person (A) commits an offence if—
> **(a)** he intentionally penetrates the vagina or anus of another person (B) with

a part of his body or anything else,
(b) the penetration is sexual,
(c) B does not consent to the penetration, and
(d) A does not reasonably believe that B consents.

The conduct element of the offence includes penetration with any part of the body (such as a finger, but also including the penis, so that the offence overlaps with rape),[218] or penetration with an instrument, such as a bottle. The penetration must be sexual, a requirement discussed in paragraph (f), and it must be without consent. The sentencing guidelines are based on the view that penetration by a finger, or penetration with an instrument, can cause serious harm to young children and also significant psychological harm to adults, and the starting points are therefore substantial, depending on the age of the victim.[219] The fault element for this offence is that the penetration must be intentional, and that the defendant must not reasonably believe that the victim consents (see paragraph (i)).

(f) Sexual assault

This offence is committed if A intentionally touches another person (B), the touching is sexual, B does not consent to it, and A does not reasonably believe that B consents. The questions of consent and reasonable belief will be discussed in paragraphs (h) and (i). The offence replaces indecent assault, and it will be noticed that both elements of the former crime are replaced. There must be a touching, not an assault; and it must be sexual, not indecent. But the offence of common assault remains, and the concept of assault is wider than touching, since it includes causing a person to apprehend bodily contact (see 8(3)(e)); the offence of assault can also be committed recklessly, whereas sexual assault requires an intentional touching.

What amounts to a touching? Section 79(8) states that it 'includes touching (a) with any part of the body, (b) with anything else, (c) through anything, and in particular includes touching amounting to penetration'. This is not an exhaustive definition, but it makes it clear that the touching does not have to be with the hands (and may be with (p. 344) an instrument), and that touching through clothes is sufficient. Thus in *H* [220] D made a sexual suggestion to V and took hold of her tracksuit bottoms, attempting to pull her towards him. She broke free and escaped. The Court of Appeal upheld the conviction for sexual assault, ruling that touching someone's clothing is sufficient to fulfil this requirement of the offence. Although s. 79(8) refers to touching through clothing, perhaps implying contact with V's body through clothing, the Court rightly held that this was not an exhaustive definition. Touching the clothes V is wearing is sufficient, Lord Woolf CJ held, so long as the other elements of the offence are fulfilled.

When is a touching 'sexual'? This question is important for the offences under ss. 2, 3, and 4 (among others). Section 78 provides that:

Penetration, touching or any other activity is sexual if a reasonable person would consider that—

(a) whatever its circumstances or any person's purpose in relation to it, it is

because of its nature sexual, or
(b) because of its nature it may be sexual and because of its circumstances or the purpose of any person in relation to it (or both) it is sexual.

It will be evident that this section provides a framework for the decision but leaves much to the magistrates or jury to determine in each case. The framework involves a threefold division of cases,[221] and the standard is that of the reasonable person. Cases falling within (a) are sexual by their very nature, and presumably include most touchings of sexual organs and private zones of the body. On one view, even a proper medical examination of the vagina or penis is sexual (since the actor's purpose is irrelevant to this classification), although consent, or necessity, would justify it. However, such cases may be better regarded as falling within s. 78(b). This example shows that it may not be easy clearly to separate cases falling within (a) from those falling within (b).

Cases falling within (b) are ambiguous by their nature: reasonable people would disagree about whether or not they are inherently sexual. If the jury or magistrates decide that a touching might be sexual, the question whether this touching is sexual therefore depends on whether a reasonable person would consider that either the circumstances or the actor's motive or purpose was sexual. Thus in *H* [222] the Court held that these questions had been properly put to the jury, resulting in the verdict that pulling at the woman's tracksuit bottoms might be sexual and, because of D's purpose, was sexual. In *Court* (1989)[223] D put a 12-year-old girl across his knee and spanked her on her shorts. He admitted that he had a buttock fetish. Under the 2003 Act, it is for the magistrates or jury to decide whether this falls within (b) in the sense that 'because of its nature it *may* be sexual'; if they so decide, then they could go on to hold that D's motive rendered it sexual.

(p. 345) The decision whether a case falls within (a) or (b) may be important from an evidentiary point of view. For example, in *Court*, when D was asked about his motivation for committing the offence, he admitted to having a 'buttock fetish'. Clearly, if that evidence was admitted at trial, it would virtually guarantee his conviction (as evidence lawyers say, the evidence was highly prejudicial). However, the way in which such evidence comes to be admitted may be affected by whether the case falls under (a) or (b). If the evidence was in law irrelevant to the prosecution's case, then it could not be led 'in chief', namely as part of the prosecution's direct case against D. How could such evidence possibly be irrelevant in that sense? Answer: if the case fell under (a) where D's purpose does not enter into the question of guilt, and so where evidence gratuitously given of it will create 'heat but no light'. So, ironically, it might seem as if a D who has made a pre-trial prejudicial admission about his sexual inclinations would be better off if his or her case fell under (a). However, there is still a trap for D in these circumstances. If he or she offers any purportedly innocent explanation of his or her behaviour—a justification, or a denial of the fault element, for example—the prosecution may then be to introduce the prejudicial evidence. It may be able to do this not to show directly that D is guilty, but to show that his or her protestation of innocence should not be believed. If the jury hears the evidence tendered for this purpose by the prosecution, they are then likely to draw only one conclusion on the question of guilt.

Although s. 78 enumerates only two types of case, (a) and (b), there must logically be a third—

cases where the touching is not such that a reasonable person would say that it might be sexual. Any touching of this kind cannot be 'sexual', whatever D's motives and whatever the circumstances. In *George* (1956)[224] D had attempted to remove a girl's shoe from her foot, admitting that this gave him sexual gratification. This was held not to amount to an indecent assault, but under the 2003 Act it could be a sexual assault. Everything turns on whether the jury or magistrates hold that a reasonable person would consider that 'because of its nature it may be sexual'.[225] Different tribunals may reach different conclusions: for example, attempting to remove a shoe might be held non-sexual whereas stroking a shoe might be held to be possibly sexual, within (b). One might ask to what extent interference with a shoe is perceived as an attack on someone's sexual autonomy, as distinct from their personal autonomy as an owner of property (i.e. shoes). Many fetishists do things that normally have no sexual connotation. Should the sexual motivation of the fetishist be sufficient to fulfil the offence, even in the third category? If we accept the 2003 Act's view that it should not, then are we sure that sexual motivation should be sufficient in ambiguous cases falling within (b)? Most of these cases amount to common assault, so it is not a question of conviction or not.[226] The present solution leads to uncertainty and probably inconsistency in **(p. 346)** practice, but it cannot be otherwise so long as we have category (b) and, by implication, a third category too.

(g) Causing sexual activity

Section 4 of the Act provides that a person commits an offence by intentionally causing another person to engage in an activity that is sexual. As with the offences in ss. 1–3, the victim must not consent and D must not reasonably believe that he or she consents. The essence of the conduct element is that D must cause the victim to engage in the sexual activity, and this presumably can be effected by explicit or implicit threats, or by use of a position of authority or dominance (simply by speaking words), rather than by actual physical coercion. Thus forcing V to masturbate in front of D,[227] or forcing two people to perform sexual acts for D's pleasure,[228] fall clearly within this new offence.[229] Similarly, P could be held to cause sexual activity by tricking D into believing that V wants sex when V does not, even if P cannot be convicted of complicity in rape.[230] It should probably be held that s. 4 creates two separate offences, since the causing of various penetrative sexual activities carries a maximum sentence of life imprisonment, whereas the causing of other non-penetrative activities has a maximum of ten years.

(h) Absence of consent

Each of the offences in ss. 1–4 of the 2003 Act has two requirements that have not yet been examined—that B (the victim) did not consent, and that the defendant did not reasonably believe that B was consenting. Here we will discuss the absence of consent: the law on reasonable belief, which has a similar structure, will be examined in paragraph (i).

Consent has long been the crucial concept in many sexual encounters: its presence or absence can mark the difference between shared joy and a serious crime. Yet there are long-standing problems of defining what amounts to consent and to non-consent, and problems of proof. Indeed, the complexity of the 2003 Act's 'solutions' has led to a suggestion that the law should be re-structured so as to place minimal reliance on such a contested concept as consent.[231] However, the aim of *Setting the Boundaries* [232] and the 2003 Act was to set out a

new approach to the difficult problems of consent. The Act puts forward a definition of consent in s. 74, and also further tackles the problems of definition and proof through lists of rebuttable and conclusive presumptions in ss. 75 and 76. The most straightforward course for the prosecution is to establish that B, the complainant, manifestly did not agree to the activity. Few cases are so straightforward, **(p. 347)** however, and the Act therefore establishes three routes by which non-consent can be proved in cases of rape, assault by penetration, sexual assault, and causing sexual activity.[233] The first is to bring the circumstances within one of the conclusive presumptions in s. 76. The second is to make use of one of the rebuttable presumptions in s. 75. The third, residual approach is to rely on the general definition of consent in s. 74.

Conclusive Presumptions: Section 76(2) provides two sets of circumstances in which the absence of consent will be conclusively and irrebuttably presumed. If the prosecution can establish the relevant factual basis, the 'presumption' (in reality, a legal conclusion) arises and the defence has no answer. The first circumstance is that '(a) the defendant intentionally deceived the complainant as to the nature or purpose of the relevant act'. The common law also held that deception as to the nature of the act was fundamental, as where young girls had been invited to submit to acts in order to train their voice or to improve their breathing[234] and, unbeknown to them, the act which they were permitting was sexual intercourse. Deception as to the purpose of an act is a significantly wider concept, which applies where D deceives V as to the ulterior reason for or objective of the act. The Court of Appeal held in *Jheeta* [235] that, since the presumption is a conclusive one, it ought to be construed narrowly. In that case B had submitted to intercourse because she had received text messages, allegedly from the police (but actually from D), ordering her to have sex with D; the Court held that this was not a deception as to the purpose of the act. The Court stated that the strongest case of deception as to purpose would be where D has deceived B as to the medical need for the particular procedure.[236] The Court held that there would be no deception as to purpose on the facts of *Linekar*,[237] where D promised to pay a prostitute for intercourse but then reneged on the deal. Sir Igor Judge, P. stated that 'she was undeceived about either the nature or the purpose of the act, that is, intercourse'.[238] Yet in the subsequent case of *Devonald*,[239] the Court held that where B was induced to masturbate in front of a webcam, believing that it was for the sexual pleasure of a woman whom he had 'met' on the Internet when in fact D (a man) aimed to humiliate B, this was a deception as to purpose. Unusually, however, it was (in the context of the 2003 Act) a reverse deception—V thought that the purpose was sexual, whereas D intended the purpose to be humiliation. A better decision is *Piper*,[240] where V agreed to be measured for a bikini by D on the (false) basis that it was necessary to determine her modelling potential, whereas in fact it was for his sexual pleasure. D's conviction of sexual assault was upheld. This interpretation is more faithful to the concept of purpose. The question, **(p. 348)** then, is whether other ulterior purposes can fall within s. 76(2)(a), such as deceiving V into having sex with D by falsely representing that D will i) obtain a lucrative modelling contract for V,[241] or (ii) enter into a marriage or civil partnership with V, or iii) falsify the report of a car accident for which V accepts blame. In principle such cases should be capable of falling within s. 76(2)(a). This is not to go so far as Jonathan Herring, who argues in favour of an expansive notion of purpose, extending to any deception as to what 'this act of sexual intercourse is about'.[242] This is an unduly wide approach to a conclusive presumption that applies to so serious an offence as rape. If there is thought to be no logical dividing line between the *Piper* ruling and Herring's approach, then the Court of Appeal's restrictive

interpretation in *Jheeta* would be more appropriate—it does not foreclose the issue, as a conclusive presumption would, but rather transfers it to the general definition of consent under s. 74 of the Act. It is the absence of a lesser offence of obtaining sex by deception that causes this problem.[243]

The second circumstance is that '(b) the defendant intentionally induced the complainant to consent to the relevant act by impersonating a person known personally to the complainant'. The previous law extended only to impersonating a spouse or partner,[244] whereas the 2003 Act extends to all impersonations other than those of a person who is not personally known to the complainant, such as a sports or television star. In one sense this second conclusive presumption is less powerful than the first, since it requires the prosecution to establish that the impersonation induced V to consent: if the defence can create doubt about the causal link, this may be sufficient to prevent the presumption from arising. An important difficulty with the provision concerns the extent of the key notion that the impersonator (D) must be pretending to be someone 'known personally' to V. Is someone (X) that V has 'met' through contacting X on a social networking site someone 'known personally' to V, such that if V arranged to meet X, and an imposter (D)—knowing of the arrangement—took X's place and consequently engaged in sexual intercourse with V, the presumption would come into effect and D would be guilty of rape? Again, such a problematic case would be much more easily dealt with, had the 2003 Act retained the old offence of obtaining intercourse through false pretences (deception).

The decision to confine the conclusive presumptions to these types of case suggests that they are believed to be either the clearest or the strongest examples of non-consent, but this can be doubted. The use of 'purpose' in (a) is not absolutely clear. Are these the strongest cases? What about the administration of drugs to V without consent? Or doing a sexual act while V is asleep or unconscious? Or, indeed, immediate threats of violence? It is not clear that putting some deception cases into s. 76 as conclusive presumptions, and leaving all others to be dealt with under the general definition of consent, is the wisest approach.

(p. 349) *Rebuttable Presumptions*: Section 75(2) enumerates six sets of circumstances giving rise to a rebuttable presumption of non-consent. Once the prosecution establishes the factual basis for one of the presumptions—i.e. that the circumstance existed and that D knew it existed—that presumption operates against D until the defence adduce sufficient credible evidence 'to raise an issue as to whether he consented'. This does not place a burden of proof on D, but does require the defence to 'satisfy the judge that there is a real issue about consent that it is worth putting to the jury'.[245] Once this is done, the prosecution must prove absence of consent in the normal way, relying on s. 74. The six circumstances are:

> **(a)** [where] any person was, at the time of the relevant act or immediately before it began, using violence against the complainant or causing the complainant to fear that immediate violence would be used against him;
> **(b)** [where] any person was, at the time of the relevant act or immediately before it began, causing the complainant to fear that violence was being used, or that immediate violence would be used, against another person;
> **(c)** the complainant was, and the defendant was not, unlawfully detained at the time of the act;
> **(d)** the complainant was asleep or otherwise unconscious at the time of the relevant act;

(e) because of the complainant's physical disability, the complainant would not have been able at the time of the relevant act to communicate to the defendant whether the complainant consented;
(f) any person had administered to or caused to be taken by the complainant, without the complainant's consent, a substance which, having regard to when it was administered or taken, was capable of causing or enabling the complainant to be stupefied or overpowered at the time of the relevant act.

The prosecution has to prove that D knew that one of the circumstances existed, and does not have to show that it actually negatived consent, this being presumed. The practical operation of the provisions is complex,[246] and there appear to be few cases in which they have been relied on. Nonetheless, they do provide an incentive for D to give evidence in court, and in that—despite the law's professed neutrality on this issue more broadly—they embody a point of principle of special importance in this context, where trials may often come down to one person's word against another's.

(p. 350) The presumptions in (a) and (b) make an important statement about the effect of violence and threats of violence[247]—although conclusive presumptions would have made a stronger statement—but their ambit is limited to threats of immediate violence to V or to another person, such as a family member or friend.[248] Where the threat is no less realistic but is to use violence in the near future, the case falls outside these presumptions and must be dealt with under the general definition of consent. Similarly, other threats—relating, for example, to losing a job or being prosecuted for an offence—are also excluded from the presumptions. However, presumptions (a) and (b) are wider than the conclusive presumptions in one respect, since they contain no requirement that D be the author of the threats or violence. It is worth pointing out that many of these intricate legal niceties would have been unnecessary, had the 2003 Act not abolished the old offence of procuring sexual intercourse by threats.[249] Presumption (c) deals with cases of false imprisonment and kidnap. Presumption (d) applies to cases where V is either asleep or unconscious. The presumption applies not just to sleep, but to cases where V was unconscious through alcohol or otherwise. At common law, having sex with a person who was asleep would be rape, and thus there is an argument that this should be a conclusive presumption. However, what of the case where it is contended that V has signified to D that V enjoys being awoken from his or her slumbers by D doing something sexual to V? It must be borne in mind that these presumptions apply to all the offences in ss. 1–4, including the broad offence of sexual assault.[250] Presumption (e) refers to V's physical inability to communicate with D: there are already several offences in ss. 30–44 of the Act aimed at sexual acts with those suffering some mental incapacity, but one purpose of this presumption may be to ensure that serious cases are treated as rape or assault by penetration.

Presumption (f) was added during the progress of the Bill,[251] and its drafting leaves open several questions. The first requirement is that someone (not necessarily D) administered to V or ‘caused to be taken’ a form of stupefying substance. Presumably, ‘caused to be taken’ includes cases where V is deceived into believing that what is being taken voluntarily is a substance with different properties, but it remains unclear whether this captures all forms of deception. Consent presumably bears the same broad and uncertain meaning as it has within the Act generally. As for the nature of the substance, the primary target is what are known as ‘date rape drugs’ such as rohypnol, but the presumption appears to extend to alcohol too. The substance must have been capable of stupefying or overpowering V, but it is not clear what

degree of effect this will be held to require. Cases of unconsciousness fall within presumption (d), so a logical scheme (p. 351) would suggest that presumption (f) should apply where the effects of the substance on V's functioning are significant but not total. Once again, there is considerable room for interpretation in this provision, and this will determine the practical application of the law—and the 'messages' it sends out.[252] Finally, it should be reiterated that in order to rebut a presumption D needs only to adduce sufficient credible evidence to raise the issue. Thus even if the presumption is established—and that may depend on a jury question, such as whether V was asleep or unconscious or unlawfully detained—it will disappear if D satisfies the evidential burden and the case must then be fought on the general ground of non-consent.

Definition of Consent: Although the prosecution is likely to start by considering the application of the conclusive presumptions and the rebuttable presumptions to the case at hand, the general definition of consent will be relevant if the courts apply the narrow interpretation of the conclusive presumptions urged in *Jheeta* and where the defence satisfies the evidential burden in relation to a rebuttable presumption. Section 74 provides that 'a person consents if he agrees by choice, and has the freedom and capacity to make that choice'. This is intended to be a factual or 'attitudinal' definition, turning on what V felt rather than what V expressed.[253] Unfortunately, however, the section simply describes consent in terms of four other contested concepts—agreement, choice, capacity, and freedom. The concept of agreement may be construed either to mean simple assent to an act, or to entail a full consensus based on knowledge of the essential particulars. Similarly, the concept of choice may be construed to mean that the consent should be informed, so that where D has concealed from V a fact material to their sexual encounter this means that an informed choice was not made and that any consent was apparent and not real. However, the Court of Appeal has declined to accept this doctrine of informed consent in a case where D failed to disclose to V that he was HIV positive,[254] Latham LJ holding that V's consent to the sexual act was not vitiated but that D might be liable for an offence against the person by transmission of disease. The concept of capacity would seem to imply an adequate degree of understanding of the acts and their significance, which is particularly relevant in cases of mental incapacity[255] and in cases where the complainant is intoxicated. In *Bree* [256] both parties had been drinking alcohol for some time before they had sex. The Court of Appeal held that the proper approach in an intoxication case, where the (p. 352) complainant is not alleged to have been unconscious (and therefore within rebuttable presumption (d)), is whether she had sufficient capacity to choose whether to agree to sex and whether she did so: 'if through drink the complainant has temporarily lost her capacity to choose whether to have intercourse on the relevant occasion, she is not consenting.' The Court took a similar approach in *Hysa*,[257] holding that the case was wrongly withdrawn from the jury where V could not remember what she had said because she was so drunk. This decision is a very important one, in terms of the scope of protection for victims that the law provides. The Court cited with approval the law's pre-2003 Act view that:

> [T]here is no requirement that the absence of consent has to be demonstrated or that it has to be communicated to the defendant for the *actus reus* of rape to exist … It is not the law that the prosecution in order to obtain a conviction for rape have to show that the complainant was either incapable of saying no or putting up some physical resistence, or did say no or put up some physical resistence.

The central concept of freedom demonstrates how vague and contestable the statutory definition is: freedom of decision-making may be greater or less, depending on the impact of any deception, threats, or other perceived pressures, and the question is what degree of impairment should be taken to mean that any apparent consent was not free. Freedom cannot practically be defined in terms of a totally unconstrained choice, and we tend to use the term 'free' only 'to rule out the suggestion of some or all of its recognized antitheses'.[258] This indicates that the law might have been better drafted if it had focused on the effects of various forms of threat, deception, and other pressure in order to try to delimit the proper boundaries of consent. If it is argued that this was the aim of the presumptions in ss. 75 and 76, then the answer must be that they leave too many contested situations at large. No doubt the limits of consent will be elaborated in the case law, but the concepts of freedom, agreement, choice, and capacity do not provide sufficiently clear signposts to prevent inconsistent outcomes. Juries might be told not to assume that V did agree freely just because V did not say or do anything, protest or resist, or was not physically injured;[259] that might have urged juries to challenge stereotypes, but no such model direction has emerged. However, the concept of agreement, in s. 74, should be interpreted as emphasizing that it is V's perception of choice and freedom that is crucial.[260]

What are likely to be the practical effects of the s. 74 'definition' on jury decision-making? Some clues are provided by research conducted by Emily Finch and Vanessa Munro using mock juries.[261] They found that many jurors latched on to one or more of the four terms in s. 74 (agreement, choice, capacity, freedom) in order to **(p. 353)** justify quite different interpretations. As the authors comment, the fact that these four terms are 'within everyone's understanding does not mean that everyone understands them to mean the same thing, either in the abstract or in specific cases.'[262] Indeed, the terms did nothing to prevent some jurors from applying sexist stereotypes in their reasoning.[263] Thus where the woman complainant was intoxicated, some jurors readily assumed fault and therefore consent.

What are the contestable cases on consent? Numerous examples have already been mentioned. Taking deceptions first, if D deceives V into thinking that he intends to marry her and only for this reason does V agree to sex, does V agree by choice? Some jurors may conclude that this is nothing more than naivety, but if V regards it as crucial to her agreement, should a conviction for rape follow? Again, if D runs a modelling agency and promises V a glittering modelling career if he or she will have sex with him, does V agree by choice? Does it matter whether D is or is not likely to advance V's modelling career? What if D goes into a hospital dressed in a white coat and examines patients intimately at, say, a breast clinic or a clinic for testicular cancer?[264] And what of the case of *Linekar*,[265] where D deceived V into thinking that he will pay £25 for sex when he had no intention of doing so: does V agree by choice, in these circumstances? It is easy to say that V would not have agreed if all the circumstances had been known, but is it satisfactory that a requirement of a fully informed choice should lead to conviction of rape?[266] There is a strong argument that many of these cases should amount to a lesser offence, on the ground that the deception was not sufficiently fundamental, but the absence of a lesser offence in the 2003 Act, such as obtaining agreement to sexual activity by deception, may force courts to decide between rape and acquittal.

Turning to threats, we observed above that threats of non-immediate violence (e.g. 'I have

some very nasty friends, and we know where you live') fall outside rebuttable presumptions (a) and (b), and so a jury or magistrates would have to decide whether such threats negative agreement by choice. If V, a sex worker who agrees to have sex with D for money, tells D that she has been forced to come to England and to work in this way, D then knows that she cannot be said to be agreeing by choice, and he may be guilty of rape. In other cases, where D's conduct creates an atmosphere of fear, V may submit rather than risk a physical attack, even if there has been no actual violence or threats uttered. What if D tells V, an employee who has committed a disciplinary offence, that V will be dismissed unless willing to allow D to do a certain sexual act? Would the test of 'agreement by choice' be applied differently if V agreed to be fondled, or to be **(p. 354)** caned on a bare bottom, or to allow full sexual penetration?[267] Would the outcome be different if D were a police officer who stopped a motorist for a minor traffic offence, and said she would not report V if he engaged in a sexual activity with her?[268] One difficulty here is that, if the approach to deception is to require fully informed consent, the corresponding approach to threats cases may be that any credible and significant threat should be sufficient to negative choice or freedom.[269] If that were thought to carry criminal liability too far, then the concepts of 'choice' and 'freedom' would be at large again, without any indication of the degree of constraint needed to negative them.

(i) Absence of reasonable belief in consent

For all the offences in ss. 1–4, it must not only be proved that V did not consent to what was done, but also that D did not reasonably believe that V was consenting. Subsection (2) of all those sections provides that 'whether a belief is reasonable is to be determined having regard to all the circumstances, including any steps A has taken to ascertain whether B consents'. This is clearly intended as a move away from the subjective test in *DPP* v *Morgan*,[270] which judged D on the facts as he or she believed them to be, however unreasonable that belief might be. Even if *Morgan* is defensible as a case on general principles, it is unacceptable as a rape decision. There are certain situations in which the risk of doing a serious wrong is so obvious that it is right for the law to impose a duty to take care to ascertain the facts before proceeding. Moreover, not only are serious sexual offences a denial of the victim's autonomy, but the ascertainment of one vital fact—consent—is a relatively easy matter. The subjective test of mistake has therefore been removed and replaced by a requirement of reasonable belief.

The same structure of conclusive and rebuttable presumptions applies as it does to consent itself. Thus, if any of the circumstances of deception in s. 76(2) is established, it is conclusively presumed that D did not believe that V was consenting. Similarly, if any of the six circumstances in s. 75(2) is established, D is to be taken not to have reasonably believed that V consented, unless sufficient evidence is adduced to raise an issue as to whether he reasonably believed it. The presumptions in ss. 75 and 76 were discussed in paragraph (h). The Sexual Offences Bill originally had a third conclusive presumption, for cases where V's willingness to engage in sexual activity with D was indicated only by a third party. If sexual autonomy is to be respected, is it not unreasonable that D should proceed on the basis of consent relayed by someone else, as in the notorious cases of *Morgan* [271] and *Cogan and Leak*?[272] In the end this provision **(p. 355)** was dropped for various reasons, including the possibility that it discriminated against some people with mental incapacity,[273] but such cases have caused controversy and the Act might have been expected to contain some reference to whether mistakes in such circumstances are reasonable.

The reference in subsection (2) to ‘any steps A has taken to ascertain whether B consents’ is important, in that it directs the court to consider whether D attempted to verify his assumption or belief about consent. But the more difficult question is whether the injunction to courts to have regard to ‘all the circumstances’ may undermine the objective test by letting in D's prejudices and belief system, or his beliefs about V's sexual history. While recent decisions of high authority suggest a general restrictiveness towards allowing the defendant's own characteristics to set the tone for what was ‘reasonable’ in the circumstances,[274] various government statements suggested that courts might properly take account of D's personal characteristics when deciding what was reasonable.[275] It is one thing to take account of a learning disability, but quite another thing to take account of stereotypical beliefs about, for example, women's behaviour. Thus account might properly be taken of the fact that D was suffering from Asperger's syndrome and hence prone to misunderstand V's intentions.[276] But there is a danger, borne out by Finch and Munro's research,[277] that the phrase ‘all the circumstances’ blunts the objectivity of the reasonableness requirement and allows juries to modify the standard to take account of a particular defendant's belief system. The Act does not indicate the levels or spheres of objectivity or subjectivity required by the test, allowing room for the operation of ‘questionable socio-sexual myths’.[278]

Another moot point is how the ‘reasonable belief’ test applies where D intentionally penetrates the vagina of someone he believes to be X (who has indicated that she would consent) but who turns out to be V (who does not consent). Although the drafting of the Act may be thought to indicate otherwise (in its references to A and B), such a case of mistaken identity should surely be approached by asking whether D had reasonable grounds not only for the belief in consent, but also for the belief that it was X whom he was penetrating.[279]

(j) The effect of intoxication

We have already noted that the intoxicated state of the complainant may be relevant in various ways—unconsciousness (s. 75(2(d)), involuntary stupefaction (s. 75(2)(f), or lack of capacity to consent (s. 74)—and also that D's intoxication may be relevant when deciding whether he held a reasonable belief in consent. But what is the relevance of D's **(p. 356)** intoxication to the other matters that must be proved for liability, notably in rape and sexual penetration (*intentional* penetration), in sexual assault (*intentional* touching), and in causing sexual activity (*intentionally* causing another to engage in sexual activity)? The general effect of intoxication on criminal liability is not entirely clear, as we saw in Chapter 6.2, but one rule of thumb is that offences of basic intent (where intoxication is no defence) are those for which recklessness is sufficient, whereas offences of specific intent (where intoxication may be a defence) are those where intention alone is sufficient. However, in *Heard* [280] D was convicted of sexual assault for exposing his penis and rubbing it against a police officer's thigh. D's defence was that he was drunk, but the judge ruled that this was inadmissible. The Court of Appeal upheld this ruling, concluding that the requirement of ‘intentional touching’ in sexual assault is one of basic intent. This looks like a pragmatic decision of the kind that abound in intoxication cases, and the attempts of Hughes LJ to align it with existing doctrine involved strain: his argument that ‘a drunken accident is still an accident’ may have the effect of blurring the boundaries of recklessness, and his narrowing of the concept of ‘specific intent’ to cases of purpose is a poor fit with the existing case law. The failure of the 2003 Act to deal with such an obvious issue as intoxication, while going into extraordinary complexity in other respects, is unfortunate. The key is whether, in deciding if D's belief in V's consent was

reasonable in all the circumstances, the jury should have regard to D's drunken state. In principle, it seems wrong for a test of 'reasonable belief' to be adjusted to take account of drunken beliefs, and it now seems that—as under the old law—voluntary intoxication will not count as a relevant characteristic.[281]

8.6 Offences against the vulnerable[282]

One of the central aims of the 2003 Act is to protect the vulnerable, and to this end Parliament enacted a wide range of overlapping offences against children. We begin by discussing those offences against children under age 13 to which consent is irrelevant, and then consider each of the offences in ss. 9 to 15.

(a) Offences against children under age 13

Sections 5–8 of the Act create offences parallel to those in ss. 1–4, save that they are only committed if the victim is under age 13 and consent is not relevant. Section 5 creates the offence of rape of a child under 13, in the same terms as the offence in s. 1 but without any of the consent elements. Section 6 introduces an offence of assault of a child under 13 by sexual penetration, again without any consent requirements. The same approach is taken in respect of sexual assault of a child under 13 (s. 7) and (p. 357) causing a child under 13 to engage in sexual activity (s. 8). The other elements of these offences were discussed in section 8.5.

The main purpose of these offences is to provide for strong censure and punishment for adults who abuse young children. A major difficulty is that, in pursuit of the laudable aim of protecting young children and labelling those who abuse them sexually, these offences may result in the criminalization of other children. Sexual activity between children has long been widespread,[283] and some of it may involve boys and girls as young as 12. The serious offences in ss. 5–8 contain no exemptions for young persons, and so the conviction of two 12 year olds for kissing lustily in public is legally possible. The government sought to prevent this eventuality by assuring critics that there would be no such prosecutions, and the Crown Prosecution Service has published guidelines designed to ensure that the criminal law is not invoked inappropriately.[284] The CPS guidelines do mention that it is not in the public interest to prosecute children of a similar age (assuming that there was no coercion involved), and that would almost certainly dispose of the example of two 12 year olds kissing. But there may be circumstances when a young person is prosecuted, and is prosecuted for one of the four 'under 13' offences rather than for one of the lesser child sex offences mentioned in (b).

This is evident from *G.*,[285] where G, aged 15, had sex with a girl of 12 whom he had met. G was charged with rape of a child under 13, contrary to s. 5. In the belief that the offence imposes strict liability as to age, G was advised to plead guilty, but he did so on the basis that the girl consented in fact and told him that she was 15 too. Both the Court of Appeal and the House of Lords upheld his conviction for rape of a child under 13. Two principal arguments failed to persuade a majority of judges. First, there is the argument that imposing strict liability for such a serious offence is contrary to the presumption of innocence embodied in Art. 6.2 of the Convention. European authority for applying the presumption of innocence to the substantive criminal law, rather than to the burden of proof, is rather scanty, however.[286] This argument might have been better put on the basis of the 'constitutional principle' that 'unless Parliament has indicated otherwise, the appropriate mental element is an unexpressed

ingredient of every offence.'[287] The reasons why this principle was asserted by the House of Lords were directly related to the injustices in cases of this kind; but whether such a judicially created presumption could properly be wielded against a recent legislative enactment which was clearly intended to introduce strict liability as to age in the 'under 13' offences is doubtful. More persuasive is the second argument, that convicting a boy of 15 of such a serious and stigmatic offence in these circumstances violates his rights under Art. 8. In many European countries there would have been no criminal law intervention in these circumstances. Here, **(p. 358)** once the basis of plea was established, the prosecution had the choice of a) dropping the prosecution altogether or b) dropping the s. 5 prosecution and charging G under s. 13 (and s. 9) with sexual activity with a child under 16, a lesser offence with a maximum sentence of five years for offenders under 18.[288] The majority in the House of Lords recognized that G's right to respect for his private life was engaged, but held that this was less important than the state's positive obligation to ensure that young people are protected from the sexual attentions of others. Baroness Hale emphasized the dangers of under-age sexual activity, referring to the long-term psychological effects to which it can give rise.[289] This is a powerful consideration, but it should not be regarded as the most powerful element in the case. The question for the courts was whether conviction of this very serious offence, carrying a maximum of life imprisonment, was a disproportionate interference with G's right to respect for his private life. The Court of Appeal had quashed the sentence of detention and substituted a conditional discharge; the gross disparity between conviction of a life-carrying offence and the ultimate sentence is a fair indication of the disproportionality involved. Yet the majority of the House of Lords allowed the conviction under s. 5 to stand.

The approach of the Sexual Offences Act 2003 to cases involving children or young people close in age is woefully inadequate and potentially unjust, as *G.* demonstrates. Reliance on prosecutorial discretion is unsatisfactory in principle, and is unpersuasive in European human rights law.[290] Greater efforts should have been made to ensure clarity in the law: if an age difference of up to two years is acceptable so long as no coercion (howsoever defined) is present, then that should be used as a model for legislation, as in other jurisdictions. Faced with the inadequacy of the legislation in this respect, the majority of the House of Lords in *G.* should have followed human rights (and children's rights) reasoning more faithfully by focusing on the fairness of convicting this defendant on these assumed facts of this serious offence carrying life imprisonment.

(b) Offences against children under 16

Sections 9–15 of the 2003 Act create a range of offences against children under age 16, which remains the age of consent in these matters. The original intention was that the first four of these offences, in ss. 9–12, would criminalize acts in respect of children aged 13–15 inclusive and would therefore complement the offences against children under 13 in ss. 5–8. When it became clear that this would create procedural difficulties where there was uncertainty about the victim's age, the remedy was to extend ss. 9–12 to cover offences against all children under 16.[291] This creates a manifest overlap between **(p. 359)** the two groups of offences when the victim is under 13, and raises serious questions about the need for such duplication.[292] We will return to this and other general issues after outlining this group of new offences.

Section 9 creates two offences of sexual activity with a child. The subsection (1) offence

consists of sexual touching of a person under 16, an offence of enormous breadth that potentially criminalizes many normal touchings between young people. The subsection (2) offence consists of sexual activity involving penetration, with higher maxima. To these offences are added the offences in s. 10 of causing or inciting a child under 16 to engage in sexual activity (which run parallel to the offences in ss. 4 and 8). Further, s. 11 penalizes a person who engages in sexual activity in the presence of a child for the purpose of obtaining sexual gratification; and s. 12 creates an offence of causing a child to watch sexual activity, for the purpose of obtaining sexual gratification—such as watching a pornographic film, as in *Abdullahi*.[293] In that case the Court of Appeal confirmed that the sexual gratification need not be immediate, and that the requirement could be fulfilled if the purpose was to 'put the child in the mood' for a later gratification of D's desires.

The offences in ss. 9–12 have two common characteristics of note. One is that s. 13 states that, where any one of them is committed by a person under 18, the offence is triable summarily and, if tried on indictment, a lower maximum penalty of five years applies. This is a significant step in the direction of recognizing the need for a different approach to youngsters involved in sex cases, but it does not go far enough towards separating teenagers who sexually abuse other children (a significant social problem) from young people who consensually engage in sexual activities that are a fairly normal part of growing up. Once again, supporters of the Act rely on prosecutorial discretion to mark this important difference and, for the reasons outlined above, this is unsatisfactory in general and not rendered more satisfactory by the actual guidelines issued by the CPS.[294]

The other common characteristic is that these offences are committed when 'either (i) B is under 16 and A does not reasonably believe that B is 16 or over, or (ii) B is under 13'. In terms of drafting, this is much clearer than ss. 5–8 in indicating strict liability where the child is 12 or under, compared with a reasonableness requirement where the child is aged 13–15 inclusive. But the question is whether it is fair: although there are some justifications for holding adults to strict liability where the child is aged 12 or less,[295] it is arguable that they should not hold sway in a stigmatic offence carrying life imprisonment; and for younger defendants this is unduly draconian, as the facts of *G*. demonstrate.[296]

(p. 360) There are two further child sex offences in this part of the Act. Section 14 creates a wide-ranging offence of arranging or facilitating commission of a child sex offence (under ss. 9–13) in any part of the world. This covers much of the ground that the law of complicity would encompass (see Chapter 10), but goes beyond that by applying to offences that others may do. There is no lower penalty for offenders under 18, and yet this offence is committed by a teenager who arranges to meet his girlfriend (aged 15) for sex later in the day. Again, the drafting is so wide as to make no distinction between the abuser/exploiter and the consensual friend.

Section 15 introduces the much discussed offence of meeting a child following sexual grooming. This offence can only be committed by a person aged 18 or over. The conduct consists of either an intentional meeting, or where either party travels to a meeting, involving one person under 16, having met or communicated with that person on at least two previous occasions.[297] The required fault element is intending to do acts that constitute a relevant offence (mostly child sex offences under the Act), and not reasonably believing that the child is aged 16 or over. Proof of the intention to do 'relevant acts' is the principal narrowing feature

of the offence: otherwise it is an offence in the inchoate mode, complete when D either intentionally meets a child or either party travels to such a meeting.

Efforts were made in Parliament to narrow the enormous reach of the offences in ss. 9–14 by ensuring that, at least, carers, teachers, and the medical profession are not drawn into the criminal law by virtue of conduct intended to protect or support children. Thus s. 14(3) lists a number of circumstances in which a person is taken to be acting 'for the protection of a child' and does not commit the offence—for once, Parliament did not rely on prosecutorial discretion. Reference may also be made here to s. 73, which creates exemptions from conviction for aiding, abetting, or counselling several (but not all) offences in the Act for persons acting for the purpose of protecting the child rather than obtaining sexual gratification.

(c) Abuse of trust offences against persons under 18

The offence of abuse of a position of trust, introduced by the Sexual Offences (Amendment) Act 2000, was expanded into four new offences in the 2003 Act. Essentially, where a person over age 18 stands in a position of trust in relation to a person under 18, there is an offence if the person in trust has sexual activity with V (s. 16), causes or incites V to have sexual activity (s. 17), engages in sexual activity in the presence of V (s. 18), or causes V to watch sexual activity (s. 19). It will be seen that the substance of these offences parallels those in earlier sections—the drafting could have been much more concise—but the two key elements are the position of trust and the age of the younger person. Section 21 sets out definitions of 'positions of trust' that rely on the term 'looks after', whether in an educational institution, or in a hospital, **(p. 361)** or children's home, etc. The provision does not extend to others such as choirmasters, scoutmasters, or sports coaches, for whom the normal approach of aggravating the sentence is considered sufficient. Indeed, aggravation of sentence under ss. 9–12 would have dealt with all 'abuse of trust' offences in respect of children under 16, since the maximum sentences for those offences are already high. The significance of ss. 16–19 is that they apply where the young person is 16 or 17, over the age of consent but still (it is thought) vulnerable to abuse by those trusted to care for them. The question is whether the law should have gone further to attempt to separate abusive relationships from loving ones, or whether it is sufficient to state that there shall be no lawful sexual relationships of any kind between persons of 16 or 17 and those trusted to care for them. English law does not say this, since marriage between such persons is lawful. Other legal systems attempt to penalize those elements of pressure that indicate abusive relationships,[298] whereas English law criminalizes all such relationships and then attempts the necessary differentiation at the sentencing stage.[299]

(d) Familial sex offences

The 2003 Act contains two sets of offences aimed at familial sexual activity. We deal first with ss. 25–9 on 'familial child sex offences', which apply where one of the family members is under age 18. Child sexual abuse is not merely a sexual offence, but one of the deepest breaches of trust which can take place in a family based society. The home ought to be a safe haven, the place where young people can go to get away from fear and violence, and this fundamental feeling of safety can be destroyed by sexual abuse. Incest was introduced into English law as a distinct offence by the Punishment of Incest Act 1908.[300] Although the eugenic risk (that the child of an incestuous relationship between father and daughter or brother and sister will have congenital defects) was known at the time and was probably a factor, most of the arguments of

the reformers were based on the protection of children from sexual exploitation. Those arguments have great force today, as increasing evidence of child abuse within the family comes to light and as this hitherto 'private' realm is opened up.[301] Fathers may use their considerable power within the home to lead a daughter into sexual activity from a relatively early age. All kinds of pressure may be exerted on the child to keep quiet about the behaviour, with sometimes disastrous effects on his or her emotional development.

The essence of the two main offences is that s. 25 penalizes sexual touching of a family member under 18, with higher penalties where penetration is involved and lower (p. 362) penalties where the offence is committed by a family member also under 18; and that s. 26 penalizes the incitement of a family member to engage in sexual touching. As observed in relation to the 'position of trust' offences, the objective of labelling these offences separately could have been achieved much more simply by applying ss. 9 and 10 in the relevant sets of circumstances. That would still necessitate a definition of a 'family relationship', and s. 26 now expands this beyond close blood relations to cover a range of step-relations and foster parents living in the same household and regularly involved in caring for the young family member. Sexual abuse by such persons remains an important matter, of course, but it is already punishable whenever the child is under 16. So, again, it is a question of criminalizing those who commit offences against family members aged 16 and 17, whom (as a matter of law) they may be free to marry. Section 28 creates an exception for parties who are lawfully married, but that is not a convincing resolution of the issue of consensual sexual relations between adult members of the household and young family members aged 16 and 17. No attempt has been made to identify what is abusive about some of those relationships, and the same applies to sexual relations between young siblings in the same family—some of which are abusive, others not sufficiently wrong or harmful to warrant criminal liability. Again, the discretion to prosecute and the sentencing discretion are regarded as the proper methods of making the necessary distinctions, even though prosecution and conviction are momentous events.

Later in the Act appear two offences of sex with adult relatives. Section 64 creates the offence of sexually penetrating a relative aged 18 or over, and s. 65 creates an offence of consenting to being sexually penetrated by a relative aged 18 or over. Both offences have a maximum sentence of two years' imprisonment, and both now apply to adoptive relations.[302] This extends the previous law of incest to cover oral, anal, and vaginal sex and to include penetrative acts between consenting males. However, the rationale of punishing exploitation of the young is no longer applicable here, since the parties are adults. The offences appear to go against the Art. 8 principle of respecting the right of adults to engage in consensual sex in private, but the Sexual Offences Review concluded that 'the dynamics and balance of power within a family require special recognition, and we were concerned to ensure that patterns of abuse established in childhood were not allowed to continue into adulthood'.[303] Thus the relevant sentencing guidelines identify exploitation or long-term grooming as factors that render the offence serious enough for a custodial sentence.[304]

(e) Offences against persons with mental disorder

For the protection of these vulnerable people the Act introduces three sets of offences, each set being broadly parallel to the scheme for child sex offences in (p. 363) ss. 9–12 (i.e. sexual touching, causing or inciting sexual activity, engaging in sexual activity in the

presence of such a person, and causing such a person to watch sexual activity). Thus ss. 30–3 contain offences against persons with a mental disorder impeding choice. Section 30(2) defines such persons in terms of being either unable to communicate their choice or lacking the capacity to choose whether to agree. In *C*.[305] the Court of Appeal held that the mental disorder would usually have to be severe if it were to negative the capacity to choose, and that V's irrational fear of the defendant could not be equated with lack of the capacity to choose. The second set of offences, in, ss. 34–7, create offences of using inducement, threat, or deception in respect of a person with mental disorder. Sections 38–44 penalize care workers for persons with mental disorder who commit these offences.

It is important to ensure that the mentally disordered are properly protected from sexual abuse, but once again the Act contains prolix drafting and overlapping offences. On the one hand prosecutors are left to decide which of various applicable offences to select; on the other hand prosecutorial discretion is the only means of ensuring that sexual conduct between persons with a learning disability is not prosecuted unless there is strong evidence of coercion or other exploitative elements. As with the child sex offences, the Act fails to deal adequately with 'consensual' conduct between two people who both fall into the 'vulnerable' category. It is not possible to rely on the same principle of sexual autonomy here as with 'normal' adults, but the question remains whether relationships that are non-exploitative should be criminalized.

8.7 Other sexual offences

Attention should be drawn briefly to some of the other crimes in the Sexual Offences Act 2003. Reference has already been made to the offences relating to photographs of children and child pornography in ss. 45–51,[306] and to various offences relating to prostitution and trafficking in ss. 52–60. The Act introduced three new preparatory sexual offences: s. 61 penalizes the intentional administration of a substance with intent to stupefy or overpower,[307] s. 62 creates the very broad crime of committing any offence with intent to commit a sexual offence,[308] and s. 63 criminalizes trespass with intent to commit a sexual offence.[309] The new offence of exposure of genitals (s. 66) is limited by the requirement that D intends that someone will thereby be caused alarm or distress. Section 67 creates the offence of voyeurism for the purpose of obtaining sexual gratification. Section 69 creates offences of sexual intercourse with an animal (maximum **(p. 364)** sentence, two years). Sexual penetration of a corpse is criminalized by s. 70. And s. 71 creates an offence of engaging in sexual activity in a public lavatory.[310]

8.8 Re-assessing sexual offences law

The Sexual Offences Act 2003 marked an important advance in many ways. Reform of the essentially Victorian law was long overdue, and the need to reflect modern attitudes manifest. As we noted in part 8.5(c), there were some seven aims of the 2003 Act, many of them laudable. The law of sexual offences is now almost as gender-neutral as it could be. In some respects it goes further towards respecting human rights. And it makes considerable and well-signalled strides towards protecting the vulnerable from sexual exploitation.

There are, however, various respects in which the Act falls short of its promoters' ideals. Both the Sexual Offences Review and the 2003 Act set out to create a law that respects sexual

autonomy and protects the vulnerable, but are these goals attained? Respect for sexual autonomy has both its positive and negative sides, as argued earlier, and two significant manifestations of paternalism—the criminalization of consensual sex between adult relatives (see 8.6(d)), and the failure to recognize consent to sado-masochistic practices as part of sexual offences law[311]—amount to considerable restrictions. Respect for sexual autonomy also requires a clear and sensitive attempt to define 'consent', but it was argued above that the Act's scheme in ss. 75 and 76, and particularly the broad 'definition' in s. 74, fall well short of the ideal. Too many issues are left to interpretation, risking not only inconsistent decisions, but also the infiltration of old stereotypes which are at odds with the Act's aims. Thus the Act fails to give any signposts in relation to three obvious types of case—those involving intoxication, or non-fundamental deceptions, or non-violent threats. Moreover, the repeal of the former offences of obtaining sex by deception or by threats places even more strain on the general definition of consent and its four opaque elements (freedom, choice, agreement, and capacity).[312]

As for the protection of the vulnerable, in section 8.6 we noted the many offences protecting children, young people aged 16 and 17 (often referred to in the Act as children), and the mentally disordered. Unfortunately, as also observed above, the Act goes too far in the direction of criminalizing members of these very groups, especially children. Almost all the child offences, and particularly the most serious ones in ss. 5–8, apply to young defendants as much as to adults. The injustice to which this can lead **(p. 365)** is demonstrated by the events and the outcome in *G.*,[313] which fails to give adequate protection to D's human rights. This underlines the inadequacy of the Government's assurances that no children will be prosecuted unless there is coercion or some other untoward feature of the case. Reliance on prosecutorial discretion is insufficient protection of accused children's Art. 8 rights under the Convention—making teenagers liable to conviction for normal consensual activities also abridges their sexual autonomy—and the actual guidelines of the Crown Prosecution Service are relatively flexible too. Much more effort should be made, as in other jurisdictions, to give statutory protection to young defendants by means of higher minimum ages or age gaps. For example, in Scotland, s. 37 of the Sexual Offences Act 2009 marks out for separate treatment some kinds of sexual activity when engaged in by older children, and distinguishes between cases where that activity is sexual and when it is not. Further, under s. 39 of the 2009 Act, it is a defence in Scotland if minor sexual acts were engaged in by older children (13–16 years old) when the age gap between them was no more than two years.

Related to English law's reliance on prosecutorial discretion is the reluctance of policymakers and Parliamentary Counsel to try to capture the core of the wrongs, resulting in offence definitions that are overly broad. CPS guidance states that sexual activity between teenagers will not be prosecuted unless there is coercion, deception, or other untoward circumstances: why cannot something along those lines be put into the statute? The answer may be that it is difficult to prove. And yet in other sections, such as 11, 12, 18, and 19, a person may not be convicted unless the prosecution proves that the acts were done 'for the purpose of sexual gratification'—a requirement that goes to the core of the wrong, and may well be difficult to prove, but which is (rightly) included in the Act.[314]

A further point about autonomy concerns the use of objective standards and strict liability in the Act. It was argued in Chapter 5.4 and 5.5 that respect for individual autonomy militates in favour of subjective tests for criminal liability (intention, knowledge), and against strict liability,

save perhaps in respect of minor offences with low penalties. The Sexual Offences Act 2003 is probably the first major statute to introduce widespread negligence liability for serious offences carrying life imprisonment, or 14 or 10 years' imprisonment, in the requirement that 'A does not reasonably believe that B consents'. Is this a justifiable derogation from the subjective principle? It has been argued here and in previous editions that this is justifiable, because of the physical proximity of the parties in these offences and the important values (notably the sexual autonomy of both parties) that ought to be known to be at stake. Does that also justify strict liability as to age when the child is under 13, as ss. 5–12 provide? This is much more difficult to justify, particularly for young defendants. Perhaps it was thought too favourable to defendants to adopt a 'reasonable belief' requirement here too, since it is **(p. 366)** much easier to feign ignorance or mistake in these cases. But that is an assertion that is little tested. The House of Lords' declamations about the 'constitutional principle' of requiring subjective belief[315] may have been unconvincing in their precise application to sexual cases, but the case for requiring reasonable belief on the question of age, as with consent, is much stronger.

Both the Sex Offences Review and the government made much of the Act's aim of introducing greater clarity into sexual offences law, particularly (as noted in section 8.5(c)) in respect of consent to sexual activity. Maximum certainty is one aspect of the principle of legality, as we saw in Chapter 3.4(i), and serves to protect rule-of-law values for defendants, victims, and courts. Unfortunately there are serious doubts about whether the Act goes as far towards achievement of this aim as it should.[316] It is not merely a question of prolix drafting, overlapping offences, and reliance on prosecutorial discretion. Key terms such as 'consent' and 'sexual' are not satisfactorily defined, leaving the possibility (which the research of Finch and Munro tends to strengthen)[317] that different juries and magistrates may interpret them differently and that old stereotypes will continue to exert an influence. In a statute with high maximum penalties which undoubtedly takes sexual offending seriously, this is one of several unfortunate shortcomings. The Home Office's 'stocktake' of the Act came before some of the problems indicated were properly manifest, and even then it was commented that many of the changes in the law could not produce increased conviction rates unless 'stereotypes and myths surrounding rape' are addressed and changed.[318] Thus, even if the definitions and drafting cannot be improved[319]—and that is highly doubtful—steps should be taken to incorporate into model directions some warnings against the use of sexual stereotypes in decisions about consent and reasonable belief.[320] Yet to make significant inroads into the disparities between the attrition rate in rape cases and other crimes, not only is procedural reform likely to be as effective as reforming the substantive law, but changing public attitudes seems to be necessary in order to make any progress at all. Education in its widest sense seems necessary in order to reduce the effect of sexual stereotypes.[321]

(p. 367) Further reading

Non-Fatal Offences

Home Office, *Violence: Reforming the Offences against the Person Act 1861* (1998).

J. GARDNER, '*Rationality and the Rule of Law in Offences against the Person*', in J. Gardner, *Offences and Defences* (2007), ch 2.

J. HORDER, 'Reconsidering Psychic Assault' [1998] Crim LR 392.

P. ROBERTS, 'Consent in the Criminal Law' (1997) 17 OJLS 389.

C. ERIN, '*The Rightful Domain of the Criminal Law*', in C. Erin and S. Ost (eds), *The Criminal Justice System and Health Care* (2007), ch 14.

Sexual Offences

N. LACEY, *Unspeakable Subjects* (1997), ch 4.

J. GARDNER and S. SHUTE, '*The Wrongness of Rape*', in J. Gardner, *Offences and Defences* (2007), ch 1.

P. WESTEN, 'Some Common Confusions about Consent in Rape Cases', (2004) 2 Ohio St. LJ 333.

V. TADROS, 'Rape without Consent' (2006) 26 OJLS 515.

J. TEMKIN and A. ASHWORTH, 'Rape, Sexual Assaults and the Problems of Consent' [2004] Crim LR 328.

J. R. SPENCER, 'Child and Family Offences' [2004] Crim LR 347.

E. FINCH and V. MUNRO, 'Breaking Boundaries? Sexual consent in the jury room' (2006) 26 LS 303.

Notes:

[1] ⟨www.ons.gov.uk/ons/rel/crime-stats/crime-statistics/period-ending-march-2012/trends-in-crime-8-a-short-story.html#tab-What-is-happening-to-overall-levels-of-violent-crime-⟩; C. Kershaw et al., *Crime in England and Wales 2007/08* (2008), 62–5.

[2] C. Mirrlees-Black, *Domestic Violence: Findings from a British Crime Survey Self-Completion Questionnaire* (Home Office Research Study No. 191, 1999).

[3] S. Grace, *Policing Domestic Violence in the 1990s* (Home Office Research Study No. 139, 1995); C. Hoyle, Negotiating Domestic Violence (1998); CPS Policy on Prosecuting Cases of Domestic Violence, at ⟨www.cps.gov.uk⟩.

[4] L. Kelly et al., *Domestic Violence Matters* (Home Office Research Study No. 193, 1999).

[5] R. Walmsley, *Personal Violence* (Home Office Research Study No. 89, 1986), 8.

[6] Kershaw, *Crime in England and Wales 2007–08*, 76.

[7] N. Fielding, *Courting Violence: Offences Against the Person Cases in Court* (2006), 98–104.

[8] Hoyle, *Negotiating Domestic Violence*, ch 7; cf. Fielding (last note), 104–8, on victims, defendants, and courtroom tactics.

[9] J. Shapland, J. Willmore, and P. Duff, *Victims in the Criminal Justice System* (1985), ch 6, esp. at 99.

[10] Now incorporated into the legal guidance set out at ⟨www.cps.gov.uk/legal/l_to_o/offences_against_the_person/⟩.

[11] See the discussion in Chapter 7.3(c), where this is viewed as one argument against the 'GBH' rule for murder.

[12] Confirmed in *Fallon* [1994] Crim LR 519.

[13] This is the conduct requirement of all attempted crimes: see Chapter 11.3(b).

[14] The Sentencing Guidelines Council has conducted a consultation on whether sentences for attempted murder should be linked to those for murder (see Chapter 7.3(a)) or to those for other non-fatal offences: SGC, *Attempted Murder: Notes and Questions for Consultees* (2007).

[15] *C* v *Eisenhower* [1984] QB 331.

[16] *DPP* v *Smith* [1961] AC 290; cf. *Janjua* [1999] 1 Cr App R 91, where the CA held that 'serious harm', without the word 'really', was a sufficient direction in a case where a five-inch knife was used.

[17] *Bollom* [2004] 2 Cr App R 50.

[18] (1888) 22 QBD 23.

[19] [2004] Q. B. 1257; see M. Weait (2005) 68 MLR 121; see also the discussion of *Konzani* (reference at n 96).

[20] Protection from Harassment Act 1997, discussed in section 8.3(g).

[21] [1998] AC 147.

[22] (1994) 99 Cr App R 147, at 152.

[23] This distinction was affirmed in *Dhaliwal* [2006] 2 Cr App R 348, rejecting any extension to psychological conditions.

[24] See Chapter 5.5(b).

[25] See n 4 and accompanying text.

[26] *Morrison* (1989) 89 Cr App R 17; cf. *Fallon* [1994] Crim LR 519.

[27] The decision in *Morrison* did not clarify this; cf. *Mowatt*, n 40 and accompanying text.

[28] On which see Chapter 5.4(b).

[29] It will be recalled that *Burstow*, just discussed in relation to psychiatric injury as bodily harm, involved a conviction under s. 20.

[30] J. Gardner, 'Rationality and the Rule of Law in Offences against the Person' [1994] Camb LJ 502.

[31] (1888) 22 QBD 23.

[32] (1881) 8 QBD 54.

[33] [1973] Crim LR 530.

[34] *Wilson, Jenkins* [1984] AC 242.

[35] *Savage and Parmenter* [1992] 1 AC 699, *Mandair* [1995] 1 AC 208, *Ireland and Burstow* [1998] AC 147. See also the Australian decision of *Salisbury* [1976] VR 452, approved in *Wilson*, in which the term 'inflict' was interpreted to require some kind of violent conduct, even if not an assault as such.

[36] The decisions have important procedural as well as substantive implications: see G. Williams, 'Alternative Elements and Included Offences' [1984] CLJ 290.

[37] See Chapter 5.5(c).

[38] [1968] 1 QB 421.

[39] *Savage and Parmenter* [1992] AC 699.

[40] *Mowatt* [1968] 1 QB 421, confirmed in *Rushworth* (1992) 95 Cr App R 252. This accords with the normal definition of recklessness: see Chapter 5.5(c). Diplock LJ's judgment in *Mowatt* also includes the phrase 'should have foreseen', which wrongly suggests an objective criterion. The Court of Appeal has pointed this out, but judges occasionally fall into the error.

[41] The maximum sentence is seven years when the s. 20 offence is 'racially or religiously aggravated'. See n 56 and accompanying text.

[42] Theft Act 1968, s. 8(2); note that robbery itself (discussed in the context of property offences in Chapter 9.3) may also be classified as an offence of violence.

[43] *Donovan* [1934] 2 KB 498.

[44] [1994] Crim LR 432.

[45] [1998] AC 147, discussed in subsection (b).

[46] Dicta in *Miller* [1954] 2 QB 282 are no longer good law.

[47] Shapland, Willmore, and Duff, *Victims of the Criminal Justice System*, ch 6; M. Maguire and C. Corbett, *The Effects of Crime and the Work of Victim Support Schemes* (1987), ch 7.

[48] *Morris* [1998] 1 Cr App R 386 (evidence from general practitioner that V suffered sleeplessness, anxiety, tearfulness, fear, and physical tenseness not sufficient). To the same effect, *Dhaliwal* [2006] 2 Cr App R 348.

[49] *R (on the application of T)* v *DPP* [2003] Crim LR 622.

[50] Several s. 47 cases raise issues about whether there was an assault or battery, and these are discussed in subsection (e) on Common Assault.

[51] *Savage and Parmenter* [1992] 1 AC 699.

[52] Gardner, 'Rationality and the Rule of Law', argues that this is not irrational: someone who has chosen to assault or risk assaulting another has crossed a moral threshold and is rightly held liable if more serious consequences result. See further Chapter 3.6(r).

[53] The definitions are to be found in the Crime and Disorder Act 1998 ss. 29 and 28, and the Anti-Terrorism, Crime and Security Act 2001 s. 39. For discussion of the former, see the sentencing guidelines decision in *Kelly and Donnelly* [2001] 1 Cr App R (S) 341.

[54] Per Baroness Hale in *Rogers* [2007] UKHL 8, at 12.

[55] For discussion of the distinction between the two offences, see *Jones* v *Bedford and Mid-Befordshire Magistrates' Court* [2010] EWHC 523.

[56] *Forbes and Webb* (1865) 10 Cox CC 362.

[57] Law Com No. 177, cl. 76; awareness that the constable is or may be acting in the execution of duty is not required.

[58] (1992) 95 Cr App R 28.

[59] *Thomas* (1985) 81 Cr App R 331 (touching the hem of a skirt and rubbing it), and *H* [2005] Crim LR 734, discussed in section 8.5(f).

[60] W. Blackstone, *Commentaries on the Laws of England* (1768), iii, 120.

[61] Law Com No. 177, cl. 75; assault and battery are combined in a single offence under the code.

[62] See also Gardner, 'Rationality and the Rule of Law', and the discussion of sexual assaults, section 8.5(f).

[63] See *Clarence* (1888) 22 QBD 23, *per* Stephen and Wills JJ.

[64] (1990) 91 Cr App R 23 (reversed on other grounds by the House of Lords in *Savage and Parmenter* [1992] 1 AC 699).

[65] (1990) 91 Cr App R 23, 27; although it was not mentioned, the analysis might have been linked to the principle in *Miller* [1983] 2 AC 161, Chapter 4.4.

[66] See the argument of M. Hirst, 'Assault, Battery and Indirect Violence' [1999] Crim LR 557, relying on Lord Roskill in *Wilson* [1984] AC 242 and Lords Steyn and Hope in *Ireland and Burstow* [1998] AC 147.

[67] [2004] Crim LR 471.

[68] [1983] 2 AC 161, discussed in Chapter 4.4.

[69] *Per* Goff LJ, in *Collins* v *Willcock* (1984) 79 Cr App R 229, at 234.

[70] *Per* Goff LJ, in *Collins* v *Willcock* (1984) 79 Cr App R 229, at 234.

[71] *Per* Goff LJ, in *Collins* v *Willcock* (1984) 79 Cr App R 229, at 234; cf. *Donnelly* v *Jackman* (1969) 54 Cr App R 229.

[72] A requirement of hostility was re-asserted in *Brown* [1994] 1 AC 212, although Lord Goff in *Re F* [1990] 2 AC 1 held that it does not form part of the offence of assault.

[73] [1994] 1 AC 212, discussed in (f).

[74] Cf. *Meade and Belt* (1823) 1 Lew CC 184 with *Wilson* [1955] 1 WLR 493, and the discussion by G. Williams, 'Assaults and Words' [1957] Crim LR 216.

[75] [1998] AC 147, at 162; see also *Constanza* [1997] 2 Cr App R 492 for a case involving words, silence, and gestures.

[76] J. Horder, 'Reconsidering Psychic Assault' [1998] Crim LR 392.

[77] *Smith* v *Chief Superintendent of Woking Police Station* (1983) 76 Cr App R 234.

[78] This would only amount to the offence of voyeurism, contrary to s. 67(1) of the Sexual Offences Act 2003, if D, for the purpose of obtaining sexual gratification, observed V 'doing a private act'.

[79] [1976] Crim LR 121.

[80] Thus if the victim also believes that the gun is a toy or is unloaded, there can be no assault: see *Lamb* [1967] 2 QB 981, Chapter 7.5(a).

[81] [1998] AC at 161; for reflections on the judicial function in thus developing the law see C. Wells, 'Stalking: the Criminal Law Response' [1997] Crim LR 463.

[82] [1998] AC 161, at 166.

[83] [1997] 2 Cr App R 492.

[84] See further Horder, 'Reconsidering Psychic Assault'. Law reform proposals are discussed in subsection (m).

[85] *Venna* [1976] QB 421, approved in *Savage and Parmenter* [1992] 1 AC 699.

[86] See n 53.

[87] Criminal Damage Act 1971, except in circumstances where life is endangered: see Chapter 7.7.

[88] See section 8.5(c).

[89] Cf. C. Elliott and C. de Than, 'The Case for a Rational Reconstruction of Consent in Criminal Law' (2007) 70 MLR 225.

[90] Likewise, it would seem strange to say that every appropriation of another's property amounts to theft unless there is the defence that the owner consents—although, as we shall see in Chapter 9.2(a), the courts appear to have gone even further than that.

[91] Compare the remark of Lord Lowry in *Brown* [1994] 1 AC 212, at 255, to the effect that allowing consent would give a 'judicial imprimatur' to what the defendants had done, with the more thoughtful approach of Lord Mustill.

[92] The effect of deception, threats, and other possible vitiating factors is considered in the context of sexual offences in section 8.5(d) and (e).

[93] The same is true of self-defence cases. Self-defensive conduct may be permissible in law, but morally questionable. An example might be where the only way in which I can stop a 9-year-old from picking up a real gun and shooting it at me is by shooting at the child myself, even though it was me who carelessly left the real gun within the child's reach.

[94] (1888) 22 QBD 23.

[95] [2004] QB 1257; see M. Weait, 'Criminal Law and the Sexual Transmission of HIV: *R* v *Dica*' (2005) 68 MLR 121.

[96] [2005] 2 Cr App R 13; see M. Weait, 'Knowledge, Autonomy and Consent: *R* v *Konzani*' [2005] Crim LR 673.

[97] *Hinks* [2000] 4 All ER 833 (HL); *Santana-Bermudez* [2004] Crim LR 471; *Richardson* [1998] 2 Cr App R 200; *Tabassum* [2000] 2 Cr App R 328; Fraud Act 2006, s. 3.

[98] Cf. S. Ryan, 'Reckless Transmission of HIV: Knowledge and Culpability' [2006] Crim LR 981 and R. Bennett, '*Should we Criminalize HIV Transmission?*', in C. Erin and S. Ost (eds), *The Criminal Justice System and Health Care* (2007).

[99] See section 8.5(h) of this chapter.

[100] [1981] QB 715.

[101] *Donovan* [1934] 2 KB 498.

[102] [2006] EWCA Crim 2414

[103] [1994] 1 AC 212.

[104] For discussion see D. Kell, 'Social Disutility and the Law of Consent' (1994) 14 OJLS 121; M. J. Allen, '*Consent and Assault*' [1994] J Crim Law 183.

[105] [1981] QB 715, at 719.

[106] *Jobidon* [1991] 2 SCR 714.

[107] See Chapter 4.7.

[108] For a dentistry case see *Richardson* [1998] 2 Cr App R 200, Chapter 8.5(h).

[109] See C. Erin, '*The Rightful Domain of the Criminal Law*', in C. Erin and S. Ost (eds), *The Criminal Justice System and Health Care* (2007).

[110] [2005] 1 WLR 910.

[111] In *Barnes*, [2005] 1 WLR 910, Lord Woolf CJ remarked that every soccer player tackling another in order to win the ball has the recklessness needed to fulfil a s. 20 offence.

[112] M. J. Gunn and D. Ormerod, 'The Legality of Boxing' (1995) 15 Legal Studies 181.

[113] (1986) 83 Cr App R 375.

[114] (1992) 95 Cr App R 304; see also *Richardson and Irwin* [1999] 1 Cr App R 392.

[115] [1994] 1 AC 212.

[116] Discussed in n 103 and accompanying text.

[117] (1992) 94 Cr App R 302, at 309.

[118] [1994] 1 AC at 236.

[119] [1994] 1 AC at 255.

[120] See J. Horder, 'Judges Use of Moral Arguments in Statutory Interpretation', in T. Endicott, J. Getzler, and E. Peel, *Properties of Law: Essays in Honour of Jim Harris* (2006), ch 5.

[121] N. Bamforth, 'Sado-Masochism and Consent' [1994] Crim LR 661.

[122] Under the Suicide Act 1961.

[123] See Chapter 7.4(h).

[124] [1996] 2 Cr App R 241.

[125] (1999) *The Times* 15 October.

[126] (1997) 24 EHRR 39, on which see L. Moran (1998) 61 MLR 77.

[127] 24 EHRR at para. 45, distinguishing the case from consensual non-violent homosexual behaviour in private, the criminalization of which has been held to breach Art. 8 in, e.g. *Dudgeon* v *United Kingdom* (1982) 4 EHRR 149.

[128] In *K.A. and A.D.* v *Belgium* (judgment of 17 February 2005, App No. 42758/98) the Strasbourg Court followed its *Laskey* judgment in holding that convictions based on consensual sado-masochism were a justifiable interference with the participants' Art. 8 rights.

[129] Sir Michael Foster, *Crown Law* (1762), 260.

[130] Law Commission Consultation Paper No. 139, *Consent in the Criminal Law* (1995), on which see S. Shute, 'The Second Law Commission Consultation Paper on Consent' [1996] Crim LR 684; P. Roberts, 'Consent in the Criminal Law' (1997) 17 OJLS 389; D. C. Ormerod and M. Gunn, 'Consent—a Second Bash' [1996] Crim LR 694.

[131] See Roberts (reference at n 130).

[132] See the study by E. Finch, *The Criminalisation of Stalking* (2001). See also ⟨www.harassment-law.co.uk⟩.

[133] See *DPP* v *Dunn* [2001] 1 Cr App R 352.

[134] This negligence standard has no exception for incapacity: *Colohan* [2001] Crim LR 845.

[135] As is evident from the facts of cases such as *Ireland and Burstow* [1998] AC 147, *Constanza* [1997] Crim LR 576, and *Morris* [1998] 1 Cr App R 386. See further Wells, 'Stalking: the Criminal Law Response'.

[136] Section 32 Crime and Disorder Act 1998, s. 39 Anti-Terrorism, Crime and Security Act 2001; for sentencing guidelines see *Kelly and Donnelly* [2001] 2 Cr App R (S) 341.

[137] For general analysis see A. T. H. Smith, *Offences Against Public Order* (1987), and R. Card, *Public Order: the New Law* (1986).

[138] Public Order Act 1986, s. 8.

[139] Cf. *Mahroof* [1989] Crim LR 72.

[140] *Keys and Sween* (1986) 8 Cr App R (S) 444, *Beasley et al*. (1987) 9 Cr App R (S) 504.

[141] Inserted by Criminal Justice and Public Order Act 1994.

[142] Cf. Chapter 2.1 for discussion of the use to which s. 5 has been put.

[143] See n 56.

[144] It does contain the offence of threatening to kill (s. 16), and we saw in subsection (e) that common assault may be committed by threatening unlawful force, but there are no general offences: see P. Alldridge, 'Threats Offences—a Case for Reform' [1994] Crim LR 176.

[145] See Chapter 11.4 and 11.5.

[146] See Chapter 10.3, and particularly *Jefferson et al*. (1994) 99 Cr App R 13; also Chapter 11.7 on encouraging and assisting crime.

[147] *Redmond-Bate* v *DPP* [1999] Crim LR 998.

[148] See generally N. Lacey, C. Wells, and O. Quick, *Reconstructing Criminal Law* (4th edn., 2010), ch 2.

[149] *Kennedy (No. 2)* [2007] UKHL 38, overruling previous authority.

[150] *Hill* (1986) 83 Cr App R 386.

[151] *Marcus* (1981) 73 Cr App R 49.

[152] Section 134 of the Criminal Justice Act 1988.

[153] *Gibbins and Proctor* (1918) 13 Cr App R 134; see Chapter 4.4.

[154] For an important critique of the existing law, see R. Taylor and L. Hoyano, 'Criminal Child Maltreatment: the Case for Reform' [2012] Crim LR 871.

[155] Section 127, and the decision in *Newington* [1990] Crim LR 593; cf. s. 27 of the Offences Against the Person Act 1861, an obsolete offence of neglect in providing for apprentices.

[156] *Dytham* [1979] QB 722, *Attorney-General's Reference No. 3 of 2003* [2004] EWCA Crim 868.

[157] On which see Chapter 4.3(b) and Chapter 11.

[158] Offensive Weapons Act 1996.

[159] *Evans* v *Hughes* [1972] 3 All ER 412; *Densu* [1998] 1 Cr App R 400; cf. D. Lanham, 'Offensive Weapons and Self-Defence' [2005] Crim LR 85.

[160] The structure of this group of offences is discussed in the sentencing guideline judgment in *Celaire and Poulton* [2003] 1 Cr App R (S) 610.

[161] See J. R. Spencer, 'Motor Vehicles as Weapons of Offence' [1985] Crim LR 29.

[162] The Health and Safety (Offences) Act 2008 increases the penalties for these offences.

[163] For some doubts on the latter point see n 30.

[164] See E. Genders, 'Reform of the Offences Against the Person Act: Lessons from the Law in Action' [1999] Crim LR 689.

[165] N. Fielding, *Courting Violence*, 209–12.

[166] See Chapter 3.5 and 3.6 for discussion of the principles mentioned here.

[167] Criminal Law Revision Committee, *Offences against the Person*, 14th Report (1980); Law Com No. 218, *Legislating the Criminal Code: Offences against the Person and General Principles* (1993).

[168] Home Office, *Violence: Reforming the Offences Against the Person Act 1861* (1998).

[169] For criticism on this and other points see J. C. Smith, 'Offences against the Person: the Home Office Consultation Paper' [1998] Crim LR 317.

[170] In Ireland, the Non-Fatal Offences Against the Person Act 1997 follows the scheme of the English Bills to some extent, but includes specific offences of harassment, coercion, and attacking another with a syringe. It has now been in force for a decade.

[171] Cf. the existing test in *Ireland and Burstow*, n 23 and accompanying text.

[172] Cf. the use of the notions of causing others to fear for their personal safety, and causing fear of violence, in the Public Order Act 1986 and the Protection from Harassment Act 1997.

[173] There were 1,300 rapes reported in 1980, 2,900 in 1988, 4,600 in 1993: see further

Kershaw et al., *Crime in England and Wales 2007–08*, Table 2.04.

[174] Kershaw et al., Crime in England and Wales 2007–08, 47; British Crime Survey 2011.

[175] A. Myhill and J. Allen, *Rape and Sexual Assault of Women: the Extent and Nature of the Problem, Home Office Research Study* 237 (2002), ch 3.

[176] Myhill and Allen, *Rape and Sexual Assault of Women: the Extent and Nature of the Problem*, 30.

[177] Myhill and Allen, *Rape and Sexual Assault of Women: the Extent and Nature of the Problem*, 49.

[178] Myhill and Allen, *Rape and Sexual Assault of Women: the Extent and Nature of the Problem*, 51.

[179] J. Temkin, *Rape and the Legal Process* (2nd edn., 2002), 3–8.

[180] A. Feist et al., *Investigating and Detecting Recorded Offences of Rape* (2007).

[181] See also Temkin and Krahé, 19–22.

[182] Temkin and Krahé, 19–22, Table 4.6.

[183] (1986) 82 Cr App R 347.

[184] Temkin, *Rape and the Legal Process*, 37.

[185] *Milberry* [2003] 2 Cr App R (S) 142, superseded by Sentencing Guidelines Council, *Sexual Offences Act 2003* (2007).

[186] W. Young, *Rape Study: A Discussion of Law and Practice* (1983), 34.

[187] J. Morgan and L. Zedner, *Child Victims* (1992), ch 3.

[188] Shapland, Willmore, and Duff, *Victims in the Criminal Justice System*, 107–8.

[189] *X and Y* v *Netherlands* (1986) 8 EHRR 235; *MC* v *Bulgaria* (2005) 40 EHRR 459.

[190] See e.g. *Sutherland and Morris* v *UK* (1997) 24 EHRR CD22, para. 57.

[191] In England there was a long struggle to establish rape within marriage as an offence: see 4th edition of this work, Chapter 8.5(b). Cf. S. J. Schulhofer, *Unwanted Sex: the Culture of Intimidation and the Failure of Law* (1998), for a discussion in the context of US rape laws, which generally require force as an element of the offence.

[192] See J. McGregor, *Is it Rape?* (2005), 111.

[193] Hence the many judgments against states which have criminalized consensual homosexual acts, e.g. *Dudgeon* v *United Kingdom* (1982) 4 EHRR 149, and *ADT* v *United Kingdom* (2001) 31 EHRR 33.

[194] See N. Lacey, *Unspeakable Subjects* (1998), ch 4, and Schulhofer, *Unwanted Sex*,

reviewed by M. Childs, 'Sexual Autonomy and Law' (2001) 64 MLR 309. For a different approach, starting from the proposition that, with some important exceptions, every act of sexual intercourse is a *prima facie* wrong, see M. Madden Dempsey and J. Herring, 'Why Sexual Penetration Requires Justification', (2007) 27 OJLS 467.

[195] J. Gardner and S. Shute, '*The Wrongness of Rape*', in J. Horder (ed.), *Oxford Essays in Jurisprudence (4th Series)* (2000), 205.

[196] For developments of this notion, see Lacey, 117f (reference at n 194) and V. Tadros, 'Rape without Consent' (2006) 26 OJLS 515.

[197] The leading text on the Act is P. Rook and R. Ward, *Sexual Offences: Law and Practice* (2004). For briefer treatment, see J. Temkin and A. Ashworth, 'Rape, Sexual Assaults and the Problems of Consent' [2004] Crim LR 328 (on which much of the following analysis is based); J. R. Spencer, 'Child and Family Offences' [2004] Crim LR 347; and A. A. Gillespie, 'Tinkering with "Child Pornography"' [2004] Crim LR 361.

[198] For critical comment, see N. Lacey, 'Beset by Boundaries: the Home Office Review of Sex Offences' [2001] Crim LR 3; P. Rumney, 'The Review of Sex Offences and Rape Law' (2001) 64 MLR 890; and Temkin, *Rape and the Legal Process*.

[199] Home Office, *Protecting the Public* (2002).

[200] See e.g. House of Commons Home Affairs Committee, *Sexual Offences Bill* (5th report, 2003), and the Joint Committee on Human Rights, *Scrutiny of Bills: Further Progress Report* (12th report, 2003).

[201] *Protecting the Public*, para. 4.

[202] *R* v *R* [1992] 1 AC 599 and s. 142 of the Criminal Justice and Public Order Act 1994.

[203] E.g. *Sutherland and Morris* v *United Kingdom* (1997) 24 EHRR CD22 and *ADT* v *United Kingdom* (2000) 31 EHRR 33.

[204] *Protecting the Public*, para. 30; Lord Falconer, HL Deb, vol. 644, col. 772 (13 February 2003).

[205] Cf. the discussions in *Setting the Boundaries*, at paras. 2.7 and 2.10.

[206] *Protecting the Public*, para. 5.

[207] *Protecting the Public*, para. 10; Lord Falconer, HL Deb, vol. 644, col. 771 (13 February 2003).

[208] *Smith and Hogan's Criminal Law* (13th edn., 2011), p. 777.

[209] Home Office *Setting the Boundaries* (2000), para. 2.8.5.

[210] The Court of Appeal has taken the view that, in sentencing for rape, judges should not adjust a sentence to reflect which orifice was penetrated: *Ismail* [2005] EWCA Crim 397.

[211] It seems that the Committee has been proved right, so far as juries' views on the scope of

rape are concerned: *Smith and Hogan's Criminal Law* (13th edn., 2011), p. 743.

[212] Home Affairs Committee, *Sexual Offences Bill*, paras. 10–14.

[213] For this purpose, the vagina includes the vulva, and surgically reconstructed organs and orifices are included: s. 79(3).

[214] Section 79(2).

[215] This test was supported in *Setting the Boundaries*, paras. 2.12.5–6.

[216] Discussed in Chapter 5.3(d).

[217] See H. Power, 'Towards a Redefinition of the *Mens Rea* of Rape' (2003) 23 OJLS 379.

[218] Relevant in cases where the victim is unsure or incapable of telling what penetrated him or her: see *Minshull* [2004] EWCA 192.

[219] Sentencing Guidelines Council, *Sexual Offences Act 2003: Definitive Guideline* (2007). See *Corran* [2005] EWCA Crim 192.

[220] [2005] Crim LR 735.

[221] Largely following the previous leading case of *Court* [1989] AC 28.

[222] [2005] Crim LR 735.

[223] [1989] AC 28.

[224] [1956] Crim LR 52.

[225] The CA in *H* [2005] Crim LR 735 held that this would now be for the court to decide in each case.

[226] It is relevant to labelling, of course, and also to the imposition of notification requirements and other preventive measures under the 2003 Act, as well as to sentencing (on which see the Sentencing Guidelines Council, n 217).

[227] See *Devonald* [2008] EWCA Crim 527.

[228] *Basherdost* [2008] EWCA Crim 2883.

[229] This was the proposal in *Setting the Boundaries*, para. 2.20.

[230] E.g. *Cogan and Leak* [1976] QB 217, discussed in Chapter 10.6; under the 2003 Act much would turn on whether D's mistake would prevent conviction.

[231] V. Tadros, 'Rape without Consent' (2006) 26 OJLS 515.

[232] Part 2.10.

[233] However, it seems that the presumptions in ss. 75–6 do not apply to attempts and conspiracy to commit sex offences: Judge Rodwell, 'Problems with the Sexual Offences Act

2003' [2005] Crim LR 290.

[234] *Flattery* (1877) 2 QBD 410; *Williams* [1923] 1 KB 340.

[235] *Jheeta* [2007] EWCA Crim 1699.

[236] As in *Green* [2002] EWCA Crim 1501, where a qualified doctor induced young men to masturbate in front of him, allegedly to assess their potential for impotence but actually for his sexual gratification. A similar view might be taken of the facts of *Tabassum* [2000] 2 Cr App R 328, where women agreed to D examining their breasts for 'research work', when D represented that he was medically qualified and he was not.

[237] [1995] 2 Cr App R 49.

[238] In *Jheeta* (n 238), at [27].

[239] [2008] EWCA Crim 527.

[240] [2007] EWCA Crim 2131.

[241] For an example of this general type, see *Melliti* [2001] EWCA Crim 1563.

[242] J. Herring, 'Mistaken Sex' [2005] Crim LR 519.

[243] The 2003 Act repealed the offence under s. 3 of the Sexual Offences Act 1956 without replacing it.

[244] See *Elbekkay* [1995] Crim LR 163.

[245] The words of Baroness Scotland, quoted by the Home Affairs Committee, *Sexual Offences Bill*, para. 29. For further discussion, see Temkin and Ashworth, 'Rape, Sexual Assaults and the Problems of Consent', 342–4.

[246] See the decision in *White* [2010] EWCA Crim 1929, where D's conviction was quashed because the judge had given what was found to be confusing and unnecessary direction to the just on s. 75.

[247] See *Dagnall* [2003] EWCA Crim 2441.

[248] The use of 'immediate' rather than 'imminent' restricts the range of this provision: cf. *Hasan* [2005] UKHL 22, discussed in Chapter 6.4(a).

[249] An offence under s. 2 of the Sexual Offences Act 1956.

[250] See further Temkin and Ashworth, 'Rape, Sexual Assaults and the Problems of Consent', 337–8.

[251] For detailed analysis, see E. Finch and V. Munro, 'Intoxicated Consent and Drug-assisted Rape Revisited' [2004] Crim LR 789.

[252] Many government statements at the time of the Bill emphasized that it was intended to send out 'clear messages' about what was acceptable and unacceptable: e.g. Home Office,

Protecting the Public, para. 5, and Home Affairs Committee, *Sexual Offences Bill*, para. 30.

[253] Cf. P. Westen, 'Some Common Confusions about Consent in Rape Cases', (2004) 2 Ohio State JCL 333, and more fully, P. Westen, *The Logic of Consent* (2005).

[254] *E.B*. [2006] EWCA Crim 2945, following the decisions in *Dica* and *Konzani*, Chapter 8.3(f), on this point.

[255] Section 30(2) of the Act refers to capacity in terms of whether D 'lacks sufficient understanding of the nature or reasonably foreseeable consequences of what is being done'.

[256] [2007] EWCA Crim 804. The conviction was quashed because of non-direction by the judge.

[257] [2007] EWCA Crim 2056.

[258] J. L. Austin, '*A Plea for Excuses*', in H. Morris (ed.), *Freedom and Responsibility* (1961), 8.

[259] *Setting the Boundaries*, para. 2.11.5; and see the passage cited from *Hysa* (reference at n 257).

[260] Cf. Lacey, *Unspeakable Subjects* (1998), 114; Westen (reference at n 253).

[261] 'Sexual Consent in the Jury Room' (2006) 26 LS 303.

[262] 'Sexual Consent in the Jury Room' (2006) 26 LS 315.

[263] For a summary and analysis of research, see Temkin and Krahé, ch 3.

[264] Cf. *Tabassum* [2000] 2 Cr App R 238 with *Richardson* [1998] 2 Cr App R 200, and Chapter 8.3(f).

[265] [1995] QB 250.

[266] J. Herring, 'Mistaken Sex' [2005] Crim LR 511, at 516; cf. the much criticized concept of deception in *Metropolitan Police Commissioner* v *Charles* [1977] AC 177, discussed in Chapter 9.8(c), and R. Williams, 'Deception, Mistake and Vitiation of the Victim's Consent' (2008) 124 LQR 132.

[267] Cf. *McCoy* [1953] 2 SA 4.

[268] In *Setting the Boundaries*, para. 2.10.9, it was suggested that threats such as 'losing a job or killing the family pet' should negative consent.

[269] Also relevant is the subtle difference between threats and inducements: see McGregor, *Is it Rape?* 169.

[270] [1976] 1 AC 182, discussed in Chapter 5.3(d).

[271] See Chapter 5.3(d).

[272] See Chapter 10.6.

[273] Further discussed by Temkin and Ashworth, 'Rape, Sexual Assaults and the Problems of Consent', 339.

[274] Notably the major decisions on duress in *Hasan* [2005] UKHL 22, discussed in Chapter 6.3.

[275] See Temkin and Ashworth, 'Rape, Sexual Assaults and the Problems of Consent', 341, for references.

[276] *T.S.* [2008] CLW 08/07/1.

[277] See n 261.

[278] (2006) 26 LS at 317.

[279] The point could not be authoritatively decided in *Attorney General's Reference No. 79 of 2006 (Whitta)* [2007] 1 Cr App R (S) 752, an appeal against sentence.

[280] [2007] EWCA Crim 125.

[281] *Grenwal* [2010] EWCA Crim 2448.

[282] See the critique by J. R. Spencer, 'Child and Family Offences' [2004] Crim LR 347.

[283] J. R. Spencer, 'Child and Family Offences' [2004] Crim LR, at 354 and 360.

[284] See ⟨www.cps.gov.uk⟩.

[285] [2008] UKHL 37.

[286] See the commentary on the Court of Appeal decision at [2006] Crim LR 930.

[287] Per Lord Nicholls in *B.* v *DPP* [2000] 2 AC 428, at 460; see also *K.* [2002] 1 Cr App R 121.

[288] See Home Office, *Sexual Offences Act 2003: a Stocktake* (2006), para. 13, stating that in the first eight months of the Act coming into force, some 39 per cent of prosecutions for the s. 13 offence were for offences against children under 13 (as in the case of *G*).

[289] [2008] UKHL 37, at [45] to [51].

[290] The risk of prosecution is the key issue: e.g. *Sutherland and Monnell* v *UK* (1997) 24 EHRR CD22.

[291] This explains why it would have been possible to charge G (n 284) under ss. 13 and 9.

[292] Not least because a provision relating to the age of A (and of B) could easily have been inserted into ss. 1–4.

[293] [2007] 1 Cr App R 14.

[294] See n 284.

[295] Cf. J. Horder, 'How Culpability Can, and Cannot, be Denied in Under-age Sex Crimes' [2001] Crim LR 15.

[296] See n 285 and text.

[297] This reflects the broadened definition: see Criminal Justice and Immigration Act 2008, s. 73 and Sch 15.

[298] Spencer, 'Child and Family Offences', 355–6, referring to French law.

[299] Sentencing Guidelines Council, *Sexual Offences* (2007), pp. 60–1, refers to such factors as the degree of vulnerability of the young person, the age gap between the parties, and the presence of coercion.

[300] See V. Bailey and S. Blackburn, 'The Punishment of Incest Act 1908: A Case Study in Law Creation' [1979] Crim LR 708, and S. Wolfram, 'Eugenics and the Punishment of Incest Act 1908' [1983] Crim LR 308.

[301] See L. Zedner, '*Regulating Sexual Offences within the Home*', in I. Loveland (ed.), *The Frontiers of Criminality* (1995), on the interaction of the State and the family, privacy, and regulation.

[302] Criminal Justice and Immigration Act 2008, s. 73 and Sch 15.

[303] Criminal Justice and Immigration Act 2008, para. 5.8.3.

[304] Sentencing Guidelines Council, *Sexual Offences* (2007), pp. 92–3.

[305] *The Times*, 9 June 2008.

[306] See Gillespie, 'Tinkering with "Child Pornography"'.

[307] Cf. the terms of the presumption in s. 75(2), discussed in section 8.5(h).

[308] This was applied to kidnapping with intent to commit a sex offence in *Royle* [2005] 2 Cr App R (S) 480.

[309] Previously s. 9 of the Theft Act 1968 covered entry as a trespasser with intent to commit rape, whereas the new crime applies to any sexual offence.

[310] For detailed treatment of these and other offences in the Act, see Rook and Ward, *Sexual Offences: Law and Practice*.

[311] Discussed in relation to the *Brown/Laskey* decision in section 8.3(f) of this chapter.

[312] The government appears content with the statutory definition as construed by the courts in decisions such as *Bree*: see Office for Criminal Justice Reform, *Convicting Rapists and Protecting Victims: Justice for Victims of Rape* (2006) and *Convicting Rapists and Protecting Victims: Response to Consultation* (2007).

[313] See n 285 and text.

[314] The same point may be made about the laudable effort, in ss. 14 and 73, to define the circumstances in which people who are acting in order to protect a child are exempted from liability—rather than leaving it to prosecutorial discretion.

[315] In *B* v *DPP* and *K*, discussed in Chapter 5.5(a).

[316] See C. Elliott and C. de Than, 'The Case for a Rational Reconstruction of Consent in Criminal Law' (2007) 70 MLR 225.

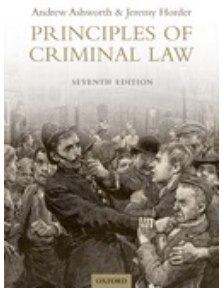
[317] See n 262 and text.

[318] Home Office, *Sexual Offences Act 2003: a stocktake of the effectiveness of the Act since its implementation* (2006), paras. 45–6; see also Criminal Justice System, *Convicting Rapists and Protecting Victims—Justice for Victims of Rape* (2007).

[319] For a proposal for radical re-structuring, see V. Tadros, 'Rape without Consent' (2006) 26 OJLS 515.

[320] See further Temkin and Krahé, chs 2, 8, and 9.

[321] Temkin and Krahé, ch 10.



Principles of Criminal Law (7th edn)

Andrew Ashworth and Jeremy Horder

Publisher: Oxford University Press
Print ISBN-13: 9780199672684
DOI: 10.1093/he/9780199672684.001.0001

Print Publication Date: May 2013
Published online: Sep 2013

9. Offences of Dishonesty

Chapter: (p. 368) 9. Offences of Dishonesty
Author(s): Andrew Ashworth and Jeremy Horder
DOI: 10.1093/he/9780199672684.003.0009

9.1 Introduction
9.2 The offence of theft
9.3 Taking a conveyance without consent
9.4 Robbery
9.5 Blackmail
9.6 Burglary
9.7 Handling stolen goods and money-laundering
9.8 Offences under the Fraud Act 2006
9.9 Conspiracy to defraud
9.10 Dishonesty, discretion, and 'desert'
Further reading

9.1 Introduction

The principal statutes in this part of the criminal law are the Theft Act 1968 and the Fraud Act 2006. The principal offence in the former statute is referred to as theft or stealing. These terms seem to convey the idea of permanently taking another's property, but in fact the definitions in the Theft Act extend the notion of stealing to a wide variety of dishonest violations of another's property rights. The Theft Act shifted the emphasis of the offence from protecting possession to protecting ownership, and also encompassed a much wider range of property rights than the old law of larceny.[1] Now it is more a question of infringing another's property rights than of 'taking' property. There is no requirement that D should have permanently deprived V of the property, although it must be proved that D *intended* to do so. D's conduct does not have to amount to a potential destruction of V's ability to use the property or act as owner: on the contrary, the courts have held that the merest interference with any right of an owner may suffice, so long as it is accompanied by dishonesty and an intention permanently to deprive. One might therefore say that in broad terms these are crimes where what matters most in law is that D's conduct manifests a dishonest acquisitive intention. In this way, the law runs contrary to what common sense might suggest, which is that the law is and should be concerned with conduct that involves a dishonest acquisition as such; but that does not necessarily mean that the law's focus is wrong.

(p. 369) Even if the vast majority of thefts and frauds do involve dishonestly depriving others of their property, the law may be justified in spreading the net further. It may do this in order to catch conduct that (a) undermines the security of property interests without necessarily involving a taking of property—as when someone's computer is hacked and malware placed on the hard drive, or a secret photograph is taken of their PIN number—or conduct that (b) involves the manipulation of information crucial to someone's prospects for financial gain or loss—as when someone advises a client to invest in a company without disclosing that she (the adviser) has a financial stake in the company, or that she does not have a licence to give financial advice. Unsurprisingly, thus, the Fraud Act 2006 is even more wide-ranging than the law of theft: the broad concept of dishonesty is at its core, and its principal offence consists of making a false representation, intending thereby to make a gain or cause a loss. This and the other main offences are even more overtly inchoate in nature than theft, penalizing the making of the false representation rather than any obtaining of property. The 2006 Act can be considered to be the most advanced expression of the idea, just mentioned, that what matters in law is conduct that embodies a dishonest acquisitive intention rather than dishonest conduct that leads to the deprivation of another's property.[2] In that sense, whilst a notion of individual property rights still shapes the law of theft and fraud, the law also treats respect for others' property interests generally as a kind of public responsibility in which one fails by behaving dishonestly or fraudulently, as with some other offences such as perjury, or impersonating a police officer.

The great variety of offences of dishonesty, and the breadth of their definitions, raises problems of proportionality and the proper limits of the criminal sanction. The proportionality issues revolve partly round the problem of deciding what concept of property rights should be employed (discussed in the next paragraph) and partly round the prevalence of 'white-collar crime'.[3] For many years there has been criminological interest in the notion of 'white-collar crime', particularly deprivations of property perpetrated in commercial settings, but this has not really been reflected by changes in the law or in enforcement practice. The police have traditionally concerned themselves more with stealing from shops and burglary than with embezzlement and the various forms of frauds upon and by companies. Although the

modernization of property offences achieved by the Theft Act 1968 did have the effect of freeing the law from such constricting notions as thieves having to 'take and carry away' property in order to be convicted, the Act provides little indication of a determination to treat white-collar offences as equivalent to other forms of theft: only ss. 17 and 19, on false accounting and on false statements by company directors, point in this direction. It is true that the (p. 370) 1980s saw the creation of several new offences in the spheres of white-collar crime and 'city fraud', but these offences remain outside the Theft Acts and the proposed Criminal Code,[4] making it difficult to claim that they have been integrated into a new scheme of property offences which achieves a realistic proportionality among the degrees of offending. The enactment of the Fraud Act 2006 is significant in extending further into the realm of 'white-collar crime', but the Companies Acts, Financial Services and Markets Act 2000, and other legislation are still regarded as 'regulatory' in nature, despite the indictable offences they contain, and despite some maximum penalties (e.g. seven years for misleading statements or practices contrary to s. 397 of the 2000 Act, and for fraudulent inducement to make a deposit contrary to s. 35 of the Banking Act 1987) which are the same as for theft[5] and only slightly less than the maximum for fraud (ten years' imprisonment). This chapter's discussion of the 'traditional' property offences will attempt to keep the 'new' offences of dishonesty well in sight.

Historically, one explanation for the difference in treatment between theft or fraud in the streets, and theft or fraud in the suites, is that the police have lacked the expertise and resources to investigate and prosecute complex white-collar crimes, not least when they involve transactions overseas. It is generally always going to be much simpler and cheaper to investigate a burglary at someone's home (whether or not the offender is caught), than it is to investigate, say, a complex fraud or bribery, the perpetrators of which are companies registered in England and Wales seemingly controlled by a network of companies outside the jurisdiction. With financial crime estimated at £38 billion per year in England and Wales (£30 billion of this being attributable to fraud), it is not surprising that governments have invested in specialist agencies to tackle the problem, the Serious Fraud Office (SFO) being the most important example.[6] The City of London police have also set up specialist units to tackle the problem, examples being the Overseas Anti-corruption Unit, and the Insurance Fraud Department, together with the government-funded National Fraud Intelligence Bureau.[7] The work of the SFO is also now supported the work of the Serious Organised Crime Agency and the National Fraud Authority. So, whatever else may be missing from the effort to tackle financial crime, it is not a lack of bureaucratic agencies devoted to the task.

The idea of dishonesty, explored in the context of the crime of theft in section 9.2(e), seems to be the notion which binds these offences together. But they are also often grouped together as 'property offences', since they involve some violation of the property rights of another. Personal property is one of the basic organizing features of many modern societies, and it may be defended as an institution on grounds of individual autonomy and rights.[8] Individuals should generally be free to decide how to spend their money; if they choose to purchase property with it, this should be respected in the same way as their own physical integrity. This liberal political philosophy does not exclude the compulsory payment of taxes, and the approach should therefore find room (p. 371) for the notion of state property—property in public ownership, which no individual citizen is free to take for his or her exclusive use. So, the foundation of these property or dishonesty offences is that it is wrong for any person to take more than his or her rightful share—'rightful' being interpreted in the light of legally ordained

methods of property distribution (including, at present, such things as earned income, inherited wealth, public funds derived from taxation, state benefits paid to certain citizens, etc.). We return, in sections 9.2(a) and 9.2(e), to the question whether these are essentially property offences or dishonesty offences. Simester and Sullivan, who strongly believe that they should be cast as property offences, argue that by penalizing theft 'the criminal law both protects individuals from any particular loss they may suffer and safeguards the regime of property law more generally'.[9] This may be true, but it should not be taken to establish that there are two distinct wrongs in each crime of theft, any more than there are in any other type of crime.

How serious, relatively speaking, are theft and kindred offences? There has long been an allegation that English criminal law is too concerned with property offences—at the expense of offences against the person and against the environment. This cannot be more than a general allegation, since it is easy to construct a comparison between theft of some vital and valuable item of property and a minor assault. In broad terms, however, two points should be made about the proposition that property offences are treated too seriously. First, the allegation may concern enforcement as much as the written laws. The police investigate and prosecute relatively fewer crimes within business and commercial circles. This may, in turn, be because offences are dealt with informally in other ways, by dismissing an employee who has been caught committing an offence, for example.[10] In the 1980s the Serious Fraud Office (SFO) was created as part of a stated determination to pursue commercial frauds more vigorously. The SFO's criteria for accepting a case for investigation are that it involves £1 million or more, that it has significant international dimensions, that widespread public concern is likely, that investigation requires highly specialized knowledge, or that the SFO's special powers are likely to be necessary.[11] The Crown Prosecution Service handles many other fraud cases. The Department for Business, Innovation & Skills (BIS) also investigates and prosecutes some offences relating to the financial markets, including the crime of 'insider dealing' in shares.

Significant as these developments may be, they are on such a comparatively small scale that they do little to redress the imbalance in law enforcement between 'crime in the streets' and 'crime in the suites'. Secondly, there is the question whether the threshold of the criminal law is lower in property offences than elsewhere. Civil law has a far greater involvement in offences of dishonesty than in violent or sexual offences; the very questions of property ownership and property rights are the subject of a **(p. 372)** complicated mass of rules relating to contracts, trusts, intellectual property, restitution, and so forth. Many property losses could be tackled through the civil courts, by suing under one of these heads of civil law. It may be true that the amounts concerned are often too small to justify the time and expense of civil proceedings, but should that not make us pause to consider whether the criminal sanction is being properly deployed here, and whether adequate weight is being given to the policy of minimum criminalization discussed in Chapter 2.4(b)? If the criminal law is to be reserved for significant challenges to the legal order, should there not be vigilance about the extension of the criminal sanction into spheres in which civil remedies exist, or where some non-criminal procedures might be more proportionate? Is it not true that many dishonest dealings which amount to criminal offences are in practice the subject of nothing more than regulatory action or civil penalties, from commercial frauds to income tax frauds? How, then, can one justify prosecuting ordinary people for the relatively petty thefts that are the everyday business of the criminal courts? These are questions to which we will return at the end of this chapter.

Attention should also be drawn at this introductory stage to the respective roles of the

legislature and the courts in property crimes. Parliament has, through the Theft Act 1968 and the Fraud Act 2006, provided some fairly broad offences. The appellate courts have, in dealing with appeals, developed the law in ways which often extend the ambit of already wide offences in order to criminalize persons whose conduct seems wrongful. Although the decisions have not been all one way, there is much evidence here of the relative impotence of the principle of maximum certainty in relation to legislators and of the principle of strict construction in relation to judges.[12]

9.2 The offence of theft[13]

Theft is not the most serious of the English offences against property, but it must be discussed first, because it is an ingredient of some more serious offences, notably robbery and burglary. The offence of theft, contrary to s. 1 of the Theft Act 1968, may be divided into five elements. The three conduct elements are that there must be: (i) an appropriation; of (ii) property; which (iii) belongs to another. The fault elements are that this must be done: (iv) with an intention of permanent deprivation; and (v) dishonestly. The essence of stealing is the violation of another's property rights; unlike fraud, it does not require a particular wrongful method of achieving this.[14] Discussion of each of the five elements in turn will demonstrate just how extensive the English law of theft is in some directions, and how restrictive in other directions.

(p. 373) (a) Appropriation

Before the Theft Act 1968, English law used to require proof that D had taken and carried away the property, a requirement far too stringent for some types of property (e.g. bank balances), and yet a requirement which at least ensured that certain overt physical acts had to be established before conviction. The Theft Act broadened the law's basis by requiring merely an appropriation. In most cases this will involve taking possession of someone else's property without consent. Section 3(1) of the Act begins by defining an appropriation as ‘any assumption by a person of the rights of an owner’, and then extends the concept to cover a case where D has come by the property without stealing it and where D subsequently assumes ‘a right to it by keeping or dealing with it as owner’. This includes cases where D finds property which he does not initially intend to keep (perhaps intending to report the finding), but later decides to do so. Thus the wording of s. 3(1) implies that a simple change of mind, unaccompanied by any overt act, constitutes appropriation. Put another way, the mere omission to return the goods or to report the finding constitutes (together with the change of mind) the keeping which amounts to an appropriation. This is a dramatic demonstration of how far the law has retreated from the requirement of ‘taking and carrying away’ which characterized the previous law, and of how little is required in order to constitute the conduct element of theft. It also raises questions about the justification for this omissions liability, and whether citizens have fair warning of it.

Let us explore the ambit of appropriation by returning to the main defining words, ‘any assumption of the rights of an owner’. Does this mean that one can appropriate property even if one obtains it with the consent of the owner? On the face of it, this might seem absurd: surely there cannot be any stealing of property if the owner consents to part with it. But the House of Lords has pointed out that the definition of theft does not include the phrase ‘without the consent of the owner’, as did the previous offence; and in *Lawrence* (1972)[15] it held that a

taking can amount to theft, even though the owner consents. The facts in that case were that V, an Italian who spoke little English, arrived in England and wished to hire a taxi to take him to an address in London. He offered D, the taxi-driver, enough money to cover the lawful fare, but D asked for more and, as V held his wallet open, D took more notes from it. The defence argued strenuously that this could not be theft because V consented to D taking the extra money, but the House of Lords held this irrelevant. The definition of theft does not expressly *require* the taking to be without the owner's consent, and the House of Lords held that the term 'appropriates' does not imply an absence of consent. Thus D had appropriated V's property dishonestly and with the intention of depriving V permanently of it. This decision has given rise to much controversy and to diverse interpretations.[16] One technical question is whether the money still belonged to V when D took it from V's wallet: if it was V's intention that ownership should pass to D, maybe the second element in theft was missing. But perhaps the most regrettable fact is that D **(p. 374)** was prosecuted for theft at all, since the case seems to be an obvious example of fraud (formerly, obtaining by deception). An English appeal court cannot alter the charge, or order a retrial on the different charge, and so the choice lay between quashing the conviction of a manifestly dishonest person and doing 'rough justice' at the risk of destabilizing the law of theft. The courts preferred the latter course to the former.

Apparently inconsistent with *Lawrence* was the later decision in *Morris* (1984).[17] The essence of the two cases consolidated in the appeal was that D took goods from a supermarket shelf, replaced their existing price-labels with labels showing lower prices, and then took them to the checkout, intending to buy them at the lower price. As in *Lawrence*, the cases proceeded on theft charges rather than on obtaining or attempting to obtain by deception. The House of Lords upheld the convictions, but propounded a more restrictive idea of appropriation. Lord Roskill stated that the concept of appropriation involves 'an act by way of adverse interference with or usurpation of' the owner's rights, and that this will generally require D to have committed some unauthorized act. This was clearly fulfilled in *Morris*, since the attaching of price-labels by customers is unauthorized. However, if the case had proceeded on the *Lawrence* basis that consent is irrelevant, the customers would have been held to have appropriated the goods as soon as they took hold of them, and before tampering with the price-labels.

The conflict between these two decisions was resolved by the House of Lords in *Gomez* (1993).[18] D, an employee at an electrical store, persuaded his manager to sell goods to a friend in exchange for cheques which he knew to be worthless. As in the two previous cases (and several others over the years), facts which obviously supported a charge of obtaining property by deception (now, fraud) resulted in a prosecution for theft. The House of Lords, by a majority, preferred *Lawrence* to *Morris* on the ground that the remarks on appropriation in the latter were *obiter dicta* whereas in the former they were part of the *ratio decidendi*. Not only did the House of Lords therefore hold that whether the act was done with the owner's consent or authority is immaterial, but they also stated this as a general proposition on 'appropriation', not confined to cases in which there is an element of deception.

The result of *Gomez* is that the offence of theft is now astoundingly wide. Any act in relation to property belonging to another constitutes an appropriation of that property, and liability for theft then turns on the presence of dishonesty and of an intention permanently to deprive the owner. The breadth of this test is emphasized by one dictum from *Morris* that was incorporated into the *Gomez* formulation: that 'the assumption of *any* of the rights of an owner in property

amounts to an appropriation of the property'.[19] Thus all that D needs to do is to assume any one right of an owner, and the conduct element in theft is complete. A customer who touches a tin of beans in a supermarket has appropriated them, even though the owners of the supermarket are **(p. 375)** quite content for customers to take goods from the shelves and even to replace them later, provided that when they reach the checkout they pay for the goods that are to be taken away.[20]

The breadth of the *Gomez* test has been confirmed (and, some argue, further extended) in a series of decisions on the receipt of 'gifts'. In *Mazo* (1997)[21] D had received substantial gifts from her employer, an elderly woman whose mental state was apparently deteriorating: the Court of Appeal quashed the conviction and stated that a person cannot be guilty of theft of property received as a valid gift. In *Kendrick and Hopkins* (1997)[22] that proposition was doubted, and the convictions were upheld where defendants who organized the affairs of a confused woman secured several payments to themselves, ostensibly for their services to her. In *Hinks* (2001)[23] D received substantial gifts from a man of limited intelligence whom she had befriended. The House of Lords held, by a majority of three to two, that the conviction of theft should be upheld. It does not matter that there was a valid gift of the property according to the civil law: if D had appropriated the property dishonestly, a conviction for theft may follow.[24] One advantage of the *Hinks* decision is the practical benefit of simplicity, since there is no need to instruct juries on the intricacies of the civil law. However, many critics of the decision are concerned that it brings the criminal law and civil law into conflict, and it is said to be absurd that a person can be convicted of a criminal offence on the basis of what was, according to the law of personal property, the receipt of a perfectly valid gift.[25] But the absurdity reduces to vanishing point if three further points are taken into account. First, the civil law and criminal law may be pursuing different purposes: no contradiction exists, Simon Gardner argues, because 'the civil law is rightly concerned to respect established property rights, even if unsatisfactorily acquired, whilst the criminal law rightly concentrates on penalizing the unsatisfactory manner of acquisition'.[26] Secondly, it could be argued that *Hinks* supports the institution of property by criminalizing those who indirectly threaten the system of property rights by committing a wrong against another,[27] the wrong residing in the dishonest behaviour and the potential harm being further instances of similar conduct. Thirdly, to what extent was the transfer in *Hinks* truly consensual? It can be argued that the criminal law is protecting the vulnerable against exploitation by penalizing dishonest transactions of this kind, and that it is a separate concern that the civil law fails to accomplish this properly.[28] Notably, under the French Penal Code, conduct such as **(p. 376)** that engaged in by the defendants is dealt with (in more serious cases) by a specific offence under Art. 223-15-2:

> fraudulently abusing the ignorance or state of weakness of a minor, or of a person whose particular vulnerability due to age, sickness [or] infirmity … is apparent or known to the offender … in order to induce the minor or other person to act or abstain from acting in any way seriously harmful to him …

A number of other questions arise about the ambit of appropriation, some affected by *Gomez*, others not. First, is appropriation an instantaneous or a continuing act? There is no definite answer, but if the question itself is analysed, a plausible answer may be found. The question is not whether the appropriation continues throughout the time when the thief is in possession of

the property, and whenever he uses it. That is implausible. The question ought to be whether appropriation is complete as soon as D does an act in relation to the property and, if so, whether it can also be said that the appropriation continues throughout the period when D is engaged in that act. It follows from *Gomez* that D could be convicted of theft on the basis of his first act (e.g. seizing a victim's jewellery, getting into a car hired to him). Is it then inconsistent to hold that the appropriation continues whilst D is engaged in that particular piece of conduct (e.g. whilst D is in the victim's house after seizing the jewellery, whilst D is driving the car hired to him)? There is authority to support the view that appropriation does continue throughout the act or 'transaction',[29] not being exhausted by the first act in relation to the property, and this corresponds with the law relating to the conduct element in rape.[30]

Connected with this is a second point about the time factor in appropriation. The result of *Gomez* and *Hinks* is that a person appropriates property even if the owner's consent is given, yet it remains necessary to establish that the appropriation was of 'property belonging to another' (see the further discussion in (c)). It seems that the *Gomez–Hinks* position is that at the moment when D appropriates it, or immediately before, the money still belongs to the donor.[31] What of the case where D goes to a restaurant, orders food, and eats it before payment? What if D goes to a petrol station and fills up with petrol? In both cases the owner intends ownership of the food or petrol to pass to D. However, ownership has passed by the time D finishes eating or filling the tank with petrol, and the relevant act of appropriation has taken place. If, therefore, having eaten the food or filled the tank, D *then* decides to leave without paying for the food or petrol, there can be no conviction of theft because the appropriation ended and ownership in the property passed before the dishonest intention was conceived.[32] A court might hold that the act or 'transaction' should be construed so as to include paying for the property, so that the **(p. 377)** dishonest intent would be contemporaneous with the appropriation, but since D did not pay either the restaurant or the petrol station this argument would be based on hypothetical rather than real facts.

A third, related point is that the act which constitutes the appropriation does not need to be the act which is intended to deprive the owner permanently. The act of appropriation need only be an act done in relation to the property: so long as it was done with the dishonest intent required, theft has been committed at that point. It does not matter that D's act of swapping the price-labels on two items was part of a plan to offer the higher-priced goods to the cashier with the lower price-label on them, and that that plan had not been executed. *Morris* [33] holds that D does not have to intend permanent deprivation by the act of appropriation; he may intend to deprive by some act in the future. This confirms that the offence of theft in English law criminalizes people at a much earlier point than they would generally suppose. A stark example is provided by *Chan Man-Sin* v *Attorney-General for Hong Kong* (1988),[34] where D wrote unauthorized cheques on his employers' accounts. It was argued that this was not an appropriation since, when the bank discovered that the cheques were forged, it would have to make good the companies' accounts. The Privy Council upheld the theft conviction, stating that D had assumed a right of the owner and that it is not necessary to show that the appropriation would be 'legally efficacious'. The decision penalizes dishonesty, but reduces appropriation to a will o' the wisp.[35]

In exploring the concept of appropriation, the phrase 'act in relation to the property' has been used. We have already noted that an omission (or, at least, a private decision) can suffice, as in the case of a person who finds property and subsequently decides to keep it: section 3(1).

What is the minimum conduct that might suffice? In *Pitham and Hehl* (1976)[36] it was held that a person who went to the house of a man who was in prison and offered to sell that man's furniture to the two defendants had thereby appropriated the furniture: he 'showed them the property and invited them to buy what they wanted'. The Court of Appeal held that it was clear that this amounted to 'assuming the rights of the owner', untroubled by the fact that no hands may have been laid on the furniture. Although there were undoubtedly better ways of framing the charge in this case, it may be said after *Gomez* that the person who offered to sell the furniture was assuming *a* right of the owner. However, in *Briggs* (2004)[37] the Court of Appeal held that there was no sufficient act of appropriation where D ensured that conveyancers transferred to her the proceeds of the sale of a house belonging to two elderly relatives. The case was properly one of fraud, since D had obtained the relatives' consent by deception, but one of the charges was theft and the Court held that appropriation requires a physical act rather than merely ordering another to transfer a credit balance in her favour. The decision in *Gomez*, which would support the opposite conclusion, was not discussed.

(p. 378) Before re-assessing the concept of appropriation, mention should be made of the exception in s. 3(2) of the Theft Act. If a person acquires property for value in good faith, no later assumption of the rights D believed he had acquired can amount to an appropriation, even if D then knows that he has not acquired good title. This applies when D keeps the goods or gives them away, but if D sells them and represents expressly or impliedly that he has the title to do so, he will commit the offence of fraud.[38]

Leaving aside this exception, what is the ambit of appropriation? As a result of *Gomez*,[39] any act in relation to property that can be said to assume a right of the owner of the property constitutes appropriation, and the consent of the owner is irrelevant. Courts view this as an 'objective' factual question, but it is arguable that the notion of appropriation (as developed) includes an element of 'proprietary subjectivity', i.e. that a mental act of proprietorship helps to mark the distinction between appropriations and non-appropriations.[40] Nonetheless, the notion of appropriation is now considerably more expansive than its framers could have anticipated, and it can be criticized in four ways. First, the definition is not faithful to the intentions of the Criminal Law Revision Committee (CLRC) or of Parliament. That the CLRC intended the concept of appropriation to cover only unauthorized acts is set out plainly in the dissenting speech of Lord Lowry in *Gomez*. A person can now be guilty of theft even though the transaction was effective in passing ownership to D.[41] As a matter of statutory interpretation the decision of the majority of the House of Lords in *Gomez* is untenable; but it is the law, and the House of Lords in *Hinks* applied it not only to cases where the transfer of property was voidable, but also to cases of valid gift.

A second and related criticism is that the new definition violates the principle of fair labelling by lumping together thieves and swindlers. One effect of *Gomez* is that many cases of fraud (formerly, obtaining property by deception) are also cases of theft, except those relating to land.[42] Once again this contradicts the intentions of the CLRC and Parliament: 'obtaining by false pretences is ordinarily thought of as different from theft … . To create a new offence of theft to include conduct which ordinary people would find difficult to regard as theft would be a mistake.'[43] The distinction between the two kinds of conduct is morally relevant: there are situations in which one would think differently of a thief and of a swindler.[44] It can therefore be argued that the law ought to attach different labels to people who violate property rights in such different ways. This is particularly so in view of the difference in maximum penalties

between fraud (ten years) and theft (now seven years). Having said that, we should point out that some legislatures roll up theft and fraud (and other offences) into a single offence **(p. 379)** without much difficulty, an example being this offence under s. 484-502-9 of the Californian Penal Code:

> 484. (a) Every person who shall feloniously steal, take, carry, lead, or drive away the personal property of another, or who shall fraudulently appropriate property which has been entrusted to him or her, or who shall knowingly and designedly, by any false or fraudulent representation or pretense, defraud any other person of money, labor or real or personal property, or who causes or procures others to report falsely of his or her wealth or mercantile character and by thus imposing upon any person, obtains credit and thereby fraudulently gets or obtains possession of money, or property or obtains the labor or service of another, is guilty of theft.

Thirdly, the *Gomez* definition is so broad that it exhibits no respect for the principle of maximum certainty and, by making conduct criminal when it would not even amount to a civil wrong, fails to give fair warning to citizens about the boundaries of the law of theft. For example, there is no civil wrong involved in eating a restaurant meal or filling a car's tank with petrol before paying, but both acts amount to appropriation and, if accompanied by a dishonest intent at the time, may result in a conviction for theft.[45] Persuading someone to make a substantial gift in one's favour may lead to a valid gift at civil law, and yet receipt of the gift may constitute appropriation. The point about fair warning might be thought to be overdone: after all, a person who acts dishonestly takes the risk that the conduct will be held to be criminal. But that is an unsatisfactory basis for the criminal law. In everyday life, in business, and in financial dealings, there is often a fine line between unlawful dishonesty and merely exploiting gaps in the law—in taxation matters, this is expressed as the distinction between evasion and avoidance.[46] Whilst it is often impossible to frame a criminal provision precisely, without excluding a number of cases that ought to be included and without rendering the law unintelligible, the result of *Gomez* is that the law of theft incorporates no attempt at precision at all. The appropriation need not be a civil wrong, or involve an unauthorized act, or be an overt act, etc.: in effect, any dishonest acquisition can amount to theft. Appropriation is effectively removed from the equation in most cases: the whole weight falls on the concept of dishonesty,[47] discussed and criticized in subsection (e).

A fourth and related criticism is that the judicial approach severely reduces the amount of manifest criminality in the offence of theft.[48] In other words, liability is imposed for conduct that is not manifestly theftuous: s. 3 of the Theft Act 1968 contains elements of this, in its reference to a later assumption of rights by a finder of property, but the three House of Lords decisions (*Lawrence, Morris, Gomez*) take it much further by labelling as a thief any person who assumes a right of the owner in respect of another's property, with or without that other's consent, provided that the **(p. 380)** two fault elements (dishonesty, intention to deprive permanently) can be proved. Some would say that this proviso is sufficient to rebut the criticism, since the dishonest intent should be the key factor. But this raises questions about the ambit of the criminal law: quite apart from the fact that it may exceed the ambit of the civil law here, the offence of theft now has the breadth and the characteristics of an inchoate offence, and yet it is extended further by the crime of attempted theft. The result is an

extremely wide conduct element, not distinguished from ordinary honest transactions save by the intent.

This fourth criticism is an argument against the judicial expansion of the conduct element in theft, rather than against the assimilation of deception to theft achieved in *Gomez* itself. The two points are treated differently by Peter Glazebrook, who applauds *Gomez* on the grounds that:

> Holding swindlers to be thieves does no injustice, will save much inconvenience in cases where it transpires only late in the day that a crook has resorted to deception, and avoids the extreme absurdity of denying the name of thief to those who misappropriate property received as a result of a mistake that they have induced while according it to those who had done nothing to bring about the mistaken transfer: Theft Act 1968, section 5(4).[49]

The point about s. 5(4), which is discussed in subsection (c), is that no absolutely satisfactory line can be drawn between theft and fraud in all instances. Moreover, as we saw above, the relevant offence under the Californian Penal Code is drafted so as to avoid unnecessarily fine distinctions between offences in this area of the law. Having said that, there is a substantial case for making the effort to draw the theft–fraud distinction in many clear cases. It may be argued that holding swindlers to be thieves obscures a clear category difference in many cases. What has exercised the judges, particularly in appellate courts, has been the prospect of quashing a theft conviction simply because the police and the Crown Prosecution Service have alleged the wrong offence. This is largely a procedural error: it ought to be remediable by procedural means either at the trial or on appeal, rather than being allowed to distort the development of the law.

Whilst procedural change is needed to avoid the acquittal of swindlers simply because they have been wrongly charged as thieves, the substantive definition of theft ought to be reconsidered too. Glazebrook, following Glanville Williams, argues that since theft is an offence of dishonesty, 'legal logic requires that the conduct constituting its external elements be unlawful—either tortious, or a breach of trust, or, if the property belongs to a company, a fraud on its creditors or shareholders'.[50] One desirable effect of this definition would be to state clearly that there can be no theft if the owner consented to D dealing with the property as D has done.[51] On the other hand, the arguments in favour of *Hinks* suggest that any reconsideration of the relationship between civil and criminal liability should not assume that the civil law's approach is correct, or **(p. 381)** that a divergence between the approaches is indefensible.[52] The links with the concept of dishonesty are also close, and we will return to this issue in subsection (e).

(b) Property

In order to be stolen, the object concerned must be 'property' within the meaning of the Theft Act 1968. Section 4(1) appears to be couched in very broad terms: 'property includes money and all other property, real or personal, including things in action and other intangible property.' Thus in certain circumstances, as we shall see in subsection (c), D can steal P's bank balance.[53] But there are limits. There is no property capable of being stolen in a dead

body or its parts.[54] Nor does electricity fall within the definition of 'property', although s. 13 of the Theft Act 1968 provides an offence of dishonestly abstracting electricity. More importantly, there is no property in confidential information, such as business secrets and examination papers. Thus, if D purloins a confidential document of this kind, photocopies it, and replaces it, he cannot be charged with theft: not only is it difficult to argue that D has an intention to deprive the owner permanently of the information, but what has been taken does not constitute property.[55] Injunctions may be obtained in the civil courts to prevent interference with, or the abuse of, such secrets, but the criminal offence of theft does not extend so far. The problem has become more pertinent with the increasing use of computers as means of storing information: if D 'hacks into' V's computer system, retrieving from it some confidential information which is then noted down, it appears that no 'property' has been stolen. The House of Lords was invited to extend the law of forgery to cover cases of 'hacking' in *Gold and Schifreen* (1988),[56] and its refusal to extend the law in this direction helped to precipitate specific legislation on the subject. The Computer Misuse Act 1990 created three offences of unlawfully entering another's computer system, with dishonest intent.[57] It is right that this form of property violation should be the subject of special provisions: an artificial extension of the present structure of the law of theft to cover such cases, which lie far from the ordinary stealing of tangible property, would probably be less successful and might have unexpected side-effects. It is also right that the law should criminalize this kind of property violation, which might be much more serious financially than many of the takings which fulfil the basic definition of theft. This is one instance in which there was judicial self-restraint and strict construction, in *Gold and Schifreen*, and it was followed by remedial legislative action.[58]

(p. 382) There are further limitations in s. 4. In the first place, the general proposition is that land cannot be stolen. There are some exceptions to this, and of course it is quite possible to convict someone of theft of title deeds or of fraud in relation to them, but the land itself, being of a certain permanence, remains. Section 4(3) effectively excludes from the law of theft the picking of mushrooms or of flowers, fruit, or foliage from plants growing wild, unless the picking is 'for reward or for sale or other commercial purpose'. It should be noted that this exception is confined to wild mushrooms, flowers, etc., and that the term 'picking' would seem to exclude a person who digs up a wild plant or cuts down a tree. Section 4(4) provides that a wild creature cannot be stolen, unless it is ordinarily kept in captivity (e.g. at a zoo) or has already been reduced into possession (e.g. game birds already shot and retrieved by a landowner). Much of the conduct thus excluded from the law of theft falls within long-standing offences of poaching.

(c) 'Belonging to another'

The old law of larceny was concerned mainly to penalize those who took possession of property from those in possession, whereas there are many other ways of depriving a legal owner of property. How far should the law go in criminalizing appropriations of property from persons other than the legal owner? Section 5 of the Theft Act 1968 succeeds in spreading the net wide: property is regarded as belonging 'to any person having possession or control of it, or having in it any proprietary right or interest (not being an equitable interest arising only from an agreement to transfer or grant an interest)'. The first phrase, 'possession or control', may be wide enough to enable D to be convicted of theft of, say, suits from a dry-cleaning shop even though the suits had only been placed there temporarily by their owners. There is no need to establish the precise legal relationship between the possessor and the supposed owner of the goods; for Theft Act purposes, the goods are treated as belonging to the

temporary possessor, too. So, D can be convicted of theft if he or she steals the drugs that V illegally has in his or her possession.[59] However, if it appears that property has been abandoned by its previous owner or that the previous owner intended to part with her or his entire interest in it, there can be no theft because the property no longer belongs to another.[60] The same should not be true of the proceeds of unknown crimes.[61]

The second phrase of the definition encompasses various situations in which D might regard himself as owner or part-owner of the property. Only three years after the enactment of the Theft Act, s. 5(1) led the Court of Appeal in *Turner (No. 2)* (1971)[62] to affirm the conviction of a man who had seized his own car back from a garage that **(p. 383)** had just repaired it. D certainly intended to avoid paying for the repairs, but the question was whether he had appropriated 'property belonging to another'. The Court held that the garage was clearly in 'possession or control' of the car. It was parked outside the garage, and they had a set of keys for it. However, D would only have appropriated property belonging to another if the garage had what civil lawyers call a 'lien' over the car, and the Court of Appeal held, unsatisfactorily, that the issue of a lien should be disregarded.

Section 5(1) certainly provides that one part-owner of property can be convicted of theft from the other part-owner. For example, a business partner who appropriates partnership property in order to deprive the other partner of it may be liable for theft so long as the other elements (notably dishonesty: there must be no claim of right) are present.[63] A controversial question is whether company controllers may be convicted of stealing the property of the company—meaning by 'company controllers' one or more persons who, between them, own the entire shareholding in a company. If D and E (being the sole shareholders) transfer money from the company's account to their personal accounts, it might seem strained to say that the company's property 'belongs to another' when the sole shareholders are the very persons who are doing the appropriating. However, it has been held[64] that such cases may in principle amount to theft because the company is a separate legal entity from its controllers, and this view has been reinforced by the decision in *Gomez* (1993)[65] to the effect that the owner's consent does not prevent an appropriation in law. Thus in this sphere, too, theft liability turns largely on proof of dishonesty. Whether the same applies to transfers of company property by the controllers in order to put it out of the reach of creditors, in circumstances of actual or pending insolvency, remains doubtful.[66]

In view of the gain and of the dishonesty, company cases are surely as proper a concern of the criminal law as shoplifting. Whether they should be classified as theft or fraud, or dealt with under the Companies Act offence of fraudulent trading,[67] bears on such matters as the stigma of conviction (theft may be more stigmatic than a 'breach' of the Companies Act) and the mode of enforcement. Thus there are arguments in favour of criminalization—and against the marginalization of such offences—by placing them within the Theft Act or Fraud Act. Whether the troubled concept of appropriation and the existing definitions within s. 5 are adequate to the purpose is doubtful, and legislative amendment seems desirable.

There is also the question whether there is an appropriation of property belonging to another when D acquires part or the whole of P's bank balance. D does not acquire cash from P, but is the recipient of either a credit transfer or a cheque. In *Hilton* (1997)[68] **(p. 384)** D, an officer of a charity who was a signatory of the charity's bank account, instructed the bank to transfer some of the charity's money to other accounts in order to pay his debts. The Court of Appeal

upheld his conviction for theft, on the basis that he appropriated the charity's chose in action (i.e. its right to sue the bank for the relevant money). He did not *obtain* property belonging to another, because what P had before the transaction was the right to sue P's bank for the relevant amount, and P's right is either diminished or extinguished, but it is not P's right that is obtained by D but a new and separate right. However, it was accepted that, as a result of *Gomez*, D appropriated (destroyed) the charity's chose in action in respect of that money. It might alternatively be claimed that he appropriated the money itself, because he did an act in relation to that amount which assumes a right of the owner. This would be so if D instructed a particular person at P's bank to make the transfer, or if the transfer were accomplished automatically by the CHAPS process used in modern banking, so long as D initiated the process. The courts have yet to adopt this reasoning.[69] A similar argument can be constructed where D has obtained a cheque from P which D subsequently pays into his account. On the basis of the wide definition in *Gomez*, it can be argued that D appropriates P's bank balance by his act in relation to it, i.e. presenting the cheque drawn on P's account. This analysis assumes that P's account is in credit, but it is no different if P is overdrawn and has an agreement with the bank for an overdraft, since that too is a contractual right against the bank. The conclusion, then, is that D *appropriates* property belonging to another by dealing with it in any of these ways.

The question has arisen also in the context of train tickets. In *Marshall* (1998)[70] D and others collected from travellers on the London Underground tickets that had been used but were still valid, and re-sold them to other travellers. The Court of Appeal, in upholding the convictions, did not address the question whether the tickets were ‘property belonging to another’, in particular, whether the ticket belonged (in any sense) to London Underground. Instead it decided the case on the ground that there was an intention permanently to deprive London Underground of the tickets, because when they were finally handed in the virtue would have gone out of them. However, as Sir John Smith argued, the prior question is whether the conduct element in theft was made out. To whom did the tickets belong at the relevant time? Much depends on the conditions of issue, and whether they were brought to the travellers’ attention, matters not discussed in *Marshall*.

Turning to the other parts of s. 5 of the Theft Act, they elucidate, and perhaps extend, the definition of ‘belonging to another’ in certain ways. Section 5(2) states that when property belongs to a trust, those entitled to enforce the trust should be treated as owners of the property.[71] Section 5(3) expressly includes property **(p. 385)** received ‘from or on account of another’ where the person receiving it is under an obligation to the other ‘to retain and deal with that property or its proceeds in a particular way’. This applies to the treasurer of a sports club or a holiday fund who holds money on behalf of others. However, it is to be noted that s. 5(3) states that the obligation must be ‘to the other,’ and in *Floyd* v *DPP* (2000)[72] the Divisional Court upheld D's conviction for theft from a Christmas hamper company, in circumstances where money had been collected from work colleagues over several months and where the obligation to deal with the money was evidently owed to the colleagues, not to the company. Section 5(3) does not extend, in the ordinary way, to the travel agent or other trader who receives a deposit for a purchase and then fails to fulfil the contract.[73] It provides only for those cases where D is responsible for holding a particular sum of money or its proceeds on another's behalf:[74] this case involves an obligation to deal with the money received in a particular way, as part of a distinct fund, whereas payments to a business are usually payments into the general funds of that business. It has also been held that the manager of a

public house who made secret profits by selling beers not brewed by his employers fell outside s. 5(3), since he was merely accountable for the profits of the public house and was under no obligation to 'retain and deal with' them.[75] Some might argue that this is an arbitrary way to draw the line between criminal liability and mere civil liability, but it tends to be justified on the basis that a remedy for breach of contract is usually sufficient for the latter type of case. However, the civil law has been altered by the Privy Council:[76] a secret profit is now deemed to be held on constructive trust for the principal, and so it seems that the manager of the public house would be convicted of theft since s. 5(3) would apply.

Section 5(4) extends the definition of 'belonging to another' to cases where D 'gets property by another's mistake and is under an obligation to make restoration (in whole or in part)'. The obvious example of this is the mistaken overpayment: if money is credited to D's bank account in error, and D resolves to keep it, this amounts to theft of the overpaid sum.[77] If the overpayment is by a bookmaker, there is no legal obligation involved and so s. 5(4) cannot be invoked to support a theft conviction.[78]

(p. 386) **(d) 'The intention permanently to deprive'**

It must be proved that D intended that the person from whom he appropriated the property should be deprived of it permanently. We have already seen that permanent deprivation itself is not necessary for theft: a temporary appropriation will suffice. But the ambit of the offence is restricted by the need for an *intention* permanently to deprive. Thus, the essential minimum of the offence is temporary appropriation with the intention of permanent deprivation.

The Theft Act does not define 'intention permanently to deprive'. Intention presumably bears the same meaning as elsewhere in the criminal law,[79] and therefore covers cases where D knows that a virtually certain result of the appropriation will be that the other is deprived of the property permanently. Most cases will fall into place fairly easily, but the requirement of intention 'means that it is still not theft to take a thing realizing that the owner may not, or probably will not, get it back'.[80] Thus there will be no theft where D takes property and then abandons it where it might be found, and the description 'stolen car' is inaccurate if it refers to a car taken from its owner and abandoned some distance away, since it is well known that cars are normally returned to their owners by the police.[81] Section 12 of the Theft Act 1968 provides a special offence of taking a car without the owner's consent, which does not require proof of an intention permanently to deprive (discussed in section 9.3). A car *would* be stolen, however, if it were taken with a view to changing its identity marks and then re-selling it.

Is there an 'intention permanently to deprive' if D takes someone else's money, intending to repay it before the owner notices its absence? At first sight it would appear not: an intention to repay surely negatives an intention to deprive permanently. Yet if the property taken is money, it is highly unlikely that D intends to replace exactly the same notes (or coins) that were taken. It would therefore be correct to hold that D did intend to deprive the owner permanently of the notes and coins that were taken, and the Court of Appeal confirmed that this is the law in *Velumyl* (1989).[82] A manager had taken money from his company's safe, intending to repay it the following day when a debt was repaid to him. The Court held that an intention to return objects of equal value is relevant on the issue of dishonesty, but does not negative the intention to deprive the owner permanently of the original notes and coins. The Court added that taking someone else's property in these circumstances amounts to forcing on the owner a

substitution to which he or she does not consent.[83] Some would argue that this is both pedantic and unrealistic, since money is fungible and one £10 note is for all purposes the same as another. On the other hand, there may be situations in which the owner wants a particular denomination (e.g. £1 coins for a slot machine, whereas D takes ten and leaves a £10 note) or needs to use the money earlier than expected. One merit of the strict rule here is that, by foreclosing what might otherwise be a defence of **(p. 387)** lack of intent to deprive permanently, it ensures that the wider rights and wrongs are assessed in the context of the dishonesty requirement.

Does it matter if the intention is conditional? One answer to this is that most intentions in theft are conditional in some respect, and so it should not matter greatly. Particular difficulty has been caused in cases of attempted theft, where D has not yet appropriated any property but is searching a container (a pocket, handbag, suitcase, car boot) in order to find something worth stealing. In these circumstances it would be unsatisfactory to convict D of attempting to steal a purse, for example, if D had already examined the purse and decided not to take it. This may explain the rather sweeping statement of the Court of Appeal in *Easom* (1971)[84] that 'a conditional appropriation will not do'. Subsequently the Court of Appeal held that the correct form of indictment in these 'container' cases would be to charge D with attempting to steal 'all or any of the contents' of the bag, vehicle, or other container.[85] However, it has been pointed out that this is hardly more satisfactory in a case like *Easom*, where D had examined all the contents of the handbag and had found nothing worth taking. It is an offence to attempt something that turns out to be impossible,[86] and so the better wording is to charge D with simply attempting to steal from the container.[87]

Neither of the two problems just discussed is mentioned in the Theft Act itself. The Act does not define 'an intention permanently to deprive', but it does provide, in s. 6, an extension of the concept. It states, in a poorly drafted compromise provision,[88] that persons are to be treated as having an intention permanently to deprive in certain circumstances. The general principle is that where D's intention is 'to treat the thing as his own to dispose of regardless of the other's rights', this is equivalent to an intention permanently to deprive. The Court of Appeal in *Fernandes* (1996)[89] held that this key phrase applies to 'a person in possession or control of another's property who, dishonestly and for his own purpose, deals with that property in such a manner that he knows he is risking its loss'.[90] Another example is the ransom principle, where D takes V's property, telling V that he will return it only if V pays the asking price. D is clearly treating the property as 'his own to dispose of regardless of the other's rights', in that he is bargaining with the owner (in effect) to sell it back. Thus in *Raphael* (2008),[91] where D drove off in V's car and then offered to return it for a cash payment, the Court of Appeal held that this was a clear case of D treating the car as his own to dispose of regardless of V's rights. It is right to bring such cases within theft, inasmuch as they are takings where, as s. 6 puts it, D does not mean 'the other permanently to lose the thing itself', and yet where the substance of D's intended taking and V's intended loss is **(p. 388)** little different from permanent deprivation. However, the Divisional Court effectively broadened s. 6(1) in *DPP* v *Lavender* (1994),[92] where D had taken two doors from a council house undergoing repair and had fitted them to another council house to replace damaged doors. The Court did not refer to the dictionary definition of 'dispose of', but appeared to hold that 'dealing with' the doors could amount to 'disposing of' them. The Court therefore held that D should be convicted of stealing the doors, even though they had simply been transferred from one council property to another. This is unsatisfactory.

Section 6 goes on to deal with two specific types of case. One, set out in s. 6(2), is where D parts with V's property under a condition as to its return which D may be unable to fulfil; the obvious example of this is pawning another's property, hoping to be able to redeem it at some time in the future. The other example, in s. 6(1), is where D borrows or lends V's property: this may amount to D treating it as his own to dispose of 'if, but only if, the borrowing or lending is for a period and in circumstances equivalent to an outright taking or disposal'. Although this is an extension of the idea of intending permanent deprivation, the final few words may prove fairly restrictive. Their scope was considered by the Court of Appeal in *Lloyd* (1985),[93] where a cinema employee removed films from the cinema for a few hours, thereby enabling others to copy the films with a view to selling 'pirate' copies. The employee always intended to return the films, and always did. Clearly, his conduct in allowing others to make copies did significantly reduce the value of the films, but it is not possible to say, as s. 6(1) requires, that his borrowing was equivalent to an outright taking. He did not render the films valueless, even though he did reduce their commercial value by enabling the production of copies. Fewer people might pay to watch the films at the cinema. Lord Lane CJ stated the effect of s. 6(1) in these terms: '[a] mere borrowing is never enough to constitute the necessary guilty mind unless the intention is to return the "thing" in such a changed state that it can truly be said that all its goodness or virtue has gone'.[94]

The application of this test may be illustrated by D, who takes V's railway season-ticket, which expires on 31 January, and maintains that it was always his intention to return it on 1 February. His intention clearly is to return the ticket, which may be physically unchanged, but, since it will no longer be valid, it is fair to describe it as being in a 'changed state'. 'All its goodness' will have gone by 1 February and so D is liable to conviction. But if D maintains that it was always his intention to return the ticket on 30 January, it will still be valid for one more day and, on the *Lloyd* test, D would have to be acquitted (if the court believed the story). Thus, by using the word 'all', Lord Lane made it clear that few borrowings will amount to theft. Some might argue that the wording of s. 6 is slightly more flexible—'in circumstances making it *equivalent* to an outright taking'—but the only way of introducing greater flexibility would be to (p. 389) hold that an intention substantially to reduce the value of the property would suffice, and such a broad reading would go against the principle of maximum certainty (see Chapter 3.5(i)). The real problem here is that, without a general offence of temporary deprivation, judicial attempts to stretch an offence based on an intention permanently to deprive are likely to produce difficulties.

Is there a strong case for dispensing with the requirement of an intention permanently to deprive? At present there are only two offences of temporary deprivation in the Theft Act—s. 12, penalizing the taking of cars, bicycles, etc. without the owner's consent; and s. 11, penalizing the removal of an article on display in places open to the public, such as museums and galleries. Among the arguments for penalizing temporary deprivation generally,[95] probably the strongest are that the chief value of many items lies in their use and that many modern objects are intended for fashion or for a relatively short active life. If someone deliberately takes an item for a period and deprives the other of its use for the same period, that is wrong, and there may be far more gain and loss involved than in many cases of theft in which there is an intention permanently to deprive. In many similar cases where deception is used, there will be an offence of fraud;[96] but if the advantage is gained boldly, without deception, it rarely amounts to an offence at present. The usual counter-argument is that the criminal law would be extended to many trivial 'borrowings' without consent, and that the

police and courts would be flooded by such cases. However, this does not appear to have occurred in those European and Commonwealth jurisdictions which have extended their law of theft in this way. For example, in France the basic offence of theft is very simply defined under Art. 311-1 without reference to a need for an intention permanently to deprive the victim: 'Theft is the fraudulent appropriation of a thing belonging to another person'. Moreover, there could be exceptions to cater for many non-serious cases. The real question is whether a sufficiently strong case for extending the ambit of the criminal law has been made: police and prosecutorial discretion might serve to eliminate minor cases, but are there major cases that justify criminalization? Could any major types of case, such as unauthorized copying of materials and other commercial malpractices, be covered adequately by specific offences? Would this approach not have the further advantage of removing the need for the over-complicated provisions in s. 6? These are questions for a broad review of dishonesty offences.

(e) The element of dishonesty

Perhaps the core concept in the Theft Act is dishonesty. The breadth of the definition of appropriation means that the finding of dishonesty may often make the difference between conviction and acquittal. From the fact that there is also the requirement of (p. 390) an intention permanently to deprive, it is evident that 'dishonesty' performs a separate function. The fault necessary for theft is not expressed simply in terms of intent, recklessness, or other *mens rea* terms. The dishonesty requirement imports considerations of motivation and excuse directly into the offence conditions. Let us consider the details.

The 1968 Act does not provide a definition of dishonesty, but it does stipulate in s. 2 that, in each of three instances, an appropriation may *not* be considered dishonest for the purposes of the crime of theft.[97] The first instance, in s. 2(1)(a), is where D believes that he has the legal right to deprive V of it. An example of this is where D seizes money from V, believing that V owes him the money.[98] In many cases under this provision there will be a mistake of law (usually, of civil law), and the main question will be whether the court is satisfied that D actually had the mistaken belief claimed—or, to reflect the burden of proof, whether the prosecution has established beyond reasonable doubt that this was not D's actual belief. The second instance, in s. 2(1)(b), is where D believes that V would have consented if V had known of the circumstances. The third, in s. 2(1)(c), is where D believes that the owner of the property cannot be discovered by taking reasonable steps. This applies chiefly to people who find property and conclude that it would be too difficult to trace the owner.

The main feature of s. 2, then, is that it removes three types of case from the possible ambit of 'dishonesty,' making it clear that it is the personal beliefs of defendants which are crucial here. These are, effectively, excuses—which could have been drafted so as to include objective elements, but were not.[99] The only other legislative clue to the meaning of 'dishonesty' is the declaration in s. 2(2) that an appropriation may be dishonest even though D is willing to pay for the property. Apart from that, the definition of dishonesty is at large ('morally open-textured'),[100] and the courts have been left to develop an approach. Whilst insisting that the meaning of dishonesty is a matter for the jury or magistrates and not a matter of law, the judges have laid down the proper approach to the question. It seems that there are three stages. First, the court must ascertain D's beliefs in relation to the appropriation—the reasons, motivations, explanations. Secondly, the jury or magistrates must decide whether a person acting with those beliefs would be regarded as dishonest according to the current standards of

ordinary decent people. Thirdly, if there is evidence that D thought that the conduct was not dishonest according to those general standards, D should be acquitted if the court is left in reasonable doubt on the matter.

The first and second stages in the test were laid down in *Feely* (1973),[101] where D had 'borrowed' money from his employer's safe despite a warning that employees must not do so. D's explanation was that he intended to repay the sum out of money which his employer owed him (which amply covered the deficiency). The Court of Appeal held (p. 391) that the key question for the court should have been whether a person who takes money in those circumstances and with that intention is dishonest according to the current standards of ordinary decent people. The third stage was added by *Ghosh* (1982),[102] where the Court of Appeal tried to reconcile two lines of earlier cases. The example given by the court was of a foreigner failing to pay when travelling on English public transport in the belief that it is free. However, as has been pointed out,[103] this is a poor example, which would render the third stage superfluous. D's own beliefs are already considered at the first stage, so that, in the example given, the court would then consider at the second stage whether a foreigner with that belief would be dishonest according to the ordinary standards of reasonable and honest people. The answer would surely be no. Moreover, even though the third stage does not provide a defence where D acts on strong moral or social beliefs which he knows are not shared by 'reasonable and honest people', it may provide a defence for the person who thinks that those people would not regard his conduct as dishonest. Whether people who are so out of tune with current standards should be acquitted is a difficult issue. But the overall complexity makes it hardly surprising that the Court of Appeal has declared that the third stage should not be mentioned to a jury unless the facts specifically raise it—which is highly unlikely in a case where the dishonesty was obvious.[104]

The three-stage test of dishonesty evolved by the courts is complex and controversial. Moreover, its sphere of operation is enormous: around one-half of all indictable charges tried by the courts include a requirement of dishonesty. The few specific instances covered by s. 2 are relevant only to a small minority of theft charges: most theft cases and all other dishonesty offences under the Theft Act are decided on the three-stage judicial test. Yet that test is open to serious objections.[105] The root of the problem has been the assumption, first stated by the CLRC[106] and then espoused by the courts in the 1970s,[107] that dishonesty is easily recognized and that the concept should therefore be treated as an ordinary word. Neither part of this assumption is well founded. Dishonesty may be easily recognized in some situations, but it is far more difficult in situations with which a jury or magistrates are unfamiliar—such as alleged business fraud or financial misdealing.[108] For example, some competition law experts supported the government's proposal to remove the dishonesty requirement in cartel offences for just this reason:

> [A]s a number of practitioners and academics have pointed out, dishonesty works well in the law of *theft* because juries are very rarely directed to consider it in a given case. The (p. 392) dishonesty inherent in the alleged theft is considered so obvious that the judge usually takes it as given. Even in *fraud* cases, dishonesty can generally be inferred from a false representation. Price fixing is inherently objectionable, but dishonesty is not immediately obvious because the act is more subtle than theft or fraud. Price fixing does not require a positive misrepresentation; all that is required is secrecy

and a desire to act like a monopolist.[109]

It may be countered that there would be no objection to expert evidence being given to support the evidence for and against regarding a given cartelization as dishonest, and further, that without the dishonesty requirement the competition offence seems morally to be less serious than it is meant to be. However, the point being made is an important one.

Moreover, much depends on who is responsible for characterizing conduct as dishonest. In a multicultural society with widely differing degrees of wealth, it may often happen that someone who is poor or is a member of a minority community may have his or her conduct characterized as honest or dishonest by people who are relatively wealthy and are members of the majority community. There may also be an element of hypocrisy in this, since it is well known that practices which are strictly dishonest abound in the business or private lives of people at all levels.[110] Many, or most, forms of employment have their 'perks' according to which some practices of employees taking or using company property have become so traditional as to be thought of almost as an entitlement, and employers are content to 'turn a blind eye' to this. The same might with justification have been said in the past of MPs in relation to some of their 'expense' claims.[111] This all tends to suggest that there are situations in which dishonesty cannot be regarded as an ordinary word with a clear, shared meaning. Yet, because it is not easy to devise a law that includes the culpable and excludes the non-culpable, it has been argued that such an issue is better resolved by a jury or lay magistrates assessing the facts of the case, rather than by inevitably crude legal rules.[112]

This, however, brings us to some strong objections to using the 'ordinary standards of reasonable and honest people' as a test for establishing dishonesty. It derogates from the rule of law in various ways. Its uncertainty may mean that, for some defendants, the judgment of dishonesty comes as an *ex post facto* assessment of their conduct, not knowable at the time of acting. Its uncertainty also brings it into conflict with the principle of **(p. 393)** maximum certainty in the criminal law.[113] Under the European Convention on Human Rights, an offence definition does not pass the 'quality of law' test unless it is sufficiently certain, which means that it must 'describe behaviour by reference to its effects' rather than relying solely on a morally evaluative term.[114] That cannot be said of 'dishonesty', and it appears that theft, deception, and other dishonesty offences only satisfy the Convention because 'dishonesty' is merely one of several elements in the definition of the offence[115]—a proposition that overlooks the considerable dependence of theft on 'dishonesty' after *Gomez* and *Hinks*. A further rule-of-law criticism is that the breadth of the concept increases the risk of different courts reaching different verdicts on essentially similar sets of facts, and leaves room for the infiltration of irrelevant factors. The *Feely* problem of borrowing money without permission is not unusual, but differently constituted juries might take a different view of its dishonesty. On the other hand, it is true to say that this alleged inconsistency of practice is not supported by any evidence, and that the impact of the alleged uncertainties of definition should not be exaggerated.[116]

It is far easier to criticize the test, however, than to propose a replacement which overcomes all the objections. Some years ago D. W. Elliott proposed that the requirement of dishonesty should be jettisoned; that the three types of case now covered by s. 2(1) should be declared not to be theft; and that the statutory definition of appropriation should exclude all

appropriations ‘not detrimental to the interests of the owner in a significant practical way’.[117] This would have the advantages of greater simplicity than *Ghosh* and of confining the decisions of juries and magistrates to whether the taking was too trivial to justify conviction, but it would fall well below the principle of maximum certainty until the courts had developed some specific criteria. Somewhat similar are the proposals of Peter Glazebrook, which stem from the proposition that no conduct that is not legally wrongful should be sufficient for theft.[118] From this starting point, Glazebrook assumes the presence of dishonesty unless the case can be brought within one of a number of listed exceptions. The first three exceptions correspond to those in the existing s. 2(1), and two others correspond to s. 3(2) (purchasers in good faith) and s. 4(3) (pickers of wild produce not for a commercial purpose). Whilst Glazebrook does not list a *de minimis* exception of the kind proposed by Elliott, he deals explicitly with one group of cases that Elliott assumed would be excluded by his *de minimis* exception. Thus one of Glazebrook's exceptions is that a person who appropriates property is not to be regarded as dishonest if:

> the property is money, some other fungible, a thing in action or intangible property, and is appropriated with the intention of replacing it, and in the belief that it will be possible for him to do so without loss to the person to whom it belongs.

(p. 394) What convinces both Elliott and Glazebrook that these ‘borrowing’ cases should not be theft? Elliott does not deny that they involve civil wrongs, but would exclude them because and in so far as they are not serious enough to justify criminalization. Presumably D's belief in the ability to make repayment is one central factor in this judgment, along with surrounding circumstances about the significance of the event for the owner which may suggest that it is sufficient to treat it as a civil matter. This may, however, mean that the differential treatment of employee ‘pilfering’ and ordinary small-value shoplifting is perpetuated, though this time under the guise of judgments about relative significance. In theory Elliott's test could become the gateway to the decriminalization of much shoplifting, on the basis that a small-value taking is hardly likely to be detrimental in a significant practical way to the interests of Tesco, Sainsbury, or other major retailers, but courts are unlikely to adopt this reading. Glazebrook's formula is concerned more directly with the ‘borrower’ of money, and would lead to an acquittal in cases such as *Feely*.[119] Here again, the ‘borrower’ clearly commits a civil wrong, violating the owner's right to decide how and by whom the property may be used,[120] and so presumably the argument for putting them beyond the criminal sanction is that they are insufficiently serious. The provision is narrower in scope, and would be easier to administer since it requires no normative judgment from the court. But it remains a considerable distance from the existing law. At present we have an extremely wide definition of appropriation which leaves most criminalization decisions to the court's judgment of dishonesty—a judgment with few parameters and much scope for differences of perspective. The Glazebrook approach would confine the definition of appropriation, notably by requiring proof of a civil wrong, with the consequence that a far less flexible and extensive definition of dishonesty would be required. Legal certainty would be enhanced, and legalism would triumph over the variable populism of the *Ghosh* test.

9.3 Taking a conveyance without consent

Although an appropriation of another's property without an intention to deprive the other of it permanently does not normally amount to an offence under English law, there are a few exceptions. The best known and most frequently invoked is the offence of taking a conveyance without the owner's consent, contrary to s. 12 of the Theft Act 1968. In the early 1990s there was growing public concern over 'joy-riding' by young drivers who took cars in order to race them and to give 'displays', and this concern was heightened when some of the offences ended in the deaths of pedestrians or other road users. In 1992 Parliament passed the Aggravated Vehicle-Taking Act, empowering courts to impose harsher sentences in many such cases. The Act was mentioned in Chapter 7.6 during the discussion of serious motoring offences, and reference will be made to it below since it is an aggravated form of the basic offence under s. 12 of the Theft Act.

(p. 395) 9.4 Robbery

Robbery can be one of the most serious offences in the criminal calendar, and average sentences are higher than for any other crime apart from rape and murder. The definition of the offence is within the Theft Act 1968, but the crime involves the use or threat of violence and is triable only in the Crown Court. The number of recorded robberies was around 63,000 in 1997, doubling to 121,000 in 2001, dropping back to 85,000 in 2007/08, and then down again to 75,000 in 2009–10.[121] Some of these offences are planned attacks on persons in charge of money or other valuables at banks, building societies, or in security companies. However, as we shall see in the paragraphs that follow, many fairly minor forms of snatching a bag or mobile phone can be charged as robbery. This creates a problem of fair labelling: a sudden, impulsive bag-snatching falls into the same legal category as a major armed robbery. The offence is extremely wide, and its drafting owes more to efficiency of administration than to fairness of labelling. Sentences for robbery of a bank or security vehicle in which firearms were carried and no serious injury done can now range as high as twenty-five years' imprisonment,[122] with smaller-scale robberies of building society branches often sentenced in the range from four to seven years, and street robberies in which a weapon is produced having a starting point of four (adults) or three (young offenders) years.[123] Against that sentencing background, it is worth noting that some 28 per cent of robberies involve the theft of nothing more than a mobile telephone.[124] It is, then, the use or threat of force in committing the theft that must bear the weight of justification for the high starting points in sentencing robbers; but as we will see, the courts have construed 'force' widely, for the purposes of s. 8. The detection rate for robbery is also very low, with no more than one-fifth of robberies 'cleared up'.[125]

The legal elements of robbery contrary to s. 8 of the Theft Act 1968 are theft accompanied by the use or threat of force. It follows from this that if D has a defence to theft, there can be no conviction for robbery. Thus where D took V's car by threat of force, intending to abandon it later (and doing so), this was not robbery because it was not theft, the intention permanently to deprive being absent.[126] Again, where D brandished a knife at V in order to get V to hand over money which D believed he was owed, (p. 396) it was held that this could be neither theft nor robbery if the jury found that D did believe that he had a legal right to the money (and so was not dishonest: s. 2(i)(a)).[127] Conviction for another offence, such as possessing an offensive weapon or blackmail, might be possible on these facts. But if there is no theft, there can be no robbery.

Turning to the amount of force needed to convert a theft into a robbery, s. 8 of the Act requires it to be proved that, immediately before or at the time of stealing, and in order to steal, D 'used force on a person or put or sought to put any person in fear of being then and there subjected to force'. Several points of interpretation arise here. The force, threat, or attempted threat of force must take place immediately before or at the time of the theft: this seems to exclude the use of force immediately after the offence, but the Court of Appeal has circumvented this limitation by holding that the appropriation element in theft continues while the thieves are tying up their victims so as to make good their escape.[128] This strained view of 'appropriation' does linguistic violence to the notion of a 'continuing act', although it does illustrate that there is perhaps a gap in the law. There is possibly a case for an offence of using or threatening violence to prevent any attempt to re-take property stolen by the person making the threat, although that would not cover the facts of *Hale*,[129] where the defendants were really guilty of theft, followed by assault and false imprisonment in tying up the victims. Finally, the force must be used in order to steal, not merely on the same occasion as the stealing. Where there is a threat of force, the threat must be to subject a person (not necessarily the victim of the theft) to immediate violence—a threat to injure at some time in the future would be insufficient for robbery.

One question which has engaged the attention of the courts is, at first sight, a perfectly simple one: what does the phrase 'uses force on a person' mean? *Dawson and James* (1976)[130] seems to hold that bumping into someone so as to knock him off balance may be sufficient force. The result of *Clouden* (1987)[131] seems to be that pulling V's handbag in a way which causes her hand to be pulled downwards amounts to using force on a person. None of the defendants in these cases could claim any social or moral merit in their activities, but should they be classified as robbers rather than mere thieves? Of course it is difficult to draw the line between sufficient and insufficient force, but if robbery is to continue to be regarded as a serious offence, triable only on indictment and punishable with life imprisonment, surely something more than a bump, a push, or a pull should be required. It may be true that the significant feature of robbery 'is not merely that D usurps V's property rights, but how she does so',[132] but that does not **(p. 397)** support the existence or structure of the current offence, which was pushed well beyond its old boundaries in *Clouden*. At common law, the (threat of) 'force' in robbery had to be used to facilitate the stealing, as by overcoming V's resistance; it was not enough that force was involved in the taking of the property,[133] but in *Clouden* the Court refused to carry over this older view into its interpretation of s. 8. A radical solution would be to abolish the offence of robbery, leaving prosecutors to charge theft together with an offence of violence at the appropriate level—although, interestingly, there are no general offences of threatening or attempting to threaten the use of force, other than common assault (maximum penalty six months) and threatening to kill or inflict serious harm. Another solution would be to divide the offence of robbery, so that the use or threat of lesser degrees of force in order to steal is differentiated from major robberies involving considerable violence or firearms. The principle of fair labelling (Chapter 3.6(s)) is readily adopted for offences against the person, and no one would argue in favour of a single offence of using or threatening force (of any degree) against another. The present definition of robbery plainly breaches that principle.[134]

9.5 Blackmail[135]

It was noted earlier that the criminal law does not penalize all threats of violence,[136] although we have just seen that robbery is committed if a person uses a threat of immediate violence in order to steal property. The essence of blackmail contrary to s. 21 of the Theft Act 1968 is the making of a demand, reinforced by menaces, with a view to making a gain or inflicting a loss. Blackmail is therefore wider than the other offences committed by threats, since it is not confined to threats of violence. The word 'menaces' has been held to extend to threats of 'any action detrimental to or unpleasant to the person addressed',[137] and may involve a threat to disclose some compromising information. On the other hand, blackmail is narrower than some other 'threat' offences, in that the offence is committed only where D makes the demand 'with a view to gain for himself or another or with intent to cause loss to another'. The definitions of 'gain' and 'loss'[138] are supposed to establish blackmail as a property offence (although the notion of 'gain' has been applied to the obtaining of a pain-killing injection from a doctor),[139] whereas it is surely the use of coercive threats (especially where they involve violence) that constitutes the gravamen of the offence.[140]

(p. 398) In 2009–10 there were 1,400 recorded instances of blackmail.[141] As Professor Ormerod has pointed out, modern technology has created greater opportunities for blackmail in a number of ways. It may now be possible, whether or not legally, to access remotely sensitive information about someone that only personal knowledge of the individual would have revealed in the past; and it may be also possible simply to gain access to someone's computer system and threaten to wreck it unless some demand is met.[142]

It has been said that the criminalization of blackmail creates a paradox: it may be legal to reveal another's secret, and it may be legal to ask another person for money, but when D asks V for money as the price of not disclosing a secret, a serious offence, triable only in the Crown Court, is committed. A more plausible analysis, however, would emphasize the element of coercion involved in obtaining something that ought only to be yielded by consent.[143] In practice many prosecutions concern the betrayal or threatened revelation of sexual secrets, so the rationale of the offence may also include the protection of certain forms of privacy.[144]

9.6 Burglary

One of the aims of the Theft Act 1968 was to reduce the earlier mass of prolix offences to a reasonable minimum. The law thus abandoned a definition which distinguished between burglaries of dwellings and other premises. However, by virtue of a change in sentencing law there are now separate offences of burglary in a dwelling and other burglaries again, although they share the same definition. The Criminal Justice Act 1991 reduced the maximum penalty for non-residential burglary to ten years, retaining the fourteen-year maximum for burglary in a dwelling. This separation of maximum penalties has the procedural effect of creating separate offences,[145] and the prosecution must specify which form of burglary is being charged. However, the legal definition continues unchanged, with no reference to the psychological harm which constitutes the *gravamen* of burglary in a dwelling. These psychological effects are well documented: Maguire and Bennett found that about a quarter of victims 'are, temporarily at least, badly shaken by the experience', and that a small minority of victims suffer longer-lasting effects.[146] The offence of burglary contrary to s. 9 of the Theft Act 1968 has a wide ambit, but its essence may be summarized thus: it may be committed either (p. 399) by entering a building as a trespasser with intent to steal, or by stealing after entering a

building as a trespasser. ‘Entry’ does not require entry of the whole body: it is sufficient if, say, an arm is put through a broken window to take goods from within.[147] What if D inserts a pole through V's letter box to obtain the house key so that he or she can gain access to the property, but is arrested before getting a chance to use the keys?[148] At common law, the issue was whether the instrument employed was to be used to commit the offence (which would be burglary), or whether it was to be used merely to gain entry (which would not be burglary). On that view, the pole-user would not be guilty of burglary, because he or she was using the pole merely as a means to access an easy means of gaining entry; but it is unlikely that such a narrow view would be taken of the offence under s. 9. In this example, D enters as a trespasser on V's property with the pole, and does so with the ulterior intention of committing (we may assume) an offence mentioned in s. 9.

What must be entered is a building or part of a building: this is drafted so as to cover the person who enters the building itself lawfully, but then trespasses by going into a forbidden part of the building. The forbidden part does not have to be a separate room: it has been held that a customer in a shop who goes into the area behind a service counter enters part of a building as a trespasser.[149] The requirement of trespass places a civil law concept at the centre of the offence. There is no general offence of trespass in English law—it is regarded as merely a civil matter between the parties—but a stealing or intent to steal converts trespass into the serious offence of burglary. In broad terms, someone who trespasses in another person's building is one who enters it without permission. Usually the permission will take the form of a direct invitation, but there may be cases of implied permission which raise difficulties of interpretation.

Two Court of Appeal decisions have been responsible for developing the requirement of entry as a trespasser in different, and possibly inconsistent, ways. In *Collins* (1973)[150] it was held that it is not enough that D would be classified as a trespasser in civil law: the criminal offence of burglary requires that D knew that, or was reckless as to whether, he was a trespasser. This protects from conviction the person who enters at the invitation of the householder's daughter, without realizing that she is unauthorized to give such permission. This decision kept the offence fairly narrow, by insisting on a fault element on this point, but the decision in *Smith and Jones* (1976)[151] broadened it by suggesting that the fault element is sufficient in itself. The defendants here had entered the house of Smith's father and stolen two television sets. The father maintained that his son would never be a trespasser in his house, but this did not prevent the Court of Appeal from upholding the convictions. The Court reasoned that Smith had entered ‘in excess of the permission’ given by his father, since the father's general permission surely did not extend to occasions when his son intended to commit a crime on the premises. The result of this decision seems to be that anyone who enters another **(p. 400)** person's building with intent to steal is a trespasser by virtue of that intention. This approach has what some would see as the great merit of removing questions of civil law from the centre of the offence and replacing them with a straightforward test more appropriate to criminal trials: did D enter the building with the intention of stealing? More turns on D's intent than on the technicalities of trespass.

Simplicity is a virtue in the criminal law, and yet *Smith and Jones* introduces difficulties. In the first place, it seems inconsistent with *Collins*, where D had a (conditional) intent to rape the woman who invited him in, but this was not held to invalidate her permission. More importantly, the boundaries of burglary are being pushed wider than is necessary or appropriate. Surely

the proper label for what was done in *Smith and Jones* is theft, and the availability of the charges of theft and attempted theft makes it unnecessary to strain the boundaries of trespass by inserting unstated reservations into general permissions given by householders. There is no element of suspicion, fear, or threat when the person who enters is someone who is generally permitted to do so. Of course, part of the problem here is that the present definition of burglary includes no reference to the factors which make it such a serious crime in some cases. Convictions for the offence might be rare if the prosecution had to prove that D intended to cause, or was reckless as to causing, fear, alarm, or distress—a burglar might try to avoid such effects by entering a house when the occupier is out and taking property without damaging or ransacking the premises—but even then the crime can cause considerable distress and fear (feelings that one's property has been sullied by another, for example, or that one's home is no longer a safe place).[152] The difficulty is that the real *gravamen* of many burglaries lies in an unintended, unforeseen, or even unwanted effect upon the victim. It is fair to fix the general level of sentences by reference to that element,[153] since the psychological effects ought to be widely recognized, but it is more problematic to make it a requirement in the definition of the offence.

Section 9 creates two forms of burglary. The first, contrary to s. 9(1)(a), is a truly inchoate offence: entering a building as a trespasser with intent to steal, etc. The offence is complete as soon as D has entered with the requisite intent. What ordinary people might regard as an 'attempted burglary', since D has not yet stolen anything, is in fact the full offence. The section refers to entry with intent to steal 'anything therein', and in most cases it will not matter that D's intent was a conditional one, to steal only if something worth stealing were found.[154] The second form is, having entered as a trespasser, stealing or attempting to steal, etc. (s. 9(1)(b)). Either form of the offence becomes the more serious crime of aggravated burglary (s. 10, punishable with life imprisonment) if D is carrying any firearm or imitation firearm, any weapon of offence, or any explosive. In most of these instances there could, in any event, be a conviction for an additional offence in respect of the weapon. Section 10 incorporates the aggravating element into **(p. 401)** the label, but in one decision the Court of Appeal took this too far when extending the offence to D who, having used a screwdriver to effect entry, then prodded the householder in the stomach with it.[155]

Burglary also has another unexpected element. Not only does it have the inchoate form of entering a building with intent, but it also covers three different intents. The discussion thus far has concentrated on the intent to steal, since that is what one would expect. But, in fact, burglary is also committed by entering a building as a trespasser with intent to inflict grievous bodily harm or to commit criminal damage. This means that s. 9(1)(a) burglary functions as an inchoate violent offence, so that a person who enters a house carrying a weapon has committed the offence at that point. This illustrates the considerable reach of s. 9(1)(a) burglary, going beyond that of an attempt to commit the substantive crime (e.g. grievous bodily harm or criminal damage). If it can be justified, it is on the ground that entering a building as a trespasser is a non-innocent act which should be sufficient (when combined with evidence of a proscribed intent, often inferred from surrounding circumstances or from the absence of any other plausible explanation) to warrant criminal liability. D has crossed the threshold between conceiving an intent and taking steps to translate the intent into action. It should also be noted that, where the charge is burglary contrary to s. 9(1)(b), only two types of further offence convert the crime into burglary: D must have entered as a trespasser and then have either stolen or inflicted grievous bodily harm, or attempted either offence. Criminal

damage is not relevant to this form of burglary.[156]

We have seen that what makes most residential burglaries more serious than most thefts is the element of invasion, with all the possible psychological effects which make it a more personal offence. It should therefore be mentioned that there are other offences which 'protect' the home: the Protection from Eviction Act 1977 (as amended) criminalizes the unlawful eviction or harassment of a residential occupier, and there are various offences in Part II of the Criminal Law Act 1977, which penalize the adverse occupation of residential premises. These offences are restated in the Draft Criminal Code.[157] More recently, in response to media-highlighted concerns about 'squatting' (occupying premises as a trespasser), Parliament has passed s. 144 of the Legal aid Sentencing and Punishment of Offenders Act 2012, creating an offence in the following terms:

> **(1)** A person commits an offence if—
> **(a)** the person is in a residential building as a trespasser having entered it as a trespasser,
> **(b)** the person knows or ought to know that he or she is a trespasser, and
> **(c)** the person is living in the building or intends to live there for any period.
>
> (p. 402) **(2)** …
> **(3)** For the purposes of this section—
> … (b)a building is "residential" if it is designed or adapted, before the time of entry, for use as a place to live ….
> **(5)** A person convicted of an offence under this section is liable on summary conviction to imprisonment for a term not exceeding 51 weeks or a fine not exceeding level 5 on the standard scale (or both).

In itself, trespass has to this point been in law purely a civil wrong, and the new offence reflects to some extent the understandable frustrations of owner-occupiers with the delays that can be encountered in the civil law to securing the removal of trespassers from residential property. The question is whether it is a proportionate response to this problem to make it an imprisonable offence that extends to cases where someone trespasses without even necessarily realizing that they are trespassing, since the offence extends to cases in which this is something they 'ought to know'. There is already a power under s. 7 of the Criminal Law Act 1977 to enter premises and arrest a trespasser who has refused to leave. It might also be argued that the offence is unnecessary because trespassers living on residential premises will almost inevitably commit one or more offences in order to maintain their existence there: such as the abstraction of electricity (contrary to s. 13 of the Theft Act 1968), theft (of food, etc.) or criminal damage (to locks or doors, etc.). An illegal trespass continuing for more than a few hours ought to give rise to a reasonable suspicion that one of these offences is being committed, giving the police the right to enter the property and arrest suspected offenders (although in some instances a warrant would be needed for this purpose).

9.7 Handling stolen goods and money-laundering

In this section we deal first with the offence of handling, and then with the money-laundering offences that are also concerned with subsequent dealings with stolen property or its proceeds. It has often been said that if there were fewer receivers of stolen goods, there would be fewer thieves.[158] This may well be true—there are professional 'fences' who act as outlets for stolen goods, and goods are sometimes stolen 'to order'[159]—although it is doubtful whether this is a sufficient justification for keeping the maximum penalty for handling stolen goods at fourteen years, double the maximum for theft. Section 22 of the Theft Act 1968 considerably extended the liability of persons concerned in dealing with stolen goods, creating a broad offence which covers many **(p. 403)** minor acts of assistance which might more naturally fall within inchoate offences or complicity.

The essence of the offence of 'handling' is dealing with stolen goods. The concept of stolen goods includes goods obtained by means of theft (including robbery and burglary), fraud, or blackmail, and it also covers the proceeds of such goods. Goods may, however, lose their legal classification as stolen if returned to their owner or to police custody, even temporarily.[160] The fault elements required for handling are dishonesty, and that D must 'know or believe' that the property is stolen, terms which include 'wilful blindness'[161] but not suspicion, even strong suspicion.[162] The prohibited conduct may take one of four forms, but merely touching stolen property does not amount to the offence. 'Handling' is simply the compendious name for the four types of conduct. Type (i) is 'receiving' stolen property, which means taking control or possession of it. This is the most usual form of the offence, and applies to the 'fence' who takes the property from the thief for resale, and to the person who buys stolen goods from another. Type (ii) is 'arranging to receive' stolen goods, and here we meet the broadening of the offence. If D agrees to buy stolen goods from the thief, who is to deliver them later, D has 'arranged to receive' even before the thief has taken any action to bring the goods to him. Type (iii) is 'undertaking or assisting in their retention, removal, disposal or realization by or for the benefit of another person'. This is an extremely wide provision designed to criminalize those who help a thief or a receiver. It is rendered even wider by type (iv), which penalizes arrangements to do an act or omission within (iii). Thus, a person who does, assists in, or arranges to do or assist in any of the acts or omissions within type (iii) is criminally liable—on one condition. The condition is that it must be 'by or for the benefit of another person'. In the leading case of *Bloxham* (1983)[163] D bought a car, subsequently realizing that it was stolen. He then sold the car to someone else and was charged with type (iii) handling. The House of Lords quashed his conviction, on the ground that he sold the car for his own benefit, not for the benefit of another. He did not sell the car for the benefit of the original thief or handler, of whom he knew nothing; and it would be ridiculous to suggest that he sold it for the buyer's benefit. Moreover, D was originally a purchaser in good faith, and the policy of the Theft Act is not to criminalize such purchasers, even if they later discover the unwelcome truth about their purchases.[164]

The purpose of broadening the definition of handling was 'to combat theft by making it more difficult and less profitable to dispose of stolen property'.[165] This purpose has **(p. 404)** now been taken further by the enactment of legislation on money-laundering and the disposal of the proceeds of crime. There is now a complex body of law that extends the reach of the criminal law considerably beyond the confines of handling stolen goods. No attempt can be made here to examine the details of this legislation, but it is important to outline the three principal offences of money-laundering under the Proceeds of Crime Act 2002.[166] Section 327 of the Act creates the offence of concealing, disguising, converting, transferring, or removing

from the jurisdiction any ‘criminal property’. Section 328 creates an offence of becoming concerned in an arrangement to facilitate the acquisition, retention, use, or control of criminal property by another person. Section 329 creates offences of acquisition, use, or possession of criminal property. All the offences are punishable with up to fourteen years’ imprisonment, the same maximum as handling. There are two key elements in the offences. The first is that they all relate to ‘criminal property’, defined as ‘a person's benefit from criminal conduct’ or ‘property that directly or indirectly represents such a benefit’. It will be noticed that this goes beyond stolen goods to encompass the proceeds of all crimes, notably drug offences. The second key element also forms part of the definition of ‘criminal property’—that D must ‘know or suspect that it constitutes such a benefit’. In other words, it only qualifies as ‘criminal property’ if the launderer has this state of mind. This is the only fault element in the offences under ss. 327 and 329; the offence under s. 328 additionally requires that D knows or suspects that the arrangement will facilitate the acquisition, retention, use, or control of the property. These fault elements are entirely subjective, with the minimum requirement being that D suspects that the property may be ‘criminal’—a form of recklessness, requiring D to believe that there is a risk of the property being the proceeds of crime. This use of ‘suspects’ takes these offences considerably beyond the ‘belief’ requirement for handling stolen goods; and whereas type (iii) handling is only criminal if done for the benefit of another, a similar requirement applies only to the s. 328 offence and not to the other offences.

Offences of money-laundering are required by international conventions, but the extent to which such broad offences are justifiable has been questioned. The confiscation provisions in the Proceeds of Crime Act 2002 are so draconian, and not dependent on a conviction, that it may be thought unnecessary to add further offences to the existing crimes of handling and of encouraging or assisting crime.[167] The ostensible purpose is to catch the ‘godfathers’ who live off organized crime. But the breadth of the offences is such that it may encourage prosecutors to charge money-laundering when a person appears to have no lawful means of support but plenty of money, even though it cannot be proved what particular offences D has committed or acquired proceeds of.[168]

(p. 405) 9.8 Offences under the Fraud Act 2006

The Theft Act 1968 introduced the offences of obtaining property by deception (s. 15) and obtaining a pecuniary advantage by deception (s. 16). Those offences, and further offences in ss. 1 and 2 of the Theft Act 1978 that were designed to plug gaps in the law, were repealed and replaced by offences under the Fraud Act 2006. The new offences overlap with a considerable number of other offences of fraud scattered through the statute-book and at common law. Among the statutory offences are two under the Theft Act 1968, false accounting (s. 17) and false statements by company directors (s. 19), several under the Forgery and Counterfeiting Act 1981, the offence of fraudulent trading (Companies Act 1985, s. 458), and various offences of false and misleading statements under such statutes as the Banking Act 1987, the Financial Services and Markets Act 2000, and the Enterprise Act 2002. Among the common law offences are cheating the public revenue (which is based on fraud, and does not require deception[169]) and conspiracy to defraud, which will be examined in 9.9.

The most prominent characteristic of the Fraud Act offences is that they are drafted in the inchoate mode: they set out to penalize fraudulent conduct, whether or not it succeeds in

deceiving anyone and whether or not it leads to the obtaining of any property. In this way, two of the main difficulties of the previous law—proving that someone was deceived, and proving that the deception caused the obtaining[170]—are removed, although (as we shall see) there are some problems with the new law. The focus below will be on the four main offences introduced by the Fraud Act: fraud by false representation, fraud by failing to disclose information, fraud by abuse of position, and obtaining services dishonestly. Most of the general concepts will be dealt with in relation to the first offence, which is likely to be the most widely prosecuted.[171]

(a) Fraud by false representation

This offence, like those in (b) and (c), is created by s. 1 of the Act and then defined by a subsequent section, in this case s. 2. Thus, fraud by false representation is, technically, simply one way of committing the offence of fraud. The maximum penalty under s. 1 is 10 years' imprisonment. Section 2(1) provides that this form of fraud is committed if D 'dishonestly makes a false representation, and intends, by making the representation, to make a gain for himself or another, or to cause loss to another or to expose another to the risk of loss'. It will be observed that it is the dishonest making of a false representation with the required intention that constitutes the offence: as stated earlier, there is (p. 406) no requirement that anyone is deceived or that anything is actually obtained, let alone that it must be property rather than services.[172] The conduct element or *actus reus* has two components, a representation that is also false; the fault element or *mens rea* has three elements—knowledge, dishonesty, and the intent to cause loss or make a gain.

(i) *Conduct Elements*: The first point is that the representation made by D must be false. This means, according to s. 2(2), that it must be either untrue or misleading. A representation can be untrue if in any particular it is inaccurate; in other words, it is not necessary that the whole representation is untrue, so long as one element of it is untrue. Any argument to the effect that the untruth was so minor as to be immaterial goes to the dishonesty requirement. The term 'misleading' is different, since it posits a particular effect of what was said or done by D. Presumably the term usually bears an objective meaning, i.e. what is likely to mislead the ordinary person. But if D has any special knowledge of the person to whom the representation is addressed—for example, that that person is particularly gullible, or on the other hand that he is so knowledgeable that he will not be misled—this could be relevant in determining whether the representation is misleading.

The requirement that D makes a representation does not suggest that it must be received by another, let alone acted upon. If the representation is not communicated to its intended recipient (perhaps because that person is deaf, or because a written representation is intercepted before arrival), that does not negative the *actus reus* of the offence. Section 2(3) provides that representations as to fact or law are included, as is a representation 'as to the state of mind of the person making the representation or any other person'. This will be particularly relevant in cases where D promises to make payment next week if goods are delivered today, assuming that it can be proved (usually by inference) that at the time he made the promise D did not intend to pay the following week. Section 2(4) provides that 'a representation may be express or implied'. This applies equally to representations by words and by conduct. Many everyday transactions are conducted on certain assumptions which it would be tedious to spell out to or check on every occasion. We assume that the woman

wearing a police uniform is a policewoman, or that the man wearing a Royal Mail uniform is a postman. We also assume that when a person pays by cheque there will be the funds to meet the cheque. The representations implied by giving a cheque in payment have now been formalized in a number of decisions: it is implied (i) that the drawer has an account at the bank; and (ii) that the cheque will be met when presented, which may mean in practice that there are sufficient funds in the account, or that sufficient funds will be paid in before the cheque is presented, or that there is an arrangement with the bank for a sufficient overdraft facility.[173] Finally, s. 2(5) is a complicated provision intended to bring representations to machines within the offence: 'a representation may be regarded as made **(p. 407)** if it is submitted in any form to any system or device designed to receive, convey or respond to communications (with or without human intervention).'

(ii) *Fault Elements*: The first of the three fault elements is to be found, strangely, in the definition of 'false'. A representation is only false, according to s. 2(2)(b), if 'the person making it knows that it is, or might be, untrue or misleading'. This is a requirement of knowledge, which seems (by the words 'or might be') to extend to a form of reckless knowledge. As noted in Chapter 5.5(d), some cases of 'wilful blindness' may be held to fall within the requirement of knowledge. The second of the fault elements is dishonesty, and it is clear that this was intended to bear the meaning placed on that concept in *Ghosh*.[174] However, in the law of theft the concept of dishonesty is narrowed by s. 2 of the Theft Act, which excludes three kinds of case from its ambit. There is no equivalent of s. 2 in the Fraud Act, and so cases of belief in legal right will fall to be dealt with according to the *Ghosh* test of the ordinary standards of reasonable and honest people. In view of the inchoate nature of the offence, and the breadth of the requirement of knowledge that the representation 'might be' misleading, many cases are likely to turn on the magistrates' or jury's view of D's honesty or dishonesty. For example, exaggerated claims by sellers might be commonplace in particular markets: D must know that they might be misleading, but in the circumstances is it dishonest to indulge in such over-statements? Or, to put the matter differently, would it be considered sufficiently dishonest to constitute fraud?[175]

The third fault element for this offence is that D 'intends, by making the representation', to cause a gain or a loss. It should be noted that this incorporates a requirement of causation—that the intention must be to cause the gain or loss 'by making the representation'—so that if D argues that he did not intend the false representation to be a causal factor (merely an embellishment), he may create a doubt that this element of the offence is satisfied. In most cases, however, proof of an intent to make a gain or to cause a loss will not cause difficulty. The definition in s. 5 is similar to that for the offence of blackmail (see 9.5), extending to temporary or permanent losses of money or property, and also covering cases where D intends only to expose the other to the risk of a loss.

(b) Fraud by failing to disclose information

This offence is created by s. 1(2)(b) of the Fraud Act and defined in s. 3. Its essence is dishonestly failing to disclose information that D has a duty to disclose. It is therefore an offence of omission: it is designed to deal with some cases that presented a difficulty for the previous offence of obtaining by deception, but in doing so it overlaps considerably with the offence in s. 2, as we shall see. The fault elements for the s. 3 offence are dishonesty and an intention, by the failure to disclose the information, to make a gain or **(p. 408)** to cause a

loss. These run parallel to the corresponding requirements for the offence of fraud by false representation, and will not be discussed further. More significant are the two elements of the *actus reus*, the failure to disclose and the information that D has a duty to disclose.[176] It might be thought that 'failing to disclose' is clear enough, but there may be questions over partial or insufficiently full disclosure in some cases. Essentially, if D does not disclose everything that must be disclosed, the defence may have to rest its case on the absence of dishonesty. Turning to the duty to disclose, this was intended to reflect the duties that exist under statute and at common law. It is as plain as can be that the intention of the legislature was that there must be an existing legal duty,[177] and that there is no scope for creating special duties under criminal law (as, for example, in relation to gross negligence manslaughter).[178] It therefore behoves the prosecutor to spell out the duty and its source, and whether the duty did indeed exist is a question of law. By contrast, whether D fulfilled the duty, or failed to disclose that which was required, is a question for the jury. Some of these cases might be prosecuted under s. 2, by arguing that D made an implied representation by conduct or by omission, but in principle it will usually be easier for the prosecution to proceed under s. 3.

(c) Fraud by abuse of position

This offence, created by s. 1(2)(c) of the Act and defined in s. 4, is the most controversial of the trio. This is because its key terms crumble away into vagueness when scrutinized. Indeed, it looks distinctly less like a fraud offence than either of the other two. Its central element, dishonest abuse of position, appears not to require any fraud or falsity at all—a brazen taking would seem to suffice.

What are the conduct elements of this offence? Three main requirements may be identified—the occupation of a position, the expectation that financial interests will be safeguarded, and the perpetration of abuse. First, what kind of position must D occupy? It seems plain that the intention of the legislature was that the concept of 'position' should not be restricted to recognized fiduciary positions. Indeed, examples given by the government include cases where V has allowed D access to his or her financial records, or business records, as well as cases where an employee of a care home deals with a resident's financial affairs.[179] Thus employees or others who stand in a particular relationship to another may be brought within the concept of 'position',[180] **(p. 409)** a penumbra of uncertainty that fails to give fair warning of the law's impact. Secondly, the position must be one 'in which [D] is expected to safeguard, or not to act against, the financial interests of another person'. Many employees who are not expected to safeguard their organization's financial interests may nevertheless be expected not to act against them. Beyond that, this requirement has all the rigidity of a marshmallow. The statute does not say 'may reasonably be expected' but 'is expected', so the obvious question is: whose expectation is relevant? The meaning would vary too much if it depended on the victim's expectation, and it could hardly turn on D's own expectation, so it seems that the courts may well develop a notion of 'reasonable expectation'. Once again, there is no fair warning of the law's impact. Thirdly, there is the requirement that D 'dishonestly abuses that position'. This is the only active element in the *actus reus* of this offence, and it may be fulfilled by an act or an omission: s. 4(2). An employee who awards contracts to friends or who fails to bid for a particular contract in order to allow a friend to obtain it seems likely to fulfil this requirement. It is not clear whether 'abuse' implies the actual making of a gain or loss, but it may be interpreted more broadly as acting (or failing to act) improperly or against the financial interests of V, irrespective of the outcome.

The fault elements for this offence are twofold—dishonesty, and the intention, by the abuse of position, to cause gain or loss. It is evident that the dishonesty requirement will be particularly important in this offence, in view of the uncertain boundaries of the key *actus reus* elements. However, if there has been an apparent abuse of position (in whatever wide sense that is understood), there is likely to be a whiff of dishonesty in most cases. The employee who deviated from appropriate procedures in order to ensure that a friend obtained a contract—whether a local government official, a chief constable, or a car salesperson—may be confronted with the prospect of conviction for a serious offence carrying a maximum of ten years' imprisonment. It is not clear how widely known this change in the law is, but the fact that s. 1(2)(c) applies in this situation helps to buttress the law of bribery and corruption. The Bribery Act 2010 punishes corruption in cases like this only where, amongst other things, a person conferring an advantage (the contract) does so knowing or believing that its acceptance by another person would constitute the improper performance of a relevant function or activity.[181] So, if D offered the contract to a lover or close friend who, in accepting it, would not themselves become involved in the improper performance of an existing function or activity with which they have been entrusted, it is the abuse of position offence that must be employed to criminalize D's conduct, rather than the 2010 Act offence.[182]

(p. 410) **(d) Obtaining services dishonestly**

This offence, created by s. 11 of the Fraud Act, replaces the offence of obtaining services by deception contrary to s. 1 of the Theft Act 1978. It will be noted immediately that the element of deception required by the previous law has gone, and that the concept of dishonesty is once again the centrepiece of the new offence. There is also a major difference between this offence and the three Fraud Act offences just considered: whereas those offences are drafted in an inchoate mode, this offence requires an actual obtaining.

There are three elements in the *actus reus* of this offence. First, D must obtain services for himself or another by an act. The reference to an act has been taken to imply that an omission will not suffice for this offence.[183] There is no definition of 'services', and it may be construed widely so as to include, for example, the unlawful downloading of music. The ambit of 'services' is restricted by the second requirement, that the services 'are made available on the basis that payment has been, is being or will be made for or in respect of them'. This rules out services provided on a complimentary basis, but will cover most cases. Thirdly, D must 'obtain [the services] without any payment having been made for or in respect of them or without payment having been made in full'. This seems to exclude cases where D pays for services by using a credit or debit card that he is not authorized to use—since the issuing company will make the payment if the card transaction is completed.[184] However, it clearly includes cases where D obtains a reduced rate of payment to which he is not entitled (whether or not any fraud or deception is involved).

There are three fault elements for the offence. First, D's act must be dishonest. This is a reference to the *Ghosh* test and is likely, once again, to be a crucial issue for the magistrates or jury in determining whether or not D has committed the offence. Secondly, D must know, when he obtains the services, that either they are being made on a payment basis or 'that they might be'. This introduces a requirement of reckless knowledge, to cover cases where D realizes there is a risk that payment might be required but does not enquire further. And thirdly, D must intend that 'payment will not be made, or will not be made in full'. This

requirement of an intent to avoid payment means that this offence does not apply to cases where D's dishonest obtaining of services amounts to getting something to which D is not entitled but intends to pay for fully—as where parents lie about their religion in order to get their child into a faith school, intending to pay the full fees for the child's education. This would not be an offence under s. 2 either.

9.9 Conspiracy to defraud

The elements of the common law crime of conspiracy to defraud were restated in *Scott* v *Metropolitan Police Commissioner* (1975).[185] The offence may take one of two forms. (p. 411) If it is directed at a private person, what is proscribed is an agreement between two or more persons 'by dishonesty to deprive' that person of something to which he or she is or may be entitled, or to injure some proprietary right of that person, with intent to cause economic loss. It seems that an intention to do acts which will defraud is sufficient, and a 'good motive' cannot negative that.[186] If the offence is directed at a public official, what is proscribed is an agreement between two or more persons 'by dishonesty' to cause the official to act contrary to his or her public duty. There seem to be few prosecutions for conspiracy to defraud directed at public officials.[187] The controversies mainly concern the first form of the offence.

It is, in the first place, a crime of conspiracy. Conspiracy is one of the three inchoate offences in English criminal law, to be discussed in Chapter 11, but conspiracy may also be charged when the acts agreed upon have actually been committed. The definition of conspiracy to defraud is so wide that it criminalizes agreements to do things which, if done by an individual, would not amount to an offence. In its 1994 report the Law Commission accepted that in principle this is objectionable, but maintained that there are 'compelling' practical reasons for retaining the offence, at least until a general review of dishonesty offences is completed.[188] In its final 2002 report, it criticized the offence for being 'so wide that it offers little guidance on the difference between fraudulent and lawful conduct', and recommended its abolition as part of the reforms that became the Fraud Act 2006.[189] However, the government declined to put forward a provision abolishing conspiracy to defraud, taking the view that prosecutors needed to have time to determine whether the Fraud Act offences would cover all the types of case or whether some lacunae would exist.[190] The matter is therefore to be reviewed in a few years, and in the meantime prosecutors will continue to enjoy the advantages of rolling together a number of instances into a single charge of conspiracy to defraud, within the guidance laid down by the Attorney General.[191] In the extradition case of *Norris* v *United States of America* (2008)[192] the House of Lords emphasized the importance of the certainty requirement under human rights law and held that there was no authority for regarding price-fixing as constituting conspiracy to defraud. There remains a strong argument that the offence is too uncertain to satisfy the requirements of the Convention, an argument accepted by both the Law Commission[193] and the Joint Committee on Human Rights.[194] The government disagrees, and a challenge has yet to be made (necessarily, in a case where the conduct alleged would not amount to conspiracy to commit an existing offence).

(p. 412) 9.10 Dishonesty, discretion, and 'desert'

There is a wide range of issues of principle raised by the approach of the legislature and the

courts to offences of dishonesty. The most obvious of these is the Government's refusal to accept that the offence of conspiracy to defraud fails to measure up to the principle of legal certainty, and the strong suspicion that the ubiquitous requirement of 'dishonesty' is also lacking in certainty. Apart from the three exceptions in s. 2 of the 1968 Act, which apply only to offences of theft, the meaning of 'dishonesty' is left at large, with only the 'ordinary standards of reasonable and honest people' to steer the jury or magistrates towards a conclusion. This ample discretion—which is what it amounts to, since there is no touchstone of social honesty—opens the way to retrospective standard-setting (which derogates from the rule of law because D did not have an opportunity to adjust his conduct to the standard), to inconsistent decisions (which amount to arbitrariness that detracts from the rule of law), and to discriminatory decisions (which detract from equality before the law). No doubt, prosecutors and some judges regard flexibility as a great virtue in the law, but it runs counter to any principles which regard Art. 7 and the principle of legality and respect for individual autonomy as central values.[195] As the Law Commission now accepts, following the Human Rights Act, efforts must be made to redefine at least some of the property offences in a way which cuts down or structures this wide discretion. It is a great irony that the CLRC, in the report that preceded and proposed the Theft Act, purported to recognize 'the principle of English law to give reasonable guidance as to what kinds of conduct are criminal'.[196]

The definitions of some of the offences under the Theft Act are notable for their breadth. Theft and robbery cover wide areas of minor and major wrongdoing, without differentiation in the label. Some offences spill over into areas normally occupied by inchoate offences or by law of complicity. The inchoate mode of definition is used with regard to burglary contrary to s. 9(1)(a), 'entering as a trespasser with intent to steal', and—more significantly—it is adopted for the crime of theft itself: the main conduct element is an 'appropriation', which may be fulfilled by any assumption of the right of an owner, even if it is with the owner's consent.[197] One consequence is to push back the crime of attempted theft even further, so that in *Morris* [198] theft was constituted by swapping labels on goods in the supermarket, and attempted theft would presumably be committed by such acts as trying to peel off the labels prior to swapping them. This presses criminal liability too far. The Fraud Act 2006 accentuates this tendency, since its main offences are phrased in an inchoate mode. Another example is provided by the offence of handling, for which the legislature has cast the net so wide (assisting in, or arranging to assist in, the retention, removal, disposal, or realization of stolen goods) **(p. 413)** as to cover conduct which would normally be charged as aiding and abetting, etc.[199] Again, one consequence of this is that the law of complicity applies so as to extend the boundaries of the wide offence of handling still further. Just as attempted theft might be termed a doubly inchoate offence, so aiding and abetting an offence of handling stolen goods might be called a doubly secondary offence.

Thus the flexibility of the 'broad band' approach to definitions in the Theft Act 1968, together with the anomalous contours of criminalization, has meant that the outer boundaries of the law (and particularly the lower boundaries) are uncertain and shifting. One consequence of *Gomez* [200] combined with *Hinks* [201] is that the focus of the law of theft has been moved from the misappropriation of others' property towards the punishment of dishonesty. This has caused a great deal of fuss from those who hold that the criminal law should not punish unless there is also a civil wrong, a point that might also be argued against the present definition of blackmail, whereas the stronger objections to the effects of *Hinks* on the law of theft are the deficit in fair warning that comes from reliance on the term 'dishonesty', a contestable concept

that invites variable social and moral judgments and is insufficient to guide citizens in the regulation of their conduct.[202]

The legislative and judicial development of dishonesty offences charted in this chapter shows little attachment to a policy of minimum criminalization, and indicates ready resort to the criminal sanction as 'social defence' against relatively minor forms of dishonesty.[203] The Fraud Act may be a much-needed modernization of the law, but it is also a significant extension of the ambit of the criminal law. No efforts have been made to remove many of the lesser appropriations, frauds, and handlings from the criminal law. The problem appears to be that it is hard to find a workable distinction between these minor forms of dishonesty and dishonest appropriations of property which are quite serious. English law has no provision equivalent to the *de minimis* section of the Model Penal Code, allowing a defence where the conduct was not serious enough to warrant conviction.[204] There is a provision in the *Code for Crown Prosecutors in England* which states that it is not in the public interest to bring a prosecution where only a nominal penalty would be likely;[205] but that consigns the matter to discretion once more, leaving the boundaries of the criminal law in a distinctly uncertain state. The point is strengthened by the presence of civil remedies for many acts of dishonesty concerning property. One approach is to regard the value of the appropriated goods or services as the crucial element, and to place all cases below a certain sum into a separate category—cancellation of the offence if the taker repays what was taken within seven days, for example, as in the French bad-cheque law,[206] or a new category of civil **(p. 414)** infractions.[207] English law has now quietly taken the momentous step of empowering the police to issue a Penalty Notice for Disorder (NPD) in respect of any retail theft under £200, although the expectation is that thefts of £100 or over will only exceptionally be dealt with by a PND. This echoes a radical proposal made twenty years ago,[208] and may be seen as a small step towards recognizing the minor nature of many shop thefts.[209]

Of course, there are possible objections against each of these alternatives, not least the claim that offences of dishonesty have a significance in one's judgment of people which transcends the sum involved. But this is where we meet serious problems of proportionality and of social ambiguity or hypocrisy.[210] Many forms of conduct amounting to dishonesty offences are routinely dealt with in some non-criminal manner—large companies required to repay money on government contracts, for example, executives dismissed from employment, tax fraudsters required to pay double the underpaid tax rather than being prosecuted, and so forth. A Law Commission Working Paper argued that there is no need to criminalize those who deliberately use another person's profit-earning property in order to make secret profits, since it is generally adequate to leave the owner to sue the malefactor; yet restaurant bilkers who make off without paying a few pounds are routinely subjected to the criminal sanction.[211] Moreover, as argued above, there are few social standards of dishonesty which do not vary according to the background and circumstances of the group of citizens who are making the judgment. The argument is clearly one of social fairness: the present legal definitions are so broad that they give no clear steer on how the law should be enforced, leaving a large discretion that the police and prosecutors tend to exercise on 'conventional' assumptions. As a result, enforcement practices fail to ensure equality before the law, by subjecting many minor offenders to conviction whilst adopting a different approach to some who dishonestly cause large losses to others.

There are, then, at least five conflicting principles in dishonesty offences. The principle of

proportionality militates in favour of a more clearly structured restatement of these offences so as to integrate crimes from the Companies Acts and elsewhere into the general framework and emphasize their seriousness. The principle of maximum certainty urges that such a restatement should be less reliant on such broad terms as 'dishonesty', which affords insufficient guidance to citizens. The principle of fair labelling would suggest that the offence of robbery is far too wide and should be subdivided, and indeed that the offence of theft (subdivided in several other European (p. 415) countries) should also reflect the difference between a small taking and a substantial theft. The principle of minimum criminalization argues in favour of a reconstruction of these offences (including the new fraud offences) so as to exclude some minor forms of dishonesty and to include some major ones. On the other hand, the same principle would support the exploration of non-criminal means of dealing with some forms of dishonesty: this has been the pattern for many years, but it has generally meant that companies and well-connected persons have succeeded in avoiding the criminal sanction, when others of lowlier status have been convicted. This goes against the principle of equality before the law, since it discriminates on grounds of wealth and social position. Some propose to resolve this conflict by maintaining non-criminal means of dealing with commercial fraud, since these can be more effective,[212] whilst redoubling efforts to narrow down the ambit of the criminal sanction for minor forms of dishonesty. Unfortunately, the present tendency is towards the former but not the latter.[213]

Further Reading

A. T. H. SMITH, *Property Offences* (1994).

D. ORMEROD and D. H. WILLIAMS, *Smith's Law of Theft* (9th edn., 2007).

S. P. GREEN, *Lying, Cheating and Stealing: a Moral Theory of White-Collar Crime* (2006).

Notes:

[1] For discussion see A. T. H. Smith, *Property Offences* (1994), 1–17.

[2] Although, as we will see, the 2006 Act includes, alongside conduct with a dishonest acquisitive intent, dishonest conduct that risks loss to another, but that is not a point of great importance at this stage.

[3] See e.g. E. H. Sutherland, *White Collar Crime* (1949); M. Levi, *Regulating Fraud: White Collar Crime and the Criminal Process* (1987); H. Croall, *White Collar Crime* (1992); D. Nelken, 'White-Collar Crime', in M. Maguire, R. Morgan, and R. Reiner (eds), *The Oxford Handbook of Criminology* (5th edn., 2012); S. P. Green, *Lying, Cheating and Stealing: a Moral Theory of White-Collar Crime* (2006).

[4] See Law Com No. 177, cll. 139–77, which cover only the offences under the Theft Act and forgery.

[5] Section 26(1) of the Criminal Justice Act 1991 reduced the maximum for theft from ten to seven years.

[6] ⟨www.sfo.gov.uk⟩.

[7] ⟨www.nfib.police.uk/⟩.

[8] See e.g. J. W. Harris, *Property and Justice* (1996).

[9] A. P. Simester and G. R. Sullivan, 'The Nature and Rationale of Property Offences', in R. A. Duff and S. P. Green (eds), *Defining Crimes* (2005), 172.

[10] See Levi, *Regulating Fraud*, and 'Suite Revenge' (2009) 49 B J Crim 1.

[11] See ⟨www.sfo.gov.uk⟩.

[12] See the examples given in Chapter 3.5(i) and (k).

[13] The classic study is that of A. T. H. Smith on *Property Offences* (see n 1); substantially more up to date is *Smith's Law of Theft* (9th edn., 2007, by D. Ormerod and D. H. Williams).

[14] See Green, *Lying, Cheating and Stealing*, ch 6.

[15] [1972] AC 626.

[16] See especially G. Williams, 'Theft, Consent and Illegality' [1977] Crim LR 127.

[17] [1984] AC 320.

[18] [1993] AC 442; for analysis of this and other decisions, see A. Halpin, *Definition in the Criminal Law* (2004), 166–86.

[19] [1984] AC 320, *per* Lord Roskill at 332.

[20] The Court of Appeal in *Gallasso* (1994) 98 Cr App R 284 held that there is only an appropriation if there is a 'taking', but this goes against the preponderance of authority: see *Smith's Law of Theft*, 26–7.

[21] [1997] 2 Cr App R 518.

[22] [1997] 2 Cr App R 524.

[23] [2001] 2 AC 241.

[24] *Hinks* was followed by the Privy Council in *Wheatley* v *Commissioner of Police of the British Virgin Islands* [2006] 1 WLR 1683.

[25] E.g. J. C. Smith in [2001] Crim LR 162; J. Beatson and A. P. Simester in (1999) 115 LQR 372.

[26] S. Gardner, 'Property and Theft' [1998] Crim LR 35, at 42.

[27] S. Shute, 'Appropriation and the Law of Theft' [2002] Crim LR 445.

[28] See the carefully argued article by A. Bogg and J. Stanton-Ife, 'Protecting the Vulnerable: Legality, Harm and Theft' (2003) 23 Legal Studies 402.

[29] *Hale* (1979) 68 Cr App R 415 (section 9.3); *Atakpu and Abrahams* (1994) 98 Cr App R 254;

Smith's Law of Theft, 51–2.

[30] Section 79(2) Sexual Offences Act 2003, discussed in Chapter 8.5(a).

[31] R. Heaton, 'Deceiving without Thieving?' [2001] Crim LR 712; cf. now the Fraud Act 2006, section 9.8.

[32] *Edwards* v *Ddin* (1976) 63 Cr App R 218, *Corcoran* v *Whent* [1977] Crim LR 52.

[33] [1984] AC 320.

[34] (1988) 86 Cr App R 303.

[35] See the criticism by A. T. H. Smith, *Property Offences*, 162.

[36] (1977) 65 Cr App R 45.

[37] [2004] 1 Cr App R 34.

[38] See Chapter 9.8.

[39] [1993] AC 442.

[40] See E. Melissaris, 'The Concept of Appropriation and the Offence of Theft' (2007) 70 MLR 581, although somewhat reliant on *Gallasso* (reference at n 22).

[41] Cf. *Kaur* v *Chief Constable of Hampshire* [1981] 1 WLR 578.

[42] Cf. Heaton, 'Deceiving without Thieving', for a few contrary possibilities.

[43] CLRC, *Theft (General)* (1965), para. 38.

[44] S. Shute and J. Horder, 'Thieving and Deceiving: What is the Difference?' (1993) 56 MLR 548; C. M. V. Clarkson, 'Theft and Fair Labelling' (1993) 56 MLR 554.

[45] Cf. the lesser offence of making off without payment, mentioned in section 9.8(f).

[46] See Green, *Lying, Cheating and Stealing*, 243–5.

[47] Shute, 'Appropriation and the Law of Theft', 452–3.

[48] M. Giles and S. Uglow, 'Appropriation and Manifest Criminality in Theft' (1992) 56 J Crim Law 179, adapting G. Fletcher, *Rethinking Criminal Law* (1978).

[49] P. R. Glazebrook, 'Revising the Theft Acts' [1993] Camb LJ 191.

[50] Glazebrook, 'Revising the Theft Acts', 192.

[51] For Glazebrook, however, it would be subject to the rider 'unless that consent is obtained by duress or by deceit, that is, tortiously'. This would perpetuate the overlap between theft and fraud, argued against in the text.

[52] See the arguments of S. Gardner and of Shute, discussed earlier.

[53] *Kohn* [1997] 2 Cr App R 445.

[54] See the discussion by A. T. H. Smith, *Property Offences*, 46–9.

[55] *Oxford* v *Moss* (1979) 68 Cr App R 183, and generally R. G. Hammond, 'Theft of Information' (1984) 100 LQR 252.

[56] [1988] AC 1063.

[57] M. Wasik, *Crime and the Computer* (1991); A. T. H. Smith, *Property Offences*, ch 11.

[58] See Chapter 3.5(k).

[59] *Smith* [2011] EWCA Crim 66.

[60] *Dyke and Munro* [2002] 1 Cr App R 30 (members of the public intended to part with their entire interest when putting money in a charity collecting box); see also *Wood* [2002] EWCA Crim 832 (D who takes property believing that it has been abandoned does not commit theft).

[61] Cf. *Sullivan and Ballion* [2002] Crim LR 758, where the commentary by J. C. Smith is more notable than the first instance decision reported.

[62] (1971) 55 Cr App R 336.

[63] *Bonner* (1970) 54 Cr App R 257.

[64] *Attorney-General's Reference (No. 2 of 1982)* [1984] QB 624, and *Philippou* (1989) 89 Cr App R 290.

[65] [1993] AC 442, particularly the speech of Lord Browne-Wilkinson.

[66] Cf. G. R. Sullivan, [1991] Crim LR 929, replying to D. W. Elliott, 'Directors' Thefts and Dishonesty' [1991] Crim LR 732.

[67] Companies Act 1989, s. 41.

[68] [1997] 2 Cr App R 445.

[69] For further discussion, see *Smith's Law of Theft*, 72.

[70] [1998] 2 Cr App R 282, discussed by J. C. Smith, 'Stealing Tickets' [1998] Crim LR 723.

[71] A provision that appears to have been overlooked when quashing the conviction in *Dyke and Munro* [2002] Crim LR 153 (n 60); as Sir John Smith pointed out in the commentary, the Attorney General has the right to enforce charitable trusts.

[72] [2000] Crim LR 411.

[73] *Hall* [1973] QB 126; *aliter* if the contract provides that the money must be held specifically for this purpose. Cf. *Breaks and Huggan* [1998] Crim LR 349.

[74] In most such cases a trust would be created, and s. 5(1) itself could be applied: cf. *Arnold* [1997] Crim LR 833. Cf. also the use of s. 5(3) in *Klineberg and Marsden* [1999] 1 Cr App R 427

to avoid problems arising from *Preddy* [1996] AC 815.

[75] *Attorney-General's Reference (No. 1 of 1985)* (1986) 83 Cr App R 70.

[76] *Attorney-General for Hong Kong* v *Reid* [1994] 1 AC 324, noted by Sir John Smith at (1994) 110 LQR 180.

[77] *Attorney-General's Reference (No. 1 of 1983)* [1985] QB 182; it is arguable whether s. 5(4) is needed to achieve this result after the civil case of *Chase Manhattan Bank NA* v *Israel-British Bank* [1981] ch 105.

[78] *Gilks* (1972) 56 Cr App R 734.

[79] See Chapter 5.5(b).

[80] A. T. H. Smith, *Property Offences*, 187.

[81] E.g. *Mitchell* [2008] EWCA Crim 850 (no theft committed).

[82] [1989] Crim LR 299.

[83] Adopting the words of Winn LJ in *Cockburn* (1968) 52 Cr App R 134.

[84] [1971] 2 QB 315; for analysis see K. Campbell, 'Conditional Intention' (1982) 2 *Legal Studies* 77.

[85] *Attorney-General's References (Nos. 1 and 2 of 1979)* [1980] QB 180, *Smith and Smith* [1986] Crim LR 166.

[86] See Chapter 11.3(c).

[87] *Smith's Law of Theft*, 120.

[88] See J. R. Spencer, 'The Metamorphosis of Section 6 of the Theft Act' [1977] Crim LR 653.

[89] [1996] 1 Cr App R 175, at 188.

[90] Cf. *Mitchell* [2008] EWCA Crim 850 (no theft because D always intended to, and did, abandon the car).

[91] [2008] Crim LR 995.

[92] [1994] Crim LR 297.

[93] [1985] QB 928.

[94] [1985] QB 836; in *Bagshaw* [1988] Crim LR 321, the Court of Appeal commented that this restrictive reading of s. 6(1) was *obiter*. The convictions in *Marshall* (n 70 and accompanying text) for re-selling London Underground tickets were upheld by the Court of Appeal purportedly by applying s. 6(1).

[95] See G. Williams, 'Temporary Appropriation Should Be Theft' [1981] Crim LR 129; A. T. H. Smith, *Property Offences*, 191; Law Com No. 228, *Conspiracy to Defraud* (1994), 32–4.

[96] See section 9.7(a).

[97] Section 2 does not apply to the term 'dishonesty' as used in other offences under the Theft Act such as false accounting and handling, nor to conspiracy to defraud.

[98] *Robinson* [1977] Crim LR 173.

[99] J. Horder, *Excusing Crime* (2004), 49; cf. the discussion of mistaken beliefs in Chapter 6.4 and 6.5.

[100] Horder, *Excusing Crime*, 49.

[101] [1973] QB 530.

[102] [1982] QB 1053.

[103] See K. Campbell, 'The Test of Dishonesty in *R* v *Ghosh*' [1984] CLJ 349.

[104] *Roberts* (1987) 84 Cr App R 117 and *Price* (1990) 90 Cr App R 409, criticized by A. Halpin, 'The Test for Dishonesty' [1996] Crim LR 283, at 289, 291–2.

[105] E. Griew, 'Dishonesty: The Objections to *Feely* and *Ghosh*' [1985] Crim LR 341; Halpin, *Definition in the Criminal Law*, 149–66.

[106] Criminal Law Revision Committee, 8th Report, *Theft and Related Offences* Cmnd 2977 (1966), para. 39.

[107] But strongly criticized in Australia: see e.g. *Salvo* [1980] VR 401.

[108] LCCP 155, *Fraud and Deception*, 7.49–53

[109] ⟨http://competitionpolicy.wordpress.com/2012/03/19/the-uk-cartel-offence-laying-the-dishonesty-requirement-to-rest/⟩ (Andreas Stephan), discussing the BIS 2012 Consultation Paper: ⟨www.bis.gov.uk/Consultations/competition-regime-for-growth⟩?

[110] For readings and commentary on this see N. Lacey, C. Wells, and O. Quick, *Reconstructing Criminal Law* (3rd edn., 2003), 328–45; J Braithwaite, *Inequality, Crime and Public Policy* (London: Routledge, 1979).

[111] In a bid to evade in future the potentially heavy penalties, and great stigma, of a conviction under the Fraud Act 2006, Parliament created a much more minor offence to address corrupt and fraudulent practices by MPs when dealing with their expense claims: 'providing false or misleading information for allowances claims', an offence punishable by up to one year's imprisonment (and a fine), contrary to the Parliamentary Standards Act 2009, s. 10. Such conduct almost certainly amounts to an attempt to commit fraud contrary to the 2006 Act.

[112] R. Tur, 'Dishonesty and Jury Questions', in A. Phillips Griffiths (ed.), *Philosophy and Practice* (1985).

[113] See Chapter 3.5(i) and (j), and Shute, 'Appropriation and the Law of Theft' [2002] Crim LR at 452–3.

[114] *Hashman and Harrup* v *United Kingdom* (2000) 30 EHRR 241.

[115] *Hashman and Harrup* v *United Kingdom* (2000) 30 EHRR 241, para. 39.

[116] See further Bogg and Stanton-Ife, 'Protecting the Vulnerable', 407–14.

[117] D. W. Elliott, 'Dishonesty in Theft: A Dispensable Concept' [1982] Crim LR 395, adapting the words of McGarvie J in the Australian case of *Bonollo* [1981] VR 633, at 656.

[118] Glazebrook, 'Revising the Theft Acts' [1993] Camb LJ 191.

[119] See n 96 and accompanying text.

[120] Halpin, 'The Test for Dishonesty', 294.

[121] C. Kershaw et al., *Crime in England and Wales 2007/08*, 49; J Flatley et al., Crime in England and Wales, 2009–10, *Findings from the British Crime Survey and Police Recorded Crime* (2010), 32.

[122] *Thomas et al* [2012] 1 Cr App R (S) 252.

[123] See Sentencing Guidelines Council, *Robbery: Definitive Guideline* (2006).

[124] Home Office Press Release 25 June 2007.

[125] For further analysis see A. Ashworth, 'Robbery Reassessed' [2002] Crim LR 851. Kershaw et al., *Crime in England and Wales 2007/08* report a detection rate of 20 per cent for robbery in 2007/08.

[126] *Mitchell* [2008] EWCA Crim 850; see section 9.2(d).

[127] *Robinson* [1977] Crim LR 173; cf. *Forrester* [1992] Crim LR 792.

[128] *Hale* (1979) 68 Cr App R 415, n 29 and accompanying text.

[129] (1979) 68 Cr App R 415.

[130] (1976) 64 Cr App R 150.

[131] [1987] Crim LR 56; the decision also goes directly against the Criminal Law Revision Committee's view (8th Report (1966), para. 65), that 'we should not regard mere snatching of property, such as a handbag, from an unresisting owner as using force for the purpose of the definition, though it might be so if the owner resisted'.

[132] Simester and Sullivan, 'Nature and Rationale of Property Offences', 194; Green, *Lying, Cheating and Stealing*, ch 17.

[133] *Gnosil* (1824) 1 C & P 304; *Harman's Case* (1620) 2 Roll Rep 154, dicussed by Ormerod in *Smith and Hogan's Criminal Law* (13th edn., 2011), 846.

[134] Ashworth, 'Robbery Reassessed', at 855–7.

[135] See the symposium of articles on blackmail in (1993) 141 U Pa L R 1565–989.

[136] See Chapter 8.3(e).

[137] *Thorne* v *Motor Trade Association* [1937] AC 797.

[138] In s. 34(2) of the Theft Act 1968.

[139] *Bevans* (1988) 87 Cr App R 64.

[140] Simester and Sullivan, 'Nature and Rationale of Property Offences', 188.

[141] J Flatley et al., Crime in England and Wales, 2009-10, *Findings from the British Crime Survey and Police Recorded Crime* (2010), Table 2.04.

[142] See Ormerod in *Smith and Hogan's Criminal Law* (13th edn., 2011), 942, citing M. Griffiths, 'Internet Corporate Blackmail: A Growing Problem' (2004) 168 JP 632.

[143] For deeper discussion see G. Lamond, 'Coercion, Threats and the Puzzle of Blackmail', in A. P. Simester and A. T. H. Smith (eds), *Harm and Culpability* (1996).

[144] P. Alldridge, '"Attempted Murder of the Soul": Blackmail, Privacy and Secrets' (1993) 13 OJLS 368; see the case of *Davies* [2004] 1 Cr App R (S) 209.

[145] *Courtie* [1984] AC 463.

[146] M. Maguire and T. Bennett, *Burglary in a Dwelling* (1982), 164.

[147] *Brown* [1985] Crim LR 611.

[148] *Horncastle* [2006] EWCA Crim 1736.

[149] *Walkington* (1979) 68 Cr App R 427.

[150] [1973] QB 100.

[151] (1976) 63 Cr App R 47.

[152] See Maguire and Bennett, *Burglary in a Dwelling*, ch 5.

[153] See the sentencing guidelines in Sentencing Council, *Burglary Offences* (2012).

[154] See *Smith's Law of Theft*, 263, arguing that D might fall outside the section if his intention was only to steal a specific item if, on examination, it had certain characteristics.

[155] *Kelly* (1992) 97 Cr App R 245.

[156] There were formerly four offences specified by s. 9(1)(a), the intent to rape being the fourth. This has now been repealed and replaced by s. 63 of the Sexual Offences Act 2003, which penalizes trespass with intent to commit a sexual offence, with a maximum sentence of ten years.

[157] Law Com No. 177, cll. 187–96.

[158] E.g. *Battams* (1979) 1 Cr App R (S) 15.

[159] See C. B. Klockars, *The Professional Fence* (1975), and Maguire and Bennett, *Burglary in a Dwelling*, 70–5. For sentencing guidelines on handling, see *Webbe* [2002] 1 Cr App R (S) 82.

[160] For an example see *Attorney-General's Reference (No. 1 of 1974)* [1974] QB 744.

[161] Discussed in Chapter 5.5(d).

[162] Cf. *Grainge* [1974] 1 WLR 619 with *Brook* [1993] Crim LR 455. See further S. Shute, 'Knowledge and Belief in the Criminal Law', in S. Shute and A. P. Simester (eds), *Criminal Law Theory: Doctrines of the General Part* (2002), at 172–6.

[163] [1983] 1 AC 109, responding to the promptings of J. R. Spencer, 'The Mishandling of Handling' [1981] Crim LR 682.

[164] Section 3(1) and (2) of the Theft Act; see further *Smith's Law of Theft*, 373–4.

[165] CLRC, 8th Report (1966), para. 127.

[166] For full analysis, see *Mitchell, Taylor and Talbot on Confiscation and the Proceeds of Crime* (3rd edn., 2002) for a critical appraisal of the policy, see P. Alldridge, *Money Laundering Law* (2003), esp. chs 3 and 9.

[167] Alldridge, *Money Laundering Law*, 64–9.

[168] Cf. the conflicting CA decisions in *Craig* [2007] EWCA Crim 2913 and *NW et al* [2008] 3 All ER 533.

[169] See *Mavji* (1987) 84 Cr App R 34, *Redford* (1989) 89 Cr App R 1, and the thorough study by D. Ormerod, 'Cheating the Public Revenue' [1998] Crim LR 627, who argues that the offence should be abolished.

[170] See the 5th edn. of this work, at 397–401.

[171] For fuller analysis, see D. Ormerod, 'The Fraud Act 2006—Criminalising Lying?' [2007] Crim LR 193, and *Smith's Law of Theft* (9th edn., 2007), ch 3.

[172] In *Idress* [2011] EWHC 624 (Admin), D persuaded X to sit his (D's) driving test by representing that he (X) was D. D's conviction under s. 2 was upheld. The case illustrates that 'gain' and 'loss' need not involve financial gain (s. 5(2)(a)), but extend to other property, presumably here including a driving licence.

[173] *Gilmartin* (1983) 76 Cr App R 238.

[174] See the discussion of theft in section 2(e) of this chapter.

[175] This is admittedly a re-formulation of the dishonesty requirement, but it points to the element of uncertainty in the definition and to how it might be resolved. Cf. the discussion of whether the 'definition' of dishonesty complies with the 'quality of law' test in the Convention, 9.10.

[176] An example would be a failure to disclose previous convictions when applying for a job. See *Daley* [2010] EWCA Crim 2193.

[177] Law Com No. 276, *Fraud* (2002), paras. 7.28–9.

[178] Chapter 7.5(b).

[179] See on this point, *Marshall* [2009] EWCA Crim 2076. Se further, *Smith's Law of Theft*, 170–3. Cases like *Hinks* [2001] 2 AC 241 (discussed in 9.2(a)) would fall clearly within the new offence. Cf. the extensive definition of 'positions of trust' in the Sexual Offences Act 2003, ss. 21–2.

[180] How would this apply to the facts of *Silverman* (1988) 86 Cr App R 213, where D had done building work for V and her family for many years and D, on request, gave V a quotation for building work that was excessively high? V undoubtedly trusted D. Did D 'occupy a position' in which he was expected not to act against her financial interests? Does actual or reasonable reliance create such a position or expectation?

[181] Bribery Act 2010, s. 1(2).

[182] See further, Law Commission, *Reforming Bribery* (Report No 313, 2008), paras. 3.126–32. In this kind of example, depending on how much they know, the lover or friend could be complicit in the fraud offence committed by D, or found guilty of the inchoate offence of assisting or encouraging the commission of the fraud when they accept the offer.

[183] *Smith's Law of Theft*, 178.

[184] Most such cases will amount to an offender under s. 2, since there will be an implied false representation and an intent to cause loss or the risk of loss.

[185] [1975] AC 819.

[186] *Wai Yu-tsang* [1992] 1 AC 269.

[187] Cf. *Moses* [1991] Crim LR 617.

[188] Law Com No. 228, *Conspiracy to Defraud*, summarized at [1995] Crim LR 97 and discussed by Sir John Smith at [1995] Crim LR 209.

[189] Law Com No. 276, *Fraud* (2002), para. 1.6.

[190] See *Smith's Law of Theft*, 219–25, for an examination of the arguments.

[191] Attorney General, *Guidance on the Use of the Common Law Offence of Conspiracy to Defraud* (2007).

[192] [2008] UKHL 16.

[193] Law Com No. 276, para. 5.28.

[194] Joint Committee on Human Rights, *Legislative Scrutiny: Fourteeenth Progress Report* (2006).

[195] See the fairness principles discussed in Chapter 3.4.

[196] CLRC, 8th Report (1966), para. 99(i).

[197] See section 9.1(a), discussing *Gomez*.

[198] [1984] AC 320.

[199] See section 9.9.

[200] [1993] AC 442.

[201] [2001] 2 AC 241.

[202] See section 9.2(e), and cf. the further discussion by Bogg and Stanton-Ife, 'Protecting the Vulnerable', with Ormerod, 'Cheating the Public Revenue', 635–41, on the problems of 'dishonesty' in fraud offences.

[203] Cf. Chapter 3.2(b) with Chapter 3.2(a).

[204] Model Penal Code, s. 212.

[205] *Code for Crown Prosecutors* (5th edn., 2004), para. 5.10(a).

[206] For an outline see C. Anyangwe, 'Dealing with the Problem of Bad Cheques in France' [1978] Crim LR 31.

[207] See the discussion by B. Huber, 'The Dilemma of Decriminalization: Dealing with Shoplifting in West Germany' [1980] Crim LR 621.

[208] See A. Ashworth, 'Prosecution, Police and the Public: A Guide to Good Gate Keeping' (1984) 23 Howard JCJ 621.

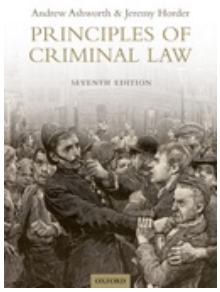
[209] There may be disadvantages of such measures, in terms of police power and the treatment of very poor offenders: see A. Ashworth and M. Redmayne, *The Criminal Process* (4th edn., 2010), ch 6.

[210] See the sources drawn together by Lacey, Wells, and Quick, *Reconstructing Criminal Law*, 328–45.

[211] Pointed out by A. T. H. Smith, 'Conspiracy to Defraud' [1988] Crim LR 508, at 513, commenting on the Law Com. Working Paper No. 104.

[212] Cf. J. Braithwaite and B. Fisse, 'The Allocation of Responsibility for Corporate Crime' (1988) 11 Sydney LR 468, with Levi, *Regulating Fraud*.

[213] Royal Commission on Criminal Justice, *Report*, Cm 2263 (1993), para. 7.63; Serious Fraud Office, *Annual Report 1993–94* (1994).



Principles of Criminal Law (7th edn)

Andrew Ashworth and Jeremy Horder

Publisher: Oxford University Press
Print ISBN-13: 9780199672684
DOI: 10.1093/he/9780199672684.001.0001

Print Publication Date: May 2013
Published online: Sep 2013

10. Complicity

Chapter: (p. 416) 10. Complicity
Author(s): Andrew Ashworth and Jeremy Horder
DOI: 10.1093/he/9780199672684.003.0010

10.1 Introduction
10.2 Distinguishing principals from accessories
10.3 The conduct element in complicity
10.4 The fault element in complicity
10.5 Joint ventures and accessorial liability for different results
10.6 Derivative liability and the missing link
10.7 Special defences to complicity
10.8 Conclusions
Further reading

10.1 Introduction[1]

The question of complicity may arise when two or more people play some part in the commission of an offence. It has already been noted, in discussing the various public order

offences,[2] and will be emphasized later, when discussing conspiracy,[3] that the criminal law regards offences involving more than one person as thereby enhanced in seriousness. Joint criminal activity often involves planning and a mutually reinforcing determination to offend. The fact that any activity is known by the participants to be group activity will—even when it is spontaneously undertaken—usually may make it difficult for an individual to withdraw for fear of letting the others down and losing face. When, more specifically, people act as a group in committing crime, their offending may escalate in nature or broaden in scope as a feature of group dynamics.[4] Having said that, there are, of course, different degrees of involvement in a criminal enterprise. For example, someone (X) may not as such be part of a joint criminal enterprise involving A, B, and C, but may agree in exchange for payment to provide A, B, and C with some goods or services known by X to be a part of A, B, and C's plans for the commission of the crime. In this case, X is not part of the group committed to the joint criminal venture him or herself, but may still be treated in law as an accessory to the **(p. 417)** crime if it is committed by A, B, and C.[5] More remotely, Y—a bystander—may see the crime in progress as it is committed by A, B, and C, but do nothing to assist the police when they try to arrest A, B, and C, perhaps jeering instead at the officers' efforts. Is Y's reprehensible conduct enough to make him or her complicit in the offence? One of the main issues in the law of complicity is the proper scope of criminal liability: how much involvement should be necessary, as a minimum, if someone is to be regarded as complicit in a crime committed by another person?

Let us take a hypothetical example of a burglary, in which A plans the theft of certain valuable articles from a country house. He talks to B and C, who agree to carry out the burglary for him. They approach D, who has worked at the house, for information which will help them to gain entry. They arrange for E to drive them to the house in a large van and to transport the stolen goods after the burglary; and they agree with F that he should come and position himself near the main gates of the house in order to warn them if anyone approaches. If A, B, C, D, E, and F all do as planned, what should be the extent of their criminal liability? As we will see, the law treats them all as guilty of burglary, irrespective of the differences between their contributions to the offence.

It is apparent that B and C are the only ones to have fulfilled the definition of the crime of burglary, by entering the house as trespassers and stealing property from it.[6] They are guilty as what the law calls 'principal' offenders. It should then be asked whether there is sufficient justification for bringing A, D, E, and F within the ambit of the criminal law at all. Would the law not be more effective if it concentrated on the principal offenders? The main difficulty in answering this question is that, in some crimes, the conduct of the accomplices may be no less serious or significant than that of the principals. Here, A is the 'mastermind' behind the offence and, although B and C freely accept his invitation to become involved, A's planning is a decisive factor. In effect, the joint criminal enterprise involves A, B, and C together. At a different level level, D, E, and even F are knowingly involved in advancing the criminal endeavour agreed on by A, B, and C. They have voluntarily lent their support to the offence: the culpability resides in the decision to support the commission of the crime agreed on by A, B, and C, and the role they accept in the crime is a practical manifestation of that support.

Further, with joint criminal activity, such as that engaged in by A, B, and C, (assisted by D, E, and F) in the example just given, the culpability question is not just about measuring each participant's personal contribution to the enterprise on **(p. 418)** its own; that would be too individualistic. There is a sense in which the wrongdoing as a whole is greater than the sum of

the parts, morally and hence legally. An extra element of culpability comes from the fact that, however small an individual's own practical contribution may have been (it may have been no more than an agreement and intention to take part, with no action to follow this up), he or she knew as a matter of common sense that, by joining in or assisting or encouraging a larger scheme of activity, that contribution played a part in constituting or sustaining the larger scheme itself. For example:

> P asks D to provide him with a copy of a stolen key that P says is the key to a family home. D—who knows P well—agrees in exchange for payment, realizing that P must be intending to enter the house as a trespasser with intent either to rape or to steal. P subsequently uses the copied key to enter to house and commit rape.

In this example, D may be convicted of rape, along with P. Most importantly, it will not be legally relevant that D says, 'although I must take some blame for helping P to commit an offence, I am not tainted by the fact that the offence was a sexual offence because I would have helped P whether the offence was rape or theft; I was personally indifferent to which it would be'. In the eye of the law, this claim cannot prevent D being rightly labelled a sex offender. From the moment that D realizes that a rape is one of the offences that P will commit in the house, yet nonetheless assists P, D's conduct in providing the copy of the key is regarded as so tainted by the sexual nature of the offending that it assisted that D is regarded as justifiably convicted of rape itself, and not just of an inchoate offence such as assisting rape. Whether that goes too far, and the 'taint' argument should be confined to the principal(s) or to those engaged in a joint enterprise, is one of the key controversies in this area of law.[7]

There are, broadly speaking, three forms of participating in crime:

> *First*, as a principal;
>
> *Secondly*, as an accomplice who (in the language of the Accessories and Abbetors Act 1861) 'aids, abets, counsels or procures' the offence, or who is liable as a participant in a joint venture with the principal(s); and
>
> *Thirdly*, as someone who becomes involved in assisting the offenders only after the crime has been committed (without having agreed to this beforehand), as by helping to conceal its commission.

We will be concerned only with the first two of these modes of complicity, because they involve participation in the offence committed by the principal or principals (including the case where someone agrees *beforehand* to assist after the commission of the crime, as by concealing weapons used). We will not be concerned with those who, without any prior involvement, assist only *after* the crime has occurred, an example **(p. 419)** being where P, having committed a crime, then confesses it to his unsuspecting parents who then decide to help him to try to conceal his involvement.[8]

It also needs to be kept in mind that the rules and principles of complicity are supported by a

set of inchoate offences created by the Serious Crimes Act 2007: in particular, offences of assisting or encouraging the commission of an offence, contrary to one of the offences created by ss. 44 to 46 of the 2007 Act. Discussion of the offences under the 2007 Act is postponed to Chapter 11.7, since they are essentially inchoate offences. In other words, D can be found guilty of assisting or encouraging an offender under the 2007 Act even though the offence itself never takes place, as where D provides P with a weapon to commit a murder, but P changes her mind or dies before committing the offence. In this example, there is no substantive offence committed by P in which D can be complicit, but D may be guilty of the inchoate offence of 'assisting murder' under the 2007 Act. However, it will be apparent that those offences overlap considerably with the forms of complicity,[9] and reference to the interaction of the two sources of liability will be made throughout this chapter.

10.2 Distinguishing principals from accessories

The simplest way of drawing this distinction is to say that a principal is a person whose acts fall within the legal definition of the crime, whereas an accomplice (sometimes called an 'accessory' or 'secondary party') is anyone who aids, abets, counsels, or procures a principal. It does not follow from this that where two or more persons are involved in an offence, one must be the principal and the others accomplices. As indicated in the last section, two or more persons can be co-principals, so long as together they satisfy the definition of the substantive offence and each of them engaged in some part of the external element of the offence with the required fault. Indeed, English law goes further, holding that two or more persons can be co-principals if each of them by his own act contributes to the causation of the external element of the offence, if all their acts together fulfil all the conduct elements, and if each of them has the required mental element:[10]

> D1 and D2 have planned to rob V. D1 holds V's arms, forcing V to drop her purse, and D2 picks up the purse before they both make their escape.

(p. 420) In this example, D1 and D2 are in fact co-principals even though it might superficially seem as if D1 simply helps D2 to commit the robbery. The conduct element of robbery is theft involving the use or threat of force before or at the time of the theft. That being so, D1 (with the fault element for robbery) engages in one part of the conduct element of robbery by using force against V, and D2 (also with the fault element for robbery) engages in a different part of the conduct element of robbery, namely the theft. So, they are co-principals. Had a third party to the robbery plan (D3) been involved solely as a look-out, then D3 would have been an accomplice. D3 might have had the fault element for robbery, but he or she would not have engaged in a part of the external or conduct element of robbery simply by keeping a look-out: that is, being an accomplice in a robbery, not perpetrating it, although D3 will also stand to be convicted of robbery along with D1 and D2.

Some criminal offences are so defined that they can only be committed by two or more co-principals. The public order offences of riot and violent disorder are clear examples of this.[11] There can also be accomplices to such offences, casting the net of criminal liability even wider so as to encompass those who encourage and intend to encourage the principals.[12]

Although English law maintains the distinction between principals and accessories, in practice the substantive criminal law almost always treats them in a similar way. The leading statute is the Accessories and Abettors Act 1861, which provides that anyone who 'shall aid, abet, counsel or procure the commission of any indictable offence … shall be liable to be tried, indicted and punished as a principal offender'. It is hard to over-estimate the significance of this provision, and it has been the source of a great deal of controversy (although common law jurisdictions have sometimes found it hard to manage without taking this approach[13]). For example, during the Apartheid era in South Africa, a provision that drew inspiration from the 1861 Act—s. 18 of the Riotous Assemblies Act 1956—was very broadly construed to impose criminal liability on leaders of dissident or protest organizations who had arranged political meetings at which offending was engaged in by one or more of those at the meetings.[14] As the wording of the 1861 Act indicates, accessories (those who aid, abet, counsel, or procure) are liable to be tried as punished *as principal offenders*. So, if D (the accessory) assists or encourages P (the principal) to commit murder, however minor D's assistance or encouragement, D is liable to be convicted of murder itself, along with P, and will accordingly also receive the mandatory life sentence (albeit, perhaps, with a slightly shorter initial period in prison than P). In cases other than murder, D will be convicted of the same crime and P and may receive up to and including the maximum penalty for the substantive offence. As we pointed out earlier, though, an accessory could be **(p. 421)** as much or more to blame than a principal offender. An example might be where D is P's tyrannical father, and threatens P with a beating unless P commits a crime, which P consequently does.

Of equal importance are the procedural consequences of the rule laid down in the 1861 Act. It means that the prosecution can obtain a conviction without specifying in advance whether the allegation is that D is a principal or an accomplice, or what form the alleged complicity took. This is because, whoever was in fact the accessory and who in fact the principal does not matter in terms of the offence for which they are tried: the 1861 Act says they can all be tried, convicted, and punished as principal offenders. This is undoubtedly a great convenience for the prosecution in certain types of case. Thus in *Giannetto* (1997),[15] the prosecution case, based on circumstantial evidence, was that G certainly either killed his wife or was an accomplice by virtue of hiring someone else to kill her; but there was insufficient evidence to show clearly which kind of involvement characterized G's role. The Court of Appeal upheld the conviction, holding that the jury 'were entitled to convict [of murder] if they were all satisfied that if he was not the killer he at least encouraged the killing'. The Court added that 'the defendant knows perfectly well what case he has to meet',[16] i.e. both those allegations.

Does this amount to adequate notice of the charge(s) to be met? While appellate courts have repeatedly encouraged prosecutors to frame indictments in as much detail as possible,[17] it is also clear that 'if the Crown nail their colours to a particular mast, their case will, generally, have to be established in the terms in which it is put'[18]—which creates a disincentive to framing the indictment in detail. Challenges to these rules of criminal law and procedure under the Human Rights Act, on the basis that the charge fails to satisfy the Art. 6(3)(a) requirement to inform a defendant 'in detail of the nature and cause of the allegation against him', have not met with success,[19] but there remains the point of principle whether defendants in such cases always receive fair warning.

The 1861 English statute is sometimes compared unfavourably with such systems as the German, which restricts the maximum penalty for an accomplice to three-quarters that of the

principal;[20] but the comparison is not a straightforward one. It is true that accomplices are normally less blameworthy than principals and therefore deserve less severe sentences. It is also true that a law which produces a conviction of murder and (p. 422) a sentence of life imprisonment for giving relatively minor assistance to a murderer is unjust (though the injustice stems as much from the mandatory penalty for murder as from the law of complicity). But systems like the German system seem not to provide for those, admittedly rare, cases in which the accomplice is no less culpable or even more culpable, than the principal, as indicated. One way of providing for all degrees of complicity would be to retain the legal power to impose any lawful sentence on the principal; to respect the accomplice's right not to be punished more severely than is proportionate to the gravity of his contribution by declaring a general guideline that accomplices should receive no more than half the sentence of the principal; and to permit courts to exceed this normal level in cases where the accomplice's role was unusually influential, and to sentence below it if the accomplice's contribution was minor. This more regulated approach to sentencing would be a significant step, at least for so long as English law fails to reflect the different degrees of involvement in crime by assigning different legal labels.

Finally, how does the law of complicity cope with cases where it can be proved that each of two defendants was at least an accomplice but cannot be proved which one was the principal? Where, in a case of a child's death caused by drugs, it can be shown that one or other parent administered methadone to their young child whilst one or the other stood by, it matters not that the prosecution cannot establish which parent administered it because the other parent must at least be an accomplice, having failed to intervene to save the child.[21] Having said that, if in such a situation it cannot be established that both parents were present throughout, it cannot be proved that both of them were at least accomplices, and the prosecution must fail.[22] To deal with this situation, as we saw earlier,[23] the Domestic Violence, Crime and Victims Act 2004 introduced a new offence of causing or allowing the death of a child or vulnerable adult, reinforced by inferences from silence, in an attempt to fill this gap.

10.3 The conduct element in complicity

We have seen that the 1861 Act refers to those who ‘aid, abet, counsel, or procure’ a crime. As a matter of history, it seems that this Act was intended only to declare the procedure whereby accomplices could be convicted and sentenced as principals, and not to provide a definition of complicity. Earlier statutes had used a wide range of terms—contriving, helping, maintaining, directing—and the wording of the 1861 Act was probably intended merely as a general reference to the existing common law on accomplices. However, the words have taken on an authority of their own. In 1976 the Court of Appeal declared that each of the four verbs should be given its ordinary meaning,[24] but, as we shall see, there are several decisions on the scope of the four (p. 423) terms. One factor that formerly had considerable importance was presence during the commission of the crime. So long as the other conditions for liability were fulfilled, presence turned the accomplice into an aider or abettor, absence into a counsellor or procurer.[25] However, it appears that the distinction no longer has any practical consequences in English law.[26] Whether an accomplice is described as an aider, abettor, counsellor, or procurer seems to depend partly on ordinary language and partly on specific judicial decisions.

(a) Aiding and abetting

It has been traditional to consider the modes of complicity in terms of the two time-honoured pairings: 'aid or abet', and 'counsel or procure'. In fact, the concept of abetment seems to play no independent role now. Abetting involves some encouragement of the principal to commit the offence and this usually accompanies, or is implicit in, an act of aiding. Aid may be given by supplying an instrument to the principal, keeping a look-out, doing preparatory acts, and many other forms of assistance given before or at the time of the offence. As long as it has been shown that the accomplice's conduct helped or might have helped the principal in some way, it does not have to be established that the accomplice caused the principal's offence. Causation requirements often function so as to fix the threshold of legal liability. However, one cannot, in general, trace causal responsibility through the voluntary and intentional act of another person[27]—so it will not usually be possible to hold that an accomplice *caused* the principal to act, save in a rather diluted form of 'causing'.[28] Sanford Kadish has argued that the law does require a form of causation: the courts must be satisfied that the accomplice's help *might* have made a difference to whether the principal's offence was actually committed, in the sense that one could not be sure that it would have been committed but for the accomplice's assistance.[29] However, it is not easy to reconcile all decisions with this approach.

Thus in *Wilcox* v *Jeffery* (1951) a jazz enthusiast attended a concert, applauding the decision of an American jazz musician to give an illegal performance. No point was taken in court about whether the musician was actually encouraged by the defendant's acts.[30] Indeed, in cases where several people applaud or encourage some kind of unlawful spectacle, it would be difficult to maintain that the performer(s) drew actual encouragement from the acts of any one of the spectators. In *Giannetto*[31] the Court of Appeal stated that 'any involvement from mere encouragement upwards would suffice', and did not dissent from the trial judge's suggestion that, if another man had said **(p. 424)** to D that he was about to kill D's wife, 'as little as patting him on the back, nodding and saying "Oh goody"' would be sufficient to turn D into an aider and abettor. This suggests that even at this late stage a small amount of encouragement, giving moral support to or showing solidarity with the principal, is thought to be sufficient for liability.

What if the principal is unaware of the help given by the secondary party? In the famous American case of *State* v *Tally* (1894),[32] Judge Tally, knowing that his brothers-in-law had set out to kill the deceased, and knowing that someone else had sent a telegram to warn the victim, sent a telegram to the telegraph operator telling him not to deliver the warning telegram. The telegraph operator complied, and the brothers-in-law committed the offence. The judge was convicted of aiding and abetting murder, even though the brothers-in-law were unaware of the judge's assistance when they killed the victim. There was a causal connection in this case, but no meeting of minds between D and P. The absence of the latter might raise a question over whether the judge's act should be sufficient for complicity, although, as we will see below, it amounts to the inchoate offence of encouraging or assisting an offence contrary to s. 44 of the Serious Crime Act 2007. However, as D1 can become complicit in D2's offence by simply agreeing that the offence will be committed (or where D1 and D2 share a common intention to commit the offence),[33] or by giving encouragement as part of a crowd, even though neither act assists or encourages D2 as such, it would be anomalous if D1's crucial act of knowing assistance was insufficient to make D1 complicit in D2's crime.

(b) Accomplice liability and social duties

We saw in Chapter 4.4 how accomplice liability has been used in English law to establish criminal liability for certain omissions, and the relevant authorities must now be considered in the context of complicity. The cases raise issues of constitutional and social importance, but the key question in accessorial liability is simple to state: can a person be convicted as an accomplice merely for standing by and doing nothing while an offence is being committed?

If mere presence at the scene during the principal's offence were sufficient for accomplice liability, this would amount to recognizing a citizen's duty either to leave straight away or to take reasonable steps to prevent or frustrate any offence which is witnessed. The courts have held that non-accidental presence, such as attending a fight or an unlawful theatrical performance, is not conclusive evidence of aiding and abetting.[34] At a minimum there must be an act of encouragement (accompanied by an intention to encourage, discussed in section 10.4). Some judgments suggest that it must be shown that encouragement was not just given but also had some effect on **(p. 425)** the principal,[35] but this has not usually been required. The factual questions are for the jury or magistrates. The requirement of an act of encouragement is not satisfied merely by going to the place where the performance is taking place, but payment and applause may suffice;[36] however, in one case it was held that remaining in a vehicle that was being used to obstruct the police, in circumstances showing that D supported the actions of the driver, might amount to aiding.[37] The position of spectators who happen upon an illegal fight or event and stay to watch it is similar: simply sitting or standing nearby is unlikely to be sufficient for liability, but any cheering or applause would probably tip the balance in favour of conviction. The problems are particularly acute in cases of public disorder. To impose duties on bystanders, even the duty to move away, might be regarded as an incursion on a citizen's right to freedom of assembly (declared in Art. 11 of the European Convention). What must be proved, to amount to aiding and abetting one of the offences in the Public Order Act, is that D was present, was giving encouragement, and was intending to encourage others to commit the specified offence.[38] Mere presence should not be sufficient, particularly in view of Art. 11.

Are there arguments in favour of the law going further and imposing a duty to take steps to prevent crime? The public disorder example may be complicated by the impotence of individuals to do anything to stop the disturbance and, indeed, the imprudence of their trying to do so. But is it not arguable that there should be at least a duty to alert the police? If so, should failure to do so constitute a distinct offence (as in French law[39]) or complicity in the public disorder? Another example, which does not involve public disorder, occurs where a woman is living with a man who she discovers is dealing in drugs. If the police raid the dwelling and find drugs on the premises, should the law treat her as an accomplice even if there is no evidence of active assistance or encouragement of the drug dealing? In the case of *Bland* (1988)[40] the Court of Appeal quashed the woman's conviction as an accomplice in such circumstances. Cases such as this demonstrate a vivid conflict between individuals' rights of privacy in their personal relationships and the social interest in suppressing serious crime. Would it be right for the law to co-opt husbands against wives, parents against children, house-sharing friends against friends in order to increase public protection?[41]

(p. 426) Probably the only way to answer this question is to balance the relative centrality of the right against the seriousness of the offence involved—not a simple exercise, but an

inevitable one if the true nature of the problem is to be confronted. The same applies to the situation in *Clarkson* (1971):[42] two soldiers happened to enter a room where other soldiers were raping a woman. It was not found that they did anything other than watch, but they certainly did nothing to discourage continuance of the offence. The Courts Martial Appeal Court quashed their convictions for aiding and abetting, because the judge had not made it clear that there should be proof of both an intent to encourage and actual encouragement. Nothing was said about a duty to alert the authorities immediately in the hope of preventing the crime's continuance. What if three persons came upon one man raping a woman? If it was within their power to put a stop to the offence and to apprehend the offender, should they have a duty to do so—or at least a duty to inform the police?[43] The practical possibilities will vary from case to case, but the real issue is whether there is to be a principle that citizens ought to take reasonable steps to inform the police when they witness an offence. The decision in *Allan* (1965)[44] is against this, emphasizing the requirement of encouragement and adding that, even if D would have joined in if necessary, it would be unacceptable 'to convict a man on his thoughts, unaccompanied by any physical act other than the facts of mere presence'. However, variations in the facts of cases could be accommodated by requiring the citizen only to take 'reasonable steps',[45] and no law should require a person to place his or her own safety in jeopardy. Even if this were accepted, there would remain the question whether it is fairer to convict the defaulting citizen of a new offence of failing to inform the police rather than making the citizen into an accomplice to the principal crime. The former is surely more appropriate in terms of fair labelling.

Can a person be said to aid an offence by an omission?[46] There would surely be no awkwardness in describing the cleaner of a bank who, in pursuance of an agreed plan, purposely omits to lock the doors when leaving as 'aiding' a burglary of the bank. In such a case, there is a clear duty and a failure to perform it, and the causation question is answered (in so far as it is relevant to aiding) in the same way as for omissions generally.[47] Another example would be the driving instructor who is supervising a learner driver and who realizes that the learner is about to undertake a manœuvre which is dangerous to other road users: if, as in *Rubie* v *Faulkner* (1940),[48] the instructor fails to intervene, either by telling the learner not to do it or by physically acting to prevent **(p. 427)** it, then this failure in the duty of supervision is rightly held to be sufficient to support liability for aiding and abetting the learner driver's offence.

From these cases of duty we turn to cases of legal power, and the so-called 'control principle'. The owner of a car who is a passenger when the car is being driven by another has the legal power to direct this other person not to drive in certain ways;[49] the licensee of a public house has the legal power to require customers to leave at closing-time;[50] the owners of a house have the legal power to direct the behaviour of their children and of visitors to their premises. In the first two cases the courts have held the car owner and the licensee liable as accomplices to the crime of the offender who drives carelessly or remains drinking after hours. What is unusual about these cases is that they rest on the legal *power* of control of, respectively, the car owner and the licensee and not, like *Rubie* v *Faulkner*, on the existence of a legal *duty* to ensure compliance with the law. A similar analysis is found in *JF Alford Transport Ltd* (1997),[51] where the company's convictions for aiding and abetting drivers to falsify their tachograph records were quashed. If the prosecution had proved the power of control, knowledge, and encouragement by non-intervention, that would have been sufficient. The court re-asserted the control principle, although this case, unlike the previous two, did not

involve D's presence during the commission of the offences; and knowledge, or wilful blindness, was held not to have been established. The control principle departs from the usual approach of not imposing liability for an omission unless a clear duty exists. What the courts have done, in effect, is to assimilate these cases of 'power of control' to cases of duty, thereby creating a new class of public duty.[52] Even though English law does not impose liability for failing to take reasonable steps to prevent an offence which occurs in the street, these cases hold that a property owner will be liable for failing to take reasonable steps to prevent an offence which occurs on or with that property (and with the owner's knowledge). The law has, in effect, co-opted property owners as law enforcement agents in respect of their own property, and *JF Alford Transport* provides for employers to be co-opted in respect of their employees' conduct at work. The Law Commission rightly recommends the abolition of the control principle, narrowing liability to cases of failure to discharge a legal duty.[53]

Does it amount to aiding if a shopkeeper sells an item to P knowing that P intends to use it in a crime, or if a borrower returns an article to its owner knowing that the owner intends to use it in crime? These could be said to be acts of assistance, in the sense that the physical conduct of selling or returning goods helps an offender: should they, if accompanied by the required mental element, amount to aiding the principal? The problem is that the shopkeeper is simply selling goods in the normal course of business, and the borrower is merely fulfilling a duty to restore the goods to their owner **(p. 428)** (respectively, an exercise of a power and the performance of a duty). If the law were to regard either of these acts as 'aiding', it would lead to considerable confusion over when a criminal law duty is to take precedence over a civil law power or duty.

Three approaches to this problem may be considered. The first was described by Devlin J in *National Coal Board* v *Gamble* (1959): 'if one man deliberately sells to another a gun to be used for murdering a third, he may be indifferent whether the third man lives or dies and interested only in the cash profit to be made out of the sale, but he can still be an aider or abettor'.[54] This view criminalizes the shopkeeper as an accomplice in every case where the customer's intention to commit that kind of offence is known. Criminal liability might be justified by arguing that a small sacrifice is properly required of shopkeepers in order to benefit the potential victims of crime. Surely, where a seller knows that an offence against the person is what a customer has in mind when shopping for something, it is right to place the potential victim's right not to be subjected to assault or injury above the shopkeeper's liberty to sell to all-comers. After all, the shopkeeper is not being required to intervene or even to notify the police of the customer's intentions. The requirement is not to sell goods when the customer is known to be bent on crime.

Despite the decision in *Gillick* v *West Norfolk and Wisbech Area Health Authority* (1986),[55] the statement in *NCB* v *Gamble* that selling goods in the ordinary course of business can satisfy the conduct element of 'aiding' remains good law. But, as we will see in section 10.4, there is also support for a second approach, long upheld in many American jurisdictions, namely, that a shopkeeper should be liable as an accomplice only where it was his or her *purpose* to further the customer's offence; on this view, knowledge that the customer will commit the crime would not in itself be enough.[56] This stresses the notions of free trade and individual autonomy, treating the shopkeeper as a mere trader rather than as a fellow citizen's keeper. A third approach would not involve the law of complicity, but would treat the shopkeeper's liability as a matter of general criminal law—either by creating a special offence

of selling goods which are likely to be used in the commission of crime (of which there are some examples now, such as the sale of knives) or through the offence of encouraging or assisting an offence believing that it will be committed, contrary to s. 45 of the Serious Crime Act 2007.[57] However, the latter approach might seem to fall between two stools. It withholds liability from the shopkeeper as a complicit party, even though his or her assistance may have been crucial to the crime's commission, but still threatens liability for the inchoate offence, leaving the shopkeeper in much the same dilemma as under the current law of complicity.

(p. 429) Is there a material difference where someone who has borrowed goods is asked by the owner to return them so that they may be used for a crime? In *NCB* v *Gamble* it was held by Devlin J that returning goods in these circumstances is a 'negative act' rather than a 'positive act': 'a man who hands over to another his own property on demand, although he may physically be performing a positive act, in law is only refraining from detinue'.[58] To invent a distinction between 'positive' and 'negative' acts in order to exempt a borrower who returns goods is unconvincing. In one sense, the case is weaker than that of the shopkeeper, since the borrower has a duty to return goods to their owner, whereas a shopkeeper has no duty to sell; but in another sense it is just as strong, since a court would be reluctant to find the borrower liable in tort for failing to return goods in such circumstances, and would be more likely to recognize a defence based on the prevention of crime. Devlin J's analysis, despite the fragility of the positive–negative distinction, may appear to offer a pragmatic solution, but it is inadequate when it comes to dealing with a case where the borrower is returning a gun which is then to be used for killing someone. The potential victim's rights must count for more than the borrower's duty to return goods to their owner. Rather than concealing these conflicts behind Devlin J's unconvincing analysis, a preferable course would be either to allow a defence of 'balance of evils' to any apparently criminal complicity,[59] or to state that D should not be liable for returning property to its owner unless D shares the owner's criminal purpose or unless a crime of violence is known to be intended.[60]

(c) Counselling and procuring

The characteristic contribution of the counsellor or procurer is to incite, instigate, or advise on the commission of the substantive offence by the principal. One way of expressing this is to describe the role as 'encouraging' the perpetrator. Some European legal systems provide a higher maximum penalty for an accomplice who incites or instigates than for a mere helper, and a general justification for this can readily be found. No offence might have taken place at all but for the instigation, and this is surely more reprehensible than assisting someone who has already decided to commit a crime. In practice, however, there are many shades of culpability between helpers and instigators, a point which strikes the English lawyer more forcefully because of the uncertain limits of the terms 'counselling' and 'procuring'. The ordinary meaning of 'counselling' may fall well short of inciting or instigating an offence, and covers such conduct as advising on an offence and giving information required for an offence; **(p. 430)** whereas the ordinary meaning of 'procuring' is said to be 'to produce by endeavour',[61] which goes beyond mere instigation.

The forms of counselling and procuring recognized by English law probably stretch from the giving of advice or information through encouraging or trying to persuade another person to commit the crime to such conduct as threatening or commanding that the offence be committed. Generally speaking, the accomplice's culpability increases as one proceeds

towards the extreme of a command backed by threats. In that extreme situation the principal may have the defence of duress,[62] and may be regarded as an innocent agent of the threatener, who then becomes the principal.[63] There are also cases in which the principal does not realize that someone is trying to bring about an offence: for example, if D surreptitiously laces P's non-alcoholic drink with some form of alcohol and P subsequently drives a car, unaware of the consumption of alcohol, P will be liable to conviction for drunken driving and D could be convicted of procuring the offence, so long as it was shown that D knew P was intending to drive. Such conduct fulfils the ordinary definition of procuring: 'you procure a thing by setting out to see that it happens and taking appropriate steps to produce that happening'.[64] Such a case is, though, really one in which D should be regarded as committing the offence, by causing an unwitting P to engage in the relevant conduct (which is criminal only in virtue of the fact that offence in question is one of strict liability), but where D cannot be found guilty of the offence as a principal because D did not drive: P did. The Law Commission has proposed that such odd cases be dealt with through a new offence of 'causing another to commit a no fault offence'.[65]

The ordinary meaning of procuring, 'to produce by endeavour', is not restricted to cases where the principal is unaware of the accomplice's design. One can take the appropriate steps to bring about a crime by persuading another to do the required acts—for example, by shaming someone into committing an offence by taunts of cowardice—but conduct such as hiring 'hit-men' to carry out an offence is probably better described as counselling.[66] It can be said that in cases of procuring there is a causal relationship between the accomplice's procuring and the principal's act, and it is proper to say that the principal acts *in consequence of* the accomplice's conduct.[67] These cases, then, represent the high-water mark of causal connection among the various types of accessorial conduct, headed by the case of procuring an unwitting principal (where D laces P's drink), in which there is no meeting of minds between principal and accomplice. Such a strong causal connection is not found in counselling, which may merely involve the supply of information, advice, or encouragement. This led Professor Sir John Smith to conclude that: 'procuring requires causation but not consensus; encouraging requires **(p. 431)** consensus but not causation; assisting requires actual help but neither consensus nor causation'.[68] If cases of hiring hit-men are classified as counselling or encouraging, then all that is required is that the accomplice and principal reached some kind of agreement on what was to be done, with the accomplice encouraging the principal (usually by offering money) to carry out the crime.[69]

(d) The problems of the conduct element

The Law Commission's proposed reforms of complicity will be discussed later, but we should note at this point some of the difficulties of the conduct element. It is not just that the four key terms are opaque and that basic questions of principle and policy (concerning, for example, omissions liability and social duties) are resolved on a case by case basis. There are two more fundamental difficulties, stemming largely from the breadth of the concept of 'aiding'. The first is that any contribution by the accomplice seems to suffice for liability, no matter how small. This brings both uncertainty and the potential for injustice. The second and related difficulty is that the element of causation stemming from the accomplice's assistance may be slight. Should cases where D's contribution has no causal impact on P's commission of the offence lead to D's liability for the substantive offence, let alone the sentence for it, particularly if that sentence is mandatory (as in murder)? Where the contribution is small and non-essential—such as

driving P to a place close to where the offence is to be committed[70]—the sufficiency of the causal contribution may also be questioned.[71] Under the Serious Crime Act 2007, it would now be a separate offence of encouraging or assisting crime, but the penalty structure is the same.

10.4 The fault element in complicity

The fault required for conviction as an accomplice differs from that required for all other forms of criminal liability. This is because it concerns not merely the defendant's awareness of the nature and effect of his own acts, but also his awareness of the intentions of the principal. It is a form of two-dimensional fault, which brings with it various complexities: the would-be accomplice's knowledge of the principal's intentions may be more or less detailed, and in any event the principal might not do exactly as planned.

Two basic fault requirements may be outlined. First, the accomplice must intend to do whatever acts of assistance or encouragement are done, and must be aware of their (p. 432) ability to assist or encourage the principal.[72] Secondly, the accomplice must know the 'essential matters which constitute the offence'.[73] The scope of this oft-quoted phrase is unclear. It seems that it includes the facts, circumstances, and other matters that go to make up the conduct element of the principal offence; but, as we shall see below, there is uncertainty about the extent to which the accomplice must know the details of the offence. There is authority that knowledge includes wilful blindness: thus if D failed to make enquiries about a fairly obvious illegality he might be convicted on the basis of 'shutting his eyes to the obvious', whereas mere negligence in failing to make reasonable enquiries of others cannot suffice.[74] The requirements of intention and knowledge apply whether the principal's crime is one of recklessness, negligence, or strict liability. Why is the higher degree of fault required for the accomplice than for the principal? The answer, as for inchoate offences (see Chapter 11.3(a)), is that as the form of criminal liability moves further away from the actual infliction of harm, so the grounds of liability should become narrower. Otherwise, the law would spread its net wide indeed, and all kinds of people who did acts which, unbeknown to them, helped others to commit crimes of strict liability or negligence might find themselves liable to conviction. In fact, the two basic fault requirements are put under strain largely in cases of assisting crime in which D is not present at the commission of the offence, and in cases of encouraging (counselling, procuring) when there is a change of plan. Thus, thirdly, it is not merely that the accomplice must have some awareness of what the principal is doing, but in cases where the accomplice acts before the principal starts to commit the crime there is also the problem of awareness of what will happen in the future. In effect, this is a question of prediction rather than knowledge—or, to put it another way, a question of reckless knowledge, being aware that there is a risk of one or more offences occurring.

Given the emphasis on requiring intention and full knowledge in complicity cases, is there ever a justification for lowering the requirements to a form of recklessness? Perhaps the leading case is *Blakely and Sutton* v *Chief Constable of West Mercia* (1991).[75] The two defendants had laced P's soft drinks with vodka, intending to inform him of this and thus lead him to stay the night with the first defendant rather than driving home. P left before they could inform him, and was convicted of driving with excess alcohol. The two defendants were charged with procuring P's offence and, although their convictions were quashed, it emerges from McCullough J's judgment in the Divisional Court that it may be sufficient for other forms of

complicity, if not for procuring, that D contemplated that his act 'would or might' bring about or assist the commission of the principal offence.[76] There is no evidence that prosecutors have exploited (p. 433) this newfound width in the law of complicity, and McCullough J's suggestion that the law extends beyond contemplation that an act will assist to encompass the possibility that it 'might' is inappropriate outside the joint enterprise context. Were it otherwise, the law could dictate conviction of most people who host parties at which alcohol is consumed and after which guests drive their cars, unless the host keeps a careful check on the drinks consumed by potential drivers.[77] For, in such cases, the host will be aware that one or more guests who intend to drive 'might' go over the limit if served another drink. However, other decisions have also suggested that something less than knowledge that P might commit the crime will suffice. In *Bryce* (2004)[78] it was suggested that it is sufficient if D believes, at the time he aids P (in this case, by transporting him by motor cycle to a place near the proposed venue for the killing), that it is a 'real possibility' that P will go on to commit the offence—a recklessness test. Similarly in *Webster* (2006)[79] the Court of Appeal held that the appropriate test was whether D foresaw that P was *likely* to commit the offence—a restricted form of recklessness.[80]

The interaction of the conduct element and the fault element in complicity has not always operated so as to broaden liability. Cases in which recklessness is relied upon have been rare, and greater attention has been given to the conflict of authority between two leading cases on intention and knowledge. The first is *National Coal Board* v *Gamble* (1959),[81] where a weighbridge operator issued a ticket to a lorry driver certifying the lorry's weight and thus allowing him to take his lorry out of the colliery and on to a public road. The Divisional Court held that the weighbridge operator was liable for aiding and abetting the driver's offence so long as he knew that the lorry was overweight and that it was about to be driven on a public road,[82] with Devlin J explaining that '*mens rea* is a matter of intent only and does not depend on desire or motive'. Thus, it was irrelevant that the weighbridge operator was 'only doing his job' and had no personal interest in what the lorry driver might do thereafter. His *knowledge* of what the lorry driver *was about to do* was sufficient. This approach would also lead to the conviction of a shopkeeper who knows that his customer plans to use a certain item for a crime and who nevertheless sells the item, and it is dissatisfaction with this outcome which led the framers of the American Model Penal Code to impose the more stringent requirement that the accomplice should have acted with the *purpose* of promoting or facilitating the offence.[83] The effect of that narrower doctrine is to ensure that citizens are not treated as their fellow citizens' keepers, a sturdy individualist approach. (p. 434) The wider doctrine of *NCB* v *Gamble*, which imposes accomplice liability wherever a person knows that the recipient intends to commit a certain crime with the property delivered, has the effect of placing a seller, a weighbridge operator, etc. under a duty not to make the sale or issue the ticket in these circumstances. Not only is this consistent with the general assimilation of foresight of practical certainty within intention,[84] but it also supports a more social and less individualistic notion of responsibility.

English courts have not always felt comfortable with the proposition that knowledge of the principal's intention (without purpose) should suffice for accomplice liability—indeed, Slade J dissented on the point in *NCB* v *Gamble*—and in the unusual circumstances of *Gillick* v *West Norfolk and Wisbech Area Health Authority* (1986)[85] the House of Lords held that a doctor who supplies contraceptives to a girl under 16, knowing that this will assist her boyfriend to commit the offence of sexual activity with a child, is not an accomplice to the boyfriend's offence. The reason for this decision seems to be that the doctor's purpose would be not to

assist the boy but to protect the girl. This runs directly counter to *NCB* v *Gamble*, where it was held that mere knowledge of assistance is enough and that purpose is not required. *Gillick* should probably not be treated as conclusive on the issue of accomplice liability, since their Lordships did not trouble to examine the existing authorities in their speeches.[86] The doctor's motive evidently overshadowed the case,[87] and a preferable way of dealing with that emerges from *Clarke* (1985).[88] Here the Court of Appeal held that a person who knowingly assists others in a burglary with the intent of ensuring that the police capture both the burglars and the stolen property does satisfy the mental element of complicity (in that he knows that the principals will commit the offence), but may have a defence based on his purpose of assisting law enforcement. That decision keeps the question of the accomplice's knowledge separate from the question of whether there is any justification or other defence.[89]

It is regrettable that the question discussed in *Gamble* and in *Gillick* has been obscured by confusions of terminology (e.g. different meanings of intention) and by a failure to discuss it as an issue of principle—what ought to be the proper scope of the criminal law in this sphere? One might argue that the difficulty in finding a reasonably certain definition of the conduct element in complicity renders it desirable to maintain a narrow fault requirement, and yet the decision in *Blakely and Sutton* v *Chief Constable of West Mercia*[90] has the opposite effect by recognizing advertent recklessness as sufficient.

(p. 435) Further problems on fault arise from the fact that at least two people are involved, the accomplice and the principal, and so it is often a question of one person's knowledge of another person's intentions. Some issues can be resolved by basic propositions. If the aider knows the nature of the offence which the principal intends to commit but does not know when it is to occur, that should be immaterial: time is rarely specified as an element in the definition of a crime. The same applies to the location of the offence: so long as the aider knows that the principal plans to burgle a bank, ignorance as to the particular bank is immaterial to accomplice liability.[91] The real difficulties begin when the aider or counsellor does not know precisely what offence the principal intends to commit, and has only a general idea. Should this be sufficient?

Let us suppose that D lends P some mechanical cutting equipment, knowing full well that P intends to use it in connection with a forthcoming crime but having no precise idea of the crime intended: D does not ask, and P does not tell. In fact, D uses the equipment in a burglary. On facts similar to these, the decision in *Bainbridge* (1960)[92] held that neither mere suspicion nor broad knowledge of some criminal intention is sufficient: the minimum condition for accomplice liability is knowledge that the principal intends to commit a crime of the *type* actually committed. This decision clearly goes against, or beyond, the basic requirement that the accomplice should know the essential matters that constitute the principal's crime.[93] Should this extension of liability be opposed—knowledge of the particular crime committed ought to be required, because the theory is that the accomplice's liability derives from the principal's offence—or should it be accepted as a pragmatic solution which avoids the acquittals of those who assist willingly without knowing the precise form of offence envisaged? This might depend on the breadth of the term ‘type’, and some light is thrown on this by the decision of the House of Lords in *Maxwell* v *DPP for Northern Ireland* (1978).[94] Maxwell was persuaded to drive a car for a group of terrorists, knowing broadly what offences they *might* commit, but not knowing which one or ones they *would* commit. It was held that he was liable as an accomplice to the offence of doing an act with intent to cause an explosion, so long as he contemplated

that offence as one of the possible offences and intentionally lent his assistance. As Lord Scarman put it: 'an accessory who leaves it to his principal to choose is liable, provided always the choice is made from the range of offences from which the accessory contemplates the choice will be made'.

It is not difficult to see why the courts reached the decisions in *Bainbridge* and in *Maxwell*. They probably believed that a narrow view of the mental element in complicity might open the door to acquittal for some persons believed to be sufficiently culpable, and in *Maxwell* there was the additional factor of the defendant's knowing involvement in terrorism which may have led the court to avoid a narrow view. Both (p. 436) courts appear to have decided to propound a test which stops short of proclaiming that a general criminal intent is sufficient (i.e. knowledge that the principal was going to commit *some* crime), and yet which goes wider than a requirement of full knowledge of the particular crime. The effect of the *Maxwell* test is to introduce reckless knowledge as sufficient: the accomplice knows that one or more of a group of offences is virtually certain to be committed, which means that in relation to the one(s) actually committed, there was knowledge only of a *risk* that it would be committed—and that amounts to recklessness. Since our discussion began with the principle that accomplice liability should be restricted to cases of full knowledge, the ruling in *Maxwell*—like the subsequent decision in *Bryce*[95]—amounts to a significant departure. Yet there is surely no merit in acquitting a person who willingly gives assistance, knowing that one of a group of crimes will be committed but not knowing exactly which one. Such a person has surely crossed the threshold of blameworthiness, both in conduct and in the accompanying fault.

The matter is now dealt with by the offence in s. 46 of the Serious Crime Act 2007, of encouraging or assisting offences believing that one or more will be committed. As its name suggests, this offence aims to deal with the very situation that arose in *Maxwell*, and it does so by the creation of this new offence in the inchoate mode—an offence committed whether or not the principal goes ahead.[96]

10.5 Joint ventures and accessorial liability for different results

The essence of accessorial liability is that D, an accomplice, incurs liability for the offence committed by P, the principal. In 10.3 and 10.4 we discussed the conduct and fault elements required. Now we turn to cases where P commits an offence not envisaged by D: P commits a more serious offence, or the same offence with a different result, or a lesser offence. On the basic principles set out earlier, D should only be liable for the different offence if and in so far as he knew its essential elements, etc. We will see below how that principle, and other general principles, have been applied to these cases.

But there is also a separate doctrine to be considered here, the doctrine of joint enterprise or joint venture. When P, D, and E agree to commit a robbery, each of them is liable for the agreed crime, as principal(s) or accomplice(s) according to the nature of their contribution. That is an application of general complicity rules. The analysis differs when P commits a further and more serious offence. The doctrine operates so that, if it can be said that P, D, and E embarked on a joint venture to commit an offence (such as robbery), D and/or E may be held liable for a further offence (such as murder) (p. 437) that P goes on to commit if certain conditions are fulfilled. The conditions appear to be threefold:

P, D, and E had an agreed purpose to commit a particular crime;

D and/or E knew that there was a real risk that P might go on to commit a further particular crime;

the further crime that P committed was not fundamentally different from what D and/or E had anticipated.

The authority for these conditions will be discussed in the paragraphs below, but it is clearly set out by Hughes LJ in *R* v *ABCD*:

> The liability of D2 … rests … on his having continued in the joint venture of Crime A when he realizes (even if he does not desire) that crime B may be committed [by D1] in the course of it.[97]

There has long been controversy about whether the doctrine of common purpose or joint enterprise amounts to an additional form of complicity liability (beyond aiding, abetting, counselling, or procuring), or was merely a descriptive term without legal consequences.[98] Sir John Smith maintained that there is no separate doctrine of joint enterprise and no separate rules,[99] whereas Professors Simester and Sullivan argue strongly that joint enterprise is a distinct doctrine. Recent decisions of high authority leave little doubt that at common law there is a doctrine of joint enterprise, and that its effect is to broaden D's liability for P's further offences where the three conditions are fulfilled.[100] Of course many other cases of complicity, where D is liable for aiding, abetting, counselling, or procuring P's offence, could be described as joint criminal ventures too;[101] but the only type of case where the doctrine has any legal effect is where it extends D's liability for offences that P commits outside the actual agreement with D. The type of case in which this might arise is where A, B, and C plan a robbery in which they will carry weapons to frighten but not to use, and C unilaterally decides to use his weapon to kill the victim of the robbery.

What are the justifications for thus extending the normal grounds for accessorial liability? Andrew Simester argues that cases of joint enterprise form a sub-set of complicity cases that are distinguished by D's agreement or common purpose with P to achieve a certain criminal goal. Through this agreement D associates himself with, and affiliates himself to, the joint criminal venture, and gives moral support to and shows solidarity with the other member(s) of the enterprise.[102] It is this change of normative (p. 438) position by D that supplies the justification for extending D's liability, so that D is liable not just for further offences he helped or encouraged P to commit, but also for any further offence that he foresaw a real risk of P committing. The moral significance of the change of normative position does not justify making D liable for any offence that P happens to commit—D's unlawful act is participating in a joint criminal venture does not open the way to wide-ranging constructive liability, only to liability based on recklessness (foresight of a real risk). It remains true that D is being held liable for a further crime he did not intend or endorse or support. But the argument is that D's support for the criminal venture, combined with his recklessness as to the further crime committed, is strong enough, not least because joint criminal ventures tend to have a momentum of their own

that makes the commission of crimes more likely.

We now turn to consider three sets of cases in which P commits a different crime than envisaged: the first set, relating to more serious offences, is concerned exclusively with joint enterprise, whereas the second and third sets may or may not involve cases of joint venture.

(a) Joint venture: liability for different, more serious offence

Where one party (P) deliberately deviates from the common purpose shared by one or more others in a joint venture so as to commit a more serious offence, English law has not pursued an unwavering course, so far as determining the liability of the others for that deviation is concerned. More than a century ago, Sir James Stephen stated the test for D's complicity was whether the crime committed by P could be regarded as a 'probable consequence' of the joint enterprise—an objective test of foreseeability, to be applied at the point at which the assistance was given or the agreement reached.[103] To allow D's liability to turn on an objective test of foreseeability was open to criticism on the familiar unfairness grounds,[104] and the modern decisions have moved away from it. Thus, in *Chan Wing-Siu* (1985)[105] the defendants had gone to commit a robbery armed with knives, and one of their number used a knife to kill one of the robbery victims. The other defendants argued that the agreement was to commit robbery, using the knives to frighten and not to cause death or injury. However, the Privy Council held that there is a doctrine of common purpose which:

> turns on contemplation … or authorization, which may be express but is more usually implied. It meets the case of a crime foreseen as a possible incident of the common unlawful enterprise. The criminal culpability lies in participating in the venture with that foresight.

The element of prior agreement or 'authorization' seems to be rather weak here: in reality, the basis of liability has shifted to (subjective) foresight of a significant possibility, as the Privy Council confirmed when suggesting that a remote possibility **(p. 439)** would be insufficient, but that foresight of a 'real risk' would be enough. Thus the basis of joint enterprise liability is now a restricted form of (subjective) recklessness, similar in spirit to the *Maxwell* decision.[106]

The House of Lords confirmed this approach in *Powell*.[107] Three men went to a drug dealer to buy drugs and the drug dealer was shot dead. The prosecution could not prove which of the three fired the shot, but the submission was that the two must have known that the other had a gun and might use it. Lord Hutton held that:

> it is sufficient to found a conviction for murder for a secondary party to have realized that in the course of the joint enterprise the primary party might kill with intent to do so or with intent to cause grievous bodily harm.[108]

It follows that awareness that one of D's confederates might commit murder is sufficient to convict D as an accomplice, with a mandatory sentence of life imprisonment. It was argued strongly in *Powell* that this is unfair, and that it ought to be shown that the accomplice knew

that it was virtually certain that P would kill or cause serious injury. However, the House of Lords rejected this, Lord Steyn quoting Sir John Smith's argument that the question is not simply whether the accomplice was reckless whether death or serious injury would result: 'he must have been aware, not merely that death or grievous bodily harm might be caused, but that it might be caused intentionally, by a person whom he was assisting or encouraging to commit a crime'.[109] This point was decisive in the New South Wales' Law Commission's decision to recommend the same approach to all crimes (using the terminology of foresight of a 'substantial risk') other than murder, and an approach only slightly narrower than the English approach in murder cases. In murder cases, the NSW Commission recommended that D would have to be shown to have foreseen that it was 'probable (that is likely)' that P might cause death with the fault element for murder in the course of the joint enterprise; if D foresaw only a substantial risk that P might so act, D would be guilty of manslaughter only.[110] Whilst it has some merit, that approach arguably places too much weight on the distinction between what can be shown to have been foreseen by D as 'probable' and what can be shown to have been forseen by D as involving 'a substantial risk'. The distinction is too thin to bear such a weight. In any event, it is unrealistic to suppose that complicit parties turn their minds to the precise degree of probability that another party to the joint enterprise might commit a collateral offence.

The House of Lords revisited the doctrine of joint enterprise in *Rahman* (2008),[111] where D and others joined in a fight against another gang with a variety of blunt instruments. The deceased was cornered and beaten by D and several others, but it transpired that the death was caused by a deep stab wound. D's argument was that not only was he unaware that anyone had a knife, but he was also unaware that anyone would **(p. 440)** kill with intent to kill. The House of Lords held unanimously that P's intent to kill need not be known by others in the joint enterprise: the question is whether they knew there was a real risk of death or grievous bodily harm being caused intentionally. This confirms that the doctrine of joint enterprise has a broad sweep, although here it combines with the broad definition of murder (including an intention to cause grievous bodily harm). Subject to what will be said below about cases involving a 'fundamental difference' between what P does and what D anticipates that P might do, becoming part of a joint criminal enterprise and being aware that others might cause serious injury intentionally is sufficient to convict D of murder, attracting the mandatory sentence of life imprisonment for all. Although Sch 21 of the Criminal Justice Act 2003 draws a distinction between killings with intent to kill and killings with intent to cause grievous bodily harm for the purpose of setting the minimum term,[112] the law of murder brackets them together for the purpose of determining liability.

If D is held not liable as an accomplice to P's conduct, because D did not foresee a 'real risk' that P would do as he did or because it was 'fundamentally different', can D still be convicted of being an accomplice to manslaughter if P's crime was murder? There are authorities that appear to point in different directions. In favour of a manslaughter conviction are decisions such as *Stewart and Schofield*[113] and the Northern Ireland decision in *Gilmour*,[114] where D was the getaway driver for a petrol-bombing. It was held in the latter that there was insufficient evidence that D was aware that the bomb was such a large and potentially destructive one, so his conviction for murder in virtue of being an accessory was quashed; but the Court went on to hold him liable for complicity in manslaughter on the ground that P did the act that had been contemplated (petrol-bombing a house). Against a manslaughter conviction in these situations are decisions such as *English*.[115] In this case, D and P were engaged in a joint criminal

enterprise to beat V with a pole (crime A). In the course of the beating, P stabbed V to death (crime B). The House of Lords held that if D's act was fundamentally different from the act anticipated by D (which it was found to be), D could be guilty of neither murder nor manslaughter. The logic of this view is that, if P has so far departed from the agreed course of criminal conduct that he should really be described as acting alone in causing V's death, then the crime committed by P that caused V's death—whether it be murder or manslaughter—is not attributable to D as an accessory. The case is thus in fact perfectly consistent with the aforementioned *Gilmour*, if one takes the view that in *Gilmour* there was not such a significant departure from the agreed plan—indeed, in one sense, the very act (petrol-bombing) anticipated by D was performed by P in killing—albeit that P may have intended to do more harm by that act than D anticipated: hence the verdict of manslaughter in D's case and murder in P's.[116] In most of these cases, any difficulty facing the prosecution in point of proof (p. 441) may be resolved by charging any relevant lesser offences (e.g. relating to the possession of firearms or other weapons).

(b) Same offence, different result

What is the position where P commits the same type of offence as D had envisaged but by some unexpected method, or against an unintended victim? In a case where, in the course of a joint enterprise, P aims to kill V1 but misses and hits V2, the law employs the transferred malice principle in taking the same approach towards accomplices as it does to offences by individuals. In such a case, D—if he or she had the relevant awareness of what P might so—would still be guilty of murder. Similarly, where the intended result occurs by an unexpected mode (e.g. death caused by a stab through the eye rather than in the chest), this does not affect the accomplice's liability.[117] In so far as the policies of transferred liability and the other analogous rules are sound for individuals, they should apply to principals and accomplices. The same should presumably be said of constructive liability: thus, if D helps P in an assault on V, as a result of which V unexpectedly dies, a law which renders P liable for manslaughter should also apply so as to render D an accomplice to manslaughter.[118] These propositions all apply the logic of English law's ‘derivative’ theory of complicity, whereby the accomplice's liability derives from that of the principal. Most of the questions could, in theory, be approached in other ways—for example, by making the accomplice's liability turn on what he or she intended the principal to do, rather than attaching liability to what actually happened.[119]

The common factor in the above group of cases is that the result was unexpected by both P and D. The problem of the D's liability is different in cases where P deviates intentionally from the agreed course of conduct. Thus, in the old case of *Saunders and Archer* (1573), D had advised P to kill his wife by means of a poisoned apple; P placed the apple before his wife, but the wife passed the apple to their small child, who ate it and died.[120] D was held not to have been an accomplice in the child's murder, on the basis that the events amounted to a deliberate change of plan by P. Although P did not actually give the apple to the child, he sat by and allowed the child to eat the apple when it was his parental duty to intervene. This failure to prevent the miscarriage of the plan was treated as equivalent to approval by P, and thus as a voluntary intervening act (omission) it was enough to negative D's complicity in the actual result.

The issue has re-emerged as a crucial one in relation to joint enterprise and murder. As mentioned earlier, in *English*[121] D joined P in an attack on a police officer with wooden posts,

but during the course of the attack P produced a knife and stabbed the officer fatally. D's case was that he did not know P had a knife, and that he should (p. 442) therefore not be liable for aiding and abetting murder. The prosecution argued that D had willingly joined in an attack using wooden posts, clearly realizing that P might cause serious injury, and so D knew that P might well have the fault element for murder. Hence, D should be liable despite the unexpected change of mode of attack. The House of Lords came down in favour of the defence argument, holding that D's conviction should be quashed because 'the unforeseen use of the knife would take the killing outside the scope of the joint venture'.[122] Lord Hutton added:

> if the weapon used by the primary party is different to, but as dangerous as, the weapon which the secondary party contemplated he might use, the secondary party should not escape liability for murder because of the difference in the weapon, for example if he foresaw that the primary party might use a gun to kill and the latter used a knife to kill, or vice versa.

This was a new principle. The first question in all such cases is the evidential one: did D realize that P might be carrying the weapon with which death was caused, and that he might use it (other than in lawful self-defence)? If he did, then the case falls within (a). If the requisite knowledge is not established beyond a reasonable doubt, then the court may still convict D as an accomplice if P used a weapon which was not 'fundamentally different' from the means of injuring or killing that D had contemplated, or was just as 'dangerous' as the means contemplated.[123] The House of Lords returned to the 'fundamental difference' exception to the doctrine of joint enterprise in *Rahman*.[124] The argument that P's act was fundamentally different from what D contemplated because P intended to kill was not accepted by the House, which regarded the exception as confined to the fundamentally different nature of P's act.

This is a curious argument, involving a departure from the historic approach of English law.[125] It opens the way to acquitting D of the murder of V, when D anticipated that P might kill, and P did kill but in a way fundamentally different from the manner in which D anticipated that P might do the deed (shooting as opposed to strangling, say). By contrast, suppose D and P's joint enterprise is one wherein D and P intend to stamp on V with the intent to do serious harm, if V does not reveal where he keeps his money. Given that D and P are trying to extract information from V it never crosses D's mind that P may intentionally kill V. However, P loses his temper with V during the interrogation and stamps repeatedly on V's head intending to kill him. In this example, D will be guilty of murder along with P. D realizes both that P may act with the fault (p. 443) element for murder (which P does), and that the act that embodies that intention will involve stamping on V (so, the 'act' is the one D anticipated).

The decisions of the courts, spanning over four centuries from 1573, seem to be at odds with English law's general disregard of the method used to effect result-oriented crimes, or the identity of the victim.[126] Accepting all the other rules of complicity, if we are satisfied that D knew that P intended to kill V and gave him assistance or encouragement to do so, why should it matter if P killed V by a different method from that envisaged by D, or if a different victim died? Most statements of the *English–Rahman* exception refer to P's act as being 'fundamentally different'; but surely what should matter, particularly in a paradigm result-crime such as homicide, is the consequence that P brought about, not the precise form of the act by

which P brought the consequence about. Thus if D realized the risk that P might either kill or cause serious injury intentionally, the method chosen by P should not matter.

Quite possibly, the courts are confusing or blending two separate rules. The first is the 'fundamental difference' rule, whose application is of most significance in murder cases albeit not necessarily confined to such cases. The second is the more general rule that, in any case where complicity in crime is alleged—whether murder, theft, rape, or whatever—if P deliberately steps outside the scope of the enterprise then D will not be liable for P's act even if it is of the same type as that anticipated by D. For example, suppose D and P are robbing a bank, and D realizes that P is carrying a gun and may use it with intent to kill in the course of the robbery. As D and P perpetrate the robbery, P sees his ex-wife (whom he hates) passing by and takes the opportunity presented by the fact that he is masked and armed intentionally to shoot her dead. In this example, D will not be liable for the murder, even though D anticipated that P might commit murder with the very weapon used to kill during the course of the robbery.[127]

Perhaps one might reply that it is for the parties to stipulate which features of their common design are critical, rather than for the law to declare that neither the identity of the victim nor the method employed is legally relevant. For example, in the South African case of *S* v *Robinson* (1968)[128] P and two others agreed with V that V should be killed by P so that V could escape prosecution for fraud and the others could obtain insurance monies. V withdrew his consent to the arrangement, not surprisingly, but P killed him nevertheless. The offence was as planned, the victim was as planned, but the element of consent was crucial to the common purpose, and that was absent: should the two others be convicted as accomplices to P's offence? The South African court held them liable as accomplices to attempted murder only, because their complicity in murder was dependent on the consent. Is this not too precious an approach, in that they had made their intended contributions to a planned murder?

There are further arguments against the *English* principle. It is evident elsewhere in this chapter (see subsection (b) and section 10.6) that the appellate courts are (p. 444) beginning to move away from the 'derivative' theory of liability in favour of assessing the culpability of the accomplice separately: if that approach had been adopted in *English* and *Rahman*, D's liability would have been assessed on the basis of what D contemplated rather than by reference to the unexpected deviation by P. Further, it may be conceded that the doctrines of transferred fault and unintended mode in English law are defensible pragmatically and not on grounds of principle:[129] in many cases a conviction for attempt could be obtained, and that would be a theoretically more satisfactory response.[130] Moreover, the effect of Part 2 of the Serious Crime Act 2007 is that D could now be prosecuted for encouraging or assisting the crime D anticipated, irrespective of what P subsequently did.[131] But if one were to delve into the possible policy reasons for *English*, a leading contender would be their Lordships' distaste for the 'GBH rule' in murder, evident in the speeches in that case.[132] The 'fundamentally different' exception may simply be a pragmatic means of limiting a doctrine whose consequences their Lordships believe to be excessive in some cases, murder particularly. Recent decisions have endorsed the *English–Rahman* approach.[133]

(c) Different, less serious offence

The House of Lords decision in *Howe* (1987)[134] holds that, where D aids or counsels the principal to commit a certain offence, and the principal deviates by committing a less serious

offence, D may be convicted as an accomplice to the intended (more serious) offence. The previous decision in *Richards*[135] laid down a different rule. In that case a woman paid two men to beat up her husband so as to put him in hospital for a few days. Her hope was that this experience would lead her husband to turn to her for comfort, thus repairing their relationship. The hired men inflicted less serious injuries than she had asked them to, and it was held that she could not be convicted as an accomplice to the higher offence unless she was present at the scene (an ancient rule). The effect of *Howe* was to sweep away such restrictions, and also to move away from the derivative theory: the accomplice is liable although the (intended) higher offence was never committed, and so the accomplice's liability cannot derive from any such offence. The theory underlying the *Howe* ruling is that the culpability of the accomplice should be viewed as a separate issue from that of the principal (contrast the *English–Rahman* approach), and based upon what the accomplice intended to happen or believed would happen. This result could be achieved on the facts of *Richards* by charging the wife with assisting or encouraging an offence (see Chapter 11.7). Where the prosecution uses (p. 445) the law of complicity, the decision in *Howe* suggests that courts sometimes determine liability according to which of two principles—the derivative or the subjective—has the further reach in a given case.

10.6 Derivative liability and the missing link

We now come to another set of cases in which the English courts have departed from, or at least modified, the derivative theory of accessorial liability. If the would-be principal is not guilty of the substantive offence, because of the absence of a mental element or the presence of a defence, does this mean that the accomplice must also be acquitted? A straightforward application of the derivative theory would lead to non-liability; one cannot be said to have aided and abetted an offence if the offence did not take place, for there is nothing from which the accomplice's liability can derive. Yet the would-be accomplice has done all that he or she intended to do in order to further the principal's crime, and, considered in isolation, the accomplice is surely no less culpable than if the principal had been found guilty. It is therefore not surprising that English courts have responded by stretching the doctrine of complicity. In *Bourne* (1952)[136] D threatened and forced his wife to commit bestiality with a dog, and his conviction for aiding and abetting bestiality was upheld despite the fact that his wife would have had a defence of duress if charged as the principal. In *Cogan and Leak* (1976)[137] Cogan had intercourse with Leak's wife, believing, on the basis of what Leak had told him, that Mrs Leak was consenting. Leak knew that his wife was not consenting. Cogan's conviction for rape was quashed because his defence of mistaken belief in the woman's consent had not been properly put to the jury, but Leak's conviction for aiding and abetting rape was upheld. In *DPP* v *K and B* (1997)[138] two girls aged 14 and 11 threatened and bullied another girl, aged 14, to remove her clothes and submit to penetration by a boy. The boy was never identified, nor was his age known, and the defence argued that if he was under 14 (as suggested) he may not have been liable to conviction as a principal in rape (because of the presumption of *doli incapax*, which then applied to children aged between 10 and 14[139]). If the boy could not have been convicted as principal, could the two girls be convicted of procuring rape? The Divisional Court held that they could.

The judgments in these cases contain little elaboration of the theoretical basis for conviction, but they could be defended as a mere extension of the derivative theory. The extension would

be that a person may be convicted as an accomplice to the commission of an *actus reus* or 'wrongful act' where the reason for acquitting the would-be principal is the absence of a mental element or the presence of a defence. This approach does have theoretical and practical limitations, however. One requirement (p. 446) of accomplice liability is that the accomplice must know the essential elements of the offence (including the principal's mental element); but in these cases the accomplice usually knows that the would-be principal lacks an element necessary for conviction. Bourne knew that his wife was acting because of his threats; Leak knew that Cogan was acting because of his lies.[140] The same difficulty arises in respect of *Millward* (1994),[141] where D was convicted of procuring the offence of causing death by reckless driving by sending an employee out in a tractor with a defective trailer which led to the death of another motorist. The employee was acquitted of the principal offence, but the Court of Appeal upheld the employer's conviction for, essentially, procuring the *actus reus*. This was the explicit ground for finding liability in *DPP* v *K and B*: 'there is no doubt whatever that W was the victim of unlawful sexual intercourse … . The *actus reus* was proved. The respondents procured the situation which included the sexual intercourse.'[142]

This extension of the derivative theory does not, however, give the courts grounds for overturning the decision in *Thornton* v *Mitchell* (1940).[143] A bus conductor was directing the driver in reversing a bus when an accident was caused. The driver was acquitted of careless driving, because he was relying (reasonably) on the conductor's guidance, and it was held that the conductor must therefore be acquitted of aiding and abetting. Since the *actus reus* of careless driving was not committed, the suggested extension of the derivative theory would yield the same result.

Convictions seem justified for Bourne and Leak, because they both chose to bring about a result which the law prohibits: their behaviour and culpability are as high on the scale of seriousness as many principals. Granted that, what is the most suitable legal technique for dealing with these cases? The new inchoate offences relate to encouraging or assisting a crime or an offence, so a more fruitful approach may be the doctrine of innocent agency. A clear example would be where an adult urges or orders a child under the age of criminal responsibility to commit crimes, such as stealing from a shop. The young child is deemed 'innocent' in law, and so it is said that the adult commits the crime through the innocent agency of the child. No such notion is possible where two adults are involved, since it is presumed that adults are autonomous beings acting voluntarily, save in exceptional circumstances. One exceptional circumstance would be where the adult is mentally disordered; another would be where the adult is acting under duress. Thus if, as in *Bourne*,[144] a man threatens and forces his wife to commit bestiality with a dog, her defence of duress may be said to establish that her conduct was insufficiently voluntary to be regarded as the cause of the event. In causal terms she 'drops out of the picture' as a mere innocent agent, leaving the person who (p. 447) uttered the threats as the principal responsible for the offence.[145] How much further can the doctrine of innocent agency be taken? If D gives a bottle to the carer attending V, telling her that it contains a prescribed medicine when in fact it contains poison, D should surely be liable as the principal when the carer administers the contents of the bottle to V, who dies. The carer would be regarded as an innocent agent because, although not lacking criminal capacity in the sense of being mentally disordered or overborne by threats, he or she was acting under a mistake which would prevent criminal liability for the acts.[146] If this is accepted, it would seem to follow that where (as in *Cogan and Leak*) D persuades P to have sexual intercourse with D's wife by inducing P to believe that she consents to this, P's mistake would mean that he drops

out of the picture as an innocent agent and that D should be liable as a principal for rape.[147]

Various objections might be raised against this conclusion. The major counter-argument is that the doctrine of innocent agency should not be used where it is linguistically inappropriate. It is appropriate to describe D as killing (or, at least, causing the death of) V in the case involving the carer, but it is manifestly inappropriate to describe a person as driving with excess alcohol in his blood if what he has done is to lace the drink of someone else who is about to drive a car,[148] or to describe D as having raped a woman if D tricked another man into having sexual intercourse with that woman,[149] or to describe D as having committed bigamy if she induced someone else to believe (erroneously) that the other person's marriage had been legally terminated and to remarry on the strength of this belief.[150] The conflict here is plain. The law has to be expressed in words, and some verbal formulas are hedged about with linguistic conventions which do not necessarily correspond to moral or social distinctions in responsibility. It seems right that D who gives poison to the carer to administer unwittingly should be convicted as the principal in murder, because D was the cause of the death. That element of causation remains prominent in the other examples of the ‘lacer’ of drinks, the encourager of non-consensual intercourse, and the orchestrators of bigamy, and the moral/social argument for criminal liability seems no less strong; but the conventions of language erect a barrier. Some offences are phrased in terms which imply personal agency (rape is said to be one) or which apply only to the holder of a certain office or licence. There is no reason why the law should be constrained by a barrier that is linguistic rather than substantive.

The Law Commission has recommended a set of new clauses designed to overcome these and other problems.[151] There would be a new innocent agency provision, rendering D liable as a principal for causing P (an innocent agent) to commit the conduct **(p. 448)** element of an offence when not liable because of infancy, insanity, or lack of the required fault element. There would also be a new offence of causing another to commit a no-fault offence, designed to cater for cases such as *Attorney-General's Reference (No. 1 of 1975)*.[152] And a special provision is recommended to make it clear that D may be guilty of assisting or encouraging an offence even if the offence is one that may be committed only by someone of a particular description and D does not meet that description. It is arguable that these recommendations are somewhat over-elaborate,[153] but legislation is certainly needed and the Law Commission's scheme (perhaps with some streamlining) would be a significant advance.

10.7 Special defences to complicity

(a) Withdrawal

Complicity often involves the accomplice in words or deeds prior to the principal's crime. If the accomplice has a change of heart before the principal commits the offence, can the accomplice's liability be removed? It can be argued that withdrawal should be rewarded in so far as it may negative culpability in relation to P's offence, and that the availability of the defence gives the accomplice an incentive to take action to prevent the substantive offence from happening.[154] In some cases a withdrawal may indeed amount to a denial of the conduct element of complicity, as where the supplier of an instrument takes it back from the principal or where the giver of encouragement supplants this with discouragement.[155] In most cases, however, the contribution of the accomplice may have some enduring influence over the

principal by way of either encouragement or assistance, and one might expect the law to require not merely a change of mind communicated to the principal, but some endeavour to 'undo' the effect of the contribution already made. The older decisions tend to speak in terms of the principal acting with the authority of the accomplice, and withdrawal as a countermanding of that authority.[156] Modern decisions have emphasized the significance of the stage which the principal's actions have reached. Thus, where D's contribution consists of giving information to the principal about property to be burgled, and then, a week or so before the planned burglary, D tells the principal that he does not wish to be involved and does not want the burglary to take place, this may be an effective withdrawal.[157] This rule may be thought unduly favourable to D, since the advice or help may well have assisted or even encouraged P.[158]

(p. 449) In *Becerra and Cooper* (1975),[159] however, the situation was rather different. B had given C a knife to use if anyone disturbed them during the burglary they were carrying out. When B heard someone coming, he told C of this, said 'Come on, let's go', jumped out of a window, and ran off. C did not follow: he stabbed the inquisitive neighbour fatally with the knife. B was convicted as an accomplice to murder, and this was upheld in the Court of Appeal. When events have proceeded so far, an effective withdrawal was held to require far more than a few words such as 'let's go'. The Court held that 'where practicable and reasonable there must be a timely communication of the intention to abandon the common purpose', in such a form that serves 'unequivocal notice' of the withdrawal. In *Becerra* the imminence of danger was taken to require something 'vastly more effective' than the few words spoken: it seems clear that if C had already been using or preparing to use the knife against the inquisitive neighbour, an effective withdrawal might have required B to go so far as to try to restrain C physically. Thus the essence of withdrawal in complicity is that the accomplice must not only make a clear statement of withdrawal and communicate this to the principal, but must also (if the crime is imminent) take some steps to prevent its commission.

The closer the principal's offence is to commission, the more active the intervention required of the accomplice for effective withdrawal. In a sense, the argument is similar to but stronger than the *Miller* principle—that one has a duty to prevent harm resulting from a train of events which one has started[160]—since the accomplice is knowingly involved in initiating the train of events, whereas Miller did so unknowingly, and it may be possible to say that D has some causal responsibility for P's subsequent act(s).[161] The Law Commission recommends that any possible defence of withdrawal should be narrowed, so that the accomplice would have a defence only if 'he or she had negated the effect of his or her acts of assistance, encouragement or agreement before the principal offence was committed'.[162]

(b) The Tyrell principle

In *Tyrell* (1894)[163] it was held that a girl under 16 could not be convicted as a secondary party to an offence of unlawful sexual intercourse committed with her. Lord Coleridge CJ stated that Parliament could not have intended 'that the girls for whose protection [the Act] was passed should be punishable under it for the offences committed upon themselves'. Although the Court's reasoning was based on statutory interpretation, the decision has subsequently been treated as authority for a general principle that victims, particularly victims of sexual offences, cannot be convicted of complicity if the offence was created for their protection.[164] The Law Commission has recommended **(p. 450)** a restatement of this 'protective principle',[165] but

whether this will deal satisfactorily with the uncertainties left by the Sexual Offences Act 2003 is doubtful.[166]

(c) Crime prevention

There is authority that a form of 'choice of evils' defence may be available to someone who would otherwise be an accomplice.[167] In *Clarke* (1984)[168] D's defence was that he joined other burglars once the offence had been planned, and did so in order to assist the police. The Court of Appeal held that this could form the basis for a defence if the jury were satisfied that D's conduct was 'overall calculated and intended not to further but to frustrate the ultimate result of the crime'. However, the law is in confusion, since there are other decisions on analogous points which have effectively denied the defence recognized in *Clarke*.[169] The Law Commission recommends a circumscribed defence of acting to prevent the commission of an offence or to limit the occurrence of harm,[170] although Parliament has enacted a somewhat broader defence that applies to the new offence of encouraging or assisting crime.[171]

10.8 Conclusions

It is apparent that the English law of complicity is replete with uncertainties and conflicts. It betrays the worst features of the common law: what some would regard as flexibility appears here as a succession of opportunistic decisions by the courts, often extending the law, and resulting in a body of jurisprudence that has little coherence. It has usually been assumed that there are two fundamental principles underlying the English doctrine—that the liability of the accomplice derives from that of the principal, and that the accomplice is required to have intention or knowledge of the principal's offence. Neither proposition can now be advanced without qualifications. The derivative theory has given way in several situations to liability based on causal or subjective principles, and the fault requirements have in some spheres been relaxed so as to include recklessness and in other spheres narrowed to 'purpose' alone. Moreover, the effect of the doctrine of joint enterprise or joint venture is to extend liability for accomplices, even though the definition of a joint venture remains discreditably opaque.

(p. 451) The early part of this chapter was concerned with the ambit of complicity liability: what forms of conduct should suffice? The old terms 'aid, abet, counsel, and procure' continue to be relied upon,[172] and it is hardly true to say that each term bears its ordinary meaning. The variations in the level of accomplices' contributions is great. Someone who procures another to commit an offence by threats or by implanting a false belief may have substantial causal influence. This suggests, by the way, that a rule restricting the penalty for the accomplice to half or three-quarters of the maximum for the principal would be too crude. In contrast, acts of aiding or encouraging may be minor and hardly significant, if any encouragement such as saying 'Oh goody' really is sufficient.[173] It would be difficult to attempt a legislative listing of all the types of conduct which might amount to complicity, although some progress can be made in that direction.[174] Yet the obvious expedient of allowing prosecutorial discretion to determine (in practice) the lower threshold of criminal complicity not only leaves scope for prosecutors to exert pressure on fringe participants in offences to choose between facing prosecution and testifying in offences against the others, but also accords little weight to the principle of minimum criminalization (see Chapter 3.4(a)).

Although the chapter began by emphasizing that to be liable as an accomplice D must know

the essential elements of P's offence, we have encountered considerable evidence of the dilution of this principle. Thus it has been held sufficient that D believes that it is a real possibility that P will commit a certain offence;[175] that D believes that P will commit one of a group of offences but does not know which one;[176] and that D realizes that P may commit a more serious offence than has been agreed.[177] These are all examples of the expansion of accomplice liability by recognizing forms of recklessness (as to P's intentional acts) as sufficient. General arguments in favour of criminal liability based on recklessness were examined earlier;[178] the problem of applying them directly to the law of complicity is that its reach is so broad and ill-defined that the inclusion of recklessness, defensible in some cases, extends the law considerably in others.

The law of complicity has also become the focal point for a number of arguments about the duties of citizens. The normally restrictive approach of English law towards liability for omissions has already been discussed,[179] but complicity is one sphere in which the courts have abandoned their general reluctance. In a sense, this may be compatible with the idea that the accomplice may be held in some way responsible for (p. 452) the conduct of the principal, a notion implicit in the terminology of 'authority' which is sometimes used, and also in the requirements for withdrawal from complicity. But the idea of legal responsibility as an accomplice for the acts of those whose conduct one has the power to control—rendering the publican, the car owner, and the house owner liable for the conduct of their guests, and employers liable for those of their employees[180]—is a bold step towards omissions liability under the camouflage of the law of complicity.[181] The debate about the liability of the gun-seller as an accomplice to murder turns on somewhat similar considerations of a citizen's duties towards law enforcement, but it has become wrapped up in an analysis of the distinction between intention and purpose. As suggested in Chapter 4.4, a more open and more principled solution would be to create some discrete offences to cover those situations in which it is felt that citizens ought to take positive action.

Another respect in which English law on complicity is confused is the relationship between the accomplice's conduct and that of the principal. On the one hand the law gives itself extraordinary width by its procedural rule which draws no distinction between principal and accomplice in point of charge, conviction, and maximum sentence. Yet on the other hand it has still not relinquished the idea that the accomplice's liability derives from that of the principal, despite the inadequacies of that theory in dealing with cases where there is a missing link[182] or where the principal deviates from the agreed or understood course of action,[183] for example. In these two types of case the courts have stretched or abandoned the derivative theory—but why? The reason for wishing to secure convictions here is surely that the accomplice is no less culpable than would have been the case if the principal had done as intended. Judicial ambivalence between the two approaches remains evident in the House of Lords: on the one hand *Powell and Daniels* (1999)[184] applied the derivative theory in determining the degree of knowledge required for accessorial liability for a more serious offence than planned, whilst in the same decision the House in *English* introduced new and fine-grained distinctions relating to the comparative dangerousness of modes of committing the principal offence that seem more consistent with the principle that each party's liability should be determined separately.

One approach would be to generalize the latter trend by providing for the independent liability of those who help or encourage others to commit offences, and this has become integral to the Law Commission's recommendations. We will see in Chapter 11.7 how Parliament, following the

Law Commission, has enacted inchoate offences of encouraging or assisting crime; the Law Commission now wishes to integrate those offences into a sharpened law of complicity.[185] The fundamental concepts are to be those of assisting and encouraging crime, and the principle is that there must (p. 453) be parity of culpability between principal and accomplice. Thus the four forms of complicity would be reduced to two, assisting and encouraging. Unfortunately, it is not proposed to define either term, although encouraging is to include threatening or putting pressure on another. The absence of definition is regrettable, since judges will need to direct juries and so the courts and the Judicial Studies Board will be required to establish the scope of each term.[186] The absence of statutory definitions becomes a considerable problem when one moves on to the other limb of the Commission's recommendations, an offence of participating in a joint criminal venture. The essence of this form of liability is that one member of the joint venture (D) is liable for an act done by another (P) if it 'falls within the scope of the venture', and that D's liability is not negatived by his absence from the scene, his being against the venture's being carried out or indifferent to whether it is carried out. Problematic here are the absence of a definition of 'joint criminal venture' and the absence of clear specifications of the degree of awareness needed if D is rightly to be convicted. As Professor Sullivan observes, 'this disregard for minimum standards of clarity and comprehensiveness is unsettling'.[187] The Commission's objective was to remain close to the existing law, but, as argued in this chapter, that is complex, under-theorized, and unsatisfactory.

Further Reading

K. J. M. SMITH *A Modern Treatise on the Law of Criminal Complicity* (1991).

J. C. SMITH, 'Criminal Liability of Accessories: Law and Law Reform' (1997) 113 *LQR* 453.

A. P. SIMESTER, 'The Mental Element in Complicity' (2006) 122 *LQR* 578.

B. KREBS 'Joint Criminal Enterprise' (2010) 73 MLR 578.

Law Commission, *Participating in Crime*, Law Com. No. 304 (2007).

New South Wales Law Commission, *Complicity* (Report No. 129, 2010).

Notes:

[1] See the monograph by K. J. M. Smith, *A Modern Treatise on the Law of Criminal Complicity* (1991); Law Commission, *Participating in Crime* (Report No. 305, 2007), Part 2 & App B.

[2] See Chapter 8.3(g).

[3] See Chapter 11.4.

[4] Neal KumarKatyal, 'Conspiracy Theory' (2003) 112 Yale LJ 1307.

[5] It has been suggested that those who merely assist or encourage a joint enterprise (or who assist or encourage an individual intending to commit or committing the crime) should be guilty only of the inchoate offence of assisting or encouraging crime: see the Law Commission,

Consultation Paper No, 131, *Assisting and Encouraging Crime*, 1993. However, the New South Wales Law Commission recommended retention of the English common law approach, in this respect, under which assisting or encouraging the commission of an offence makes one an accessory to, and open to conviction of, the offence itself: Report 129 (2010), *Complicity*.

[6] Theft Act 1968, s. 9; see Chapter 9.5.

[7] It is noteworthy that other jurisdictions often follow a similar approach: see e.g. New South Wales Law Commission, *Complicity* (Report 129, 2010).

[8] This kind of assistance is dealt with by other criminal offences concerned with assisting offenders and attempting to pervert the course of justice.

[9] A complexity in the working of the overlap is that the 2007 Act uses the modern terminology of 'assist' and 'encourage' whereas the Accessories and Abettors Act 1861 uses the language of 'aid, abet, counsel and procure'. Whilst aiding, abetting, and counselling are broadly the same as assisting and encouraging, 'procuring' an offence is arguably something different, but we will come to that point later.

[10] K. J. M. Smith, *A Modern Treatise on Complicity*, 27–30.

[11] See Chapter 8.3(g).

[12] *Jefferson et al.* (1994) 99 Cr App R 13.

[13] See New South Wales Law Commission, *Complicity* (Report No. 129, 2010).

[14] The real controversy in such cases stemmed from the fact that—in breach of the participants' human rights—the political meetings themselves were illegal, thus paving the way for the application of a 1861 Act-style form of liability on the organizers in relation to criminal activity arising from the meetings.

[15] [1997] 1 Cr App R 1.

[16] *Per* Kennedy LJ at 8–9, following (*inter alia*) the Supreme Court of Canada in *Thatcher* v *R* (1987) 39 DLR (3d) 275, where Dickson CJC asked (at 306): 'why should the juror be compelled to make a choice on a subject which is a matter of legal indifference?'.

[17] *Maxwell* v *DPP for Northern Ireland* [1979] 1 WLR 1350 (HL); *Taylor, Harrison and Taylor* [1998] Crim LR 582 (CA); cf. P. R. Glazebrook, 'Structuring the Criminal Code', in A. P. Simester and A. T. H. Smith (eds), *Harm and Culpability* (1996), at 198–2001.

[18] *Giannetto* [1997] 1 Cr App R 1, at 9.

[19] *Mercer* [2001] All ER (D) 187 confronted the point directly; *Concannon* [2002] Crim LR 215 dismissed a different and less persuasive argument.

[20] See G. Fletcher, *Rethinking Criminal Law* (1978) 634ff.

[21] *Russell and Russell* (1987) 85 Cr App R 388; *Emery* (1993) 14 Cr App R (S) 394.

[22] *Lane and Lane* (1986) 82 Cr App R 5.

[23] Chapter 7.6.

[24] *Attorney-General's Reference (No. 1 of 1975)* [1975] QB 773.

[25] See e.g. Lord Goddard CJ in *Ferguson* v *Weaving* [1951] 1 KB 814, and generally J. C. Smith, 'Aid, Abet, Counsel or Procure', in P. R. Glazebrook (ed.), *Reshaping the Criminal Law* (1978).

[26] *Howe* [1987] AC 417, overruling *Richards* [1974] QB 776.

[27] See Chapter 4.6(a) and (b).

[28] Cf. H. L. A. Hart and T. Honoré, *Causation in the Law* (2nd edn., 1985), 388.

[29] S. Kadish, *Blame and Punishment* (1987), 162.

[30] [1951] 1 All ER 464.

[31] [1997] 1 Cr App R 1, at 13.

[32] *State* v *Tally* (1894) 15 So 722.

[33] *Rook* [1993] 2 All ER 955.

[34] *Coney* (1882) 8 QBD 534.

[35] Hawkins J in *Coney* (1882) 8 QBD 534, and *Clarkson* [1971] 1 WLR 1402.

[36] *Wilcox* v *Jeffery* [1951] 1 All ER 464.

[37] *Smith* v *Reynolds et al.* [1986] Crim LR 559; for another decision based on voluntary presence, see *O'Flaherty* [2004] Crim LR 751.

[38] *Jefferson et al.* (1994) 99 Cr App R 13, at 22; for a summary of the main public order offences, see Chapter 8.3(h).

[39] Article 223(1) of the French Penal Code, discussed by A. Ashworth and E. Steiner, 'Criminal Omissions and Public Duties: the French Experience' (1990) 10 *Legal Studies* 153.

[40] [1988] Crim LR 41; cf. also *Bradbury* [1996] Crim LR 808.

[41] Cf. s. 80 of the Police and Criminal Evidence Act 1984, which makes a husband or wife (but not a non-spouse) compellable as a witness on a charge of violence towards a child under 16 in the household; and the offence under s. 5 of the Domestic Violence, Crime and Victims Act 2004, which criminalizes any 'member of the same household' (including lodgers and frequent visitors) who fails to take steps to protect a child from the risk of serious harm.

[42] [1971] 1 WLR 1402.

[43] Cf. the proviso to the new offences in the Serious Crime Act 2007, to be discussed in Chapter 11.7.

[44] [1965] 1 QB 130; see further G. Williams, 'Criminal Omissions—the Conventional View' (1990) 107 LQR 86.

[45] See n 41.

[46] K. J. M. Smith, *Modern Treatise on Complicity*, 39–47.

[47] See Chapter 4.5(c).

[48] [1940] 1 KB 571, discussed by M. Wasik, 'A Learner's Careless Driving' [1982] Crim LR 411, and D. J. Lanham, 'Drivers, Control and Accomplices' [1982] Crim LR 419.

[49] *Du Cros* v *Lambourne* [1907] 1 KB 40.

[50] *Tuck* v *Robson* [1970] 1 WLR 741.

[51] [1997] 2 Cr App R 326.

[52] Cf. the debate between G. Williams, 'Which of You Did It?' (1989) 52 MLR 179 and D. J. Lanham, 'Three Cases of Accessorial Absurdity' (1990) 53 MLR 75.

[53] Law Com No. 305, *Participating in Crime*, para. 3.41 and draft Bill, cl. 8, p. 160.

[54] *NCB* v *Gamble* [1959] 1 QB 11.

[55] *Gillick* v *West Norfolk and Wisbech Area Health Authority* [1986] AC 112, criticized in Chapter 4.9(b) and Chapter 5.2(b)(ii), and discussed in detail at 10.4.

[56] Model Penal Code, s. 2.06(3); see also the reasoning of Glanville Williams, *Criminal Law: the General Part* (2nd edn., 1961), s. 124.

[57] Discussed in Chapter 11.7.

[58] [1959] 1 QB 11, at 20, discussing *Lomas* (1913) 9 Cr App R 220.

[59] See Chapter 4.8, and cf. the defence created by s. 50 of the Serious Crime Act 2007, discussed in Chapter 11.7(d), with the defence recommended in Law Com No. 305, *Participating in Crime*, draft Bill, p. 159.

[60] G. Williams, 'Obedience to Law as a Crime' (1990) 53 MLR 445; an alternative advanced by G. R. Sullivan, 'The Law Commission Consultation Paper on Complicity: Fault Elements and Joint Enterprise' [1994] Crim LR 252, is to exempt crimes triable only on indictment.

[61] *Attorney-General's Reference (No. 1 of 1975)* [1975] QB 773.

[62] See Chapter 6.3.

[63] See *Bourne* (1952) 36 Cr App R 125, discussed in section 10.6.

[64] See *Attorney-General's Reference (No. 1 of 1975)* [1975] QB 773. Cf. P. Alldridge, 'The Doctrine of Innocent Agency' (1990) 2 *Criminal Law Forum* 45.

[65] Law Commission, *Participating in Crime* (Law Com No. 305, 2007), Part 4.

[66] As on the facts of *Richards* [1974] QB 776, and of *Calhaem* [1985] QB 808.

[67] Hart and Honoré, *Causation in the Law*, 51–9, and Chapter 4.5(d).

[68] J. C. Smith, 'Aid, Abet, Counsel or Procure', 134; perhaps the words 'actual or potential help' might be preferable.

[69] *Calhaem* [1985] QB 808.

[70] As in *Bryce* [2004] 2 Cr App R 35 (reference at n 84).

[71] See the strong arguments by G. R. Sullivan, 'First degree murder and complicity' (2007) 1 *Crim. Law & Phil*. 271; cf. J. Gardner, 'Complicity and Causality' (2007) 1 *Crim. Law & Phil*. 127, at 137.

[72] K. J. M. Smith, *Modern Treatise on Complicity*, 141.

[73] *Johnson* v *Youden* [1950] 1 KB 544.

[74] *JF Alford Transport Ltd* [1997] 2 Cr App R at 332, following the High Court of Australia in *Giorgianni* v *R* (1985) 156 CLR 473 at 483; cf. the discussion in S. Shute and A. P. Simester (eds), *Criminal Law Theory* (2002), between Shute (196–8) and Sullivan (213–14).

[75] [1991] RTR 405.

[76] This case was unusual in that the prosecution alleged only 'procuring'. Cf. the aiding and abetting case of *Carter* v *Richardson* [1974] RTR 314, and also *Roberts and George* [1997] Crim LR 209, where the Court of Appeal ruled out 'negligent blindness' and also questioned whether any form of recklessness should suffice. For support for extending liability to recklessness see S. Kadish, 'Reckless Complicity' (1997) 87 *J Crim Law and Criminology* 369.

[77] The attempt of Lord Widgery CJ in *Attorney-General's Reference (No. 1 of 1975)* [1975] QB 773 to argue that the 'generous host' would not be liable was unconvincing then, and is more unconvincing since the *Blakely* case.

[78] [2004] 2 Cr App R 35.

[79] [2006] 2 Cr App R 6.

[80] For a helpful brief discussion, see Law Commission, *Participating in Crime* (Law Com No. 305, 2007), paras. 2.43–7.

[81] [1959] 1 QB 11.

[82] See also *Attorney-General* v *Able* [1984] 1 QB 795.

[83] Model Penal Code, s. 2.06(3).

[84] As in *Woollin* [1999] 1 AC 92 and the draft Criminal Code, cl. 18(b), discussed in Chapter 5.5(b).

[85] [1986] AC 112.

[86] Thus in *JF Alford Transport* [1997] 2 Cr App R at 335 the Court of Appeal followed *NCB* v *Gamble* on this point without citing *Gillick*, and in *Powell* [1999] AC 1, 30, Lord Hutton

expressly declined to follow the *Gillick* approach.

[87] For discussion of a possible defence of medical necessity, based on *Gillick*, see Chapter 4.9(b).

[88] (1985) 80 Cr App R 344; section 10.7(c).

[89] Cf now the reasonableness defence provided by s. 50 of the Serious Crime Act 2007 to the new offences created by that Act, and discussed at Chapter 11.7(d).

[90] See n 74 and accompanying text.

[91] *Bainbridge* [1960] 1 QB 219.

[92] *Bainbridge* [1960] 1 QB 219.

[93] See *Johnson* v *Youden* (reference at n 66); the Law Commission was prepared to describe the *Bainbridge* judgment as an 'evasion' of this basic requirement: LCCP, *Assisting and Encouraging Crime*, para. 3.22.

[94] [1978] 3 All ER 1140.

[95] See n 84 and accompanying text.

[96] The offence is discussed in Chapter 11.7(c).

[97] *R* v *ABCD* [2010] EWCA Crim 1622, at 27.

[98] See K. J. M. Smith, *Modern Treatise on Complicity*, chs 7 and 8.

[99] See his 'Criminal Liability of Accessories: Law and Law Reform' (1997) 113 LQR 453, and now Smith and Hogan, *Criminal Law*, 206–19.

[100] *ABCD* [2010] EWCA Crim 1622.

[101] For different developments of 'the common purpose principle' in South Africa, see J. Burchell, *Principles of Criminal Law* (4th edn., 2012), ch 41.

[102] A. P. Simester, 'The Mental Element in Complicity' (2006) 122 LQR 578, broadly adopted in Law Com No. 305, *Participating in Crime* (2007), 59–64.

[103] J. F. Stephen, *A Digest of the Criminal Law*, Art. 20.

[104] See Chapter 5.4(a) and 5.5(a).

[105] [1985] AC 168.

[106] See n 94 and accompanying text.

[107] [1999] AC 1.

[108] [1999] AC 1, at 24.

[109] J. C. Smith, 'Criminal Liability of Accessories', at 464, cited by Lord Steyn at [1999] AC 14.

[110] New South Wales Law Commission, *Complicity* (Report 129, 2010), draft clause 43(8).

[111] [2008] UKHL 45.

[112] See Chapter 7.3(a).

[113] [1995] 1 Cr App R 441, a controversial decision that supports a separate doctrine of joint enterprise.

[114] [2000] 2 Cr App R 407.

[115] [1999] AC 1.

[116] *Attorney General's Reference No. 3 of 2004* [2005] EWCA Crim 1882.

[117] For the unforeseen mode see Chapter 5.6(b).

[118] *Baldessare* (1930) 22 Cr App R 70; cf. *Mahmood* [1994] Crim LR 368.

[119] Discussed further in section 10.8.

[120] (1573) 2 Plowd 473.

[121] The appeal in this case was consolidated with *Powell* [1999] AC 1.

[122] Cf. the argument of C. M. V. Clarkson, 'Complicity, *Powell* and Manslaughter' [1998] Crim LR 556 in favour of conviction of manslaughter; English was however guilty of a serious wounding offence.

[123] These concepts have not proved easy to apply: cf. *Uddin* [1998] 2 All ER 744 (flick-knife 'fundamentally different' from shortened billiard cues and shod feet); *Greatrex and Bates* [1999] 1 Cr App R 126 (not clear whether metal bar 'fundamentally different' from shod foot).

[124] [2008] UKHL 45, n 104 and accompanying text.

[125] See e.g. Sir Michael Foster, *Crown Law*, p. 369, 'But if the principal in substance complieth with the temptation, varying only in the circumstance of time or place, *or in the manner of execution*, in these cases the person soliciting to the offence will … be an accessory…' (our emphasis).

[126] See now, on transferred malice, *Gnango* [2011] 1 All ER 153.

[127] See e.g. Sir Michael Foster, *Crown Law*, p. 369.

[128] 1968 (1) SA 666.

[129] Chapter 5.5.

[130] Note the practical importance, following *English*, of prosecutors including lesser counts in the indictment to cater for the possibility that D might be acquitted on the ground that P changed the mode of committing the offence, particularly homicide.

[131] The new law is discussed in Chapter 11.7.

[132] Cf. Lord Bingham in *Rahman* [2008] UKHL 45, at 25, referring to the 'earthy realism' of the gbh rule.

[133] See e.g. *Mendez* [2010] EWCA Crim 516; *Badza* [2010] EWCA Crim 1363.

[134] [1987] AC 417.

[135] [1974] QB 776, discussed by Kadish, *Blame and Punishment*, 184–6.

[136] (1952) 36 Cr App R 125.

[137] [1976] 1 QB 217.

[138] [1997] 1 Cr App R 36.

[139] For discussion see Chapter 5.2(a).

[140] The same cannot be said of *DPP* v *K and B*, where, even if the girls had known the boy's age, they would not have known its legal significance.

[141] [1994] Crim LR 527.

[142] *Per* Russell LJ [1997] 1 Cr App R at 45.

[143] [1940] 1 All ER 339; cf. R. D. Taylor, 'Complicity and the Excuses' [1983] Crim LR 656.

[144] (1952) 36 Cr App R 125.

[145] See Chapter 4.5(b), and Alldridge, 'The Doctrine of Innocent Agency'.

[146] *Michael* (1840) 9 C and P 356, Chapter 4.5(b)(i).

[147] See generally the discussion by Kadish, *Blame and Punishment*, Essay 8.

[148] *Attorney-General's Reference (No. 1 of 1975)* [1975] QB 773.

[149] *Cogan and Leak* [1976] 1 QB 217; at this time a husband could not be convicted of the rape of his wife, but that rule has now been abrogated: see Chapter 8.5(d).

[150] *Kemp and Else* [1964] 2 QB 341.

[151] Law Com No. 305, *Participating in Crime* (2007).

[152] See n 68 and accompanying text.

[153] R. D. Taylor, 'Procuring, Causation, Innocent Agency and the Law Commission' [2008] Crim LR 32.

[154] Cf. the unavailability of withdrawal as a defence to criminal attempts, Chapter 11.3(a).

[155] K. J. M. Smith, 'Withdrawal in Complicity: a Restatement of Principles' [2001] Crim LR 769.

[156] E.g. *Saunders and Archer* (1573) 2 Plowd 473, at 476.

[157] *Whitefield* (1984) 79 Cr App R 36.

[158] Cf. K. J. M. Smith, 'Withdrawal in Complicity', at 779–82.

[159] (1975) 62 Cr App R 212; see also *Baker* [1994] Crim LR 444.

[160] [1983] 2 AC 161.

[161] See the argument in J. Gardner, 'Complicity and Causality' (2007) 1 *Criminal Law and Philosophy* 127.

[162] Law Com No. 305, *Participating in Crime*, para. 3.67.

[163] [1894] 1 QB 710.

[164] E.g. *Whitehouse* [1977] QB 868.

[165] Law Com No. 305, *Participating in Crime*, 114–19 and draft Bill, cl. 6.

[166] M. Bohlander, 'The Sexual Offences Act 2003 and the *Tyrell* Principle—Criminalising the Victims?' [2005] Crim LR 701.

[167] For discussion of such defences see Chapter 4.9.

[168] (1984) 80 Cr App R 344.

[169] Compare *Smith* [1960] 2 QB 423, discussed in Chapter 5.5(b)(ii), and *Yip Chiu-Cheung* [1995] 1 AC 111, discussed in Chapter 11.5(c), both denying the defence. For further discussion see A. Ashworth, 'Testing Fidelity to Legal Values' (2000) 63 MLR 633, at 653–8.

[170] Law Com No. 305, *Participating in Crime*, 110–14 and draft Bill, cl. 7.

[171] Serious Crime Act 2007, s. 50, discussed in Chapter 11.7.

[172] E.g. in s. 50 of the Anti-Terrorism, Crime and Security Act 2001, which penalizes anyone who 'aids, abets, counsels, or procures, or incites' an offence relating to biological, chemical, or nuclear weapons outside the United Kingdom.

[173] *Giannetto* [1997] 1 Cr App R 1, section 10.3(a).

[174] See the draft produced by Glazebrook, 'Structuring the Criminal Code', in Simester and Smith (eds), *Harm and Culpability*, 212.

[175] *Bryce* [2004] 2 Cr App R 35 (reference at n 78).

[176] *Maxwell* v *DPP for Northern Ireland* [1978] 3 All ER 1140 (reference at n 94).

[177] *Powell* [1999] AC 1 (reference at n 107).

[178] See Chapter 5.5(c).

[179] See Chapter 4.4(b) and (c).

[180] On the last point, recall *JF Alford Transport*, section 10.3(b).

[181] See A. Ashworth, 'The Scope of Criminal Liability for Omissions' (1989) 105 LQR at 445–7; Law Com No. 177, cl. 24(3).

[182] See section 10.6.

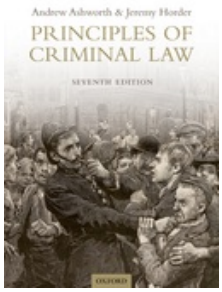
[183] See section 10.5.

[184] [1999] AC 1.

[185] Law Com No. 305, *Participating in Crime* (2007).

[186] See W. Wilson, 'A Rational Scheme of Liability for Participating in Crime' [2008] Crim LR 3.

[187] G. R. Sullivan, 'Participating in Crime: Law Com No. 305—Joint Criminal Ventures', [2008] Crim LR 19, at 21.



Principles of Criminal Law (7th edn)

Andrew Ashworth and Jeremy Horder

Publisher: Oxford University Press
Print ISBN-13: 9780199672684
DOI: 10.1093/he/9780199672684.001.0001

Print Publication Date: May 2013
Published online: Sep 2013

11. Inchoate Offences

Chapter: (p. 454) 11. Inchoate Offences
Author(s): Andrew Ashworth and Jeremy Horder
DOI: 10.1093/he/9780199672684.003.0011

11.1 The concept of an inchoate offence
11.2 The justifications for penalizing attempts at crimes
11.3 The elements of criminal attempt
11.4 The justifications for an offence of conspiracy
11.5 The elements of criminal conspiracy
11.6 Incitement
11.7 Encouraging or assisting crime
11.8 Voluntary renunciation of criminal purpose
11.9 The relationship between substantive and inchoate crimes
11.10 The place of inchoate liability
Further reading

11.1 The concept of an inchoate offence

The word ‘inchoate’, not much used in ordinary discourse, means ‘just begun’, ‘undeveloped’. The common law gave birth to three general offences which are usually termed ‘inchoate’ or ‘preliminary’ crimes—attempt, conspiracy, and incitement. A principal feature of these crimes is that they are committed even though the substantive offence (i.e. the offence it was intended to bring about) is not completed and no harm results. An attempt fails, a conspiracy comes to nothing, words of incitement are ignored—in all these instances, there may be liability for the inchoate crime. However, the legal landscape has changed in several ways. In the first place, the Law Commission recommended and Parliament decided that the inchoate offence of incitement should be abolished and replaced by a more extensive set of offences of assisting or encouraging crime, and these are examined in 11.7. Secondly, those offences take their place alongside others that criminalize conduct at an early stage, well before the stage of a criminal attempt—an important example being the offence of engaging in ‘any conduct in preparation for giving effect to’ an intention to commit acts of terrorism in s. 5 of the Terrorism Act 2006.[1] Thirdly, we have noted throughout the book that several newly created offences are defined in an inchoate mode, i.e. doing a certain act with intent to do *X*—offences under the Fraud Act 2006 being a clear example—and (p. 455) that they may therefore be committed even if no harmful result occurs. The law of inchoate offences also applies to these offences defined in an inchoate mode, driving criminal liability even further back. Fourthly, crimes of possession are also essentially inchoate:[2] it is not the mere possession, so much as what the possessor might do with the article or substance, which is the reason for criminalization. Once again, more crimes of possession are being created. These developments in the criminal law will be assessed after a discussion of the two remaining common law inchoate offences—attempt and conspiracy—and the new statutory inchoate offences of encouraging or assisting crime.

11.2 The justifications for penalizing attempts at crimes[3]

(a) Introduction

Let us begin with three examples: (i) X goes to the house of his rival, V, with a can of petrol, some paper, and a box of matches; he soaks the paper in petrol and is about to push it through the letter box when he is arrested before he can do anything more; (ii) Y drives a car straight at V, but V jumps out of the way at the last moment and is uninjured; (iii) Z is offered money to carry a package of cannabis into Britain; she accepts, brings the package in, but on her arrest it is found that the package contains dried lettuce leaves. These are all cases in which there may be a conviction for attempt.[4] The first feature to be noticed is that no harm actually occurred in any of them—no damage was done, no injury caused, no drugs smuggled. Normally, criminal liability requires both culpability and harm: X, Y, and Z may appear culpable, but they have caused no harm. Why, then, should the criminal law become involved? One answer is that harm does indeed have a central place in criminal liability, but that the concern is not merely with the occurrence of harm but also with its prevention. According to this view, the first decision for legislators is exactly which harms and wrongs should properly be objects of the criminal law (see Chapter 2). Once this has been decided, and taking the aims of the criminal law into account,[5] the law should not only provide for the punishment of those who have culpably caused such harms, but also penalize those who are trying to cause the harms. A person who tries to cause a prohibited harm and fails is, in terms of moral culpability, not materially different from the person who tries and succeeds: the

difference in outcome is determined by chance rather than by choice, and a censuring institution such as the criminal law should not subordinate itself to the vagaries of fortune by focusing on results rather than on culpability. There is also a consequentialist justification for the law of attempts, inasmuch as it reduces harm by authorizing law (p. 456) enforcement officers and the courts to step in *before* any harm has been done, so long as the danger of the harm being caused is clear.

(b) Two kinds of attempt

The rationale for criminalizing attempts can best be appreciated by drawing a theoretical distinction (which the law itself does not draw) between two kinds of attempt. First, there are incomplete attempts, which are cases in which the defendant has set out to commit an offence but has not yet done all the acts necessary to bring it about. Our first example, of X about to put petrol-soaked paper through the door of V's house, is such a case: he has still to light the paper or push it through the door. Contrast this with the second kind of attempt, which will be called a complete attempt. Here the defendant has done all that he intended, but the desired result has not followed—Y has driven the car at V, intending to injure V, but he failed; and Z has smuggled the package into the country, believing it to be cannabis when in fact it is a harmless and worthless substance.

It is easier to justify the criminalization of complete attempts than incomplete attempts, and the two sets of justifications have somewhat different emphases. The justification for punishing complete attempts is that the defendant has done all the acts intended, with the beliefs required for the offence, and is therefore no less blameworthy than a person who is successful in committing the substantive offence. The complete ‘attempter’ is thwarted by some unexpected turn of events which, to him, is a matter of pure chance—the intended victim jumped out of the way or the substance was not what it appeared to be. These are applications of what were called the ‘subjective’ principles earlier, the essence of which is that people's criminal liability should be assessed on what they were trying to do, intended to do, and believed they were doing, rather than on the actual consequences of their conduct.[6] Rejection of this approach would lead to criminal liability always being judged according to the actual outcome, which would allow luck to play too great a part in the criminal law. Of course luck and chance play a considerable role in human affairs, and we have already seen how important the chance result of death is in the law of involuntary manslaughter.[7] However, there is no reason why a system for judging and formally censuring the behaviour of others should be a slave to the vagaries of chance. The ‘subjective principle’ would also be accepted by the consequentialist as a justification for criminalizing complete attempts: the defendant was trying to break the law, and therefore constituted a source of social danger no less (or little less) than that presented by ‘successful’ harm-doers.

What about incomplete attempts? The subjective principle does have some application here, inasmuch as the defendant has given some evidence of a determination to commit the substantive offence—though the evidence is likely to be less conclusive (p. 457) than in cases of complete attempts. There is one distinct factor present in incomplete attempts, which is the social importance of authorizing official intervention before harm is done. Since the prevention of harm has a central place in the justifications for criminal law, there is a strong case for stopping attempts before they result in the causing of harm. Detailed arguments about the point at which the law should intervene are discussed in section 11.3(b). Once this point

has been reached, then the agents of law enforcement may intervene to stop attempts before they go further. The culpability of the incomplete attempter may be less than that of the complete attempter because there remains the possibility that there would have been voluntary repentance at some late stage: after all, it may take greater nerve to do the final act which triggers the actual harm than to do the preliminary acts. But so long as it is accepted that the incomplete attempter has evinced a clear intention to commit the substantive offence by doing some further acts, there is sufficient ground for criminalization.[8]

Although there are sufficient grounds for criminalizing both complete and incomplete attempts, it may be right to reflect some differences between them at the sentencing stage. It may be argued that incomplete attempts should be punished less severely than the full offence—because of the possibility of voluntary abandonment of the attempt, because it takes greater nerve to consummate an offence, and because it may be prudent to leave some incentive (i.e. reduced punishment) to the incomplete attempter to give up rather than to carry out the full offence. For complete attempts the case for reduced punishment is less strong, although there may be an argument for some reduction of punishment in order to give the complete attempter an incentive not to try again—otherwise D might reason that there is nothing to lose by this.[9] However, on the objectivist approach to attempts advocated by Antony Duff, lesser punishment for completed attempts would be important to mark the fact that D failed to produce the intended effect in the real world.[10] It will be noticed that these arguments for reduced punishments are consequentialist in nature. Following the principle of 'desert', there is little reason for reducing the punishment of the complete attempter, although there is some reason for recognizing the possibility that the incomplete attempter might yet desist.

(p. 458) 11.3 The elements of criminal attempt

The relevant English law is now to be found in the Criminal Attempts Act 1981, which followed a Law Commission report on the subject.[11] It will be discussed by considering three separate aspects of the offence in turn—the fault element, the conduct element, and the problem of impossibility.

(a) The fault element[12]

It has been said that, where a person is charged with an attempt, 'the intent becomes the principal ingredient of the crime'.[13] English law on this point appears clear, in that s. 1(1) of the Criminal Attempts Act 1981 begins by stating that D must be shown to have acted, 'with intent to commit an offence to which this section applies'.[14] There have been appeals in cases where D has been charged with attempting to cause grievous bodily harm by driving a car at another person, and the defence has been that D did not intend to injure the other. These appeals have led the courts to establish that purpose is not required for the crime of attempt: what is needed, according to James LJ in *Mohan* (1976),[15] is proof of 'a decision to bring about … [the offence], no matter whether the accused desired that consequence of his act or not'. This is supposed to align the meaning of intent here with its meaning in the general law, so as to include foresight of virtual certainty,[16] although those who regard ordinary language as important may have misgivings about this 'extension'.[17]

Accepting that an attempt must involve intention, whether direct or inferred from a foresight of virtual certainty, a further question then arises: which of the elements of the offence must be

intended? Section 1(1) of the 1981 Act speaks of an 'intent to commit an offence', but that wording is ambiguous on this crucial point. Consider an example in which D is caught as he is about to throw a stone in the direction of a window, and D is charged with attempted criminal damage. Criminal damage contrary to the Criminal Damage Act 1971 is committed if, without lawful excuse, D intentionally or recklessly damages or destroys property belonging to another. Suppose D says that his intention was to throw the stone in the general direction of the window, but not directly at the window: in other words, he admits recklessness with regard to damaging the window if he performs the intended action of throwing the stone that way. For the purposes of **(p. 459)** convicting D of an attempt to commit this offence, it is clear that the prosecution will have to establish that, in throwing the stone, D actually intended to damage the window (the conduct element of the offence). There is no general crime of 'reckless endangerment' of persons or property in English law.[18] Although recklessness with regard to damaging the window would suffice as the fault element for criminal damage itself, had the window been damaged by the stone when thrown, it is an insufficient fault element for the crime of attempting to commit criminal damage. It is, though, also an element of the basic offence of criminal damage that the window belong to another person. Does it follow that, in order to fulfil the requirements of s. 1 of the 1981 Act, D must also be proved to have intended to damage *another person's* window, or is it sufficient that D was reckless as to whether the window belonged to another person? This does not necessarily follow, because the fact that the property damaged belongs to another person is a 'circumstance' element of the crime, and not a conduct or consequence element (unlike damaging the window: the conduct element). Arguably, the requirement of intention in criminal attempts relates to the '(in)action' elements of the crime, the conduct and consequence elements, rather than to non-action elements of the crime, its circumstance elements, that go towards describing its criminality (vital though these elements are). The fact that property 'belongs to another' is clearly an essential element of criminal damage, but not an 'action' element, and it is thus open to the law to hold that, if recklessness suffices for this element when the completed crime is in issue, it also suffices when an attempt to commit the crime is in issue.

However, the law has never been entirely clear on this crucial point, although there were some indications that the courts—although reserving the right to interpret the elements of each offence in such a way as seems appropriate in context—were moving towards a general distinction between conduct (or consequence) elements, which must be intended, and circumstance elements, where the fault element will be the same as for the completed offence.[19] Whilst regarded as in broad terms correct, the Law Commission was unhappy with the application of this rule (if such it was, at common law) when no fault at all, or only negligence, was required as to the circumstance element. This, the Law Commission thought, would cast the net of liability too wide.

For example, suppose D, aged 12, is charged with attempting to engage in sexual activity with a child, contrary to s. 9 of the Sexual Offences Act 2003. The case against D is that he moved towards V, aged 15, with the intention of touching V's breasts when **(p. 460)** she told him it would be okay because she was over 16 years old. The evidence reveals that V's brother had told D of V's true age the day before and warned D that his sister tended to lie about her age, but D says he had forgotten that conversation in the heat of the moment. Is D guilty of an attempt to commit the s. 9 offence, assuming that (a) he intended the conduct element to occur (a sexual touching), and (b) his belief that V was aged 16 (the circumstance element) was not based on reasonable grounds? He is guilty if, in relation to (b), all that is required is

proof of the fault element as to circumstances in the completed offence: an absence of reasonable belief that V was aged 16 or over. It is, though, strongly arguable that this approach would cast the net of criminal liability too widely: does D really deserve to be regarded as a would-be child sex offender, to be placed on the child sex offender register?[20] Accordingly, the Law Commission's recommendation is to insist that, on a charge of attempt, the prosecution must prove subjective recklessness as to the existence of circumstances, in cases where the full offence requires either no proof of fault in relation to a circumstance element, or proof only of negligence in some form in relation to a circumstance element.[21]

One difficulty facing the courts, whether or not the law is reformed along such lines, is to distinguish between the '(in)action' elements of the offence—the conduct and consequence elements—and the circumstance elements, where a particular offence makes the distinction a hard one to draw. An example is the aggravated offence, contrary to s. 1(2) of the Criminal Damage Act 1971, of damaging or destroying property, being reckless as to whether life is endangered thereby. Suppose D tries to drop a piece of concrete from a bridge over a motorway, but he is unable to heave it off the ledge as it is too heavy. When arrested, D says that his intention was solely to damage a car, although he realized that danger might be posed to the driver. For the purposes of securing a conviction for attempt, will it be necessary for the prosecution to show not merely that D intended to damage the car (the conduct element), but also that D intended to endanger someone's life thereby? Or, will it be enough that D was reckless as to this element of the 'aggravated' offence under s. 1(2)?

On analogous facts, in *Attorney-General's Reference (No. 3 of 1992)*,[22] the Court of Appeal held that a person can be convicted of attempted aggravated arson if he intends to cause damage to property by fire while reckless as to whether the life of another would thereby be endangered. The case has been criticized for its failure to require intention as to both elements of the offence, on the basis that they are either conduct or consequence elements, and not circumstance elements.[23] However, caution is needed **(p. 461)** here. An element of an offence may be a conduct, circumstance, or a consequence element, depending either on how the offence as a whole is defined or on the way in which the prosecution makes its case. For example, the dangerousness of 'dangerous driving' is a conduct element if the focus is on the manner in which D drove, but it can be a circumstance element if the danger came not from the manner of D's driving, as such, but from the fact that, say, D had crammed twelve people into a small car designed to carry only four people. In the case of s. 1(2) of the 1971 Act, in proving the completed offence, D must be shown to have been reckless whether life was endangered by the damage D caused; it is not necessary to show that life was in fact endangered by D's action. Accordingly, this element of the offence is best described as a circumstance-fault element, and not as a consequence element. It follows that, as it is a circumstance element, the prosecution must prove the same thing on an attempt charge that it is obliged to prove when charging the completed offence: namely, that D was reckless whether life was endangered by the damage he or she caused. There is no need to prove that D intended life to be endangered thereby (which would be a consequence element), because no such consequence need ensue for the completed offence to be committed. The Court of Appeal's decision does open up the question whether we should have a general law of reckless endangerment. Such a development might extend the reach of the criminal law considerably, and ought to be contemplated only after thorough enquiry.[24] Since we are concerned here with preliminary offences which go beyond the definitions of substantive crimes, is it not more judicious to proceed in this piecemeal way, thereby ensuring that the

outer boundaries of the criminal law are carefully regulated?

(b) The conduct element[25]

Since the effect of the law of attempts is to extend the criminal sanction further back than the definition of substantive offences, the question of the minimum conduct necessary to constitute an attempt has great importance. The issue concerns incomplete attempts: when has a person gone far enough to justify criminal liability? Two schools of thought may be outlined here. First, there is the fault-centred approach, arguing that the essence of an attempt is trying to commit a crime, and that all the law should require is proof of the intention plus any act designed to implement that intention. The reasoning is that any person who has gone so far as to translate a criminal intention into action has crossed the threshold of criminal liability, and deserves punishment (though, for the reasons given above—the possibility of abandonment, for example—the punishment would be less than for a complete attempt). Secondly, there is the act-centred approach, of which two types may be distinguished. One type bases itself on the argument that one cannot be sure that the deterrent effect of the criminal law **(p. 462)** has failed until D has done all the acts necessary, since one could regard the law as successful if D did stop before the last act out of fear of detection and punishment. This suggests that only acts close to the substantive crime should be criminalized. The other type of act-centred approach is adopted by those who see great dangers of oppressive official action—to the detriment of individual liberties—if the ambit of the law of attempts is not restricted tightly. If *any* overt act were to suffice as the conduct element in attempts, wrongful arrests might be more numerous; convictions would turn largely on evidence of D's intention, so the police might be tempted to exert pressure in order to obtain a confession; and miscarriages of justice might increase, especially when inferences from silence are permissible (see subsection (c)). To safeguard the liberty of citizens and to assure people that justice is being fairly administered, the law should require proof of an unambiguous act close to the commission of the crime before conviction of an attempt.[26] Otherwise, we would be risking a world of thought crimes and thought police.

The choices for the conduct element in attempts might therefore be ranged along a continuum. The least requirement would be any ‘overt act’ (manifesting the relevant fault element), but that would be objectionable as risking oppressive police practices and as leaving little opportunity for an attempter to withdraw voluntarily. The most demanding requirement would be the ‘last act’ or ‘final stage’, but that goes too far in the other direction, leaving little time for the police to intervene to prevent the occurrence of harm and allowing the defence to gain an acquittal by raising a doubt whether D had actually done the very last act. In the US the Model Penal Code requires D to have taken a ‘substantial step’ towards the commission of the full offence.[27] This might appear to breach the principle of maximum certainty,[28] but the Model Penal Code seeks to avoid this by listing a number of authoritative examples of a ‘substantial step’. Thus, the approach recognizes the inevitable flexibility in questions of degree such as this but seeks to give some firm guidance. The Criminal Attempts Act 1981 requires D to have done ‘an act which is more than merely preparatory to the commission of the offence’. Opinions differ on whether this is closer to the fault-centred approach than is the ‘substantial step’ test, but it is certainly more vague (since there are no authoritative examples), and the Act leaves the application of the test entirely to the jury, once the judge has found that there is sufficient evidence of an attempt.[29] At the earlier stage of arrest, it leaves much to the judgment of the police officer.[30]

(p. 463) On a plain reading of the Act the proper test is whether D was still engaged in merely preparatory acts, in which case he is not guilty of attempt, or whether his conduct was *more* than merely preparatory. This is inevitably a question of degree, and the Court of Appeal has not been wholly consistent in its classification of different cases. Thus, in *Jones* (1990)[31] D bought a gun, shortened its barrel, put on a disguise, and then jumped into the back seat of his rival's car. D pointed the loaded gun at his rival and said 'You are not going to like this', but his rival then grabbed the gun. The defence argument was that this could not amount to attempted murder: what D had done was not more than merely preparatory, because he still had to release the safety catch, put his finger on the trigger, and pull it. The Court of Appeal dismissed this argument, which was more appropriate to the 'last act' test, and held that once D had climbed into the car and pointed the gun there was ample evidence for a jury to hold that attempted murder had been committed. A more difficult case is *Campbell* (1991)[32] where the police had received information about a planned post office robbery. They watched D in the street outside the post office. They arrested him as he approached the door of the post office, and found him to be carrying an imitation firearm and a threatening note, and carrying (but not wearing) sunglasses. The Court of Appeal quashed D's conviction for attempted robbery, holding that it is extremely unlikely that a person could be convicted of an attempt when he 'has not even gained the place where he could be in a position to carry out the offence'.[33] He had not entered the post office, and was no longer wearing the sunglasses.[34] This decision was followed in *Geddes* (1996),[35] where the Court of Appeal quashed a conviction for attempted false imprisonment. D had been seen loitering around the lavatory block of a boys' school, and the prosecution case rested on a can of cider found in a lavatory cubicle, D's rucksack (containing a large kitchen knife, rope, and masking tape) found in nearby bushes, and evidence from a third party that D was sexually fascinated by young boys. The Court harboured no doubt that D's intentions were as the prosecution alleged, but held ('with the gravest unease') that, since D had not spoken to or confronted any pupil at the school, his conduct had been merely preparatory and no more. On the other side of the line fell *Tosti* (1997),[36] where convictions for attempted burglary were upheld. D and another man were seen crouching by the door of a barn, examining the padlock. When disturbed they tried to run away, and D was caught. His car was found nearby, and there was (p. 464) oxy-acetylene cutting equipment concealed in a hedge. The Court of Appeal took the view that D had done an act showing that he had tried to commit the offence, rather than merely putting himself in a position to do so.

The Court of Appeal's various endeavours to reformulate the statutory test so that it can be applied meaningfully to the facts of differing cases have not been conspicuously successful. It is hardly helpful to refer to the steering of a 'mid-way course' between the 'last act' test and the penalization of merely preparatory acts.[37] The Court in *Tosti* rightly emphasized the distinction between preparatory acts, which may constitute an attempt, and *merely* preparatory acts, which may not; but that distinction is difficult to apply to *Campbell*, where one might suggest that D had gone beyond mere preparation, whereas *Geddes* is closer to the dividing line. Sheer physical proximity to the intended victim or targeted property may be the only sensible distinction between the convictions upheld in *Jones* and in *Tosti* and the other decisions.

The Law Commission proposes that the law should penalize 'criminal preparation' by those who are 'in the process of executing a plan to commit an intended offence'; that the test should be 'defined with a degree of imprecision' so as to enable courts to deal fairly with a

variety of circumstances; and that there should be a list of statutory examples to guide the courts in applying the new test.[38] The Commission denies that the new test would enlarge the current law of attempts and, since no case for extending the law has been made out, the new offence must be carefully drafted so as to ensure this. The use of examples, pioneered in the USA,[39] may well be a fruitful device for achieving consistency in judicial rulings.

(c) The problem of impossibility[40]

Just as the conduct element in attempts relates chiefly to incomplete attempts, so the problem of impossibility usually arises in connection with complete attempts. Once again, there are fault-centred and act-centred perspectives to be considered, according to whether one takes the view that D's beliefs or the reality of D's conduct should be the primary determinant of liability.

The fault-centred approach to impossible attempts is a straightforward application of the subjective principle (see Chapter 5.4(a)): a person should be judged on the facts or circumstances as he or she believed them to be at the time. We have seen how the belief principle operates as a ground of exculpation where D is labouring under a mistake of fact (see Chapter 5.5(c)). Here it operates as a ground of inculpation. In other words, where D *believes* that he is doing acts which amount to an offence, it is justifiable to **(p. 465)** convict of an attempt to commit that offence. D's state of mind is just as blameworthy as it would be if the facts *were* as they are believed to be.

Thus, we are justified in convicting the person who smuggles dried lettuce leaves in the belief that they are cannabis, and the person who puts sugar in someone's drink in the belief that it is cyanide, and the person who handles goods in the belief that they are stolen. In all these cases there is no relevant moral difference between their culpability and the culpability in cases where the substances *really* are cannabis, cyanide, and stolen goods.

The act-centred approach points to the absence of actual danger in these cases. Thus it is argued that there is a risk of oppression if the law criminalizes people in objectively innocent situations.[41] Part of the concern here is that convictions might be based on confessions which are the result of fear, confusion, or even police fabrication.[42] Without the need to establish any objectively incriminating facts, the police might construct a case simply on the basis of remarks attributed to the accused person. Anyone carrying a bag might be liable to be arrested and to have attributed to him or her the remark: 'I thought it contained drugs'. These arguments based on the threat to individual rights are too important to be dismissed peremptorily, particularly since the Criminal Justice and Public Order Act 1994 provides that adverse inferences may be drawn from a suspect's silence in the face of key questions, without also providing that statements attributed by the police to the suspect, which are unrecorded and which the suspect denies, should be inadmissible in evidence.[43] There has been no shortage of research findings to the effect that new controls on the police tend to be manipulated in practice so that the intended goals may not be achieved.[44] It may therefore be unsafe to expect the laws of criminal procedure to prevent any dangers to individual rights: if a fault-centred law leads to police malpractice which cannot otherwise be prevented, it ought to be narrowed. This leaves untouched the fault-centred argument that there really is no difference in terms of moral culpability or dangerousness between persons who actually do make an impossible attempt and many ordinary attempters.[45] However, there are also

principled arguments in favour of at least a partly objectivist law of attempts, either allowing impossibility as a defence in those relatively unusual circumstances where D's (p. 466) endeavour fails to connect with the real world, or more broadly developing the view that actual consequences make a significant moral difference.[46]

There would be little difference between the two approaches over the case of D, who fired a shot at V and missed because his aim was not good enough. That is a classic criminal attempt. But what is the difference between that and a case in which E puts sugar in X's drink in the belief that it is cyanide? On the act-centred approach there is no social danger in the latter case, because sugar is innocuous; yet it is equally true that there is no danger in the first case, because shooting and missing is innocuous. Some might say that D might try again and the shot might not miss; yet it is equally possible that E might try again and might choose an ingredient which actually is poisonous. It seems, then, that the act-centred approach incorporates one limb of the subjective principle—that people should be judged on the consequences they intend to happen—but not the other (belief) limb—that people should be judged on the facts as they believe them to be. There is no principled explanation for accepting one and not the other, apart from the argument about police powers and individual liberty, which ought (if possible) to be tackled directly, and not through a distortion of the law of attempts.

The recent history of English law contains evidence of both approaches. The House of Lords in *Haughton* v *Smith*[47] adopted an act-centred stance, but the Law Commission accepted the arguments above and recommended a fault-centred approach, in which impossibility would be no defence to liability. Debate continued during the passage of the new law, and one result of further changes of mind by the government was two strangely worded provisions in s. 1(2) and (3) of the Criminal Attempts Act 1981. The Act purported to follow the Law Commission and to criminalize impossible attempts, but the House of Lords interpreted the provisions so as not to achieve this result, and it was only in *Shivpuri* (1986)[48] that it was settled that, in the English law of attempts, D is judged on the facts as he or she believed them to be. Thus, if a person buys electronic equipment believing that it is stolen (when it is not), that constitutes an attempt to handle stolen goods.

The fault-centred approach here has been limited to beliefs about facts. If D is mistaken about the law, believing that certain conduct is an offence when it is not, there is no liability for an attempt. Thus, where D believed that he was smuggling currency into the country but there is no offence of importing currency, there could be no conviction.[49] This is easily explained: there is no crime to be attempted, only an imaginary crime. But it can also be seen as a corollary of the maxim that ignorance of the law is no excuse:[50] a mistake about the criminal law neither exculpates nor inculpates. (p. 467) By contrast, a mistake as to the facts may exculpate (subject to other policies relevant to mistakes)[51] or inculpate (as an impossible attempt), since the general principle is that D is judged on the facts as he or she believed them to be.[52]

(d) Reform

The Law Commission has consulted on a set of proposals for reforming the law of attempts, as noted at various points above. The major argument is that completed attempts should be distinguished from incomplete attempts (as this work has always maintained), and that two

separate offences should be devised to cater for this—the offence of attempt, for those who are engaged in the last acts towards committing the substantive offence, and 'criminal preparation', for those caught at an earlier stage. The Commission is right to emphasize that the 'ordinary language' approach to criminal attempts is ill-suited to deal with incomplete attempts, but whether the solution of two separate offences is either necessary or practical seems doubtful.[53] On the other hand, the Commission's other proposals—on the fault element, on the use of examples to bring consistency to decisions on the conduct element, and on including attempts by omission—are to be welcomed. However, the Commission acknowledges that the proliferation of statutory offences of preparation has become opportunistic rather than principled, and the question of the overall reach of the criminal law needs to be re-assessed.[54]

11.4 The justifications for an offence of conspiracy

The essence of conspiracy is an agreement between two or more persons to commit a criminal offence. The reason for criminalization is largely preventive, as in the law of attempts, since it enables the police and the courts to intervene before any harm has actually been inflicted. Whereas in attempts the doing of a 'more than merely preparatory' act is required as evidence of the firmness of the intent, in conspiracy it is the fact of agreement with others which is regarded as sufficiently firm evidence that the parties are committed to carrying out the crime. Another part of the justification for an offence of conspiracy is that persons who go so far as to reach an agreement to commit a crime, and are caught before the agreement is carried out, may not be significantly less blameworthy or less dangerous than persons who conspire and succeed in bringing about the substantive offence.

(p. 468) However, this fairly traditional analysis of conspiracy as an inchoate offence neglects the other social functions which conspiracy law has been called upon to perform. In the nineteenth century it was accepted that a conviction for criminal conspiracy could be based on an agreement to do any unlawful act, even though that act was not criminal but only a civil wrong, such as a tort or breach of contract. This gave the criminal law a long reach, particularly with regard to the activities of the early trade unions, and the courts upheld conspiracy convictions for what were, in effect, agreements to strike until the law was changed by the Conspiracy and Protection of Property Act 1875 and the Trade Disputes Act 1906.[55] In social terms, the criminal law lent its authority to those who wished to suppress organized industrial action. In legal terms, the reasoning seemed to be that acts which were insufficiently anti-social to justify criminal liability when done by one person could become sufficiently anti-social to justify criminal liability when done by two or more people acting in agreement. Such a combination of malefactors might increase the probability of harm resulting, might in some cases increase public alarm, and might in other cases facilitate the perpetration and concealment of the wrong.[56] Prosecutions were often brought in cases where the agreement had been carried out and the unlawful acts done, since there was no substantive criminal offence to be prosecuted (in that the conspiracy was to do an unlawful but non-criminal act). Thus the legal definition turned on an 'agreement', but the social reality centred upon the actual commission of the tort or breach of contract, from which a prior agreement was inferred. In these contexts, conspiracy functioned more as an additional substantive offence than as an inchoate crime.

In the 1960s and 1970s the House of Lords, pursuing a broad policy of social defence,

expanded the law of conspiracy considerably by criminalizing various agreements to do non-criminal acts;[57] but in *DPP* v *Withers* (1975)[58] their Lordships called a halt, holding that there was no such offence as conspiracy to cause a public mischief. This presaged the Law Commission's report on conspiracy in 1976, which recommended that the offence of conspiracy should be coextensive with the substantive law.[59] Conspiracies should be criminal only if the conduct agreed upon constitutes a crime when done by one person. The principles of non-retroactivity and maximum certainty were accepted, even to the point of asserting that if some new form of wickedness were to arise which did not fall within existing offences, the proper approach would be to await a response from the legislature rather than for the judges to exploit the elasticity of the law of conspiracy.[60] Parliament adopted the substance of the Law Commission's report, and **(p. 469)** enacted the Criminal Law Act 1977. Part I of the Act created the offence of statutory conspiracy, limited to agreements to commit one or more criminal offences; Part II provided a handful of offences of trespass on residential premises.[61] An agreement to commit one of these distinct trespass offences is a statutory conspiracy, and the common law offence of conspiracy to trespass, upheld in *Kamara*,[62] was abolished.

The 1977 Act did not, however, accomplish a clean sweep of common law conspiracy. The Law Commission had been unable to complete its examination of conspiracy to defraud and any new offences which might be needed to replace it (see Chapter 9.8); and another committee was engaged in a review of the laws on obscenity, which led the government to exclude from the 1977 Act conspiracies to corrupt public morals and to outrage public decency.[63] Thus the controversial decision in *Shaw*[64] remains authoritative on conspiracy to corrupt public morals, as does the decision in *Knuller*[65] on conspiracy to outrage public decency, and also *Scott* v *Metropolitan Police Commissioner*[66] on conspiracy to defraud, whose precepts owe more to the ‘thin ice’ principle (Chapter 3.4(b)) and the policy of social defence (Chapter 3.5(j)) than to any notion of maximum certainty in criminal law (Chapter 3.5(i)). The only small retrenchment is that conspiracy to outrage public decency is now a form of statutory conspiracy, as a result of the decision in *Gibson* (1990) to the effect that the offence of outraging public decency is a substantive offence that one individual can commit.[67]

Leaving aside the common law conspiracies to defraud, to corrupt public morals, and to outrage public decency, is it true to say that statutory conspiracy functions primarily as an inchoate offence? Few conspiracies can be prosecuted at the stage of agreement, because meetings of conspirators usually take place in private and it is rare for sufficient evidence to become available until some acts in furtherance of the agreement have been done and observed. So the rationale of early prevention, even before an attempt has been committed, is often far from the social facts. However, another function of inchoate offences is to criminalize those who try and fail, as well as those who are caught before they have the chance to succeed or fail. Conspiracy does fulfil this function, being used against those who join together to commit a crime in circumstances in which it is impossible to do so.[68] Yet there remains a way in which even statutory conspiracy also functions as an extra criminal offence. The rules of evidence in conspiracy cases are somewhat wider than those in other trials: for example, the **(p. 470)** statements of one co-conspirator are admissible in evidence against another if they relate to an act done in furtherance of the conspiracy, by way of exception to the general rule that the admissions of one co-defendant cannot be adduced in evidence against the other.[69] Moreover, all that has to be proved for conspiracy is the agreement, and that may be inferred from behaviour. Prosecutors who wish to take advantage of these rules may prefer to charge conspiracy instead of the substantive crime even in a case where the substantive

offence has been committed: it is bad practice for them to charge both conspiracy and the substantive crime,[70] but it is no answer to a conspiracy charge alone that the substantive offence was in fact committed. In the terminology of English criminal procedure, a conspiracy does not 'merge' with the substantive offence. Thus the prosecution may defend its use of a conspiracy charge as giving a more rounded impression of the nature of the criminal enterprise, in terms of planning and the different roles of the various participants.[71]

Despite this use of the crime of conspiracy as an extra substantive offence, its primary justifications remain those of an inchoate offence. An individual who declares an intent to steal certain property has committed no offence; two or more individuals who agree to do the same thing may be convicted of conspiracy to steal. How strong are the justifications? Three arguments may be considered. First, criminal groups generate a 'special social identity' that leads to loyalty, commitment, and indeed a certain loss of control by individuals as a group dynamic takes over, with individuals being afraid to withdraw and participants spurring each other on. Some psychological research suggests that even hastily formed groups may quickly generate this kind of identity and loyalty.[72] The implication is that such joint criminal ventures may acquire a momentum of their own and may render the commission of further offences more likely, and that this justifies singling them out.[73] Secondly, where several people are involved, this may enable individual members to distance themselves from the actual harm to be caused by looking little further than their own acts of assistance. This 'technique of neutralization' may make crime easier to carry out.[74] Thirdly the involvement of several people in an offence may create greater fear in victims and greater public alarm. One could imagine an individual more terrifying than two bungling offenders, but this casts little doubt on the qualitative difference between most criminal gangs and the activities of most lone offenders. In many cases group crimes are more terrifying, and sentencers may well be justified in treating this as an aggravating factor, as is the **(p. 471)** case under French law when an offence is committed by 'several people acting as an organized gang'.[75]

Whether considerations such as these justify the creation of special public order offences aimed at group behaviour, with separate rules of proof favouring prosecutors, was questioned earlier.[76] Do they justify the law of conspiracy, especially now that Part 2 of the Serious Crime Act 2007 has introduced wider-ranging inchoate offences of encouraging and assisting crime?[77] What if the doctrine of merger were extended, so that conspiracy ceased to be chargeable if the substantive offence had been committed? No special characteristic of group criminality would be lost, because there remains the doctrine of complicity. The law of principals and accomplices may lack some of the evidentiary advantages to the prosecution which conspiracy has, but it does favour the prosecution procedurally by not requiring it to charge defendants separately as accomplices or principals.[78] And there is the same discretion at the sentencing stage to reflect the element of aggravation in planned group offending.

A similar question about the dispensability of the offence of conspiracy may be asked in relation to its inchoate function. Many conspiracies will already have been carried far enough to fulfil the test for criminal attempt, under the existing or the proposed law, or the new offences of encouraging or assisting crime. Much of the ground might therefore be covered by the law of attempts and by prosecutions for complicity in attempts. This leaves only the few cases where clear evidence is obtained of an agreement to commit a crime, without any action having yet been taken to implement the agreement. The Law Commission argues that the

offence remains vital to deal with these cases, particularly where the police or security services possess intelligence about a planned terrorist incident that enables them to prove an agreement and thus to intervene early.[79] Even if this is conceded, it seems likely that the offence of conspiracy will continue to be used much more broadly, in cases where the doctrine of complicity also applies, because prosecutors like having the powers that it gives them.[80] These powers raise a range of other questions, however. Agreements usually involve words, and issues of privacy, freedom of speech, and freedom of association may arise here,[81] in the sense that the existence of this offence might encourage the police to use intrusive tactics (such as bugging premises). To advocate freedom to commit crimes would be unsupportable, but one must avoid the risk of inhibiting the development of controversial ideas. Furthermore, there is the danger of conviction based on inference and mere association, which leave opportunities for prosecutions to be brought without much hard evidence. The offence of conspiracy may be defended as a vital tool against **(p. 472)** organized crime, but the difficulty is that it may bear oppressively on some of the individuals who are caught within its ample net.

11.5 The elements of criminal conspiracy

(a) An agreement between two or more persons

Agreement is the basic element in conspiracy. The idea of an agreement involves a meeting of minds, and there is no need for a physical meeting of the persons involved so long as they reach a mutual understanding of what is to be done.[82] Whether the understanding amounts to an agreement may be a matter of degree: if the parties are still at the stage of negotiation, without having decided what to do, no criminal conspiracy has yet come into being. But what if the parties have reached agreement in principle, leaving matters of detail to be resolved afterwards? In *Broad* (1997)[83] there was evidence that the defendants had agreed to manufacture certain substances that would undoubtedly be Class A drugs, even though it was not yet clear or decided which drug would be manufactured by the processes they had commenced. The Court of Appeal held that it was sufficient for conspiracy liability that each defendant had participated in the processes knowing that one of these substances would be produced.[84] What if arrangements have been made, but may be unscrambled later? The judicial tendency is to regard these as conspiratorial agreements, and this is consistent with the rule that there is no defence of withdrawal for a person who has become a party to a conspiracy.[85] Moreover, since all human arrangements are vulnerable to changes in circumstances, the possibility that a planned robbery might be cancelled if there are police in the vicinity at the time does not negate the existence of a conspiracy. Further problems over 'conditional' agreements are discussed in section 11.5(b).

Certain agreements are excluded from the law of conspiracy. First, by s. 2(2)(a) of the Criminal Law Act 1977, agreements between husband and wife only (without a third person) cannot amount to criminal conspiracies. This rule places the value of marital confidence above the public interest in having conspirators brought to justice, a priority which has been partly abandoned in other areas of the law (e.g. by compelling one spouse to give evidence against the other in certain proceedings).[86] If a husband and wife go so far as to commit an attempt or a substantive offence, they can be convicted jointly of that. Secondly, by s. 2(2)(b), agreements in which the only other person is under the age of criminal responsibility cannot

result in D's conviction for (p. 473) conspiracy—an application of the rule of criminal capacity. Thirdly, by s. 2(2)(c) of the Act, agreements in which the only other person is an intended victim cannot result in D's conviction for conspiracy. This parallels the rule that a person who falls within the class protected by the offence (e.g. persons under a given age) cannot be convicted as a party to that crime.[87] Fourthly, s. 4(1) provides that a prosecution for conspiracy to commit one or more summary offences requires the consent of the Director of Public Prosecutions. Although this appears to restrict the practical use of conspiracy charges, it should be noted that the crime of attempt does not apply to summary offences at all. Once again, the 'double life' of conspiracy as an inchoate and a quasi-substantive offence is evident. One argument is that the deliberate planning of numerous offences, even if summary only, may justify prosecution as a conspiracy. Presumably, also, the number of persons involved in an agreement to commit summary offences might persuade the Crown Prosecution Service that it is in the public interest to prosecute for a single conspiracy rather than bringing various separate small charges.

Agreement is the basic element in criminal conspiracy, but the evidence offered to a court may often amount to inferences from behaviour rather than direct testimony or recording of a meeting of conspirators. Thus the typical process is to infer a prior agreement from behaviour which appears to be concerted. However, courts sometimes overlook the fact that, if the charge is conspiracy, it is the conduct agreed upon and not the conduct actually carried out that is the basis of the offence.[88]

(b) The criminal conduct agreed upon

We move now to the subject-matter of the agreement. The Criminal Law Act 1977, s. 1(1), provides that a conspiracy is criminal if it is agreed that 'a course of conduct will be pursued which, if the agreement is carried out in accordance with their intentions … will necessarily amount to or involve the commission of any offence or offences by one or more parties to the agreement'. The essence, therefore, is that two or more persons should agree on the commission of a crime. It is well established that they need not know that the agreed course of conduct does amount to a crime—ignorance of the criminal law does not excuse here.[89] The 'course of conduct' includes not only the acts agreed upon but also the intended consequences: conspiracy to murder requires not only an agreement to shoot at a person but also the intention that the shots should cause death.[90]

In interpreting the section, one's eyes are drawn to the word 'necessarily': can it ever be said that, if an agreement is carried out in accordance with the parties' intentions, it will *necessarily* involve the commission of an offence? This unduly concrete term seems to run counter to the proposition that all agreements are conditional in some way or (p. 474) another, and thus to ignore the possibility of an unexpected failure (the bomb which fails to detonate, the shot which misses, etc.). Does it therefore leave all fallible agreements outside the law of conspiracy? Is it enough for the defence to raise a reasonable doubt that the plan might have miscarried for some reason? Such an argument would put the principles of statutory interpretation to a stern test: should the court apply the plain meaning of 'necessarily' on the principle of strict construction—and acquit—or should it apply the purposive approach and the policy of social defence—and convict? One challenge to the wording was heard in *Jackson* (1985).[91] Four men arranged for one of their number to be shot in the leg; the aim was to provide mitigation in the event of his being convicted at his trial for burglary. He was shot in

the leg before the end of the trial. On a charge of conspiracy to pervert the course of justice, it was argued that there was no certainty that he would be convicted and therefore the agreement would not necessarily lead to a perversion of the course of justice. The Court of Appeal rejected the argument, drawing a distinction between the inevitability of the substantive offence being committed (which s. 1(1) does not require) and the inevitability that it would be committed if the agreement was carried out in accordance with their intentions. The Court approved the example of two people agreeing to drive from London to Edinburgh within a time that could only be achieved without breaking the speed laws if traffic conditions were particularly favourable, and agreeing to break the speed limits if necessary.[92] This would not be a conspiracy to exceed the speed limit because it would be possible to do everything agreed upon without breaking the law. However, it can be argued that this is too favourable to the parties, who have plainly agreed to commit one or more offences if certain contingencies arise.[93] In principle, these cases should be dealt with through the rules on conditional intention, bearing in mind that most intentions are conditional to some extent.[94]

Section 1(1) of the 1977 Act was amended by s. 5 of the Criminal Attempts Act 1981 to make it clear that impossibility is no more a defence to conspiracy than to a charge of attempt. It is sufficient to establish that the agreement *would* have involved the commission of an offence but for the existence of facts which rendered it impossible. The justifications for this follow those outlined in section 11.3(c).

(c) The fault requirements

The basic fault requirements for conspiracy would appear to be twofold: first, that each defendant should have knowledge of any facts or circumstances specified in the substantive offence, either knowing that present facts exist or (as the case may be) intending that certain facts or circumstances will exist at the time of the substantive offence; and, secondly, that each defendant should intend the conspiracy to be carried **(p. 475)** out and the substantive offence to be committed, although we will see below that this requirement is in doubt.

Section 1(2) makes it clear that these requirements of full intention and knowledge as to facts and circumstances apply no matter what offence is agreed upon. Thus full knowledge and intent are required, even for conspiracies to commit offences of strict liability, negligence, or recklessness. Why is the fault element for conspiracy kept so narrow? If the substantive offence is satisfied, say, by recklessness as to some elements, why should the crime of conspiracy not likewise be satisfied? The answer seems to lie with the remoteness principle encountered elsewhere: that inchoate crimes are an extension of the criminal sanction, and the more remote an offence becomes from the actual infliction of harm, the higher the degree of fault necessary to justify criminalization. Thus, in *Saik* (2007)[95] D changed large amounts of money at his currency exchange on behalf of others. He pleaded guilty to conspiracy to convert the proceeds of drug trafficking, contrary to s. 93(2) of the Criminal Justice Act 1988 (now superseded by the Proceeds of Crime Act 2002), but the basis of his plea was that he merely suspected that the money was the proceeds of crime. The House of Lords held that his conviction should be quashed: although the substantive offence would be committed if D had 'reasonable grounds to suspect' that the money was the proceeds of crime, a charge of conspiracy could only be sustained, on the proper interpretation of s. 1(2), by proof of full knowledge. This demonstrates one drawback for prosecutors of using a conspiracy charge when there is evidence on which the substantive offence could have been charged instead:

proof of full knowledge and intention is required on a conspiracy charge, when it may not be for the full offence.

Should such a narrow approach to the fault element in conspiracy be retained? If X and Y agree to go to a woman's room and to have intercourse with her, hoping that she will consent but not caring whether she does or not, are they guilty of conspiracy to rape? The wording of s. 1(2) of the 1977 Act suggests not. Yet it was argued earlier[96] that there should be a conviction for attempted rape in parallel circumstances, and that argument might apply no less strongly to conspiracy. The Law Commission takes this view, arguing that X and Y are sufficiently culpable because their agreement shows that they are 'prepared to go ahead with the plan even if it turns out that V does not consent'.[97] On this view, as with the Commission's recommendations for attempt, the fault element should be intention for the conduct and (if any) consequence elements, but recklessness as to circumstance elements where no fault or only negligence-based fault is required.[98]

(p. 476) In applying the 1977 Act, the concern of the courts has not in fact been with these arguments but with other questions about the meaning of s. 1(1). In *Anderson* (1986),[99] the House of Lords chose to reinterpret the words of the section in order to uphold a conviction. D was convicted of conspiring to effect a break-out from prison. D had agreed that his part would involve suppling diamond wire to cut prison bars. His defence was that he never intended the break-out to succeed, and was only interested in obtaining payment for playing his part. Determined to uphold Anderson's conviction in the face of this somewhat flimsy excuse, the House of Lords held, first, that a person may be convicted of conspiracy even without intending the agreement to be carried out; and, secondly, that a person is guilty of conspiracy if, and only if, it is established that he or she intended to play some part in the agreed course of conduct. Both these propositions are open to doubt. It seems extraordinary that a person can be held liable for conspiring to commit an offence when he does not intend it to be committed, particularly since that would mean that none of the conspirators needs to intend the substantive offence to be committed. The Privy Council has now held, in *Yip Chiu-cheung* (1995),[100] that the prosecution must establish that each alleged conspirator intended the agreement to be carried out. This is the better view, although *Anderson* remains high authority to the contrary. The second proposition appears to run counter to one of the rationales of conspiracy, which is to bring those who plan offences but do not take part in them (the 'godfathers') within the ambit of the criminal sanction. The second *Anderson* proposition was later reinterpreted by the Court of Appeal in *Siracusa* (1990)[101] so as to mean the opposite of what the House of Lords said: a passive conspirator who concurs in the activities of the person(s) carrying out the crime without becoming involved himself is guilty of criminal conspiracy. Had the inchoate offence of assisting crime existed at that time, Anderson would almost certainly have been guilty of that offence, but it did not, and so the law of conspiracy was stretched beyond its intended boundaries to catch such activity. The precedents are therefore in a mess, and the Law Commission rightly proposes clarification that each conspirator should intend that the conduct and any consequence element will occur.[102]

11.6 Incitement

The third of the trio of inchoate offences in English criminal law was incitement. The courts had developed it along rather different lines from those of attempt and conspiracy, both of which

have been put into statutory form in recent years. The Law (p. 477) Commission gave several reasons for regarding the offence of incitement in its present form as unsatisfactory and, rather than proposing a revised statutory version of the offence, recommended its abolition and replacement with new and broader offences of assisting and encouraging crime.[103] These new offences, created by Part 2 of the Serious Crime Act 2007, came into force on 1 October 2008 and are examined below. However, it must be noted that there remains a whole range of statutory offences of incitement which are unaffected by the abolition of the common law offence—from long-standing offences such as incitement to disaffection from the armed forces, to the offence under s. 1 of the Terrorism Act 2006 of publishing a statement likely to be understood 'as a direct or indirect encouragement' of acts of terrorism.[104]

11.7 Encouraging or assisting crime

The statutory context of the new offences is instructive: they are set out in Part 2 of the Serious Crime Act 2007, between Part 1 (which introduces Serious Crime Prevention Orders) and Part 3 (entitled 'Other Measures to Prevent or Disrupt Serious or Other Crime'). In other words, the new offences are conceived as part of a raft of measures against serious and organized crime.[105] However, nothing in the statute limits them to such types of crime, and so they take their place as general inchoate offences. Part 2 of the 2007 Act creates three new offences of encouraging or assisting crime, and they will now be considered in turn. The three offences are supported by some 20 sections of further detail, rendering this one of the more complex legislative innovations in the criminal law. The aim here will be to identify and to appraise critically the principles of the new offences, without the distraction of too much detail.[106]

(a) Intentionally encouraging or assisting an offence

The first of the three new inchoate offences is that provided by s. 44 of the Serious Crime Act 2007, which is committed if (a) D does an act capable of encouraging or assisting the commission of an offence and (b) D intends to assist or encourage its commission. Many of the features of this offence also apply to the other two offences, and so they will be discussed here. It is immediately obvious that this offence applies independently of whether the principal offence is committed or not: so if D uses encouraging language to P with respect to the commission of an offence, or if D assists P by lending (p. 478) him equipment, D commits this offence irrespective of whether P is in fact encouraged by D's words, or whether P actually uses D's equipment, to commit the principal offence. This must be right in principle, as argued in 11.2: D has crossed the threshold of culpability, whether P responds to his promptings or not. But that principled argument does not necessarily justify the extent of the liability for this offence, which we must now examine.

The conduct element of the s. 44 offence is doing 'an act capable of encouraging or assisting the commission of an offence'. Thus it seems that any act will satisfy the section, howsoever small or insignificant, so long as it is *capable of* amounting to encouragement or assistance. We have already noted that there is no requirement that D's act did encourage or assist; that probably means that there is no requirement that P even knew of D's act, since the focus of this offence is on D. What is capable of amounting to encouragement or assistance depends

on the meaning of each of those terms, but the Act, replete as it is with all manner of other qualifications and extensions, contains no definition of either of these key words.[107] Thus s. 65(1) states that encouragement includes 'threatening another person or otherwise putting pressure on' him or her, but in other respects the concept is left for the courts to develop. It was argued in Chapter 10.3 that small acts of assistance should not open the way to conviction of complicity in a major crime and a high maximum penalty. The argument here is the same. Under the 2007 Act, any act, however small, suffices for this offence so long as it is capable of encouraging or assisting the commission of the anticipated offence.[108] Admittedly, though, the difficulty for the legislature here is in devising a test that will determine what is to count in law as only a 'small' influence on P by way of encouragement or assistance. So, it is easy to understand the temptation to leave this as a matter (a) for prosecutors in deciding whether it is in the public interest to prosecute someone whose contribution was minimal, and (b) for judges when considering the issue of sentence, rather than seeking to decide that question as a matter of law. Further, as the Law Commission pointed out when discussing this issue,[109] given that the offences in the 2007 Act are inchoate, if the jury had to decide whether or not someone's assistance or encouragement was only 'small', or 'trivial' when the offence itself had not taken place, how could they go about their task? They would be answering a very speculative and hypothetical question.

Section 65(2) states that 'an act capable of encouraging or assisting' includes taking steps to reduce the possibility of criminal proceedings being brought in respect of that offence (as by helping P to flee the country after his crime) and includes failing to take **(p. 479)** steps to discharge a duty (as by leaving a window open to help burglars to gain access to premises); s. 65(3) excludes a failure to respond to a constable's request to assistance, but that exclusion suggests that in other respects the question whether there was a duty is for the court, applying general principles.

The main fault element required for conviction of the s. 44 offence appears to be purpose: subsection (1)(b) states that D must intend by his act to encourage or assist the commission of the anticipated offence, and subsection (2) states that it is not enough that encouragement or assistance was 'a foreseeable consequence of his act'. The implication is therefore that foresight of virtual certainty (oblique intention) will never suffice for liability here: presumably this is intended as a counterweight to the potentially wide reach of the conduct element of this offence. However, since the essence of s. 44 is 'encouraging or assisting *an offence*', D must also have fault in relation to the full offence he is encouraging or assisting—an offence means conduct plus fault on the part of P, the perpetrator whose offence it is D's purpose to encourage or assist. The Act's provisions on this are complex. Where P's offence is one that requires fault, it must be proved that D believed that P would do it with the required fault or that D was reckless as to whether or not P would have the required fault, or that D's state of mind was such as that if he (D) had done the conduct that he anticipated P would do, he (D) would have had the required fault.[110] That last provision caters for cases where D seeks to trick P into doing something (such as sexually penetrating V) which is not an offence for P (because P has been tricked and therefore lacks fault): since D has the fault, D is liable for the s. 44 offence nonetheless. And that is not all. If the anticipated offence is one requiring proof of particular circumstances or consequences or both, it must be proved that D believed or was reckless as to whether P's conduct would be done in those circumstances or with those consequences.[111] This would have obvious implications for charges of encouraging or assisting offences under the Sexual Offences Act 2003, where many of the offences specify

circumstances such as the age (under 13, 13 to 15) or the mental capacity of the complainant.

(b) Encouraging or assisting an offence believing it will be committed

Whereas the essence of the s. 44 offence is D's purpose to assist or encourage, the s. 45 offence is committed if D believes, when he does an act capable of encouraging or assisting the anticipated offence, that it will be committed. Thus if D, the manager of a garden centre, sells weed killer to two customers whom he overheard talking about using it to poison someone, he will be guilty of the s. 45 offence if he believes they intend to carry out the poisoning, but not if he thinks they were speaking hypothetically or were joking. For s. 45, the focus is not D's purpose or desire that P will commit the offence, but D's *belief* that P *will* commit it. Thus the conduct element for the s. 45 **(p. 480)** offence is the same as that under s. 44—an act capable of encouraging or assisting—and all the extensions and exclusions mentioned in (a) above apply equally here. As with s. 44, the s. 45 offence is committed irrespective of whether P actually commits the anticipated offence or even realizes that D is trying to encourage or assist him to do so.

There are two main fault elements for this offence. First, D must believe that the offence he is encouraging or assisting 'will be committed'. What kind of mental state is believing that something will happen? To act with a belief is to act without any significant doubt on the matter: here, a belief that P is virtually certain to commit the offence should be sufficient. When the term 'belief' is combined with the term 'will', this indicates a high degree of confidence in D's mind that P is going to commit the anticipated offence.[112] Also, as under s. 44, D must believe that P will commit the full offence (with its conduct and fault elements), or be reckless as to that; and, as with s. 44, if D has the fault element for that offence and knows that P does not, D may be convicted under s. 45.[113] Similarly, D must believe that any circumstances or consequences specified in the anticipated offence will be fulfilled.[114] Turning to the second fault element for the s. 45 offence, D must believe that his act will encourage or assist P. It is doubtful whether this requirement adds a great deal to the offence, since it will usually be satisfied if the other conditions are fulfilled. Finally, Sch 3 to the 2007 Act lists a number of offences to which s. 45 cannot apply: these include conspiracies and attempts, and several statutory incitement offences. Whereas there can be convictions under s. 44 where it is D's purpose to encourage or assist such offences, liability in cases where D merely believes that P will commit one of those offences is thought to go too far.

(c) Encouraging or assisting offences believing one or more will be committed

Section 46 of the 2007 Act creates an offence aimed at resolving a difficulty in the law of complicity, where D assists or encourages P in a criminal enterprise without knowing which of a number of possible offences P might commit.[115] Thus the essence of the s. 46 offence is that D does an act capable of encouraging or assisting one of a number of offences, believing that one or more of those offences will be committed. D may be convicted even if he does not know which of the offences will be committed, and irrespective of whether any of them are committed. The conduct element for this offence follows the pattern of ss. 44 and 45, requiring an act capable of encouraging or assisting. All the extensions and exclusions mentioned in (a) apply. The only difference here is that the act must be capable of encouraging or assisting 'the commission of one **(p. 481)** or more of a number of offences', that number being two or more. The prosecution must specify the offences on which it wishes to rely, but not all the

possible offences that D's act might have encouraged or assisted. The Court of Appeal has rejected an appeal based on the submission that the s. 46 offence was so vague in nature that it should be declared incompatible with the requirement for certainty under Art. 7 of the European Convention.[116]

The fault element for the s. 46 offence is complex. As under s. 45, D must believe that his act will encourage or assist the commission of one or more of the offences. D must believe that one or more of the offences 'will be committed', which suggests no substantial doubt on the matter.[117] According to s. 47(4), it is sufficient if D believes that one of the group of crimes will be committed, without any belief as to which one. Also, as with ss. 44 and 45, D must believe that P will commit the crime with the relevant fault element, or be reckless as to that; and D must believe that any circumstances or consequences specified in the anticipated offence(s) will be present, or be reckless as to that.[118] The s. 46 offence is meant to deal with this kind of case:

> P asks D to provide him with a sawn-off shotgun. D provides P with the gun, feeling sure that P will use it to commit either robbery, murder, or the infliction of grievous bodily harm. P is subsequently arrested when he threatens a police officer with the gun, and so does not go on to commit robbery, murder or grievous bodily harm.

In this example, D may be prosecuted for either assisting murder, or assisting robbery, or assisting the infliction of grievous bodily harm, even though none of these offences actually took place (the s. 46 offence is an inchoate one, like the offences under ss. 44 and 45). However, D may not be prosecuted for assisting P to resist arrest, to be in possession of an illegal weapon in a public place, or for any threats offence. This is because these crimes were not ones on a list of offences, one of which D was sure P was going to commit at the time he provided P with the gun.

(d) Special defences

Part 2 of the 2007 Act provides two special defences to the three new crimes, as well as spelling out (in s. 47(b)(c) and (d)) that ignorance of the law is no defence, so that if D encourages or assists P in doing certain conduct, without being aware that that constitutes a criminal offence, D will still be liable. The two special defences are a reasonableness defence and an exemption for persons in protected categories.

The presence of the reasonableness defence is unusual in applying to crimes of general application, such as those created by Part 2 of the 2007 Act. The Law Commission had recommended that it should not apply to the offence now created by s. 44 of the **(p. 482)** 2007 Act, namely doing an act capable of encouraging or assisting crime, believing that the offence will be committed.[119] The Commission's argument was that if D directly intends to assist or encourage an offence by his or her act, then the law's policy should be to prevent D being able to raise a defence that his or her act was simply a 'reasonable' thing to do (other than when that issue arises under an existing defence such as, for example, the defence of duress). If D could raise such an open-ended defence, even though he or she intended to assist or encourage the commission of a crime, it might seem to call into question the solidity of the basis for making conduct of the kind in which D engaged an inchoate criminal offence in

the first place. However, so far as the offence now created by s. 45 is concerned, the Law Commission took the view that a reasonableness defence to this offence was desirable in the interests of preventing inchoate liability stretching too far into ordinary conduct. The Commission gave the following example:

> D is driving at the maximum speed limit in the outside lane of a motorway. D sees P coming rapidly up behind her, and so moves into the middle lane to allow P to pass in the outside lane, even though D is aware that P must be speeding in excess of the maximum limit.[120]

In this example, D assists P to continue committing a speeding offence, by moving out of P's way. However, many people would be surprised to discover that such conduct was a criminal offence to which there was no defence. Accordingly, the Law Commission recommended that a 'reasonableness' defence (with the burden of proof lying on D) should be applicable in such a case. The government of the day agreed with this approach, but decided to extend the defence to cases covered by s. 44 as well, namely where D directly intended to assist P. Primarily, this was to ensure that, for example, undercover officers who intentionally assisted or encouraged offenders only to maintain their 'cover', could avail themselves of the defence (although the Law Commission had proposed a separate 'prevention of crime' defence to deal with such cases). However, the reasonableness defence is not restricted to such cases. In theory, it would, for example, be open to D to raise a defence of 'reasonableness' to a charge of assisting rape where D had encouraged P to commit the rape of a girl because, in D's home country, this would be a reasonable course of action if the girl had refused to accept a marriage proposal agreed by the families. No doubt, a jury would reject the defence, but should it even be open to D to plead it in such cases?

The ambit of the reasonableness defence is uncertain, since so much will depend on the view taken by the jury or magistrates. The burden of proof is on the defendant, contrary to the presumption of innocence,[121] and what D must prove is that he knew or reasonably believed that certain circumstances existed, and that in those circumstances **(p. 483)** it was reasonable for him to act as he did. Section 50(3) provides that, in determining whether D's conduct was reasonable, the court must consider among other factors the seriousness of the anticipated offence, and any purpose or any authority claimed by D for his conduct. Cases of authority or purpose might include someone acting in order to expose another's wrongdoing, or another's susceptibility to temptation.[122]

Section 51 provides that an offence under ss. 44, 45, or 46 cannot be committed if the anticipated offence is a 'protective offence' and D falls within the particular category of persons whom the offence was designed to protect. Thus if D (aged 12) encourages P to touch him sexually, D does not commit an offence under the 2007 Act because the anticipated offence under s. 9 of the Sexual Offences Act 2003 is designed to protect children under 16. However, it is unclear what happens in the situation that arose in *G* (2008),[123] where both D and P are under 16 and therefore within the protected category; if the act was consensual, is it right that only one of them should have a defence under s. 51?

(e) Conclusions: the new inchoate offences

There are several points in favour of this new group of inchoate offences. They ensure that liability depends on D's culpability, irrespective of whether P goes on to commit the anticipated offence. It was argued in Chapter 5, and in this chapter in previous editions, that to make D's liability turn on whether or not P went on to commit the substantive offence was to allow chance to play too significant a role. Seen as replacements for the common law offence of incitement, the new offences avoid some of the stranger twists and turns of the former case law, and that is beneficial. The offences also remedy some gaps in the law of complicity, a branch of the criminal law that awaits reform.

However, the enactment of Part 2 of the Serious Crime Act 2007 also brings several undesirable features. Creating a statutory offence of incitement, and adding an offence of facilitation of crime, could have been a simpler and no less effective model. Simplicity and clarity were not high on the draftsman's agenda; taken together with the complexities of the Corporate Manslaughter and Corporate Homicide Act, it may be concluded that 2007 was not a good year in this respect.[124] Substantively, there are concerns about the breadth or indeed the virtual absence of the conduct requirement for assisting—any act that is capable of providing assistance is sufficient.

The s. 46 offence also spreads its net wide, much wider than the *Maxwell* doctrine.[125] The absence of definition of the two key terms, encouragement and assistance, is an ironic feature of this technically complex edifice.[126] Whether the new extensions to criminal liability have an impact on organized or serious crime remains to be seen, but **(p. 484)** it seems most likely that they will merely become everyday additions to the prosecutor's armoury.

11.8 Voluntary renunciation of criminal purpose

In view of the inchoate nature of attempt, many conspiracies, and the new offences of encouraging and assisting crime, the question arises of the legal effect of a change of mind before the substantive offence is committed. What if D abandons the attempt or withdraws from the conspiracy? English law has generally taken the view that this cannot alter the legal significance of what has already occurred: there is no defence of voluntary renunciation of criminal purpose, and it is a matter for mitigation of sentence only.[127] On the other hand, many other European systems allow such a defence,[128] the American Model Penal Code also makes provision for it,[129] and of course there is a limited doctrine of withdrawal in complicity.[130] What are the main arguments on either side?

The main argument against allowing such a defence is that it contradicts the temporal logic of the law. The definitions of attempt and conspiracy, and of the new offences of encouraging or assisting crime, are fulfilled once D, with the appropriate culpability, does the ‘more than merely preparatory’ act, or reaches the agreement, or does an act capable of encouraging or assisting a crime. Anything that happens subsequently cannot undo the offence: it has already been committed. The situation is no different from that of the thief who decides to return the stolen property: theft has been committed and the offence cannot be undone, even though voluntary repentance may well justify substantial mitigation of sentence. A subsidiary argument is that it would in any event be difficult for a court to satisfy itself of the voluntariness of the renunciation of criminal purpose, and that such occasions might well involve a mixture of motives on D's part. This makes the matter much more suitable for the sentencing stage than the trial itself.

Against this, and in favour of a defence of voluntary renunciation, may be ranged various moral and prudential arguments. The principal argument is that it is the intent or criminal purpose which is the essence of inchoate offences, and that voluntary renunciation shows that the original criminal purpose was not sufficiently firm. This coincides with the view that it often takes more 'nerve' to go through with a crime than merely to plan or encourage it. Thus, D can be said to 'undo' the offence by a change of mind, because the criminal purpose is a continuing one—not a once-and-for-all (p. 485) mental state—and its effect can be neutralized by subsequent decision or action on D's part. The situation is different from that of the thief who voluntarily decides to return the property to its owner, for theft is a substantive offence and is not criminalized simply because it is one stage on the way to another crime. The argument for allowing a defence of voluntary renunciation becomes stronger as the conduct element in the inchoate offences is taken further back from the occurrence of the harm, as in the new offences of encouraging or assisting crime. A further argument is that if D renounces before the harm is caused, this may show that the threat of the criminal sanction has had a deterrent effect. To punish D nonetheless would be needless, and the case should be regarded as a success for the law rather than a failure. Both these arguments depart from the principle of contemporaneity (see Chapter 5.4(d)) in favour of a broader timeframe for criminal liability.[131] We have already observed the abandonment of contemporaneity in cases of prior fault (see Chapter 5.4(e)): this deviation would be on the ground of subsequent non-fault.

Those systems which have a defence of voluntary renunciation do not appear to find it problematic,[132] members of the public seem to regard it as fair,[133] and it has not caused great problems in English complicity law.[134] The defence is rarely raised, and the issue usually turns on the voluntariness of the change of mind, which may then be explored in a trial setting rather than at the sentencing stage. At a theoretical level, there is a strong argument for reduced culpability, but this does not conclude the case for a complete defence. The allocation of excuses as between the liability and the sentencing stages turns on questions of degree (see Chapter 6.8), and one might well take the view that voluntary renunciation is not sufficiently fundamental to warrant a complete defence to criminal liability.

11.9 The relationship between substantive and inchoate crimes

We have seen that the general function of inchoate crimes is to penalize preparation, planning, or encouragement towards the commission of a substantive offence. It has also been noted that the crime of conspiracy is sometimes invoked where the substantive offence has occurred, and that 'complete' attempts are cases in which D has done everything intended for the commission of a crime: in both those instances, the inchoate offences come very close to substantive crimes. The same phenomenon also appears the other way round: modern legal systems often define what are essentially inchoate offences in the terms of substantive crimes.

(p. 486) Some five variations of these crimes defined in an inchoate mode, or crimes of ulterior intent, have been distinguished:[135]

(1) committing a lesser crime, intending to commit a greater one;
(2) committing a crime, intending to do some non-criminal wrong;
(3) committing a civil wrong, intending to commit a crime;

(4) doing something overtly innocent intending to commit a crime;
(5) crimes where the intent is by its nature ulterior.

The principal offences introduced by the Fraud Act 2006, and the offence of preparing for terrorism under the Terrorism Act 2006, are examples of the increased use of type (4) offences in recent years. Three related points may be made—the effect of doubly inchoate offences, the case for a general threats offence, and the spread of offences of possession.

(a) Doubly inchoate offences

Where the offence is in the third category, such as burglary (entering as a trespasser with intent),[136] or in the fourth category, such as doing an act with intent to impede the apprehension of an offender,[137] the prosecution's task is made easier: they do not have to establish that D caused a certain result if they can persuade the court that he did an act with intent to produce that result. Moreover, since these are substantive offences, liability can be incurred additionally through the inchoate offences. Thus there can be an attempted burglary or an attempted bomb hoax, which criminalizes D's conduct at an even earlier point than the doing of an act with intent to cause harm. There is little evidence that these extensions of the criminal law are carefully monitored, or that the implications of applying the inchoate offences to crimes defined in the inchoate mode have ever been systematically considered. It appears that there may be liability under s. 44 of the Serious Crime Act 2007 for encouraging or assisting an attempt or a conspiracy, and perhaps liability for attempting or conspiring to encourage or assist a crime. The reach of criminal liability is pushed further and further, without evidence of an overall scheme.

(b) Threats offences

English law already contains a miscellany of threats offences:[138] for example, it has long been an offence to threaten to kill,[139] and common assault is committed by **(p. 487)** causing another to apprehend the use of force,[140] but there is no comprehensive structure of threats offences.[141] Sections 4 and 5 of the Public Order Act 1986 criminalize some threats of harm in some circumstances, but the general issue remains. Peter Alldridge points out that the values of consistency and clarity in the law do not favour the creation of a general inchoate offence of threatening to commit a crime, in place of the present array of *ad hoc* accretions, since one might achieve consistency and clarity by abolishing most threats offences and retaining only a few well-known ones.[142] He identifies two key elements in the making of threats. First, uttering a threat is evidence that D has thought about committing the threatened crime and may be willing to do so. It may therefore appear similar in quality to an attempt, although some threats are conditional. Secondly, a primary characteristic of threats is the creation of fear. Since this should be the main target of threats offences, it is therefore inappropriate simply to regard threats as a fourth form of inchoate liability: consideration must be given to the kinds of fear and of circumstances for which criminalization is necessary.[143] There is already the offence of blackmail, which penalizes the making of unwarranted demands with menaces,[144] and this should be the starting point. In the meantime, threatening another to persuade him or her to commit a crime may amount to encouraging crime for the purpose of the offences under the Serious Crime Act 2007.[145]

(c) Possession offences

Another prominent example of offences defined in the inchoate mode is possession—possessing offensive weapons, possessing instruments for use in forgery, and possessing drugs. A major difference here is that many of these articles are non-innocent, in the sense that their possession calls for an explanation at least.[146] That certainly cannot be said of offences defined so as to penalize 'any act done with intent', although it can perhaps be said of an offence of burglary, which penalizes the entering of a building as a trespasser (a civil wrong) with intent to steal. Much depends on the way in which a legal system uses and defines its offences of possession, but there is at least one major objection to them, namely, that they presume a further criminal intent from the very fact of possession. In effect, they are abstract endangerment offences, presuming danger (p. 488) (without specifying it) from a given fact.[147] We have seen that the concept of possession itself is artificially wide;[148] some possession offences leave no opportunity for D to argue that the possession was for a non-criminal reason, and so are the ideal offences for police and prosecutors;[149] others, like the offensive weapons law, impose on the defendant the burden of proving 'lawful excuse' or 'reasonable excuse' for the possession.[150] Now it is true, and worth bringing into the calculation, that possession offences often have the merit of certainty; there is nothing vague about the warning they spell out to citizens.[151] Yet it must be questioned whether this is enough to outweigh the remoteness from harm and the absence of a need for the prosecution to prove criminal intent which characterize most crimes of possession.[152] One might have thought that, as with the fault element for attempt and conspiracy, the more remote offences should be confined to cases of proven intention that the substantive crime be committed. Many offences of possession have no such requirement at all.

11.10 The place of inchoate liability

There appear to be sound reasons for including inchoate offences within the criminal law, both on the consequentialist ground of the prevention of harm and on the 'desert' ground that the defendant has not merely formed a culpable mental attitude directed towards wrongdoing and harm, but has also manifested it. Indeed, our argument has gone further in suggesting that some inchoate offences are no different, in terms of culpability, from substantive offences. This is true of so-called complete attempts, where D has done everything intended, but some unexpected—or at least, undesired—circumstance has prevented the occurrence of the harm. The same may apply to some impossible conspiracies, and to some of the new offences of encouraging or assisting crime. The subjective principles (see Chapter 5.4(a)) are fulfilled no less in these cases than in substantive crimes. Various challenges to this approach have been noted, and there are prominent desert theorists who oppose it. Thus Nils Jareborg is sceptical of the prominence given to culpability in this approach, arguing that the criminal law is primarily designed for preventing certain types of harm, that a focus on mental states is inappropriate for the large anonymous communities of modern States, and that the proper role (p. 489) of culpability should therefore be to exculpate and not to inculpate.[153] Antony Duff has argued for an objectivist approach that gives fuller recognition to the significance of actual harm.[154] However, shifting the focus to the occurrence or non-occurrence of harm attributes too much significance to matters of chance. This may be appropriate in a system of compensation, but not in a system of public censure such as the criminal law. There is a respectable conception of fairness, connected to principles of individual autonomy, that favours penalizing people who tried and failed—even if, because of some fact unknown to them, their attempt, encouragement, or assistance was bound to fail. On the view advanced

here, the moral difference between those who fail and those who succeed in causing the harm is too slender to justify exempting the former from criminal liability.

While there is a good in-principle justification for liability, there are five contrary arguments that have greater or lesser strength in particular contexts. First, as recognized in section 11.3(c), conditions in a particular jurisdiction may be such that a properly developed law of inchoate offences places too much power in the hands of the police and puts innocent citizens at risk. Unless procedural or other means of rectifying this problem can be found, this is a strong argument against these extensions of criminal liability. Secondly, this argument applies with particular vigour to possession offences. Since they typically require no proof of any further intent, they place considerable power in the hands of the police, and effectively leave D to come up with some mitigating circumstances at sentence, since conviction normally follows on from detection. Thirdly, and connected to this, is the uncertainty of key definitional terms: the conduct element in attempts has been drawn so vaguely in English law that it sacrifices values of legality (see Chapter 11.3(a) and Chapter 3.5(i)), and there are also uncertainties over the conduct element in conspiracy (section 11.5(b)) and in the new offences of encouraging or assisting crime (section 11.7) which, if they cannot be reduced, tell against these extensions of the law. The proposal of statutory examples to promote consistency in dealing with attempts cases is important here, but the Serious Crime Act 2007 contains scant guidance on what should and should not amount to assistance or encouragement.

Fourthly, there seems to be absolutely no principled supervision of the reach of the criminal law. It has been noted that the offences under the Fraud Act 2006 are in the inchoate mode, so that an offence of 'making a false representation' is then extended by the law of attempts to penalize more than merely preparatory steps towards making such a representation. Similarly in *R.* (2008)[155] the question was whether R had attempted the offence under s. 14 of the Sexual Offences Act 2003, which penalizes a person who 'arranges or facilitates' something that he intends another to do in contravention of ss. 9–13 of the Act. R had twice approached an adult prostitute asking her to find him **(p. 490)** a girl prostitute of 12 or 13. The Court of Appeal held that asking the adult prostitute was capable of amounting to an attempt to arrange an act of sexual activity with a child. Thus a statutory provision worded so as to catch preparatory acts is extended still further by the operation of the law of attempts. This is not to say that the extension is unjustifiable, only that the effects of the law of attempts on new offences seem to receive little principled appraisal.

Fifthly, there now seems to be acceptance by the Law Commission of the remoteness principle—that the inchoate offences should be subjected to more restrictive fault requirements than other crimes, so that intention and knowledge alone are generally required for the inchoate offences, and recklessness is insufficient.[156] To what extent this should apply in cases of intention as to consequences coupled with recklessness as to circumstances has been discussed above.[157] Section 44 of the Serious Crime Act 2007 requires purpose for its basic offence of encouraging or assisting crime; but on the other hand, lesser forms of fault are sufficient under ss. 45 and 46. However, no trace of this principle is to be found in the possession offences. A further principle urged above is that the reach of the inchoate offences should increase with the seriousness of the harm—meaning, for example, that the law should stretch further against crimes of violence than against mere property offences. English law has no such scheme:[158] the title of the Serious Crime Act 2007 has it right, but not the contents of Part 2. The only trace is that the crime of attempt does not apply to summary offences (nor

does conspiracy, unless the Crown Prosecution Service decides otherwise); the offence under s. 46 of the 2007 Act is triable only on indictment, but no such restriction applies to the offences under ss. 44 and 45.

It has long been realized that the way forward is to reconsider the law of inchoate offences together with the law of complicity in order to create a coherent and principled scheme for liability. The Law Commission is making efforts in that direction,[159] but it cannot succeed unless the myriad offences of possession and distinct preparatory offences are brought into the scheme. Appendix C to the Law Commission's Consultation Paper catalogues a multitude of offences of possession and preparation under different statutes.[160] Moreover, as indicated above, there is an increasing trend to define new criminal offences in the inchoate mode—when the general inchoate offences extend them further. Much of this legislation originates from different government departments. The result is an unprincipled whole.

(p. 491) Further reading

R. A. DUFF, *Criminal Attempts* (1996).

M. D. DUBBER, 'The Possession Paradigm' in R. A. Duff and S. P. Green (eds), *Defining Crime* (2005).

V. TADROS, 'Justice and Terrorism' (2007) 10 *New Crim LR* 658.

R. FORTSON, *Blackstone's Guide to the Serious Crime Act 2007* (2008).

LAW COMMISSION, *Inchoate Liability for Assisting and Encouraging Crime* (Law Com No. 300, 2006).

LAW COMMISSION, *Conspiracy and Attempts* (Law Com No. 318, 2009).

A. Ashworth, 'The Unfairness of Risk-Based Possession Offences' (2011) 5 *Criminal Law and Philosophy* 237. **(p. 492)**

Notes:

[1] See the discussion in Chapter 2.7, and V. Tadros, 'Justice and Terrorism' (2007) 11 New Crim LR 658.

[2] See Chapter 4.3(b).

[3] R. A. Duff, *Criminal Attempts* (1996), ch 5 and *passim*.

[4] Depending on the accused's intention and beliefs at the time: see section 11.3(a).

[5] As discussed in Chapter 1.3.

[6] See Chapter 5.4.

[7] Chapter 7.5(a).

[8] Federico Picinali has argued that the final acts in an attempt may indeed provide a basis for inferring a clearer intention to commit the offence than might have been the case at an earlier stage, in that such final acts will be accompanied by a belief that the time to commit the act is now: F. Picinali, 'A Retributive Justification for not Punishing Bare Intentions or: On the Moral Relevance of the "Now Belief"' (2012) 31 *Law and Philosophy* 23.

[9] The longest determinate sentence in English law, forty-five years' imprisonment, was given for the offence of attempting to place on an aircraft a device likely to destroy the aircraft: see *Hindawi*, discussed in Chapter 7.7.

[10] Duff, *Criminal Attempts*, ch 4 and 351–4.

[11] Law Com No. 102, *Attempt, and Impossibility in Relation to Attempt, Conspiracy and Incitement* (1980). See further I. Dennis, 'The Criminal Attempts Act 1981' [1982] Crim LR 5 and A. Ashworth, 'Criminal Attempts and the Role of Resulting Harm under the Code, and in the Common Law' (1988) 19 Rutgers LJ 725.

[12] Duff, *Criminal Attempts*, ch 1.

[13] *Per* Lord Goddard CJ in *Whybrow* (1951) 35 Cr App R 141, at 147.

[14] The 1981 Act applies to offences triable on indictment, but not to summary offences.

[15] [1976] 1 QB 1, applied to the 1981 Act in *Pearman* (1985) 80 Cr App R 259.

[16] See now *Woollin* [1999] AC 92, discussed in Chapter 5.5(b); the Law Commission proposes no change: Law Com Consultation Paper No. 183, *Conspiracy and Attempts* (2007), 14.32.

[17] Cf. Duff, *Criminal Attempts*, 17–21.

[18] Until now, English law has filled this gap pragmatically, by creating a few specific offences of endangerment to deal with reckless behaviour on the roads and in other situations where there is a risk, but no actual occurrence, of serious consequences (see Chapter 7.7 and 7.8).

[19] *Whybrow* (1951) 35 Cr App R 141 is authority for the view that consequence elements must be intended. In that case, it was admitted that the judge has mis-directed the jury when telling them that the fault element for attempted murder could include an intention to cause grievous bodily harm, even though proof of that would suffice for the full offence. For attempted murder, proof of an intention to cause death (the consequence element) must be demonstated. *Khan* (1990) 91 Cr App R 29 is authority for the view that, in cases of attempted rape, whilst sexual intercourse (the conduct element) must be intended, it is sufficient to show that D had the fault element for the full offence of rape with respect to V's lack of consent (circumstance element). At that time, this was recklessness as to a lack of consent, but is now an absence of reasonable belief in consent.

[20] Admittedly some of the power of this rhetorical question comes from the fact that D is himself young, and has been duped by V herself who is older than him; but the point is still a forceful one.

[21] Law Commission, *Conspriacy and Attempts* (Law Com No. 318, 2009), paras. 1.96 and 1.97. Additionally, the Law Commission recommended that where the full offence required proof of a

subjective state of mind in some form—such as knowledge of, suspicion, or belief in the existence of particular circumstances—an attempt to commit this offence should also require proof of this state of mind.

[22] *Attorney General's Reference (No. 3 of 1992)* (1994) 98 Cr App R 383.

[23] See D. W. Elliott, 'Endangering Life by Damaging or Destroying Property' [1997] Crim LR 382.

[24] See also Ashworth, 'Criminal Attempts and the Role of Resulting Harm', 755–7, and Horder, 'Varieties of Intention'.

[25] Duff, *Criminal Attempts*, ch 2.

[26] This was the clear inference from the empirical research on public opinion by P. Robinson and J. Darley, *Justice, Liability and Blame* (1995), 20–8.

[27] Model Penal Code, s. 2.5.01, discussed by Ashworth, 'Criminal Attempts and the Role of Resulting Harm', 751–3.

[28] Discussed in Chapter 3.5(i).

[29] Criminal Attempts Act 1981, ss. 1(1) and 4(3).

[30] Under ss. 24(3)(b) and 24(4)(b) of the Police and Criminal Evidence Act 1984 it is lawful to arrest without warrant a person reasonably suspected of committing an attempted crime; and under s. 24(7)(b) a constable may arrest without a warrant anyone reasonably suspected to be *about to commit* an arrestable offence.

[31] (1990) 91 Cr App R 351; cf. the earlier decision in *Gullefer* [1987] Crim LR 195.

[32] (1991) 93 Cr App R 350.

[33] D's conduct went beyond 'reconnoitring the place intended for the commission of the offence', which is sufficient for an attempt under the Model Penal Code but was intended to lie outside the English test: Law Com No. 102, para. 2.33.

[34] These decisions were considered in *Attorney-General's Reference (No. 1 of 1992)* (1993) 96 Cr App R 298, where the Court of Appeal held that a conviction for attempted rape could be proper even if the man had not yet attempted penetration.

[35] [1996] Crim LR 894; cf. *Nash* [1999] Crim LR 308, where the Court of Appeal upheld convictions on two counts on facts that were a considerable distance short of the commission of the substantive offence.

[36] [1997] Crim LR 746.

[37] The words of Lord Lane in *Gullefer*, considered by K. J. M. Smith, 'Proximity in Attempt: Lord Lane's Midway Course' [1991] Crim LR 576.

[38] LCCP 183, *Conspiracy and Attempts*, 16.8 to 16.17.

[39] See n 25, and I. Dennis, 'The Law Commission Report on Attempt: The Elements of Attempt' [1980] Crim LR 758.

[40] Duff, *Criminal Attempts*, ch 3.

[41] Three expressions of the act-centred view are J. F. Stephen, *History of the Criminal Law* (1883), ii, 225; J. Temkin, 'Impossible Attempts: Another View' (1976) 39 MLR 55; and Lords Bridge and Roskill in *Anderton* v *Ryan* [1985] AC 560.

[42] This is one of the concerns expressed in the lengthy discussion of attempts by G. Fletcher, *Rethinking Criminal Law* (1978), 137ff.

[43] For a review of the case law see I. Dennis, 'Silence in the Police Station: the marginalisation of section 34' [2002] Crim LR 25.

[44] See e.g. I. McKenzie, R. Morgan, and R. Reiner, 'Helping the Police with their Inquiries' [1990] Crim LR 22; T. Bucke and D. Brown, *In Police Custody: Police Powers and Suspects' Rights under the Revised PACE Codes of Practice* (1997).

[45] A view meticulously criticized by Duff, *Criminal Attempts*, chs 9–12.

[46] There is not space here to do justice to the careful arguments of Duff, *Criminal Attempts*, especially at 206–36 and 378–84.

[47] [1975] AC 476.

[48] [1987] AC 1, overruling the House's own decision of the previous year in *Anderton* v *Ryan* [1985] AC 560. A considerable influence in bringing about this judicial *volte-face* was the article by Glanville Williams, 'The Lords and Impossible Attempts' [1986] Camb LJ 33.

[49] *Taaffe* [1984] AC 539.

[50] Discussed in Chapter 6.6.

[51] See Chapter 5.5(d), and Chapter 6.5.

[52] See Chapter 5.4(a).

[53] Cf. J. Rogers, 'The Codification of Attempts and the Case for "Preparation"' [2008] Crim LR 937.

[54] LCCP 183, *Conspiracy and Attempts*, 16.66.

[55] For a general account of the social history of conspiracy see R. Spicer, *Conspiracy Law, Class and Society* (1981); see also G. Robertson, *Whose Conspiracy?* (1974).

[56] For further discussion see P. E. Johnson, 'The Unnecessary Crime of Conspiracy' (1973) 61 Cal LR 1137, and I. Dennis, 'The Rationale of Criminal Conspiracy' (1977) 93 LQR 39.

[57] The high water marks were *Shaw* v *DPP* [1962] AC 220 (conspiracy to corrupt public morals), *Knuller* v *DPP* [1973] AC 435 (conspiracy to outrage public decency), and *Kamara* v *DPP* [1973] 2 All ER 1242 (conspiracy to trespass).

[58] [1975] AC 842.

[59] Law Com No. 76, *Conspiracy and Criminal Law Reform* (1976).

[60] Law Com No. 76, *Conspiracy and Criminal Law Reform* (1976), paras. 1.8–9.

[61] The Criminal Justice and Public Order Act 1994 has now added the offences of aggravated trespass (s. 68), trespassory assembly (s. 70), and unauthorized camping (s. 77). In that regard, see now the new 'squatting' offence in the Legal Aid Sentencing and Punishment of Offenders Act 2012.

[62] [1973] 2 All ER 1242.

[63] The Williams Committee, which subsequently reported on *Obscenity and Film Censorship*, Cmnd 7772 (1979), but whose recommendations were not adopted in legislation.

[64] [1962] AC 220.

[65] [1973] AC 435.

[66] [1975] AC 819.

[67] [1990] 2 QB 619: the combined effect of this decision and s. 5 of the Criminal Law Act 1977 is that conspiracy to outrage public decency becomes a statutory conspiracy. It is undecided whether the same applies to corrupting public morals.

[68] The 1977 Act contained no provision on impossibility, but s. 5 of the Criminal Attempts Act 1981 makes it clear that impossibility is no more a defence to conspiracy than it is to attempt.

[69] See *Liggins et al.* [1995] Crim LR 45 and commentary. The same rule applies to principals and accomplices.

[70] See the case of the Shrewsbury pickets, *Jones et al.* (1974) 59 Cr App R 120, and the Practice Direction [1977] 2 All ER 540.

[71] This 'rounded impression' argument is much emphasized by prosecutors, but the Law Commission seems unpersuaded that a similar effect could not be achieved by using the existing law of complicity: Law Commission Consultation Paper 155, *Fraud and Deception* (1999), paras. 4.36–4.38. See further Chapter 9.9.

[72] N. K. Katyal, 'Conspiracy Theory', (2003) 112 Yale LJ 1307, cited in LCCP 183, *Conspiracy and Attempts*, Part 2.

[73] See the discussion of joint enterprise in complicity in Chapter 10.5.

[74] Katyal, 'Conspiracy Theory', 1323.

[75] See French Penal Code, Art. 221-4-8, and more generally A. Ashworth, *Sentencing and Criminal Justice* (4th edn., 2005), ch 5.2.2.

[76] See Chapter 8.3(g).

[77] See 11.7.

[78] See further Chapter 10.2, and *DPP for Northern Ireland* v *Maxwell* [1978] 3 All ER 1140.

[79] LCCP 183, *Conspiracy and Attempts*, para. 2.9.

[80] A consideration surprisingly treated by the Law Commission as a justification for retaining the offence: see LCCP 183, *Conspiracy and Attempts*, para. 2.34.

[81] Articles 8, 10, and 11 of the European Convention on Human Rights.

[82] G. Orchard, '"Agreement" in Criminal Conspiracy' [1974] Crim LR 297.

[83] [1997] Crim LR 666.

[84] The Court dismissed the relevance of any defendant's ignorance that the substances were, in law, Class A drugs. See Chapter 6.5.

[85] Compare *Mulcahy* (1868) LR 3 HL 306, and *Thomson* (1965) 50 Cr App R 1, with the arguments in 11.8.

[86] Police and Criminal Evidence Act 1984, s. 80. The Law Commission rightly propose the abolition of this exemption: LCCP 183, *Conspiracy and Attempts*, Part 9.

[87] *Tyrell* [1894] 1 QB 710, discussed in Chapter 10.7(b).

[88] For an unsatisfactory decision see *El-Kurd* [2001] Crim LR 234.

[89] *Churchill* v *Walton* [1967] 2 AC 224.

[90] As for attempted murder, an intention to cause grievous bodily harm is not sufficient: see O'Connor LJ in *Siracusa* (1990) 90 Cr App R 340, at 350.

[91] [1985] Crim LR 442.

[92] *Reed* [1982] Crim LR 819.

[93] See the discussion in the decision of the House of Lords in *Saik* [2007] 1 AC 18; Graham Virgo, 'Laundering Conspiracy' (1996) 65 Cambridge LJ 482.

[94] See further LCCP 183, *Conspiracy and Attempts*, Part 5.

[95] [2007] 1 AC 18.

[96] See section 11.3(a), discussing *Khan* (1990) 91 Cr App R 29 and *Attorney-General's Reference (No. 1 of 1992)* (1994) 98 Cr App R 383.

[97] LCCP 183, *Conspiracy and Attempts*, para. 4.109.

[98] Unless the full offence requires a subjective state of mind, such as suspicion, belief, or knowledge that the circumstance will exist at the time of the offence, in which case it is these forms of fault that the prosecution must prove: Law Commission, *Conspiracy and Attempts* (Law Com No. 318, 2009), paras. 1.48 and 1.50.

[99] [1986] AC 27.

[100] [1995] 1 AC 111. This was not a statutory conspiracy contrary to the 1977 Act, but the common law is surely no different on this point.

[101] (1990) 90 Cr App R 340.

[102] LCCP 183, *Conspiracy and Attempts*, para. 4.22 *et seq*; Law Commission, *Conspiracy and Attempts* (Law Com No. 318, 2009), at paras. 1.20 and 1.22. See also the new offences of encouraging and assisting crime, discussed in 11.7.

[103] Law Com No. 300, *Inchoate Liability for Assisting and Encouraging Crime* (2006), ch 3.

[104] For analysis, see A. Hunt, 'Criminal Prohibitions on Direct and Indirect Encouragement of Terrorism' [2007] Crim LR 441.

[105] Home Office, *New Powers against Organized and Financial Crime* (2006).

[106] For a searching analysis of the new provisions, see R. Fortson, *Blackstone's Guide to the Serious Crime Act 2007* (2008).

[107] Although, in fairness to the Law Commission whose Report provided the basis for Part 2 of the 2007 Act, the Commission indicated that 'encouraging' should bear broadly the same meaning that 'incitement' had at common law: Law Commission, *Inchoate Liability for Assisting and Encouraging Crime* (Law Com No. 300), para. 5.37.

[108] Further, the maximum penalty for the anticipated offence applies even though the conviction is under s. 44 and not for the anticipated offence.

[109] Law Commission, *Inchoate Liability for Assisting and Encouraging Crime* (Law Com No. 300, 2006), at para. 5.51.

[110] Serious Crime Act 2007, s. 47(5)(a).

[111] Serious Crime Act 2007, s. 47(5)(b).

[112] Cf. the test in joint venture cases in complicity, where it is sufficient that D realizes there is a risk that a greater offence than D has agreed to will be committed: Chapter 10.5. Note also that s. 49(7) of the 2007 Act provides that a conditional belief (that the offence will be committed if certain conditions are met) is enough.

[113] See s. 47(5)(a) and the discussion at n 107.

[114] See s. 47(5)(b) and the discussion at n 108.

[115] Discussed in Chapter 10.5.

[116] *R* v *S&H* [2011] EWCA Crim 2872.

[117] See n 112, which applies here.

[118] See discussion at nn 107 and 108.

[119] Law Commission, *Inchoate Liability for Assisting and Encouraging Crime* (Law Com No. 300, 2006), para. 6.24.

[120] Law Commission, *Inchoate Liability for Assisting and Encouraging Crime* (Law Com No. 300, 2006), para. 6.18.

[121] See Chapter 3.5(m).

[122] See the cases discussed in Chapter 4.8(d).

[123] [2008] UKHL 37, discussed in Chapter 8.6.

[124] Without entering into a detailed critique, several of the subsections could have been run together (e.g. subsections (2), (3), and (4) of s. 47) and others could have been avoided (e.g. s. 47(7)(b)).

[125] See Chapter 10.4.

[126] But cf. n 110.

[127] *Lankford* [1959] Crim LR 209, and Law Com No. 102 (1980), para. 2.133; cf. M. Wasik, 'Abandoning Criminal Intent' [1980] Crim LR 785.

[128] Fletcher, *Rethinking Criminal Law*, 184–97.

[129] Model Penal Code, s. 5.01(4).

[130] Discussed in Chapter 10.7(a).

[131] See M. Kelman, 'Interpretive Construction in the Substantive Criminal Law' (1981) 33 Stanford LR 591, at 611–14 and 628–30.

[132] See the discussion by Fletcher, *Rethinking Criminal Law*, 184–97.

[133] Robinson and Darley, *Justice, Liability and Blame*, 23–8.

[134] See Chapter 10.7(a).

[135] J. Horder, 'Crimes of Ulterior Intent', in A. P. Simester and A. T. H. Smith (eds), *Harm and Culpability* (1996), 156–7; for other discussions see A. Ashworth, 'Defining Criminal Offences without Harm', in P. F. Smith (ed.), *Criminal Law: Essays in Honour of J. C. Smith* (1987), and Duff, *Criminal Attempts*, 354–8.

[136] See Chapter 9.5.

[137] Criminal Law Act 1967, s. 4.

[138] P. Alldridge, 'Threats Offences—a Case for Reform' [1994] Crim LR 176.

[139] Put into statutory form in s. 16, Offences Against the Person Act 1861.

[140] See Chapter 8.3(e).

[141] Contrast the position under the French Penal Code, where there is an offence of threatening to commit any felony or misdemeanor (Art. 222-17), with increased penalties for repetition or in the case of a threat to kill.

[142] P. Alldridge, 'Threats Offences—a Case for Reform' [1994] Crim LR 176, at 180.

[143] Cf. J. Horder, 'Reconsidering Psychic Assault' [1998] Crim LR 392, discussed in Chapter 8.3(e).

[144] Chapter 9.5.

[145] See 11.7, and Serious Crime Act 2007, s. 65.

[146] Cf. the critical questions raised by D. Husak, 'Reasonable Risk Creation and Overinclusive Legislation' (1998) 1 Buffalo Crim LR 599, at 618.

[147] See now, A. Ashworth, 'The Unfairness of Risk-Based Possession Offences' (2011) 5 Criminal Law and Philosophy 237; M. Dubber, 'The Possession Paradigm', in R. A. Duff and S. P. Green (eds), *Defining Crimes* (2005), 101.

[148] Chapter 4.3(b).

[149] Dubber, 'The Possession Paradigm', 96. Cf. s. 5(4)(b) of the Misuse of Drugs Act 1971, providing a defence for those who take possession of drugs for the purpose of handing them to the police or other authorities.

[150] Prevention of Crime Act 1953, s. 1; see Chapter 8.3(j). Despite Art. 6.2 of the Convention, it seems that the burden of proof will remain on defendants for this type of offence: *Lynch* v *DPP* [2002] Crim LR 320.

[151] On the principle of maximum certainty see Chapter 3.5(i).

[152] Husak, 'Reasonable Risk Creation', 616–26.

[153] N. Jareborg, 'Criminal Attempts and Moral Luck' (1993) 27 Israel LR 213.

[154] Duff, *Criminal Attempts*, particularly ch 12 (criticizing the subjectivist use of 'moral luck' arguments) and ch 13 (constructing an objectivist law of attempts).

[155] [2008] EWCA Crim 619.

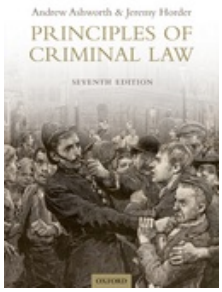
[156] LCCP 183, *Conspiracy and Attempts*, paras. 1.6 and 4.49; cf para. 4.62.

[157] Cf. the treatment of recklessness as to circumstances, in sections 11.3(a) (attempt) and 11.5(c) (conspiracy).

[158] See Ashworth, 'Criminal Attempts and the Role of Resulting Harm', 764–6.

[159] See the assessment by W. Wilson, 'A Rational Scheme of Liability for Participating in Crime' [2008] Crim LR 3.

[160] LCCP 183, *Conspiracy and Attempts*, 257–63.



Principles of Criminal Law (7th edn)

Andrew Ashworth and Jeremy Horder

Publisher: Oxford University Press
Print ISBN-13: 9780199672684
DOI: 10.1093/he/9780199672684.001.0001

Print Publication Date: May 2013
Published online: Sep 2013

Bibliography

A comprehensive bibliography is now available free of charge online. Readers can quickly and easily locate specific references by using the online, alphabetized bibliography, or can alternatively download and print the entire listing.

In addition to this, all references are available in full in the footnotes throughout the text.

Go to www.oxfordtextbooks.co.uk/orc/ashworth_horder7e/

BIBLIOGRAPHY

ALEXANDER, L., 'Criminal Liability for Omissions: An Inventory of Issues', in S. Shute and A. P. Simester (eds), *Criminal Law Theory: Doctrines of the General Part* (2002), Oxford: Oxford University Press.

ALLDRIDGE, P., ' "Attempted Murder of the Soul": Blackmail, Privacy and Secrets' (1993) 13 Oxford JLS 368.

——— 'The Coherence of Defences' [1983] Crim LR 665.

——— 'Dealing with Drug Dealing', in A. P. Simester and A. T. H. Smith (eds), *Harm and Culpability* (1996), Oxford: Oxford University Press.

——— 'Developing the Defence of Duress' [1986] Crim LR 433.

——— 'The Doctrine of Innocent Agency' (1990) 2 Criminal Law Forum 45.

——— *Money Laundering Law* (2003), London: Butterworths.

——— *Relocating Criminal Law* (2000), Aldershot: Dartmouth.

——— 'Rules for Courts and Rules for Citizens' (1990) 10 Oxford JLS 487.

——— 'The Sexual Offences (Conspiracy and Incitement) Act 1996' [1997] Crim LR 30.

——— 'Threats Offences—a Case for Reform' [1994] Crim LR 176.

——— 'What's Wrong with the Traditional Criminal Law Course?' (1990) 10 Legal Studies 38.

ALLEN, M. J., 'Consent and Assault' [1994] J Crim Law 183.

AMERICAN LAW INSTITUTE, *Model Penal Code*, revised edn (with commentaries) (1980), Philadelphia American Law Institute.

ANDANAES, J., '*Error Juris* in Scandinavian Law', in G. Mueller (ed.), *Essays in Criminal Science* (1961), London: Sweet & Maxwell.

ANDREWS, J. A., 'Wilfulness: a Lesson in Ambiguity' (1981) 1 Legal Studies 303.

ANYANGWE, C., 'Dealing with the Problem of Bad Cheques in France' [1978] Crim LR 31.

ARDEN, J., 'Criminal Law at the Crossroads: The Impact of Human Rights from the Law Commission's Perspective and the Need for a Code' [1999] Crim LR 439.

ARLIDGE, A., 'The Trial of Dr. Moor' [2000] Crim LR 31.

ASHWORTH, A., 'A Change of Normative Position: Determining the Contours of Culpability in Criminal Law' (2008) 11 New Crim LR 232.

——— 'Criminal Attempts and the Role of Resulting Harm under the Code, and in the Common Law' (1988) 19 Rutgers LJ 725.

——— 'Criminal Liability in a Medical Context: The Treatment of Good Intentions', in A. P. Simester and A. T. H. Smith (eds), *Harm and Culpability* (1996), Oxford: Clarendon Press.

——— 'Defining Criminal Offences without Harm', in P. F. Smith (ed.), *Criminal Law: Essays in Honour of J. C. Smith* (1987), London: Butterworths.

——— 'The Elasticity of Mens Rea', in C. Tapper (ed.), *Crime, Proof and Punishment* (1981), London: Butterworths.

——— 'Excusable Mistake of Law' [1974] Crim LR 652.

——— 'Four Threats to the Presumption of Innocence' (2006) 123 SALJ 62.

ASHWORTH, A., *Human Rights, Serious Crime and Criminal Procedure* (2002), London: Sweet & Maxwell.

——— 'Ignorance of the Criminal Law, and Duties to Avoid It' (2011) 74 MLR 1

——— 'Interpreting Criminal Statutes: A Crisis of Legality?' (1991) 107 LQR

419.

——— 'Intoxication and the General Defences' [1980] Crim LR 556.

——— 'Is the Criminal Law a Lost Cause?' (2000) 116 LQR 225.

——— 'Principles, Pragmatism, and the Law Commission's Recommendations on Homicide Law Reform' [2007] Crim LR 333.

——— 'Prosecution, Police and the Public: A Guide to Good Gate Keeping' (1984) 23 Howard JCJ 621.

——— 'Reason, Logic and Criminal Liability' (1975) 91 LQR 102.

——— 'Re-Drawing the Boundaries of Entrapment' [2002] Crim LR 161.

——— 'Responsibilities, Rights and Restorative Justice' (2002) 42 BJ Crim 578.

——— 'Robbery Reassessed' [2002] Crim LR 851.

——— 'The Scope of Criminal Liability for Omissions' (1989) 105 LQR 424.

——— 'Self-Defence and the Right to Life' [1975] CLJ 282.

——— *Sentencing and Criminal Justice* (5th edn, 2010), Cambridge: Cambridge University Press.

——— 'Should Strict Criminal Liability be Removed from All Imprisonable Offences?' (2010) 45 Irish Jurist 1.

——— 'Social Control and "Anti-Social Behaviour": The Subversion of Human Rights?' (2004) 120 LQR 263.

——— 'Taking the Consequences', in S. Shute, J. Gardner, and J. Horder (eds), *Action and Value in Criminal Law* (1993), Oxford: Oxford University Press.

——— 'Testing Fidelity to Legal Values' in S. Shute and A. P. Simester (eds), *Criminal Law Theory: Doctrines of the General Part* (2002), Oxford: Oxford

University Press.

——— 'Testing Fidelity to Legal Values: Official Involvement and Criminal Justice' (2000) 63 MLR 633.

——— 'The Unfairness of Risk-Based Possession Offences' (2011) 5 Criminal Law & Philosophy 237.

——— 'Towards a Theory of Criminal Legislation' (1989) 1 Criminal Law Forum 41.

——— 'Transferred Malice and Punishment for Unforeseen Consequences', in P. Glazebrook (ed.), *Reshaping the Criminal Law* (1978), London: Sweet & Maxwell.

——— and BLAKE, M., 'The Presumption of Innocence in English Criminal Law' [1996] Crim LR 306.

——— and MITCHELL, B. (eds), *Rethinking English Homicide Law* (2000), Oxford: Oxford University Press.

——— and REDMAYNE, M., *The Criminal Process* (4th edn, 2010), Oxford: Oxford University Press.

——— and STEINER, E., 'Criminal Omissions and Public Duties: the French Experience' (1990) 10 Legal Studies 153.

——— and ZEDNER, L., 'Defending the Criminal Law: Reflections on the Changing Character of Crime, Procedure and Sanctions' (2008) 2 Criminal Law and Philosophy 21.

ATIYAH, P. S., *Vicarious Liability in the Law of Torts* (1967), London: Butterworths.

AULD LJ, *Review of the Criminal Courts of England and Wales* (2001), London: The Stationery Office.

AUSTIN, J., *Lectures on Jurisprudence* (5th edn, 1885), London: J. Murray.

AUSTIN, J. L., 'A Plea for Excuses', in H. Morris (ed.), *Freedom and Responsibility* (1961), Stanford: Stanford University Press.

BAILEY, V. and BLACKBURN, S., 'The Punishment of Incest Act 1908: A Case Study in Law Creation' [1979] Crim LR 708.

BAKER, E., 'Human Rights, M'Naghten and the 1991 Act' [1994] Crim LR 84.

——— 'Taking European Criminal Law Seriously' [1998] Crim LR 361.

BALDWIN, R., 'The New Punitive Regulation' (2004) 67 MLR 351.

BALL, C., 'Youth Justice? Half a Century of Responses to Youth Offending', [2004] Crim LR 167.

BAMFORTH, N., 'Sado-Masochism and Consent' [1994] Crim LR 661.

BANKOWSKI, Z., and MACCORMICK, D. N., 'Statutory Interpretation in the United Kingdom', in D. N. MacCormick and R. S. Summers (eds), *Interpreting Statutes: a Comparative Study* (1991), London: Dartmouth.

BAZELON, D., 'The Morality of the Criminal Law' (1976) 49 S Cal LR 385.

BEATSON, J. and SIMESTER, A. P., (1999) 115 LQR 372.

BELL, J., *Policy Arguments in Judicial Decisions* (1983), Oxford: Oxford University Press.

BENNETT, R., 'Should we Criminalize HIV Transmission?', in C. Erin and S. Ost (eds.), *The Criminal Justice System and Health Care* (2007), Oxford: Oxford University Press.

BENTHAM, J., *Introduction to the Principles of Morals and Legislation* (1789), Oxford: Blackwell (1948).

BEYNON, H., 'Causation, Omissions and Complicity' [1987] Crim LR 539.

BINGHAM, LORD, 'A Criminal Code: Must We Wait for Ever?' [1998] Crim LR

694.

BITTNER, E., 'The Police on Skid Row: A Study in Peacekeeping' (1967) 32 Amer Soc Rev 699.

BLACKSTONE, W., *Commentaries on the Laws of England* (1768), London: Apollo Press.

BLAKE, M., 'Physician-Assisted Suicide: A Criminal Offence or a Patient's Right?' (1997) 5 Medical LR 294.

BLOM-COOPER, L. and MORRIS, T., *With Malice Aforethought: A Study of the Crime and Punishment for Homicide* (2004).

BOGG, A. and STANTON-IFE, J., 'Protecting the Vulnerable: Legality, Harm and Theft', (2003) 23 Legal Studies 402.

BOHLANDER, M., *Principles of German Criminal Law* (2009), Oxford: Hart Pub-lsihing

——— 'The Sexual Offences Act 2003 and the *Tyrell Principle*— Criminalising the Victims?' [2005] Crim LR 701.

BOWLING, B. and PHILLIPS, C., *Racism, Crime and Justice* (2002).

BRADLY LORD, *Review of People with Mental Health Problems or Learning Disabilities in the Criminal Justice System* (2009*)* London: HMSO

BRAITHWAITE, J., *Corporate Crime in the Pharmaceutical Industry* (1984), London: Routledge & Kegan Paul.

——— and FISSE, B., 'The Allocation of Responsibility for Corporate Crime' (1988) 11 Sydney LR 468.

BRETT, P., 'Mistake of Law as a Criminal Defence' (1966) 5 Melb U LR 179.

BRODY, S. and TARLING, R., *Taking Offenders out of Circulation*, Home Office Research Study No. 64 (1980), London: HMSO.

BRONITT, S., 'Spreading Disease and the Criminal Law' [1994] Crim LR 21.

BROOKE, SIR H., 'The Law Commission and Criminal Law Reform' [1995] Crim LR 911.

BROWN, D. and ELLIS, T., *Policing Low-level Disorder: Police Use of Section 5 of the Public Order Act 1986*, Home Office Research Study No. 135 (1994), London: HMSO.

BROWNLEE, I., 'The Statutory Charging Scheme in England and Wales: Towards a Unified Prosecution System?' [2004] Crim LR 896.

BRUDNER, A., 'Agency and Welfare in the Penal Law', in S. Shute, J. Gardner, and J. Horder (eds), *Action and Value in Criminal Law* (1993), Oxford: Oxford University Press.

——— 'A Theory of Necessity' (1987) 7 Oxford JLS 338.

BUCHANAN, A. and VIRGO, G., 'Duress and Mental Abnormality' [1999] Crim LR 517.

BUCKE, T. and BROWN, D., *In Police Custody: Police Powers and Suspects' Rights under the Revised PACE Codes of Practice* (1997), London: The Home Office.

BUCKE, T. and JAMES, Z., *Trespass and Protest: Policing under the Criminal Justice and Public Order Act 1994*, Home Office Research Study No. 190 (1998), London: The Home Office.

BURCHELL, J., *Principles of Criminal Law* (4th edn, 2012), Lansdowne: Juta.

BURNEY E, *Making People Behave: Anti Social Behaviour, Politics and Policy* (2nd edn. 2009), Cullompton: Willan

BUXTON, R. J., 'By Any Unlawful Act' (1966) 82 LQR 174.

——— 'Circumstances, Consequences and Attempted Rape' [1984] Crim LR

25.

BUZZARD, J., 'Intent' [1978] Crim LR 5.

CADOPPI, A., 'Failure to Rescue and the Continental Criminal Law', in M. A. Menlowe and R. A. McCall Smith, *The Duty to Rescue* (1993), Aldershot: Dartmouth.

CAMPBELL, K., 'Conditional Intention' (1982) 2 Legal Studies 77.

——— 'Offence and Defence', in I. Dennis (ed.), *Criminal Law and Criminal Justice* (1987), London: Sweet & Maxwell.

——— 'The Test of Dishonesty in *R* v *Ghosh*' [1984] CLJ 349.

CARD, R., *Public Order: The New Law* (1986), London: Butterworths.

——— 'Authority and Excuse as Defences to Crime' [1969] Crim LR 359.

CHALMERS, J., 'Merging Provocation and Diminished Responsibility: Some Reasons for Scepticism' [2004] Crim LR 198.

——— and LEVERICK, F., 'Fair Labelling in Criminal Law' (2008) 71 MLR 217.

CHILDS, M., 'Sexual Autonomy and Law' (2001) 64 MLR 309.

CHRISTOPHER, R., 'Self-Defence and Objectivity' (1998) 1 Buffalo Crim LR 537.

——— 'Unknowing Justification and the Logical Necessity of the *Dadson* Principle in Self-Defence' (1995) 15 Oxford JLS 229.

CLARKE, R. V. G., *Situational Crime Prevention: Successful Case Studies* (2nd edn, 1997), New York: Harrow and Heston.

CLARKSON, C., 'Complicity, *Powell* and Manslaughter' [1998] Crim LR 556.

——— 'Context and Culpability in Involuntary Manslaughter', in A. Ashworth and B. Mitchell (eds), *Rethinking English Homicide Law* (2000), Oxford: Oxford University Press.

——— 'Corporate Manslaughter: Need for a Special Offence?', in C. Clarkson

and S. Cunningham (eds), *Criminal Liability for Non-Aggressive Death* (2008), Aldershot: Ashgate.

——— 'Necessary Action: A New Defence' [2004] Crim LR 81.

——— 'Theft and Fair Labelling' (1993) 56 MLR 554.

——— CRETNEY, A., DAVIS, G. and SHEPHERD, J., 'Assaults: The Relationship between Seriousness, Criminalisation and Punishment' [1994] Crim LR 4.

——— and CUNNINGHAM, S. (eds), *Criminal Liability for Non-Aggressive Death* (2008), Aldershot: Ashgate.

COGGON, J., 'Ignoring the moral and intellectual shape of the law after *Bland*' (2007) 27 LS 110.

COLB, S., 'Freedom from Incarceration: Why is this Right different from all other Rights?' (1994) 69 NYULR 781.

COLLINS, H., *Marxism and Law* (1982), Oxford: Oxford University Press.

COLVIN, E., 'Exculpatory Defences in Criminal Law' (1990) 10 Oxford JLS 381.

COMMISSIONER FOR HUMAN RIGHTS, *Children and Corporal Punishment: 'the Right not to be Hit', also a 'Children's Right'* (2006) 43 EHRR SE17.

COMMITTEE ON THE PENALTY FOR HOMICIDE, *Report* (1993), London: Prison Reform Trust.

CRAWFORD A. and EVANS K., 'Crime Prevention and Community Safety' in M. Maguire, R. Morgan and R. Reiner (eds), *Oxford Handbook of Criminology* (5th edn, 2012), Oxford: Oxford University Press.

CRIMINAL LAW REVISION COMMITTEE, 8th Report, *Theft and Related Offences*, Cmnd 2977 (1966), London: HMSO.

——— 14th Report, *Offences against the Person*, Cmnd 7844 (1980), London: HMSO.

CROALL, H., *White Collar Crime* (1992), Milton Keynes: Open University Press.

CROSS, R., 'Centenary Reflections on Prince's Case' (1975) 91 LQR 540.

——— 'The Mental Element in Crime' (1967) 83 LQR 215.

——— BELL, J. and ENGLE, G., *Statutory Interpretation* (3rd edn, 1995), London: Butterworths.

CROWN PROSECUTION SERVICE, *Code for Crown Prosecutors* (6th edn, 2010).

CUNNINGHAM, S., 'Punishing Drivers who Kill: Putting Road Safety First?' (2007) 27 LS 288.

——— 'The Reality of Vehicular Homicides: Convictions for Murder, Manslaughter and Causing Death by Dangerous Driving' [2001] Crim LR 679.

——— 'Vehicular Homicide: Need for a Specific Offence?', in C. Clarkson and S. Cunningham (eds), *Criminal Liability for Non-Aggressive Death* (2008), Aldershot: Ashgate.

DE BÚRCA, G. and GARDNER, S., 'The Codification of the Criminal Law' (1990) 10 Oxford JLS 559.

DEMPSEY, M. M., 'Rethinking Wolfenden: Prostitute-Use, Criminal Law and Remote Harm' [2005] Crim LR 444.

——— and HERRING, J., 'Why Sexual Penetration Requires Justification' (2007) 27 Oxford JLS 467.

DENNIS, I., 'The Criminal Attempts Act 1981' [1982] Crim LR 5.

——— 'Duress, Murder and Criminal Responsibility' (1980) 96 LQR 208.

——— 'The Law Commission Report on Attempt: The Elements of Attempt' [1980] Crim LR 758.

——— 'The Rationale of Criminal Conspiracy' (1977) 93 LQR 39.

——— 'Silence in the Police Station: The Marginalisation of Section 34' [2002]

Crim LR 25.

DEPARTMENT OF HEALTH, *Protecting Children, Supporting Parents* (2000), London: Department of Health.

DERSHOWITZ, A., *Preemption* (2006), London: W. W. Norton.

DEVLIN, P., *The Enforcement of Morals* (1965), Oxford: Oxford University Press.

——— *Samples of Lawmaking* (1970), London: Oxford University Press.

DICEY, A. V., *Introduction to the Study of the Law of the Constitution* (8th edn, 1923), London: Stevens.

DILLOF, A. M., 'Transferred Intent: An Inquiry into the Nature of Criminal Culpability' (1998) 1 Buffalo Crim LR 501.

DINGWALL, G., *Alcohol and Crime* (2006), Cullompton: Willan.

DODD, T., *et al.*, *Crime in England and Wales 2003/2004* (Home Office Statistical Bulletin 10/04), London: The Home Office.

DRESSLER, J., *Understanding Criminal Law* (3rd edn, 2001), New York: Matthew Bender.

——— 'Battered Women who Kill their Sleeping Tormentors', in S. Shute and A. P. Simester (eds), *Criminal Law Theory: Doctrines of the General Party* (2002), Oxford: Oxford University Press.

——— 'Justifications and Excuses: A Brief Review of the Concept and the Literature' (1987) 33 Wayne LR 1155.

DRESSLER, J., 'Reflections on Excusing Wrongdoers: Moral Theory, New Excuses and the Model Penal Code' (1988) 19 Rutgers LJ 671.

DUBBER, M., 'The Possession Paradigm: The Special Part and the Police Power Model of the Criminal Process', in R. A. Duff and S. P. Green (eds),

Defining Crimes (2005), Oxford: Oxford University Press.

DUFF, R. A., *Answering for Crime* (2007), Oxford: Hart Publishing.

——— *Criminal Attempts* (1996), Oxford: Clarendon Press.

——— 'The Circumstances of an Attempt' (1991) 50 Camb LJ 100.

——— 'Criminalizing Endangerment', in R. A. Duff and S. P. Green (eds), *Defining Crimes* (2005), Oxford: Oxford University Press.

——— 'Fitness to Plead and Fair Trials' [1994] Crim LR 419.

——— *Intention, Agency and Criminal Liability* (1990), Oxford: Blackwell.

——— 'Law, Language and Community: Some Preconditions of Criminal Liability' (1998) 18 Oxford JLS 189.

——— *Punishment, Communication and Community* (2001), Oxford: Oxford University Press.

——— 'Whose Luck is it Anyway?', in C. Clarkson and S. Cunningham (eds), *Criminal Liability for Non-Aggressive Death* (2008), Aldershot: Ashgate.

DWORKIN, R., *A Matter of Principle* (1985), London: Duckworth.

——— *Taking Rights Seriously* (1977), London: Duckworth.

EDWARDS, S., 'Abolishing Provocation and Re-Framing Self-Defence—The Law Commission's Options for Reform' [2004] Crim LR 181.

——— 'Loss of Self Control: When His Anger is Worth More Than Her Fear' in A. Reed and M. Bohlander (eds), *Loss of Self-control and Diminished Responsibility: Domestic, Comparative and International Perspectives* (2011) Aldershot: Ashgate.

ELLIOTT, C and THAN, C DE., 'A Case for Rational Reconstruction of Consent in Criminal Law' (2007) 70 MLR 225.

ELLIOTT, D. W., 'Criminal Damage' [1988] Crim LR 403.

——— 'Directors' Thefts and Dishonesty' [1991] Crim LR 732.

——— 'Dishonesty in Theft: A Dispensable Concept' [1982] Crim LR 395.

——— 'Endangering Life by Destroying or Damaging Property' [1997] Crim LR 382.

——— 'Necessity, Duress and Self-Defence' [1989] Crim LR 611.

EMBRAHIM, I., *et al.*, 'Violence, Sleepwalking and the Criminal Law: The Medical Aspects' [2005] Crim LR 614.

EMMERSON, B., ASHWORTH, A. and MACDONALD, L. (eds), *Human Rights and Criminal Justice* (3rd edn, 2012).

ENVIRONMENT AGENCY, *Enforcement and Prosecution Policy* (2003), at <www.environment-agency.gov.uk>.

ERIN, C., 'The Rightful Domain of the Criminal Law', in C. Erin and S. Ost (eds), *The Criminal Justice System and Health Care* (2007), Oxford: Oxford University Press.

FARMER, L., ' "The Genius of our Law": Criminal Law and the Scottish Legal Tradition' (1992) 55 MLR 25.

FARRIER, M. D., 'The Distinction between Murder and Manslaughter in its Procedural Context' (1976) 39 MLR 414.

FARRINGTON, D., 'Childhood Risk Factors and Risk-Focused Prevention', in M. Maguire, R. Morgan and R. Reiner (eds), *Oxford Handbook of Criminology* (4th edn, 2007), Oxford: Oxford University Press.

FEINBERG, J., *Harm to Others* (1984), New York: Oxford University Press.

FEINBERG, J., *Harm to Self* (1986), New York: Oxford University Press.

——— *Harmless Wrongdoing* (1988), New York: Oxford University Press.

——— *Offense to Others* (1986), New York: Oxford University Press.

FEIST, A., *et al*., *Investigating and Detecting Recorded Offences of Rape* (2007), London: Home Office.

FERGUSON, P. W., 'Codifying Criminal Law: (1) A Critique of Scots Common Law' [2004] Crim LR 49.

FIELDING, N., *Courting Violence: Offences Against the Person in Court* (2006), Oxford: Oxford University Press.

FINCH, E., *The Criminalisation of Stalking* (2001), London: Cavendish.

——— and MUNRO, V., 'Breaking Boundaries? Sexual Consent in the Jury Room' (2006) 26 LS 303.

——— 'Intoxicated Consent and Drug-Assisted Rape Revisited' [2004] Crim LR 789.

FINGARETTE, H., 'Addiction and Criminal Responsibility' (1975) 84 Yale LJ 413.

FINKELSTEIN, C., 'Involuntary Crimes, Voluntarily Committed', in S. Shute and A. P. Simester (eds), *Criminal Law Theory: Doctrines of the General Part* (2002), Oxford: Oxford University Press.

——— 'Merger and Felony Murder', in R. A. Duff and S. P. Green (eds), *Defining Crimes* (2005), Oxford: Oxford University Press.

——— 'Two Models of Murder: Patterns of Criminalisation in the United States', in J. Horder (ed), *Homicide Law in Comparative Perspective* (2007), Oxford: Hart Publishing.

FINNIS, J., 'Intention and Side-Effects', in R. G. Frey and C. W. Morris, *Liability and Responsibility* (1991), Cambridge: Cambridge University Press.

——— 'Invoking the Principle of Legality against the Rule of Law' (2011) New Zealand Law Review [2010]

FISCHER, J., 'Responsibility and Control' (1982) 79 Journal of Philosophy 24.

FISSE, B. and BRAITHWAITE, J., *Corporations, Crime and Accountability* (1993), Cambridge: Cambridge University Press.

Flatley J., *et al.*, Crime in England and Wales, 2009-10, Findings from the British Crime Survey and Police Recorded Crime (2010) London: Home Office.

FLETCHER, G., *Rethinking Criminal Law* (1978), Boston, Mass.: Little, Brown.

FORTSON, R., *Blackstone's Guide to the Serious Crimes Act 2007* (2008), Oxford: Oxford University Press.

———'The Modern Partial Defence of Diminished Responsibility' in A. Reed and M. Bohlander (eds), *Loss of Self-control and Diminished Responsibility: Domestic, Comparative and International Perspectives* (2011) Aldershot: Ashgate.

FOSTER, SIR M., *Crown Law* (1762), London: Dodson.

FULFORD, K. W. M., 'Value, Action, Mental Illness, and the Law', in S. Shute, J. Gardner, and J. Horder (eds), *Action and Value in Criminal Law* (1993), Oxford: Oxford University Press.

GALLIGAN, D. J., 'Responsibility for Recklessness' (1978) 31 CLP 55.

GARDNER, J., 'Ashworth on Principles' in L. Zedner and J. V. Roberts (eds), *Principles and Values in Criminal Law and Criminal Justice* (2012), Oxford: Oxford University Press.

———'Complicity and Causality' (2007) 1 Crim Law & Phil 127.

———'Criminal Law and the Uses of Theory: A Reply to Laing' (1994) 14 Oxford JLS 217.

——— 'On the General Part of Criminal Law', in R. A. Duff (ed.), *Philosophy and the Criminal Law* (1998), Cambridge: Cambridge University Press.

——— 'Justification under Authority' (2010) 23 Canadian Journal of Law and Jurisprudence 71

——— 'Justifications and Reasons' in A. P. Simester and A. T. H. Smith (eds), *Harm and Culpability* (1996), Oxford: Clarendon Press.

——— *Offences and Defences* (2007), Oxford: Oxford University Press.

——— 'Rationality and the Rule of Law in Offences against the Person' [1994] Camb LJ 502.

——— and JUNG, H., 'Making Sense of Mens Rea: Antony Duff's Account' (1991) 11 Oxford JLS 559.

——— and MACKLEM, T., 'Compassion without Respect? Nine Fallacies in *R* v *Smith*' [2001] Crim LR 623.

GARDNER, J., and SHUTE, S., 'The Wrongness of Rape', in J. Horder (ed.), *Oxford Essays in Jurisprudence (4th Series)* (2000), Oxford: Oxford University Press.

GARDNER, S., 'Direct Action and the Defence of Necessity' [2005] Crim LR 371.

——— 'Necessity's Newest Inventions' (1991) 11 Oxford JLS 125.

——— 'Property and Theft' [1998] Crim LR 35.

——— 'Reiterating the Criminal Code' (1992) 55 MLR 839.

GENDERS, E., 'Reform of Offences against the Person Act: Lessons from the Law in Action' [1999] Crim LR 689.

GILES, M., 'Judicial Lawmaking in the Criminal Courts: The Case of Marital Rape' [1992] Crim LR 407.

——— and UGLOW, S., 'Appropriation and Manifest Criminality in Theft' (1992) 56 J Crim Law 179.

GILLESPIE, A. A., 'Tinkering with "Child Pornography" ' [2004] Crim LR 361.

GLAZEBROOK, P., 'Criminal Omissions: The Duty Requirement in Offences against the Person' (1960) 56 LQR 386.

——— 'Revising the Theft Acts' [1993] Camb LJ 191.

——— 'Situational Liability', in P. Glazebrook (ed.), *Reshaping the Criminal Law* (1978), London: Sweet & Maxwell.

——— 'Structuring the Criminal Code', in A. P. Simester and A. T. H. Smith (eds), *Harm and Culpability* (1996), Oxford: Oxford University Press.

GOBERT, J. 'The Corporate Manslaughter and Corporate Homicide Act 2007' (2008) 71 MLR 413.

——— and PUNCH, M., *Rethinking Corporate Crime* (2003), London: Butterworths.

GOFF, LORD, 'A Matter of Life and Death' (1995) 3 Medical LR 1.

——— 'The Mental Element in the Crime of Murder' (1988) 104 LQR 30.

GOODIN R., 'An Epistemic Case for Legal Moralism' *(2010) 30 OJLS 615.*

GOTTFREDSON, M., *Fear of Crime*, Home Office Research Study No. 84 (1985), London: HMSO.

GOUGH, S., 'Intoxication and Criminal Liability: The Law Commission's Proposed Reforms' (1996) 112 LQR 335.

——— 'Surviving without *Majewski*' [2000] Crim LR 719.

GRACE, S., *Policing Domestic Violence in the 1990s*, Home Office Research Study No. 139 (1995), London: HMSO.

GREEN, S. P., *Lying, Cheating and Stealing* (2006), Oxford: Oxford University Press.

GREENAWALT, K., 'The Perplexing Borders of Justification and Excuse' (1984)

84 Columbia LR 1897.

GRIEW, E., 'Dishonesty: The Objections to *Feely* and *Ghosh*' [1985] Crim LR 341.

——— 'States of Mind, Presumptions and Inferences', in P. Smith (ed.), *Criminal Law: Essays in Honour of J. C. Smith* (1987), London: Butterworths.

GRIFFITHS, J., 'Assisted Suicide in the Netherlands' (1995) 58 MLR 232.

GRUBIN, D., 'What Constitutes Fitness to Plead?' [1993] Crim LR 748.

——— 'A Reply' [1994] Crim LR 423.

GUNN, M. J. and ORMEROD, D., 'The Legality of Boxing' (1995) 15 Legal Studies 181.

HALL, J., *General Principles of Criminal Law* (2nd edn, 1960), Indianapolis, Ind.: Bobbs-Merrill.

HALL, L., 'Strict or Liberal Construction of Penal Statutes' (1935) 48 Harv LR 748.

HALPIN, A., *Definition in the Criminal Law* (2004), Oxford: Hart Publishing.

HALPIN, A., 'The Test for Dishonesty' [1996] Crim LR 283.

HAMMOND, R. G., 'Theft of Information' (1984) 100 LQR 252.

HARRIS, J. W., *Property and Justice* (1996), Oxford: Clarendon Press.

HART, H. L. A., *Law, Liberty, and Morality* (1963), Oxford: Oxford University Press.

——— *Punishment and Responsibility* (2nd edn, by J. Gardner, 2008), Oxford: Oxford University Press.

——— and HONORÉ, T., *Causation in the Law* (2nd edn, 1985), Oxford: Clarendon Press.

HAWKINS, K., *Law as Last Resort* (2002), Oxford: Oxford University Press.

HEATON, R., 'Deceiving without Thieving?' [2001] Crim LR 712.

HEDDERMAN, C. and GELSTHORPE, L. (eds), *Understanding the Sentencing of Women*, Home Office Research Study No. 170 (1997), London: Home Office.

HERRING, J., 'Familial Homicide, Failure to Protect and Domestic Violence—Who's the Victim?' [2007] Crim LR 923.

——— 'Mistaken Sex' [2005] Crim LR 519.

——— and PALSER, E., 'The Duty of Care in Gross Negligence Manslaughter' [2007] Crim LR 24.

HIRST, M., 'Assault, Battery and Indirect Violence' [1999] Crim LR 557.

——— 'Causing Death by Driving and Other Offences: a Question of Balance' [2008] Crim LR 339.

HOFMEYR, K., 'The Problem of Private Entrapment' [2006] Crim LR 319.

HOLMES, O. W., *The Common Law* (1881), Boston, Mass.: Little, Brown.

HOLTON, R. and SHUTE, S., 'Self-Control in the Modern Provocation Defence' (2007) 27 Oxford JLS 49.

HOME OFFICE, *Digest 4: Information on the Criminal Justice System in England and Wales* (1999), London: Home Office.

——— *New Powers against Organized and Financial Crime* (2006), London: The Stationery Office.

——— *No More Excuses: A New Approach to Tackling Youth Crime in England and Wales*, Cm 3809 (1997), London: The Stationery Office.

——— *Protecting the Public*, Cm 5668 (2002), London: The Stationery Office.

——— *Reforming the Law on Involuntary Manslaughter: The Government's Proposals* (2000), London: The Stationery Office.

——— *Review of Road Traffic Offences involving Bad Driving* (2004), London: The Stationery Office.

——— *Setting the Boundaries* (2000), London: The Stationery Office.

——— *Sexual Offences Act 2003: a stocktake of the effectiveness of the Act since its implementation* (2006), London: The Stationery Office.

——— *Violence: Reforming the Offences Against the Person Act 1861* (1998), London: The Home Office.

HONORÉ, T., *Responsibility and Fault* (1998), Oxford: Hart Publishing.

HOOD, R. and HOYLE, C., *The Death Penalty: A World-Wide Perspective* (4th edn, 2008), Oxford: Oxford University Press.

HORDER, J., 'Cognition, Emotion and Criminal Culpability' (1990) 106 LQR 469.

——— 'Crimes of Ulterior Intent', in A. P. Simester and A. T. H. Smith (eds), *Harm and Culpability* (1996), Oxford: Clarendon Press.

——— 'A Critique of the Correspondence Principle in Criminal Law' [1995] Crim LR 759.

——— *Excusing Crime* (2004), Oxford: Oxford University Press.

——— 'Gross Negligence and Criminal Culpability' (1997) 47 U Toronto LJ 495.

——— *Homicide and the Politics of Law Reform* (2012) Oxford: Oxford University Press

——— *Homicide Law in Comparative Perspective* (2007), Oxford: Hart Publishing.

——— 'How Culpability Can, and Cannot, Be Denied in Under-age Sex Crimes' [2001] Crim LR 15.

——— 'Intention in the Criminal Law—a Rejoinder' (1995) 58 MLR 678.

——— 'Killing the Passive Abuser', in S. Shute and A. P. Simester (eds), *Criminal Law Theory: Doctrines of the General Part* (2002), Oxford: Oxford University Press.

——— 'Pleading Involuntary Lack of Capacity' (1993) 52 Camb LJ 298.

——— 'The Problem of Provocative Children' [1987] Crim LR 654.

——— *Provocation and Responsibility* (1992), Oxford: Clarendon Press.

——— 'Reconsidering Psychic Assault' [1998] Crim LR 392.

——— 'A Reply' [1999] Crim LR 206.

——— 'Rethinking Non-Fatal Offences against the Person' (1994) 14 Oxford JLS 335.

——— 'Self-Defence, Necessity and Duress: Understanding the Relationship' (1998) XI Canadian J Law & Jurisp 143.

——— 'Strict Liability, Statutory Construction and the Spirit of Liberty' (2002) 118 LQR 458.

——— 'The Subjective Element in the Provocation Defence' (2005) 25 OJLS 123.

——— 'Transferred Malice and the Remoteness of Unexpected Outcomes from Intentions' [2006] Crim LR 383.

——— 'Two Histories and Four Hidden Principles of Mens Rea' (1997) 113 LQR 95.

——— 'Varieties of Intention, Criminal Attempts and Endangerment' (1994) 14 Legal Studies 335.

——— and MCGOWAN, L., 'Manslaughter by Causing Another's Suicide' [2006] Crim LR 1035.

HOUSE OF COMMONS HOME AFFAIRS COMMITTEE, *Sexual Offences Bill* (5th Re-

port, 2003).

HOUSE OF LORDS SELECT COMMITTEE on Murder and Life Imprisonment (1988–9), HL Paper 78.

HOUSE OF LORDS SELECT COMMITTEE on Medical Ethics (1993–4) *Report*.

HOYANO, L. 'The Cornoners and Justice Act 2009: Special Measures Directions Take Two: Entrenching Unequal Access to Justice?' (2010) Crim LR 345.

HOYANO, L. and KEENAN, C., *Child Abuse* (2007), Oxford: Oxford University Press.

HOYLE, C., *Negotiating Domestic Violence* (1998), Oxford: Clarendon Press.

HUBER, B., 'The Dilemma of Decriminalization: Dealing with Shoplifting in West Germany' [1980] Crim LR 621.

HUDSON, B., 'Punishing the Poor: A Critique of the Dominance of Legal Reasoning in Penal Policy and Practice', in W. C. Hefferman and J. Kleinig (eds), *From Social Justice to Criminal Justice* (2000), Oxford: Oxford University Press.

——— 'Punishing the Poor: A Critique of the Dominance of Legal Reasoning in Penal Policy and Practice', in A. Duff, S. E. Marshall, R. E. Dobash, and R. P. Dobash (eds), *Penal Theory and Practice* (1994), Manchester: Manchester University Press.

HUNT, A., 'Criminal Prohibitions on Direct and Indirect Encouragement of Terrorism' [2007] Crim LR 441.

HUSAK, D., *Drugs and Rights* (1992), Cambridge: Cambridge University Press.

——— 'Ignorance of Law and Duties of Citizenship' (1994) 14 Legal Studies 105.

——— *Overcriminalization* (2008), Oxford: Oxford University Press.

——— *Philosophy of Criminal Law* (1987), New Jersey: Rowman and Littlefield.

——— 'Reasonable Risk Creation and Overinclusive Legislation' (1998) 1 Buffalo Crim LR 599.

——— 'The Serial View of Criminal Law Defences' (1992) 3 Crim LF 369.

——— 'Transferred Intent' (1996) 10 Notre Dame J Law, Ethics & Public Policy 65.

——— and VON HIRSCH, A., 'Culpability and Mistake of Law', in S. Shute, J. Gardner, and J. Horder (eds), *Action and Value in Criminal Law* (1993), Oxford: Oxford University Press.

HUTTER, B., *Compliance: Regulation and Environment* (1997), Oxford: Clarendon Press.

——— *Regulation and Risk: Occupational Health and Safety on the Railways* (2001), Oxford: Oxford University Press.

IVISON, D., 'Justifying Punishment in Intercultural Contexts: Whose Norms, Which Values?' in M. Matravers (ed.), *Punishment and Political Theory* (1999), Oxford: Hart Publishing.

JACKSON, B. S., '*Storkwain:* A Case Study in Strict Liability and Self-Regulation' [1991] Crim LR 892.

JAREBORG, N., 'The Coherence of the Penal System', in N. Jareborg, *Essays in Criminal Law* (1988), Uppsala: Iustus Vorlag.

——— 'Criminal Attempts and Moral Luck' (1993) 27 Israel LR 213.

——— 'What Kind of Criminal Law Do We Want?', in A. Snare (ed.), *Beware of Punishment: On the Utility and Futility of Criminal Law*, Scandinavian Studies

in Criminology, Vol. 14 (1995), Oslo: Pax Forlag A/S.

JEFFRIES, J. C., 'Legality, Vagueness and the Construction of Penal Statutes' (1985) 71 Virginia LR 189.

JOHNSON, R., 'The Unnecessary Crime of Conspiracy' (1973) 61 Cal LR 1137.

JOINT COMMITTEE ON HUMAN RIGHTS, *Scrutiny of Bills: Further Progress Report* (12th Report, 2003), London: The Stationery Office.

——— *Legislative Scrutiny* (14th progress Report, 2006), London: The Stationery Office.

——— *Legislative Scrutiny* (15th Report, 2007–08), London: The Stationery Office.

JONES, T. H., 'Common Law and Criminal Law: The Scottish Experience' [1990] Crim LR 292.

——— 'Insanity, Automatism and the Burden of Proof on the Accused' (1995) 111 LQR 475.

JONES, T., MACLEAN, D., and YOUNG, J., *The Islington Crime Survey* (1986), London: Gower.

JURATOWITCH, B., *Retroactivity and the Common Law* (2008), Oxford: Hart Publishing.

KADISH, S., *Blame and Punishment* (1987), New York: Macmillan.

——— 'Reckless Complicity' (1997) 87 J Crim Law & Criminology 369.

KATYAL, N. K., 'Conspiracy Theory' (2003) 112 Yale LJ 1307.

KAVENY, M. C., 'Inferring Intention from Foresight', (2004) 120 LQR 81.

KEATING, H., 'Protecting or Punishing Children: Physical Punishment, Human Rights and English Law Reform' (2006) 26 LS 394.

——— 'Reckless Children' [2007] Crim LR 546.

KELL, D., 'Social Disutility and the Law of Consent' (1994) 14 Oxford JLS 121.

KELLY, L., *et al.*, *Domestic Violence Matters*, Home Office Research Study No. 193 (1999), London: Home Office, Research, Development and Statistics Directorate.

KELMAN, M., 'Interpretive Construction in the Substantive Criminal Law' (1981) 33 Stanford LR 591.

KENNEDY, I. M., *Treat Me Right* (1988), Oxford: Clarendon Press.

KENNEFICK L., 'Introducing a New Diminished Responsibility Defence for England and Wales' (2011) 74 MLR 750

KENNY, A., *Freewill and Responsibility* (1978), Oxford: Oxford University Press.

KENNY, C. S., *Outlines of Criminal Law* (1st edn, 1902; 16th edn, 1952), Cambridge: Cambridge University Press.

KEOWN, J., *Euthanasia, Ethics and Public Policy* (2002) Cambridge UP.

KERSHAW, C., NICHOLAS, S. and WALKER, A., *Crime in England and Wales 2007/2008* (2008), London, The Home Office.

KHAN, A., 'Intention in Criminal Law: Time to Change?' (2002) 23 Statute LR 235.

KLOCKARS, C. B., *The Professional Fence* (1975), London: Tavistock.

KREBS B., 'Joint Criminal Enterprise' (2010) 73 MLR 578.

KUGLER, I., *Direct and Oblique Intention in the Criminal Law* (2002), Aldershot: Ashgate.

LACEY, N., 'Beset by Boundaries: The Home Office Review of Sex Offences' [2001] Crim LR 3.

——— 'A Clear Concept of Intention: Elusive or Illusory?' (1993) 56 MLR 621.

——— 'Community in Legal Theory: Idea, Ideal or Ideology?' (1996) 15 Studies in Law, Politics and Society 105.

——— *State Punishment* (1988), London: Routledge.

——— *Unspeakable Subjects* (1998), Oxford: Hart Publishing.

——— WELLS, C. and QUICK, O., *Reconstructing Criminal Law* (4th edn, 2010), Cambridge: Cambridge University Press.

——— and ZEDNER L., 'Legal Constructions of Crime' in M. Maguire, R. Morgan, and R. Reiner (eds), *Oxford Handbook of Criminology* (5th edn., 2012) Oxford: Oxford University Press

LAING, J. A., 'The Prospects of a Theory of Criminal Culpability: Mens Rea and Methodological Doubt' (1994) 14 Oxford JLS 57.

LAMOND, G., 'Coercion, Threats, and the Puzzle of Blackmail', in A. P. Simester and A. T. H. Smith (eds), *Harm and Culpability* (1996), Oxford: Oxford University Press.

——— 'What is a Crime?' (2007) 27 Oxford JLS 609.

LANHAM, D. J., 'Danger Down Under' [1999] Crim LR 960.

——— 'Defence of Property in the Criminal Law' [1966] Crim LR 368.

——— 'Drivers, Control and Accomplices' [1982] Crim LR 419.

——— 'Larsonneur Revisited' [1976] Crim LR 276.

——— 'Offensive Weapons and Self-Defence' [2005] Crim LR 85.

——— 'Three Cases of Accessorial Absurdity' (1990) 53 MLR 75.

LAW COMMISSION, No. 29, *Offences of Damage to Property* (1970), London: HMSO.

——— No. 76, *Conspiracy and Criminal Law Reform* (1976), London: HMSO.

——— No. 83, *Defences of General Application* (1977), London: HMSO.

——— No. 102, *Attempt, and Impossibility in Relation to Attempt, Conspiracy and Incitement* (1980), London: HMSO.

——— No. 143, *Codification of the Criminal Law: A Report to the Law Commission* (1985), London: HMSO.

——— No. 177, *Criminal Law: A Criminal Code for England and Wales* (two vols, 1989), London: HMSO.

——— No. 218, *Legislating the Criminal Code: Offences against the Person and General Principles* (1993), London: HMSO.

——— No. 228, *Conspiracy to Defraud* (1994), London: HMSO.

——— No. 229, *Legislating the Criminal Code: Intoxication and Criminal Liability* (1995), London: HMSO.

——— No. 237, *Legislating the Criminal Code: Involuntary Manslaughter* (1996), London: HMSO.

——— No. 276, *Fraud* (2002) London: The Stationery Office.

——— No. 279, *Children: their Non-Accidental Death or Serious Injury* (2003), London: The Stationery Office.

——— No. 290, *Partial Defences to Murder* (2004), London: The Stationery Office.

——— No. 300, *Inchoate Liability for Assisting and Encouraging Crime* (2007), London: The Stationery Office.

——— No. 304, *Murder, Manslaughter and Infanticide* (2007), London: The Stationery Office.

——— No. 305, *Participating in Crime* (2007), London: The Stationery Office.

——— No. 311, *Tenth Programme of Law Reform* (2008), London: The Stationery Office.

——— No. 314, *Intoxication and Criminal Liability* (2009), London: The Stationery Office.

——— No. 318, *Conspiracy and Attempts* (2009), London: The Stationery Office.

——— No. 330, *Eleventh Programme of Law Reform* (2011), London: The Stationery Office.

——— Consultation Paper 127, *Intoxication and Criminal Liability* (1993), London: HMSO.

——— Consultation Paper 139, *Consent in the Criminal Law* (1995), London: HMSO.

——— Consultation Paper 155, *Legislating the Criminal Code: Fraud and Deception* (1999), London: The Stationery Office.

——— Consultation Paper 177, *A New Homicide Act for England and Wales? A Consultation Paper* (2005), London: The Stationery Office.

——— Consultation Paper 183, *Conspiracy and Attempts* (2007), London: The Stationery Office.

——— Consultation Paper 195, *Criminal Liability in Regulatory Contexts* (2010), London: The Stationery Office.

——— Consultation Paper 197, *Unfitness to Plead* (2010), London: The Stationery Office.

——— Consultation Paper 200, *Simplification of the Criminal Law: Kidnapping* (2011), London: The Stationery Office.

——— Working Paper 104, *Conspiracy to Defraud* (1987), London: HMSO.

——— Scoping Paper, *Insanity and Automatism* (2012), London: The Stationery Office.

LAW REFORM COMMISSION OF IRELAND, *Consultation Paper on Homicide: The Plea of Provocation* (CP 27, 2003), Dublin.

——— *Homicide: Murder and Involuntary Manslaughter* (No 87, 2008), Dublin.

LAZARUS L., 'Positive Obligation and Criminal Justice', in L. Zedner and J. Roberts (eds), *Principles and Values in Criminal Law and Criminal Justice* (2012) Oxford: Oxford University Press.

LEADER-ELLIOTT, I., 'Sex, Race and Provocation: In Defence of *Stingel*' (1996) 20 Crim LJ 72.

LEAVENS, A., 'A Causation Approach to Omissions' (1988) 76 Cal LR 547.

LEIGH, L. H., *The Criminal Liability of Corporations in English Law* (1969), London: London School of Economics.

——— 'Manslaughter and the Limits of Self-Defence' (1971) 34 MLR 685.

——— *Strict and Vicarious Liability* (1982), London: Sweet & Maxwell.

LEVERICK, F., 'Is English Self-Defence Law Compatible with Article 2 of the ECHR?' [2002] Crim LR 347.

——— *Killing in Self-Defence* (2006), Oxford: Oxford University Press.

LEVI, M., *Regulating Fraud: White Collar Crime and the Criminal Process* (1987), London: Tavistock.

——— 'Suite Revenge?: The Shaping of Folk Devils and Moral Panics about White-Collar Crimes' (2009) 49 BJ Crim 48.

LEWIS P., *'Informal Legal Change and Assisted Suicide: the Policy for Prosecutors'* (2011) 31 LS 119.

LIPPKE, R., *Rethinking Imprisonment* (2007), Oxford: Oxford University Press.

LOUGHNAN, A. ' "Manifest Madness": Towards a New Understanding of the Insanity Defence' (2007) 70 MLR 379.

LUKES, S., *Individualism* (1973), London: Routledge.

MCAULEY, F. and MCCUTCHEON, J. P., *Criminal Liability: a Grammar* (2000), Dublin: Sweet & Maxwell.

MCBARNET, D. and WHELAN, C., 'The Elusive Spirit of the Law; Formalism and the Struggle for Legal Control' (1991) 54 MLR 848.

MCCOLGAN, A., 'In Defence of Battered Women who Kill' (1993) 13 Oxford JLS 508.

MCCONVILLE, M., HODGSON, J. and PAVLOVIC, A. (eds), *Standing Accused* (1994), Oxford: Clarendon Press.

MACCORMICK, D. N., *Legal Right and Social Democracy* (1982), Oxford: Oxford University Press.

MCGREGOR, J., *Is it Rape?* (2005), Aldershot: Ashgate.

MACKAY, R. D., 'Diminished Responsibility and Mentally Disordered Killers', in A. Ashworth and B. Mitchell (eds), *Rethinking English Homicide Law* (2000), Oxford: Oxford University Press.

——— 'The Abnormality of Mind Factor in Diminished Responsibility' [1999] Crim LR 117.

——— 'Fact and Fiction about the Insanity Defence' [1990] Crim LR 247.

——— *Mental Condition Defences in the Criminal Law* (1995), Oxford: Clarendon Press.

——— 'Non-Organic Automatism—Some Recent Developments' [1980] Crim LR 350.

——— 'On Being Insane in Jersey: Part Two' [2002] Crim LR 728.

——— 'On Being Insane in Jersey: Part Three' [2004] Crim LR 291.

——— 'The New Diminished Responsibility Plea' [2010] Crim LR 290

——— and GEARTY, C. A., 'On Being Insane in Jersey' [2001] Crim LR 560.

——— and KEARNS, G., 'More Facts about the Insanity Defence' [1999] Crim LR 714.

——— and MITCHELL, B. J., 'But is this Provocation? Some Thoughts on the Law Commission's Report on Partial Defences to Murder' [2005] Crim LR 44.

——— and MITCHELL, B. J., 'A Continued Upturn in Unfitness to Plead' [2007] Crim LR 530.

——— and MITCHELL, B. J., 'Sleepwalking, Automatism and Insanity' [2006] Crim LR 901.

——— MITCHELL, B. J. and BROOKBANKS, W., 'Pleading for Provoked Killers: in Defence of *Morgan Smith* (2008) 124 LQR 675.

——— MITCHELL, B. J. and HOWE, L., 'Yet More Facts about the Insanity Defence' [2006] Crim LR 399.

——— and REUBER, G., 'Epilepsy and the Defence of Insanity—Time for Change?' [2007] Crim LR 782.

MCKENNA, B., 'Causing Death by Reckless or Dangerous Driving: A Suggestion' [1970] Crim LR 67.

MCKENZIE, I., MORGAN, R., and REINER, R., 'Helping the Police with their Inquiries' [1990] Crim LR 22.

MACKLEM, T. and GARDNER, J., 'Provocation and Pluralism' (2001) 64 MLR 815.

MAGUIRE, M. and BENNETT, T., *Burglary In a Dwelling* (1982), London: Heinemann.

——— and CORBETT, C., *The Effects of Crime and the Work of Victim Support*

Schemes (1987), Aldershot: Gower.

——— MORGAN, R. and REINER, R. (eds), *The Oxford Handbook of Criminology* (5th edn, 2012), Oxford: Oxford University Press.

MAIER-KATKIN, D. and OGLE, R., 'A Rationale for Infanticide Laws' [1993] Crim LR 903.

MANCHESTER, C., 'Knowledge, Due Diligence and Strict Liability in Regulatory Offences' [2006] Crim LR 213.

MCGEE A., 'Ending the life of the act/omission dispute: causation in withholding life-sustaining measures' (2011) 31 Legal Studies 467.

MELDEN, A. I., 'Willing', in A. R. White (ed.), *The Philosophy of Action* (1968), Oxford: Oxford University Press.

MELISSARIS, E., 'The Concept of Appropriation and the Offence of Theft' (2007) 70 MLR 581.

MENLOWE, M. A. and MCCALL SMITH, R. A. (eds), *The Duty to Rescue* (1993), Aldershot: Dartmouth.

MICHAELS, A., 'Constitutional Innocence' (1999) 112 Harv LR 829.

MILL, J. S., *On Liberty* (1859) (1910), London: Everyman's Library.

MINISTRY OF JUSTICE, Consultation Paper 19, *Murder, Manslaughter and Infanticide: Proposals for Reform of the Law* (2008), London: Ministry of Justice.

——— *Consolidated Criminal Practice Direction* (2011), London: Ministry of Justice.

MIRRLEES-BLACK, C., *Domestic Violence: Findings from a British Crime Survey Self-Completion Questionnaire*, Home

Office Research Study No. 191 (1999), London: Home Office.

——— *et al*., *The 1998 British Crime Survey*, Home Office Statistical Bulletin

21/98 (1999), London: The Home Office.

MITCHELL, A. R., TAYLOR, S. M. E and TALBOT, K. V., *Mitchell, Taylor and Talbot on Confiscation and the Proceeds of Crime* (3rd edn, 2002), London: Sweet & Maxwell.

MITCHELL, B., 'In Defence of the Correspondence Principle' [1999] Crim LR 195.

——— 'More Thoughts about Unlawful and Dangerous Act Manslaughter and the One-Punch Killer' (2009) Crim LR 502.

——— 'Multiple Wrongdoing and Offence Structure: a Plea for Consistency and Fair Labelling' (2001) 64 MLR 393.

——— 'Public Perceptions of Homicide and Criminal Justice' (1998) 38 BJ Crim 453.

——— and ROBERTS, J. V., 'Public Attitudes to the Mandatory life Sentence for Murder: Putting Received Wisdom to the Empirical Test' [2011] Crim LR 456.

MITCHELL, C. N., 'The Intoxicated Offender—Refuting the Legal and Medical Myths' (1988) 11 Int J Law & Psychiatry 77.

MOORE, M., *Act and Crime: The Philosophy of Action and its Implications for Criminal Law* (1993), Oxford: Clarendon Press.

——— 'Causation and the Excuses' (1985) 73 Cal LR 1091.

——— *Placing Blame* (1997), Oxford: Clarendon Press.

MORGAN, J. and ZEDNER, L., *Child Victims* (1992), Oxford: Clarendon Press.

MORRIS, N., *Madness and the Criminal Law* (1982), Chicago, Ill.: University of Chicago Press.

MORSE, S., 'Deprivation and Desert', in W. C. Hefferman and J. Kleinig (eds),

From Social Justice to Criminal Justice (2000), Oxford: Oxford University Press.

MYHILL, A. and ALLEN, J., *Rape and Sexual Assault of Women: The Extent and Nature of the Problem*, Home Office Research Study 237 (2002), London: The Home Office.

NELKEN, D., 'White Collar Crime and Corporate Crime', in M. Maguire, R. Morgan, and R. Reiner (eds), *The Oxford Handbook of Criminology* (5th edn, 2012), Oxford: Oxford University Press.

NEW SOUTH WALES LAW COMMISSION, No. 129, Complicity (2010)

NICHOLAS, S., *et al.*, *Crime in England and Wales 2004/05* (Home Office, 2005).

——— *Crime in England and Wales 2006/07* (Home Office, 2007).

NICHOLSON, D., 'A Citizen's Duty to Assist the Police' [1992] Crim LR 611.

——— and SANGHVI, R., 'Battered Women and Provocation: The Implications of *Ahluwalia*' [1993] Crim LR 728.

NORRIE, A., 'Between Orthodox Subjectivism and Moral Contextualism: Intention and the Consultation Paper' [2006] Crim LR 486.

——— *Crime, Reason and History* (2nd edn, 2001), London: Butterworths.

NOURSE, V., 'Passion's Progress: Modern Law Reform and the Provocation Defense' (1997) 106 Yale LJ 1331.

O'DONOVAN, K., 'The Medicalisation of Infanticide' [1984] Crim LR 259.

OFFICE OF THE COMMISSIONER OF HUMAN RIGHTS, *Report by Mr Alvaro Gil-Robles, Commissioner for Human Rights, on his visit to the United Kingdom*, Comm DH (2005) 6, Strasbourg: Council of Europe, <www.echr.coe.int>.

OFFICE FOR CRIMINAL JUSTICE REFORM, *Convicting Rapists and Protecting Vic-*

tims—Justice for Victims of Rape (2007), London: Office for Criminal Justice Reform.

ORCHARD, G., ' "Agreement" in Criminal Conspiracy' [1974] Crim LR 297.

——— 'Surviving without *Majewski*—a View from Down Under' [1993] Crim LR 26.

ORMEROD, D., 'Cheating the Public Revenue' [1998] Crim LR 627.

ORMEROD, D., 'The Fraud Act 2006—Criminalising Lying?' [2007] Crim LR 193.

ORMEROD, D., *Smith and Hogan's Criminal Law* (2012) Oxford: Oxford University Press

——— and FORTSON, R., 'Drug Suppliers as Manslaughterers (Again)' [2005] Crim LR 819.

——— and GUNN, M. J., 'Consent—a Second Bash' [1996] Crim LR 694.

——— and TAYLOR, R., The Corporate Manslaughter and Corporate Homicide Act 2007' [2008] Crim LR 589.

OST, S., 'Euthanasia and the Defence of Necessity', [2005] Crim LR 355.

——— 'Euthanasia and the Defence of Necessity', in C. Erin and S. Ost (eds.), *The Criminal Justice System and Health Care* (2007), Oxford: Oxford University Press.

OTLOWSKI, M., *Voluntary Euthanasia and the Common Law* (1997), Oxford: Clarendon Press.

PACE, P. J., 'Delegation: A Doctrine in Search of a Definition' [1982] Crim LR 627.

PADFIELD, N., 'Clean Water and Muddy Causation' [1995] Crim LR 683.

PEDAIN, A., 'Intention and the Terrorist Example' [2003] Crim LR 579.

——— 'Intentional Killings: the German Law', in J. Horder (ed.), *Homicide Law in Comparative Perspective* (2007), Oxford: Hart Publishing.

PEERS, S., *EU Justice and Home Affairs Law* (3rd ed., 2010), Oxford: Oxford University Press.

PHILLIPS, C., and BOWLING, B., 'Ethnicities, Racism, Crime, and Criminal Justice' in M. Maguire, R. Morgan and R. Reiner (eds), *Oxford Handbook of Criminology* (5th edn., 2012), Oxford: Oxford University Press.

PICINALI F., 'A Retributive Justification for not Punishing Bare Intentions' (2012) Law and Philosophy

PICINALI F., On the Moral Relevance of the "Now Belief " (2012) 31 Law and Philosophy 23.

POTAS, I., *Just Deserts for the Mad* (1982), Canberra: Australia Institute of Criminology.

POWER, H., 'Pitcairn Island: Sexual Offending, Cultural Difference and Ignorance of the Law' [2007] Crim LR 609.

——— 'Provocation and Culture' [2006] Crim LR 871.

——— 'Towards a Redefinition of the *Mens Rea* of Rape' (2003) 23 Oxford JLS 379.

QUICK, O., 'Medical Killing: Need for a Specific Offence?', in C. Clarkson and S. Cunningham (eds), *Criminal Liability for Non-Aggressive Death* (2008), Aldershot: Ashgate.

——— 'Prosecuting "Gross" Medical Negligence: Manslaughter, Discretion and the Crown Prosecution Service' (2006) 33 JLS 431.

RACHELS, J., 'Active and Passive Euthanasia' (1975) 292 New England Journal of Medicine 78.

RACHELS, J., and LAURA, H., 'Criminal Child Maltreatment: the Case for Reform' [2012] Crim LR 871.

RAZ, J., *The Authority of Law* (1979), Oxford: Oxford University Press.

——— 'Autonomy, Toleration and the Harm Principle' in R. Gavison (ed.), *Issues in Contemporary Legal Philosophy* (1987), Oxford: Oxford University Press.

——— *The Morality of Freedom* (1986), Oxford: Clarendon Press.

REED A. and BOHLANDER M., (eds), *Loss of Self-control and Diminished Responsibility: Domestic, Comparative and International Perspectives* (2011) Aldershot: Ashgate.

REISS, A., 'Selecting Strategies of Social Control over Organizational Life', in K. Hawkins and J. M. Thomas (eds), *Enforcing Regulation* (1984), Oxford: Oxford University Press.

REPORT OF THE COMMITTEE ON MENTALLY ABNORMAL OFFENDERS, Cmnd 6244 (1975), London: HMSO.

REPORT OF THE COMMITTEE ON OBSCENITY AND FILM CENSORSHIP, Cmnd 7772 (1979), London: HMSO.

REPORT OF THE INTERDEPARTMENTAL COMMITTEE ON THE DISTRIBUTION OF CRIMINAL BUSINESS BETWEEN THE CROWN COURT AND THE MAGISTRATES' COURTS, Cmnd 6323 (1975), London: HMSO.

REPORT OF THE INTERDEPARTMENTAL REVIEW OF THE LAW ON THE USE OF LETHAL FORCE IN SELF-DEFENCE OR THE PREVENTION OF CRIME (1996), London: The Home Office.

REPORT OF THE ROAD TRAFFIC LAW REVIEW (1988), London: HMSO.

REPORT OF THE ROYAL COMMISSION ON THE LAW RELATING TO INDICTABLE OFFENCES, C.2345 (1879), London: HMSO.

RICHARDS, D. A. J., 'Rights, Utility and Crime' (1981) 3 Crime and Justice: An Annual Review 274.

RICHARDSON, G., 'Strict Liability for Regulatory Crime: The Empirical Research' [1987] Crim LR 295.

ROBERTS, J. V. *et al*, 'Public Attitudes to the Sentencing of Offences involving Death by Driving [2008] Crim LR 525.

ROBERTS, P., 'Consent in the Criminal Law' (1997) 17 Oxford JLS 389.

——— and ZUCKERMAN, A.A.S., *Criminal Evidence* (2nd edn., 2010) Oxford: Oxford University Press

ROBERTSON, G., *Whose Conspiracy?* (1974), London: National Council for Civil Liberties.

ROBINSON, P. H., 'Causing the Conditions of One's Own Defence: A Study in the Limits of Theory in Criminal Law Doctrine' (1985) 71 Virginia LR 1.

——— 'Competing Theories of Justification: Deeds v. Reasons' in A. P. Simester and A. T. H. Smith (eds), *Harm and Culpability* (1996), Oxford: Clarendon Press.

——— *Criminal Law Defences* (1984), St. Paul, Minn.: West Publishing.

——— 'Criminal Law Defenses: A Systematic Analysis' (1982) 82 Columbia LR 199.

——— *Fundamentals of Criminal Law* (2nd edn, 1995), Boston, Mass.: Little, Brown.

——— 'Legality and Discretion in the Distribution of Criminal Sanctions' (1988) 25 Harvard Journal on Legislation 393.

——— 'The Modern General Part: Three Illusions', in S. Shute and A. P. Simester (eds), *Criminal Law Theory: Doctrines of the General Part* (2002), Oxford: Oxford University Press.

——— 'Rules of Conduct and Principles of Adjudication' (1990) 57 U Chic LR 729.

——— 'Should the Criminal Law abandon the Actus Reus/Mens Rea Distinction?', in S. Shute, J. Gardner, and J. Horder (eds), *Action and Value in Criminal Law* (1993), Oxford: Oxford University Press.

——— *Structure and Function in Criminal Law* (1997), Oxford: Clarendon Press.

——— and DARLEY, J. M., 'Does Criminal Law Deter? A Behavioural Science Investigation' (2004) 24 OJLS 173.

——— and DARLEY, J. M., *Justice, Liability, and Blame: Community Views and the Criminal Law* (1995), Boulder: Westview Press.

——— and DARLEY, J. M., 'Objectivist versus Subjectivist Views of Criminality: A Study in the Role of Social Science in Criminal Law Theory' (1998) 18 Oxford JLS 409.

ROCK, P., *The Social World of an English Crown Court* (1993), Oxford: Clarendon Press.

——— 'The Sociology of Deviancy and Conceptions of Moral Order' (1974) 14 BJ Crim 139.

RODWELL, JUDGE D., 'Problems with the Sexual Offences Act 2003' [2005] Crim LR 290.

ROGERS, J., 'A Criminal Lawyer's Response to Chastisement in the European Court of Human Rights' [2002] Crim LR 98.

——— 'Justifying the Use of Firearms by Policemen and Soldiers' (1998) 18 LS 486.

——— 'Necessity, Private Defence and the Killing of Mary' [2001] Crim LR 515.

ROOK, P. and WARD, R., *Sexual Offences: Law and Practice* (2004), London: Sweet & Maxwell.

ROORDING, J., 'The Punishment of Tax Fraud' [1996] Crim LR 240.

ROYAL COMMISSION ON CRIMINAL JUSTICE, *Report*, Cmnd 2263 (1993), London: HMSO.

RUMNEY, P., 'The Review of Sex Offences and Rape Law' (2001) 64 MLR 890.

RYAN, S., 'Reckless Transmission of HIV: Knowledge and Culpability' [2006] Crim LR 981.

SANDERS, A., 'Class Bias in Prosecutions' (1985) 24 Howard JCJ 176.

SANGERO, B., *Self-Defence in Criminal Law* (2006), Oxford: Hart Publishing.

SCHONSHECK, J., *On Criminalization* (1994), Dordrecht: Kluwer.

SCHOPP, R. F., *Automatism, Insanity, and the Psychology of Criminal Responsibility* (1991), Cambridge: Cambridge University Press.

SCHULHOFER, S. J., *Unwanted Sex: The Culture of Intimidation and the Failure of Law* (1998), London: Harvard University Press.

SCOTTISH LAW COMMISSION, *A Draft Criminal Code for Scotland* (2003), Edinburgh: The Stationery Office.

——— *Report on Insanity and Diminished Responsibility* (Scot Law Com No, 195, 2004), Edinburgh: The Stationery Office.

SELLIN, T. and WOLFGANG, M., *The Measurement of Delinquency* (1978) New

York: Wiley.

SENTENCING GUIDELINES COUNCIL, *Attempted Murder: Notes and Questions for Consultees* (2007).

——— *Causing Death by Driving* (2008).

——— *Manslaughter upon Provocation* (2005).

——— *New Sentences: Criminal Justice Act 2003* (2004).

——— *Overarching Principles: Seriousness* (2004).

——— *Reduction in Sentence for a Guilty Plea: Revised Guideline* (2007).

——— *Robbery: Definitive Guideline* (2006).

——— *Sexual Offences Act 2003: Definitive Guidelines* (2007).

——— *Corporate Manslaughter and Health and Safety Offences causing Death* (2010).

SHAPLAND, J., WILLMORE J., and DUFF, P., *Victims in the Criminal Justice System* (1985), London: Heinemann.

SHINER, R., 'Intoxication and Responsibility' (1990) 13 Int J Law & Psychiatry 9.

SHUTE, S., 'Appropriation and the Law of Theft' [2002] Crim LR 445.

——— 'Knowledge and Belief in the Criminal Law', in S. Shute and A. P. Simester (eds), *Criminal Law Theory: Doctrines of the General Part* (2002), Oxford: Oxford University Press.

——— 'The Second Law Commission Consultation Paper on Consent' [1996] Crim LR 684.

——— and HORDER, J., 'Thieving and Deceiving: What is the Difference?' (1993) 56 MLR 548.

——— and SIMESTER, A. P. (eds), *Criminal Law Theory: Doctrines of the Gen-*

eral Part (2002), Oxford: Oxford University Press.

SIMESTER, A. P., (ed.), *Appraising Strict Liability* (2005), Oxford: Oxford University Press.

——— 'Can Negligence be Culpable?', in J. Horder (ed.), *Oxford Essays in Jurisprudence (4th Series)* (2000), Oxford: Oxford University Press.

——— 'Is Strict Liability always Wrong?', in A. P. Simester (ed.), *Appraising Strict Liability* (2005).

——— 'The Mental Element in Complicity' (2006) 122 LQR 578.

——— 'Mistakes in Defence' (1992) 12 Oxford JLS 295.

——— 'On the So-called Requirement of Voluntary Action' (1998) 1 Buffalo Crim LR 403.

——— 'Paradigm Intention' (1992) 11 Law and Philosophy 235.

——— 'Why Distinguish Intention from Foresight?', in A. P. Simester and A. T. H. Smith (eds), *Harm and Culpability* (1996), Oxford: Oxford University Press.

——— and SULLIVAN, G. R., 'Being There' (2012) 71 CLJ 29.

——— and SULLIVAN, G. R., *Criminal Law: Theory and Doctrine* (3rd edn, 2007), Oxford: Hart Publishing.

——— and SULLIVAN, G. R., 'The Nature and Rationale of Property Offences', in R. A. Duff and S. P. Green (eds), *Defining Crimes* (2005), Oxford: Oxford University Press.

——— and VON HIRSH A., *Crimes, Harms and Wrongs: On the Principles of Criminalisation* (2011), Oxford: Hart

SIMPSON, A. W. B., *Cannibalism and the Common Law* (1984), Chicago, Ill.: University of Chicago Press.

SKINNER, S., 'Populist Politics and Shooting Burglars' [2005] Crim LR 275.

SMART, A., 'Responsibility for Failing to Do the Impossible' (1987) 103 LQR 532.

SMITH, A. T. H., 'The Case for a Code' [1986] Crim LR 285.

——— 'Conspiracy to Defraud' [1988] Crim LR 508.

——— 'Error and Mistake of Law in Anglo-American Criminal Law' (1984) 14 Anglo-American LR 3.

——— 'Judicial Lawmaking in the Criminal Law' (1984) 100 LQR 46.

——— *Offences against Public Order* (1987), London: Sweet & Maxwell.

——— 'On Actus Reus and Mens Rea', in P. R. Glazebrook (ed.), *Reshaping the Criminal Law* (1978), London: Sweet & Maxwell.

——— *Property Offences* (1994), London: Sweet & Maxwell.

SMITH, D., 'Crime and the Life Course', in M. Maguire, R. Morgan and R. Reiner (eds), *Oxford Handbook of Criminology* (4th edn, 2007), Oxford: Oxford University Press.

SMITH, J. C., 'Aid, Abet, Counsel and Procure', in P. R. Glazebrook (ed.), *Reshaping the Criminal Law* (1978), London: Sweet & Maxwell.

——— 'Criminal Liability of Accessories: Law and Law Reform' (1997) 113 LQR 453.

——— 'Intoxication and the Mental Element in Crime', in P. Wallington and R. Merkin (eds), *Essays in Honour of F. H. Lawson* (1987), London: Sweet & Maxwell.

——— *Justification and Excuse in the Criminal Law* (1989), London: Stevens.

——— 'Offences Against the Person: The Home Office Consultation Paper' [1998] Crim LR 317.

——— 'The Right to Life and the Right to Kill in Law Enforcement' (1994) NLJ 354.

——— *Smith's Law of Theft* (9th edn, 2007, by D. Ormerod and D. H. Williams), Oxford: Oxford University Press.

——— 'Stealing Tickets' [1998] Crim LR 723.

——— and HOGAN, B., *Criminal Law* (5th edn, 1983), London: Butterworths.

——— HOGAN, B., *Criminal Law* (12th edn, 2008, by D. Ormerod), Oxford: Oxford University Press.

SMITH, K. J. M., 'Duress and Steadfastness: In Pursuit of the Unintelligible' [1999] Crim LR 363.

——— *Lawyers, Legislators and Theorists* (1998), Oxford: Oxford University Press.

——— 'Liability for Endangerment: English *Ad Hoc* Pragmatism and American Innovation' [1983] Crim LR 127.

——— *A Modern Treatise on the Law of Criminal Complicity* (1991), Oxford: Clarendon Press.

——— 'Proximity in Attempt: Lord Lane's Midway Course' [1991] Crim LR 576.

——— 'Withdrawal in Complicity: A Restatement of Principles' [2001] Crim LR 769.

SPENCER, J. R., 'Child and Family Offences' [2004] Crim LR 347.

——— 'Criminal Law and Criminal Appeals: The Tail that Wags the Dog' [1982] Crim LR 260.

SPENCER, J. R., 'Handling, Theft and the Purchaser who Takes a Chance' [1985] Crim LR 92 and 440.

——— 'Helping Others to Commit Crimes', in P. Smith (ed.), *Criminal Law:*

Essays in Honour of J. C. Smith (1987), London: Butterworths.

——— 'The Metamorphosis of Section 6 of the Theft Act' [1977] Crim LR 653.

——— 'The Mishandling of Handling' [1981] Crim LR 682.

——— 'Motor Vehicles as Weapons of Offence' [1985] Crim LR 29.

——— and PEDAIN, A., 'Strict Liability in Continental Criminal Law', in A. P. Simester (ed), *Appraising Strict Liability* (2005), Oxford: Oxford University Press.

SPICER, R., *Conspiracy Law, Class and Society* (1981), London: Lawrence & Wishart.

STAPLE, G., 'Serious and Complex Fraud: A New Perspective' (1993) 56 MLR 127.

THE STATIONERY OFFICE, *Social Trends 2000* (2001), London: The Stationery Office.

STEPHEN, J. F., *A Digest of the Criminal Law* (1877), London: Macmillan.

——— *History of the Criminal Law* (1883), London: Macmillan.

STUART, D. R., *Canadian Criminal Law* (4th edn, 2001), Toronto: Carswell.

SULLIVAN, G. R., 'The Attribution of Culpability to Limited Companies' (1996) 55 Camb LJ 515.

——— 'Expressing Corporate Guilt' (1995) 15 Oxford JLS 281.

——— 'First Degree Murder and Complicity' (2007) 1 Crim Law & Phil 271.

——— 'Knowledge, Belief and Culpability', in S. Shute and A. P. Simester (eds), *Criminal Law Theory: Doctrines of the General Part* (2002), Oxford: Oxford University Press.

——— 'The Law Commission Consultation Paper on Complicity: Fault Elements and Joint Enterprise' [1994] Crim LR 252.

——— 'Making Excuses', in A. P. Simester and A. T. H. Smith (eds), *Harm*

and Culpability (1996), Oxford: Oxford University Press.

——— 'Participating in Crime: Law Com No. 305—Joint Criminal Ventures' [2008] Crim LR 19.

SUTHERLAND, E. H., *White Collar Crime* (1949), New Haven, Conn.: Yale University Press.

SUTHERLAND, P. J., and GEARTY, D., 'Insanity and the European Court of Human Rights' [1992] Crim LR 418.

TADROS, V., *Criminal Responsibility* (2005), Oxford: Oxford University Press.

——— 'Fair Labelling and Social Solidarity' in L. Zedner and J. Roberts (eds), *Principles and Values in Criminal Law and Criminal Justice* (2012) Oxford: Oxford University Press.

——— 'Justice and Terrorism' (2007) 11 New Crim LR 658.

——— 'The Limits of Manslaughter', in C. Clarkson and S. Cunningham (eds), *Criminal Liability for Non-Aggressive Death* (2008), Aldershot: Ashgate.

——— 'Rape without Consent' (2006) 26 Oxford JLS 515.

——— 'Recklessness and the Duty to Take Care', in S. Shute and A. P. Simester (eds), *Criminal Law Theory: Doctrines of the General Part* (2002), Oxford: Oxford University Press.

——— 'The System of the Criminal Law' (2002) 22 LS 448.

——— and TIERNEY, S., 'The Presumption of Innocence and the Human Rights Act' (2004) 67 MLR 402.

TAYLOR, P. and DALTON, G., 'Pre-Menstrual Syndrome: A New Criminal Defense?' (1983) 19 Cal WLR 269.

TAYLOR, P. and BOND, S., 'Crimes detected in England and Wales 2011/12' (2012), London: The Stationery Office.

TAYLOR, R. D., 'Complicity and the Excuses' [1983] Crim LR 656.

——— 'The Nature of Partial Defences and the Coherence of (Second Degree) Murder' [2007] Crim LR 345.

——— 'Procuring, Causation, Innocent Agency and the Law Commission' [2008] Crim LR 32.

TEMKIN, J., 'Impossible Attempts: Another View' (1976) 39 MLR 55.

——— *Rape and the Legal Process* (2nd edn, 2002), Oxford: Oxford University Press.

——— and ASHWORTH, A., 'Rape, Sexual Assaults and the Problems of Consent' [2004] Crim LR 328.

——— and KRAHÉ, B., *Sexual Assault and the Justice Gap: a Question of Attitude* (2008), Oxford: Hart Publishing.

THOMAS, D. A., 'Form and Function in Criminal Law', in P. R. Glazebrook (ed.), *Reshaping the Criminal Law* (1978), London: Sweet & Maxwell.

THOMSON, J. J., 'Self-Defense' (1991) 20 Philosophy and Public Affairs 283.

TOLMIE, J., 'Alcoholism and Criminal Liability' (2001) 64 MLR 688.

TONRY, M. and MOORE M., (eds), *Youth Violence* (1998), Chicago, Ill: University of Chicago Press.

TUR, R., 'Dishonesty and Jury Questions', in A. Phillips Griffiths (ed.), *Philosophy and Practice* (1985), Cambridge: Cambridge University Press.

——— 'The Doctor's Defence and Professional Ethics' (2002) 13 KCLJ 75.

——— 'Subjectivism and Objectivism: Towards Synthesis', in S. Shute, J. Gardner, and J. Horder (eds.), *Action and Value in Criminal Law* (1993), Oxford: Oxford University Press.

UK Drug Policy Commission, *A Fresh Approach to Drugs: the final report of*

the UK Drug Policy Commission (2012), UKDPC Publications.

UNIACKE, S., *Permissible Killing: The Self-Defence Justification of Homicide* (1994), Cambridge: Cambridge University Press.

UNHCHR, 'Concluding Observations of the Committee on the Rights of the Child: United Kingdom' (9 October 2002) UN Doc CRC/C/15/Add.188.

VAN BUEREN, G., *The International Law on the Rights of the Child* (1995), Dordrecht: Martinus Nijhoff.

VON HIRSCH, A., 'Extending the Harm Principle: Remote Harms and Fair Imputation', in A. P. Simester and A. T. H. Smith (eds), *Harm and Culpability* (1996), Oxford: Oxford University Press.

——— ASHWORTH, A. and ROBERTS, J. (eds), *Principled Sentencing: Readings in Theory and Policy* (3rd edn, 2009), Oxford: Hart Publishing.

——— and ASHWORTH, A., *Proportionate Sentencing* (2005), Oxford: Oxford University Press.

——— and BOTTOMS, A. E., WIKSTRÖM, P.-O., and BURNEY, E., *Criminal Deterrence and Sentence Severity* (1999), Oxford: Hart Publishing.

——— and SIMESTER, A. P., 'Penalising Offensive Behaviour' in A. von Hirsch and A. P. Simester (eds), *Incivilities: Regulating Offensive Behaviour* (2007), Oxford: Hart Publishing.

WADDINGTON, P. A. J., ' "Overkill" or "Minimum Force"?' [1990] Crim LR 695.

WALKER, C.P., *Blackstone's Guide to the Anti-Terrorism Legislation* (2nd edn., 2009), Oxford: Oxford University Press

WALMSLEY, R., *Personal Violence*, Home Office Research Study No. 89 (1986), London: HMSO.

WARD, A., 'Making Some Sense of Self-Induced Intoxication' [1986] CLJ 247.

WARD, T., 'Magistrates, Insanity and the Common Law' [1997] Crim LR 796.

WASIK, M., 'Abandoning Criminal Intent' [1980] Crim LR 785.

——— *Crime and the Computer* (1991), Oxford: Clarendon Press.

——— 'Cumulative Provocation and Domestic Killing' [1982] Crim LR 29.

——— 'Duress and Criminal Responsibility' [1977] Crim LR 453.

——— 'A Learner's Careless Driving' [1982] Crim LR 411.

WASIK, M., 'Partial Excuses in the Criminal Law' (1982) 45 MLR 515.

——— 'Sentencing for Homicide', in A. Ashworth and B. Mitchell (eds), *Rethinking English Homicide Law* (2000), Oxford: Oxford University Press.

——— and THOMPSON, M. P., 'Turning a Blind Eye as Constituting Mens Rea' (1981) 32 NILQ 328.

WEAIT, M., 'Criminal Law and the Sexual Transmission of HIV: *R v. Dica*' (2005) 68 MLR 121.

——— 'Knowledge, Autonomy and Consent: *R v. Konzani*' [2005] Crim LR 673.

WELLS, C., 'Corporate Manslaughter: Why Does Reform Matter?' (2006) 122 SALJ 646.

——— *Corporations and Criminal Responsibility* (2nd edn, 2001), Oxford: Oxford University Press.

——— 'Necessity and the Common Law' (1985) 5 Oxford JLS 471.

——— 'Provocation: the Case for Abolition', in A. Ashworth and B. Mitchell (eds), *Rethinking English Homicide Law* (2000), Oxford: Oxford University Press.

——— 'Restatement or Reform?' [1986] Crim LR 314.

——— 'Stalking: The Criminal Law Response' [1997] Crim LR 463.

——— 'Swatting the Subjectivist Bug' [1982] Crim LR 209.

WESTEN, P., 'An Attitudinal Theory of Excuse' (2006) 25 Law and Philosophy 289.

——— *The Logic of Consent* (2004), Aldershot: Ashgate.

——— 'Some Common Conclusions about Consent in Rape Cases' (2004) 2 Ohio State JCL 333.

WHITE, S., 'The Criminal Procedure (Insanity and Unfitness to Plead) Act' [1992] Crim LR 4.

——— 'Offences of Basic and Specific Intent' [1989] Crim LR 271.

——— 'Three Points on *Pigg*' [1989] Crim LR 539.

WICKS, E., 'Terminating Life and Human Rights: the Fetus and the Neonate', in C. Erin and S. Ost (eds.), *The Criminal Justice System and Health Care* (2007), Oxford: Oxford University Press.

WILKES, M., 'Medical Treatment at the End of Life—a British Doctor's Perspective', in C. Erin and S. Ost (eds), *The Criminal Justice System and Health Care* (2007), Oxford: Oxford University Press.

WILLIAMS, G., 'Gross Negligence Manslaughter and Duty of Care in "Drugs" Cases: R v Evans' [2009] Crim LR 631.

WILLIAMS, G., 'Alternative Elements and Included Offences' [1984] CLJ 290.

——— 'Assaults and Words' [1957] Crim LR 216.

——— 'Convictions and Fair Labelling' [1983] Camb LJ 85.

——— *Criminal Law: The General Part* (2nd edn, 1961), London: Stevens.

——— 'Criminal Omissions—the Conventional View' (1991) 107 LQR 86.

——— 'The Criminal Responsibility of Children' [1954] Crim LR 493.

——— 'The Definition of a Crime' [1955] CLP 107.

——— 'The Draft Code and Reliance on Official Statements' (1989) 9 Legal Studies 177.

——— '*Finis* for *Novus Actus*' [1989] Camb LJ 391.

——— 'Handling, Theft and the Purchaser who Takes a Chance' [1985] Crim LR 432.

——— 'Homicide and the Supernatural' (1949) 65 LQR 491.

——— 'Homicide and the Supernatural' (1949) 65 LQR 491

——— 'The Lords and Impossible Attempts' [1986] Camb LJ 33.

——— 'Obedience to Law as a Crime' (1990) 53 MLR 445.

——— 'Oblique Intent' [1987] CLJ 417.

——— 'Offences and Defences' (1982) 2 Legal Studies 233.

——— 'The Problem of Reckless Attempts' [1983] Crim LR 365.

——— 'Statute Interpretation, Prostitution and the Rule of Law', in C. Tapper (ed.), *Crime, Proof and Punishment* (1981), London: Butterworths.

——— 'Temporary Appropriation Should Be Theft' [1981] Crim LR 129.

——— 'Theft, Consent and Illegality' [1977] Crim LR 127.

——— 'The Theory of Excuses' [1982] Crim LR 732.

——— *Textbook of Criminal Law* (2nd edn, 1983), London: Stevens.

——— 'The Unresolved Problem of Recklessness' (1988) 8 Legal Studies 74.

——— 'What should the Code do about Omissions?' (1987) 7 Legal Studies 92.

——— 'Which of You Did It?' (1989) 52 MLR 179.

WILLIAMS, R., 'Deception, Mistake and Vitiation of the Victim's Consent', (2008) 124 LQR 132.

——— 'Voluntary Intoxication – A Lost Cause?' (2012) Law Quarterly Review

(forthcoming).

WILSON, W., *Central Issues in Criminal Theory* (2002), Oxford: Hart Publishing.

——— 'Murder and the Structure of Homicide', in A. Ashworth and B. Mitchell (eds), *Rethinking English Homicide Law* (2000), Oxford: Oxford University Press.

——— 'A Rational Scheme of Liability for Participating in Crime' [2008] Crim LR 3.

——— 'The Structure of Criminal Defences' [2005] Crim LR 108.

——— 'The Structure of Criminal Homicide' [2006] Crim LR 471.

——— *et al.*, 'Violence, Sleepwalking and the Criminal Law: The Legal Aspects' [2005] Crim LR 624.

WOLFRAM, S., 'Eugenics and the Punishment of Incest Act 1908' [1983] Crim LR 308.

WOOD, J., 'The Serious Fraud Office' [1989] Crim LR 175.

WOODCOCK, G., *Anarchism* (1962), London: Harmondsworth.

WOOTTON, B., *Crime and the Criminal Law* (2nd edn, 1981), London: Sweet & Maxwell.

WRIGHT, F., 'Criminal Liability of Directors and Senior Managers for Deaths at Work' [2007] Crim LR 949.

YEO, S., *Compulsion in the Criminal Law* (1991), Sydney: Law Book Company.

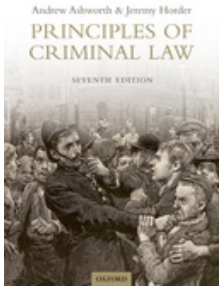
——— 'Sex, Ethnicity, Power of Self-Control and Provocation Revisited' (1996) 18 Sydney LR 304.

YOUNG, W., *Rape Study: A Discussion of Law and Practice* (1983), Welling-

ton: Department of Justice.

ZEDNER, L., 'Family, Sex and the State: Regulating Sexual Offences Within the Home', in I. Loveland (ed), *The Frontiers of Criminality* (1995), London: Sweet & Maxwell.

——— and ROBERTS, J,V (eds)., *Principles and Values in Criminal Law and Criminal Justice* (2012), Oxford: Oxford University Press.



Principles of Criminal Law (7th edn)

Andrew Ashworth and Jeremy Horder

Publisher: Oxford University Press
Print ISBN-13: 9780199672684
DOI: 10.1093/he/9780199672684.001.0001

Print Publication Date: May 2013
Published online: Sep 2013

Index

abuse of position
    fraud 408–9
    sexual offences against children 360–1
accessories
    overview 416–19
    principals distinguished
accomplice liability *see* complicity
acts *see* conduct
actus reus
    see also conduct
    different fault elements 138
    recognition of inadequacy 84
    traditional analysis 81–2
administering noxious substances
    consent to sexual intercourse 349
    statutory offence 331
administrative efficiency
    general principles of liability 79–80

pragmatic approach to fault 191
reform of violent offences 334–5
strict liability 163–4
administrative offences
minimalist approach 42–3
scope of criminal liability 4–5
aggravated offences
assaults 313–15
firearms 333
harassment 328
public order offences 329
vehicle-taking and causing death 300
aiding and abetting
handling stolen goods 402–4
joint ventures for different results
different, less serious offence 444–5
more serious offence 438–41
overview 436–8
same offence, different result 441–4
mercy killing 281–2
murder 190
scope of criminal liability 6
sexual advice to children 173
suicide 276–80
alcohol *see* intoxication
anti-social behaviour orders
minimalist approach 42–3
scope of criminal liability 4–5
appropriation
meaning and scope 373–81
statutory provisions 372
assaults
aggravated assaults 313–14
common assaults 316–19
consensual sex 324–5
sexual offences
assault by penetration 343
sexual assault 343–6
attempts
conduct
failure to formulate judicial test 464
impossible acts 464–7
least requirements 461–2
preparatory acts 463–4
reform proposals 467
fault 458–61
intention 170

justifications for criminalization
central role of harm 455–6
complete and incomplete attempts distinguished 456–7
murder 310
overview 454–5
unforeseen modes 188–9
automatism
common law exclusions
insanity 90–2
intoxication 92–3
prior fault 93–4
definitional problems 146
essential requirements 88–90
prior fault doctrine 80
theoretical approaches 86–7
awareness of risk
murder 247–8
recklessness 176–80
battery 316–19
belief *see* knowledge or belief
blackmail 397–8
bodily harm
aggravated assaults 313–15
consensual violence 322
grievous bodily harm
with intent 310–12
recklessly wounding or inflicting grievous bodily harm 312–13
murder 245
borrowing
accomplice liability 427–9
dishonesty 390–4
'intention permanently to deprive' 386–7
British Crime Survey
physical violations 308–9
unrecorded crimes 10
unreported crimes 9
burden of proof
Convention rights 49
presumption of innocence 71–2
principals and accessories 422
reverse burden 72–3
strict liability 160–1
burglary
issues of principle 412–13
statutory provisions 398–9
Caldwell recklessness 179–81, 185, 290
capacity

consent to sexual intercourse 349
corporations
changing approaches 152–5
homicides 147–8
identification principle 150–1
integration into framework 151–2
natural personality 146–7
vicarious liability 149–50
mental incapacity 139
minimum age of responsibility 139–41
overview 137–9
reform 144–6
unfitness to stand trial 141–4
(p. 496) causation
accomplice liability 114–15
causing death
children and vulnerable persons 300
driving offences 300–3
classification of wrongdoing 84
conclusions 115–16
false representations 407
general principle 105–8
homicide
common elements 238–40
intervening events
doctors 110–12
non-voluntary conduct of third parties 108–10
overview 108
victims conduct or condition 112–13
'involuntary manslaughter'
corporate manslaughter 296
manslaughter by unlawful and dangerous acts 288
omissions 114
overview 102–5
causing sexual activity 346
certainty *see* legal certainty
children
causing or allowing death 300
conjoined twins
protection from homicide 239
infanticide 283
minimum age of responsibility 139–41
neglect of duty 332
parental chastisement
case for abolition 136
impact of Art. 3 48
re-writing of English criminal law 51

unsatisfactory basis of judicial approach 323
protection from immorality 37–8
sexual offences
familial sex offences 361–2
sexual offences against under 13s 356–8
sexual offences against under 16s 358–60
sexual offences by persons in trust 360–1
unborn children
protection from homicide 239
citizenship 231
civil liability
minimalist approach to criminalization 33
overlap with criminal liability 2
civil protection measures 4
codification of the law
general principles 46–8
ignorance or mistake 221–2
necessity 133–4
common assaults 316–19
common law 8
complicity
aiding and abetting
handling stolen goods 402–4
mercy killing 281–2
murder 190
sexual advice to children 173
causation 114–15
conclusions 451–3
conduct
aiding and abetting 423–4
counselling and procuring 429–31
overview 422–3
problems of liability 431
social duties 424–9
defences
prevention of crime 450
Tyrell principle 449–50
withdrawal from crime 448–9
derivative theory 445–8
duress 212–13
encouraging or assisting crime
believing an offence will be committed 479–80
believing one or more offences will be committed 480–1
intentional encouragement or assistance 477–9
new offences based on fault 483–4
special defences 481–3
statutory provisions 476–7

fault
intention and knowledge 431–3
problem areas 434–6
recklessness 433
joint ventures for different results
different, less serious offence 444–5
more serious offence 438–41
overview 436–8
same offence, different result 441–4
overview 416–19
principals and accessories distinguished 419–22
protection of children 134–5
scope of criminal liability 6
suicide 276–80
conduct
actus reus 138
blackmail 397
burglary 398–9
causation
accomplice liability 114–15
conclusions 115–16
general principle 105–8
intervening events 108–13
omissions 114
overview 102–5
causing death by driving
aggravated vehicle taking 300
dangerous or careless driving 300–1
disqualified drivers 301
classification of wrongdoing 84
complicity
aiding and abetting 423–4
counselling and procuring 429–31
overview 422–3
problems of liability 431
social duties 424–9
conspiracy
agreed criminal conduct 473–4
agreement between two or more persons 472–3
contemporaneity principle 157–9
(p. 497) correspondence principle 75
fraud
abuse of position 408–9
conspiracy to defraud 411
failure to disclose information 407–8
false representations 406–7
obtaining services by deception 410

handling stolen goods 403–4
homicide
causing or allowing death of vulnerable persons 300
common elements 238–40
inchoate offences
failure to formulate judicial test 464
impossible acts 464–7
least requirements 461–2
preparatory acts 463–4
reform proposals 467
involuntary conduct
automatism 86–94
reform 94
‘involuntary manslaughter’
gross negligence 289–94
manslaughter by unlawful and dangerous acts 286–7
justifications
conclusions 135–6
necessity 130–5
self-defence 116–30
statutory recognition 134–5
manslaughter
diminished responsibility 267–8
infanticide 283
loss of self-control 251–67
mercy killing 281–2
manslaughter by unlawful and dangerous acts 288–9
omissions
fragility of act-omission distinction 102
judicial approaches 100–1
much debated issues 99–100
physical violations
administering noxious substances 331
aggravated assaults 313–15
attempted murder 310
common assaults 316–19
general approach 309–10
grievous bodily harm 310–11
harassment 328
neglect of duty 332
offensive weapons 332–3
public order offences 329–31
recklessly wounding or inflicting grievous bodily harm 312–13
torture 331–2
wounding with intent 310–11
possession offences 97–8
principals and accessories 451–2

robbery 395–6
sexual offences
assault by penetration 343
causing sexual activity 346
rape 342
sexual assault 343–6
sexual offences against children
abuse of trust 360–1
familial sex offences 361–2
offences against under 13s 356–7
offences against under 16s 359–60
situational liability 96–7
theft
appropriation 373–81
'belonging to another' 382–5
'property' 381–2
taking a conveyance without consent 394
traditional analysis 83–4
conjoined twins 239
consent
appropriation of property 373, 376
physical violations generally
ambit determined by common law 321–3
conflicting values 325–6
effectiveness as defence 320–1
exceptional cases 323–5
individual autonomy 320
privacy 326–7
reform proposals 327–8
sexual offences
assault by penetration 343
conclusive presumptions 347–8
defendants' reasonable beliefs 354–5
general definition 351–4
intoxication 355–6
long-standing problems 346–7
rape 342
rebuttable presumptions 349–51
sexual assault 343
taking a conveyance without consent 394
conspiracy
conduct
agreed criminal conduct 473–4
agreement between two or more persons 472–3
fault
knowledge and intention 474–6
impact of conflicting norms 17

justifications for criminalization
extra substantive offence 469–70
seriousness of joint enterprises 470–1
social defence 467–9
weakness of arguments 471
overview 454–5
conspiracy to defraud 410–11
constitutionality
interpretation of strict liability 165–8
non-retroactivity 60
principle of criminal law 45–6
constructive liability
aggravated assaults 314
general principles 76–7
manslaughter by unlawful and dangerous acts 286
'moral luck' 156–7
consumer protection 333
contemporaneity principle 80, 157–9
corporate crime
changing approaches 152–5
criminalization of theft 383
homicides 147–8
identification principle 150–1
integration into framework 151–2
manslaughter 294–7
(p. 498) natural personality 146–7
vicarious liability 149–50
'white-collar' crime 369–70
correspondence principle
criminal liability 75
'involuntary manslaughter' 297
mens rea 156
counselling and procuring
causation 114–15
general principles 429–31
protection of children 134–5
scope of criminal liability 6
court jurisdiction 7
criminal damage 333
criminal law
classification of offences 7
general parts 83–6
general principles
codification 46–8
constitutionality 45–6
human rights 48–51
more than a system of rules 44–5

importance of sentencing 19–20
justifications 16–17
principles for expansion or contraction
acts not omissions 54
conflicting rights and necessity 55
minimalism 52
proportionality 56
social defence 52–3
social responsibility 54–5
procedural fairness
presumption of innocence 71–2
reverse burden of proof 72–3
requirement for modern society 16–17
rule of law
fundamental principle 56–7
legal certainty 62–5
non-retroactivity principle 57–61
purposive interpretation 69–71
social defence 66–7
strict construction 67–9
'thin ice' principle 62
sources 8–9
treatment of suspects
discretionary process 9–10, 13–15
prosecutions 12–13
questioning 10–11
reprimands and warnings 11–12
criminal liability
see also capacity
accessories 417–18, 452–3
appropriation 379–80
conclusions 81–2
condition of liability 6–7
corporations
changing approaches 152–5
homicides 147–8
identification principle 150–1
integration into framework 151–2
natural personality 146–7
vicarious liability 149–50
defined 3
general principles
constructive liability 76–7
contemporaneity 80
correspondence 75
efficiency of administration 79–80
fair labelling 77–9

mens rea 74
objective liability 74–5
overview 73–4
prior fault 80
matter of public interest 2–3
no general dividing line for criminal conduct 1–2
possession offences 97–9
range of offences 5–6
retroactivity
association with legal certainty 63
Convention rights 49
non-derogable 51
scope 6
situational liability 96–7
social justifications 1
criminalization
blackmail 398
corporate theft 383
effects of new offences 41
evidential issues 40–1
fundamental concepts
individual autonomy 23–6
welfare principle 26–7
harm principle
justification for State action 27
protection of human rights 31
public element 29–31
relevant social and cultural matters 28–9
wrongfulness 29
inchoate offences
central role of harm 455–6
complete and incomplete attempts distinguished 456–7
conspiracy 467–72
overview 488–90
main determinants 39–40
meaning and scope 22–3
minimalist approach
avoidance of counter-productive measures 33–5
dishonesty offences 414, 415
expansion or contraction of criminal law 52
interaction with social defence 52–3
last resort 33
punishment 32–3
regulation of lesser activities 42–3
respect for human rights 31, 32
morally wrong behaviour 35–8
prevention of remote harms 38–9

relevant values and principles 40
Crown Courts
jurisdiction 7
plea bargaining 14
Crown Prosecution Service *see* prosecutions
custodial sentences *see* imprisonment
dangerous driving 300–1
de minimis
criminalization 35
issues of principle 413
theft 393
defences
see also excusatory defences; justifications; partial defences
(p. 499) automatism 86–7
complicity
prevention of crime 450
Tyrell principle 449–50
consent
ambit determined by common law 321–3
effectiveness 320–1
exceptional cases 323–5
encouraging or assisting crime 481–3
excusatory defences
duress 204–15
entrapment 224–5
ignorance or mistake of law 218–24
intoxication 194–204
necessity 204–15
non-retroactivity principle 61
overview 193–4
reasonable mistake 215–18
recognition of doctrine 226–8
search for unifying theory 233–5
social defence 229–33
fair labelling 79
focus of book 20–1
general principles 116–17
insanity 141
non-retroactivity principle 60–1
parental chastisement
case for abolition 136
impact of Art. 3 48
re-writing of English criminal law 51
unsatisfactory basis of judicial approach 323
transferred fault 189–91
withdrawal from crime
complicity 448–9

legal effect 484–6
degrading treatment *see* inhuman and degrading treatment
democracy 26
derivative theory 445–8
desert theory 20, 211, 234
deterrence 16–17
diminished responsibility
general considerations 267
reform objectives 268–9
relationship with self- control 272–5
relevant conditions 269–71
statutory provisions 268
voluntary intoxication 271–2
discretionary process 9–10, 13–15
discrimination *see* non-discrimination
dishonesty
blackmail 397–8
burglary 398–9
conflicting principles 414–15
consent to sexual intercourse 347–8
false representations 407
fraud
abuse of position 408–9
conspiracy to defraud 410–11
failure to disclose information 407–8
false representations 406–7
obtaining services by deception 410
statutory provisions 405
handling stolen goods 403–4
issues of principle 412–14
minimalism 400
money laundering 404
overview 368–72
robbery 395–6
taking a conveyance without consent 394
theft
appropriation 373–81
‘belonging to another’ 382–5
dishonest motive 389–94
ingredient of more serious offences 372
‘intention permanently to deprive’ 386–9
‘property’ 381–2
disqualified drivers 301–2
dissociative states 91–2
doctors
causation
intervening events 110–12

refusal of treatment 113
manslaughter by gross negligence 289
mercy killing 281–2
necessity 132–3
sexual assault 344
domestic violence 308
drugs
consent to sexual intercourse 349
minimalist approach 34
statutory justifications 134
duress
consent to sexual intercourse 349
murder 212–15
non-voluntary conduct of third parties 109
overview 130–2, 204–5
reform proposals 214
requirements for defence 205–9
theoretical foundations 209–12
duty
citizenship 231
failure to act 114
failure to disclose information 407–8
health and safety at work 295
knowledge of the law 220–1
manslaughter by gross negligence 291
non-voluntary conduct of third parties 109
prevention of crime 424–9, 450
self-defence and avoidance of conflict 124
efficiency *see* administrative efficiency
either way offences 7
encouraging or assisting crime
believing an offence will be committed 479–80
believing one or more offences will be committed 480–1
intentional encouragement or assistance 477–9
new offences based on fault 483–4
special defences 481–3
statutory provisions 476–7
endangerment
dangerous driving 300–1
'involuntary manslaughter' 286–9
motor vehicles 333
need for reform 303
(p. 500) enforcement
discretionary process 9–10
government agencies 12
need for public order offences 330–1
proportionality 56

self-defence by police 125–7
entrapment 224–5
European Community law
source of fundamental rights 48
source of law 8–9
excusatory defences
see also mitigation
consent to sexual intercourse 354–5
diminished responsibility 267–75
duress 210–11
murder 212–15
overview 204–5
reform proposals 214
requirements for defence 205–9
theoretical foundations 209–12
entrapment 224–5
ignorance of the law
English rules 218–19
fairness and public policy 219–22
reliance cases 222–4
individual autonomy 228–9
infanticide 283
intoxication
attack on English approach 197–8
automatism 92–3
overview 194
prior fault 194–7
prior fault doctrine 80
relevance to *mens rea* 202–4
research findings 194
social policy 198–200
loss of self-control
objective requirement 258–67
subjective requirements 251–4
mistake 215–18
necessity
murder 212–15
overview 204–5
requirements for defence 205–9
theoretical foundations 209–12
non-retroactivity principle 61
overview 193–4
partial defences to murder
diminished responsibility 267–75
exculpation and desert 233
fair labelling 79
loss of self-control 251–67

prior fault doctrine 159
reasons for retention 241
reform proposals 249, 282–5
transferred fault 189–91
wider recognition 226–7
reasonable mistake 215–18
recognition of doctrine 226–8
reform proposals 282–5
search for unifying theory 233–5
sexual assault 344
social defence 229–33
fair labelling
aims of Sexual Offences Act 2003 340
appropriation 378–9
dishonesty offences 414
familial sex offences 362
general principles 77–9
'involuntary manslaughter' 297
mental incapacity 146
murder and manslaughter 249–50, 304–5
physical violations 307
robbery 397
suicide 275
fair trial
adoption of minimalist principle 43
burden of proof
presumption of innocence 71–2
reverse burden of proof 72–3
extra procedural rights 3
minimum age of responsibility 140–1
principals and accessories distinguished 421
sexual offences against children 357
strong right 51
false representations 405–7
fault
see also mens rea
blackmail 397
burglary 398–9
capacity
insanity verdict 143–4
mental incapacity 139
minimum age of responsibility 139–41
overview 137–9
reform 144–6
unfitness to stand trial 141–4
causing or allowing death of vulnerable persons 300
complicity

derivative theory 445–8
intention and knowledge 431–3
problem areas 434–6
recklessness 433
condition for criminal liability 6–7
conspiracy 474–6
core elements
intention 168–75
knowledge and belief 181
negligence 181–5
objective or subjective approach 185–6
reckless knowledge 181
recklessness 175–81
strict liability 160–8
correspondence principle 75
encouraging or assisting crime
believing an offence will be committed 479–80
believing one or more offences will be committed 481
intentional encouragement or assistance 479
new offences based on fault 483–4
special defences 481–3
fraud
abuse of position 409
false representations 407
obtaining services by deception 410
handling stolen goods 403–4
inchoate offences 458–61
'involuntary manslaughter' 297
(p. 501) manslaughter
diminished responsibility 267–8
infanticide 283
loss of self-control 251–67
mercy killing 281–2
need for reform 304
mens rea
constructive liability 156–7
contemporaneity 157–9
fundamental principles 155–6
prior fault 159–60
mistaken objects 189
murder
intention to kill 244–6
reckless killings 246–7
sentencing procedures 240–3
offence definitions 187–8
physical violations
administering noxious substances 331

aggravated assaults 313–15
attempted murder 310
common assaults 319
grievous bodily harm 311–12
harassment 328
neglect of duty 332
offensive weapons 332–3
public order offences 329–31
recklessly wounding or inflicting grievous bodily harm 312–13
torture 331–2
wounding with intent 311–12
pragmatic approach 191
principals and accessories 451–2
prior fault
automatism 93–4
duress 208–9
general principles 80
intoxication 194–7
mens rea 159–60
necessity 208–9
robbery 395–6
sexual assault
causing sexual activity 346
sexual offences
assault by penetration 343
rape 342
sexual assault 343–6
sexual offences against children
abuse of trust 360–1
familial sex offences 361–2
offences against under 13s 356–7
offences against under 16s 359–60
statutory terminology 138, 186–7
theft
'intention permanently to deprive' 386–9
intention to appropriate 377
taking a conveyance without consent 394
transferred fault 189–91
unforeseen modes 188–9
voluntary intoxication 204
firearms 333
fraud
abuse of position 408–9
conspiracy to defraud 410–11
failure to disclose information 407–8
false representations 405–7
inchoate offences 486

need for procedural changes 380–1
obtaining services by deception 410
Serious Fraud Office 370
statutory provisions 405
free will *see* individual autonomy
freedom of assembly
Convention rights 49
qualified right 51
freedom of expression 49
gender-neutrality
aims of Sexual Offences Act 2003 340
cautioning of offenders 15
re-assessment of Sexual Offences Act 2003 364
gifts 375
government agencies
alternatives to prosecution 12
proactive role 10
grievous bodily harm
with intent 310–12
murder 245
recklessly inflicting 312–13
grooming for sex 360
harassment 328
harm
constructive liability 76–7
correspondence principle 75
criminalization
justification for State action 27
protection of human rights 31
public element 29–31
relevant social and cultural matters 28–9
wrongfulness 29
'involuntary manslaughter' 297
joint ventures for different results
different, less serious offence 444–5
more serious offence 438–41
overview 436–8
same offence, different result 441–4
physical violations
administering noxious substances 331
aggravated assaults 313–15
attempted murder 310
common assaults 316–19
general approach 309–10
grievous bodily harm 310–11
harassment 328
neglect of duty 332

offensive weapons 332–3
public order offences 329–31
recklessly wounding or inflicting grievous bodily harm 312–13
torture 331–2
wounding with intent 310–11
sexual assault
causing sexual activity 346
sexual offences
assault by penetration 343
rape 342
sexual assault 343–6
sexual offences against children
abuse of trust 360–1
familial sex offences 361–2
offences against under 13s 356–7
offences against under 16s 359–60
(p. 502) health and safety at work
corporate manslaughter 294–7
endangerment 333
HIV/AIDS 321–2
homicide
see also physical violations
causing death by driving
dangerous or careless driving 300–1
disqualified drivers 301–2
rationale for structure of offences 302–3
children and vulnerable persons 300
conduct
common elements 238–40
corporate liability 147–8, 153–4
infanticide 283
'involuntary manslaughter'
corporate manslaughter 294–7
gross negligence 289–94
overview 285–6, 297–9
unlawful and dangerous acts 286–9
manslaughter
diminished responsibility 267–75
effect of mandatory penalty 250–1
fair labelling 249–50
loss of self-control 251–67
reform of partial defences 282–5
mercy killing 281–2
murder
felony-murder classification 248
first and second degree classification 249
intention to kill 244–6

reckless killings 246–7
need for reform 303–5
overview 236–8
reported crime 237
sentencing procedures 240–3
suicide
assisting or encouraging 276–80
statutory provisions 275–6
human rights
approach to strict liability 167
consensual violence 326–7
conspiracy to defraud 411
Convention rights 48–9
criminalization
harm principle 31
minimalist approach 32
differing strengths 51
effects of sexual invasion 338
fair trial
adoption of minimalist principle 43
extra procedural rights 3
general principles of liability
conclusions 81–2
legal certainty 63
presumption of innocence 71–2
strict construction 67–9
'thin ice' principle 62
impact on criminal law 49–50
impact on range of offences 17
incorporation into UK law 50
mental incapacity 144–6
minimum age of responsibility 140–1
non-retroactivity
express provisions 57
Strasbourg jurisprudence 59
principals and accessories distinguished 421
principle of criminal law 48–9
proportionality 48–9
protection against physical violations 309
self-defence
Convention provisions 117–18
proportionality 121
sexual offences against children 357–8
significance for individual autonomy 27
source of law 8
unfitness to stand trial 144
hypoglycaemic episodes

automatism 91
construed as insanity 143
identification principle
corporate liability 150–1
narrow sphere 152–3
ignorance of the law
codification of the law 221–2
English rules 218–19
fairness and public policy 219–22
purposive approach 69
reliance cases 222–4
social defence 68
under-age sex 365
imprisonment
abuse of position 410
burglary 398
causing death by driving
aggravated vehicle taking 300
dangerous or careless driving 301
disqualified drivers 301–2
causing or allowing death of vulnerable persons 300
handling stolen goods 402
mandatory life sentences
effect on manslaughter 250–1
murder 240–3
money laundering 404
physical violations
administering noxious substances 331
aggravated assaults 315
attempted murder 310
common assaults 319
firearms 333
harassment 328
neglect of duty 332
public order offences 329
recklessly wounding or inflicting grievous bodily harm 313
wounding or GBH with intent 313
principals and accessories 420
reform of violent offences 334–5
robbery 395
sentencing
aims 20
burglary 398
coercive sanctions 18
Crown Courts 7
custodial sentences 18–19
homicide 305

importance 19–20
justifications 17
magistrates' courts 7
matters of public interest 2–3
murder 240–3
plea bargaining 14
preferred alternatives 11–12
(p. 503) range of available measures 18–19
sexual assaults 336–7
sexual offences against children 358
abuse of trust 361
familial sex offences 362
offences against under 16s 360
inchoate offences
accomplice liability 424
attempted murder 310
burglary 400–1
conduct
failure to formulate judicial test 464
impossible acts 464–7
least requirements 461–2
preparatory acts 463–4
reform proposals 467
conspiracy
agreed criminal conduct 473–4
agreement between two or more persons 472–3
fault 474–6
justifications for criminalization 467–72
conspiracy to defraud 411
doubly inchoate offences 486
encouraging or assisting crime
believing an offence will be committed 479–80
believing one or more offences will be committed 481
intentional encouragement or assistance 477–9
new offences based on fault 483–4
special defences 481–3
statutory provisions 476–7
fault 458–61
fraud 405
incitement 476–7
justifications for criminalization 488–90
central role of harm 455–6
complete and incomplete attempts distinguished 456–7
overview 454–5
possession offences 487–8
pragmatic approach to fault 191
threat offences 486–7

variations of substantial crimes 486
withdrawal from crime 484–6
incitement
causation 114–15
encouraging or assisting crime
believing an offence will be committed 479–80
believing one or more offences will be committed 481
intentional encouragement or assistance 477–9
new offences based on fault 483–4
special defences 481–3
statutory provisions 476–7
overview 454–5
scope of criminal liability 6
statutory provisions 476–7
indictable offences 7
individual autonomy
consent
conflicting values 325–6
positive and negative aspects 320
re-assessment of law 364–6
submission to injury 325
effects of sexual invasion 337–8
excusatory defences 228–9
factual element 23–4
insanity verdicts 142
justifications for objective liability 74–5
mens rea 155–6
morality 36–7
normative element 24–5
protection against State interests 25–6
rationale for non-retroactivity principle 57
re-assessment of Sexual Offences Act 2003 364, 366
relationship to causation 103
self-defence 117
strict liability 162
valuable restraint 27
infanticide 283
inhuman and degrading treatment
Convention prohibition 48
minimum age of responsibility 140–1
non-derogable 50
self-defence 117–18
insanity
automatism 90–2
reform 144–6
special verdict 143–4
intention

accomplice liability 431–3
blackmail 397
burglary 398–9
conclusions 174–5
condition for criminal liability 6–7
conspiracy
agreed criminal conduct 473–4
knowledge and intention 474–6
constructive liability 76–7
effects of alcohol 194–7
encouraging or assisting crime 479
false representations 407
fraud
abuse of position 409
obtaining services by deception 410
inchoate offences 458–61
meaning and scope
judicial interpretation 171–5
theoretical approaches 169–71
murder 244–6
notions of fault 156
overview 137–9, 168
statutory terminology 186–7
theft
appropriation 377
'intention permanently to deprive' 386–9
taking a conveyance without consent 394
traditional analysis 83–4
wounding with intent 311–12
intervening events
doctors 110–12
non-voluntary conduct of third parties 108–10
overview 108
victim's conduct or condition 112–13
intoxication
automatism 92–3
consent to sexual intercourse 355–6
diminished responsibility 271–2
(p. 504) link with violence 308
manslaughter by unlawful and dangerous acts 287
prior fault 194–7
prior fault doctrine 80
relevance to *mens rea* 202–4
research findings 194
social policy 198–200
voluntary and non-voluntary acts distinguished 200–2
involuntary conduct

automatism
essential requirements 88–90
theoretical approaches 86–7
duress 209
intoxication 200–2
necessity 209
situational liability 96–7
joint ventures
see also conspiracy
different, less serious offence 444–5
more serious offence 438–41
overview 436–8
reform proposals 452–3
same offence, different result 441–4
'joy-riding' 394
justifications
see also defences; excusatory defences; partial defences
advertent recklessness 176–80
classification of wrongdoing 84
conclusions 135–6
conflicting rights and necessity 55
criminal law 16–17
criminalization of inchoate offences
central role of harm 455–6
complete and incomplete attempts distinguished 456–7
conspiracy 467–72
overview 488–90
fair labelling 77–9
general principles 116–17
interference with rights 51
necessity
doctors 132–3
judicial developments 133–4
overview 130–2
objective liability 74–5
self-defence
conclusions 129–30
conflicting rights 117–18
emotional reactions 128–9
individual autonomy 117
mistake as to necessity 127–8
necessity requirement 122–7
proportionality 120–2
statutory provisions 119–20
State action 27
statutory recognition 134–5
knives 333

knowledge or belief
accomplice liability 431–3
aiding and abetting 423–4
conspiracy 474–6
encouraging or assisting crime
believing an offence will be committed 479–80
believing one or more offences will be committed 481
notions of fault 156
obtaining services by deception 410
reckless knowledge 181
recklessness 181
statutory terminology 186–7
labelling of offences *see* fair labelling
legal certainty
appropriation 379
conspiracy to defraud 411
dishonesty offences 414
re-assessment of Sexual Offences Act 2003 366
reform of violent offences 334–5
legality principle *see* rule of law
liberty and security
Convention right 49
mental incapacity 144–6
self-defence 117–18
strong right 51
loss of self-control
objective condition 258–67
overview 251–3
relationship with diminished responsibility 272–5
subjective requirements 251–4
magistrates' courts
jurisdiction 7
plea bargaining 14
maliciousness 176–80, 186
mandatory life sentences
effect on manslaughter 250–1
murder 240–3
principals and accessories 420
manslaughter
corporate liability 153–4
effect of mandatory penalty for murder 250–1
fair labelling 249–50
'involuntary manslaughter'
corporate manslaughter 294–7
gross negligence 289–94
overview 285–6, 297–9
unlawful and dangerous acts 286–9

loss of self-control
objective requirement 258–67
overview 251–3
subjective requirements 253–7
need for reform 303–5
reform of partial defences 282–5
'marginal deterrence' 16
marital coercion 205
mens rea
component parts 168–9
constitutional principle 167
constructive liability 156–7
contemporaneity 157–9
criminal liability
condition for 6–7
general principles 74
effects of alcohol 194–7
fundamental principles 155–6
negligence 182
overview 137–9
prior fault 159–60
recognition of inadequacy 84
relevance of intoxication 202–4
situational liability 96
traditional analysis 83–4
mental incapacity
automatism 90–2
causing or allowing death 300
criminal liability 139
diminished responsibility 267–75
(p. 505) infanticide 283
insanity verdict 143–4
sexual offences 362–3
unfitness to stand trial 141–4
mercy killing 281–2
minimalism
avoidance of counter-productive measures 33–5
dishonesty offences 414, 415
expansion or contraction of criminal law 52
interaction with social defence 52–3
last resort 33
punishment 32–3
respect for human rights 32
misrepresentation
failure to disclose information 407–8
fraud by false representations 405–7
mistake

dishonest appropriation 390
ignorance of the law
English rules 218–19
fairness and public policy 219–22
reliance cases 222–4
necessity for self-defence 127–8
objects of crime 189
property ‘belonging to another’ 385
putative defences 215–18
test for duress 208–9
mitigation
‘almost’ defences 19
‘desert theory’ 211
entrapment 224
ignorance or mistake 221
impact on sentencing 19–20
recognition of exculpatory doctrine 227–8
voluntary renunciation of crime 484–6
money laundering 404
‘moral luck’ 156–7
morality
approach to causation 110
choice of victims 130–1
concepts of intention 171
criminalization
concepts of morality 36–7
subject of debate 35–6
utilitarian approach 37–8
mistaken objects 189
reasonable mistake 215
recognition of exculpatory doctrine 226
social defence 66–7
strict liability 162
unwarranted demands 397
motive
duress 206–7
purposive approach to liability 69–71
self-defence 128–9
theft 389–94
motoring offences
causing death by driving 300–3
endangerment 333
taking a conveyance without consent 394
murder
attempted murder 310
duress 212–15
fair labelling 249–50

fault
intention to kill 244–6
reckless killings 246–7
sentencing procedures 240–3
felony-murder classification 248
first and second degree classification 249
necessity 212–15
need for reform 303–5
reform of partial defences 282–5
necessity
conflicting rights 55
doctors 132–3
judicial developments 133–4
murder 212–15
non-voluntary conduct of third parties 109
overview 130–2, 204–5
requirements for defence 205–9
self-defence
emotional reactions 128–9
essential requirement 122–7
mistaken beliefs 127–8
proportionality 120–2
theoretical foundations 209–12
negligence
manslaughter by gross negligence
general principles 289–94
need for reform 299
neglect of duty 332
standard for criminal liability 182–3
traditional approach 181–2
non-derogable rights 50
non-discrimination
gender-neutrality
aims of Sexual Offences Act 2003 340
cautioning of offenders 15
re-assessment of Sexual Offences Act 2003 364
strong right 51
non-retroactivity
association with legal certainty 63
Convention rights 49
non-derogable 50
nullum crimen, nulla sine lege see rule of law
offences
see also complicity; inchoate offences; possession offences; serious offences; threat offences
discretionary process of prosecution 13
dishonesty

blackmail 397–8
burglary 398–402
conspiracy to defraud 410–11
fraud 405–10
handling stolen goods 402–4
robbery 395–7
taking a conveyance without consent 394
theft 372–94
encouraging or assisting crime
believing an offence will be committed 479–80
believing one or more offences will be committed 481
intentional encouragement or assistance 477–9
new offences based on fault 483–4
(p. 506) special defences 481–3
statutory provisions 476–7
focus of book 20–1
general principles of liability
conclusions 81–2
efficiency of administration 79–80
fair labelling 77–9
homicide
causing death by driving 300–3
children and vulnerable persons 300
conduct causing death 238–40
'involuntary manslaughter' 285–99
manslaughter 250–75
murder 240–50
overview 236–8
physical violations
administering noxious substances 331
aggravated assaults 313–15
attempted murder 310
common assaults 316–19
general approach 309–10
grievous bodily harm 310–12
harassment 328
neglect of duty 332
offensive weapons 332–3
public order offences 329–31
recklessly wounding or inflicting grievous bodily harm 312–13
sexual offences 335–56, 363–4
torture 331–2
vulnerable persons 356–63
wounding with intent 310–12
offensive weapons
firearms 333
knives 333

motor vehicles 333
omissions
accomplice liability 426–7
aiding by omission 426–7
'control principle' 427
appropriation 377
causation 114
consensual sex 324–5
judicial approaches
exploitation of ambiguities 100–1
linguistic approach 100
manslaughter by unlawful and dangerous acts 287
much debated issues 99–100
principles for expansion or contraction
social defence 52–3
social responsibility 54–5
parental chastisement
case for abolition 136
impact of Art. 3 48
re-writing of English criminal law 51
unsatisfactory basis of judicial approach 323
partial defences to murder
diminished responsibility 267–75
exculpation and desert 233
fair labelling 79
loss of self-control
objective requirement 258–67
overview 251–3
subjective requirements 251–4
prior fault doctrine 159–60
reasons for retention 241
reform proposals 249, 282–5
transferred fault 189–91
wider recognition 226–7
physical violations
see also homicide
classification of offences
administering noxious substances 331
aggravated assaults 313–15
attempted murder 310
common assaults 316–19
general approach 309–10
grievous bodily harm 310–12
harassment 328
neglect of duty 332
offensive weapons 332–3
public order offences 329–31

recklessly wounding or inflicting grievous bodily harm 312–13
sexual offences 335–56, 363–4
torture 331–2
vulnerable persons 356–63
wounding with intent 310–12
consent
ambit determined by common law 321–3
conflicting values 325–6
effectiveness as defence 320–1
exceptional cases 323–5
individual autonomy 320
privacy 326–7
overview 307
re-assessment of sexual offences 364–6
reported crime 308–9
structure of offences
need for further consideration 335
reform proposals 334–5
statutory basis of 1861 334–5
plea bargaining 14
poisons
consent to sexual intercourse 349
statutory offence 331
police
aggravated assaults 315
entrapment 224–5
self-defence 125–7
treatment of suspects
discretionary powers 9–10
discretionary process 13–15
prosecutions 12–13
questioning 10–11
reprimands and warnings 11–12
politics of lawmaking
administrative offences 4–5
aims of Sexual Offences Act 2003 341–2
determination of criminal liability 1–2
need for principled arguments 81–2
re-assessment of Sexual Offences Act 2003 365–6
possession offences
complicity 439
doubly inchoate offences 486
essential requirements 97–8
extension of liability 5
firearms 333
(p. 507) imminence of crime 123–4
inchoate mode of definition 487–8

involuntary conduct 98–9
justifications for criminalization 39
knives 333
minimalist approach 34
statutory justifications 134
strict liability 169
presumption of innocence
approach to strict liability 167
Convention rights 49
procedural fairness 71–2
sexual offences against children 357
prevention of harm
aims of Sexual Offences Act 2003 340–1
criminalization of remote harms 38–9
defence to accessorial liability 450
function of criminal law 16–17
mandatory life sentences 243
social duty 424–9
principals
prior fault
automatism 93–4
duress 208–9
general principles 80
intoxication 194–7
necessity 208–9
privacy
consensual violence 326–7
Convention rights 49
effects of sexual invasion 338
qualified right 51
sexual offences against children 357
procedure
extra procedural rights 3
fairness
presumption of innocence 71–2
reverse burden of proof 72–3
recognition of exculpatory doctrine 227–8
unfitness to stand trial 141
proceeds of crime 404
procuring
causation 114–15
general principles 429–31
protection of children 134–5
scope of criminal liability 6
proof
Convention rights 49
presumption of innocence 71–2

principals and accessories 422
reverse burden 72–3
strict liability 160–1
property
'belonging to another' 382–5
meaning and scope 381–2
proportionality
dishonesty offences 369, 414
encouraging or assisting crime 481–3
enforcement 56
human rights 48–9
key element of sentencing 20
pragmatic approach to fault 191
self-defence 120–2
thresholds of harmfulness 42–3
prosecutions
charging standards for physical violations 309–10
discretionary process 13–15
matters of public interest 2–3
normal response 12–13
reform of violent offences 334–5
provocation *see* loss of self-control
psychological injuries
aggravated assaults 314
burglary 398, 400
effects of violence 308–9
public interest
consensual violence 324–5
criminal liability 2–3
public order offences
rationale 330–1
requirement for co-principals 420
statutory 'ladder' of offences 329–31
punishment
aims of Sexual Offences Act 2003 341
burglary 398
causing death by driving
aggravated vehicle taking 300
dangerous or careless driving 301
disqualified drivers 301–2
causing or allowing death of vulnerable persons 300
effect of criminalization 22
fraud
abuse of position 410
handling stolen goods 402
justification for criminal law 16–17
matters of public interest 2

minimalist approach 32–3
money laundering 404
physical violations 334
administering noxious substances 331
aggravated assaults 315
attempted murder 312
common assaults 319
firearms 333
harassment 328
neglect of duty 332
public order offences 329
recklessly wounding or inflicting grievous bodily harm 313
wounding or GBH with intent 313
principals and accessories 420
proportionality 20
robbery 395
sentencing
aims 20
burglary 398
coercive sanctions 18
Crown Courts 7
custodial sentences 18–19
duress 211–12
homicide 305
importance 19–20
justifications 17
magistrates' courts 7
matters of public interest 2–3
murder 240–3
necessity 211–12
plea bargaining 14
preferred alternatives 11–12
range of available measures 18–19
sexual assaults 336–7
sexual offences against children 358
abuse of trust 361
familial sex offences 362
offences against under 16s 360
(p. 508) qualified rights 51
'quality of law' test 63–4
racially aggravated offences
assaults 315
harassment 328
public order offences 329
rape
accomplice liability 447
children under 13 357

statutory requirements 341–2
reasonableness *see* excusatory defences
recklessness
accomplice liability 433
advertent recklessness 176–80
Caldwell test 179–81
grievous bodily harm 312–13
inchoate offences 460–1
notions of fault 156
overview 175–6
reckless knowledge 181
statutory terminology 186–7
regulatory offences 4
religious freedom
Convention rights 49
qualified right 51
religiously aggravated offences
assaults 315
harassment 328
public order offences 329
reported crime
blackmail 398
homicide 237
physical violations 308–9
sexual offences 335–6
unreported crimes 9
reprimands 11–12
research
effects of alcohol 194
importance 21
sexual offences 335–6
support for negligence liability 183
variations in police practice 14
retribution 16–17
retroactivity
association with legal certainty 63
Convention rights 49
non-derogable 51
reverse burden of proof 72–3
right to life
conflicting rights and necessity 55
Convention right 48
non-derogable 50
self-defence 117–18, 126–7
risk
awareness of risk
murder 247–8

recklessness 176–80
negligence as a standard for liability 182–3
road traffic offences
causing death by driving 300–3
endangerment 333
statutory justifications 134
taking a conveyance without consent 394
robbery
aggravated assaults 313–14
issues of principle 412–13
statutory provisions 395–6
rule of law
conclusions 81–2
fundamental principle 56–7
legal certainty 62–5
non-retroactivity principle 57–61
situational liability 97
statutory interpretation
purposive approach 69–71
strict construction 67–9
'thin ice' principle 62
sado-masochism 324–5
self-defence
conclusions 129–30
conflicting rights 117–18
duress distinguished 206
emotional reactions 128–9
individual autonomy 117
mistake as to necessity 127–8
necessity requirement 122–7
proportionality 120–2
statutory provisions 119–20
sentencing
aims 20
burglary 398
coercive sanctions 18
Crown Courts 7
custodial sentences 18–19
duress 211–12
homicide 305
importance 19–20
justifications 16–17
magistrates' courts 7
matters of public interest 2–3
murder 240–3
necessity 211–12
plea bargaining 14

preferred alternatives 11–12
range of available measures 18
sexual assaults 336–7
serious offences
aiding and abetting 424
burglary 398
encouraging or assisting crime
believing an offence will be committed 479–80
believing one or more offences will be committed 480–1
intentional encouragement or assistance 477–9
new offences based on fault 483–4
special defences 481–3
statutory provisions 476–7
felony-murder classification 248
robbery 395
statutory terminology 186–7
strict liability 164–5
sexual offences
aiding and abetting 449–50
assault by penetration 343
causing sexual activity 346
changes in legal boundaries 5
against children
familial sex offences 361–2
sexual offences against under 13s 356–8
sexual offences against under 16s 358–60
sexual offences by persons in trust 360–1
consent
ambit determined by common law 321–3
effectiveness as defence 320–1
exceptional cases 323–5
criminalization 37–8
different fault elements 138
effects of sexual invasion 337–8
meaning and scope of consent
conclusive presumptions 347–8
defendants reasonable beliefs 354–5
general definition 351–4
(p. 509) intoxication 355–6
long-standing problems 346–7
rebuttable presumptions 349–51
mentally disordered persons 362–3
new offences 363–4
rape 341–2
re-assessment of law 364–6
reported crime 335–6
sexual assault 343–6

statutory aims 339–41
statutory justifications 135
strict liability 165, 167
structure of 2003 Act 339
sexually transmitted diseases 321–2
situational liability 96–7
slavery or servitude 48
social defence
benefit of vagueness 66–7
criminal liability 1
criminalization of conspiracy 467–9
excusatory defences 229–33
expansion or contraction of criminal law 52–3
insane automatism 90
intoxication 198–200
moral distinctions 66–7
strict liability 161
social responsibility principle 54–5
somnambulism
automatism 91
construed as insanity 143
sources of law 8–9
sports 323–4
state intervention
conclusions 39–43
harm principle 28–31
minimalist approach 31–5
morally wrong behaviour 35–8
prevention of remote harms 38–9
welfare principle 26–7
statutes 8
statutory interpretation
constitutional principle 165–8
impact of human rights 50
non-retroactivity 49
omissions
exploitation of ambiguities 100–1
linguistic approach 100
purposive approach 69–71
situational liability 96–7
strict construction 67–9
strict liability
absence of *mens rea* 138
advantages and disadvantages 161–5
causation 105
condition for criminal liability 6–7
constitutional principle 165–8

Convention rights 49
development 165–8
identification principle 150–1
meaning and scope 160–1
no distinction between principals and accessories 420
objective or subjective approach 185–6
sexual offences against children 357
strong rights 51
suicide
assisting or encouraging 276–80
statutory provisions 275–6
summary offences 7
terrorism
inchoate offences 486
introduction of new offences 41–2
theft
appropriation
meaning and scope 373–81
statutory provisions 372
'belonging to another' 382–5
burglary 398–9
dishonest motive 389–94
handling stolen goods 402–4
ingredient of more serious offences 372
'intention permanently to deprive' 386–9
issues of principle 412–13
overview 368–72
'property' 381–2
robbery 395–6
taking a conveyance without consent 394
'thin ice' principle 62
third party acts 108–10
threat offences
blackmail 397
common assaults 316–19
complicity
counselling and procuring 430
derivative theory 446–7
rape 447
criminalization 41
duress *per minas*
defence requirements 205–9
overview 204–5
partial defences to murder 212–15
theoretical foundations 209–12
encouraging or assisting crime 478
increased use 486–7

individual autonomy 23–4
necessity
justification 130–2
reform proposals 133–4
no general offence 487–8
persons with mental disorder 362–3
presumed non-consent to sex 349–50
proportionality 56
public order offences 329–31
remote harms 38
robbery 396
self-defence
duty to avoid conflict 124
emotional reactions 128–9
individual autonomy 117
mistake as to necessity 127
proportionality 121
social defence 52–3
terminology 186–7
torture
see also inhuman and degrading treatment
statutory offence 331–2
transferred fault 189–91
Tyrell principle 449–50
unborn children 239
unfitness to stand trial 141–4
'unlawful act theory' 76
(p. 510) *versari in re illicita* 76
vicarious liability
adoption by criminal law 149–50
statutory interpretation 96
victims
see also vulnerable persons
effect on causation 112–13
involvement in criminal justice system 3
mistaken objects 189
moral choices 130–1
structure of offences 334
Tyrell principle 449–50
Victim Personal Statements 3
violence *see* homicide; physical violations
voluntary acts
intervening events of third parties 108–10
intoxication 200–2
voluntary renunciation of crime
defence to accessorial liability 448–9
legal effect 484–6

vulnerable persons
aims of Sexual Offences Act 2003 340–1
causing or allowing death 300
children
chastisement 323
familial sex offences 361–2
minimum age of responsibility 139–41
neglect of duty 332
protection from immorality 37–8
sexual offences against under 13s 356–8
sexual offences against under 16s 358–60
sexual offences by persons in trust 360–1
consent to sexual intercourse 349
mental incapacity
automatism 90–2
criminal liability 139
diminished responsibility 267–75
infanticide 283
insanity verdict 141–4
sexual offences 362–3
unfitness to stand trial 141–4
re-assessment of Sexual Offences Act 2003 364–5
warnings 11–12
weapons *see* offensive weapons
welfare principle
criminalization 26–7
strict liability 161–2
'white-collar' crime 369–70
withdrawal from crime
defence to accessorial liability 448–9
legal effect 484–6
wounding with intent 310–12
'year and a day' rule 239
young offenders
see also children
preferred approach 11–12
Tyrell principle 449–50